

# **HANDBOOK OF MARINE CRAFT HYDRODYNAMICS AND MOTION CONTROL**

*Handbook of Marine Craft Hydrodynamics and Motion Control*, First Edition. Thor I. Fossen.  
© 2011 John Wiley & Sons Ltd. Published 2011 by John Wiley & Sons Ltd. ISBN: 978-1-119-99149-6

# HANDBOOK OF MARINE CRAFT HYDRODYNAMICS AND MOTION CONTROL

Vademecum de Navium Motu Contra Aquas et de  
Motu Gubernando

**Thor I. Fossen**

*Norwegian University of Science and Technology  
Trondheim, Norway*



A John Wiley & Sons, Ltd., Publication

This edition first published 2011  
© 2011, John Wiley & Sons, Ltd

*Registered office*

John Wiley & Sons Ltd, The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, United Kingdom

For details of our global editorial offices, for customer services and for information about how to apply for permission to reuse the copyright material in this book please see our website at [www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com).

The right of the author to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, except as permitted by the UK Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988, without the prior permission of the publisher.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books.

Designations used by companies to distinguish their products are often claimed as trademarks. All brand names and product names used in this book are trade names, service marks, trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners. The publisher is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book. This publication is designed to provide accurate and authoritative information in regard to the subject matter covered. It is sold on the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering professional services. If professional advice or other expert assistance is required, the services of a competent professional should be sought.

MATLAB® is a trademark of The MathWorks, Inc. and is used with permission. The MathWorks does not warrant the accuracy of the text or exercises in this book. This book's use or discussion of MATLAB® software or related products does not constitute endorsement or sponsorship by The MathWorks of a particular pedagogical approach or particular use of the MATLAB® software.

*Library of Congress Cataloguing-in-Publication Data*

Fossen, Thor I.

Handbook of Marine Craft Hydrodynamics and Motion Control / Thor Fossen.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-1-119-99149-6 (hardback)

1. Ships—Hydrodynamics. 2. Stability of ships. 3. Motion control devices.
  4. Automatic pilot (Ships). 5. Steering-gear. 6. Ships—Electronic equipment. I. Title.
- VM156.F67 2011  
623.8'1—dc22

2010054228

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Print ISBN: 9781119991496

E-PDF ISBN: 9781119994121

O-Book ISBN: 9781119994138

E-Pub ISBN: 9781119998686

Mobi ISBN: 9781119998693

Set in 9/11pt Times by Thomson Digital, Noida, India.

*This book is dedicated to my parents Gerd Kristine and Ole Johan Fossen and my family Heidi, Sindre and Lone Moa who have always been there for me.*

Thor I. Fossen

# Contents

<b>About the Author</b>	<b>xv</b>
<b>Preface</b>	<b>xvii</b>
<b>List of Tables</b>	<b>xix</b>
<b>I Marine Craft Hydrodynamics</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1 Classification of Models	6
1.2 The Classical Models in Naval Architecture	7
1.2.1 <i>Maneuvering Theory</i>	9
1.2.2 <i>Seakeeping Theory</i>	11
1.2.3 <i>Unified Theory</i>	12
1.3 Fossen's Robot-Like Vectorial Model for Marine Craft	12
<b>2 Kinematics</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1 Reference Frames	16
2.2 Transformations between BODY and NED	20
2.2.1 <i>Euler Angle Transformation</i>	22
2.2.2 <i>Unit Quaternions</i>	27
2.2.3 <i>Quaternions from Euler Angles</i>	32
2.2.4 <i>Euler Angles from Quaternions</i>	33
2.3 Transformations between ECEF and NED	34
2.3.1 <i>Longitude and Latitude Transformations</i>	34
2.3.2 <i>Longitude and Latitude from ECEF Coordinates</i>	36
2.3.3 <i>ECEF Coordinates from Longitude and Latitude</i>	38
2.4 Transformations between BODY and FLOW	39
2.4.1 <i>Definitions of Course, Heading and Sideslip Angles</i>	39
2.4.2 <i>Sideslip and Angle of Attack</i>	41
<b>3 Rigid-Body Kinetics</b>	<b>45</b>
3.1 Newton–Euler Equations of Motion about CG	45
3.1.1 <i>Translational Motion about CG</i>	47
3.1.2 <i>Rotational Motion about CG</i>	48
3.1.3 <i>Equations of Motion about CG</i>	49

3.2	Newton–Euler Equations of Motion about CO	49
3.2.1	<i>Translational Motion about CO</i>	50
3.2.2	<i>Rotational Motion about CO</i>	50
3.3	Rigid-Body Equations of Motion	51
3.3.1	<i>Nonlinear 6 DOF Rigid-Body Equations of Motion</i>	51
3.3.2	<i>Linearized 6 DOF Rigid-Body Equations of Motion</i>	56
<b>4</b>	<b>Hydrostatics</b>	<b>59</b>
4.1	Restoring Forces for Underwater Vehicles	59
4.1.1	<i>Hydrostatics of Submerged Vehicles</i>	59
4.2	Restoring Forces for Surface Vessels	62
4.2.1	<i>Hydrostatics of Floating Vessels</i>	62
4.2.2	<i>Linear (Small Angle) Theory for Boxed-Shaped Vessels</i>	64
4.2.3	<i>Computation of Metacenter Height for Surface Vessels</i>	65
4.3	Load Conditions and Natural Periods	68
4.3.1	<i>Decoupled Computation of Natural Periods</i>	68
4.3.2	<i>Computation of Natural Periods in a 6 DOF Coupled System</i>	69
4.3.3	<i>Natural Period as a Function of Load Condition</i>	71
4.4	Ballast Systems	74
4.4.1	<i>Conditions for Manual Pretrimming</i>	76
4.4.2	<i>Automatic Pretrimming using Feedback from <math>z</math>, <math>\phi</math> and <math>\theta</math></i>	78
<b>5</b>	<b>Seakeeping Theory</b>	<b>81</b>
5.1	Hydrodynamic Concepts and Potential Theory	82
5.1.1	<i>Numerical Approaches and Hydrodynamic Codes</i>	84
5.2	Seakeeping and Maneuvering Kinematics	85
5.2.1	<i>Seakeeping Reference Frame</i>	85
5.2.2	<i>Transformation between BODY and SEAKEEPING</i>	86
5.3	The Classical Frequency-Domain Model	90
5.3.1	<i>Potential Coefficients and the Concept of Forced Oscillations</i>	90
5.3.2	<i>Frequency-Domain Seakeeping Models</i>	93
5.4	Time-Domain Models including Fluid Memory Effects	96
5.4.1	<i>Cummins Equation in SEAKEEPING Coordinates</i>	96
5.4.2	<i>Linear Time-Domain Seakeeping Equations in BODY Coordinates</i>	99
5.4.3	<i>Nonlinear Unified Seakeeping and Maneuvering Model with Fluid Memory Effects</i>	103
5.5	Case Study: Identification of Fluid Memory Effects	104
5.5.1	<i>Frequency-Domain Identification using the MSS FDI Toolbox</i>	104
<b>6</b>	<b>Maneuvering Theory</b>	<b>109</b>
6.1	Rigid-Body Kinetics	110
6.2	Potential Coefficients	111
6.2.1	<i>3 DOF Maneuvering Model</i>	113
6.2.2	<i>6 DOF Coupled Motions</i>	113
6.3	Nonlinear Coriolis Forces due to Added Mass in a Rotating Coordinate System	115
6.3.1	<i>Lagrangian Mechanics</i>	115
6.3.2	<i>Kirchhoff's Equations in Vector Form</i>	116
6.3.3	<i>Added Mass and Coriolis–Centripetal Forces due to the Rotation of BODY Relative to NED</i>	117
6.4	Viscous Damping and Ocean Current Forces	122

6.4.1	<i>Linear Viscous Damping</i>	123
6.4.2	<i>Nonlinear Surge Damping</i>	125
6.4.3	<i>Cross-Flow Drag Principle</i>	127
6.5	<b>Maneuvering Equations</b>	128
6.5.1	<i>Hydrodynamic Mass–Damper–Spring System</i>	128
6.5.2	<i>Nonlinear Maneuvering Equations</i>	130
6.5.3	<i>Linearized Maneuvering Equations</i>	131
<b>7</b>	<b>Models for Ships, Offshore Structures and Underwater Vehicles</b>	<b>133</b>
7.1	<b>Maneuvering Models (3 DOF)</b>	133
7.1.1	<i>Nonlinear Maneuvering Models Based on Surge Resistance and Cross-Flow Drag</i>	136
7.1.2	<i>Nonlinear Maneuvering Models Based on Second-order Modulus Functions</i>	136
7.1.3	<i>Nonlinear Maneuvering Models Based on Odd Functions</i>	138
7.1.4	<i>Linearized Maneuvering Models</i>	140
7.2	<b>Autopilot Models for Heading Control (1 DOF)</b>	142
7.2.1	<i>Second-Order Nomoto Model (Yaw Subsystem)</i>	142
7.2.2	<i>First-Order Nomoto Model (Yaw Subsystem)</i>	143
7.2.3	<i>Nonlinear Extensions of Nomoto’s Model</i>	145
7.2.4	<i>Pivot Point (Yaw Rotation Point)</i>	146
7.2.5	<i>Nondimensional Maneuvering and Autopilot Models</i>	148
7.3	<b>DP Models (3 DOF)</b>	152
7.3.1	<i>Nonlinear DP Model using Current Coefficients</i>	153
7.3.2	<i>Linearized DP Model</i>	157
7.4	<b>Maneuvering Models Including Roll (4 DOF)</b>	158
7.4.1	<i>The Nonlinear Model of Son and Nomoto</i>	163
7.4.2	<i>The Nonlinear Model of Blanke and Christensen</i>	164
7.4.3	<i>Nonlinear Model Based on Low-Aspect Ratio Wing Theory</i>	165
7.5	<b>Equations of Motion (6 DOF)</b>	167
7.5.1	<i>Nonlinear 6 DOF Vector Representations in BODY and NED</i>	167
7.5.2	<i>Symmetry Considerations of the System Inertia Matrix</i>	171
7.5.3	<i>Linearized Equations of Motion (Vessel Parallel Coordinates)</i>	173
7.5.4	<i>Transforming the Equations of Motion to a Different Point</i>	176
7.5.5	<i>6 DOF Models for AUVs and ROVs</i>	182
7.5.6	<i>Longitudinal and Lateral Models for Submarines</i>	183
<b>8</b>	<b>Environmental Forces and Moments</b>	<b>187</b>
8.1	<b>Wind Forces and Moments</b>	188
8.1.1	<i>Wind Forces and Moments on Marine Craft at Rest</i>	188
8.1.2	<i>Wind Forces and Moments on Moving Marine Craft</i>	191
8.1.3	<i>Wind Coefficients Based on Flow over a Helmholtz–Kirchhoff Plate</i>	192
8.1.4	<i>Wind Coefficients for Merchant Ships</i>	194
8.1.5	<i>Wind Coefficients for Very Large Crude Carriers</i>	195
8.1.6	<i>Wind Coefficients for Large Tankers and Medium-Sized Ships</i>	195
8.1.7	<i>Wind Coefficients for Moored Ships and Floating Structures</i>	195
8.2	<b>Wave Forces and Moments</b>	199
8.2.1	<i>Sea State Descriptions</i>	200
8.2.2	<i>Wave Spectra</i>	202

8.2.3	<i>Wave Amplitude Response Model</i>	208
8.2.4	<i>Wave Force Response Amplitude Operators</i>	211
8.2.5	<i>Motion Response Amplitude Operators</i>	213
8.2.6	<i>State-Space Models for Wave Responses</i>	214
8.3	Ocean Current Forces and Moments	221
8.3.1	<i>3-D Irrotational Ocean Current Model</i>	224
8.3.2	<i>2-D Irrotational Ocean Current Model</i>	224
<b>II</b>	<b>Motion Control</b>	<b>227</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>229</b>
9.1	Historical Remarks	229
9.1.1	<i>The Gyroscope and its Contributions to Ship Control</i>	230
9.1.2	<i>Autopilots</i>	231
9.1.3	<i>Dynamic Positioning and Position Mooring Systems</i>	231
9.1.4	<i>Waypoint Tracking and Path-Following Control Systems</i>	232
9.2	The Principles of Guidance, Navigation and Control	232
9.3	Setpoint Regulation, Trajectory-Tracking and Path-Following Control	235
9.4	Control of Underactuated and Fully Actuated Craft	235
9.4.1	<i>Configuration Space</i>	236
9.4.2	<i>Workspace and Control Objectives</i>	237
9.4.3	<i>Weathervaning of Underactuated Craft in a Uniform Force Field</i>	238
<b>10</b>	<b>Guidance Systems</b>	<b>241</b>
10.1	Target Tracking	242
10.1.1	<i>Line-of-Sight Guidance</i>	243
10.1.2	<i>Pure Pursuit Guidance</i>	244
10.1.3	<i>Constant Bearing Guidance</i>	244
10.2	Trajectory Tracking	246
10.2.1	<i>Reference Models for Trajectory Generation</i>	248
10.2.2	<i>Trajectory Generation using a Marine Craft Simulator</i>	251
10.2.3	<i>Optimal Trajectory Generation</i>	253
10.3	Path Following for Straight-Line Paths	254
10.3.1	<i>Path Generation based on Waypoints</i>	255
10.3.2	<i>LOS Steering Laws</i>	257
10.4	Path Following for Curved Paths	266
10.4.1	<i>Path Generation using Interpolation Methods</i>	267
10.4.2	<i>Path-Following Kinematic Controller</i>	278
<b>11</b>	<b>Sensor and Navigation Systems</b>	<b>285</b>
11.1	Low-Pass and Notch Filtering	287
11.1.1	<i>Low-Pass Filtering</i>	288
11.1.2	<i>Cascaded Low-Pass and Notch Filtering</i>	290
11.2	Fixed Gain Observer Design	292
11.2.1	<i>Observability</i>	292
11.2.2	<i>Luenberger Observer</i>	293
11.2.3	<i>Case Study: Luenberger Observer for Heading Autopilots using only Compass Measurements</i>	294

11.3	Kalman Filter Design	296
11.3.1	<i>Discrete-Time Kalman Filter</i>	296
11.3.2	<i>Continuous-Time Kalman Filter</i>	297
11.3.3	<i>Extended Kalman Filter</i>	298
11.3.4	<i>Corrector–Predictor Representation for Nonlinear Observers</i>	299
11.3.5	<i>Case Study: Kalman Filter for Heading Autopilots using only Compass Measurements</i>	300
11.3.6	<i>Case Study: Kalman Filter for Dynamic Positioning Systems using GNSS and Compass Measurements</i>	304
11.4	Nonlinear Passive Observer Designs	310
11.4.1	<i>Case Study: Passive Observer for Dynamic Positioning using GNSS and Compass Measurements</i>	311
11.4.2	<i>Case Study: Passive Observer for Heading Autopilots using only Compass Measurements</i>	319
11.4.3	<i>Case Study: Passive Observer for Heading Autopilots using both Compass and Rate Measurements</i>	327
11.5	Integration Filters for IMU and Global Navigation Satellite Systems	328
11.5.1	<i>Integration Filter for Position and Linear Velocity</i>	332
11.5.2	<i>Accelerometer and Compass Aided Attitude Observer</i>	336
11.5.3	<i>Attitude Observer using Gravitational and Magnetic Field Directions</i>	340
<b>12</b>	<b>Motion Control Systems</b>	<b>343</b>
12.1	Open-Loop Stability and Maneuverability	343
12.1.1	<i>Straight-Line, Directional and Positional Motion Stability</i>	344
12.1.2	<i>Maneuverability</i>	353
12.2	PID Control and Acceleration Feedback	365
12.2.1	<i>Linear Mass–Damper–Spring Systems</i>	365
12.2.2	<i>Acceleration Feedback</i>	370
12.2.3	<i>PID Control with Acceleration Feedback</i>	372
12.2.4	<i>MIMO Nonlinear PID Control with Acceleration Feedback</i>	375
12.2.5	<i>Case Study: Heading Autopilot for Ships and Underwater Vehicles</i>	377
12.2.6	<i>Case Study: Heading Autopilot with Acceleration Feedback for Ships and Underwater Vehicles</i>	384
12.2.7	<i>Case Study: Linear Cross-Tracking System for Ships and Underwater Vehicles</i>	385
12.2.8	<i>Case Study: LOS Path-Following Control for Ships and Underwater Vehicles</i>	387
12.2.9	<i>Case Study: Path-Following Control for Ships and Underwater Vehicles using Serret-Frenet Coordinates</i>	389
12.2.10	<i>Case Study: Dynamic Positioning Control System for Ships and Floating Structures</i>	391
12.2.11	<i>Case Study: Position Mooring Control System for Ships and Floating Structures</i>	396
12.3	Control Allocation	398
12.3.1	<i>Actuator Models</i>	398
12.3.2	<i>Unconstrained Control Allocation for Nonrotatable Actuators</i>	404
12.3.3	<i>Constrained Control Allocation for Nonrotatable Actuators</i>	405
12.3.4	<i>Constrained Control Allocation for Azimuth Thrusters</i>	408
12.3.5	<i>Case Study: DP Control Allocation System</i>	411

<b>13 Advanced Motion Control Systems</b>	<b>417</b>
13.1 Linear Quadratic Optimal Control	418
13.1.1 <i>Linear Quadratic Regulator</i>	418
13.1.2 <i>LQR Design for Trajectory Tracking and Integral Action</i>	420
13.1.3 <i>General Solution of the LQ Trajectory-Tracking Problem</i>	421
13.1.4 <i>Case Study: Optimal Heading Autopilot for Ships and Underwater Vehicles</i>	429
13.1.5 <i>Case Study: Optimal Fin and Rudder-Roll Damping Systems for Ships</i>	433
13.1.6 <i>Case Study: Optimal Dynamic Positioning System for Ships and Floating Structures</i>	446
13.2 State Feedback Linearization	451
13.2.1 <i>Decoupling in the BODY Frame (Velocity Control)</i>	451
13.2.2 <i>Decoupling in the NED Frame (Position and Attitude Control)</i>	452
13.2.3 <i>Case Study: Feedback Linearizing Speed Controller for Ships and Underwater Vehicles</i>	454
13.2.4 <i>Case Study: Feedback Linearizing Ship and Underwater Vehicle Autopilot</i>	455
13.2.5 <i>Case Study: MIMO Adaptive Feedback Linearizing Controller for Ships and Underwater Vehicles</i>	455
13.3 Integrator Backstepping	457
13.3.1 <i>A Brief History of Backstepping</i>	458
13.3.2 <i>The Main Idea of Integrator Backstepping</i>	458
13.3.3 <i>Backstepping of SISO Mass–Damper–Spring Systems</i>	465
13.3.4 <i>Integral Action by Constant Parameter Adaptation</i>	469
13.3.5 <i>Integrator Augmentation Technique</i>	472
13.3.6 <i>Case Study: Backstepping of MIMO Mass–Damper–Spring Systems</i>	475
13.3.7 <i>Case Study: MIMO Backstepping for Fully Actuated Ships</i>	480
13.3.8 <i>Case Study: MIMO Backstepping Design with Acceleration Feedback for Fully Actuated Ships</i>	484
13.3.9 <i>Case Study: Nonlinear Separation Principle for PD Controller–Observer Design</i>	487
13.3.10 <i>Case Study: Weather Optimal Position Control for Ships and Floating Structures</i>	491
13.3.11 <i>Case Study: Heading Autopilot for Ships and Underwater Vehicles</i>	509
13.3.12 <i>Case Study: Path-Following Controller for Underactuated Marine Craft</i>	512
13.4 Sliding-Mode Control	519
13.4.1 <i>SISO Sliding-Mode Control</i>	519
13.4.2 <i>Sliding-Mode Control using the Eigenvalue Decomposition</i>	522
13.4.3 <i>Case Study: Heading Autopilot for Ships and Underwater Vehicles</i>	525
13.4.4 <i>Case Study: Pitch and Depth Autopilot for Underwater Vehicles</i>	526

## Appendices

**529**

<b>A Nonlinear Stability Theory</b>	<b>531</b>
A.1 Lyapunov Stability for Autonomous Systems	531
A.1.1 <i>Stability and Convergence</i>	531
A.1.2 <i>Lyapunov's Direct Method</i>	532
A.1.3 <i>Krasovskii–LaSalle's Theorem</i>	533
A.1.4 <i>Global Exponential Stability</i>	534

---

A.2	Lyapunov Stability of Nonautonomous Systems	535
A.2.1	<i>Barbălat's Lemma</i>	535
A.2.2	<i>LaSalle–Yoshizawa's Theorem</i>	536
A.2.3	<i>Matrosov's Theorem</i>	536
A.2.4	<i>UGAS when Backstepping with Integral Action</i>	537
<b>B</b>	<b>Numerical Methods</b>	<b>541</b>
B.1	Discretization of Continuous-Time Systems	541
B.1.1	<i>Linear State-Space Models</i>	541
B.1.2	<i>Nonlinear State-Space Models</i>	543
B.2	Numerical Integration Methods	544
B.2.1	<i>Euler's Method</i>	545
B.2.2	<i>Adams–Bashford's Second-Order Method</i>	546
B.2.3	<i>Runge–Kutta Second-Order Method</i>	547
B.2.4	<i>Runge–Kutta Fourth-Order Method</i>	547
B.3	Numerical Differentiation	547
<b>References</b>		<b>549</b>
<b>Index</b>		<b>567</b>

# About the Author

Professor Thor I. Fossen received an MSc degree in Marine Technology in 1987 from the Norwegian University of Science and Technology (NTNU) and a PhD in Engineering Cybernetics from NTNU in 1991. In the period 1989–1990 he pursued postgraduate studies in aerodynamics and flight control as a Fulbright Scholar at the University of Washington, Seattle. His expertise is in the fields of hydrodynamics, naval architecture, robotics, marine and flight control systems, guidance systems, navigation systems and nonlinear control theory. In 1993 he was appointed as a Professor of Guidance and Control at NTNU. He is one of the founders of the company Marine Cybernetics where he was the Vice President R&D in the period 2002–2007. He is the author of *Guidance and Control of Ocean Vehicles* (John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, 1994) and co-author of *New Directions in Nonlinear Observer Design* (Springer Verlag, 1999) and *Parametric Resonance in Dynamical Systems* (Springer Verlag, 2011). Professor Fossen has been instrumental in the development of several industrial autopilot, path-following and dynamic positioning (DP) systems. He has also experience in nonlinear state estimators for marine craft and automotive systems as well as strapdown GNSS/INS navigation systems. He has been involved in the design of the SeaLaunch trim and heel correction systems. He received the Automatica Prize Paper Award in 2002 for a concept for weather optimal positioning control of marine craft. He is currently head of automatic control at the Centre for Ships and Ocean Structures (CESOS), Norwegian Centre of Excellence, and a Professor of Guidance and Control in the Department of Engineering Cybernetics, NTNU.

# Preface

The main motivation for writing this book was to collect new results on hydrodynamic modeling, guidance, navigation and control of marine craft that have been developed since I published my first book:

Fossen, T. I. (1994). *Guidance and Control of Ocean Vehicles*. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd. Chichester, UK. ISBN 0-471-94113-1.

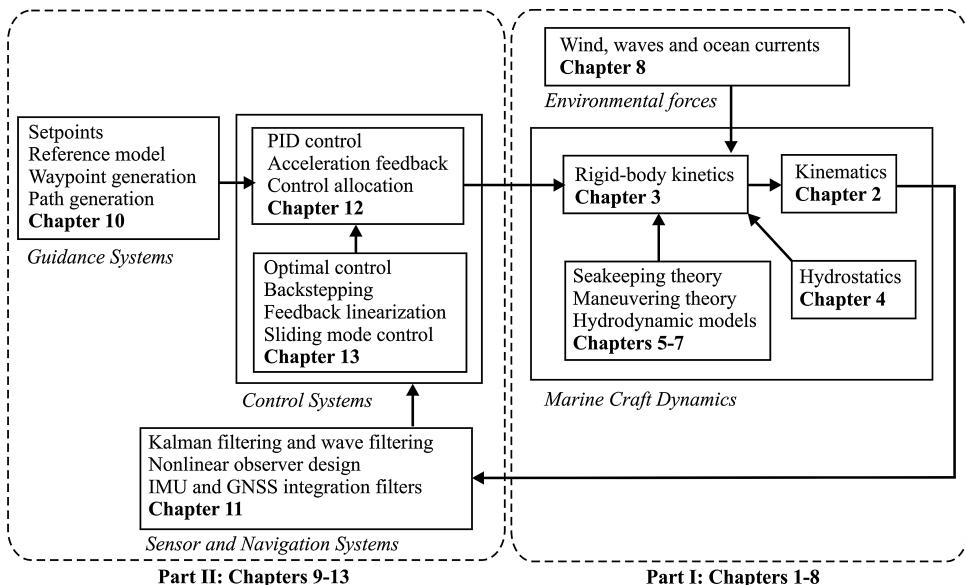
The Wiley book from 1994 was the first attempt to bring hydrodynamic modeling and control system design into a unified notation for modeling, simulation and control. My first book also contains state-of-the-art control design methods for ships and underwater vehicles up to 1994. In the period 1994–2002 a great deal of work was done on nonlinear control of marine craft. This work resulted in many useful results and lecture notes, which have been collected and published in a second book entitled *Marine Control Systems: Guidance, Navigation and Control of Ships and Underwater Vehicles*. The 1st edition was published in 2002 and it was used as the main textbook in my course on Guidance and Control at the Norwegian University of Science and Technology (NTNU). Instead of making a 2nd edition of the book, I decided to write the *Handbook of Marine Craft Hydrodynamics and Motion Control* and merge the most important results from my previous two books with recent results.

Part I of the book covers both maneuvering and seakeeping theory and it is explained in detail how the equations of motion can be derived for both cases using both frequency- and time-domain formulations. This includes transformations from the frequency to the time domain and the explanation of fluid-memory effects. A great effort has been made in the development of kinematic equations for effective representation of the equations of motion in seakeeping, body, inertial and geographical coordinates. This is very confusing in the existing literature on hydrodynamics and the need to explain this properly motivated me to find a unifying notation for marine and mechanical systems. This was done in the period 2002–2010 and it is inspired by the elegant formulation used in robotics where systems are represented in a vectorial notation. The new results on maneuvering and seakeeping are joint work with *Professor Tristan Perez*, University of Newcastle, Australia. The work with Professor Perez has resulted in several joint publications and I am grateful to him for numerous interesting discussions on hydrodynamic modeling and control. He should also be thanked for proofreading parts of the manuscript.

Part II of the book covers guidance systems, navigation systems, state estimators and control of marine craft. This second part of the book focuses on state-of-the-art methods for feedback control such as PID control design for linear and nonlinear systems as well as control allocation methods. A chapter with more advanced topics, such as optimal control theory, backstepping, feedback linearization and sliding-mode control, is included for the advanced reader. Case studies and applications are treated at the end of each chapter. The control systems based on PID and optimal control theory are designed with a complexity similar to those used in many industrial systems. The more advanced methods using nonlinear theory are included so the user can compare linear and nonlinear design techniques before a final implementation is

made. Many references to existing systems are included so control system vendors can easily find articles describing state-of-the art design methods for marine craft.

The arrangement of the subject matter in major parts can be seen from the following diagram:



Most of the results in the book have been developed at the Department of Engineering Cybernetics and the Centre of Ships and Ocean Structures, NTNU, in close cooperation with my former doctoral students, *Ola-Erik Fjellstad, Trygve Lauvdal, Jann Peter Strand, Jan Fredrik Hansen, Bjørnar Vik, Svein P. Berge, Mehrdad P. Fard, Karl-Petter Lindegaard, Ole Morten Aamo, Roger Skjetne, Ivar-André Flakstad Ihle, Andrew Ross, Gullik A. Jensen and Morten Breivik*, in the period 1991–2010. We have been a productive team, and have written hundreds of international publications in this period. Our joint efforts have resulted in several patents and industrial implementations. *Morten Breivik* has contributed with many important results on guidance systems (Chapter 10) and he should also be thanked for proofreading parts of the manuscript. *Bjarne Stenberg* should be thanked for creating the artistic front and back covers of the book and many other graphical illustrations. Finally, *Stewart Clark*, Senior Consultant, NTNU, should be thanked for his assistance with the English language. The book project has been sponsored by The Norwegian Research Council through the Center of Ships and Ocean Structures, Norwegian Center of Excellence at NTNU.

**Thor I. Fossen**  
[www.wiley.com/go/fossen\\_marine](http://www.wiley.com/go/fossen_marine)

# List of Tables

2.1 The notation of SNAME (1950) for marine vessels	16
2.2 WGS-84 parameters	36
7.1 Parameters for a cargo ship and a fully loaded oil tanker	145
7.2 Normalization variables used for the prime and bis systems	149
7.3 6 DOF normalization variables	151
8.1 Air density as a function of temperature	190
8.2 Definition of Beaufort numbers (Price and Bishop, 1974)	190
8.3 Coefficients of lateral and longitudinal resistance, cross-force and rolling moment (Blendermann, 1994)	192
8.4 Wind force parameters in surge, sway and yaw (Isherwood, 1972)	196
8.5 Definition of sea state (SS) codes (Price and Bishop, 1974). Notice that the percentage probability for SS codes 0, 1 and 2 is summarized	200
11.1 Discrete-time Kalman filter	297
11.2 Continuous-time Kalman filter	297
11.3 Discrete-time extended Kalman filter (EKF)	299
11.4 Alternative choices of attitude update laws	339
12.1 Routh array	351
12.2 PID and acceleration feedback pole-placement algorithm	374
12.3 Definition of actuators and control variables	398
13.1 Eigenvalues, damping ratios and frequencies for the RRD control system	439
13.2 Criteria for effectiveness of the crew (Faltinsen, 1990)	443
A.1 Classification of theorems for stability and convergence	532

# Part One

# Marine Craft

# Hydrodynamics

*De Navium Motu Contra Aquas*

*Handbook of Marine Craft Hydrodynamics and Motion Control*, First Edition. Thor I. Fossen.  
© 2011 John Wiley & Sons Ltd. Published 2011 by John Wiley & Sons Ltd. ISBN: 978-1-119-99149-6

# 1

## Introduction

The subject of this book is *motion control and hydrodynamics of marine craft*. The term marine craft includes ships, high-speed craft, semi-submersibles, floating rigs, submarines, remotely operated and autonomous underwater vehicles, torpedoes, and other propelled and powered structures, for instance a floating air field. Offshore operations involve the use of many marine craft, as shown in Figure 1.1. Vehicles that do not travel on land (ocean and flight vehicles) are usually called craft, such as watercraft, sailcraft, aircraft, hovercraft and spacecraft. The term vessel can be defined as follows:

*Vessel*: “hollow structure made to float upon the water for purposes of transportation and navigation; especially, one that is larger than a rowboat.”

The words *vessel*, *ship* and *boat* are often used interchangeably. In *Encyclopedia Britannica*, a ship and a boat are distinguished by their size through the following definition:

*Ship*: “any large floating vessel capable of crossing open waters, as opposed to a boat, which is generally a smaller craft. The term formerly was applied to sailing vessels having three or more masts; in modern times it usually denotes a vessel of more than 500 tons of displacement. Submersible ships are generally called boats regardless of their size.”

Similar definitions are given for submerged vehicles:

*Submarine*: “any naval vessel that is capable of propelling itself beneath the water as well as on the water’s surface. This is a unique capability among warships, and submarines are quite different in design and appearance from surface ships.”

*Underwater Vehicle*: “small vehicle that is capable of propelling itself beneath the water surface as well as on the water’s surface. This includes unmanned underwater vehicles (UUV), remotely operated vehicles (ROV), autonomous underwater vehicles (AUV) and underwater robotic vehicles (URV). Underwater vehicles are used both commercially and by the navy.”

From a hydrodynamic point of view, marine craft can be classified according to their maximum operating speed. For this purpose it is common to use the *Froude number*:

$$Fn := \frac{U}{\sqrt{gL}} \quad (1.1)$$

where  $U$  is the craft speed,  $L$  is the overall submerged length of the craft and  $g$  is the acceleration of gravity. The pressure carrying the craft can be divided into *hydrostatic* and *hydrodynamic* pressure. The corresponding forces are:

- Buoyancy force due to the hydrostatic pressure (proportional to the displacement of the ship).
- Hydrodynamic force due to the hydrodynamic pressure (approximately proportional to the square of the relative speed to the water).

For a marine craft sailing at constant speed  $U$ , the following classifications can be made (Faltinsen, 2005):

**Displacement Vessel ( $Fn < 0.4$ ):** The buoyancy force (restoring terms) dominates relative to the hydrodynamic forces (added mass and damping).

**Semi-displacement Vessel ( $0.4–0.5 < Fn < 1.0–1.2$ ):** The buoyancy force is not dominant at the maximum operating speed for a high-speed submerged hull type of craft.

**Planing Vessel ( $Fn > 1.0–1.2$ ):** The hydrodynamic force mainly carries the weight. There will be strong flow separation and the aerodynamic lift and drag forces start playing a role.

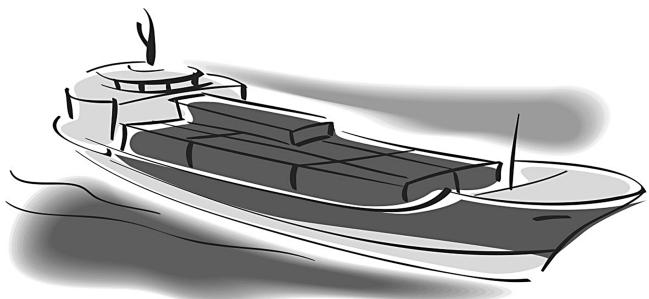
In this book only displacement vessels are covered; see Figure 1.2.

The Froude number has influence on the hydrodynamic analysis. For displacement vessels, the waves radiated by different parts of the hull do not influence other parts of the hull. For semi-displacement vessels, waves generated at the bow influence the hydrodynamic pressure along the hull towards the stern. These characteristics give rise to different modeling hypotheses, which lead to different hydrodynamic theories.

For displacement ships it is widely accepted to use two- and three-dimensional potential theory programs to compute the potential coefficients and wave loads; see Section 5.1. For semi-displacement



**Figure 1.1** Marine craft in operation. Illustration Bjarne Stenberg/Department of Marine Technology, NTNU.

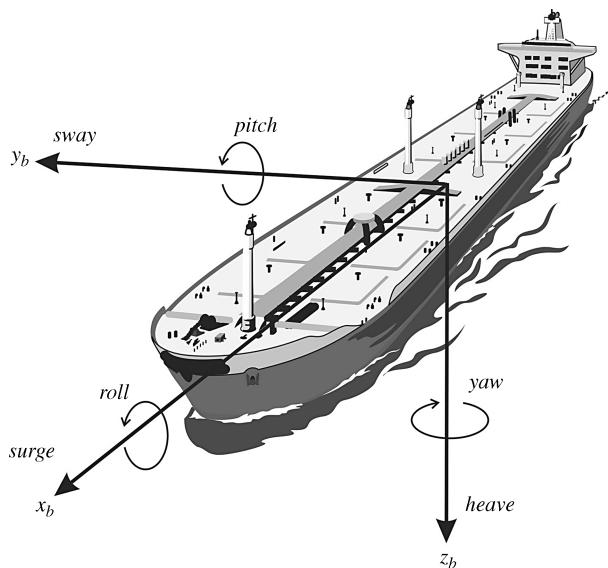


**Figure 1.2** Displacement vessel.

vessels and planing vessels it is important to include the lift and drag forces in the computations (Faltinsen, 2005).

### Degrees of Freedom and Motion of a Marine Craft

In maneuvering, a marine craft experiences motion in 6 degrees of freedom (DOFs); see Section 9.4. The DOFs are the set of independent displacements and rotations that specify completely the displaced position and orientation of the craft. The motion in the horizontal plane is referred to as *surge* (longitudinal motion, usually superimposed on the steady propulsive motion) and *sway* (sideways motion). *Yaw* (rotation about the vertical axis) describes the heading of the craft. The remaining three DOFs are *roll* (rotation about the longitudinal axis), *pitch* (rotation about the transverse axis) and *heave* (vertical motion); see Figure 1.3.



**Figure 1.3** Motion in 6 degrees of freedom (DOF).

Roll motion is probably the most influential DOF with regards to human performance, since it produces the highest accelerations and, hence, is the principal villain in seasickness. Similarly, pitching and heaving feel uncomfortable to people. When designing ship autopilots, yaw is the primary mode for feedback control. Stationkeeping of a marine craft implies stabilization of the surge, sway and yaw motions.

When designing feedback control systems for marine craft, reduced-order models are often used since most craft do not have actuation in all DOF. This is usually done by decoupling the motions of the craft according to:

**1 DOF** models can be used to design forward speed controllers (*surge*), heading autopilots (*yaw*) and roll damping systems (*roll*).

**3 DOF** models are usually:

- Horizontal plane models (*surge*, *sway* and *yaw*) for ships, semi-submersibles and underwater vehicles that are used in dynamic positioning systems, trajectory-tracking control systems and path-following systems. For slender bodies such as submarines, it is also common to assume that the motions can be decoupled into *longitudinal* and *lateral* motions.
- Longitudinal models (*surge*, *heave* and *pitch*) for forward speed, diving and pitch control.
- Lateral models (*sway*, *roll* and *yaw*) for turning and heading control.

**4 DOF** models (*surge*, *sway*, *roll* and *yaw*) are usually formed by adding the roll equation to the 3 DOF horizontal plane model. These models are used in maneuvering situations where it is important to include the rolling motion, usually in order to reduce roll by active control of fins, rudders or stabilizing liquid tanks.

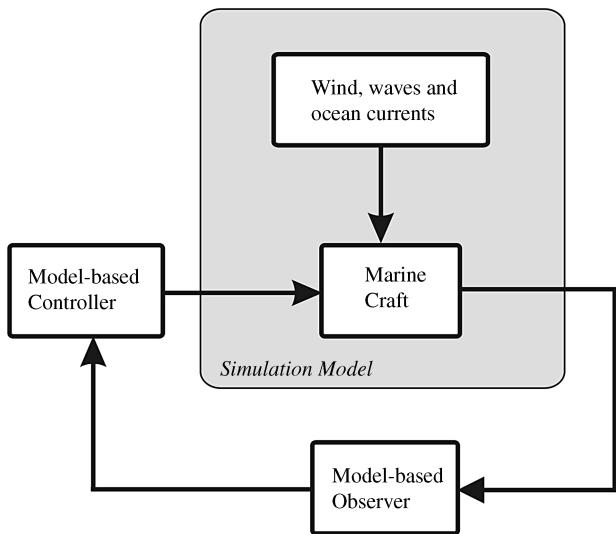
**6 DOF** models (*surge*, *sway*, *heave*, *roll*, *pitch* and *yaw*) are fully coupled equations of motion used for simulation and prediction of coupled vehicle motions. These models can also be used in advanced control systems for underwater vehicles that are actuated in all DOF.

## 1.1 Classification of Models

The models in this book can be used for prediction, real-time simulation and controller-observer design. The complexity and number of differential equations needed for the various purposes will vary. Consequently, one can distinguish between three types of models (see Figure 1.4):

**Simulation Model:** This model is the most accurate description of a system, for instance a 6 DOF *high-fidelity model* for simulation of coupled motions in the time domain. It includes the marine craft dynamics, propulsion system, measurement system and the environmental forces due to wind, waves and ocean currents. It also includes other features not used for control and observer design that have a direct impact on model accuracy. The simulation model should be able to reconstruct the time responses of the real system and it should also be possible to trigger failure modes to simulate events such as accidents and erroneous signals. Simulation models where the fluid-memory effects are included due to frequency-dependent added mass and potential damping typically consist of 50–200 ordinary differential equations (ODEs) while a maneuvering model can be represented in 6 DOF with 12 ODEs for generalized position and velocity. In addition, some states are needed to describe the environmental forces and actuators, but still the number of states will be less than 50 for a marine craft.

**Control Design Model:** The controller model is a reduced-order or simplified version of the simulation model that is used to design the *motion control system*. In its simplest form, this model is used to compute a set of constant gains for a proportional, integral, derivative (PID) controller. More



**Figure 1.4** Models used in guidance, navigation and control.

sophisticated control systems use a dynamic model to generate feedforward and feedback signals. This is referred to as *model-based control*. The number of ODEs used in conventional model-based ship control systems is usually less than 20. A PID controller typically requires two states: one for the integrator and one for the low-pass filter used to limit noise amplification. Consequently, setpoint regulation in 6 DOF can be implemented by using 12 ODEs. However, trajectory-tracking controllers require additional states for feedforward as well as filtering so higher-order control laws are not uncommon.

**Observer Design Model:** The observer model will in general be different from the model used in the controller since the purpose is to capture the additional dynamics associated with the sensors and navigation systems as well as disturbances. It is a simplified version of the simulation model where attention is given to accurate modeling of measurement noise, failure situations including dead-reckoning capabilities, filtering and motion prediction. For marine craft, the *model-based observer* often includes a disturbance model where the goal is to estimate wave, wind and ocean current forces by treating these as colored noise. For marine craft the number of ODEs in the state estimator will typically be 20 for a dynamic positioning (DP) system while a basic heading autopilot is implemented with less than five states.

## 1.2 The Classical Models in Naval Architecture

The motions of a marine craft exposed to wind, waves and ocean currents takes place in 6 DOF. The equations of motion can be derived using the Newton–Euler or Lagrange equations. The equations of motion are used to simulate ships, high-speed craft, underwater vehicles and floating structures operating under or on the water surface, as shown in Figure 1.5. In Section 3.3 it is shown that a rigid body with



**Figure 1.5** Ship and semi-submersibles operating offshore. Illustration Bjarne Stenberg/MARINTEK.

constant mass  $m$  and center of gravity  $(x_g, y_g, z_g)$  relative to a fixed point on the hull can be described by the following coupled differential equations:

$$\begin{aligned}
 m [\dot{u} - vr + wq - x_g(q^2 + r^2) + y_g(pq - \dot{r}) + z_g(pr + \dot{q})] &= X \\
 m [\dot{v} - wp + ur - y_g(r^2 + p^2) + z_g(qr - \dot{p}) + x_g(qp + \dot{r})] &= Y \\
 m [\dot{w} - uq + vp - z_g(p^2 + q^2) + x_g(rp - \dot{q}) + y_g(rq + \dot{p})] &= Z \\
 I_x \dot{p} + (I_z - I_y)qr - (\dot{r} + pq)I_{xz} + (r^2 - q^2)I_{yz} + (pr - \dot{q})I_{xy} \\
 + m [y_g(\dot{w} - uq + vp) - z_g(\dot{v} - wp + ur)] &= K \\
 I_y \dot{q} + (I_x - I_z)rp - (\dot{p} + qr)I_{xy} + (p^2 - r^2)I_{zx} + (qp - \dot{r})I_{yz} \\
 + m [z_g(\dot{u} - vr + wq) - x_g(\dot{w} - uq + vp)] &= M \\
 I_z \dot{r} + (I_y - I_x)pq - (\dot{q} + rp)I_{yz} + (q^2 - p^2)I_{xy} + (rq - \dot{p})I_{zx} \\
 + m [x_g(\dot{v} - wp + ur) - y_g(\dot{u} - vr + wq)] &= N
 \end{aligned} \tag{1.2}$$

where  $X, Y, Z, K, M$  and  $N$  denote the external forces and moments. This model is the basis for time-domain simulation of marine craft. The external forces and moments acting on a marine craft are usually modeled by using:

**Maneuvering Theory:** The study of a ship moving at constant positive speed  $U$  in calm water within the framework of maneuvering theory is based on the assumption that the maneuvering (hydrodynamic) coefficients are *frequency independent* (no wave excitation). The maneuvering model will in its simplest representation be linear while nonlinear representations can be derived using methods such as cross-flow drag, quadratic damping or Taylor-series expansions; see Chapter 6.

**Seakeeping Theory:** The motions of ships at zero or constant speed in waves can be analyzed using seakeeping theory where the hydrodynamic coefficients and wave forces are computed as a function of the wave excitation frequency using the hull geometry and mass distribution. The seakeeping models

are usually derived within a linear framework (Chapter 5) while the extension to nonlinear theory is an important field of research.

For underwater vehicles operating below the wave-affected zone, the wave excitation frequency will not affect the hydrodynamic mass and damping coefficients. Consequently, it is common to model underwater vehicles with constant hydrodynamic coefficients similar to a maneuvering ship.

### 1.2.1 Maneuvering Theory

Maneuvering theory assumes that the ship is moving in restricted calm water, that is in sheltered waters or in a harbor. Hence, the maneuvering model is derived for a ship moving at positive speed  $U$  under a zero-frequency wave excitation assumption such that added mass and damping can be represented by using hydrodynamic derivatives (constant parameters). The zero-frequency assumption is only valid for *surge*, *sway* and *yaw* since the natural periods of a PD-controlled ship will be in the range of 100–150 s. For 150 s the natural frequency is close to zero, that is

$$\omega_n = \frac{2\pi}{T} \approx 0.04 \text{ rad/s} \quad (1.3)$$

This clearly gives support for the zero-frequency assumption. The natural frequencies in *heave*, *roll* and *pitch* are much higher so it is recommended to use the zero-frequency potential coefficients in these modes. For instance, a ship with a roll period of 10 s will have a natural frequency of 0.628 rad/s which clearly violates the zero-frequency assumption. This means that hydrodynamic added mass and potential damping should be evaluated at a frequency of 0.628 rad/s in roll if a pure rolling motion is considered. As a consequence of this, it is common to formulate the ship maneuvering model (1.2) as a coupled *surge–sway–yaw* model and thus neglect heave, roll and pitch motions:

$$\begin{aligned} m [\dot{u} - vr - x_g r^2 - y_g \dot{r}] &= X \\ m [\dot{v} + ur - y_g r^2 + x_g \dot{r}] &= Y \\ I_z \ddot{r} + m [x_g(v + ur) - y_g(\dot{u} - vr)] &= N \end{aligned} \quad (1.4)$$

The rigid-body kinetics (1.4) can be expressed in vectorial form according to (Fossen, 1994)

$$\boldsymbol{M}_{RB}\dot{\boldsymbol{v}} + \boldsymbol{C}_{RB}(\boldsymbol{v})\boldsymbol{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} \quad (1.5)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} = \underbrace{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{hyd} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{hs}}_{\text{hydrodynamic and hydrostatic forces}} + \underbrace{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave}}_{\text{environmental forces}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{control} \quad (1.6)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{M}_{RB}$  is the rigid-body inertia matrix,  $\boldsymbol{C}_{RB}(\boldsymbol{v})$  is a matrix of rigid-body Coriolis and centripetal forces and  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB}$  is a vector of generalized forces.

The generalized velocity is

$$\boldsymbol{v} = [u, v, w, p, q, r]^\top \quad (1.7)$$

where the first three components ( $u, v, w$ ) are the linear velocities in surge, sway and heave and ( $p, q, r$ ) are the angular velocities in roll, pitch and yaw. The generalized force acting on the craft is

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_i = [X_i, Y_i, Z_i, K_i, M_i, N_i]^\top, \quad i \in \{\text{hyd, hs, wind, wave, control}\} \quad (1.8)$$

where the subscripts stand for:

- Hydrodynamic added mass, potential damping due to wave radiation and viscous damping
- Hydrostatic forces (spring stiffness)
- Wind forces
- Wave forces (first and second order)
- Control and propulsion forces

This model is motivated by Newton's second law:  $F = ma$ , where  $F$  represents force,  $m$  is the mass and  $a$  is the acceleration. The Coriolis and centripetal term is due to the rotation of the body-fixed reference frame with respect to the inertial reference frame. The model (1.5) is used in most textbooks on hydrodynamics and the generalized hydrodynamic force  $\tau_{hyd}$  can be represented by linear or nonlinear theory:

**Linearized Models:** In the linear 6 DOF case there will be a total of 36 mass and 36 damping elements proportional to velocity and acceleration. In addition to this, there will be restoring forces, propulsion forces and environmental forces. If the generalized hydrodynamic force  $\tau_{hyd}$  is written in component form using the SNAME (1950) notation, the linear added mass and damping forces become:

$$X_1 = X_u u + X_v v + X_w w + X_p p + X_q q + X_r r \quad (1.9)$$

$$+ X_{\dot{u}} \dot{u} + X_{\dot{v}} \dot{v} + X_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + X_{\dot{p}} \dot{p} + X_{\dot{q}} \dot{q} + X_{\dot{r}} \dot{r}$$

⋮

$$N_1 = N_u u + N_v v + N_w w + N_p p + N_q q + N_r r \quad (1.10)$$

$$+ N_{\dot{u}} \dot{u} + N_{\dot{v}} \dot{v} + N_{\dot{w}} \dot{w} + N_{\dot{p}} \dot{p} + N_{\dot{q}} \dot{q} + N_{\dot{r}} \dot{r}$$

where  $X_u, X_v, \dots, N_r$  are the linear damping coefficients and  $X_{\dot{u}}, X_{\dot{v}}, \dots, N_{\dot{r}}$  represent hydrodynamic added mass.

**Nonlinear Models:** Application of nonlinear theory implies that many elements must be included in addition to the 36 linear elements. This is usually done by one of the following methods:

1. **Truncated Taylor-series expansions** using *odd terms* (first and third order) which are fitted to experimental data, for instance (Abkowitz, 1964):

$$X_1 = X_{\dot{u}} \dot{u} + X_u u + X_{uuu} u^3 + X_{\dot{v}} \dot{v} + X_v v + X_{vvv} v^3 + \dots \quad (1.11)$$

⋮

$$N_1 = N_{\dot{u}} \dot{u} + N_u u + N_{uuu} u^3 + N_{\dot{v}} \dot{v} + N_v v + N_{vvv} v^3 + \dots \quad (1.12)$$

In this approach added mass is assumed to be linear and damping is modeled by a third order odd function. Alternatively, *second-order modulus terms* can be used (Fedyayevsky and Sobolev, 1963), for instance:

$$X_1 = X_{\dot{u}} \dot{u} + X_u u + X_{|u|u}|u|u + X_{\dot{v}} \dot{v} + X_v v + X_{|v|v}|v|v + \dots \quad (1.13)$$

⋮

$$N_1 = N_{\dot{u}} \dot{u} + N_u u + N_{|u|u}|u|u + N_{\dot{v}} \dot{v} + N_v v + N_{|v|v}|v|v + \dots \quad (1.14)$$

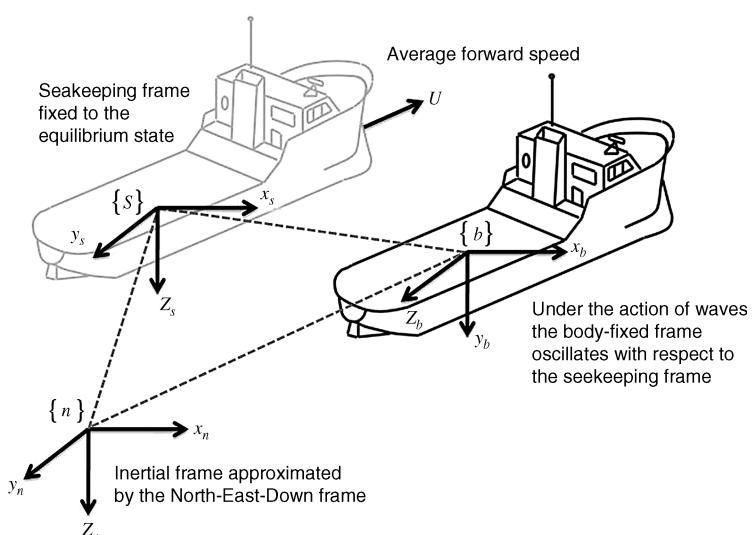
This is motivated by the square law damping terms in fluid dynamics and aerodynamics. When applying Taylor-series expansions in model-based control design, the system (1.5) becomes relatively complicated due to the large number of hydrodynamic coefficients on the right-hand side needed to represent the hydrodynamic forces. This approach is quite common when deriving maneuvering models and many of the coefficients are difficult to determine with sufficient accuracy since the model can be overparametrized. Taylor-series expansions are frequently used in commercial planar motion mechanism (PMM) tests where the purpose is to derive the maneuvering coefficients experimentally.

2. **First principles** where hydrodynamic effects such as lift and drag are modeled using well established models. This results in physically sound Lagrangian models that preserve energy properties. Models based on first principles usually require a much smaller number of parameters than models based on third order Taylor-series expansions.

### 1.2.2 Seakeeping Theory

As explained above, maneuvering refers to the study of ship motion in the absence of wave excitation (calm water). Seakeeping, on the other hand, is the study of motion when there is wave excitation and the craft keeps its heading  $\psi$  and its speed  $U$  constant (which includes the case of zero speed). This introduces a dissipative force (Cummins, 1962) known as *fluid-memory effects*. Although both areas are concerned with the same issues, study of motion, stability and control, the separation allows different assumptions to be made that simplify the study in each case. Seakeeping analysis is used in capability analysis and operability calculations to obtain operability diagrams according to the adopted criteria.

The seakeeping theory is formulated using seakeeping axes  $\{s\}$  where the state vector  $\xi = [\xi_1, \xi_2, \xi_3, \xi_4, \xi_5, \xi_6]^\top$  represents perturbations with respect to a fixed equilibrium state; see Figure 1.6. These perturbations can be related to motions in the body frame  $\{b\}$  and North-East-Down



**Figure 1.6** Coordinate systems used in seakeeping analysis.

frame  $\{n\}$  by using kinematic transformations; see Section 5.2. The governing model is formulated in the time domain using the *Cummins equation* in the following form (see Section 5.4):

$$[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\infty)]\ddot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} + \mathbf{B}_{total}(\infty)\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} + \int_0^t \mathbf{K}(t-\tau)\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}(\tau)d\tau + \mathbf{C}\boldsymbol{\xi} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave} + \delta\boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (1.15)$$

where  $\delta\boldsymbol{\tau}$  is the perturbed control input due to propulsion and control surfaces,  $\mathbf{A}(\infty)$  is the infinite-frequency added mass matrix,  $\mathbf{B}_{total}(\infty) = \mathbf{B}(\infty) + \mathbf{B}_V(\infty)$  is the infinite-frequency damping matrix containing potential and viscous damping terms,  $\mathbf{C}$  is the spring stiffness matrix and  $\mathbf{K}(t)$  is a time-varying matrix of *retardation functions* given by

$$\mathbf{K}(t) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\infty [\mathbf{B}_{total}(\omega) - \mathbf{B}_{total}(\infty)] \cos(\omega t) d\omega \quad (1.16)$$

The frequency-domain representation of (1.15) is (Newman, 1977; Faltinsen, 1990)

$$(-\omega^2[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\omega)] - j\omega\mathbf{B}_{total}(\omega) + \mathbf{C})\boldsymbol{\xi}(j\omega) = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind}(j\omega) + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave}(j\omega) + \delta\boldsymbol{\tau}(j\omega) \quad (1.17)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\xi}(j\omega)$  is a complex vector with components:

$$\xi_i(t) = \bar{\xi}_i \cos(\omega t + \epsilon_i) \Rightarrow \xi_i(j\omega) = \bar{\xi}_i \exp(j\epsilon_i) \quad (1.18)$$

Similarly, the external signals  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind}(j\omega)$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave}(j\omega)$  and  $\delta\boldsymbol{\tau}(j\omega)$  are complex vectors.

Naval architects often write the seakeeping model as a *pseudo-differential equation*:

$$[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\omega)]\ddot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} + \mathbf{B}_{total}(\omega)\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} + \mathbf{C}\boldsymbol{\xi} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave} + \delta\boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (1.19)$$

mixing time and frequency. Unfortunately this is deeply rooted in the literature of hydrodynamics even though it is not correct to mix time and frequency in one single equation. Consequently, it is recommended to use the time- and frequency-domain representations (1.15) and (1.17). Computer simulations are done under the assumptions of linear theory and harmonic motions such that the resulting response is linear in the time domain. This approach dates back to Cummins (1962) and the necessary derivations are described in Chapter 5.

### 1.2.3 Unified Theory

A unified theory for maneuvering and seakeeping is useful since it allows for time-domain simulation of a marine craft in a seaway. This is usually done by using the seakeeping representation (1.19) as described in Chapter 5. The next step is to assume linear superposition such that wave-induced forces can be added for different speeds  $U$  and sea states. A similar assumption is used to add nonlinear damping and restoring forces so that the resulting model is a unified nonlinear model combining the most important terms from both maneuvering and seakeeping. Care must be taken with respect to “double counting.” This refers to the problem that hydrodynamic effects can be modeled twice when merging the results from two theories.

## 1.3 Fossen’s Robot-Like Vectorial Model for Marine Craft

In order to exploit the physical properties of the maneuvering and seakeeping models, the equations of motion are represented in a vectorial setting which dates back to Fossen (1991). The vectorial model is expressed in  $\{b\}$  and  $\{n\}$  so appropriate kinematic transformations between the reference frames  $\{b\}$ ,  $\{n\}$  and  $\{s\}$  must be derived. This is done in Chapters 2 and 5. The vectorial model is well suited for computer implementation and control systems design.

## Component Form

The classical model (1.2) is often combined with expressions such as (1.9)–(1.10) or (1.11)–(1.14) to describe the hydrodynamic forces. This often results in complicated models with hundreds of elements. In most textbooks the resulting equations of motion are on component form. The following introduces a compact notation using matrices and vectors that will simplify the representation of the equations of motion considerably.

## Vectorial Representation

In order to exploit the physical properties of the models, the equations of motion are represented in a vectorial setting. It is often beneficial to exploit physical system properties to reduce the number of coefficients needed for control. This is the main motivation for developing a vectorial representation of the equations of motion. In Fossen (1991) the robot model (Craig, 1989; Sciavicco and Siciliano, 1996)

$$\mathbf{M}(\mathbf{q})\ddot{\mathbf{q}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{q}, \dot{\mathbf{q}})\mathbf{q} = \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (1.20)$$

was used as motivation to derive a compact marine craft model in 6 DOFs using a vectorial setting. In the robot model  $\mathbf{q}$  is a vector of joint angles,  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  is the torque, while  $\mathbf{M}$  and  $\mathbf{C}$  denote the system inertia and Coriolis matrices, respectively. It is found that similar quantities can be identified for marine craft and aircraft. In Fossen (1991) a complete 6 DOF vectorial setting for marine craft was derived based on these ideas. These results were further refined by Sagatun and Fossen (1991), Fossen (1994) and Fossen and Fjellstad (1995). The 6 DOF models considered in this book use the following representation:

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_0 = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (1.21)$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\eta} = [x, y, z, \phi, \theta, \psi]^T \quad (1.22)$$

$$\mathbf{v} = [u, v, w, p, q, r]^T \quad (1.23)$$

are vectors of velocities and position/Euler angles, respectively. In fact  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  are generalized velocities and positions used to describe motions in 6 DOF. Similarly,  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  is a vector of forces and moments or the generalized forces in 6 DOF. The model matrices  $\mathbf{M}$ ,  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})$  and  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})$  denote inertia, Coriolis and damping, respectively, while  $\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  is a vector of generalized gravitational and buoyancy forces. Static restoring forces and moments due to ballast systems and water tanks are collected in the term  $\mathbf{g}_0$ .

## Component Form versus Vectorial Representation

When designing control systems, there are clear advantages using the vectorial model (1.21) instead of (1.5)–(1.6) and the component forms of the Taylor-series expansions (1.11)–(1.14). The main reasons are that system properties such as symmetry, skew-symmetry and positiveness of matrices can be incorporated into the stability analysis. In addition, these properties are related to passivity of the hydrodynamic and rigid-body models (Berge and Fossen, 2000). The system properties represent physical properties of the system, which should be exploited when designing controllers and observers for marine craft. As a consequence, Equation (1.21) is chosen as the foundation for this textbook and the previous book *Guidance and Control of Ocean Vehicles* (Fossen, 1994). Equation (1.21) has also been adopted by the international community as a “standard model” for marine control systems design (controller and observer

design models) while the “classical model” (1.5)–(1.6) is mostly used in hydrodynamic modeling where isolated effects often are studied in more detail.

It should be noted that the classical model with hydrodynamic forces in component form and the vectorial model (1.21) are equivalent. Therefore it is possible to combine the best of both approaches, that is hydrodynamic component-based modeling and control design models based on vectors and matrices. However, it is much easier to construct multiple input multiple output (MIMO) controllers and observers when using the vectorial representation, since the model properties and model reduction follow from the basic matrix properties. This also applies to system analysis since there are many tools for MIMO systems. Finally, it should be pointed out that the vectorial models are beneficial from a computational point of view and in order to perform algebraic manipulations. Readability is also significantly improved thanks to the compact notation.

# 2

## Kinematics

The study of *dynamics* can be divided into two parts: *kinematics*, which treats only geometrical aspects of motion, and *kinetics*, which is the analysis of the forces causing the motion. In this chapter kinematics with application to local and terrestrial navigation is discussed. Kinetics is dealt with in Chapters 3–8.

The interested reader is advised to consult Britting (1971), Maybeck (1979), Savage (1990), Forssell (1991), Lin (1992), Hofmann-Wellenhof *et al.* (1994), Parkinson and Spilker (1995), Titterton and Weston (1997), and Farrell and Barth (1998) for a discussion of navigation kinematics and kinematics in general. The development of the kinematic equations of motion are also found in Kane *et al.* (1983) and Hughes (1986). Both of these references use spacecraft systems for illustration. An alternative derivation of the Euler angle representation in the context of ship steering is given by Abkowitz (1964). A more recent discussion of quaternions is found in Chou (1992). An analogy to robot manipulators is given by Craig (1989) or Sciavicco and Siciliano (1996), while a more detailed discussion of kinematics is found in Goldstein (1980) and Egeland and Gravdahl (2002).

### 6 DOF Marine Craft Equations of Motion

The overall goal of Chapters 2–8 is to show that the marine craft equations of motion can be written in a *vectorial setting* according to Fossen (1991):

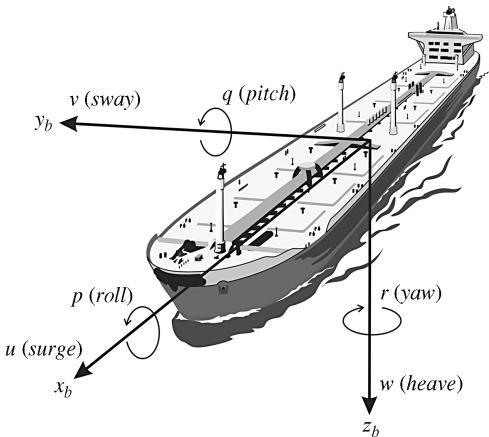
$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{J}_{\Theta}(\boldsymbol{\eta})\boldsymbol{v} \quad (2.1)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\boldsymbol{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\boldsymbol{v})\boldsymbol{v} + \mathbf{D}(\boldsymbol{v})\boldsymbol{v} + \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_0 = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (2.2)$$

where the different matrices and vectors and their properties will be defined in the forthcoming sections. This model representation is used as a foundation for model-based control design and stability analysis in Part II.

### Motion Variables

For marine craft moving in six *degrees of freedom* (DOFs), six independent coordinates are necessary to determine the position and orientation. The first three coordinates, and their time derivatives, correspond to the position and translational motion along the *x*, *y* and *z* axes, while the last three coordinates and their



**Figure 2.1** The 6 DOF velocities  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $w$ ,  $p$ ,  $q$  and  $r$  in the body-fixed reference frame  $\{b\} = (x_b, y_b, z_b)$ .

time derivatives are used to describe orientation and rotational motion. For marine craft, the six different motion components are conveniently defined as *surge*, *sway*, *heave*, *roll*, *pitch* and *yaw* (see Figure 2.1 and Table 2.1).

## 2.1 Reference Frames

When analyzing the motion of marine craft in 6 DOF, it is convenient to define two Earth-centered coordinate frames as indicated in Figure 2.2. In addition several geographic reference frames are needed.

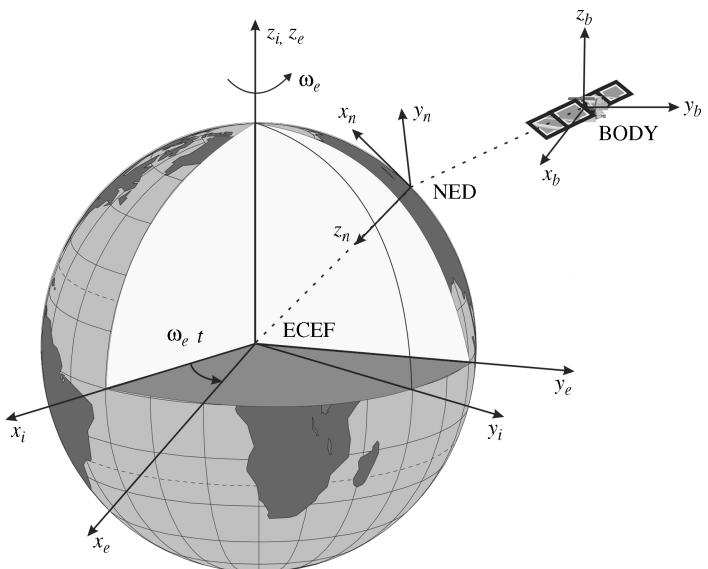
### Earth-Centered Reference Frames

**ECI:** The Earth-centered inertial (ECI) frame  $\{i\} = (x_i, y_i, z_i)$  is an inertial frame for terrestrial navigation, that is a nonaccelerating reference frame in which Newton's laws of motion apply. This includes inertial navigation systems. The origin of  $\{i\}$  is located at the center  $o_i$  of the Earth with axes as shown in Figure 2.2.

**ECEF:** The Earth-centered Earth-fixed (ECEF) reference frame  $\{e\} = (x_e, y_e, z_e)$  has its origin  $o_e$  fixed to the center of the Earth but the axes rotate relative to the inertial frame ECI, which is fixed in space. The angular rate of rotation is  $\omega_e = 7.2921 \times 10^{-5}$  rad/s. For marine craft moving at relatively low speed, the Earth rotation can be neglected and hence  $\{e\}$  can be considered to be inertial. Drifting ships, however, should not neglect the Earth rotation. The coordinate system  $\{e\}$  is usually used for global

**Table 2.1** The notation of SNAME (1950) for marine vessels

DOF		Forces and moments	Linear and angular velocities	Positions and Euler angles
1	motions in the $x$ direction (surge)	$X$	$u$	$x$
2	motions in the $y$ direction (sway)	$Y$	$v$	$y$
3	motions in the $z$ direction (heave)	$Z$	$w$	$z$
4	rotation about the $x$ axis (roll, heel)	$K$	$p$	$\phi$
5	rotation about the $y$ axis (pitch, trim)	$M$	$q$	$\theta$
6	rotation about the $z$ axis (yaw)	$N$	$r$	$\psi$



**Figure 2.2** The Earth-centered Earth-fixed (ECEF) frame  $x_e y_e z_e$  is rotating with angular rate  $\omega_e$  with respect to an Earth-centered inertial (ECI) frame  $x_i y_i z_i$  fixed in space.

guidance, navigation and control, for instance to describe the motion and location of ships in transit between different continents.

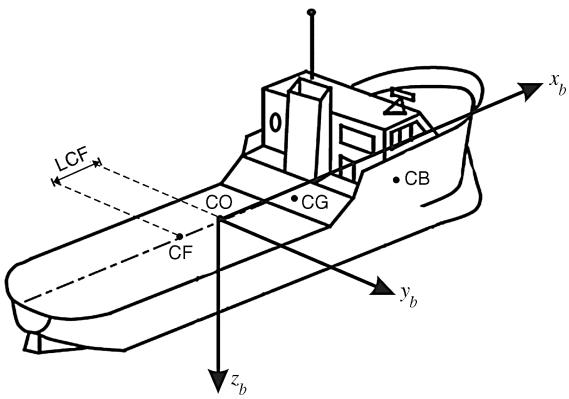
### Geographic Reference Frames

**NED:** The *North-East-Down* (NED) coordinate system  $\{n\} = (x_n, y_n, z_n)$  with origin  $o_n$  is defined relative to the Earth's reference ellipsoid (World Geodetic System, 1984). This is the coordinate system we refer to in our everyday life. It is usually defined as the tangent plane on the surface of the Earth moving with the craft, but with axes pointing in different directions than the body-fixed axes of the craft. For this system the  $x$  axis points towards true *North*, the  $y$  axis points towards *East* while the  $z$  axis points *downwards* normal to the Earth's surface. The location of  $\{n\}$  relative to  $\{e\}$  is determined by using two angles  $\lambda$  and  $\mu$  denoting the *longitude* and *latitude*, respectively.

For marine craft operating in a local area, approximately constant longitude and latitude, an Earth-fixed tangent plane on the surface is used for navigation. This is usually referred to as flat Earth navigation and it will for simplicity be denoted by  $\{n\}$ . For flat Earth navigation one can assume that  $\{n\}$  is inertial such that Newton's laws still apply.

**BODY:** The body-fixed reference frame  $\{b\} = (x_b, y_b, z_b)$  with origin  $o_b$  is a moving coordinate frame that is fixed to the craft. The position and orientation of the craft are described relative to the inertial reference frame (approximated by  $\{e\}$  or  $\{n\}$  for marine craft) while the linear and angular velocities of the craft should be expressed in the body-fixed coordinate system. The origin  $o_b$  is usually chosen to coincide with a point midships in the water line. This point will be referred to as *CO* (see Figure 2.3). For marine craft, the body axes  $x_b$ ,  $y_b$  and  $z_b$  are chosen to coincide with the *principal axes of inertia*, and they are usually defined as (see Figure 2.3):

- $x_b$  - longitudinal axis (directed from aft to fore)
- $y_b$  - transversal axis (directed to starboard)
- $z_b$  - normal axis (directed from top to bottom)



**Figure 2.3** Body-fixed reference points.

In addition to the body-fixed coordinate system  $\{b\}$ , it is convenient to define other body-fixed coordinate systems when performing hydrodynamic computations. This includes a system using *flow axes* (see Section 2.4) and the *seakeeping reference frame*  $\{s\}$  (see Section 5.2).

### Body-Fixed Reference Points

The following reference points are defined with respect to CO:

**CG** - center of gravity

**CB** - center of buoyancy

**CF** - center of flotation (located a distance LCF from CO in the  $x$ -direction)

The center of flotation is the centroid of the water plane area  $A_{wp}$  in calm water. The craft will roll and pitch about this point. Consequently, this point can be used to compute the pitch and roll periods. The eigenvalues of the 6 DOF linear equations of motion are independent of the reference point but the decoupled equations will produce incorrect results if they are formulated in a point different from CF (see Section 4.3).

### 6 DOF Vectorial Notation

We will use the notation  $\vec{u}$  to refer to a *coordinate free vector*, that is a *directed line segment*. When a vector is described relative to a coordinate system  $\{n\}$ , the following notation will be used:

$$\vec{u} = u_1^n \vec{n}_1 + u_2^n \vec{n}_2 + u_3^n \vec{n}_3 \quad (2.3)$$

where  $\vec{n}_i$  ( $i = 1, 2, 3$ ) are the unit vectors that define  $\{n\}$ ,  $u_i^n$  are the measures of  $\vec{u}$  along  $\vec{n}_i$  and  $u_i^n \vec{n}_i$  are the components of  $\vec{u}$  in  $\{n\}$ . We will also use the *coordinate form*  $\mathbf{u}^n$  of  $\vec{u}$  in  $\{n\}$  which is represented by a *column vector* in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ :

$$\mathbf{u}^n = [u_1^n, u_2^n, u_3^n]^\top \quad (2.4)$$

For marine craft the following notation will be adopted for vectors in the coordinate systems  $\{b\}$ ,  $\{e\}$  and  $\{n\}$ :

$v_{b/n}^e$  = linear velocity of the point  $o_b$  with respect to  $\{n\}$  expressed in  $\{e\}$

$\omega_{n/e}^b$  = angular velocity of  $\{n\}$  with respect to  $\{e\}$  expressed in  $\{b\}$

$f_b^n$  = force with line of action through the point  $o_b$  expressed in  $\{n\}$

$m_b^n$  = moment about the point  $o_b$  expressed in  $\{n\}$

$\Theta_{nb}$  = Euler angles between  $\{n\}$  and  $\{b\}$

The different quantities in Table 2.1, as defined by SNAME (1950), can now be conveniently expressed in a vectorial setting according to:

ECEF position	$p_{b/e}^e = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^3$	Longitude and latitude	$\Theta_{en} = \begin{bmatrix} l \\ \mu \end{bmatrix} \in \mathcal{S}^2$
NED position	$p_{b/n}^n = \begin{bmatrix} N \\ E \\ D \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^3$	Attitude (Euler angles)	$\Theta_{nb} = \begin{bmatrix} \phi \\ \theta \\ \psi \end{bmatrix} \in \mathcal{S}^3$
Body-fixed linear velocity	$v_{b/n}^b = \begin{bmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^3$	Body-fixed angular velocity	$\omega_{b/n}^b = \begin{bmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^3$
Body-fixed force	$f_b^b = \begin{bmatrix} X \\ Y \\ Z \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^3$	Body-fixed moment	$m_b^b = \begin{bmatrix} K \\ M \\ N \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^3$

where  $\mathbb{R}^3$  is the *Euclidean space* of dimension three and  $\mathcal{S}^2$  denotes a *torus* of dimension two (shape of a donut), implying that there are two angles defined on the interval  $[0, 2\pi]$ . In the three-dimensional (3-D) case the set  $\mathcal{S}^3$  is a sphere. Hence, the general motion of a marine craft in 6 DOF with  $o_b$  as coordinate origin is described by the following vectors:

$$\eta = \begin{bmatrix} p_{b/n}^n \text{ (or } p_{b/e}^e) \\ \Theta_{nb} \end{bmatrix}, \quad v = \begin{bmatrix} v_{b/n}^b \\ \omega_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix}, \quad \tau = \begin{bmatrix} f_b^b \\ m_b^b \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.5)$$

where  $\eta \in \mathbb{R}^3 \times \mathcal{S}^3$  denotes the position and orientation vector where the position vector  $p_{b/n}^n \in \mathbb{R}^3$  is the distance from NED to BODY expressed in NED coordinates,  $\Theta_{nb} \in \mathcal{S}^3$  is a vector of Euler angles,  $v \in \mathbb{R}^6$  denotes the linear and angular velocity vectors that are decomposed in the body-fixed reference frame and  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}^6$  is used to describe the forces and moments acting on the craft in the body-fixed frame.

In many applications, such as flat Earth navigation, the position vector  $p_{b/n}^n \in \mathbb{R}^3$  from NED to BODY is expressed in NED coordinates. For global navigation it is convenient to express the position of the BODY origin  $o_b$  with respect to ECEF, that is  $p_{b/e}^e \in \mathbb{R}^3$ . The orientation of the marine craft with respect to NED will be represented by means of the Euler angles  $\Theta_{nb}$  or the quaternions  $q \in \mathbb{R}^4$ . In the next sections, the kinematic equations relating the BODY, NED and ECEF reference frames will be presented.

## 2.2 Transformations between BODY and NED

The rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}$  between two frames  $a$  and  $b$  is denoted as  $\mathbf{R}_b^a$ , and it is an element in  $SO(3)$ , that is the *special orthogonal group of order 3*:

$$SO(3) = \left\{ \mathbf{R} | \mathbf{R} \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}, \quad \mathbf{R} \text{ is orthogonal and } \det \mathbf{R} = 1 \right\} \quad (2.6)$$

The group  $SO(3)$  is a subset of all *orthogonal matrices of order 3*, that is  $SO(3) \subset O(3)$  where  $O(3)$  is defined as

$$O(3) := \left\{ \mathbf{R} | \mathbf{R} \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}, \quad \mathbf{R}\mathbf{R}^\top = \mathbf{R}^\top\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{I} \right\} \quad (2.7)$$

Rotation matrices are useful when deriving the kinematic equations of motion for a marine craft. As a consequence of (2.6) and (2.7), the following properties can be stated:

**Property 2.1 (Rotation Matrix)**

A rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R} \in SO(3)$  satisfies

$$\mathbf{R}\mathbf{R}^\top = \mathbf{R}^\top\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{I}, \quad \det \mathbf{R} = 1$$

which implies that  $\mathbf{R}$  is orthogonal. Consequently, the inverse rotation matrix is given by  $\mathbf{R}^{-1} = \mathbf{R}^\top$ .

In this book, the following notation is adopted when transforming a vector from one coordinate frame to another:

$$\overset{\curvearrowleft}{v^{\text{to}}} = \underset{\curvearrowleft}{R_{\text{from}}^{\text{to}}} \overset{\curvearrowright}{v^{\text{from}}} \quad (2.8)$$

Here  $v^{\text{from}} \in \mathbb{R}^3$  denotes a velocity vector that can be transformed to a new reference frame by applying the rotation matrix  $R_{\text{from}}^{\text{to}}$ . The result is the vector  $v^{\text{to}} \in \mathbb{R}^3$ .

A frequently used rotation matrix in guidance, navigation and control is the rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_b^n$  between  $\{n\}$  and  $\{b\}$ . When deriving the expression for  $\mathbf{R}_b^n$  we will make use of the following matrix properties:

**Definition 2.1 (Skew-Symmetry of a Matrix)**

A matrix  $\mathbf{S} \in SS(n)$ , that is the set of skew-symmetric matrices of order  $n$ , is said to be skew-symmetrical if

$$\mathbf{S} = -\mathbf{S}^\top$$

This implies that the off-diagonal elements of  $\mathbf{S}$  satisfy  $s_{ij} = -s_{ji}$  for  $i \neq j$  while the diagonal elements are zero.

**Definition 2.2 (Cross-Product Operator)**

The vector cross-product  $\times$  is defined by

$$\lambda \times \mathbf{a} := \mathbf{S}(\lambda)\mathbf{a} \quad (2.9)$$

where  $\mathbf{S} \in SS(3)$  is defined as

$$\mathbf{S}(\lambda) = -\mathbf{S}^\top(\lambda) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -\lambda_3 & \lambda_2 \\ \lambda_3 & 0 & -\lambda_1 \\ -\lambda_2 & \lambda_1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \lambda = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 \\ \lambda_2 \\ \lambda_3 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.10)$$

**Matlab**

The cross-product operator is included in the MSS toolbox as `Smtx.m`. Hence, the cross-product  $\mathbf{b} = S(\lambda)\mathbf{a}$  can be computed as

```
S = Smtx(lambda)
b = S*a
```

**Definition 2.3 (Simple Rotation)**

The motion of a rigid body or reference frame  $\mathcal{B}$  relative to a rigid body or reference frame  $\mathcal{A}$  is called a simple rotation of  $\mathcal{B}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  if there exists a line  $L$ , called an axis of rotation, whose orientation relative to both  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{B}$  remains unaltered throughout the motion.

Based on this definition, Euler stated the following theorem for rotation of two rigid bodies or reference frames (Euler, 1776).

**Theorem 2.1 (Euler's Theorem on Rotation)**

Every change in the relative orientation of two rigid bodies or reference frames  $\{\mathcal{A}\}$  and  $\{\mathcal{B}\}$  can be produced by means of a simple rotation of  $\{\mathcal{B}\}$  in  $\{\mathcal{A}\}$ .

Let  $\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b$  be a vector fixed in BODY and  $\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^n$  be a vector fixed in NED. Hence, the vector  $\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^n$  can be expressed in terms of the vector  $\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b$ , the unit vector  $\boldsymbol{\lambda} = [\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3]^\top$ ,  $\|\boldsymbol{\lambda}\| = 1$ , parallel to the axis of rotation and  $\beta$  the angle NED is rotated. This rotation is described by (see Hughes, 1986, Kane et al., 1983)

$$\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^n = \mathbf{R}_b^n \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b, \quad \mathbf{R}_b^n := \mathbf{R}_{\lambda, \beta} \quad (2.11)$$

Here,  $\mathbf{R}_{\lambda, \beta}$  is the rotation matrix corresponding to a rotation  $\beta$  about the  $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$  axis:

$$\mathbf{R}_{\lambda, \beta} = \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} + \sin(\beta) \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\lambda}) + [1 - \cos(\beta)] \mathbf{S}^2(\boldsymbol{\lambda}) \quad (2.12)$$

where  $\mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3}$  is the identity matrix and  $\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\lambda})$  is the skew-symmetric matrix according to Definition 2.2. Consequently,  $\mathbf{S}^2(\boldsymbol{\lambda}) = \boldsymbol{\lambda} \boldsymbol{\lambda}^\top - \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3}$  since  $\boldsymbol{\lambda}$  is a unit vector.

Expanding (2.12) yields the following expressions for the matrix elements:

$$\begin{aligned} R_{11} &= [1 - \cos(\beta)] \lambda_1^2 + \cos(\beta) \\ R_{22} &= [1 - \cos(\beta)] \lambda_2^2 + \cos(\beta) \\ R_{33} &= [1 - \cos(\beta)] \lambda_3^2 + \cos(\beta) \\ R_{12} &= [1 - \cos(\beta)] \lambda_1 \lambda_2 - \lambda_3 \sin(\beta) \\ R_{21} &= [1 - \cos(\beta)] \lambda_2 \lambda_1 + \lambda_3 \sin(\beta) \\ R_{23} &= [1 - \cos(\beta)] \lambda_2 \lambda_3 - \lambda_1 \sin(\beta) \\ R_{32} &= [1 - \cos(\beta)] \lambda_3 \lambda_2 + \lambda_1 \sin(\beta) \\ R_{31} &= [1 - \cos(\beta)] \lambda_3 \lambda_1 - \lambda_2 \sin(\beta) \\ R_{13} &= [1 - \cos(\beta)] \lambda_1 \lambda_3 + \lambda_2 \sin(\beta) \end{aligned} \quad (2.13)$$

### 2.2.1 Euler Angle Transformation

The Euler angles, roll ( $\phi$ ), pitch ( $\theta$ ) and yaw ( $\psi$ ), can now be used to decompose the body-fixed velocity vector  $\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b$  in the NED reference frame. Let  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb}) : \mathcal{S}^3 \rightarrow SO(3)$  denote the Euler angle rotation matrix with argument  $\Theta_{nb} = [\phi, \theta, \psi]^\top$ . Hence,

$$\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^n = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b \quad (2.14)$$

#### Principal Rotations

The principal rotation matrices (one axis rotations) can be obtained by setting  $\lambda = [1, 0, 0]^\top$ ,  $\lambda = [0, 1, 0]^\top$  and  $\lambda = [0, 0, 1]^\top$  corresponding to the  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  axes, and  $\beta = \phi$ ,  $\beta = \theta$  and  $\beta = \psi$ , respectively, in the formula for  $\mathbf{R}_{\lambda, \beta}$  given by (2.12). This yields

$$\mathbf{R}_{x,\phi} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & c\phi & -s\phi \\ 0 & s\phi & c\phi \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{R}_{y,\theta} = \begin{bmatrix} c\theta & 0 & s\theta \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -s\theta & 0 & c\theta \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{R}_{z,\psi} = \begin{bmatrix} c\psi & -s\psi & 0 \\ s\psi & c\psi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.15)$$

where  $s \cdot = \sin(\cdot)$  and  $c \cdot = \cos(\cdot)$ .

#### Linear Velocity Transformation

It is customary to describe  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})$  by three *principal* rotations about the  $z$ ,  $y$  and  $x$  axes ( $zyx$  convention). Note that the order in which these rotations is carried out is not arbitrary. In guidance, navigation and control applications it is common to use the  $zyx$  convention from  $\{n\}$  to  $\{b\}$  specified in terms of the Euler angles  $\phi$ ,  $\theta$  and  $\psi$  for the rotations. This matrix is denoted  $\mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta_{nb}) = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})^\top$ . The matrix transpose implies that the same result is obtained by transforming a vector from  $\{b\}$  to  $\{n\}$ , that is by reversing the order of the transformation. This rotation sequence is mathematically equivalent to

$$\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb}) := \mathbf{R}_{z,\psi} \mathbf{R}_{y,\theta} \mathbf{R}_{x,\phi} \quad (2.16)$$

and the inverse transformation is then written ( $zyx$  convention)

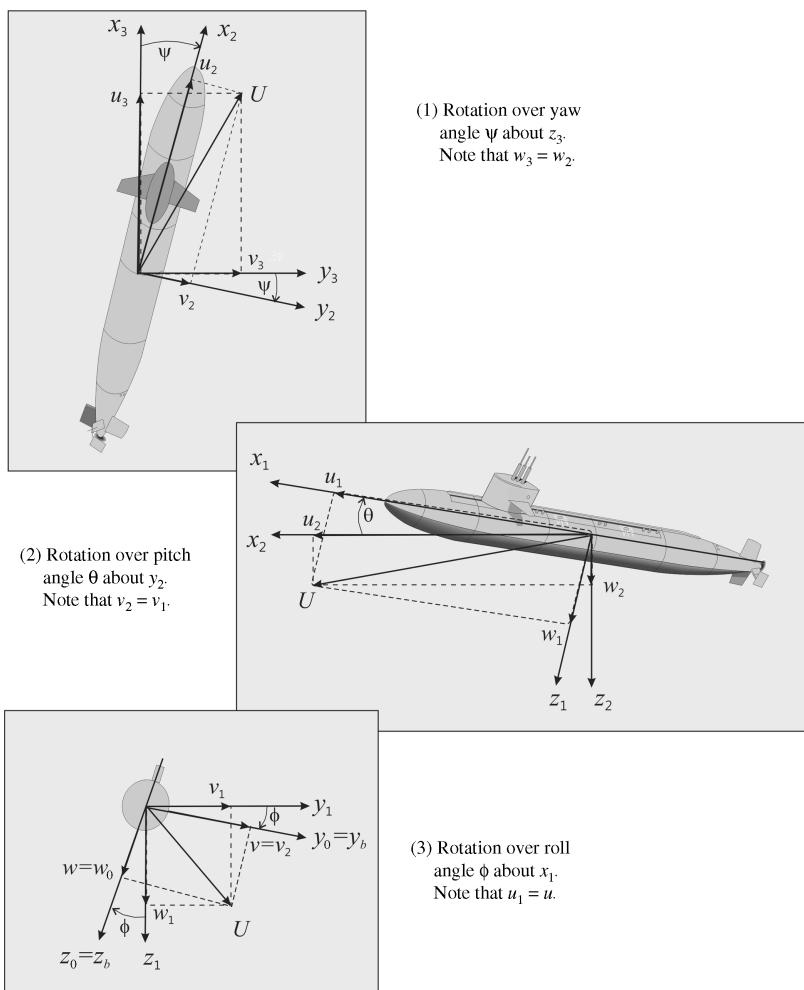
$$\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})^{-1} = \mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta_{nb}) = \mathbf{R}_{x,\phi}^\top \mathbf{R}_{y,\theta}^\top \mathbf{R}_{z,\psi}^\top \quad (2.17)$$

where we have used the result of Property 2.1. This can also be seen by studying Figure 2.4.

Let  $x_3y_3z_3$  be the coordinate system obtained by translating the NED coordinate system  $x_ny_nz_n$  parallel to itself until its origin coincides with the origin of the body-fixed coordinate system. The coordinate system  $x_3y_3z_3$  is rotated a *yaw* angle  $\psi$  about the  $z_3$  axis. This yields the coordinate system  $x_2y_2z_2$ . The coordinate system  $x_2y_2z_2$  is rotated a *pitch* angle  $\theta$  about the  $y_2$  axis. This yields the coordinate system  $x_1y_1z_1$ . Finally, the coordinate system  $x_1y_1z_1$  is rotated a *roll* angle  $\phi$  about the  $x_1$  axis. This yields the body-fixed coordinate system  $x_b y_b z_b$ .

Expanding (2.16) yields

$$\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb}) = \begin{bmatrix} c\psi c\theta & -s\psi c\phi + c\psi s\theta s\phi & s\psi s\phi + c\psi c\phi s\theta \\ s\psi c\theta & c\psi c\phi + s\phi s\theta s\psi & -c\psi s\phi + s\theta s\psi c\phi \\ -s\theta & c\theta s\phi & c\theta c\phi \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.18)$$



**Figure 2.4** Euler angle rotation sequence (zyx convention). The submarine is rotated from  $\{n\}$  to  $\{b\}$  by using three principal rotations.

### Matlab

The rotation matrix  $R_b^n(\Theta_{nb})$  is implemented in the MSS toolbox as

```
R = Rzyx(phi, theta, psi)
```

For small angles  $\delta\phi$ ,  $\delta\theta$  and  $\delta\psi$  the expression (2.18) simplifies to

$$R_b^n(\delta\Theta_{nb}) \approx I_{3 \times 3} + S(\delta\Theta_{nb}) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\delta\psi & \delta\theta \\ \delta\psi & 1 & -\delta\phi \\ -\delta\theta & \delta\phi & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.19)$$

which is quite useful when applying linear theory.

The body-fixed velocity vector  $\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b$  can be expressed in  $\{n\}$  as

$$\dot{\mathbf{p}}_{b/n}^n = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b \quad (2.20)$$

where  $\dot{\mathbf{p}}_{b/n}^n$  is the NED velocity vector. Expanding (2.20) yields

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{N} &= u \cos(\psi) \cos(\theta) + v [\cos(\psi) \sin(\theta) \sin(\phi) - \sin(\psi) \cos(\phi)] \\ &\quad + w [\sin(\psi) \sin(\phi) + \cos(\psi) \cos(\phi) \sin(\theta)] \end{aligned} \quad (2.21)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{E} &= u \sin(\psi) \cos(\theta) + v [\cos(\psi) \cos(\phi) + \sin(\phi) \sin(\theta) \sin(\psi)] \\ &\quad + w [\sin(\theta) \sin(\psi) \cos(\phi) - \cos(\psi) \sin(\phi)] \end{aligned} \quad (2.22)$$

$$\dot{D} = -u \sin(\theta) + v \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) + w \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \quad (2.23)$$

The inverse velocity transformation is obtained by Definition 2.1 as

$$\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})^{-1} \dot{\mathbf{p}}_{b/n}^n = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})^\top \dot{\mathbf{p}}_{b/n}^n \quad (2.24)$$

### Example 2.1 (Numerical Computation of Position Trajectory)

The flight path or position trajectory  $\mathbf{p}_{b/n}^n$  of the craft relative to the NED coordinate system is found by numerical integration of (2.20), for instance by using Euler integration:

$$\mathbf{p}_{b/n}^n(k+1) = \mathbf{p}_{b/n}^n(k) + h \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb}(k)) \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b(k) \quad (2.25)$$

where  $h > 0$  is the sampling time and  $k$  is the sample index.

### Angular Velocity Transformation

The body-fixed angular velocity vector  $\omega_{b/n}^b = [p, q, r]^\top$  and the Euler rate vector  $\dot{\Theta}_{nb} = [\dot{\phi}, \dot{\theta}, \dot{\psi}]^\top$  are related through a transformation matrix  $\mathbf{T}_\Theta(\Theta_{nb})$  according to

$$\dot{\Theta}_{nb} = \mathbf{T}_\Theta(\Theta_{nb}) \omega_{b/n}^b \quad (2.26)$$

It should be noted that the angular body velocity vector  $\omega_{b/n}^b = [p, q, r]^\top$  cannot be integrated directly to obtain actual angular coordinates. This is due to the fact that  $\int_0^t \omega_{b/n}^b(\tau) d\tau$  does not have any immediate physical interpretation; however, the vector  $\Theta_{nb} = [\phi, \theta, \psi]^\top$  does represent proper generalized coordinates. The transformation matrix  $\mathbf{T}_\Theta(\Theta_{nb})$  can be derived in several ways, for instance:

$$\omega_{b/n}^b = \begin{bmatrix} \dot{\phi} \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \mathbf{R}_{x,\phi}^\top \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \dot{\theta} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \mathbf{R}_{x,\phi}^\top \mathbf{R}_{y,\theta}^\top \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \dot{\psi} \end{bmatrix} := \mathbf{T}_\Theta^{-1}(\Theta_{nb}) \dot{\Theta}_{nb} \quad (2.27)$$

This relationship is verified by inspection of Figure 2.4. Expanding (2.27) yields

$$\mathbf{T}_\Theta^{-1}(\Theta_{nb}) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -s\theta \\ 0 & c\phi & c\theta s\phi \\ 0 & -s\phi & c\theta c\phi \end{bmatrix} \implies \mathbf{T}_\Theta(\Theta_{nb}) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & s\phi t\theta & c\phi t\theta \\ 0 & c\phi & -s\phi \\ 0 & s\phi/c\theta & c\phi/c\theta \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.28)$$

where  $s \cdot = \sin(\cdot)$ ,  $c \cdot = \cos(\cdot)$  and  $t \cdot = \tan(\cdot)$ . Expanding (2.26) yields the Euler angle attitude equations in component form:

$$\dot{\phi} = p + q \sin(\phi) \tan(\theta) + r \cos(\phi) \tan(\theta) \quad (2.29)$$

$$\dot{\theta} = q \cos(\phi) - r \sin(\phi) \quad (2.30)$$

$$\dot{\psi} = q \frac{\sin(\phi)}{\cos(\theta)} + r \frac{\cos(\phi)}{\cos(\theta)}, \quad \theta \neq \pm 90^\circ \quad (2.31)$$

Notice that  $\mathbf{T}_\Theta(\Theta_{nb})$  is undefined for a pitch angle of  $\theta = \pm 90^\circ$  and that  $\mathbf{T}_\Theta(\Theta_{nb})$  does not satisfy Property 2.1. Consequently,  $\mathbf{T}_\Theta^{-1}(\Theta_{nb}) \neq \mathbf{T}_\Theta^\top(\Theta_{nb})$ . For surface vessels this is not a problem whereas both underwater vehicles and aircraft may operate close to this singularity. In this case, the kinematic equations can be described by two Euler angle representations with different singularities and the singular point can be avoided by switching between them. Another possibility is to use a quaternion representation; see Section 2.2.2.

For small angles  $\delta\phi$ ,  $\delta\theta$  and  $\delta\psi$  the transformation matrix  $\mathbf{T}_\Theta(\Theta_{nb})$  simplifies to

$$\mathbf{T}_\Theta(\delta\Theta_{nb}) \approx \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \delta\theta \\ 0 & 1 & -\delta\phi \\ 0 & \delta\phi & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.32)$$

The differential equation for the rotation matrix is given by Theorem 2.2.

### **Theorem 2.2 (Rotation Matrix Differential Equation)**

*The differential equation for the rotation matrix between the BODY and NED reference frames is*

$$\dot{\mathbf{R}}_b^n = \mathbf{R}_b^n \mathbf{S}(\omega_{b/n}^b) \quad (2.33)$$

where

$$\mathbf{S}(\omega_{b/n}^b) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -r & q \\ r & 0 & -p \\ -q & p & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.34)$$

*This can be written in component form as nine differential equations:*

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{R}_{11} & \dot{R}_{12} & \dot{R}_{13} \\ \dot{R}_{21} & \dot{R}_{22} & \dot{R}_{23} \\ \dot{R}_{31} & \dot{R}_{23} & \dot{R}_{33} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} R_{12}r - R_{13}q & -R_{11}r + R_{13}p & R_{11}q - R_{12}p \\ R_{22}r - R_{23}q & -R_{21}r + R_{23}p & R_{21}q - R_{22}p \\ R_{23}r - R_{33}q & -R_{31}r + R_{33}p & R_{31}q - R_{23}p \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.35)$$

**Proof.** For a small time increment  $\Delta t$  the rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_b^n$  satisfies

$$\mathbf{R}_b^n(t + \Delta t) \approx \mathbf{R}_b^n(t) \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Delta t) \quad (2.36)$$

since  $\sin(\Delta t) \approx \Delta t$  and  $\cos(\Delta t) \approx 1$ . Assume that after time  $t + \Delta t$  there has been an infinitesimal increment  $\Delta\beta$  in the rotation angle. From (2.12) we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Delta t) &= \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} + \sin(\Delta\beta) \mathbf{S}(\lambda) + [1 - \cos(\Delta\beta)] \mathbf{S}^2(\lambda) \\ &\approx \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} + \Delta\beta \mathbf{S}(\lambda) \end{aligned} \quad (2.37)$$

From (2.36), it follows that

$$\mathbf{R}_b^n(t + \Delta t) = \mathbf{R}_b^n(t) [\mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} + \Delta\beta \mathbf{S}(\lambda)] \quad (2.38)$$

Defining the vector  $\Delta\boldsymbol{\beta}^b := \Delta\beta\lambda$ , the time derivative of  $\mathbf{R}_b^n$  is found as

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{R}}_b^n(t) &= \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\mathbf{R}_b^n(t + \Delta t) - \mathbf{R}_b^n(t)}{\Delta t} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\mathbf{R}_b^n(t) \Delta\beta \mathbf{S}(\lambda)}{\Delta t} \\ &= \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\mathbf{R}_b^n(t) \mathbf{S}(\Delta\boldsymbol{\beta}^b)}{\Delta t} \\ &= \mathbf{R}_b^n(t) \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b) \end{aligned} \quad (2.39)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} (\Delta\boldsymbol{\beta}^b / \Delta t)$ .

## 6 DOF Kinematic Equations

Summarizing the results from this section, the 6 DOF kinematic equations can be expressed in vector form as

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} &= \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \mathbf{v} \\ \Leftrightarrow \\ \begin{bmatrix} \dot{\mathbf{p}}_{b/n}^n \\ \dot{\boldsymbol{\Theta}}_{nb} \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{R}_b^n(\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{nb}) & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{T}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{nb}) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b \\ \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (2.40)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\eta} \in \mathbb{R}^3 \times \mathcal{S}^3$  and  $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^6$ .

### Matlab

The transformation matrix  $\mathbf{J}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  and its diagonal elements  $\mathbf{J}_{11}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{nb})$  and  $\mathbf{J}_{22}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \mathbf{T}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{nb})$  can be computed by using the MSS toolbox command:

```
[J,J11,J22] = eulerang(phi,theta,psi)
```

The differential equations are then found by

$$\begin{aligned} p\_dot &= J1*v \\ theta\_dot &= J2*w_nb \end{aligned}$$

Alternatively, (2.40) can be written in component form as

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{N} &= u \cos(\psi) \cos(\theta) + v[\cos(\psi) \sin(\theta) \sin(\phi) - \sin(\psi) \cos(\phi)] \\ &\quad + w[\sin(\psi) \sin(\phi) + \cos(\psi) \cos(\phi) \sin(\theta)] \end{aligned} \quad (2.41)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{E} &= u \sin(\psi) \cos(\theta) + v[\cos(\psi) \cos(\phi) + \sin(\phi) \sin(\theta) \sin(\psi)] \\ &\quad + w[\sin(\theta) \sin(\psi) \cos(\phi) - \cos(\psi) \sin(\phi)] \end{aligned} \quad (2.42)$$

$$\dot{D} = -u \sin(\theta) + v \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) + w \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \quad (2.43)$$

$$\dot{\phi} = p + q \sin(\phi) \tan(\theta) + r \cos(\phi) \tan(\theta) \quad (2.44)$$

$$\dot{\theta} = q \cos(\phi) - r \sin(\phi) \quad (2.45)$$

$$\dot{\psi} = q \frac{\sin(\phi)}{\cos(\theta)} + r \frac{\cos(\phi)}{\cos(\theta)}, \quad \theta \neq \pm 90^\circ \quad (2.46)$$

### 3 DOF Model for Surface Vessels

A frequently used simplification of (2.40) is the 3 DOF (surge, sway and yaw) representation for marine craft. This is based on the assumption that  $\phi$  and  $\theta$  are small, which is a good approximation for most conventional ships, underwater vehicles and rigs. Hence,  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb}) = \mathbf{R}_{z,\psi} \mathbf{R}_{y,\theta} \mathbf{R}_{x,\phi} \approx \mathbf{R}_{z,\psi}$  and  $\mathbf{T}_\Theta(\Theta_{nb}) \approx \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3}$ . Neglecting the elements corresponding to heave, roll and pitch finally yields:

$$\dot{\eta} = \mathbf{R}(\psi)\mathbf{v} \quad (2.47)$$

where  $\mathbf{R}(\psi) := \mathbf{R}_{z,\psi}$  with  $\mathbf{v} = [u, v, r]^\top$  and  $\eta = [N, E, \psi]^\top$ .

#### 2.2.2 Unit Quaternions

An alternative to the Euler angle representation is a four-parameter method based on *unit quaternions* or *Euler parameters*. The main motivation for using four parameters is to avoid the representation singularity of the Euler angles.

A quaternion  $\mathbf{q}$  is defined as a complex number (Chou, 1992) with one real part  $\eta$  and three imaginary parts given by the vector

$$\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} = [\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3]^\top \quad (2.48)$$

A unit quaternion satisfies  $\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q} = 1$ . The set  $Q$  of unit quaternions is therefore defined as

$$Q := \{\mathbf{q} | \mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q} = 1, \mathbf{q} = [\eta, \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}^\top]^\top, \quad \boldsymbol{\varepsilon} \in \mathbb{R}^3 \text{ and } \eta \in \mathbb{R}\} \quad (2.49)$$

The motion of the body-fixed reference frame relative to the inertial frame will now be expressed in terms of unit quaternions.

## Unit Quaternions

From (2.12) it is seen that

$$\mathbf{R}_{\beta,\lambda} = \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} + \sin(\beta)\mathbf{S}(\lambda) + [1 - \cos(\beta)]\mathbf{S}^2(\lambda) \quad (2.50)$$

The real and imaginary parts of the unit quaternions are defined as (Chou, 1992)

$$\eta := \cos\left(\frac{\beta}{2}\right) \quad (2.51)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} = [\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3]^\top := \lambda \sin\left(\frac{\beta}{2}\right) \quad (2.52)$$

where  $\lambda = [\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3]^\top$  is a unit vector satisfying

$$\lambda = \pm \frac{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}}{\sqrt{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}^\top \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}}} \quad \text{if } \sqrt{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}^\top \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} \neq 0 \quad (2.53)$$

Consequently, the unit quaternions can be expressed in the form

$$\mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} \eta \\ \varepsilon_1 \\ \varepsilon_2 \\ \varepsilon_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\left(\frac{\beta}{2}\right) \\ \lambda \sin\left(\frac{\beta}{2}\right) \end{bmatrix} \in Q, \quad 0 \leq \beta \leq 2\pi \quad (2.54)$$

This parametrization implies that the unit quaternions satisfy the constraint  $\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q} = 1$ , that is

$$\eta^2 + \varepsilon_1^2 + \varepsilon_2^2 + \varepsilon_3^2 = 1 \quad (2.55)$$

From (2.50) with (2.51) and (2.52), the following coordinate transformation matrix for the unit quaternions is obtained:

$$\mathbf{R}_b^n(\mathbf{q}) := \mathbf{R}_{\eta,\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} = \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} + 2\eta\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}) + 2\mathbf{S}^2(\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}) \quad (2.56)$$

## Linear Velocity Transformation

The transformation relating the linear velocity vector in an inertial reference frame to a velocity in the body-fixed reference frame can now be expressed as

$$\dot{\mathbf{p}}_{b/n}^n = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\mathbf{q})\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b \quad (2.57)$$

where

$$\mathbf{R}_b^n(\mathbf{q}) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 - 2(\varepsilon_2^2 + \varepsilon_3^2) & 2(\varepsilon_1\varepsilon_2 - \varepsilon_3\eta) & 2(\varepsilon_1\varepsilon_3 + \varepsilon_2\eta) \\ 2(\varepsilon_1\varepsilon_2 + \varepsilon_3\eta) & 1 - 2(\varepsilon_1^2 + \varepsilon_3^2) & 2(\varepsilon_2\varepsilon_3 - \varepsilon_1\eta) \\ 2(\varepsilon_1\varepsilon_3 - \varepsilon_2\eta) & 2(\varepsilon_2\varepsilon_3 + \varepsilon_1\eta) & 1 - 2(\varepsilon_1^2 + \varepsilon_2^2) \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.58)$$

Expanding (2.57) yields

$$N = u(1 - 2\varepsilon_2^2 - 2\varepsilon_3^2) + v(\varepsilon_1\varepsilon_2 - \varepsilon_3\eta) + w(\varepsilon_1\varepsilon_3 + \varepsilon_2\eta) \quad (2.59)$$

$$\dot{E} = 2u(\varepsilon_1\varepsilon_2 + \varepsilon_3\eta) + v(1 - 2\varepsilon_1^2 - 2\varepsilon_3^2) + w(\varepsilon_2\varepsilon_3 - \varepsilon_1\eta) \quad (2.60)$$

$$\dot{D} = 2u(\varepsilon_1\varepsilon_3 - \varepsilon_2\eta) + v(\varepsilon_2\varepsilon_3 + \varepsilon_1\eta) + w(1 - 2\varepsilon_1^2 - 2\varepsilon_2^2) \quad (2.61)$$

As for the Euler angle representation, Property 2.1 implies that the inverse transformation matrix satisfies  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\mathbf{q})^{-1} = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\mathbf{q})^\top$ .

### Matlab

The quaternion rotation matrix is easily computed by using the MSS toolbox commands

```
q = [eta, eps1, eps2, eps3]
R = Rquat(q)
```

Notice that  $\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q} = 1$  must be true for `Rquat.m` to return a solution. One way to ensure this is to use the transformation

```
q = euler2q(phi, theta, psi)
```

transforming the three Euler angles  $\phi$ ,  $\theta$  and  $\psi$  to the unit quaternion vector  $\mathbf{q}$ ; see Section 2.2.3 for details.

### Angular Velocity Transformation

The angular velocity transformation can be derived by substituting the expressions for  $R_{ij}$  from (2.58) into the differential equation  $\dot{\mathbf{R}}_b^n = \mathbf{R}_b^n \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)$ ; see Theorem 2.2. Some calculations yield

$$\dot{\mathbf{q}} = \mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q}) \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \quad (2.62)$$

where

$$\mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q}) = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} -\varepsilon_1 & -\varepsilon_2 & -\varepsilon_3 \\ \eta & -\varepsilon_3 & \varepsilon_2 \\ \varepsilon_3 & \eta & -\varepsilon_1 \\ -\varepsilon_2 & \varepsilon_1 & \eta \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{T}_q^\top(\mathbf{q}) \mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q}) = \frac{1}{4} \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} \quad (2.63)$$

Hence,

$$\dot{\eta} = -\frac{1}{2}(\varepsilon_1 p + \varepsilon_2 q + \varepsilon_3 r) \quad (2.64)$$

$$\dot{\varepsilon}_1 = \frac{1}{2}(\eta p - \varepsilon_3 q + \varepsilon_2 r) \quad (2.65)$$

$$\dot{\varepsilon}_2 = \frac{1}{2}(\varepsilon_3 p + \eta q - \varepsilon_1 r) \quad (2.66)$$

$$\dot{\varepsilon}_3 = \frac{1}{2}(-\varepsilon_2 p + \varepsilon_1 q + \eta r) \quad (2.67)$$

An alternative formulation is the vector representation (Kane *et al.*, 1983)

$$\dot{\mathbf{q}} = \begin{bmatrix} \dot{\eta} \\ \dot{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} -\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}^\top \\ \eta \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} + \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}) \end{bmatrix} \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \quad (2.68)$$

## 6 DOF Kinematic Equations

Consequently, the 6 DOF kinematic equations of motion can be expressed by seven differential equations for  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = [N, E, D, \eta, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3]^\top$  (recall that only six differential equations are needed when using the Euler angle representation):

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} &= \mathbf{J}_q(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \mathbf{v} \\ \Leftrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \dot{\mathbf{p}}_{b/n}^n \\ \dot{\mathbf{q}} \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{R}_b^n(\boldsymbol{q}) & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{4 \times 3} & \mathbf{T}_q(\boldsymbol{q}) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b \\ \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (2.69)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\eta} \in \mathbb{R}^7$  and  $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^6$ , and  $\mathbf{J}_q(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \in \mathbb{R}^{7 \times 6}$  is a nonquadratic transformation matrix. Equation (2.69) in component form is given by (2.59)–(2.61) and (2.64)–(2.67).

### Matlab

The transformation matrix  $\mathbf{J}_q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  and its elements  $\mathbf{J}_{11} = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\boldsymbol{q})$  and  $\mathbf{J}_{22} = \mathbf{T}_q(\boldsymbol{q})$  can be computed directly in the MSS toolbox by using the following commands:

```
q = [eta,eps1,eps2,eps3]'  
[J,J11,J22] = quatern(q)
```

The corresponding differential equations are

```
p_dot = J11*v  
q_dot = J22*w.bn
```

### Implementation Considerations: Unit Quaternion Normalization

When integrating (2.62), a normalization procedure is necessary to ensure that the constraint

$$\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q} = \varepsilon_1^2 + \varepsilon_2^2 + \varepsilon_3^2 + \eta^2 = 1 \quad (2.70)$$

is satisfied in the presence of measurement noise and numerical round-off errors. For this purpose, the following discrete-time algorithm can be applied.

#### *Algorithm 2.1 (Discrete-Time Normalization of the Unit Quaternions)*

1.  $k = 0$ . Compute initial values of  $\mathbf{q}(k = 0)$ .
2. For simplicity, Euler integration implies that

$$\mathbf{q}(k + 1) = \mathbf{q}(k) + h \mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q}(k)) \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b(k) \quad (2.71)$$

where  $h$  is the sampling time.

3. Normalization:

$$\mathbf{q}(k + 1) = \frac{\mathbf{q}(k + 1)}{\|\mathbf{q}(k + 1)\|} = \frac{\mathbf{q}(k + 1)}{\sqrt{\mathbf{q}^\top(k + 1) \mathbf{q}(k + 1)}}$$

4. Let  $k = k + 1$  and return to Step 2.

A continuous time algorithm for unit quaternion normalization can be implemented by noting that

$$\frac{d}{dt} (\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q}) = 2\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q}) \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b = 0 \quad (2.72)$$

This shows that if  $\mathbf{q}$  is initialized as a unit vector, then it will remain a unit vector. Since integration of the quaternion vector  $\mathbf{q}$  from the differential equation (2.62) will introduce numerical errors that will cause the length of  $\mathbf{q}$  to deviate from unity, a nonlinear feedback or normalization term is suggested. In Simulink this is done by replacing the kinematic differential equation (2.62) with

$$\dot{\mathbf{q}} = \mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q}) \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b + \frac{\gamma}{2} (1 - \mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q}) \mathbf{q} \quad (2.73)$$

where  $\gamma \geq 0$  (typically 100) is a design parameter reflecting the convergence rate of the normalization. This results in

$$\frac{d}{dt} (\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q}) = \underbrace{2\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q}) \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b}_{0 \text{ since } \mathbf{q}(0) \text{ is a unit vector}} + \gamma(1 - \mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q}) \mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q} = \gamma(1 - \mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q}) \mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q} \quad (2.74)$$

Observe that  $\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q}$  will decrease if  $\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q} > 1$  while it increases for  $\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q} < 1$ . When  $\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q} = 1$  the usual kinematic differential equations are recovered. A change of coordinates  $x = 1 - \mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q}$ ,  $\dot{x} = -d/dt(\mathbf{q}^\top \mathbf{q})$  yields

$$\dot{x} = -\gamma x(1 - x) \quad (2.75)$$

Linearization about  $x = 0$  gives  $\dot{x} = -\gamma x$ . Consequently, the normalization algorithm converges with a time constant  $T = \gamma^{-1}$ .

### 2.2.3 Quaternions from Euler Angles

If the Euler angles  $\Theta_{nb} = [\phi, \theta, \psi]^\top$  are known and therefore the expression for the rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb}) = \{R_{ij}\}$ , a singularity free extraction procedure can be used to compute the corresponding unit quaternions (Shepperd, 1978).

#### Algorithm 2.2 (Quaternions From Euler Angles)

- Given the Euler angles  $\phi, \theta$  and  $\psi$ . Let the transformation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_b^n$  according to (2.18) be written

$$\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb}) := \begin{bmatrix} R_{11} & R_{12} & R_{13} \\ R_{21} & R_{22} & R_{23} \\ R_{31} & R_{32} & R_{33} \end{bmatrix}$$

- The trace of  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})$  is computed as

$$R_{44} = \text{tr}(\mathbf{R}_b^n) = R_{11} + R_{22} + R_{33}$$

- Let  $1 \leq i \leq 4$  be the index corresponding to

$$R_{ii} = \max(R_{11}, R_{22}, R_{33}, R_{44})$$

- Compute  $p_i$  corresponding to Index  $i$  of Step 3 according to

$$p_i = \left| \sqrt{1 + 2R_{ii} - R_{44}} \right|$$

where the sign ascribed to  $p_i$  can be chosen to be either positive or negative.

- Compute the other three  $p_i$ -values from

$$\begin{array}{ll} p_4 p_1 = R_{32} - R_{23} & p_2 p_3 = R_{32} + R_{23} \\ p_4 p_2 = R_{13} - R_{31} & p_3 p_1 = R_{13} + R_{31} \\ p_4 p_3 = R_{21} - R_{12} & p_1 p_2 = R_{21} + R_{12} \end{array}$$

by simply dividing the three equations containing the component  $p_i$  with the known value of  $p_i$  (from Step 4) on both sides.

- Compute the Euler parameters  $\mathbf{q} = [\eta, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3]^\top$  according to

$$\varepsilon_j = p_j / 2 \quad (j = 1, 2, 3)$$

$$\eta = p_4 / 2$$

#### Matlab

Algorithm 2.2 is implemented in the MSS toolbox as `euler2q.m`. This algorithm can also be used to compute the initial values of the Euler parameters corresponding to Step 1 of Algorithm 2.1.

**Example 2.2 (Euler Angles to Unit Quaternions)**

Consider a marine craft with orientation  $\phi = 10.0^\circ$ ,  $\theta = -20.0^\circ$  and  $\psi = 30.0^\circ$ . The unit quaternions are computed in Matlab by using the commands

```
phi=10*(pi/180), theta=-20*(pi/180), psi=30*(pi/180)
q = euler2q(phi,theta,psi)
q = [0.9437, 0.1277, -0.1449, 0.2685]
% normalization test
norm(q) =
1.0000
```

### 2.2.4 Euler Angles from Quaternions

The relationship between the Euler angles  $\phi$ ,  $\theta$  and  $\psi$  (zyx convention) and the unit quaternions  $q_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 4$ ) can be established by requiring that the rotation matrices of the two kinematic representations are equal:

$$\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb}) := \mathbf{R}_b^n(q) \quad (2.76)$$

Let the elements of  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(q)$  be denoted by  $R_{ij}$  where the superscripts  $i$  and  $j$  denote the  $i$ th row and  $j$ th column. Writing expression (2.76) in component form yields a system of nine equations with three unknowns ( $\phi$ ,  $\theta$  and  $\psi$ ) given by

$$\begin{bmatrix} c\psi c\theta & -s\psi c\phi + c\psi s\theta s\phi & s\psi s\phi + c\psi c\phi s\theta \\ s\psi c\theta & c\psi c\phi + s\phi s\theta s\psi & -c\psi s\phi + s\theta s\psi c\phi \\ -s\theta & c\theta s\phi & c\theta c\phi \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} R_{11} & R_{12} & R_{13} \\ R_{21} & R_{22} & R_{23} \\ R_{31} & R_{32} & R_{33} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.77)$$

**Algorithm 2.3 (Euler Angles from Quaternions)**

One solution to (2.77) is

$$\phi = \text{atan2}(R_{32}, R_{33}) \quad (2.78)$$

$$\theta = -\sin^{-1}(R_{31}) = -\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{R_{31}}{\sqrt{1 - R_{31}^2}}\right); \quad \theta \neq \pm 90^\circ \quad (2.79)$$

$$\psi = \text{atan2}(R_{21}, R_{11}) \quad (2.80)$$

In Algorithm 2.3  $\text{atan2}(y, x)$  is the four-quadrant arctangent of the real parts of the elements of  $x$  and  $y$  satisfying

$$-\pi \leq \text{atan2}(y, x) \leq \pi \quad (2.81)$$

Precautions must be taken against computational errors in the vicinity of  $\theta = \pm 90^\circ$ .

**Matlab**

The MSS toolbox script

```
[phi,theta,psi] = q2euler(q)
```

is based on Algorithm 2.3. A singularity test is included in order to avoid  $\theta = \pm 90^\circ$ .

**Example 2.3 (Unit Quaternions to Euler Angles)**

Consider the marine vessel in Example 2.2 where the Euler angles were converted into unit quaternions. The inverse transformation `q2euler.m` results in

```
q = [0.9437, 0.1277, -0.1449, 0.2685] '
[phi,theta,psi] = q2euler(q/norm(q) )
phi      = 0.1746
theta    = -0.3491
psi      = 0.5235
```

corresponding to  $\phi = 10.0^\circ$ ,  $\theta = -20.0^\circ$  and  $\psi = 30.0^\circ$ .

## 2.3 Transformations between ECEF and NED

Wide area or terrestrial guidance and navigation implies that the position should be related to the Earth center instead of a local frame on the Earth's surface. This can be done by using the results from the previous sections.

### 2.3.1 Longitude and Latitude Transformations

The transformation between the ECEF and NED velocity vectors is

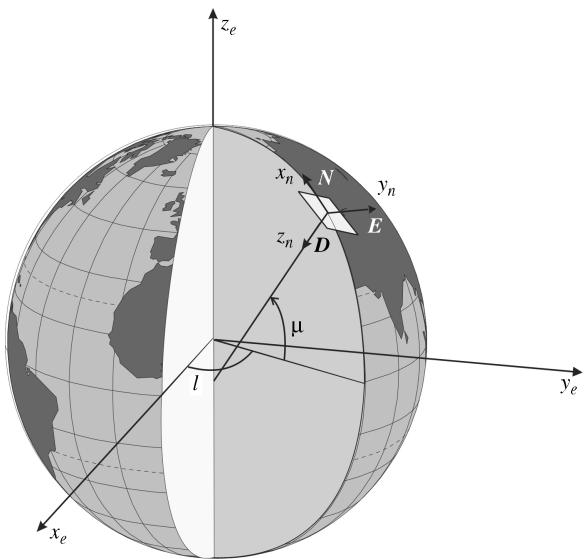
$$\dot{\mathbf{p}}_{b/e}^e = \mathbf{R}_n^e(\Theta_{en}) \dot{\mathbf{p}}_{b/e}^n = \mathbf{R}_n^e(\Theta_{en}) \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb}) \mathbf{v}_{b/e}^b \quad (2.82)$$

where  $\Theta_{en} = [l, \mu]^\top \in \mathcal{S}^2$  is a vector formed by longitude  $l$  and latitude  $\mu$  (see Figure 2.5) and  $\mathbf{R}_n^e(\Theta_{en}) : \mathcal{S}^2 \rightarrow SO(3)$  is a rotation matrix between ECEF and NED. This is found by performing two principal rotations: (1) a rotation  $l$  about the  $z$  axis and (2) a rotation  $(-\mu - \pi/2)$  about the  $y$  axis. This gives

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{R}_n^e(\Theta_{en}) &= \mathbf{R}_{z,l} \mathbf{R}_{y,-\mu-\frac{\pi}{2}} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \cos(l) & -\sin(l) & 0 \\ \sin(l) & \cos(l) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \cos(-\mu-\frac{\pi}{2}) & 0 & \sin(-\mu-\frac{\pi}{2}) \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin(-\mu-\frac{\pi}{2}) & 0 & \cos(-\mu-\frac{\pi}{2}) \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (2.83)$$

Using the trigonometric formulae  $\cos(-\mu - \frac{\pi}{2}) = -\sin(\mu)$  and  $\sin(-\mu - \frac{\pi}{2}) = -\cos(\mu)$  yields

$$\mathbf{R}_n^e(\Theta_{en}) = \begin{bmatrix} -\cos(l)\sin(\mu) & -\sin(l) & -\cos(l)\cos(\mu) \\ -\sin(l)\sin(\mu) & \cos(l) & -\sin(l)\cos(\mu) \\ \cos(\mu) & 0 & -\sin(\mu) \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.84)$$



**Figure 2.5** Definitions of longitude  $l$  and latitude  $\mu$  and the NED reference frame on the surface of the Earth. The  $D$  axis points in the normal direction to the Earth's surface.

Hence, the ECEF positions  $\mathbf{p}_{b/e}^e = [x, y, z]^\top$  can be found by integration of (2.82). This equation can also be used when designing a global waypoint tracking control system for ships.

### Matlab

The rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_n^e(\Theta_{en})$  is computed using the MSS toolbox command

```
R = RLL(1, mu)
```

### Flat Earth Navigation

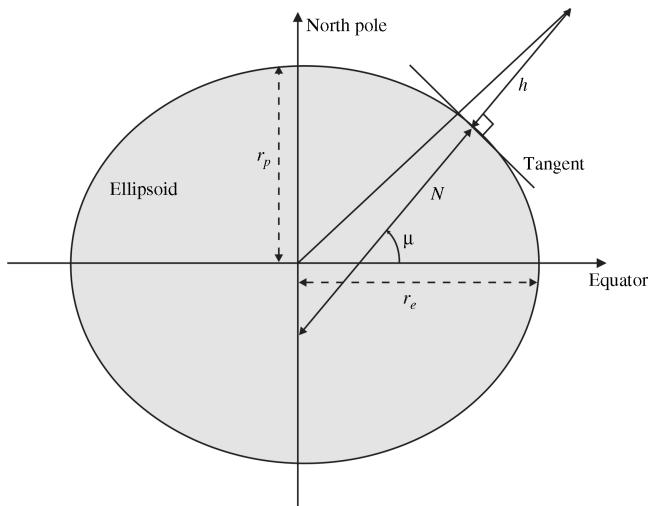
For local flat Earth navigation it can be assumed that the NED tangent plane is fixed on the surface of the Earth, that is  $l$  and  $\mu$  are constants, by assuming that the operating radius of the vessel is limited. This suggests that the NED position vector

$$\dot{\mathbf{p}}_{b/n}^n = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b \quad (2.85)$$

is used for control design. When designing dynamic positioning (DP) systems for offshore vessels this is particularly useful. The ECEF coordinates for flat Earth navigation are found by requiring that  $\Theta_{en} = \text{constant}$ , such that

$$\mathbf{R}_n^e(\Theta_{en}) = \mathbf{R}_o = \text{constant} \quad (2.86)$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{p}}_{b/e}^e = \mathbf{R}_o \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb}) \mathbf{v}_{b/e}^b \quad (2.87)$$



**Figure 2.6** Definitions of the ellipsoidal parameters.

When designing global waypoint tracking control systems for ships, ‘‘flat Earth’’ is not a good approximation since  $(l, \mu)$  will vary largely for ships in transit between the different continents. Hence, the more general expression (2.82) should be used for global navigation.

### 2.3.2 Longitude and Latitude from ECEF Coordinates

The measurements of satellite navigation systems (GPS, GLONASS and Galileo) are given in the Cartesian ECEF frame, but there are measurements that do not make much sense to the user. The presentation of terrestrial position data  $\mathbf{p}_{b/e}^e = [x, y, z]^\top$  is therefore made in terms of the ellipsoidal parameters longitude  $l$ , latitude  $\mu$  and height  $h$ .

Figure 2.6 shows the definitions of parameters needed for the transformations. The reference ellipsoid used for satellite navigation systems, WGS-84, is found by rotating an ellipse around the polar axis. Because of symmetry about the polar axis, it is only necessary to look at the meridian plane (latitude) equations. The origin of the ellipsoid coincides with the mass center of the Earth. The most important parameters of the WGS-84 ellipsoid are listed in Table 2.2.

In Figure 2.6,  $\mu$  is the *geodetic* latitude,  $h$  is the ellipsoidal height and  $N$  is the radius of curvature in the prime vertical.  $N$  is calculated by

$$N = \frac{r_e^2}{\sqrt{r_e^2 \cos^2(\mu) + r_p^2 \sin^2(\mu)}} \quad (2.88)$$

where the equatorial and polar earth radii,  $r_e$  and  $r_p$ , are the semi-axes of the ellipsoid.

**Table 2.2** WGS-84 parameters

Parameters	Comments
$r_e = 6\,378\,137$ m	Equatorial radius of ellipsoid (semi-major axis)
$r_p = 6\,356\,752$ m	Polar axis radius of ellipsoid (semi-minor axis)
$\omega_e = 7.292115 \times 10^{-5}$ rad/s	Angular velocity of the Earth
$e = 0.0818$	Eccentricity of ellipsoid

Longitude  $l$  is easily computed as

$$l = \text{atan} \left( \frac{y}{x} \right) \quad (2.89)$$

while latitude  $\mu$  and height  $h$  are implicitly computed by

$$\tan(\mu) = \frac{z}{p} \left( 1 - e^2 \frac{N}{N + h} \right)^{-1} \quad (2.90)$$

$$h = \frac{p}{\cos(\mu)} - N \quad (2.91)$$

where  $e$  is the eccentricity of the Earth given by

$$e = \sqrt{1 - \left( \frac{r_p}{r_e} \right)^2} \quad (2.92)$$

Since these two equations are implicit, they can be solved iteratively by using Algorithm 2.4 (Hofmann-Wellenhof *et al.*, 1994).

**Algorithm 2.4 (Transformation of  $(x, y, z)$  to  $(l, \mu, h)$ )**

1. Compute  $p = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ .
2. Compute the approximate value  $\mu_{(0)}$  from

$$\tan(\mu_{(0)}) = \frac{z}{p} (1 - e^2)^{-1}$$

3. Compute an approximate value  $N$  from

$$N = \frac{r_e^2}{\sqrt{r_e^2 \cos^2(\mu_{(0)}) + r_p^2 \sin^2(\mu_{(0)})}}$$

4. Compute the ellipsoidal height by

$$h = \frac{p}{\cos(\mu_{(0)})} - N_{(0)}$$

5. Compute an improved value for the latitude by

$$\tan(\mu) = \frac{z}{p} \left( 1 - e^2 \frac{N_{(0)}}{N_{(0)} + h} \right)^{-1}$$

6. Check for another iteration step: if  $|\mu - \mu_{(0)}| < tol$ , where  $tol$  is a small number, then the iteration is complete. Otherwise set  $\mu_{(0)} = \mu$  and continue with Step 3.

**Matlab**

Algorithm 2.4 is programmed in the MSS toolbox as a function

```
[l,mu,h] = ecef2llh(x,y,z)
```

Several other algorithms can be used for this purpose; see Farrell and Barth (1998) and references therein. An approximate solution can also be found in Hofmann-Wellenhof *et al.* (1994) and an exact explicit solution is given by Zhu (1993).

### Height Transformation

The WGS-84 ellipsoid is a global ellipsoid, which is only an approximation of the mean sea level of the Earth. It can deviate from the real mean sea level by as much as 100 meters at certain locations. The Earth's geoid, on the other hand, is defined physically and its center is coincident with the center of the Earth. It is an equipotential surface so that it has the same gravitational magnitude all over the surface, and the gravity vector is always perpendicular to the geoid.

The geoid is the surface chosen as a zero level reference. The ellipsoidal height  $h$  in Figure 2.7 must therefore be transformed to the *orthometric* height  $H$  in Figure 2.7 through the relation

$$h \approx H + M$$

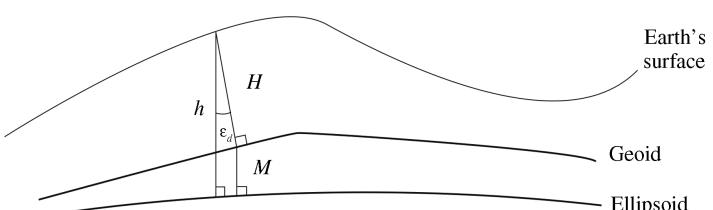
where  $M$  is called the *geoidal* height. The angle  $\varepsilon_d$  is small enough for the above approximation to be sufficiently accurate for all practical purposes. The angle  $\varepsilon_d$  is known as the deflection of the vertical, and does not exceed 30 arcseconds in most of the world. In fact the largest deflection encountered over the entire earth is in the order of 1 arcminutes (Britting, 1971). The geoidal height  $M$  is found through a *datum* transformation (Hofmann-Wellenhof *et al.*, 1994).

#### 2.3.3 ECEF Coordinates from Longitude and Latitude

The transformation from  $\Theta_{en} = [l, \mu]^\top$  for given heights  $h$  to  $\mathbf{p}_{b/e}^e = [x, y, z]^\top$  is given by (Heiskanen and Moritz, 1967)

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} (N+h)\cos(\mu)\cos(l) \\ (N+h)\cos(\mu)\sin(l) \\ \left(\frac{r_p^2}{r_e^2}N+h\right)\sin(\mu) \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.93)$$

For a ship  $h$  is the vertical distance from the sea level to the coordinate origin of  $\{b\}$ .



**Figure 2.7** Illustration of ellipsoidal and orthometric heights  $h$  and  $H$  where  $\varepsilon_d$  is the deflection of gravity and  $M$  is the geoidal height (undulation).

**Matlab**

The transformation from  $\Theta_{en} = [l, \mu]^\top$  to  $p_{b/e}^e = [x, y, z]^\top$ , Equation (2.93), is programmed in the MSS toolbox function

$$[x, y, z] = llh2ecef(l, mu, h)$$

**Example 2.4 (ECEF Coordinates from  $l$  and  $\mu$ )**

Assume that  $l = 10.3^\circ$ ,  $\mu = 63.0^\circ$  and  $h = 0$  m. Hence, the ECEF coordinates are computed to be

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2\ 856\ 552 \text{ m} \\ 519\ 123 \text{ m} \\ 5\ 659\ 978 \text{ m} \end{bmatrix}$$

using the MSS Matlab command

$$[x, y, z] = llh2ecef(10.3 * (pi/180), 63.0 * (pi/180), 0)$$

## 2.4 Transformations between BODY and FLOW

*Flow axes* are often used to express hydrodynamic data. The FLOW axes are found by rotating the BODY axis system such that resulting  $x$  axis is parallel to the freestream flow. Moreover, in FLOW axes, the  $x$  axis points directly into the relative flow while the  $z$  axis remains in the reference plane, but rotates so that it remains perpendicular to the  $x$  axis. The  $y$  axis completes the right-handed system. The transformation is outlined in Section 2.4.2.

The main reason for the FLOW axis system is that it is more convenient for calculating hydrodynamic forces. For instance, lift is, by definition, perpendicular to the relative flow, while drag is parallel. With FLOW axes, both lift and drag resolve into a force that is parallel to one of the axes.

### 2.4.1 Definitions of Course, Heading and Sideslip Angles

The relationship between the angular variables *course*, *heading* and *sideslip* is important for maneuvering of a marine craft in the horizontal plane (3 DOF). The terms course and heading are used interchangeably in much of the literature on guidance, navigation and control of marine craft, and this leads to confusion. Consequently, definitions utilizing a consistent symbolic notation will now be established.

The speed of a marine craft moving in the horizontal plane is

$$U = \sqrt{u^2 + v^2} \quad (2.94)$$

In the presence of ocean currents, the *relative speed* becomes

$$U_r = \sqrt{(u - u_c)^2 + (v - v_c)^2} \quad (2.95)$$

where the velocity components of the current are  $u_c$  and  $v_c$ .

The relationship between the angular variables is shown in Figure 2.8. The following definitions for motions in the horizontal plane are adopted from Breivik and Fossen (2004b):

**Definition 2.4 (Course Angle  $\chi$ )**

*The angle from the  $x_n$  axis of  $\{n\}$  to the velocity vector of the craft, positive rotation about the  $z_n$  axis of  $\{n\}$  by the right-hand screw convention.*

**Definition 2.5 (Heading (Yaw) Angle  $\psi$ )**

The angle from the  $x_n$  axis of  $\{n\}$  to the  $x_b$  axis of  $\{b\}$ , positive rotation about the  $z_n$  axis of  $\{n\}$  by the right-hand screw convention.

**Definition 2.6 (Sideslip (Drift) Angle  $\beta$ )**

The angle from the  $x_b$  axis of  $\{b\}$  to the velocity vector of the vehicle, positive rotation about the  $z_b$  axis of  $\{b\}$  by the right-hand screw convention.

By these definitions, it is apparent that the course angle satisfies

$$\chi = \psi + \beta \quad (2.96)$$

where

$$\beta = \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{v}{U} \right) \quad \beta \text{ small} \quad \beta \approx \frac{v}{U} \quad (2.97)$$

This relationship is easily verified from Figure 2.8. The sideslip angle can be extended to include the effect of ocean currents by letting

$$\beta_r = \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{v_r}{U_r} \right) \quad \beta_r \text{ small} \quad \beta_r \approx \frac{v_r}{U_r} \quad (2.98)$$

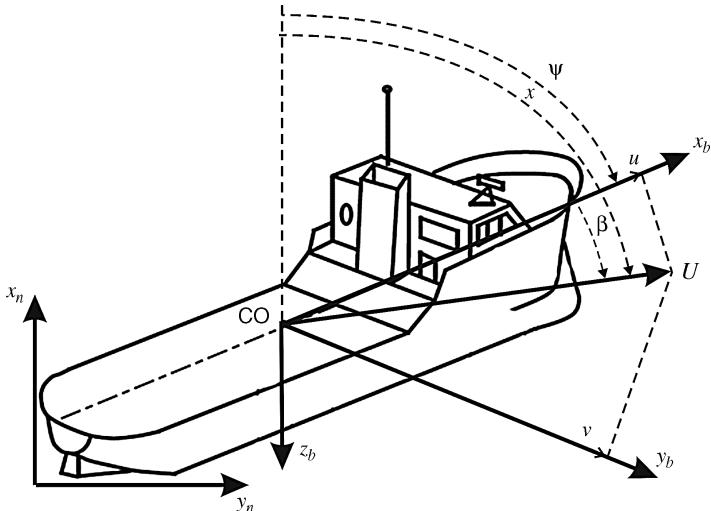
where  $v_r = v - v_c$  is the relative sway velocity.

**Remark 2.1**

In SNAME (1950) and Lewis (1989) the sideslip angle for marine craft is defined according to:

$$\beta_{\text{SNAME}} := -\beta$$

Note that the sideslip definition in this section follows the sign convention used by the aircraft community, for instance as in Nelson (1998) and Stevens and Lewis (1992). This definition is more intuitive from a guidance point of view, as shown in Figure 2.8.



**Figure 2.8** The geometrical relationship  $\chi = \psi + \beta$  between course  $\chi$ , heading angle  $\psi$  and sideslip angle  $\beta$ .

**Example 2.5 (Sideslip Angle: No Ocean Currents)**

Consider a marine craft moving at  $U = 10$  m/s under the assumption of no ocean currents and zero sway velocity ( $v = 0$ ). Hence, the sideslip angle is

$$\beta = \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{v}{U} \right) = 0 \quad (2.99)$$

For this case the heading angle equals the course angle, that is

$$\chi \equiv \psi \quad (2.100)$$

**Example 2.6 (Sideslip Angle: Ocean Currents)**

Consider a marine craft at rest and exposed for an ocean current  $u_c = v_c = 0.5$  m/s. Since  $u = v = 0$  it follows that  $U_r = \sqrt{u_c^2 + v_c^2}$  and

$$\beta_r = \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{-v_c}{\sqrt{u_c^2 + v_c^2}} \right) = -0.36 \quad (2.101)$$

corresponding to  $-20.7^\circ$ . In this case the heading and the course angles satisfy

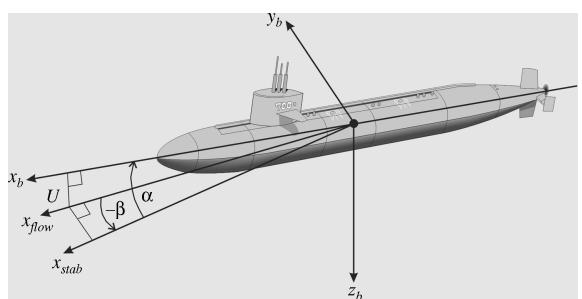
$$\chi = \psi - 20.7^\circ \quad (2.102)$$

### 2.4.2 Sideslip and Angle of Attack

The transformation from FLOW to BODY axes is defined by two principal rotations. First, the flow axes are rotated by a *negative* sideslip angle  $-\beta$  about the  $z$  axis and the new coordinate system is called *stability axes*. Second, the stability axes are rotated by a *positive* angle  $\alpha$  about the new  $y$  axis. This angle  $\alpha$  is called the *angle of attack*.

The names *stability* and *wind axes* are commonly used in aerodynamics to model lift and drag forces, which both are nonlinear functions of  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$  and  $U$ . This convention has been adopted by the marine community and SNAME to describe lift and drag forces on submerged vehicles (SNAME, 1950). For marine craft, *wind axes* correspond to *flow axes*.

Stability and flow axes are also used in path following. For instance, a ship equipped with a single rudder and a main propeller can follow a path even though only two controls are available by simply steering the vessel to the path using the rudder. The speed is controlled by an independent propeller feedback loop (Fossen *et al.*, 2003a). This means that we control the  $xy$  coordinates and yaw angle  $\psi$  of the ship (3 DOF). When doing this, it is optimal to have a zero sideslip angle when there are no ocean currents, wave and wind loads. If the environmental forces are nonzero, it is optimal to have a nonzero sideslip angle, as shown in Figure 2.9 (Breivik and Fossen, 2005a). This is referred to as weathervaning.



**Figure 2.9** Illustration of stability and flow axes in terms of the angle of attack  $\alpha$  and the sideslip angle  $\beta$ .

However, it is extremely difficult to track the desired path given by  $x$  and  $y$ , and at the same time maintain a constant heading angle  $\psi$  unless three controls are available for feedback since this is an underactuated control problem.

The transformation between BODY, STABILITY and FLOW axes can be mathematically expressed as

$$\mathbf{v}^{\text{stab}} = \mathbf{R}_{y,\alpha} \mathbf{v}^b \quad (2.103)$$

$$\mathbf{v}^{\text{flow}} = \mathbf{R}_{z,-\beta} \mathbf{v}^{\text{stab}} \quad (2.104)$$

where

$$\mathbf{R}_{y,\alpha} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\alpha) & 0 & \sin(\alpha) \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin(\alpha) & 0 & \cos(\alpha) \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.105)$$

$$\mathbf{R}_{z,-\beta} = \mathbf{R}_{z,\beta}^\top = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\beta) & \sin(\beta) & 0 \\ -\sin(\beta) & \cos(\beta) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.106)$$

The transformation matrix from BODY to FLOW axes then becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{R}_b^{\text{flow}} &= \mathbf{R}_{z,-\beta} \mathbf{R}_{y,\alpha} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\beta) \cos(\alpha) & \sin(\beta) & \cos(\beta) \sin(\alpha) \\ -\sin(\beta) \cos(\alpha) & \cos(\beta) & -\sin(\beta) \sin(\alpha) \\ -\sin(\alpha) & 0 & \cos(\alpha) \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (2.107)$$

The velocity transformation

$$\mathbf{v}^{\text{flow}} = \mathbf{R}_b^{\text{flow}} \mathbf{v}^b \quad (2.108)$$

can now be rewritten as

$$\mathbf{v}^b = (\mathbf{R}_b^{\text{flow}})^\top \mathbf{v}^{\text{flow}} \quad (2.109)$$

$\Updownarrow$

$$\begin{bmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{R}_{y,\alpha}^\top \mathbf{R}_{z,-\beta}^\top \begin{bmatrix} U \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.110)$$

Writing this expression in component form yields

$$u = U \cos(\alpha) \cos(\beta) \quad (2.111)$$

$$v = U \sin(\beta) \quad (2.112)$$

$$w = U \sin(\alpha) \cos(\beta) \quad (2.113)$$

For a marine craft moving at constant forward speed  $U > 0$ , the angle of attack and sideslip angle become

$$\alpha = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{w}{u} \right) \quad (2.114)$$

$$\beta = \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{v}{U} \right) \quad (2.115)$$

For small angles of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  (linear theory), it follows that

$$u \approx U, \quad v \approx \beta U, \quad w \approx \alpha U \quad (2.116)$$

and

$$\alpha \approx \frac{w}{U}, \quad \beta \approx \frac{v}{U} \quad (2.117)$$

Time differentiation of (2.112) under the assumption that  $U$  and the ocean current in  $\{n\}$  are constant gives the sway rate

$$\dot{v} = U \cos(\beta) \dot{\beta} \quad (2.118)$$

Consequently, the sideslip rate for  $U > 0$  becomes

$$\dot{\beta} = \frac{1}{U \cos(\beta)} \dot{v} \quad (2.119)$$

This relationship is exploited when designing path-following control systems (see Section 10.4).

### Extension to Ocean Currents

For a marine craft exposed to ocean currents, the concept of relative velocities is introduced; see Section 8.3. Let the current velocities expressed in  $\{b\}$  be denoted  $u_c$ ,  $v_c$  and  $w_c$ . The relative velocities are

$$u_r = u - u_c \quad (2.120)$$

$$v_r = v - v_c \quad (2.121)$$

$$w_r = w - w_c \quad (2.122)$$

such that the relative speed becomes

$$U_r = \sqrt{u_r^2 + v_r^2 + w_r^2} \quad (2.123)$$

Angle of attack and sideslip angle as given by (2.111)–(2.113) are modified in terms of the relative velocities according to

$$u_r = U_r \cos(\alpha_r) \cos(\beta_r) \quad (2.124)$$

$$v_r = U_r \sin(\beta_r) \quad (2.125)$$

$$w_r = U_r \sin(\alpha_r) \cos(\beta_r) \quad (2.126)$$

such that

$$\alpha_r = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{w_r}{u_r} \right) \quad (2.127)$$

$$\beta_r = \sin^{-1} \left( \frac{v_r}{U_r} \right) \quad (2.128)$$

For small angles  $\alpha_r$  and  $\beta_r$ , it is seen that

$$u_r \approx U_r, \quad v_r \approx \beta_r U_r, \quad w_r \approx \alpha_r U_r \quad (2.129)$$

such that

$$\alpha_r \approx \frac{w - w_c}{U_r}, \quad \beta_r \approx \frac{v - v_c}{U_r} \quad (2.130)$$

### State-Space Transformation

The state-space model of a marine craft can be transformed to FLOW axes using a transformation matrix depending on speed. Let

$$\mathbf{v} = [u, v, w, p, q, r]^\top \quad (2.131)$$

and

$$\mathbf{v}^{\text{flow}} = [U, \beta, \alpha, p, q, r]^\top \quad (2.132)$$

The latter representation is often more intuitive to use from a hydrodynamic point of view, while control engineers prefer the former. Both representations are, however, equivalent since there exists a nonlinear transformation between  $(u, v, w)$  and  $(U, \beta, \alpha)$ , given by (2.111)–(2.113). For small angles, the following approximative transformation:

$$\mathbf{v}^{\text{flow}} = \mathbf{T}(U)\mathbf{v} \quad (2.133)$$

with

$$\mathbf{T}(U) = \text{diag} \left\{ 1, \frac{1}{U}, \frac{1}{U}, 1, 1, 1 \right\} \quad (2.134)$$

can be used. If we assume that  $U = \text{constant}$  such that  $\dot{\mathbf{T}}(U) = \mathbf{0}$ , the linear model

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{N}\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (2.135)$$

transforms to FLOW axes according to

$$\mathbf{T}(U)\mathbf{M}\mathbf{T}(U)^{-1}\dot{\mathbf{v}}^{\text{flow}} + \mathbf{T}(U)\mathbf{N}\mathbf{T}(U)^{-1}\mathbf{v}^{\text{flow}} = \mathbf{T}(U)\boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (2.136)$$

# 3

## Rigid-Body Kinetics

In order to derive the marine craft equations of motion, it is necessary to study the motion of rigid bodies, hydrodynamics and hydrostatics. The overall goal of Chapter 3 is to show that the rigid-body kinetics can be expressed in a vectorial setting according to (Fossen, 1991)

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} \quad (3.1)$$

where  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}$  is the rigid-body mass matrix,  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}$  is the rigid-body Coriolis and centripetal matrix due to the rotation of  $\{b\}$  about the inertial frame  $\{n\}$ ,  $\mathbf{v} = [u, v, w, p, q, r]^\top$  is the generalized velocity vector expressed in  $\{b\}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} = [X, Y, Z, K, M, N]^\top$  is a generalized vector of external forces and moments expressed in  $\{b\}$ .

The rigid-body equations of motion will be derived using the *Newton–Euler formulation* and *vectorial mechanics*. In this context it is convenient to define the vectors without reference to a coordinate frame (*coordinate free vector*). The velocity of the origin  $o_b$  with respect to  $\{n\}$  is a vector  $\vec{v}_{b/n}$  that is defined by its magnitude and the direction. The vector  $\vec{v}_{b/n}$  decomposed in the inertial reference frame is denoted as  $\vec{v}_{b/n}^i$ , which is also referred to as a *coordinate vector* (see Section 2.1).

The equations of motion will be represented in two body-fixed reference points:

**CO** - origin  $o_b$  of  $\{b\}$

**CG** - center of gravity

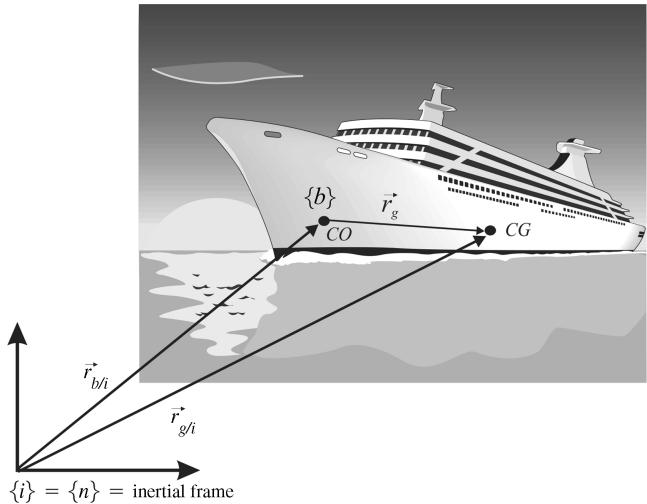
These points coincide if the vector  $\vec{r}_g = \vec{0}$  (see Figure 3.1). The point CO is usually specified by the control engineer and it is the reference point used to design the guidance, navigation and control systems. For marine craft, it is common to locate this point on the centerline midships. It is advantageous to use a fixed reference point CO for controller–observer design since CG will depend on the load condition (see Section 4.3).

### 3.1 Newton–Euler Equations of Motion about CG

The *Newton–Euler formulation* is based on *Newton's second law*, which relates mass  $m$ , acceleration  $\dot{\vec{v}}_{g/i}$  and force  $\vec{f}_g$  according to

$$m\dot{\vec{v}}_{g/i} = \vec{f}_g \quad (3.2)$$

where  $\vec{v}_{g/i}$  is the velocity of the CG with respect to the *inertial frame*  $\{i\}$ .



**Figure 3.1** Definition of the volume element  $dV$  and the coordinate origins CO and CG.

If no force is acting ( $\vec{f}_g = \vec{0}$ ), then the rigid body is moving with constant speed ( $\vec{v}_{g/i} = \text{constant}$ ) or the body is at rest ( $\vec{v}_{g/i} = \vec{0}$ )—a result known as *Newton's first law*. Newton's laws were published in 1687 by Isaac Newton (1643–1727) in *Philosophia Naturalis Principia Mathematica*.

### Euler's First and Second Axioms

Leonhard Euler (1707–1783) showed in his *Novi Commentarii Academiae Scientiarum Imperialis Petropolitane* that Newton's second law can be expressed in terms of conservation of both linear momentum  $\vec{p}_g$  and angular momentum  $\vec{h}_g$ . These results are known as *Euler's first and second axioms*, respectively:

$$\overset{i}{\frac{d}{dt}} \vec{p}_g = \vec{f}_g \quad \vec{p}_g = m \vec{v}_{g/i} \quad (3.3)$$

$$\overset{i}{\frac{d}{dt}} \vec{h}_g = \vec{m}_g \quad \vec{h}_g = I_g \vec{\omega}_{b/i} \quad (3.4)$$

where  $\vec{f}_g$  and  $\vec{m}_g$  are the forces and moments acting on the body's CG,  $\vec{\omega}_{b/i}$  is the angular velocity of  $\{b\}$  with respect to  $\{i\}$ , and  $I_g$  is the inertia dyadic about the body's CG (to be defined later). Time differentiation in the inertial frame  $\{i\}$  is denoted by  $\overset{i}{d}/dt$ . The application of these equations is often referred to as *vectorial mechanics* since both conservation laws are expressed in terms of vectors.

When deriving the equations of motion it will be assumed: (1) that the craft is rigid and (2) that the NED frame  $\{n\}$  is inertial; see Section 2.1. The first assumption eliminates the consideration of forces acting between individual elements of mass while the second eliminates forces due to the Earth's motion relative to a star-fixed inertial reference system. Consequently,

$$\vec{v}_{g/i} \approx \vec{v}_{g/n} \quad (3.5)$$

$$\vec{\omega}_{b/i} \approx \vec{\omega}_{b/n} \quad (3.6)$$

Time differentiation of a vector  $\vec{a}$  in a moving reference frame  $\{b\}$  satisfies

$$\overset{i}{\frac{d}{dt}} \vec{a} = \overset{b}{\frac{d}{dt}} \vec{a} + \vec{\omega}_{b/i} \times \vec{a} \quad (3.7)$$

where time differentiation in  $\{b\}$  is denoted as

$$\dot{\vec{a}} := \overset{b}{\frac{d}{dt}} \vec{a} \quad (3.8)$$

For guidance and navigation applications in space it is usual to use a star-fixed reference frame or a reference frame rotating with the Earth. Marine craft are, on the other hand, usually related to  $\{n\}$ . This is a good assumption since the forces on marine craft due to the Earth's rotation:

$$\omega_{e/i} = 7.2921 \times 10^{-5} \text{ rad/s} \quad (3.9)$$

are quite small compared to the hydrodynamic forces. The Earth's rotation should, however, not be neglected in global navigation or if the equations of motion of a drifting ship are analyzed.

### 3.1.1 Translational Motion about CG

From Figure 3.1 it follows that

$$\vec{r}_{g/i} = \vec{r}_{b/i} + \vec{r}_g \quad (3.10)$$

where  $\vec{r}_g$  is the distance vector from CO (origin  $o_b$ ) to CG. Consequently, the assumption that  $\{n\}$  is inertial implies that (3.10) can be rewritten as

$$\vec{r}_{g/n} = \vec{r}_{b/n} + \vec{r}_g \quad (3.11)$$

Time differentiation of  $\vec{r}_{g/n}$  in a moving reference frame  $\{b\}$  using (3.7) gives

$$\vec{v}_{g/n} = \vec{v}_{b/n} + \left( \overset{b}{\frac{d}{dt}} \vec{r}_g + \vec{\omega}_{b/n} \times \vec{r}_g \right) \quad (3.12)$$

For a rigid body, CG satisfies

$$\overset{b}{\frac{d}{dt}} \vec{r}_g = \vec{0} \quad (3.13)$$

such that

$$\vec{v}_{g/n} = \vec{v}_{b/n} + \vec{\omega}_{b/n} \times \vec{r}_g \quad (3.14)$$

From Euler's first axiom (3.3) it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
 \vec{f}_g &= \frac{i}{dt}(m\vec{v}_{g/i}) \\
 &= \frac{i}{dt}(m\vec{v}_{g/n}) \\
 &= \frac{b}{dt}(m\vec{v}_{g/n}) + m\vec{\omega}_{b/n} \times \vec{v}_{g/n} \\
 &= m(\dot{\vec{v}}_{g/n} + \vec{\omega}_{b/n} \times \vec{v}_{g/n})
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.15}$$

Finally, the vectors can be expressed in  $\{b\}$  such that the translational motion in CG becomes

$$m[\dot{\vec{v}}_{g/n}^b + S(\vec{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\vec{v}_{g/n}^b] = \vec{f}_g^b \tag{3.16}$$

where the cross-product is written in matrix form using the skew-symmetric matrix (2.10), that is  $S(\vec{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\vec{v}_{g/n}^b = \vec{\omega}_{b/n}^b \times \vec{v}_{g/n}^b$ .

### 3.1.2 Rotational Motion about CG

The rotational dynamics (attitude dynamics) follows a similar approach. From Euler's second axiom (3.4), it is seen that

$$\begin{aligned}
 \vec{m}_g &= \frac{i}{dt}(I_g\vec{\omega}_{b/i}) \\
 &= \frac{i}{dt}(I_g\vec{\omega}_{b/n}) \\
 &= \frac{b}{dt}(I_g\vec{\omega}_{b/n}) + \vec{\omega}_{b/n} \times (I_g\vec{\omega}_{b/n}) \\
 &= I_g\dot{\vec{\omega}}_{b/n} - (I_g\vec{\omega}_{b/n}) \times \vec{\omega}_{b/n}
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.17}$$

From this it follows that

$$I_g\dot{\vec{\omega}}_{b/n}^b - S(I_g\vec{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\vec{\omega}_{b/n}^b = \vec{m}_g^b \tag{3.18}$$

since  $S(I_g\vec{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\vec{\omega}_{b/n}^b = (I_g\vec{\omega}_{b/n}^b) \times \vec{\omega}_{b/n}^b$ . This expression is also referred to as *Euler's equations*.

#### Definition 3.1 (Inertia Matrix)

The inertia matrix  $I_g \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  about CG is defined as

$$I_g := \begin{bmatrix} I_x & -I_{xy} & -I_{xz} \\ -I_{yx} & I_y & -I_{yz} \\ -I_{zx} & -I_{zy} & I_z \end{bmatrix}, \quad I_g = I_g^\top > 0 \tag{3.19}$$

where  $I_x$ ,  $I_y$  and  $I_z$  are the moments of inertia about the  $x_b$ ,  $y_b$  and  $z_b$  axes, and  $I_{xy} = I_{yx}$ ,  $I_{xz} = I_{zx}$  and  $I_{yz} = I_{zy}$  are the products of inertia defined as

$$\begin{aligned} I_x &= \int_V (y^2 + z^2) \rho_m dV; & I_{xy} &= \int_V xy \rho_m dV = \int_V yx \rho_m dV = I_{yx} \\ I_y &= \int_V (x^2 + z^2) \rho_m dV; & I_{xz} &= \int_V xz \rho_m dV = \int_V zx \rho_m dV = I_{zx} \\ I_z &= \int_V (x^2 + y^2) \rho_m dV; & I_{yz} &= \int_V yz \rho_m dV = \int_V zy \rho_m dV = I_{zy} \end{aligned}$$

### 3.1.3 Equations of Motion about CG

The Newton–Euler equations (3.16) and (3.18) can be represented in matrix form according to

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}^{CG} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{\mathbf{v}}_{g/n}^b \\ \dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}^{CG} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_{g/n}^b \\ \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{f}_g^b \\ \mathbf{m}_g^b \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.20)$$

or

$$\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} m\mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{I}_g \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{M}_{RB}^{CG}} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{\mathbf{v}}_{g/n}^b \\ \dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} mS(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b) & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & -S(\mathbf{I}_g \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b) \end{bmatrix}}_{\mathbf{C}_{RB}^{CG}} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_{g/n}^b \\ \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{f}_g^b \\ \mathbf{m}_g^b \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.21)$$

## 3.2 Newton–Euler Equations of Motion about CO

For marine craft it is desirable to derive the equations of motion for an arbitrary origin CO to take advantage of the craft's geometric properties. Since the hydrodynamic forces and moments often are computed in CO, Newton's laws will be formulated in CO as well.

In order to do this, we will start with the equations of motion about CG and transform these expressions to CO using a coordinate transformation. The needed coordinate transformation is derived from (3.14). Moreover,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_{g/n}^b &= \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b + \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \times \mathbf{r}_g^b \\ &= \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b - \mathbf{r}_g^b \times \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \\ &= \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b + \mathbf{S}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \end{aligned} \quad (3.22)$$

From this it follows that

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_{g/n}^b \\ \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b \\ \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.23)$$

where  $\mathbf{r}_g^b = [x_g, y_g, z_g]^\top$  and  $\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  is a transformation matrix:

$$\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) := \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{S}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) & \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.24)$$

Notice that angular velocity is unchanged during this transformation. The next step is to transform (3.20) from CG to CO using (3.23). This gives

$$\mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \mathbf{M}_{RB}^{CG} \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \begin{bmatrix} \dot{\mathbf{v}}_{b/n}^b \\ \dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} + \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \mathbf{C}_{RB}^{CG} \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b \\ \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{f}_g^b \\ \mathbf{m}_g^b \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.25)$$

We now define two new matrices in CO according to

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}^{CO} := \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \mathbf{M}_{RB}^{CG} \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \quad (3.26)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}^{CO} := \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \mathbf{C}_{RB}^{CG} \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \quad (3.27)$$

Expanding these expressions gives

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}^{CO} = \begin{bmatrix} m\mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} & -m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \\ m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) & \mathbf{I}_g - m\mathbf{S}^2(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.28)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}^{CO} = \begin{bmatrix} m\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b) & -m\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \\ m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b) & -\mathbf{S}((\mathbf{I}_g - m\mathbf{S}^2(\mathbf{r}_g^b))\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b) \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.29)$$

where we have used the fact that

$$m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{S}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b - \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{I}_g\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \equiv \mathbf{S}((\mathbf{I}_g - m\mathbf{S}^2(\mathbf{r}_g^b))\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \quad (3.30)$$

### 3.2.1 Translational Motion about CO

From the first row in (3.25) with matrices (3.28) and (3.29) it is seen that the translational motion about CO satisfies

$$m[\dot{\mathbf{v}}_{b/n}^b + \mathbf{S}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}_{b/n}^b + \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b + \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{S}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b] = \mathbf{f}_g^b \quad (3.31)$$

Since the translational motion is independent of the attack point of the external force  $\mathbf{f}_g^b = \mathbf{f}_b^b$  it follows that

$$m[\dot{\mathbf{v}}_{b/n}^b + \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{r}_g^b + \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b + \mathbf{S}^2(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{r}_g^b] = \mathbf{f}_b^b \quad (3.32)$$

where we have exploited the fact that  $\mathbf{S}^\top(\mathbf{a})\mathbf{b} = -\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{a})\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{b})\mathbf{a}$ . An alternative representation of (3.32) using vector cross-products is

$$m[\dot{\mathbf{v}}_{b/n}^b + \dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}_{b/n}^b \times \mathbf{r}_g^b + \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \times \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b + \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \times (\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \times \mathbf{r}_g^b)] = \mathbf{f}_b^b \quad (3.33)$$

### 3.2.2 Rotational Motion about CO

In order to express the rotational motion (attitude dynamics) about CO we will make use of the parallel-axes theorem that transforms the inertia matrix to an arbitrarily point.

#### Theorem 3.1 (Parallel-Axes Theorem or Huygens–Steiner Theorem)

The inertia matrix  $\mathbf{I}_b = \mathbf{I}_b^\top \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  about an arbitrary origin  $o_b$  is given by

$$\mathbf{I}_b = \mathbf{I}_g - m\mathbf{S}^2(\mathbf{r}_g^b) = \mathbf{I}_g - m(\mathbf{r}_g^b(\mathbf{r}_g^b)^\top - (\mathbf{r}_g^b)^\top \mathbf{r}_g^b \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3}) \quad (3.34)$$

where  $\mathbf{I}_g = \mathbf{I}_g^\top \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  is the inertia matrix about the body's center of gravity.

**Proof.** See Egeland and Gravdahl (2002).

The lower-right elements in (3.28) and (3.29) can be reformulated by using the parallel-axes theorem. For instance,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{I}_g + m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\mathbf{S}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b) &= \mathbf{I}_g - m\mathbf{S}^2(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \\ &= \mathbf{I}_b \end{aligned} \quad (3.35)$$

while the quadratic term in (3.29) satisfies (follows from the Jacobi identity)

$$\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{S}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b = -\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{S}^2(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \quad (3.36)$$

such that

$$m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{S}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b + \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{I}_g\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b = \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{I}_b\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \quad (3.37)$$

Consequently, the rotational motion about CO is given by the last row in (3.25):

$$\mathbf{I}_b\dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}_{b/n}^b + \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{I}_b\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b + m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\dot{\mathbf{v}}_{b/n}^b + m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b = \mathbf{m}_b^b \quad (3.38)$$

where the moment about CO is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{m}_b^b &= \mathbf{m}_g^b + \mathbf{r}_g^b \times \mathbf{f}_g^b \\ &= \mathbf{m}_g^b + \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\mathbf{f}_g^b \end{aligned} \quad (3.39)$$

Equation (3.38) can be written in cross-product form as

$$\mathbf{I}_b\dot{\boldsymbol{\omega}}_{b/n}^b + \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \times \mathbf{I}_b\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b + m\mathbf{r}_g^b \times (\dot{\mathbf{v}}_{b/n}^b + \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \times \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b) = \mathbf{m}_b^b \quad (3.40)$$

### 3.3 Rigid-Body Equations of Motion

In the previous sections it was shown how the rigid-body kinetics can be derived by applying *Newtonian* mechanics. In this section, useful properties of the equations of motion are discussed and it is also demonstrated how these properties considerably simplify the representation of the nonlinear equations of motion.

#### 3.3.1 Nonlinear 6 DOF Rigid-Body Equations of Motion

Equations (3.33) and (3.40) are usually written in component form according to the SNAME (1950) notation by defining:

- $\mathbf{f}_b^b = [X, Y, Z]^\top$  - force through  $o_b$  expressed in  $\{b\}$
- $\mathbf{m}_b^b = [K, M, N]^\top$  - moment about  $o_b$  expressed in  $\{b\}$
- $\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b = [u, v, w]^\top$  - linear velocity of  $o_b$  relative  $o_n$  expressed in  $\{b\}$
- $\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b = [p, q, r]^\top$  - angular velocity of  $\{b\}$  relative to  $\{n\}$  expressed in  $\{b\}$
- $\mathbf{r}_g^b = [x_g, y_g, z_g]^\top$  - vector from  $o_b$  to CG expressed in  $\{b\}$

Applying this notation, (3.33) and (3.40) become

$$\begin{aligned}
 m[\dot{u} - vr + wq - x_g(q^2 + r^2) + y_g(pq - \dot{r}) + z_g(pr + \dot{q})] &= X \\
 m[\dot{v} - wp + ur - y_g(r^2 + p^2) + z_g(qr - \dot{p}) + x_g(qp + \dot{r})] &= Y \\
 m[\dot{w} - uq + vp - z_g(p^2 + q^2) + x_g(rp - \dot{q}) + y_g(rq + \dot{p})] &= Z \\
 I_x\dot{p} + (I_z - I_y)qr - (\dot{r} + pq)I_{xz} + (r^2 - q^2)I_{yz} + (pr - \dot{q})I_{xy} \\
 +m[y_g(\dot{w} - uq + vp) - z_g(\dot{v} - wp + ur)] &= K \\
 I_y\dot{q} + (I_x - I_z)rp - (\dot{p} + qr)I_{xy} + (p^2 - r^2)I_{zx} + (qp - \dot{r})I_{yz} \\
 +m[z_g(\dot{u} - vr + wq) - x_g(\dot{w} - uq + vp)] &= M \\
 I_z\dot{r} + (I_y - I_x)pq - (\dot{q} + rp)I_{yz} + (q^2 - p^2)I_{xy} + (rq - \dot{p})I_{zx} \\
 +m[x_g(\dot{v} - wp + ur) - y_g(\dot{u} - vr + wq)] &= N
 \end{aligned} \tag{3.41}$$

The first three equations represent the translational motion, while the last three equations represent the rotational motion.

### Vectorial Representation

The rigid-body kinetics (3.41) can be expressed in a vectorial setting as (Fossen, 1991)

$$\boldsymbol{M}_{RB}\dot{\boldsymbol{v}} + \boldsymbol{C}_{RB}(\boldsymbol{v})\boldsymbol{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} \tag{3.42}$$

where  $\boldsymbol{v} = [u, v, w, p, q, r]^T$  is the generalized velocity vector expressed in  $\{b\}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} = [X, Y, Z, K, M, N]^T$  is a generalized vector of external forces and moments.

#### **Property 3.1 (Rigid-Body System Inertia Matrix $\boldsymbol{M}_{RB}$ )**

The representation of the rigid-body system inertia matrix  $\boldsymbol{M}_{RB}$  is unique and satisfies

$$\boldsymbol{M}_{RB} = \boldsymbol{M}_{RB}^\top > 0, \quad \dot{\boldsymbol{M}}_{RB} = \mathbf{0}_{6 \times 6} \tag{3.43}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
 \boldsymbol{M}_{RB} &= \begin{bmatrix} m\mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} & -m\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{r}_g^b) \\ m\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{r}_g^b) & \mathbf{I}_b \end{bmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{bmatrix} m & 0 & 0 & 0 & mz_g & -my_g \\ 0 & m & 0 & -mz_g & 0 & mx_g \\ 0 & 0 & m & my_g & -mx_g & 0 \\ 0 & -mz_g & my_g & I_x & -I_{xy} & -I_{xz} \\ mz_g & 0 & -mx_g & -I_{yx} & I_y & -I_{yz} \\ -my_g & mx_g & 0 & -I_{zx} & -I_{zy} & I_z \end{bmatrix} \tag{3.44}
 \end{aligned}$$

Here,  $I_{3 \times 3}$  is the identity matrix,  $I_b = I_b^\top > 0$  is the inertia matrix according to Definition 3.1 and  $S(\mathbf{r}_g^b)$  is a skew-symmetric matrix according to Definition 2.2.

### Matlab

The rigid-body system inertia matrix  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}$  can be computed in Matlab as

```
r_g = [10 0 1]' % location of the CG with respect to CO
nu = [10 0 1 0 0 1]' % velocity vector
I_g = 10000*eye(3) % inertia tensor
m = 1000; % mass

% rigid-body system inertia matrix
MRB = [ m*eye(3) -m*Smtx(r_g)
          m*Smtx(r_g) I_g ]
```

which produces the numerical result

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB} = \begin{bmatrix} 1000 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1000 & 0 \\ 0 & 1000 & 0 & -1000 & 0 & 10000 \\ 0 & 0 & 1000 & 0 & -10000 & 0 \\ 0 & -1000 & 0 & 10000 & 0 & 0 \\ 1000 & 0 & -10000 & 0 & 10000 & 0 \\ 0 & 10000 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 10000 \end{bmatrix}$$

The matrix  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}$  in (3.42) represents the Coriolis vector term  $\omega_{b/n}^b \times \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b$  and the centripetal vector term  $\omega_{b/n}^b \times (\omega_{b/n}^b \times \mathbf{r}_g^b)$ . Contrary to the representation of  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}$ , it is possible to find a large number of representations for the matrix  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}$ .

### Theorem 3.2 (Coriolis–Centripetal Matrix from System Inertia Matrix)

Let  $\mathbf{M}$  be a  $6 \times 6$  system inertia matrix defined as

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{M}_{11} & \mathbf{M}_{12} \\ \mathbf{M}_{21} & \mathbf{M}_{22} \end{bmatrix} > 0 \quad (3.45)$$

where  $\mathbf{M}_{21} = \mathbf{M}_{12}^\top$ . Then the Coriolis–centripetal matrix can always be parameterized such that  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) = -\mathbf{C}^\top(\mathbf{v})$  by choosing (Sagatun and Fossen, 1991)

$$\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & -\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{M}_{11}\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{M}_{12}\mathbf{v}_2) \\ -\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{M}_{11}\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{M}_{12}\mathbf{v}_2) & -\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{M}_{21}\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{M}_{22}\mathbf{v}_2) \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.46)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}_1 := \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b = [u, v, w]^\top$ ,  $\mathbf{v}_2 := \omega_{b/n}^b = [p, q, r]^\top$  and  $\mathbf{S}$  is the cross-product operator according to Definition 2.2.

**Proof.** The kinetic energy  $T$  is written in the quadratic form:

$$T = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{M} \mathbf{v}, \quad \mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top > 0 \quad (3.47)$$

Expanding this expression yields

$$T = \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{v}_1^\top \mathbf{M}_{11} \mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_1^\top \mathbf{M}_{12} \mathbf{v}_2 + \mathbf{v}_2^\top \mathbf{M}_{21} \mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2^\top \mathbf{M}_{22} \mathbf{v}_2) \quad (3.48)$$

where  $\mathbf{M}_{12} = \mathbf{M}_{21}^\top$  and  $\mathbf{M}_{21} = \mathbf{M}_{12}^\top$ . This gives

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_1} = \mathbf{M}_{11} \mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{M}_{12} \mathbf{v}_2 \quad (3.49)$$

$$\frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_2} = \mathbf{M}_{21} \mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{M}_{22} \mathbf{v}_2 \quad (3.50)$$

Using Kirchhoff's equations (Kirchhoff, 1869):

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_1} \right) + \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2) \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_1} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_1 \quad (3.51)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_2} \right) + \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2) \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_2} + \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_1) \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_1} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_2 \quad (3.52)$$

where  $\mathbf{S}$  is the skew-symmetric cross-product operator in Definition 2.2, it is seen that there are some terms dependent on acceleration, that is  $(d/dt)(\partial T/\partial \mathbf{v}_1)$  and  $(d/dt)(\partial T/\partial \mathbf{v}_2)$ . The remaining terms are due to Coriolis–centripetal forces. Consequently,

$$\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{v} := \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2) \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_1} \\ \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2) \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_2} + \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_1) \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & -\mathbf{S}(\frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_1}) \\ -\mathbf{S}(\frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_1}) & -\mathbf{S}(\frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_2}) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_1 \\ \mathbf{v}_2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.53)$$

which after substitution of (3.49) and (3.50) gives (3.46); see Sagatun and Fossen (1991) for the original proof of this theorem.

We next state some useful properties of the Coriolis and centripetal matrix  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})$ .

**Property 3.2 (Rigid-Body Coriolis and Centripetal Matrix  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}$ )**

According to Theorem 3.2 the rigid-body Coriolis and centripetal matrix  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})$  can always be represented such that  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})$  is skew-symmetric. Moreover,

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) = -\mathbf{C}_{RB}^\top(\mathbf{v}), \quad \forall \mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^6 \quad (3.54)$$

The skew-symmetric property is very useful when designing a nonlinear motion control system since the quadratic form  $\mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{v} \equiv 0$ . This is exploited in energy-based designs where Lyapunov functions play a key role. The same property is also used in nonlinear observer design. There exist several parametrizations that satisfy Property 3.2. Two of them are presented below:

**1. Lagrangian parametrization:** Application of Theorem 3.2 with  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}_{RB}$  yields the following expression:

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & -m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_1) - m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2)\mathbf{r}_g^b) \\ -m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_1) - m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2)\mathbf{r}_g^b) & m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_1)\mathbf{r}_g^b) - \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{I}_b\mathbf{v}_2) \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.55)$$

which can be rewritten according to (Fossen and Fjellstad, 1995)

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & -m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_1) - m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2)\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \\ -m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_1) + m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2) & -\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{I}_b\mathbf{v}_2) \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.56)$$

In order to ensure that  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) = -\mathbf{C}_{RB}^\top(\mathbf{v})$ , it is necessary to use  $\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_1)\mathbf{v}_1 = \mathbf{0}$  and include  $\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_1)$  in  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}^{(21)}$ .

**2. Velocity-independent parametrizations:** By using the cross-product property  $\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_1)\mathbf{v}_2 = -\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2)\mathbf{v}_1$ , it is possible to move  $\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_1)\mathbf{v}_2$  from  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}^{(12)}$  to  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}^{(11)}$  in (3.55). This gives an expression for  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})$  that is independent of linear velocity  $\mathbf{v}_1$  (Fossen and Fjellstad, 1995):

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2) & -m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2)\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \\ m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2) & -\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{I}_b\mathbf{v}_2) \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.57)$$

Notice that this expression is similar to (3.29) which was derived using Newton–Euler equations.

### Remark 3.1.

Expression (3.57) is useful when ocean currents enter the equations of motion. The main reason for this is that  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})$  does not depend on linear velocity  $\mathbf{v}_1$  (uses only angular velocity  $\mathbf{v}_2$  and lever arm  $\mathbf{r}_g^b$ ). This can be further exploited when considering a marine craft exposed to irrotational ocean currents. According to Property 8.1 in Section 8.3:

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} \equiv \mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r \quad (3.58)$$

if the relative velocity vector  $\mathbf{v}_r = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_c$  is defined such that only linear current velocities are used:

$$\mathbf{v} := [u_c, v_c, w_c, 0, 0, 0]^\top \quad (3.59)$$

Since the ocean current (3.59) is assumed to be irrotational, Equation (3.58) can be proven using parametrization (3.57). The details are outlined in Section 8.3.

### Component Form

To illustrate the complexity of 6 DOF modeling, the rigid-body Coriolis and centripetal terms in expression (3.55) are expanded according to give (Fossen, 1991)

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -m(y_g q + z_g r) & m(y_g p + w) & m(z_g p - v) \\ m(x_g q - w) & -m(z_g r + x_g p) & m(z_g q + u) \\ m(x_g r + v) & m(y_g r - u) & -m(x_g p + y_g q) \\ m(y_g q + z_g r) & -m(x_g q - w) & -m(x_g r + v) \\ -m(y_g p + w) & m(z_g r + x_g p) & -m(y_g r - u) \\ -m(z_g p - v) & -m(z_g q + u) & m(x_g p + y_g q) \\ 0 & -I_{yz}q - I_{xz}p + I_zr & I_{yz}r + I_{xy}p - I_yq \\ I_{yz}q + I_{xz}p - I_zr & 0 & -I_{xz}r - I_{xy}q + I_xp \\ -I_{yz}r - I_{xy}p + I_yq & I_{xz}r + I_{xy}q - I_xp & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.60)$$

### Matlab

Theorem 3.2 is implemented in the Matlab MSS toolbox in the function `m2c.m`. The following example demonstrates how  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})$  can be computed numerically using the command

```
% rigid-body system inertia matrix
MRB = [1000*eye(3) zeros(3,3)
        zeros(3,3) 10000*eye(3)];

% rigid-body Coriolis and centripetal matrix
nu = [10 1 1 1 2 3]';
CRB = m2c(MRB,nu)
```

which produces the numerical result

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1000 & -1000 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1000 & 0 & 10000 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1000 & -10000 & 0 \\ 0 & 1000 & -1000 & 0 & 30000 & -20000 \\ -1000 & 0 & 10000 & -30000 & 0 & 10000 \\ 1000 & -10000 & 0 & 20000 & -10000 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

### 3.3.2 Linearized 6 DOF Rigid-Body Equations of Motion

The rigid-body equations of motion (3.42) can be linearized about  $\mathbf{v}_0 = [U, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0]^\top$  for a marine craft moving at forward speed  $U$ . This gives

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}^*\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} \quad (3.61)$$

where

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}^* = \mathbf{M}_{RB}\mathbf{L}\mathbf{U} \quad (3.62)$$

and  $\mathbf{L}$  is a selection matrix

$$\mathbf{L} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.63)$$

The linearized Coriolis and centripetal forces are recognized as

$$\mathbf{f}_c = \mathbf{C}_{RB}^*\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ mUr \\ -mUq \\ -my_gUq - mz_gUr \\ mx_gUq \\ mx_gUr \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.64)$$

### Simplified 6 DOF Rigid-Body Equations of Motion

The rigid-body equations of motion can be simplified by choosing the origin of the body-fixed coordinate system according to the following criteria:

- 1. Origin CO coincides with the CG:** This implies that  $\mathbf{r}_g^b = [0, 0, 0]^\top$ ,  $\mathbf{I}_b = \mathbf{I}_g$  (see Theorem 3.1), and

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB} = \begin{bmatrix} m\mathbf{I}_{3\times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3\times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3\times 3} & \mathbf{I}_g \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.65)$$

A further simplification is obtained when the body axes ( $x_b, y_b, z_b$ ) coincide with the principal axes of inertia. This implies that  $\mathbf{I}_g = \text{diag}\{I_x^{cg}, I_y^{cg}, I_z^{cg}\}$ .

- 2. Translation of the origin CO such that  $\mathbf{I}_b$  becomes diagonal:** It is often convenient to let the body axes coincide with the principal axes of inertia or the longitudinal, lateral and normal symmetry axes of the craft. The origin of the body-fixed coordinate system can then be chosen such that the inertia matrix of the body-fixed coordinate system will be diagonal, that is  $\mathbf{I}_b = \text{diag}\{I_x, I_y, I_z\}$ , by applying

the parallel-axes theorem; see Theorem 3.1. Expanding (3.34) with  $\mathbf{I}_b = \text{diag}\{I_x, I_y, I_z\}$  and  $\mathbf{I}_g$  as a full matrix yields the following set of equations:

$$\begin{aligned} I_x &= I_x^{cg} + m(y_g^2 + z_g^2) \\ I_y &= I_y^{cg} + m(x_g^2 + z_g^2) \\ I_z &= I_z^{cg} + m(x_g^2 + y_g^2) \end{aligned} \quad (3.66)$$

where  $x_g$ ,  $y_g$  and  $z_g$  must be chosen such that

$$\begin{aligned} mI_{yz}^{cg}x_g^2 &= -I_{xy}^{cg}I_{xz}^{cg} \\ mI_{xz}^{cg}y_g^2 &= -I_{xy}^{cg}I_{yz}^{cg} \\ mI_{xy}^{cg}z_g^2 &= -I_{xz}^{cg}I_{yz}^{cg} \end{aligned} \quad (3.67)$$

are satisfied. For this case, (3.41) reduces to

$$\begin{aligned} m[\dot{u} - vr + wq - x_g(q^2 + r^2) + y_g(pq - \dot{r}) + z_g(pr + \dot{q})] &= X \\ m[\dot{v} - wp + ur - y_g(r^2 + p^2) + z_g(qr - \dot{p}) + x_g(qp + \dot{r})] &= Y \\ m[\dot{w} - uq + vp - z_g(p^2 + q^2) + x_g(rp - \dot{q}) + y_g(rq + \dot{p})] &= Z \\ I_x\dot{p} + (I_z - I_y)qr + m[y_g(\dot{w} - uq + vp) - z_g(\dot{v} - wp + ur)] &= K \\ I_y\dot{q} + (I_x - I_z)rp + m[z_g(\dot{u} - vr + wq) - x_g(\dot{w} - uq + vp)] &= M \\ I_z\dot{r} + (I_y - I_x)pq + m[x_g(\dot{v} - wp + ur) - y_g(\dot{u} - vr + wq)] &= N \end{aligned} \quad (3.68)$$

# 4

# Hydrostatics

Archimedes (287–212 BC) derived the basic laws of fluid statics that are the fundamentals of hydrostatics today. In hydrostatic terminology, the gravitational and buoyancy forces are called *restoring forces* and are equivalent to the spring forces in a *mass–damper–spring* system. In the derivation of the restoring forces and moments it will be distinguished between submersibles and surface vessels:

- Section 4.1: underwater vehicles (ROVs, AUVs and submarines).
- Section 4.2: surface vessels (ships, semi-submersibles, structures and high-speed craft).

For a floating or submerged vessel, the restoring forces are determined by the volume of the displaced fluid, the location of the center of buoyancy (CB), the area of the water plane and its associated moments. The forthcoming sections show how these quantities determine the heaving, rolling and pitching motions of a marine craft.

## 4.1 Restoring Forces for Underwater Vehicles

Consider the submarine in Figure 4.1 where the gravitational force  $f_g^b$  acts through the CG defined by the vector  $\mathbf{r}_g^b := [x_g, y_g, z_g]^\top$  with respect to CO. Similarly, the buoyancy force  $f_b^b$  acts through the CB defined by the vector  $\mathbf{r}_b^b := [x_b, y_b, z_b]^\top$  (see Section 2.1). Both vectors are referred to the body-fixed reference point CO.

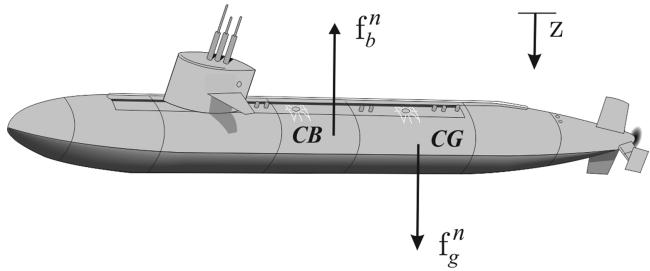
### 4.1.1 Hydrostatics of Submerged Vehicles

Let  $m$  be the mass of the vehicle including water in free floating space,  $\nabla$  the volume of fluid displaced by the vehicle,  $g$  the acceleration of gravity (positive downwards) and  $\rho$  the water density. According to the SNAME (1950) notation, the submerged weight of the body and buoyancy force are written as

$$W = mg, \quad B = \rho g \nabla \quad (4.1)$$

These forces act in the vertical plane of  $\{n\}$ . Hence,

$$\mathbf{f}_g^n = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ W \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{f}_b^n = - \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ B \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.2)$$



**Figure 4.1** Gravitational and buoyancy forces acting on the center of gravity (CG) and center of buoyancy (CB) of a submarine.

Notice that the  $z$  axis is taken to be positive downwards such that gravity is positive and buoyancy is negative. By applying the results from Section 2.2.1, the weight and buoyancy force can be expressed in  $\{b\}$  by

$$\mathbf{f}_g^b = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})^{-1} \mathbf{f}_g^n \quad (4.3)$$

$$\mathbf{f}_b^b = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})^{-1} \mathbf{f}_b^n \quad (4.4)$$

where  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})$  is the Euler angle coordinate transformation matrix defined in Section 2.2.1. According to (2.2), the sign of the restoring forces and moments  $\mathbf{f}_i^b$  and  $\mathbf{m}_i^b = \mathbf{r}_i^b \times \mathbf{f}_i^b$ ,  $i \in \{g, b\}$ , must be changed when moving these terms to the left-hand side of (2.2) that is the vector  $\mathbf{g}(\eta)$ . Consequently, the restoring force and moment vector expressed in  $\{b\}$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{g}(\eta) &= - \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{f}_g^b + \mathbf{f}_b^b \\ \mathbf{r}_g^b \times \mathbf{f}_g^b + \mathbf{r}_b^b \times \mathbf{f}_b^b \end{bmatrix} \\ &= - \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})^{-1} (\mathbf{f}_g^n + \mathbf{f}_b^n) \\ \mathbf{r}_g^b \times \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})^{-1} \mathbf{f}_g^n + \mathbf{r}_b^b \times \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})^{-1} \mathbf{f}_b^n \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (4.5)$$

Expanding this expression yields

$$\mathbf{g}(\eta) = \begin{bmatrix} (W - B) \sin(\theta) \\ - (W - B) \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) \\ - (W - B) \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \\ - (y_g W - y_b B) \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) + (z_g W - z_b B) \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) \\ (z_g W - z_b B) \sin(\theta) + (x_g W - x_b B) \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \\ - (x_g W - x_b B) \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) - (y_g W - y_b B) \sin(\theta) \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.6)$$

**Matlab**

The restoring forces  $\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  can be computed by using the MSS toolbox commands:

```
r_g = [0, 0, 0]          % location of CG with respect to CO
r_b = [0, 0, -10]         % location of CB with respect to CO
m   = 1000                % mass
g   = 9.81                 % acceleration of gravity
W   = m*g;                % weight
B   = W;                  % buoyancy

% pitch and roll angles
theta = 10*(180/pi); phi = 30*(pi/180)

% g-vector
g = gvect(W,B,theta,phi,r_g,r_b)
```

The numerical result is:

$$\mathbf{g} = 10^4 \cdot [0, 0, 0, 1.8324, 9.0997, 0]^\top$$

Equation (4.6) is the Euler angle representation of the hydrostatic forces and moments. An alternative representation can be found by applying *unit quaternions*. Then  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\mathbf{q})$  replaces  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})$  in (4.3); see Section 2.2.2.

A neutrally buoyant underwater vehicle will satisfy

$$W = B \quad (4.7)$$

It is convenient to design underwater vehicles with  $B > W$  (positive buoyancy) such that the vehicle will surface automatically in the case of an emergency situation, for instance power failure. In this case, the magnitude of  $B$  should only be slightly larger than  $W$ . If the vehicle is designed such that  $B \gg W$ , too much control energy is needed to keep the vehicle submerged. Hence, a trade-off between positive buoyancy and controllability must be made.

**Example 4.1 (Neutrally Buoyant Underwater Vehicles)**

Let the distance between the CG and the CB be defined by the vector:<sup>1</sup>

$$\overline{BG} := [\overline{BG}_x, \overline{BG}_y, \overline{BG}_z]^\top = [x_g - x_b, y_g - y_b, z_g - z_b]^\top \quad (4.8)$$

For neutrally buoyant vehicles  $W = B$ , (4.6) therefore simplifies to

$$\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ -\overline{BG}_y W \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) + \overline{BG}_z W \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) \\ \overline{BG}_z W \sin(\theta) + \overline{BG}_x W \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \\ -\overline{BG}_x W \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) - \overline{BG}_y W \sin(\theta) \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.9)$$

<sup>1</sup> In hydrostatics it is common to denote the distance between two points A and B as  $\overline{AB}$ .

An even simpler representation is obtained for vehicles where the CG and CB are located vertically on the  $z$  axis, that is  $x_b = x_g$  and  $y_b = y_g$ . This yields

$$\mathbf{g}(\eta) = [0, 0, 0, \overline{BG}_z W \cos(\theta)\sin(\phi), \overline{BG}_z W \sin(\theta), 0]^\top \quad (4.10)$$

## 4.2 Restoring Forces for Surface Vessels

Formula (4.6) should only be used for completely submerged vehicles. Static stability considerations due to restoring forces are usually referred to as *metacentric stability* in the hydrostatic literature. A metacentric stable vessel will resist inclinations away from its steady-state or equilibrium points in heave, roll and pitch.

For surface vessels, the restoring forces will depend on the vessel's metacentric height, the location of the CG and the CB, as well as the shape and size of the water plane area. Let  $A_{wp}$  denote the water plane area and

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{GM}_T &= \text{transverse metacentric height (m)} \\ \overline{GM}_L &= \text{longitudinal metacentric height (m)}\end{aligned}\quad (4.11)$$

The metacentric height  $\overline{GM}_i$ , where  $i \in \{T, L\}$ , is the distance between the metacenter  $M_i$  and the CG, as shown in Figures 4.2 and 4.3.

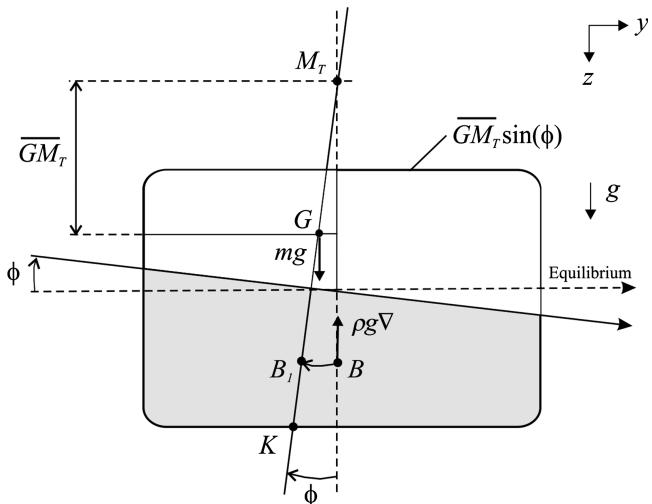
### Definition 4.1 (Metacenter)

The theoretical point at which an imaginary vertical line through the CB intersects another imaginary vertical line through a new CB created when the body is displaced, or tilted, in the water (see Figure 4.2).

#### 4.2.1 Hydrostatics of Floating Vessels

For a floating vessel at rest, Archimedes stated that buoyancy and weight are in balance:

$$mg = \rho g \nabla \quad (4.12)$$



**Figure 4.2** Transverse metacentric stability. Notice that  $mg = \rho g \nabla$ . A similar figure can be drawn to illustrate lateral metacentric stability by simply replacing  $M_T$  and  $\phi$  with  $M_L$  and  $\theta$ .

Let  $z$  denote the displacement in heave and let  $z = 0$  denote the equilibrium position corresponding to the nominal displaced water volume  $\nabla$ . Hence, the hydrostatic force in heave will be the difference between the gravitational and the buoyancy forces:

$$\begin{aligned} Z &= mg - \rho g [\nabla + \delta\nabla(z)] \\ &= -\rho g \delta\nabla(z) \end{aligned} \quad (4.13)$$

where the change in displaced water  $\delta\nabla(z)$  is due to variations in heave position  $z$ . This can be written

$$\delta\nabla(z) = \int_0^z A_{wp}(\xi) d\xi \quad (4.14)$$

where  $A_{wp}(\xi)$  is the water plane area of the vessel as a function of the heave position. For conventional rigs and ships, however, it is common to assume that  $A_{wp}(\xi) \approx A_{wp}(0)$  is constant for small perturbations in  $z$ . Hence, the restoring force  $Z$  will be linear in  $z$ , that is

$$Z \approx -\underbrace{\rho g A_{wp}(0)}_{Z_z} z \quad (4.15)$$

Recall that if a floating vessel is forced downwards by an external force such that  $z > 0$ , the buoyancy force becomes larger than the constant gravitational force since the submerged volume  $\nabla$  increases by  $\delta\nabla$  to  $\nabla + \delta\nabla$ . This is physically equivalent to a spring with stiffness  $Z_z = -\rho g A_{wp}(0)$  and position  $z$ . The restoring force expressed in  $\{b\}$ ,  $\delta f_r^b$ , can therefore be written

$$\begin{aligned} \delta f_r^b &= \mathbf{R}_b^n (\Theta_{nb})^{-1} \delta f_r^n \\ &= \mathbf{R}_b^n (\Theta_{nb})^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ -\rho g \int_0^z A_{wp}(\xi) d\xi \end{bmatrix} \\ &= -\rho g \begin{bmatrix} -\sin(\theta) \\ \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) \\ \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \end{bmatrix} \int_0^z A_{wp}(\xi) d\xi \end{aligned} \quad (4.16)$$

From Figure 4.2 it is seen that the moment arms in roll and pitch can be related to the moment arms  $G M_T \sin(\phi)$  and  $G M_L \sin(\theta)$  in roll and pitch, and a  $z$ -direction force pair with magnitude  $W = B = \rho g \nabla$ . Hence,

$$\mathbf{r}_r^b = \begin{bmatrix} -\overline{G M}_L \sin(\theta) \\ \overline{G M}_T \sin(\phi) \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.17)$$

$$\mathbf{f}_r^b = \mathbf{R}_b^n (\Theta_{nb})^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ -\rho g \nabla \end{bmatrix} = -\rho g \nabla \begin{bmatrix} -\sin(\theta) \\ \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) \\ \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.18)$$

Neglecting the moment contribution due to  $\delta f_r^b$  (only considering  $f_r^b$ ) implies that the restoring moment becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{m}_r^b &= \mathbf{r}_r^b \times \mathbf{f}_r^b \\ &= -\rho g \nabla \begin{bmatrix} \overline{GM}_T \sin(\phi) \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \\ \overline{GM}_L \sin(\theta) \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \\ (-\overline{GM}_L \cos(\theta) + \overline{GM}_T) \sin(\phi) \sin(\theta) \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (4.19)$$

The assumption that  $\mathbf{r}_r^b \times \delta \mathbf{f}_r^b = \mathbf{0}$  (no moments due to heave) is a good assumption since this term is small compared to  $\mathbf{r}_r^b \times \mathbf{f}_r^b$ . The restoring forces and moments are finally written

$$\mathbf{g}(\eta) = - \begin{bmatrix} \delta f_r^b \\ \mathbf{m}_r^b \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.20)$$

or in component form:

$$\mathbf{g}(\eta) = \begin{bmatrix} -\rho g \int_0^z A_{wp}(\zeta) d\zeta \sin(\theta) \\ \rho g \int_0^z A_{wp}(\zeta) d\zeta \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) \\ \rho g \int_0^z A_{wp}(\zeta) d\zeta \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \\ \rho g \nabla \overline{GM}_T \sin(\phi) \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \\ \rho g \nabla \overline{GM}_L \sin(\theta) \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \\ \rho g \nabla (-\overline{GM}_L \cos \theta + \overline{GM}_T) \sin(\phi) \sin(\theta) \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.21)$$

#### 4.2.2 Linear (Small Angle) Theory for Boxed-Shaped Vessels

For surface vessels it is convenient to use a linear approximation:

$$\mathbf{g}(\eta) \approx \mathbf{G}\eta \quad (4.22)$$

that can be derived by assuming that  $\phi$ ,  $\theta$  and  $z$  are small. Moreover, assuming that

$$\int_0^z A_{wp}(\zeta) d\zeta \approx A_{wp}(0)z$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(\theta) &\approx \theta, \quad \cos(\theta) \approx 1 \\ \sin(\phi) &\approx \phi, \quad \cos(\phi) \approx 1 \end{aligned}$$

implies that (4.21) can be written:

$$\mathbf{g}(\eta) \approx \begin{bmatrix} -\rho g A_{wp}(0) z \theta \\ \rho g A_{wp}(0) z \phi \\ \rho g A_{wp}(0) z \\ \rho g \nabla \overline{GM}_T \phi \\ \rho g \nabla \overline{GM}_L \theta \\ \rho g \nabla (-\overline{GM}_L + \overline{GM}_T) \phi \theta \end{bmatrix} \approx \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \rho g A_{wp}(0) z \\ \rho g \nabla \overline{GM}_T \phi \\ \rho g \nabla \overline{GM}_L \theta \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.23)$$

Hence,

$$\mathbf{G} = \text{diag}\{0, 0, \rho g A_{wp}(0), \rho g \nabla \overline{GM}_T, \rho g \nabla \overline{GM}_L, 0\} \quad (4.24)$$

which can be used in a linearized model:

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{Nv} + \mathbf{G}\eta + \mathbf{g}_o = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (4.25)$$

The restoring force matrix (4.24) is based on the assumption of  $yz$  symmetry (fore-aft symmetry). In the asymmetrical case  $\mathbf{G}$  takes the form

$$\mathbf{G} = \mathbf{G}^T = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -Z_z & 0 & -Z_\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -K_\phi & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -M_z & 0 & -M_\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} > 0 \quad (4.26)$$

where the elements in  $\mathbf{G}$  are computed in CF (see Section 2.1). Sometimes it is convenient to compute the data in CO and transform these to CF using (7.249) and (7.250). The coefficients in (4.26) are related to  $A_{wp}$ ,  $\nabla$ , CG and CB according to

$$-Z_z = \rho g A_{wp}(0) \quad (4.27)$$

$$-Z_\theta = \rho g \iint_{A_{wp}} x dA \quad (4.28)$$

$$-M_z = -Z_\theta \quad (4.29)$$

$$-K_\phi = \rho g \nabla(z_g - z_b) + \rho g \iint_{A_{wp}} y^2 dA = \rho g \nabla \overline{GM}_T \quad (4.30)$$

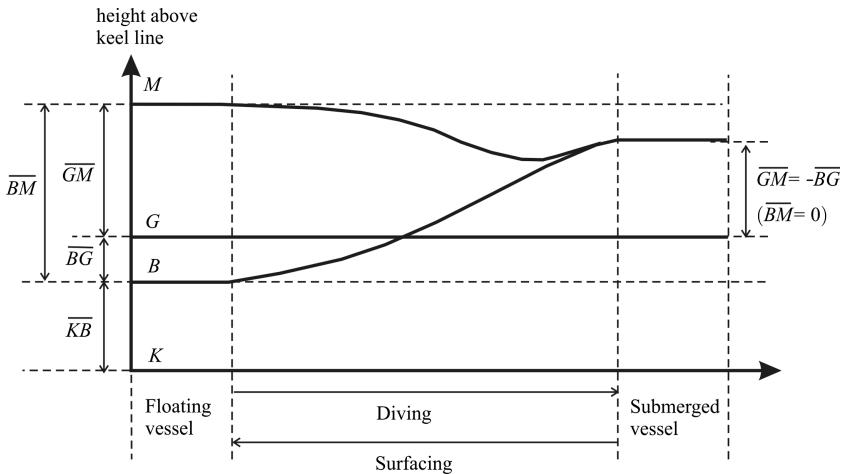
$$-M_\theta = \rho g \nabla(z_g - z_b) + \rho g \iint_{A_{wp}} x^2 dA = \rho g \nabla \overline{GM}_L \quad (4.31)$$

Notice that the integrals for the water plane area moments are defined about CF.

#### 4.2.3 Computation of Metacenter Height for Surface Vessels

The metacenter height can be computed by using basic hydrostatics:

$$\overline{GM}_T = \overline{BM}_T - \overline{BG}, \quad \overline{GM}_L = \overline{BM}_L - \overline{BG} \quad (4.32)$$



**Figure 4.3** Metacenter  $M$ , center of gravity  $G$  and center of buoyancy  $B$  for a submerged and a floating vessel.  $K$  is the keel line.

This relationship is seen directly from Figure 4.3, where  $M_T$  and  $M_L$  denote the transverse and longitudinal metacenters (intersections between the vertical lines through  $B$  and  $B_1$  when  $\phi$  and  $\theta$  approaches zero). The symbol  $K$  is used to denote the keel line. For small inclinations ( $\phi$  and  $\theta$  are small) the transverse and longitudinal radii of curvature can be approximated by

$$\overline{BM}_T = \frac{I_T}{\nabla}, \quad \overline{BM}_L = \frac{I_L}{\nabla} \quad (4.33)$$

where the moments of area about the water plane are defined as

$$I_L := \iint_{A_{wp}} x^2 dA, \quad I_T := \iint_{A_{wp}} y^2 dA \quad (4.34)$$

The integrals are computed about the CF or the centroid of the water plane  $A_{wp}$ . CF is located a distance LCF in the  $x$  direction along the centerline.

For conventional ships an upper bound on these integrals can be found by considering a rectangular water plane area  $A_{wp} = BL$  where  $B$  and  $L$  are the beam and length of the hull, respectively. This implies that

$$I_L < \frac{1}{12} L^3 B, \quad I_T < \frac{1}{12} B^3 L \quad (4.35)$$

These formulae can be used as a first estimate when simulating the vessel dynamics.

**Example 4.2 (Computation of GM Values)**

Consider a floating barge with length 100 m and width 8 m. The draft is 5 m while CG is located 3 m above the keel line ( $\overline{KG} = 3.0$  m). Since  $\overline{KB} = 2.5$  m, it follows that

$$\overline{BG} = \overline{KG} - \overline{KB} = 3 - 2.5 = 0.5 \text{ m} \quad (4.36)$$

Hence,

$$I_T = \frac{1}{12} B^3 L = \frac{1}{12} 8^3 \times 100 = 4\,266.7 \text{ m}^4 \quad (4.37)$$

$$I_L = \frac{1}{12} L^3 B = \frac{1}{12} 100^3 \times 8 = 666\,666.7 \text{ m}^4 \quad (4.38)$$

The volume displacement is

$$\nabla = 100 \times 8 \times 5 = 4\,000 \text{ m}^3 \quad (4.39)$$

Consequently,

$$\overline{BM}_T = \frac{I_T}{\nabla} = 2.08 \text{ m} \quad (4.40)$$

$$\overline{BM}_L = \frac{I_L}{\nabla} = 166.7 \text{ m} \quad (4.41)$$

Finally,

$$\overline{GM}_T = \overline{BM}_T - \overline{BG} = 2.08 - 0.5 = 1.58 \text{ m} \quad (4.42)$$

$$\overline{GM}_L = \overline{BM}_L - \overline{BG} = 166.7 - 0.5 = 166.2 \text{ m} \quad (4.43)$$

The corresponding metacentric heights are

$$\overline{KM}_T = \overline{KG} + \overline{GM}_T = 3 + 1.58 = 4.58 \text{ m} \quad (4.44)$$

$$\overline{KM}_L = \overline{KG} + \overline{GM}_L = 3 + 166.2 = 169.2 \text{ m} \quad (4.45)$$

**Definition 4.2 (Metacenter Stability)**

A floating vessel is said to be transverse metacentrically stable if

$$\overline{GM}_T \geq \overline{GM}_{T,\min} > 0 \quad (4.46)$$

and longitudinal metacentrically stable if

$$\overline{GM}_L \geq \overline{GM}_{L,\min} > 0 \quad (4.47)$$

The longitudinal stability requirement (4.47) is easy to satisfy for ships since the pitching motion is quite limited. The transverse requirement, however, is an important design criterion used to predescribe sufficient stability in roll to avoid the craft rolling around. For most ships  $\overline{GM}_{T,\min} > 0.5$  m while  $\overline{GM}_{L,\min}$  usually is much larger (more than 100 m).

If the transverse metacentric height  $\overline{GM}_T$  is large, the spring is stiff in roll and it is quite uncomfortable for passengers onboard the vessel. However, the stability margin and robustness to large transverse waves are good in this case. Consequently, a trade-off between stability and comfort should be made. Another point to consider is that all ships have varying load conditions. This implies that the pitch and roll periods will vary with the loads since  $\overline{GM}_T$  varies with the load. This is the topic for the next section.

### 4.3 Load Conditions and Natural Periods

The chosen load condition or weight distribution will determine the heave, roll and pitch periods of a marine craft. In a linear system, the natural periods will be independent of the coordinate origin if they are computed using the 6 DOF coupled equations of motion. This is due to the fact that the eigenvalues of a linear system do not change when applying a similarity transformation. However, it is not straightforward to use the linear equations of motion since the potential coefficients depend on the wave frequency. In Section 6.2, the zero-frequency added mass and potential damping coefficients were used in surge, sway and yaw while for heave, roll and pitch the natural frequencies were used. In the 6 DOF coupled case a frequency-dependent modal analysis can be used to compute the natural frequencies.

#### 4.3.1 Decoupled Computation of Natural Periods

Consider the linear decoupled heave, roll and pitch equations:

$$[m + A_{33}(\omega_{\text{heave}})]\ddot{z} + B_{33}(\omega_{\text{heave}})w + C_{33}z = 0 \quad (4.48)$$

$$[I_x + A_{44}(\omega_{\text{roll}})]\ddot{p} + B_{44}(\omega_{\text{roll}})p + C_{44}\phi = 0 \quad (4.49)$$

$$[I_y + A_{55}(\omega_{\text{pitch}})]\ddot{q} + B_{55}(\omega_{\text{pitch}})q + C_{55}\theta = 0 \quad (4.50)$$

where the potential coefficients  $A_{ii}$  and  $B_{ii}$  ( $i = 3, 4, 5$ ), spring stiffness  $C_{ii}$  ( $i = 3, 4, 5$ ) and moments of inertia  $I_x$  and  $I_y$  are computed in the CF, which is the vessel rotation point for a pure rolling or pitching motion. In the coupled case, the point of rotation as well as the rotation axes will change. If CF is unknown, a good approximation is to use the midships origin CO. This will only affect the pitching frequency, which is not very sensitive to small translations along the  $x$  axis. If the natural frequencies are computed in a point far from CF using the decoupled equations (4.48)–(4.50), the results can be erroneous since the eigenvalues of the decoupled equations depend on the coordinate origin as opposed to the 6 DOF coupled system.

From (4.48)–(4.50) it follows that the natural frequencies and periods of heave, roll and pitch in the CF are given by the implicit equations:

$$\omega_{\text{heave}} = \sqrt{\frac{C_{33}}{m + A_{33}(\omega_{\text{heave}})}}, \quad T_{\text{heave}} = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_{\text{heave}}} \quad (4.51)$$

$$\omega_{\text{roll}} = \sqrt{\frac{C_{44}}{I_x + A_{44}(\omega_{\text{roll}})}}, \quad T_{\text{roll}} = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_{\text{roll}}} \quad (4.52)$$

$$\omega_{\text{pitch}} = \sqrt{\frac{C_{55}}{I_y + A_{55}(\omega_{\text{pitch}})}}, \quad T_{\text{pitch}} = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_{\text{pitch}}} \quad (4.53)$$

which can be solved using the *Newton–Raphson method*:

$$\omega_{n+1} = \omega_n - \frac{f(\omega_n)}{f'(\omega_n)} \quad (4.54)$$

where

$$f(\omega_n) = \omega_n - \sqrt{\frac{C}{M + A(\omega_n)}} \quad (4.55)$$

$$f'(\omega_n) = 1 + \frac{A}{2[M + A(\omega_n)]} \sqrt{\frac{C}{M + A(\omega_n)}} \quad (4.56)$$

with obvious choices of  $M$ ,  $A$  and  $C$ . This is implemented in the MSS toolbox as:

### Matlab

1 DOF decoupled analysis for the tanker model:

```
w_n = natfrequency(vessel,dof,w_0,speed,LCF)

vessel = MSS vessel data (computed in CO)
dof = degree of freedom (3,4,5), use -1 for 6 DOF analysis
w_0    = initial natural frequency (typical 0.5)
speed   = speed index 1,2,3...
LCF     = (optionally) longitudinal distance to CF from CO
```

Natural periods:

```
load tanker
T_heave = 2*pi/natfrequency(vessel,3,0.5,1)
T_roll  = 2*pi/natfrequency(vessel,4,0.5,1)
T_pitch = 2*pi/natfrequency(vessel,5,0.5,1)
```

This gives  $T_{\text{heave}} = 9.68$  s,  $T_{\text{roll}} = 12.84$  s and  $T_{\text{pitch}} = 9.14$  s.

### 4.3.2 Computation of Natural Periods in a 6 DOF Coupled System

A 6 DOF coupled analysis of the frequency-dependent data can be done by using modal analysis. The coupled system can be transformed to six decoupled systems and the natural frequencies can be computed for each of them. This involves solving a generalized eigenvalue problem at each frequency.

Consider the linear seakeeping model:

$$[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\omega)]\ddot{\xi} + [\mathbf{B}(\omega) + \mathbf{B}_V(\omega) + \mathbf{K}_d]\dot{\xi} + [\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{K}_p]\xi = \mathbf{0} \quad (4.57)$$

where  $\mathbf{K}_p$  and  $\mathbf{K}_d$  are optional positive definite matrices due to feedback control,  $\mathbf{A}(\omega)$  and  $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$  are frequency-dependent added mass and potential damping (see Section 5.3) while  $\mathbf{B}_V(\omega)$  denotes additional viscous damping. Let

$$\mathbf{M}(\omega) = \mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\omega) \quad (4.58)$$

$$\mathbf{D}(\omega) = \mathbf{B}(\omega) + \mathbf{B}_V(\omega) + \mathbf{K}_d \quad (4.59)$$

$$\mathbf{G} = \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{K}_p \quad (4.60)$$

where  $\mathbf{M}(\omega) = \mathbf{M}(\omega)^\top > 0$  and  $\mathbf{D}(\omega) = \mathbf{D}(\omega)^\top > 0$  such that

$$\mathbf{M}(\omega)\ddot{\xi} + \mathbf{D}(\omega)\dot{\xi} + \mathbf{G}\xi = \mathbf{0} \quad (4.61)$$

For surface vessels, the restoring matrix takes the following form (see Section 4.2):

$$\mathbf{G} = \mathbf{G}^\top = \begin{bmatrix} K_{p11} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & K_{p22} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & C_{33} & 0 & C_{35} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & C_{44} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & C_{53} & 0 & C_{55} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & K_{p66} \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.62)$$

Notice that  $K_{p11}$ ,  $K_{p22}$  and  $K_{p66}$  must be positive to guarantee that  $\mathbf{G} > 0$ . Assume that the floating vessel under PD control carries out oscillations in 6 DOF:

$$\xi = \mathbf{a} \cos(\omega t) \quad (4.63)$$

where  $\mathbf{a} = [a_1, \dots, a_6]^\top$  is a vector of amplitudes. Then,

$$[\mathbf{G} - \omega^2 \mathbf{M}(\omega) - j\omega \mathbf{D}(\omega)] \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0} \quad (4.64)$$

The natural frequencies can be computed for the undamped system  $\mathbf{D}(\omega) = \mathbf{0}$  by solving

$$[\mathbf{G} - \omega^2 \mathbf{M}(\omega)] \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0} \quad (4.65)$$

The natural frequencies of a marine craft are usually shifted less than 1.0 % when damping is added. Hence, the undamped system (4.65) gives an accurate estimate of the frequencies of oscillation.

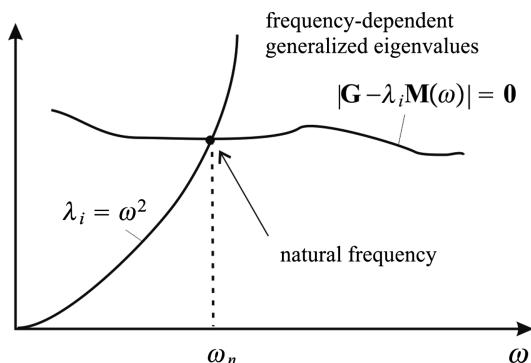
Equation (4.65) represents a frequency-dependent *generalized eigenvalue problem*:

$$\mathbf{G}\mathbf{x}_i = \lambda_i \mathbf{M}(\omega)\mathbf{x}_i \quad (i = 1, \dots, 6) \quad (4.66)$$

where  $\mathbf{x}_i$  is the eigenvector and  $\lambda_i = \omega^2$  are the eigenvalues. This is recognized as an algebraic equation:

$$|\mathbf{G} - \lambda_i \mathbf{M}(\omega)| = \mathbf{0} \quad (4.67)$$

where  $\lambda_i$  is an eigenvalue satisfying (see Figure 4.4):



**Figure 4.4** For 6 DOF coupled generalized eigenvalues.

$$\lambda_i = \omega^2 \quad (4.68)$$

The characteristic equation of (4.67) is of sixth order:

$$\lambda^6 + a_5\lambda^5 + a_4\lambda^4 + a_3\lambda^3 + a_2\lambda^2 + a_1\lambda + a_0 = 0 \quad (4.69)$$

Let the solutions of the eigenvalue problem (4.67) as a function of  $\omega$  be denoted  $\lambda_i^*(\omega)$ . Then we can use the *Newton–Raphson method*:

$$\omega_{i,k+1} = \omega_{i,k} - \frac{f_i(\omega_{i,k})}{f'_i(\omega_{i,k})} \quad (i = 1, \dots, 6, k = 1, \dots, n) \quad (4.70)$$

where  $k$  denotes the number of iterations,  $i$  is the DOF considered and

$$f_i(\omega_{i,k}) = \lambda_i^*(\omega_{i,k}) - \omega_{i,k}^2 \quad (4.71)$$

to satisfy the constraint (4.68). After solving  $f_i(\omega_{i,k}) = 0$  for all DOFs to obtain  $\omega_{i,n}$ , the natural periods in 6 DOF follow from

$$T_i = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_{i,n}} \quad (4.72)$$

The presented algorithm in Section 4.3.2 is implemented in the MSS toolbox and the 6 DOF results for the MSS tanker model are obtained by considering:

### Matlab

6 DOF coupled analysis for the MSS tanker model:

```
dof = -1      % use -1 for 6 DOF analysis
load tanker
T = 2*pi./natfrequency(vessel,dof,0.5,1)
```

This gives  $T_{heave} = 9.83$  s,  $T_{roll} = 12.45$  s and  $T_{pitch} = 8.95$  s, which is quite close to the numbers obtained in the decoupled analysis in Section 4.3.1.

### 4.3.3 Natural Period as a Function of Load Condition

The roll and pitch periods will depend strongly on the load condition while heave is less affected. Consider the restoring terms (see Section 4.2.1)

$$C_{33} = \rho g A_{wp}(0) \quad (4.73)$$

$$C_{44} = \rho g \nabla \overline{GM}_T \quad (4.74)$$

$$C_{55} = \rho g \nabla \overline{GM}_L \quad (4.75)$$

for a floating vessel. It is noticed that  $A_{wp}(z) = A_{wp}(0) = \text{constant}$  for a box-shaped vessel while  $C_{44}$  and  $C_{55}$  varies with  $\overline{GM}_T$  and  $\overline{GM}_L$  as well as  $\nabla$ . Hence,

$$T_{heave} = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{m + A_{33}(\omega_{heave})}{\rho g A_{wp}(0)}} \quad (4.76)$$

$$T_{roll} = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{I_x + A_{44}(\omega_{roll})}{\rho g \nabla G M_T}} \quad (4.77)$$

$$T_{pitch} = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{I_x + A_{55}(\omega_{pitch})}{\rho g \nabla G M_L}} \quad (4.78)$$

To illustrate the sensitivity to variation in metacentric height one can parametrize the moments of inertia according to

$$I_x = m R_{44}^2 \quad (4.79)$$

$$I_y = m R_{55}^2 \quad (4.80)$$

where  $R_{44}$  and  $R_{55}$  are the radii of gyration. For offshore vessels  $R_{44} \approx 0.35B$  while tankers have  $R_{44} \approx 0.37B$ . Semi-submersibles have two or more pontoons so  $0.40B$  is not uncommon for these vessels. In pitch and yaw it is common to use  $R_{55} = R_{66} \approx 0.25L_{pp}$  for smaller vessels while tankers use  $R_{55} = R_{66} \approx 0.27L_{pp}$ .

Define  $\kappa$  as the ratio

$$\kappa := \frac{A_{44}(\omega_{roll})}{I_x}, \quad \kappa > 0 \quad (4.81)$$

Typical values are 0.1–0.3 for ships and 1.0 or more for semi-submersibles. This implies that

$$I_x + A_{44}(\omega_{roll}) = (1 + \kappa)m R_{44}^2 \quad (4.82)$$

The radius of gyration  $R_{44}$  is proportional with  $B$ . Let us define

$$R_{44} := aB \quad (4.83)$$

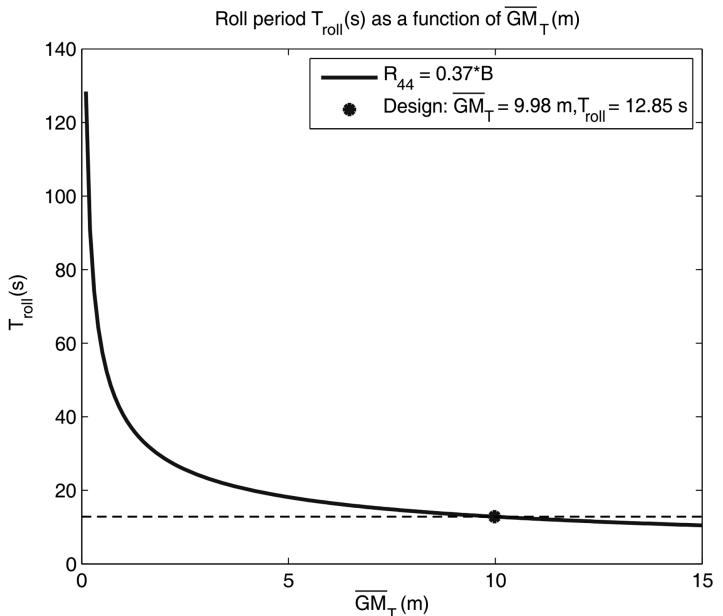
where  $a \approx 0.35\text{--}0.40$ . Then the roll period (4.77) can be expressed as

$$T_{roll} = \frac{cB}{\sqrt{\nabla G M_T}} \quad (4.84)$$

with

$$c = \frac{2\pi a \sqrt{(1 + \kappa)}}{\sqrt{g}} \quad (4.85)$$

where the  $c$  value for small cargo and passenger vessels is typically 0.77, supply vessel 0.80–0.82, large cargo vessels 0.85 and tankers and FPSOs 0.85–0.90. Semi-submersibles have large  $c$  values and 1.2 is not uncommon.



**Figure 4.5** Roll period  $T_{roll}$  as a function of  $\overline{GM}_T$  for given  $R_{44}$ .

### Matlab

The load condition data can be plotted using the MSS toolbox command:

```
loadcond(vessel)
```

The roll period as a function of  $\overline{GM}_T$  for the MSS Hydro tanker example is shown in Figure 4.5. It is seen that  $T_{roll}$  is reduced if  $\overline{GM}_T$  is increased and vice versa.

Many ships are equipped liquid tanks such as ballast and anti-roll tanks. A partially filled tank is known as a slack tank and in these tanks the liquid can move and endanger the ship's stability. The reduction of metacentric height caused by the liquids in slack tanks is known as the *free-surface effect*. The mass of the liquid or the location of the tanks have no role; it is only the moment of inertia of the surface that affects stability. The effective metacentric height corrected for slack tanks filled with sea water is (Brian, 2003)

$$\overline{GM}_{T,\text{eff}} = \overline{GM}_T - FSC \quad (4.86)$$

where the *free-surface correction* (FSC) is

$$FSC = \sum_{r=1}^N \frac{\rho}{m} i_r \quad (4.87)$$

where  $i_r$  is the moment of inertia of the water surface. For a rectangular tank with length  $l$  in the  $x$  direction and width  $b$  in the  $y$  direction, the moment of inertia of the surface about an axis through the centroid is

$$i_r = \frac{lb^3}{12} \quad (4.88)$$

A similar reduction in  $\overline{GM}_T$  is observed if a payload with mass  $m_p$  is lifted up and suspended at the end of a rope of length  $h$ . Then the effective metacentric height becomes

$$\overline{GM}_{T,\text{eff}} = \overline{GM}_T - h \frac{m_p}{m} \quad (4.89)$$

Consequently, it is important to notice that a reduction in  $\overline{GM}_T$  due to slack tanks or lift operations increases the roll period/passenger comfort to the cost of a less stable ship. These effects are also observed in pitch, but pitch is much less affected since  $\overline{GM}_L \gg \overline{GM}_T$ .

## 4.4 Ballast Systems

In addition to the metacentric restoring forces  $\mathbf{g}(\eta)$  described in Section 4.1, the equilibrium point can be changed by pretrimming, for instance by pumping water between the ballast tanks of the vessel. The vessel can only be trimmed in *heave*, *pitch* and *roll* where restoring forces are present.

Let the equilibrium point be

$$z = z_d, \quad \phi = \phi_d \quad \text{and} \quad \theta = \theta_d$$

where  $z_d$ ,  $\phi_d$  and  $\theta_d$  are the desired states. The equilibrium states corresponding to these values are found by considering the steady-state solution of

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{g}(\eta) + \mathbf{g}_o = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \underbrace{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}}_{\mathbf{w}} \quad (4.90)$$

which under assumption of zero acceleration/speed ( $\dot{\mathbf{v}} = \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$ ) and no control forces ( $\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{0}$ ) reduces to

$$\mathbf{g}(\eta_d) + \mathbf{g}_o = \mathbf{w} \quad (4.91)$$

where  $\eta_d = [-, -, z_d, \phi_d, \theta_d, -]^\top$ ; that is only three states are used for pretrimming.

The forces and moments  $\mathbf{g}_o$  due to the ballast tanks are computed using hydrostatic analyses. Consider a marine craft with  $n$  ballast tanks of volumes  $V_i \leq V_{i,\text{max}}$  ( $i = 1, \dots, n$ ). For each ballast tank the water volume is

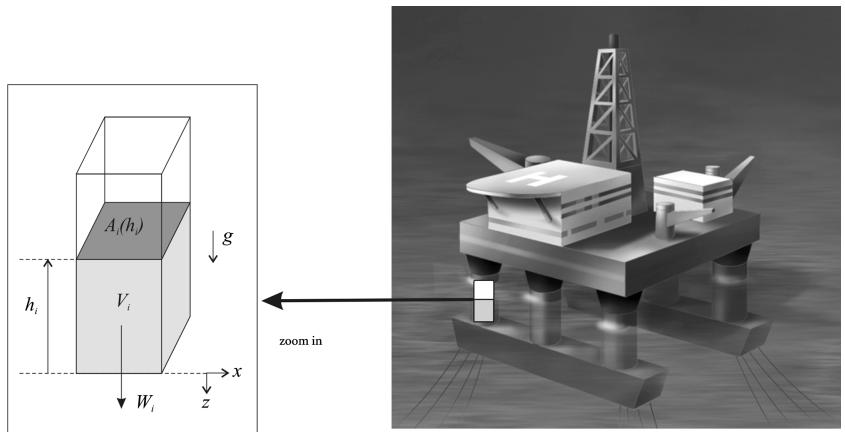
$$V_i(h_i) = \int_o^{h_i} A_i(h)dh \approx A_i h_i \quad (A_i(h) = \text{constant}) \quad (4.92)$$

where  $A_i(h)$  is the area of the ballast tank at height  $h$ . Hence, the volume of the water column in each ballast tank can be computed by measuring the water heights  $h_i$ . Next, assume that the ballast tanks are located at

$$\mathbf{r}_i^b = [x_i, y_i, z_i]^\top \quad (i = 1, \dots, n) \quad (4.93)$$

where  $\mathbf{r}_i^b$  is the vector from the coordinate origin CO to the geometric center of tank  $i$ . The gravitational forces  $W_i$  in heave are summed up according to (see Figure 4.6)

$$\begin{aligned} Z_{\text{ballast}} &= \sum_{i=1}^n W_i \\ &= \rho g \sum_{i=1}^n V_i \end{aligned} \quad (4.94)$$



**Figure 4.6** Semi-submersible ballast tanks. Illustration by Bjarne Stenberg.

The moments due to the ballast heave force  $\rho g V_i$  are then found from

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{m}_i &= \mathbf{r}_i \times \mathbf{f}_i \\
 &= \begin{bmatrix} x_i \\ y_i \\ z_i \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \rho g V_i \end{bmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{bmatrix} y_i \rho g V_i \\ -x_i \rho g V_i \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}
 \end{aligned} \tag{4.95}$$

implying that the roll and pitch moments due to ballast are

$$K_{\text{ballast}} = \rho g \sum_{i=1}^n y_i V_i \tag{4.96}$$

$$M_{\text{ballast}} = -\rho g \sum_{i=1}^n x_i V_i \tag{4.97}$$

Finally, this gives

$$\mathbf{g}_o = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ -Z_{\text{ballast}} \\ -K_{\text{ballast}} \\ -M_{\text{ballast}} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \rho g \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ -\sum_{i=1}^n V_i \\ -\sum_{i=1}^n y_i V_i \\ \sum_{i=1}^n x_i V_i \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{4.98}$$

## Metacentric Height Correction

Since ballast tanks are partially filled tanks of liquids, the restoring roll moment in  $\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta})$ , formula (4.30), will be affected. The formulae for the free-surface correction (4.86)–(4.87) can, however, be applied to correct the transverse metacentric height  $\overline{GM}_T$  in roll.

### 4.4.1 Conditions for Manual Pretrimming

Distribution of water between the ballast tanks can be done manually by pumping water until the desired water levels  $h_i$  in each tank are reached or automatically by using feedback control. For manual operation, the steady-state relationships between water levels  $h_i$  and the desired pretrimming values  $z_d$ ,  $\phi_d$  and  $\theta_d$  are needed. Trimming is usually done under the assumptions that  $\phi_d$  and  $\theta_d$  are small such that linear theory can be applied:

$$\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}_d) \approx \mathbf{G}\boldsymbol{\eta}_d \quad (4.99)$$

Since we are only concerned with the heave, roll and pitch modes it is convenient to use the 3 DOF reduced-order system:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{G}^{\{3,4,5\}} &= \begin{bmatrix} -Z_z & 0 & -Z_\theta \\ 0 & -K_\phi & 0 \\ -M_z & 0 & -M_\theta \end{bmatrix} \\ \mathbf{g}_o^{\{3,4,5\}} &= \rho g \begin{bmatrix} -\sum_{i=1}^n V_i \\ -\sum_{i=1}^n y_i V_i \\ \sum_{i=1}^n x_i V_i \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\boldsymbol{\eta}_d^{\{3,4,5\}} = [z_d, \phi_d, \theta_d]^\top$$

$$\mathbf{w}^{\{3,4,5\}} = [w_3, w_4, w_5]^\top$$

The key assumption for open-loop pretrimming is that  $\mathbf{w}^{\{3,4,5\}} = [w_3, w_4, w_5]^\top = \mathbf{0}$ , that is no disturbances in heave, roll and pitch. From (4.91) and (4.26) it follows that

$$\mathbf{G}^{\{3,4,5\}} \boldsymbol{\eta}_d^{\{3,4,5\}} + \mathbf{g}_o^{\{3,4,5\}} = \mathbf{0} \quad (4.100)$$

⇓

$$\begin{bmatrix} -Z_z & 0 & -Z_\theta \\ 0 & -K_\phi & 0 \\ -M_z & 0 & -M_\theta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_d \\ \phi_d \\ \theta_d \end{bmatrix} + \rho g \begin{bmatrix} -\sum_{i=1}^n V_i \\ -\sum_{i=1}^n y_i V_i \\ \sum_{i=1}^n x_i V_i \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{0}$$

This can be rewritten as

$$\mathbf{H}\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{y} \quad (4.101)$$

$\Downarrow$

$$\rho g \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \dots & 1 & 1 \\ y_1 & \dots & y_{n-1} & y_n \\ -x_1 & \dots & -x_{n-1} & -x_n \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} V_1 \\ V_2 \\ \vdots \\ V_n \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -Z_z z_d - Z_\theta \theta_d \\ -K_\phi \phi_d \\ -M_z z_d - M_\theta \theta_d \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.102)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}$  is a vector of tank volumes:

$$\mathbf{v} = [V_1, V_2, \dots, V_n]^\top \quad (4.103)$$

The tank volumes are computed from (4.101) by using the *Moore–Penrose pseudo-inverse*:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} &= \mathbf{H}^\dagger \mathbf{y} \\ &= \mathbf{H}^\top (\mathbf{H}\mathbf{H}^\top)^{-1} \mathbf{y} \end{aligned} \quad (4.104)$$

where it is assumed that  $n \geq 3$  and that  $\mathbf{H}\mathbf{H}^\top$  has full rank. Finally, the desired water heights can be computed from

$$V_i(h_i) = \int_o^{h_i} A_i(h) dh \quad (4.105)$$

$$\Downarrow \quad (A_i(h) = A_i)$$

$$h_i = \frac{V_i}{A_i} \quad (4.106)$$

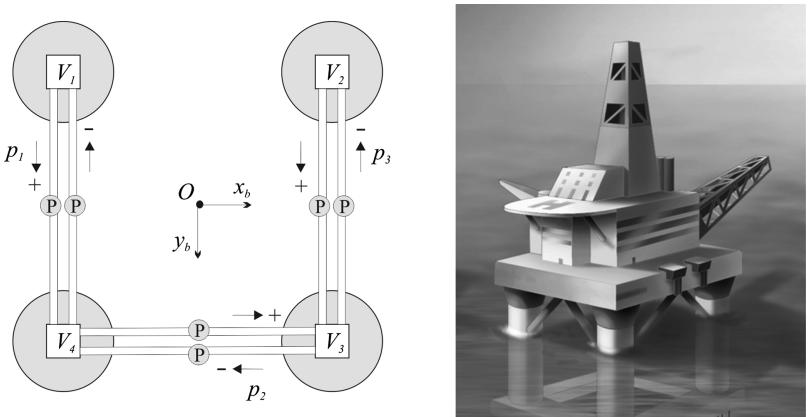
#### Example 4.3 (Semi-Submersible Ballast Control)

Consider the semi-submersible shown in Figure 4.7 with four ballast tanks located at  $\mathbf{r}_1^b = [-x, -y]$ ,  $\mathbf{r}_2^b = [x, -y]$ ,  $\mathbf{r}_3^b = [x, y]$  and  $\mathbf{r}_4^b = [-x, y]$ . In addition,  $yz$  symmetry implies that  $Z_\theta = M_z = 0$  while the diagonal elements in  $\mathbf{G}^{\{3,4,5\}}$  are nonzero. Consequently,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H} &= \rho g \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ -y & -y & y & y \\ x & -x & -x & x \end{bmatrix} \\ \mathbf{y} &= \begin{bmatrix} -Z_z z_d \\ -K_\phi \phi_d \\ -M_\theta \theta_d \end{bmatrix} = \rho g \begin{bmatrix} A_{wp}(0) z_d \\ \nabla \overline{GM}_T \phi_d \\ \nabla \overline{GM}_L \theta_d \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

The right pseudo-inverse of  $\mathbf{H}$  is

$$\mathbf{H}^\dagger = \mathbf{H}^\top (\mathbf{H}\mathbf{H}^\top)^{-1} = \frac{1}{4\rho g} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\frac{1}{y} & \frac{1}{x} \\ 1 & -\frac{1}{y} & -\frac{1}{x} \\ 1 & \frac{1}{y} & -\frac{1}{x} \\ 1 & \frac{1}{y} & \frac{1}{x} \end{bmatrix}$$



**Figure 4.7** Semi-submersible with four ballast tanks.  $V_i$  ( $\text{m}^3$ ) is the water volume in leg  $i = 1, \dots, 4$  and  $p_j$  ( $\text{m}^3/\text{s}$ ) is the volume flow for water pump  $j = 1, \dots, 3$ . Illustration by Bjarne Stenberg.

which finally gives the water volumes  $V_i$  corresponding to the desired values  $z_d$ ,  $\phi_d$  and  $\theta_d$ :

$$\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} V_1 \\ V_2 \\ V_3 \\ V_4 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{4\rho g} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\frac{1}{y} & \frac{1}{x} \\ 1 & -\frac{1}{y} & -\frac{1}{x} \\ 1 & \frac{1}{y} & -\frac{1}{x} \\ 1 & \frac{1}{y} & \frac{1}{x} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \rho g A_{wp}(0) z_d \\ \rho g \nabla G M_T \phi_d \\ \rho g \nabla G M_L \theta_d \end{bmatrix}$$

#### 4.4.2 Automatic Pretrimming using Feedback from $z$ , $\phi$ and $\theta$

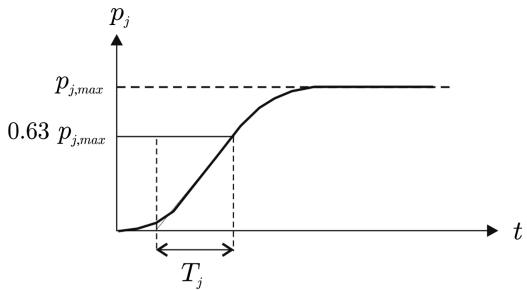
In the manual pretrimming case it was assumed that  $\mathbf{w}^{\{3,4,5\}} = \mathbf{0}$ . This assumption can be removed by using feedback from  $z$ ,  $\phi$  and  $\theta$ . The closed-loop dynamics of a PID-controlled water pump can be described by a first-order model with amplitude saturation:

$$T_j \dot{p}_j + p_j = \text{sat}(p_{d_j}) \quad (4.107)$$

where  $T_j$  (s) is a positive time constant,  $p_j$  is the volumetric flow rate  $\text{m}^3/\text{s}$  produced by pump  $j = 1, \dots, m$  and  $p_{d_j}$  is the pump setpoint. As shown in Figure 4.7, one separate water pump can be used to pump water in each direction. This implies that the water pump capacity is different for positive and negative flow directions. Moreover,

$$\text{sat}(p_{d_j}) = \begin{cases} p_{j,\max}^+ & p_j > p_{j,\max}^+ \\ p_{d_j} & p_{j,\max}^- \leq p_{d_j} \leq p_{j,\max}^+ \\ p_{j,\max}^- & p_{d_j} < p_{j,\max}^- \end{cases} \quad (4.108)$$

The pump time constant  $T_j$  is found from a step response, as shown in Figure 4.8.



**Figure 4.8** The time constant  $T_j$  for pump  $j$  is found by commanding a step  $p_{d_j} = p_{j,max}$  as shown in the plot.

The volume flow  $\dot{V}_i$  to tank  $i$  is given by linear combinations of flows corresponding to the pumps/pipelines supporting tank  $i$ . For the semi-submersible shown in Figure 4.7, we obtain

$$\dot{V}_1 = -p_1 \quad (4.109)$$

$$\dot{V}_2 = -p_3 \quad (4.110)$$

$$\dot{V}_3 = p_2 + p_3 \quad (4.111)$$

$$\dot{V}_4 = p_1 - p_2 \quad (4.112)$$

More generally, the water flow model can be written

$$T\dot{\mathbf{p}} + \mathbf{p} = \text{sat}(\mathbf{p}_d) \quad (4.113)$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}} = \mathbf{L}\mathbf{p} \quad (4.114)$$

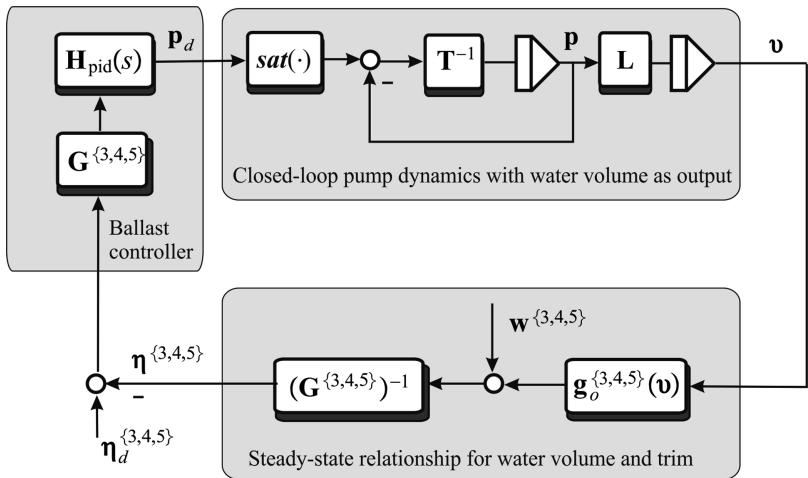
where  $\text{sat}(\mathbf{p}_d) = [\text{sat}(p_{d1}), \dots, \text{sat}(p_{dm})]^\top$ ,  $\mathbf{p} = [p_1, \dots, p_m]^\top$  and  $\mathbf{v} = [V_1, \dots, V_n]^\top$  ( $m \geq n$ ). The mapping from the water volume vector  $\mathbf{v}$  to  $\boldsymbol{\eta}^{\{3,4,5\}}$  is given by the steady-state condition (see Figure 4.9)

$$\mathbf{G}^{\{3,4,5\}} \boldsymbol{\eta}^{\{3,4,5\}} = \mathbf{g}_o^{\{3,4,5\}}(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{w}^{\{3,4,5\}} \quad (4.115)$$

#### Example 4.4 (Semi-Submersible Ballast Control, Continued)

Consider the semi-submersible in Example 4.3. The water flow model corresponding to Figure 4.7 becomes

$$\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} V_1 \\ V_2 \\ V_3 \\ V_4 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{p} = \begin{bmatrix} p_1 \\ p_2 \\ p_3 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{L} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.116)$$



**Figure 4.9** Ballast control system using feedback from  $z$ ,  $\phi$  and  $\theta$ .

reflecting that there are three pumps and four water volumes connected through the configuration matrix  $L$ .

A feedback control system for automatic trimming is presented in Figure 4.9. The ballast controllers can be chosen to be of PID type, for instance:

$$p_d = H_{\text{pid}}(s) G^{\{3,4,5\}} (\eta_d^{\{3,4,5\}} - \eta^{\{3,4,5\}}) \quad (4.117)$$

where  $\eta_d^{\{3,4,5\}} = [z_d, \phi_d, \theta_d]^\top$  and

$$H_{\text{pid}}(s) = \text{diag}\{h_{1,\text{pid}}(s), h_{2,\text{pid}}(s), \dots, h_{m,\text{pid}}(s)\} \quad (4.118)$$

is a diagonal transfer matrix containing  $m$  PID controllers. Integral action in the controllers is needed to compensate for nonzero environmental disturbances  $w^{\{3,4,5\}}$ .

# 5

## Seakeeping Theory

The study of ship dynamics has traditionally been covered by two main theories: *maneuvering* and *seakeeping*. Maneuvering refers to the study of ship motion in the absence of wave excitation (calm water). The maneuvering equations of motion are derived in Chapter 6 under the assumption that the hydrodynamic potential coefficients and radiation-induced forces are frequency independent. Seakeeping, on the other hand, refers to the study of motion of marine craft on constant course and speed when there is wave excitation. This includes the trivial case of zero speed. In seakeeping analysis, a dissipative force (Cummins, 1962) known as *fluid memory effects* is introduced. Although both areas are concerned with the same issues, study of motion, stability and control, the separation allows us to make different assumptions that simplify the study in each case. A chief distinguishing characteristic of these theories is the use of different coordinates and reference systems to express the equations of motion.

In maneuvering theory, the equations of motion are described relative to  $\{b\}$ , which is fixed to the marine craft, whereas in seakeeping the motion is described relative to a coordinate system  $\{s\}$  fixed to an equilibrium virtual craft that moves at a constant speed and heading corresponding to the average motion of the actual craft. Most hydrodynamic programs compute radiation and wave excitation forces in  $\{s\}$ .

This chapter presents the seakeeping theory in *equilibrium axes*  $\{s\}$  and shows how the time-domain solution known as the Cummins equation can be transformed to body-fixed axes  $\{b\}$ . The radiation-induced forces and moment are represented as impulse response functions and state-space models. This is done within a linear framework so viscous damping must be added in the time domain under the assumption of linear superposition. The main results are the  $\{b\}$ -frame seakeeping equations of motion in the following form:

$$\dot{\eta} = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\eta)\mathbf{v} \quad (5.1)$$

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}\ddot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}^*\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{M}_A\ddot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}_A^*\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v}_r + \boldsymbol{\mu} + \mathbf{G}\eta + \mathbf{g}_o = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave} \quad (5.2)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  is an additional term representing the fluid memory effects. This model is valid in the body-fixed reference frame and describes a maneuvering ship in a seaway. When designing model-based control systems or simulating marine craft motions it is important to have good estimates of the inertia, damping and restoring coefficients. In Chapter 3, formulae for computation of the rigid-body matrices  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}$  and

$C_{RB}^*$  were given while the restoring and ballast forces  $\mathbf{G}\eta + \mathbf{g}_0$  were derived in Chapter 4. In this chapter, we will derive formulae for hydrodynamic added mass  $\mathbf{M}_A$ , linear Coriolis–centripetal forces  $\mathbf{C}_A^*$  due to the rotation of the seakeeping reference frame  $\{s\}$  about  $\{n\}$  and linear potential damping  $\mathbf{D}_P$ . Linear viscous damping  $\mathbf{D}_V$  will be added manually to obtain a more accurate model.

The terms in (5.2) can be grouped according to:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Inertia forces: } & \mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}^*\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{M}_A\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}_A^*\mathbf{v}_r \\ \text{Damping forces: } & +(\mathbf{D}_P + \mathbf{D}_V)\mathbf{v}_r + \boldsymbol{\mu} \\ \text{Restoring forces: } & +\mathbf{G}\eta + \mathbf{g}_o \\ \text{Wind and wave forces: } & = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \\ \text{Propulsion forces: } & +\boldsymbol{\tau} \end{aligned}$$

The matrices  $\mathbf{M}_A$ ,  $\mathbf{C}_A$  and  $\mathbf{D}_P$ , the fluid memory function  $\boldsymbol{\mu}$  as well as transfer functions for  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}$  can be computed using hydrodynamics programs. This requires postprocessing of hydrodynamic data and methods for this are discussed later in this chapter. The environmental forces,  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}}$ , are treated separately in Chapter 8.

Different principles for the computation of the hydrodynamic coefficients can be used. The main tool is *potential theory* where it is assumed that the flow is constant, irrotational and incompressible such that time becomes unimportant. Hence, the discrepancies between real and idealized flow must be compensated by adding dissipative forces, for instance viscous damping.

## 5.1 Hydrodynamic Concepts and Potential Theory

In order to describe most fluid flow phenomena associated with the waves and the motion of ships in waves, we need to know the velocity of the fluid and the pressure at different locations. The velocity of the fluid at the location  $\mathbf{x} = [x_1, x_2, x_3]^T$  is given by the *fluid flow velocity vector*:

$$\mathbf{v}(\mathbf{x}, t) = [v_1(\mathbf{x}, t), v_2(\mathbf{x}, t), v_3(\mathbf{x}, t)]^T \quad (5.3)$$

For the flow velocities involved in ship motion, the fluid can be considered *incompressible*, that is of constant density  $\rho$ . Under this assumption, the net volume rate at a volume  $V$  enclosed by a closed surface  $S$  is

$$\iint_S \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n} \, ds = \iiint_V \operatorname{div}(\mathbf{v}) \, dV = 0 \quad (5.4)$$

Since (5.4) should be valid for all the regions  $V$  in the fluid, then by assuming that  $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{v}$  is continuous we obtain

$$\operatorname{div}(\mathbf{v}) = \nabla \cdot \mathbf{v} = \frac{\partial v_1}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial v_2}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial v_3}{\partial z} = 0 \quad (5.5)$$

which is the *continuity equation* for incompressible flows.

The conservation of momentum in the flow is described by the *Navier–Stokes equations*; see, for example, Acheson (1990):

$$\rho \left( \frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{v} \right) = \rho \mathbf{F} - \nabla p + \mu \nabla^2 \mathbf{v} \quad (5.6)$$

where  $\mathbf{F} = [0, 0, -g]^T$  are accelerations due to volumetric forces, from which only gravity is considered,  $p = p(\mathbf{x}, t)$  is the pressure and  $\mu$  is the viscosity coefficient of the fluid.

To describe the real flow of ships, it is then necessary to solve the Navier–Stokes equations (5.6) together with the continuity equation (5.5). These form a system of nonlinear partial differential equations, which unfortunately do not have analytical solutions and the numerical solutions are still far from being feasible with current computing power.

If viscosity is neglected, the fluid is said to be an *ideal fluid*. This is a common assumption that is made to calculate ship flows because viscosity often matters only in a thin layer close to the ship hull. By disregarding the last term in (5.6), the *Euler equations* of fluid motion are obtained:

$$\rho \left( \frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla \mathbf{v} \right) = \rho \mathbf{F} - \nabla p \quad (5.7)$$

A further simplification of the flow description is obtained by assuming that the flow is *irrotational*:

$$\operatorname{curl}(\mathbf{v}) = \nabla \times \mathbf{v} = 0 \quad (5.8)$$

The term *potential flow* is used to describe irrotational flows of inviscid-incompressible fluids. Under this assumption, there exists a scalar function  $\Phi(t, x, y, z)$  called *potential* such that

$$\mathbf{v} = \nabla \Phi \quad (5.9)$$

Hence, if the potential is known the velocities can be calculated as

$$v_1 = \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial x}, \quad v_2 = \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial y}, \quad v_3 = \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial z} \quad (5.10)$$

Using the potential  $\Phi$ , the continuity equation (5.5) reverts to the *Laplace equation* of the potential:

$$\nabla^2 \Phi = \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \Phi}{\partial z^2} = 0 \quad (5.11)$$

The potential can then be obtained by solving the Laplace equation (5.11) subject to appropriate boundary conditions, that is by solving a boundary value problem.

The pressure in the fluid can be obtained by integrating the *Euler equation* of fluid motion (5.7). This results in the *Bernoulli equation*:

$$\frac{p}{\rho} + \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{2} (\nabla \Phi)^2 + gz = C \quad (5.12)$$

By setting the constant  $C = p_0/\rho$ , the relative pressure can be computed from

$$p - p_0 = -\rho gz - \rho \frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial t} - \frac{1}{2} \rho (\nabla \Phi)^2 \quad (5.13)$$

For simplicity, the atmospheric pressure  $p_0$  is often considered zero.

To summarize, *potential theory* makes two assumptions:

1. Inviscid fluid (no viscosity)
2. Irrotational flow

The assumption of irrotational flow leads to the description of the fluid velocity vector as the gradient of a potential function, which has no physical meaning. However, this is a large simplification because the potential is scalar while the velocity is a vector quantity. The potential satisfies the Laplace equation (5.11), which needs to be solved subject to appropriate boundary conditions (on the free surface, sea floor and ship hull). This is another large simplification because the Laplace equation is linear; therefore,

superposition holds and the problem can also be solved in the frequency domain, which is the basis of most hydrodynamic programs. Once we have the potential and thus the velocities, the pressure can be computed using Bernoulli's equation. Then, by integrating the pressure over the surface of the hull, the hydrodynamic forces are obtained.

For most problems related to ship motion in waves, potential theory is sufficient to obtain results with appropriate accuracy for engineering purposes. However, because of the simplifying assumptions in some cases we need to complement the results by adding the effects of viscosity. This is important, for example, when considering maneuvering and propeller–rudder–hull interactions. For further discussions on the topics presented in this section, see Newman (1977), Faltinsen (1990), Acheson (1990), Journée and Massie (2001) and Bertram (2004).

### 5.1.1 Numerical Approaches and Hydrodynamic Codes

In order to evaluate the potentials a boundary value problem needs to be solved. There are different approaches to do this, which lead to different formulations.

#### Strip Theory (2-D Potential Theory)

In some problems, the motion of the fluid can be approximated as two-dimensional (2-D). This is characteristic for slender bodies. In this case a good estimate of the hydrodynamic forces can be obtained by applying *strip theory* (Newman, 1977; Faltinsen, 1990; Journée and Massie, 2001). The 2-D theory takes into account the fact that variation of the flow in the cross-directional plane is much larger than the variation in the longitudinal direction of the ship. The principle of strip theory involves dividing the submerged part of the craft into a finite number of strips. Hence, 2-D hydrodynamic coefficients for added mass can be computed for each strip and then summed over the length of the body to yield the 3-D coefficients. The 2-D hydrodynamic coefficients can be calculated from boundary element methods or via conformal mapping and analytical expressions. This principle is also used to compute viscous quadratic damping from 2-D drag coefficients, as explained in Section 6.4.

Several strip theory programs can be used to compute hydrodynamic added mass  $M_A$ , potential damping  $D_p$  and the hydrostatic matrix  $G$ . Commonly used 2-D programs are *Octopus Office* by Amarcon Inc. (Journée and Adegeest, 2003) and *ShipX (Veres)* by MARINTEK (Fathi, 2004). These programs can be used at both zero speed and forward speed and they calculate frequency-dependent added mass and potential damping coefficients, restoring terms, first- and second-order wave load transfer functions (amplitudes and phases) between the marine craft and the waves for given wave directions and frequencies as well as other hydrodynamic data. Processing of the data is explained later in this chapter.

In this context it will be shown how frequency-dependent added mass and damping can be used to derive the equations of motion where these effects are included as fluid memory effects using retardation functions. In order to compute the retardation functions, asymptotic values for zero and infinite added mass must be used.

#### Panel Methods (3-D Potential Theory)

For potential flows, the integrals over the fluid domain can be transformed to integrals over the boundaries of the fluid domain. This allows the application of panel or boundary element methods to solve the 3-D potential theory problem. Panel methods divide the surface of the ship and the surrounding water into discrete elements (panels). On each of these elements, a distribution of sources and sinks is defined that fulfil the Laplace equation. The problem then amounts to finding the strength of these distributions and identifying the potential.

Computer codes based on this approach provide suitable performance for offshore applications at zero-forward speed in either the frequency or time domain. A commercial program such as WAMIT (WAMIT Inc., 2010) has become the de facto industry standard among oil and engineering companies. This program

computes frequency-dependent added mass  $\mathbf{M}_A$ , potential damping coefficients  $\mathbf{D}_P$ , restoring terms  $\mathbf{G}$ , and first- and second-order wave load transfer functions (amplitudes and phases) between the marine craft and the waves for given wave directions and frequencies, and much more. One special feature of WAMIT is that the program solves a boundary value problem for zero and infinite added mass. These boundary values are particularly useful when computing the retardation functions describing the fluid memory effects.

### Semi-Empirical Methods

An alternative and less accurate approach to hydrodynamic programs is to use semi-empirical methods to compute the added mass derivatives; see, for instance, Imlay (1961), Humphreys and Watkinson (1978) and Triantafyllou and Amzallag (1984).

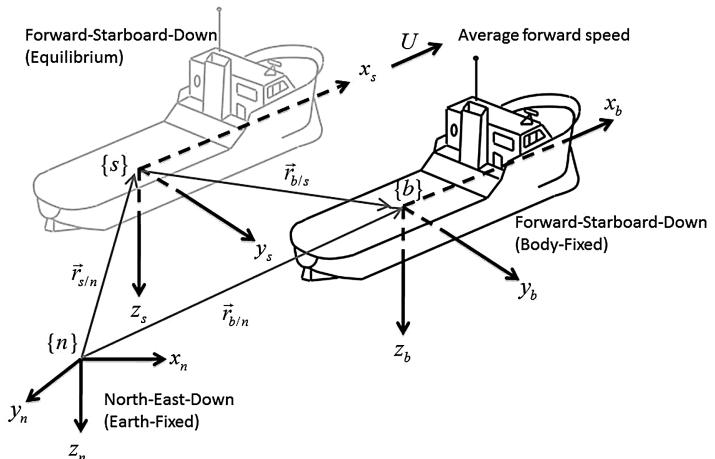
## 5.2 Seakeeping and Maneuvering Kinematics

This section derives the kinematics needed to transform the equations of motion from the seakeeping reference frame  $\{s\}$  to the body-fixed reference frame  $\{b\}$  and the NED reference frame  $\{n\}$ . This is based on Perez and Fossen (2007).

### 5.2.1 Seakeeping Reference Frame

In seakeeping theory the study of ship motion is performed under the assumption that it can be described as the superposition of an equilibrium state of motion plus perturbations. The equilibrium is determined by a constant heading angle  $\psi$  and speed  $U$ , and the perturbations are zero-mean oscillatory components induced by first-order wave excitations. Note that the case of zero forward speed  $U = 0$  is also contemplated as an equilibrium of motion. Due to this, the motion is often described using an equilibrium or seakeeping reference frame.

**Seakeeping Frame:** The seakeeping reference frame  $\{s\} = (x_s, y_s, z_s)$  is not fixed to the marine craft; it is fixed to the equilibrium state. Hence, in the absence of wave excitation, the  $\{s\}$ -frame origin  $o_s$  coincides with the location of the  $\{b\}$ -frame origin  $o_b$  (also denoted as CO) which is a fixed point in the ship. Under the action of the waves, the hull is disturbed from its equilibrium and the point  $o_s$  oscillates, with respect to its equilibrium position. This is illustrated in Figure 5.1.



**Figure 5.1** The seakeeping coordinate system  $\{s\}$  and distance vectors to  $\{b\}$  and  $\{n\}$ .

The  $\{s\}$  frame is considered *inertial* and therefore it is nonaccelerating and fixed in orientation with respect to the  $\{n\}$  frame (or must vary very slowly). This assumption implies that the  $\{s\}$ -frame equations of motion are linear. The equilibrium state is defined by a constant heading and speed:

$$\mathbf{v}_{s/n}^n = [U \cos(\bar{\psi}), U \sin(\bar{\psi}), 0]^\top \quad (5.14)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\omega}_{s/n}^n = [0, 0, 0]^\top \quad (5.15)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{ns} = [0, 0, \bar{\psi}]^\top \quad (5.16)$$

where  $U = ||\mathbf{v}_{s/n}^n||$  is the average forward speed and  $\bar{\psi}$  is the equilibrium heading. Hence, the velocity of  $\{s\}$  with respect to  $\{n\}$  expressed in  $\{s\}$  is

$$\mathbf{v}_{s/n}^s = \mathbf{R}_n^s(\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{ns})\mathbf{v}_{s/n}^n = [U, 0, 0]^\top \quad (5.17)$$

The equilibrium heading  $\bar{\psi}$  can be computed by averaging the gyro compass measurements  $\psi$  over a fixed period (moving horizon) of time.

### Seakeeping (Perturbation) Coordinates

The *seakeeping or perturbation coordinates* are defined as (Perez and Fossen, 2007)

$$\delta\boldsymbol{\eta} := \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{r}_{b/s}^s \\ \boldsymbol{\Theta}_{sb} \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.18)$$

$$\delta\mathbf{v} := \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_{b/s}^b \\ \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/s}^b \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.19)$$

In hydrodynamic textbooks it is common to denote the perturbation coordinates by

$$\boldsymbol{\xi} := \delta\boldsymbol{\eta} \quad (5.20)$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\xi} = [\xi_1, \xi_2, \xi_3, \xi_4, \xi_5, \xi_6]^\top \quad (5.21)$$

The first three coordinates ( $\xi_1, \xi_2, \xi_3$ ) are the surge, sway and heave perturbations and

$$\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{sb} = [\xi_4, \xi_5, \xi_6]^\top = [\delta\phi, \delta\theta, \delta\psi]^\top \quad (5.22)$$

are the roll, pitch and yaw perturbations (Euler angles).

### 5.2.2 Transformation between BODY and SEAKEEPING

From the definition of  $\{s\}$  and the coordinates  $\delta\boldsymbol{\eta}$  and  $\delta\mathbf{v}$  it follows that

$$\delta\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\delta\boldsymbol{\eta})\delta\mathbf{v} \quad (5.23)$$

where  $\mathbf{J}_\Theta(\delta\eta)$  is the transformation matrix between  $\{b\}$  and  $\{s\}$ :

$$\mathbf{J}_\Theta(\delta\eta) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{R}_b^s(\Theta_{sb}) & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{T}_\Theta(\Theta_{sb}) \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.24)$$

This expression is similar to the transformation between  $\{b\}$  and  $\{n\}$ . This is an expected result since both  $\{n\}$  and  $\{s\}$  are assumed inertial while  $\{b\}$  rotates about the inertial frame. In addition to position and attitude it is necessary to derive the relationship between the perturbed velocities and accelerations ( $\delta\mathbf{v}$ ,  $\delta\dot{\mathbf{v}}$ ) and ( $\mathbf{v}$ ,  $\dot{\mathbf{v}}$ ). To obtain these expressions consider the distance vector; see Figure 5.1:

$$\vec{r}_{b/n} = \vec{r}_{s/n} + \vec{r}_{b/s} \quad (5.25)$$

which can be expressed in  $\{n\}$  as

$$\mathbf{r}_{b/n}^n = \mathbf{r}_{s/n}^n + \mathbf{R}_s^n(\Theta_{ns})\mathbf{r}_{b/s}^s \quad (5.26)$$

Time differentiation gives

$$\dot{\mathbf{r}}_{b/n}^n = \dot{\mathbf{r}}_{s/n}^n + \mathbf{R}_s^n(\Theta_{ns})\dot{\mathbf{r}}_{b/s}^s \quad (5.27)$$

where

$$\mathbf{R}_s^n(\Theta_{ns}) = \mathbf{R}_{z,\bar{\psi}} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\bar{\psi}) & -\sin(\bar{\psi}) & 0 \\ \sin(\bar{\psi}) & \cos(\bar{\psi}) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \dot{\mathbf{R}}_s^n(\Theta_{ns}) = \mathbf{0} \quad (5.28)$$

Note that the time derivative of  $\mathbf{R}_s^n(\Theta_{ns})$  is zero because  $\{s\}$  does not rotate with respect to  $\{n\}$ . The expression for  $\dot{\mathbf{r}}_{b/n}^n$  can be rewritten as

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{r}}_{b/n}^n &= \dot{\mathbf{r}}_{s/n}^n + \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})\mathbf{R}_s^b(\Theta_{bs})\dot{\mathbf{r}}_{b/s}^s \\ &= \dot{\mathbf{r}}_{s/n}^n + \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})\mathbf{v}_{b/s}^b \end{aligned} \quad (5.29)$$

Both sides of (5.29) can be multiplied by  $\mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta_{bn})$  to obtain

$$\mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b = \mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta_{bn})\mathbf{v}_{s/n}^n + \mathbf{v}_{b/s}^b \quad (5.30)$$

For notational simplicity, the linear and angular velocity vectors are grouped according to

$$\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_1 \\ \mathbf{v}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} [u, v, w]^\top \\ [p, q, r]^\top \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.31)$$

$$\delta\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} \delta\mathbf{v}_1 \\ \delta\mathbf{v}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} [\delta u, \delta v, \delta w]^\top \\ [\delta p, \delta q, \delta r]^\top \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.32)$$

Then it follows from (5.30) that

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \bar{\mathbf{v}}_1 + \delta\mathbf{v}_1 \quad (5.33)$$

where

$$\bar{\mathbf{v}}_1 := \mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta_{bn}) \begin{bmatrix} U \cos(\bar{\psi}) \\ U \sin(\bar{\psi}) \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{R}_s^b(\Theta_{bs}) \begin{bmatrix} U \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.34)$$

To obtain the angular velocity transformation, we make use of

$$\vec{\omega}_{b/n} = \vec{\omega}_{s/n} + \vec{\omega}_{b/s} = \vec{\omega}_{b/s} \quad (5.35)$$

since  $\vec{\omega}_{s/n} = \vec{0}$ . Moreover,  $\{s\}$  does not rotate with respect to  $\{n\}$ . This leads to

$$\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b = \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/s}^b \quad (5.36)$$

or

$$\boldsymbol{v}_2 = \delta \boldsymbol{v}_2 \quad (5.37)$$

The Euler angle transformation matrices  $\mathbf{R}_b^s(\Theta_{sb})$  and  $\mathbf{T}_\Theta(\Theta_{sb})$  for  $\Theta_{sb} = [\delta\phi, \delta\theta, \delta\psi]^\top$  are similar to those used in Section 2.2. Moreover,

$$\mathbf{R}_b^s(\Theta_{sb}) = \begin{bmatrix} c_{\delta\psi}c_{\delta\theta} & -s_{\delta\psi}c_{\delta\theta} + c_{\delta\psi}s_{\delta\theta}s_{\delta\phi} & s_{\delta\psi}s_{\delta\theta} + c_{\delta\psi}c_{\phi}s_{\delta\theta} \\ s_{\delta\psi}c_{\delta\theta} & c_{\delta\psi}c_{\delta\phi} + s_{\delta\phi}s_{\delta\theta}s_{\delta\psi} & -c_{\delta\psi}s_{\delta\psi} + s_{\delta\theta}s_{\delta\psi}c_{\delta\phi} \\ -s_{\delta\theta} & c_{\delta\theta}s_{\delta\phi} & c_{\delta\theta}c_{\delta\phi} \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.38)$$

$$\mathbf{T}_\Theta(\Theta_{sb}) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & s_{\delta\phi}t_{\delta\theta} & c_{\delta\phi}t_{\delta\theta} \\ 0 & c_{\delta\phi} & -s_{\delta\phi} \\ 0 & s_{\delta\phi}/c_{\delta\theta} & c_{\delta\phi}/c_{\delta\theta} \end{bmatrix}, \quad c_{\delta\theta} \neq 0 \quad (5.39)$$

Computing  $\bar{\boldsymbol{v}}_1$  under the assumption of small angles gives

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\boldsymbol{v}}_1 &= \mathbf{R}_b^s(\Theta_{sb})^\top \begin{bmatrix} U \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= U \begin{bmatrix} c_{\delta\psi}c_{\delta\theta} \\ -s_{\delta\psi}c_{\delta\theta} + c_{\delta\psi}s_{\delta\theta}s_{\delta\phi} \\ s_{\delta\psi}s_{\delta\theta} + c_{\delta\psi}c_{\phi}s_{\delta\theta} \end{bmatrix} \\ &\approx U \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -\delta\psi \\ \delta\theta \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (5.40)$$

Finally,

$$\boldsymbol{v} = \bar{\boldsymbol{v}} + \delta \boldsymbol{v} \quad (5.41)$$

where

$$\bar{\boldsymbol{v}} \approx U [1, -\delta\psi, \delta\theta, 0, 0, 0]^\top \quad (5.42)$$

This can written as

$$\mathbf{v} \approx U(\mathbf{e}_1 - \mathbf{L}\delta\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \delta\mathbf{v} \quad (5.43)$$

$$\mathbf{e}_1 := \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{L} := \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.44)$$

The expressions for acceleration follows from

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}} = \ddot{\mathbf{v}} + \delta\dot{\mathbf{v}} \quad (5.45)$$

The key here is  $\dot{\mathbf{v}}_1$  given by (5.40). Moreover,

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}}_1 = U \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -\delta r \\ \delta q \end{bmatrix} = U\mathbf{L}\delta\mathbf{v} \quad (5.46)$$

The final expression then becomes

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}} = -U\mathbf{L}\delta\mathbf{v} + \delta\dot{\mathbf{v}} \quad (5.47)$$

The linear transformations needed to transform a system from seakeeping coordinates  $(\delta\boldsymbol{\eta}, \delta\mathbf{v})$  to body-fixed coordinates  $(\boldsymbol{\eta}, \mathbf{v})$  are

$$\delta\mathbf{v} \approx \mathbf{v} + U(\mathbf{L}\delta\boldsymbol{\eta} - \mathbf{e}_1) \quad (5.48)$$

$$\delta\dot{\mathbf{v}} \approx \dot{\mathbf{v}} + U\mathbf{L}\mathbf{v} \quad (5.49)$$

The Euler angles are related through the following equation:

$$\Theta_{nb} = \Theta_{ns} + \Theta_{sb} \quad (5.50)$$

which gives

$$\begin{bmatrix} \phi \\ \theta \\ \psi \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \bar{\psi} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \delta\phi \\ \delta\theta \\ \delta\psi \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.51)$$

### 5.3 The Classical Frequency-Domain Model

Frequency-dependent hydrodynamic forces can be determined experimentally or computed using potential theory programs or seakeeping codes. This section describes the transformations needed to obtain what is called the *frequency-domain model* and a method known as *forced oscillations*, which can be used to obtain frequency-dependent added mass and damping experimentally.

The seakeeping equations of motion are considered to be inertial. Hence, the rigid-body kinetics in terms of perturbed coordinates  $\delta\eta$  and  $\delta\nu$  becomes (see Section 3.3)

$$\delta\ddot{\eta} = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\delta\eta)\delta\nu \quad (5.52)$$

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}\delta\ddot{\eta} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\delta\nu)\delta\dot{\eta} = \delta\tau_{RB} \quad (5.53)$$

Linear theory suggests that second-order terms can be neglected. Consequently, the rigid-body kinetics in seakeeping coordinates  $\xi = \delta\eta$  and  $\dot{\xi} = \delta\nu$  reduces to

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{M}_{RB}\ddot{\xi} &= \delta\tau_{RB} \\ &= \tau_{hyd} + \tau_{hs} + \tau_{exc} \end{aligned} \quad (5.54)$$

The rigid-body kinetics is forced by the term  $\delta\tau_{RB}$  which can be used to model hydrodynamic forces  $\tau_{hyd}$ , hydrostatic forces  $\tau_{hs}$  and other external forces  $\tau_{exc}$ . Cummins (1962) showed that the radiation-induced hydrodynamic forces in an ideal fluid can be related to frequency-dependent added mass  $A(\omega)$  and potential damping  $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$  according to

$$\tau_{hyd} = -\bar{\mathbf{A}}\dot{\xi} - \int_0^t \bar{\mathbf{K}}(t-\tau)\dot{\xi}(\tau)d\tau \quad (5.55)$$

where  $\bar{\mathbf{A}} = \mathbf{A}(\infty)$  is the constant infinite-frequency added mass matrix and  $\bar{\mathbf{K}}(t)$  is a matrix of *retardation functions* given by

$$\bar{\mathbf{K}}(t) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\infty \mathbf{B}(\omega) \cos(\omega t) d\omega \quad (5.56)$$

If linear restoring forces  $\tau_{hs} = -\mathbf{C}\xi$  are included in the model, this results in the time-domain model:

$$(\mathbf{M}_{RB} + A(\infty))\ddot{\xi} + \int_0^t \bar{\mathbf{K}}(t-\tau)\dot{\xi}(\tau)d\tau + \mathbf{C}\xi = \tau_{exc} \quad (5.57)$$

This is a vector integro-differential equation formulated in the time domain even though the potential coefficients are frequency dependent. In order to understand this, we will consider a floating body forced to oscillate at a given frequency.

#### 5.3.1 Potential Coefficients and the Concept of Forced Oscillations

Consider the motions of a floating or submerged body given by

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}\ddot{\xi} = \tau_{hyd} + \tau_{hs} + f \cos(\omega t) \quad (5.58)$$

where  $\tau_{hyd}$  and  $\tau_{hs}$  denote the hydrodynamic and hydrostatic forces due to the surrounding water. The vector:

$$\mathbf{f} = [f_1, \dots, f_6]^\top \quad (5.59)$$

contains the excitation force amplitudes. In an experimental setup with a restrained scale model, it is then possible to vary the wave excitation frequency  $\omega$  and the amplitudes  $f_i$  of the excitation force. Hence, by measuring the position and attitude vector  $\xi$ , the response of the second-order system (5.58) can be fitted to a linear model:

$$[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + A(\omega)]\ddot{\xi} + \mathbf{B}(\omega)\dot{\xi} + \mathbf{C}\xi = \mathbf{f} \cos(\omega t) \quad (5.60)$$

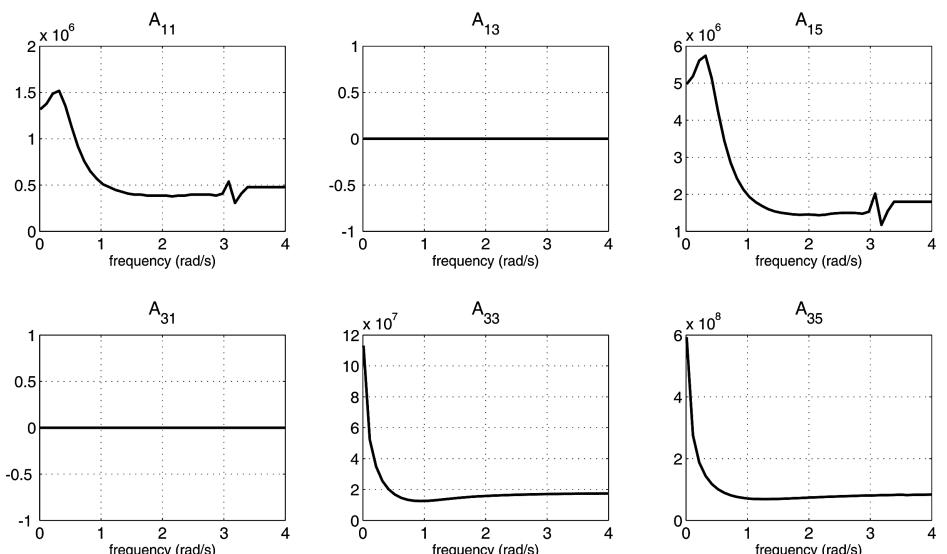
for each frequency  $\omega$  where the hydrodynamic and hydrostatic forces are recognized as a frequency-dependent mass–damper–spring system:

$$\tau_{hyd} + \tau_{hs} = \underbrace{-A(\omega)\ddot{\xi} - \mathbf{B}(\omega)\dot{\xi}}_{\text{radiation force}} - \underbrace{\mathbf{C}\xi}_{\text{restoring force}} \quad (5.61)$$

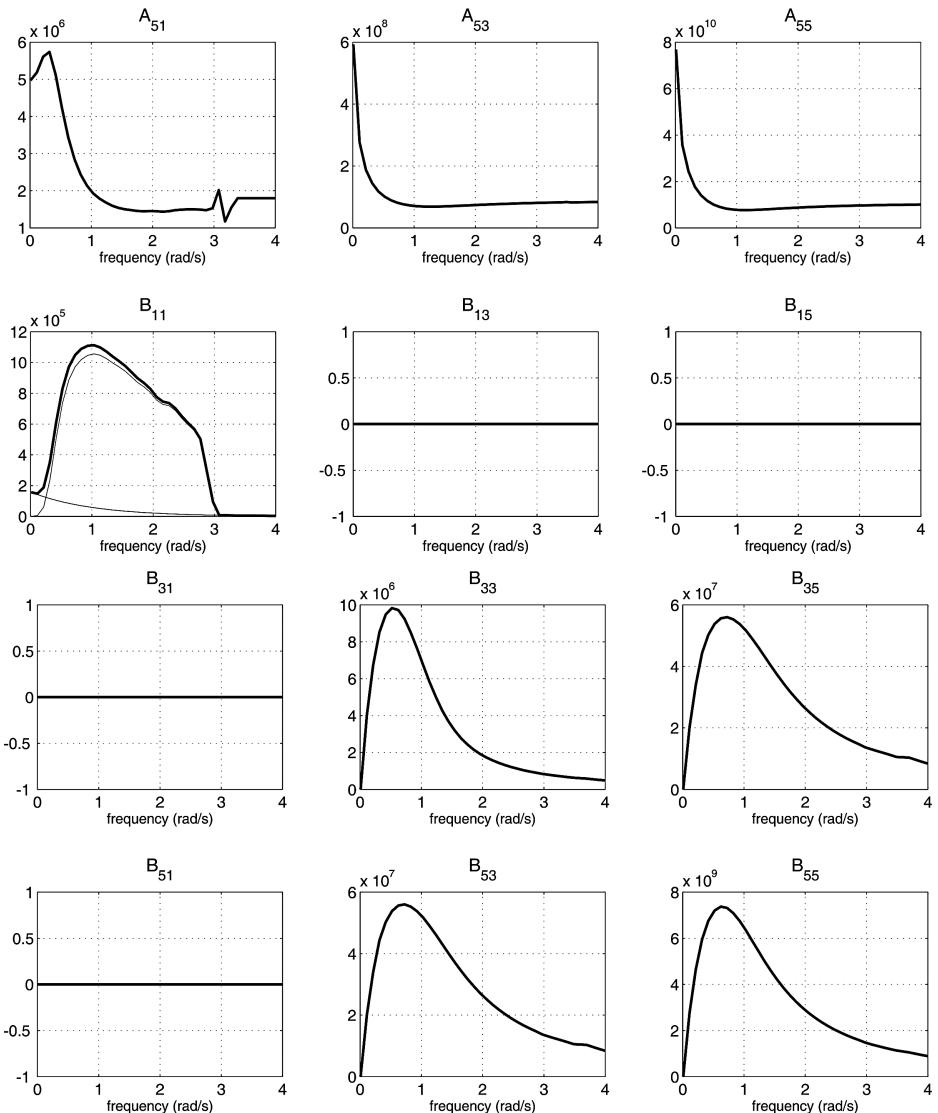
The *radiation force* is due to the energy carried away by generated surface waves and it is formed by two components, hydrodynamic inertia forces  $A(\omega)\ddot{\xi}$  and damping forces  $\mathbf{B}(\omega)\dot{\xi}$ , where the matrices:

- $A(\omega)$  added mass
- $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$  potential damping

are recognized as the *potential coefficient matrices*. If the experiment is repeated for several frequencies  $\omega_i > 0$  ( $i = 1, \dots, N$ ), added mass  $A(\omega_i)$  and damping  $\mathbf{B}(\omega_i)$  can be computed at different frequencies. Added mass and damping for a conventional ship is plotted as a function of  $\omega$  in Figures 5.2 and 5.3.



**Figure 5.2** Longitudinal added mass and potential damping coefficients as a function of frequency. Exponential decaying viscous damping is included for  $B_{11}(\omega)$ .



**Figure 5.2 (Continued)**

The matrices  $\mathbf{A}(\omega)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$  and  $\mathbf{C}$  in (5.61) represent a hydrodynamic mass–damper–spring system which varies with the frequency of the forced oscillation. The added mass matrix  $\mathbf{A}(\omega)$  should not be understood as additional mass due to a finite amount of water that is dragged with the vessel. A more precise definition is:

#### **Definition 5.1 (Added Mass)**

Hydrodynamic added mass can be seen as a virtual mass added to a system because an accelerating or decelerating body must move some volume of the surrounding fluid as it moves through it. Moreover, the object and fluid cannot occupy the same physical space simultaneously.

### 5.3.2 Frequency-Domain Seakeeping Models

Equation (5.57) can be transformed to the frequency domain (Newman, 1977; Faltinsen, 1990):

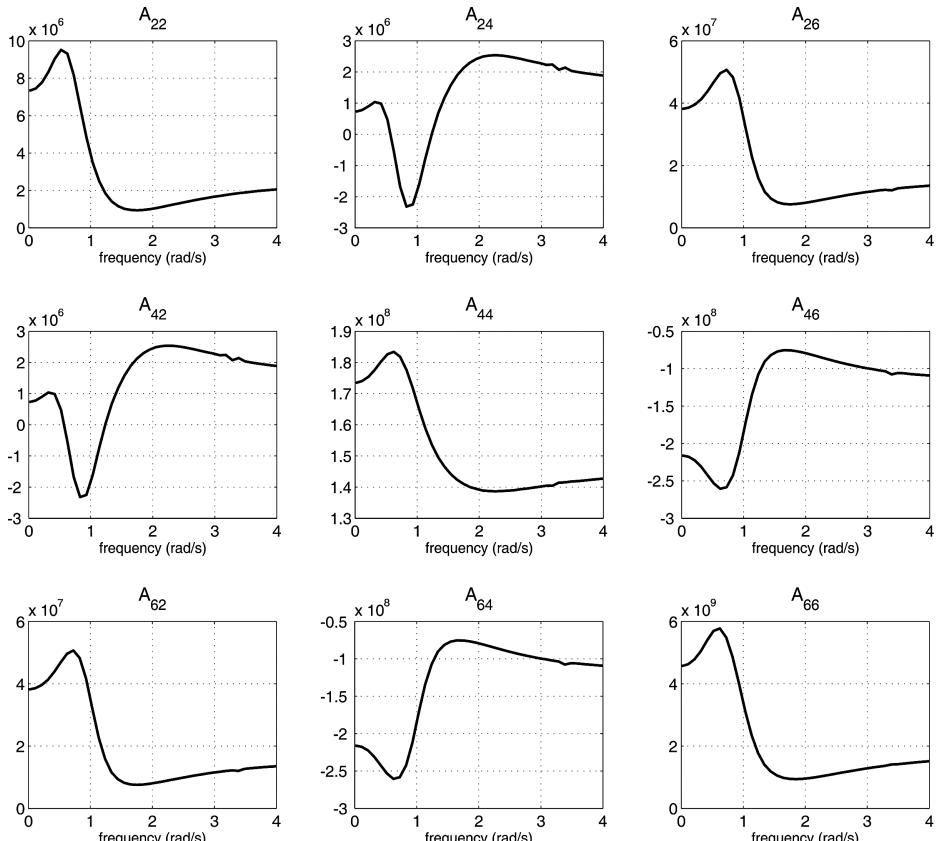
$$(-\omega^2[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\omega)] - j\omega\mathbf{B}(\omega) + \mathbf{C}) \xi(j\omega) = \tau_{exc}(j\omega) \quad (5.62)$$

where

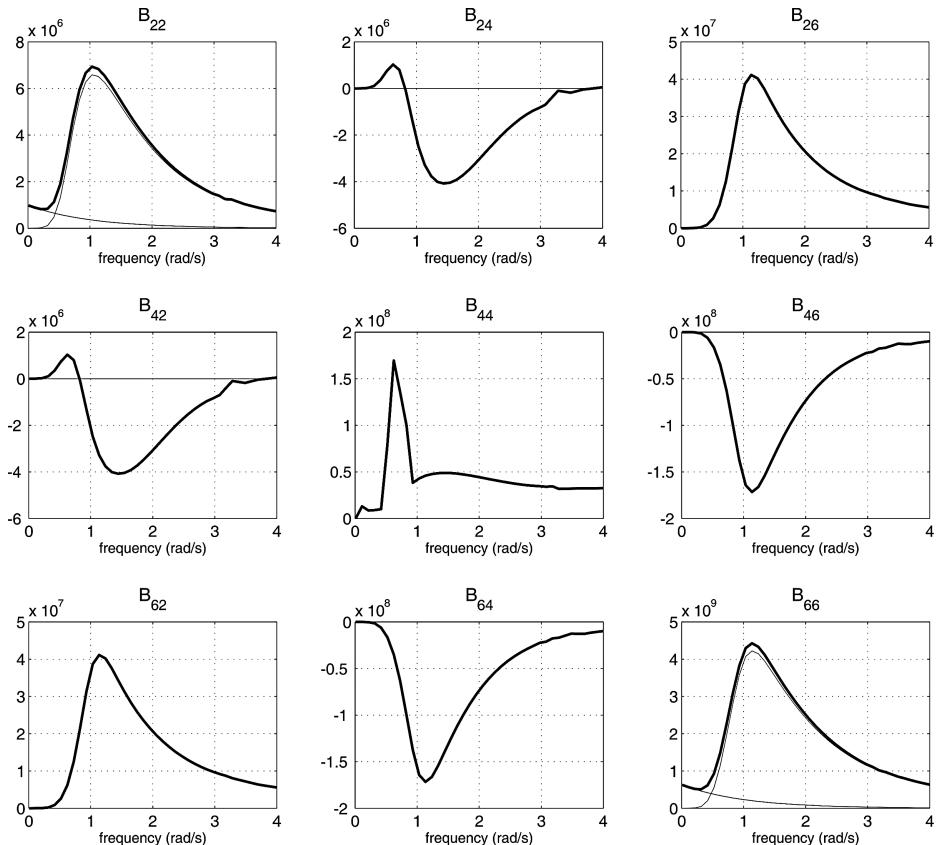
$$\xi_i(t) = \bar{\xi}_i \cos(\omega t + \epsilon_i) \Rightarrow \xi_i(j\omega) = \bar{\xi}_i \exp(j\epsilon_i) \quad (5.63)$$

$$\tau_{exc,i}(t) = \bar{\tau}_i \cos(\omega t + \epsilon_i) \Rightarrow \tau_{exc,i}(j\omega) = \bar{\tau}_{exc,i} \exp(j\epsilon_i) \quad (5.64)$$

are the complex response and excitation variables, respectively. The model (5.60) is rooted deeply in the literature of hydrodynamics and the abuse of notation of this false time-domain model has been discussed eloquently in the literature. This is in fact not a time-domain model but rather a different way of



**Figure 5.3** Lateral added mass and potential damping coefficients as a function of frequency. Exponential decaying viscous damping is included for  $B_{22}(\omega)$  and  $B_{66}(\omega)$  while viscous IKEDA damping is included in  $B_{44}(\omega)$ .



**Figure 5.3 (Continued)**

writing (5.62), which is the frequency response function. The corresponding time-domain model is given by (5.57).

The potential coefficients  $A(\omega)$  and  $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$  are usually computed using a seakeeping program but the frequency response will not be accurate unless viscous damping is included. The viscous matrix  $\mathbf{B}_V(\omega)$  is an optional matrix that can be used to model viscous damping such as skin friction, surge resistance and viscous roll damping. Consequently, the total linear damper becomes

$$\mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\omega) = \mathbf{B}(\omega) + \mathbf{B}_V(\omega) \quad (5.65)$$

The pressure supporting a marine craft can be separated into hydrostatic and hydrodynamic forces. The hydrostatic pressure gives the buoyancy force, which is proportional to the displaced volume. Thus, the *hydrostatic force*,  $C\xi$ , represents the restoring forces due to gravity buoyancy that tend to bring the marine craft back to its upright equilibrium position. The *wave excitation forces*,  $\tau_{\text{wave}}$ , arise due to changes in pressure due to waves. These have one component that varies linearly with the wave elevation and another that varies nonlinearly. The linear forces are oscillatory forces with a zero mean; these forces are called *first-order wave forces* – Froude–Krylov and diffraction forces. The energy of these forces is distributed

at the same frequencies as the wave elevation seen from the moving ship (encounter frequencies). The nonlinear components give rise to nonoscillatory forces – *mean wave drift forces* – and also oscillatory forces, which have energy at frequencies that are both lower and higher than the range of first-order wave forces. The components at lower frequencies are called second-order *slow wave drift forces*, and together with the mean wave drift and the first-order wave forces constitute the main disturbances for ship motion control. The high-frequency forces are usually of no concern for ship motion control, but can produce oscillation in the structure of the vessel; this effect is known as springing. For further details on wave loads see Faltinsen (1990, 2005).

If wave and wind forces are included the resulting frequency-domain model becomes

$$(-\omega^2[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\omega)] - j\omega\mathbf{B}_{total}(\omega) + \mathbf{C})\xi(j\omega) = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave}(j\omega) + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind}(j\omega) + \delta\boldsymbol{\tau}(j\omega) \quad (5.66)$$

### Linear Frequency-Dependent Viscous Damping

The linear frequency-dependent forces  $\mathbf{B}_V(\omega)$  will give an additional contribution to the potential damping matrix  $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$ , as shown in the plots for  $B_{11}(\omega)$ ,  $B_{22}(\omega)$ ,  $B_{44}(\omega)$  and  $B_{66}(\omega)$  in Figures 5.2 and 5.3. When running seakeeping codes it is important to include the *external viscous damping matrix* in order to obtain good estimates of the response amplitude operators (RAOs), which are used to compute the motions due to first- and second-order wave forces.

Bailey *et al.* (1998) suggest using ramps in surge, sway and yaw to describe the viscous part of the damping forces. However, in the framework of linear theory exponential functions are well suited for this purpose. For instance, Ross *et al.* (2006) propose a diagonal matrix:

$$\mathbf{B}_V(\omega) = \begin{bmatrix} \beta_1 e^{-\alpha\omega} + N_{ITTC}(A_1) & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \beta_2 e^{-\alpha\omega} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \beta_{IKEDA}(\omega) & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \beta_6 e^{-\alpha\omega} \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.67)$$

where  $\alpha > 0$  is the exponential rate,  $\beta_i > 0$  ( $i = 1, 2, 6$ ) are linear viscous skin friction coefficients describing the horizontal motions,  $N_{ITTC}(A_1)$  is equivalent linear surge resistance depending on the surge velocity amplitude  $A_1$  and  $\beta_{IKEDA}(\omega)$  is frequency-dependent roll damping based on the theory of Ikeda *et al.* (1976). Other models for viscous roll damping can also be used.

One useful property of the exponential function  $\beta_i e^{-\alpha\omega}$  is that linear skin friction only affects low-frequency motions. It is also possible to add a frequency-independent linear damper  $D_{ii} = \beta_i \dot{\xi}_i$  directly to the equations of motion in the time domain and obtain the same effect as solving the frequency-domain equation with  $B_{ii}(\omega) = \beta_i e^{-\alpha\omega}$  (Ross and Fossen, 2005).

### Equivalent Linearization Method and Describing Functions

The surge resistance  $N_{ITTC}(A_1)$  can be found by *equivalent linearization* of the quadratic damping (6.86). Equivalent linearization is a *Fourier-series approximation* where the work done over one period  $T$  is the same for the nonlinear and linear terms. This is similar to a sinusoidal-input *describing function* that is frequently used in control engineering. Consider a sinusoidal input

$$u = A \sin(\omega t) \quad (5.68)$$

For static linearities, displaying no dependence upon the derivatives, the describing function for the particular odd polynomial nonlinearity

$$y = c_1x + c_2x|x| + c_3x^3 \quad (5.69)$$

is (Gelb and Vander Velde, 1968)

$$N(A) = c_1 + \frac{8A}{3\pi}c_2 + \frac{3A^2}{4}c_3 \quad (5.70)$$

Consequently, the amplitude-dependent linear mapping

$$y = N(A)u \quad (5.71)$$

approximates the nonlinear polynomial (5.69) if the input is a harmonic function. This result is very useful for marine craft since it allows for linear approximation of nonlinear dissipative forces under the assumption of regular waves. For instance, the quadratic damping in surge due to the ITTC surge resistance formulation results in an expression (see Section 6.4.2)

$$\begin{aligned} X &= -X_{|u|u}|u|u \\ &\approx N_{\text{ITTC}}(A_1)u \end{aligned} \quad (5.72)$$

where the surge velocity  $u = A_1 \cos(\omega t)$  is assumed to be harmonic. Then it follows from (5.70) that

$$N_{\text{ITTC}}(A_1) = -\frac{8A_1}{3\pi}X_{|u|u} \quad (5.73)$$

Viscous damping can also be added in sway and yaw using a similar approach. The diagonal terms from the cross-flow drag analysis (see Section 6.4.3) result in similar terms depending on the sway and yaw amplitudes  $A_2$  and  $A_6$ . Moreover,

$$Y = N_{Y, \text{crossflow}}(A_2)v, \quad N_{Y, \text{crossflow}}(A_2) = -\frac{8A_2}{3\pi}Y_{|v|v} \quad (5.74)$$

$$N = N_{N, \text{crossflow}}(A_6)r, \quad N_{N, \text{crossflow}}(A_6) = -\frac{8A_6}{3\pi}N_{|r|r} \quad (5.75)$$

For a ship moving at high speed, the amplitudes  $A_2$  and  $A_6$  will be much smaller than  $A_1$ . Hence, it is common to neglect these terms in seakeeping analysis.

## 5.4 Time-Domain Models including Fluid Memory Effects

The time-domain models are useful both for simulation and control systems design. In particular it is convenient to add nonlinear terms directly in the time domain to describe coupled maneuvers at high speed. Fluid memory effects and wave force terms are kept from the seakeeping theory. Hence, this can be seen as a *unified* approach where seakeeping and maneuvering theory are combined. The basis for the time-domain transformations are the famous papers by Cummins (1962) and Ogilvie (1964), and recent results by Fossen (2005) and Perez and Fossen (2007).

### 5.4.1 Cummins Equation in SEAKEEPING Coordinates

Cummins (1962) considered the behavior of the fluid and the ship in the time domain *ab initio*. He made the assumption of linearity and considered impulses in the components of motion. This resulted in a boundary value problem in which the potential was separated into two parts: one valid during the duration of the impulses and the other valid after the impulses are extinguished. By expressing the pressure

as a function of these potentials and integrating it over the wetted surface of the marine craft, he obtained a vector integro-differential equation, which is known as the *Cummins equation*; see (5.55) in Section 5.3. If we add viscous damping, restoring forces, wave-induced forces and wind forces, the time-domain seakeeping model becomes

$$(\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \bar{\mathbf{A}}) \ddot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} + \int_{-\infty}^t \bar{\mathbf{K}}(t - \tau) \dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}(\tau) d\tau + \bar{\mathbf{C}} \boldsymbol{\xi} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \delta \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (5.76)$$

In this expression,  $\delta \boldsymbol{\tau}$  is the perturbed control input,  $\bar{\mathbf{A}}$  and  $\bar{\mathbf{C}}$  are constant matrices to be determined and  $\bar{\mathbf{K}}(t)$  is a matrix of *retardation functions* given by

$$\bar{\mathbf{K}}(t) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\infty \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\omega) \cos(\omega t) d\omega \quad (5.77)$$

Equation (5.76) is a time-domain equation that reveals the structure of the linear equations of motion in  $\{s\}$  and it is valid for any excitation, provided the linear assumption is not violated; that is the forces produce small displacements from a state of equilibrium. The terms proportional to the accelerations due to the change in momentum of the fluid have constant coefficients. Moreover,  $\bar{\mathbf{A}}$  is constant and independent of the frequency of motion as well as forward speed.

Due to the motion of the ship, waves are generated in the free surface. These waves will, in principle, persist at all subsequent times, affecting the motion of the ship. This is known as fluid memory effects, and they are captured by the convolution integral in (5.76). The convolution integral is a function of  $\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}$  and the retardation functions  $\bar{\mathbf{K}}(t)$ . These functions depend on the hull geometry and the forward speed. This effect appears due to the free surface. For sinusoidal motions, these integrals have components in phase with the motion and 90 degrees out of phase. The latter components contribute to damping, whereas the components in phase with the motion can be added as a frequency-dependent added mass.

### The Ogilvie (1964) Transformations

In order to relate the Cummins equation and the matrices  $\bar{\mathbf{A}}$ ,  $\bar{\mathbf{C}}$  and  $\bar{\mathbf{K}}$  to the frequency-domain equation, we will rely on a result from Ogilvie (1964). Assume that the floating vessel carries out harmonic oscillations

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} = \cos(\omega t) \mathbf{i}, \quad \mathbf{i} = [1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1]^\top \quad (5.78)$$

Substituting (5.78) into the Cummins equation (5.76) yields

$$-\omega^2 [\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \bar{\mathbf{A}}] \cos(\omega t) + \omega \int_{-\infty}^t \bar{\mathbf{K}}(\tau) \sin(\omega t - \omega \tau) d\tau + \bar{\mathbf{C}} \cos(\omega t) = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \delta \boldsymbol{\tau}$$

where we have replaced  $\tau$  by  $t - \tau$  in the integral. This gives

$$\begin{aligned} & -\omega^2 \left\{ [\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \bar{\mathbf{A}}] - \frac{1}{\omega} \int_0^\infty \bar{\mathbf{K}}(\tau) \sin(\omega \tau) d\tau \right\} \cos(\omega t) \\ & - \omega \left\{ \int_0^\infty \bar{\mathbf{K}}(\tau) \cos(\omega \tau) d\tau \right\} \sin(\omega t) + \bar{\mathbf{C}} \cos(\omega t) = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \delta \boldsymbol{\tau} \end{aligned} \quad (5.79)$$

The frequency-domain model is written

$$-\omega^2 \{[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\omega)] \cos(\omega t) - \omega \{\mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\omega) \sin(\omega \tau) d\tau\} \sin(\omega t) + \mathbf{C} \cos(\omega t) = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\delta}\tau \quad (5.80)$$

By comparing the terms in (5.79) and (5.80), it is seen that

$$\mathbf{A}(\omega) = \bar{\mathbf{A}} - \frac{1}{\omega} \int_0^\infty \bar{\mathbf{K}}(\tau) \sin(\omega \tau) d\tau \quad (5.81)$$

$$\mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\omega) = \int_0^\infty \bar{\mathbf{K}}(\tau) \cos(\omega \tau) d\tau \quad (5.82)$$

$$\mathbf{C} = \bar{\mathbf{C}} \quad (5.83)$$

Equation (5.81) must be valid for all  $\omega$ . Hence, we choose to evaluate (5.81) at  $\omega = \infty$ , implying that

$$\bar{\mathbf{A}} = \mathbf{A}(\infty) \quad (5.84)$$

Equation (5.82) is rewritten using the inverse Fourier transform

$$\bar{\mathbf{K}}(t) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\infty \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\omega) \cos(\omega t) d\omega \quad (5.85)$$

This expression is recognized as a matrix of *retardation functions*. From a numerical point of view is it better to integrate the difference

$$\mathbf{K}(t) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\infty [\mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\omega) - \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty)] \cos(\omega t) d\omega \quad (5.86)$$

than to use (5.85), since  $\mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\omega) - \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty)$  will be exact zero at  $\omega = \infty$ . Figure 5.4 shows a typical retardation function that is converging to zero in 15–20 s. The tail will oscillate if (5.85) is used instead of (5.86) in the numerical integration.

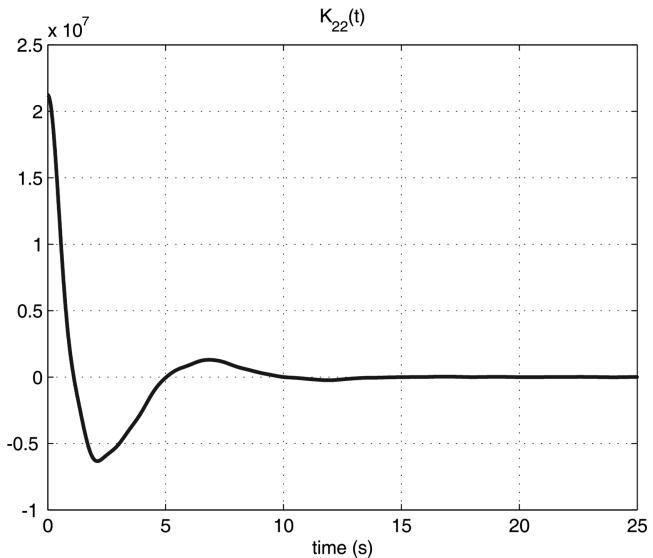
The relationship between  $\bar{\mathbf{K}}(t)$  and  $\mathbf{K}(t)$  follows from

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\mathbf{K}}(t) &= \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\infty [\mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\omega) - \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty) + \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty)] \cos(\omega t) d\omega \\ &= \mathbf{K}(t) + \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\infty \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty) \cos(\omega t) d\omega \end{aligned} \quad (5.87)$$

Then it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^t \bar{\mathbf{K}}(t - \tau) \dot{\xi}(\tau) d\tau &= \int_{-\infty}^t \mathbf{K}(t - \tau) \dot{\xi}(\tau) d\tau + \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty) \dot{\xi} \\ &\stackrel{\text{causal}}{=} \int_0^t \mathbf{K}(t - \tau) \dot{\xi}(\tau) d\tau + \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty) \dot{\xi} \end{aligned} \quad (5.88)$$

We are now ready to state the main result.



**Figure 5.4** Typical plot of the retardation function  $K_{22}(t)$  in sway.

### Time-Domain Seakeeping Equations of Motion in $\{s\}$

The relationship between the time-domain equation (5.76) and the frequency-domain equation (5.66) is established through (5.81)–(5.83) and (5.88). This gives

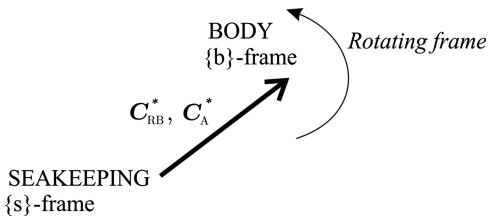
$$[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\infty)]\ddot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} + \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty)\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} + \int_0^t \mathbf{K}(t-\tau)\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}(\tau)d\tau + \mathbf{C}\boldsymbol{\xi} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\delta\tau} \quad (5.89)$$

where  $\mathbf{K}(t-\tau)$  is defined by (5.86). The equations of motion (5.89) describe the perturbed motion  $\boldsymbol{\xi}$  of a marine craft in 6 DOF using seakeeping coordinates. We will now transform this result to the rotating frame  $\{b\}$ .

#### 5.4.2 Linear Time-Domain Seakeeping Equations in BODY Coordinates

Two representations in  $\{b\}$  are available: one using zero-speed potential coefficients and one using speed-dependent matrices. Motion control systems are usually formulated in  $\{b\}$ . Consequently, we need to transform the time-domain representation of the Cummins equation (5.89) from  $\{s\}$  to  $\{b\}$ . When transforming the equations of motion to the rotating frame  $\{b\}$ , Coriolis and centripetal forces between  $\{s\}$  and  $\{b\}$  appear; see Figure 5.5. To illustrate this, consider

$$[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\infty)]\ddot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} + \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty)\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} + \int_0^t \mathbf{K}(t-\tau)\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}}(\tau)d\tau + \mathbf{C}\boldsymbol{\xi} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\delta\tau} \quad (5.90)$$



**Figure 5.5** Coriolis matrices due to the rotation of the body-fixed frame  $\{b\}$  about the inertial frame  $\{s\}$ .

which can be transformed from  $\{s\}$  to  $\{b\}$  by using the kinematic transformations (5.20) and (5.48)–(5.49) derived in Section 5.2.2. This gives

$$\begin{aligned} & [\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\infty)][\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{U}\mathbf{L}\mathbf{v}] + \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty)[\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{U}(\mathbf{L}\delta\boldsymbol{\eta} - \mathbf{e}_1)] \\ & + \int_0^t \mathbf{K}(t-\tau)\delta\mathbf{v}(\tau)d\tau + \mathbf{C}\delta\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + (\boldsymbol{\tau} - \bar{\boldsymbol{\tau}}) \end{aligned} \quad (5.91)$$

The steady-state control force  $\bar{\boldsymbol{\tau}}$  needed to obtain the forward speed  $U$  when  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\delta\boldsymbol{\eta} = \mathbf{0}$  is

$$\bar{\boldsymbol{\tau}} = \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty)U\mathbf{e}_1 \quad (5.92)$$

Hence, (5.91) can be rewritten as

$$[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\infty)][\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{U}\mathbf{L}\mathbf{v}] + \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty)[\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{U}\mathbf{L}\delta\boldsymbol{\eta}] + \int_0^t \mathbf{K}(t-\tau)\delta\mathbf{v}(\tau)d\tau + \mathbf{C}\delta\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (5.93)$$

In this expression, the linearized Coriolis–centripetal forces due to rigid-body mass and hydrodynamic added mass are recognized as  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}\mathbf{U}\mathbf{L}\mathbf{v}$  and  $\mathbf{A}(\infty)\mathbf{U}\mathbf{L}\mathbf{v}$ , respectively.

When computing the damping and retardation functions, it is common to neglect the influence of  $\delta\boldsymbol{\eta}$  on the forward speed such that

$$\delta\mathbf{v} \approx \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{U}(\mathbf{L}\delta\boldsymbol{\eta} - \mathbf{e}_1) \approx \mathbf{v} - U\mathbf{e}_1 \quad (5.94)$$

Hence, we can present the linear seakeeping equations expressed in the  $\{b\}$  frame.

### Linear Equations of Motion using Zero-Speed Potential Coefficients

The kinematic equation between  $\{b\}$  and  $\{n\}$  is

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v} \quad (5.95)$$

From (5.93)–(5.94) it follows that

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}^*\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{C}_A^*\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v}_r + \int_0^t \mathbf{K}(t-\tau)[\mathbf{v}(\tau) - U\mathbf{e}_1]d\tau + \mathbf{G}\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (5.96)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}$  has been replaced by the relative velocity  $\mathbf{v}_r$  to include ocean currents,  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{M}_A$  and

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{M}_A &= A(\infty) \\ \mathbf{C}_A^* &= UA(\infty)L \\ \mathbf{C}_{RB}^* &= UM_{RB}\mathbf{L} \\ \mathbf{D} &= \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}}(\infty) \\ \mathbf{G} &= \mathbf{C}\end{aligned}$$

We have here exploited the fact that  $\mathbf{C}\delta\boldsymbol{\eta} = \mathbf{G}\boldsymbol{\eta}$ . Notice that  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}^*$  and  $\mathbf{C}_A^*$  are linearized Coriolis and centripetal forces due to the rotation of  $\{b\}$  about  $\{s\}$ . At zero speed, these terms vanish.

### Linear Equations of Motion using Speed-Dependent Potential Coefficients

Some potential theory programs compute the potential coefficients as functions of speed and frequency:

$$A_U(\omega, U) = A(\omega) + \alpha(\omega, U) \quad (5.97)$$

$$B_U(\omega, U) = B(\omega) + \beta(\omega, U) \quad (5.98)$$

where  $\alpha(\omega, U)$  and  $\beta(\omega, U)$  denote the speed-dependent terms. For these codes,  $\beta(\omega, U)$  can include the matrix  $\mathbf{C}_A^* = UA(\infty)\mathbf{L}$  as well as other effects. A frequently used representation is

$$\beta(\omega, U) = \underbrace{UA(\infty)\mathbf{L}}_{C_A^*} + \mathbf{B}_{\text{ITTC}}(\omega, U) + \mathbf{B}_{\text{IKEDA}}(\omega, U) + \mathbf{B}_{\text{transom}}(\omega, U) \quad (5.99)$$

where the subscripts denote linearized ITTC resistance, IKEDA damping and transom stern effects. If the speed-dependent matrices (5.97) and (5.98) are used instead of the zero-speed matrices in (5.96), the equations of motion for each speed,  $U = \text{constant}$ , take the following form:

$$\mathbf{M}_U\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}^*\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{D}_U\mathbf{v}_r + \int_0^t \mathbf{K}_U(t-\tau, U)[\mathbf{v}(\tau) - U\mathbf{e}_1]d\tau + \mathbf{G}\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (5.100)$$

where the matrix  $\mathbf{C}_A^*$  is superfluous and

$$\mathbf{M}_U = \mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}_U(\infty, U)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}^* = \mathbf{U} \mathbf{M}_{RB} \mathbf{L}$$

$$\mathbf{D}_U = \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}, U}(\infty, U)$$

$$\mathbf{G} = \mathbf{C}$$

and

$$\mathbf{K}_U(t, U) = \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^\infty [\mathbf{B}_{\text{total}, U}(\omega, U) - \mathbf{B}_{\text{total}, U}(\infty, U)] \cos(\omega t) d\omega \quad (5.101)$$

The speed-dependent equations of motion (5.100) are computed at each speed  $U = \text{constant}$  while (5.96) is valid for any  $U(t)$  provided that  $U(t)$  is slowly varying. It is advantageous to use (5.96) since only the zero-speed potential coefficients  $\mathbf{A}(\omega)$  and  $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$  are needed in the implementation. This is based on the assumption that the  $\mathbf{C}_A$  matrix is the only element in  $\mathbf{B}_U(\omega, U)$ . Moreover, it is assumed that

$$\begin{aligned} \beta(\omega, U) &:= \mathbf{C}_A^* \\ &= \mathbf{U} \mathbf{A}(\infty) \mathbf{L} \end{aligned} \quad (5.102)$$

When using (5.96) instead of (5.100), it is necessary to add the remaining damping terms directly in the time-domain equations, as explained in Section 5.4.3.

### Properties of A, B and K

The following properties are useful when processing the hydrodynamic data:

- Asymptotic values for  $\omega = 0$ :

$$\mathbf{B}(0) = \mathbf{0}$$

- Asymptotic values for  $\omega \rightarrow \infty$ :

$$\mathbf{A}_U(\infty, U) = \mathbf{0}$$

$$\mathbf{A}_U(\infty, U) = \mathbf{A}(\infty)$$

These properties can be exploited when computing  $\mathbf{K}(t)$  numerically since most seakeeping codes only return values on an interval  $\omega = [\omega_{\min}, \omega_{\max}]$ .

Some useful properties of the retardation functions are:

- Asymptotic value for  $t = 0$ :

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \mathbf{K}(t) \neq \mathbf{0} < \infty \quad (5.103)$$

- Asymptotic value for  $t \rightarrow \infty$ :

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{K}(t) = \mathbf{0} \quad (5.104)$$

A plot illustrating the retardation function in sway is shown in Figure 5.4.

### 5.4.3 Nonlinear Unified Seakeeping and Maneuvering Model with Fluid Memory Effects

Consider the seakeeping model (5.96) based on the zero-speed potential coefficients:

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}^*\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{C}_A^*\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v}_r + \int_0^t \mathbf{K}(t-\tau)[\mathbf{v}(\tau) - U\mathbf{e}_1]d\tau + \mathbf{G}\eta = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (5.105)$$

For this model, the linearized Coriolis and centripetal matrices  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}^*$  and  $\mathbf{C}_A^*$  can be replaced by their nonlinear counterparts  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})$  and  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)$ ; see Section 6.3.1. In addition, the nonlinear damping  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r$  or maneuvering coefficients can be added directly in the time domain.

#### Unified Seakeeping and Maneuvering Model

Some authors refer to (5.105) as a *unified model* when nonlinear maneuvering terms are included since it merges the maneuvering and seakeeping theories (see Bailey *et al.*, 1998; Fossen, 2005). This gives a *unified* seakeeping and maneuvering model in the following form:

$$\dot{\eta} = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\eta)\mathbf{v} \quad (5.106)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \boldsymbol{\mu} + \mathbf{G}\eta = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (5.107)$$

The seakeeping *fluid memory effects* are captured in the term

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} := \int_0^t \mathbf{K}(t-\tau) \underbrace{[\mathbf{v}(\tau) - U\mathbf{e}_1]}_{\delta\mathbf{v}} d\tau \quad (5.108)$$

#### Constant and Irrotational Ocean Currents

The model (5.107) can be simplified if the *ocean currents* are assumed to be *constant* and *irrotational* in  $\{\mathbf{n}\}$  such that Property 8.1 is satisfied. Following the approach in Section 8.3 this gives

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \boldsymbol{\mu} + \mathbf{G}\eta = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (5.109)$$

#### Example 5.1 (Zero-Speed Model for DP with Fluid Memory Effects)

For stationkeeping ( $U = 0$  and  $r = 0$ ), the model (5.109) reduces to

$$\dot{\eta} = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\eta)\mathbf{v} \quad (5.110)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v}_r + \boldsymbol{\mu} + \mathbf{G}\eta = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (5.111)$$

under the assumptions that  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) = \mathbf{D}$ . This is similar to the result of Fossen and Smogeli (2004).

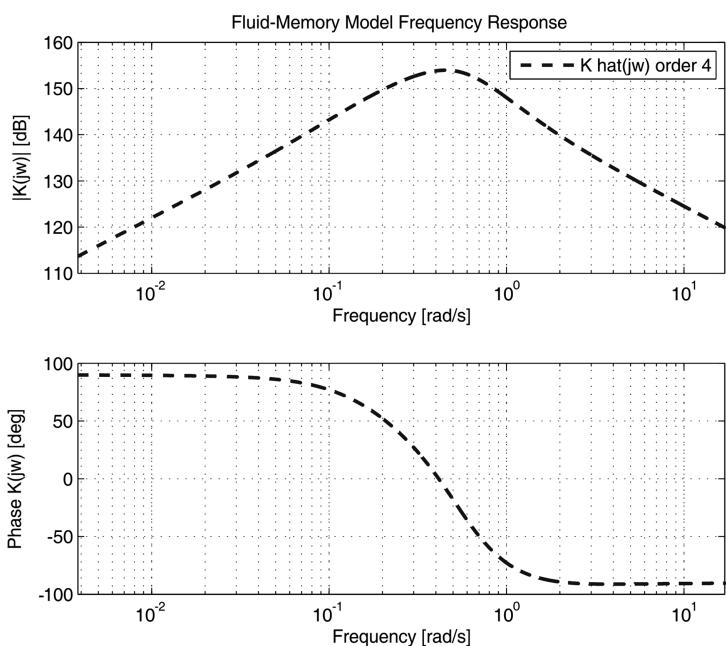
## 5.5 Case Study: Identification of Fluid Memory Effects

Kristiansen and Egeland (2003) and Kristiansen *et al.* (2005) have developed a state-space approximation for  $\mu$  using realization theory. Other methods such as the impulse response LS fitting can also be used (see Yu and Falnes, 1995, 1998). The time-domain methods are usually used in conjunction with model reduction in order to obtain a state-space model of smaller dimension suited for feedback control and time-domain simulation. This often results in a state-space model ( $A_r$ ,  $B_r$ ,  $C_r$ ,  $D_r$ ) where the  $D_r$  matrix is nonzero (Perez and Fossen, 2008). This is nonphysical since potential damping should not amplify signals at low frequencies. Hence, care must be taken when using time-domain methods. As a consequence of this, frequency-domain identification methods are much more accurate and they do have the advantage that a transfer function of correct relative degree can be chosen prior to the identification process. Hence, model reduction in the time domain can be avoided since the estimated transfer function can be converted into a ( $A_r$ ,  $B_r$ ,  $C_r$ ) state-space model exploiting the structural constraint  $D_r = \mathbf{0}$  directly. A more detailed discussion of the identification methods are found in Perez and Fossen (2008) while practical aspects are reported in Perez and Fossen (2011).

### 5.5.1 Frequency-Domain Identification using the MSS FDI Toolbox

This section illustrates how the fluid memory effects can be approximated using frequency-domain identification. The main tool for this is the MSS FDI toolbox (Perez and Fossen, 2009). When using the frequency-domain approach, the property that the mapping

$$\delta v \rightarrow \mu \quad (5.112)$$



**Figure 5.6** Bode plot showing the identified transfer function  $h_{33}(s)$  of an FPSO when  $A_{33}(\infty)$  is treated as an unknown to be estimated.

has relative degree one is exploited. Hence, the fluid memory effects  $\mu$  can be approximated by a matrix  $H(s)$  containing relative degree one transfer functions (see Figure 5.6):

$$h_{ij}(s) = \frac{p_r s^r + p_{r-1} s^{r-1} + \cdots + p_0}{s^n + q_{n-1} s^{n-1} + \cdots + q_0}, \quad r = n - 1, \quad n \geq 2 \quad (5.113)$$

such that

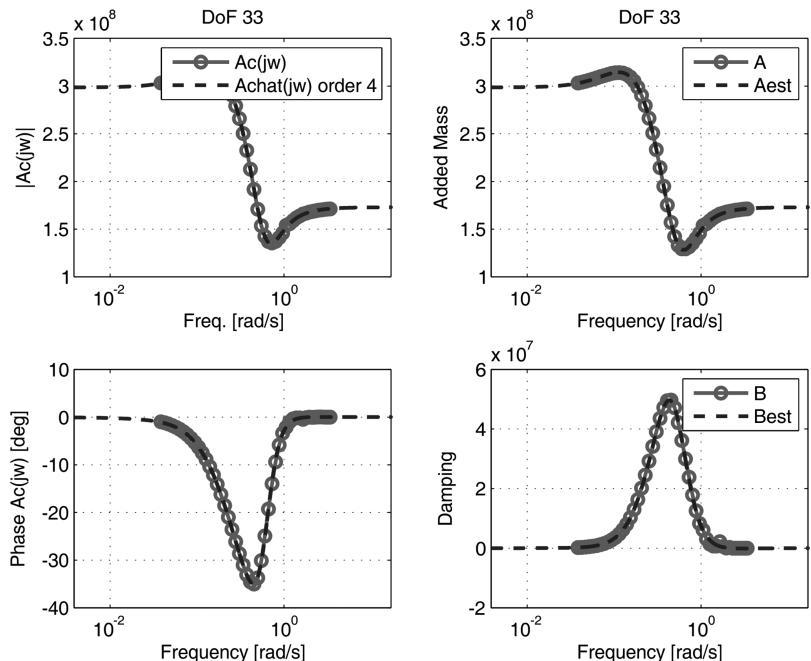
$$\mu = H(s)\delta v \quad (5.114)$$

with

$$H(s) = C_r(sI - A_r)^{-1} B_r \quad (5.115)$$

Consequently, the corresponding state-space model is in the form

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{x} &= A_r x + B_r \delta v \\ \mu &= C_r x \end{aligned} \quad (5.116)$$



**Figure 5.7** FPSO identification results for  $h_{33}(s)$  without using the infinite added mass  $A_{33}(\infty)$ . The left-hand-side plots show the complex coefficient and its estimate while added mass and damping are plotted on the right-hand-side plots.

The states  $\mathbf{x}$  in (5.116) reflect the fact that once the marine craft changes the momentum of the fluid, this will affect the forces in the future. In other words, the radiation forces at a particular time depend on the history of the velocity of the marine craft up to the present time. The dimension of  $\mathbf{x}$  and the matrices  $\mathbf{A}_r$ ,  $\mathbf{B}_r$  and  $\mathbf{C}_r$  depend on the order of the identified transfer functions (usually 2 to 20).

### Matlab

The fluid memory transfer function (5.113) can be computed using the MSS toolbox, which includes the FDI toolbox for frequency-domain identification (Perez and Fossen, 2009). The toolbox includes two demo files for the cases where infinite added mass is unknown (2-D strip theory codes) or computed by the hydrodynamic code, for instance the 3-D code by WAMIT.

#### **Example 5.2 (Computation of Fluid Memory Effects)**

Consider the FPSO data set in the MSS toolbox and assume that the infinite-frequency added mass matrix is unknown. Hence, we can estimate the fluid transfer function  $h_{33}(s)$  by using the following Matlab code:

```
load fpso
Dof = [3,3]; %Use coupling 3-3 heave-heave
Nf = length(vessel.freqs);
W = vessel.freqs(1:Nf-1)';
Ainf = vessel.A(Dof(1),Dof(2),Nf); % Ainf computed by WAMIT

A = reshape(vessel.A(Dof(1),Dof(2),1:Nf-1),1,length(W))';
B = reshape(vessel.B(Dof(1),Dof(2),1:Nf-1),1,length(W))';
```

The identification routine is called according to (see Perez and Fossen, 2009, for an explanation of the options)

```
FDIopt.OrdMax = 20;
FDIopt.AinfFlag = 0;
FDIopt.Method = 2;
FDIopt.Iterations = 20;
FDIopt.PlotFlag = 0;
FDIopt.LogLin = 1;
FDIopt.wsFactor = 0.1;
FDIopt.wminFactor = 0.1;
FDIopt.wmaxFactor = 5;
```

$[KradNum,KradDen,Ainf_hat] = FDIRadMod(W,A,0,B,FDIopt,Dof)$

giving a fourth-order transfer function:

$$h_{33}(s) = \frac{1.672e007 s^3 + 2.286e007 s^2 + 2.06e006 s}{s^4 + 1.233 s^3 + 0.7295 s^2 + 0.1955 s + 0.01639}$$

of relative degree 1. The state-space model (5.116) is obtained by calling

$[A_r,B_r,C_r,D_r] = tf2ss(KradNum,KradDen)$

$$\mathbf{A}_r = \begin{bmatrix} -1.2335 & -0.7295 & -0.1955 & -0.0164 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{B}_r = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{C}_r = [1.672e007 \quad 2.286e007 \quad 2.06e006 \quad 0]$$

$$\mathbf{D}_r = 0$$

The identified transfer function  $h_{33}(s)$  is plotted in Figure 5.6 while curve fitting of amplitude, phase, added mass and potential damping are shown in Figure 5.7. The estimated transfer function and potential coefficients are matching the experimental data with good accuracy. Notice that the asymptotic behavior satisfies the properties of added mass  $A_{33}(\omega)$  and potential damping  $B_{33}(\omega)$  as expected.

# 6

## Maneuvering Theory

In Chapter 5 the 6 DOF seakeeping equations of motion for a ship in a seaway were presented. The seakeeping model is based on linear theory and a potential theory program is used to compute the frequency-dependent hydrodynamic forces for varying wave excitation frequencies. The time-domain representation of the seakeeping model is very useful for accurate prediction of motions and sealoads of floating structures offshore. The seakeeping theory can also be applied to displacement ships moving at constant speed. Seakeeping time-domain models are limited to linear theory since it is necessary to approximate the fluid memory effects by impulse responses or transfer functions.

An alternative to the seakeeping formalism is to use maneuvering theory to describe the motions of marine craft in 3 DOF, that is *surge*, *sway* and *yaw*. Sometimes roll is augmented to the horizontal plane model to describe more accurately the coupled lateral motions, that is *sway-roll-yaw* couplings while *surge* is left decoupled; see Section 7.4. In maneuvering theory, frequency-dependent added mass and potential damping are approximated by constant values and thus it is not necessary to compute the fluid-memory effects. The main results of this chapter are based on the assumption that the hydrodynamic forces and moments can be approximated at one frequency of oscillation such that the fluid-memory effects can be neglected. The result is a nonlinear mass–damper–spring system with constant coefficients.

In the following sections, it is shown that the maneuvering equations of motion can be represented by (Fossen, 1991, 1994)

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_o = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (6.1)$$

In the case of *irrotational ocean currents*, the relative velocity vector

$$\mathbf{v}_r = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_c, \quad \mathbf{v}_c = [u_c, v_c, w_c, 0, 0, 0]^\top$$

contributes to the hydrodynamic terms such that

$$\underbrace{\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v}}_{\text{rigid-body forces}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{M}_A\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r}_{\text{hydrodynamic forces}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_o}_{\text{hydrostatic forces}} = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (6.2)$$

The model (6.2) can be simplified if the *ocean currents* are assumed to be *constant* and *irrotational* in  $\{n\}$  such that (see Section 8.3)

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}}_c = \begin{bmatrix} -S(\omega_{b/n}^b) & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_c \quad (6.3)$$

According to Property 8.1, it is then possible to represent the equations of motion by relative velocities only:

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{g}(\eta) + \mathbf{g}_o = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (6.4)$$

where

$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{M}_A$  - system inertia matrix (including added mass)

$\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r) = \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r) + \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)$  - Coriolis–centripetal matrix (including added mass)

$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)$  - damping matrix

$\mathbf{g}(\eta)$  - vector of gravitational/buoyancy forces and moments

$\mathbf{g}_o$  - vector used for pretrimming (ballast control)

$\boldsymbol{\tau}$  - vector of control inputs

$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}}$  - vector of wind forces

$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}$  - vector of wave-induced forces

The expressions for  $\mathbf{M}$ ,  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r)$ ,  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)$ ,  $\mathbf{g}(\eta)$  and  $\mathbf{g}_o$  are derived in the forthcoming sections while the environmental forces  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}}$  and  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}$  are treated separately in Chapter 8. The maneuvering model presented in this chapter is mainly intended for controller–observer design, prediction and computer simulations in combination with system identification and parameter estimation. Application specific models are presented in Chapter 7.

Hydrodynamic programs compute mass, inertia, potential damping and restoring forces while a more detailed treatment of viscous dissipative forces (damping) are found in the extensive literature on hydrodynamics; see Faltinsen (1990, 2005), Newman (1977), Sarpkaya (1981) and Triantafyllou and Hover (2002). Other useful references on marine craft modeling are Lewandowski (2004) and Perez (2005).

## 6.1 Rigid-Body Kinetics

Recall from Chapter 3 that the rigid-body kinetics can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} \quad (6.5)$$

where  $\mathbf{M}_{RB} = \mathbf{M}_{RB}^\top > 0$  is the rigid-body mass matrix and  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) = -\mathbf{C}_{RB}^\top(\mathbf{v})$  is the rigid-body Coriolis and centripetal matrix due to the rotation of  $\{b\}$  about the inertial frame  $\{n\}$ . The horizontal motion of a maneuvering ship or semi-submersible is given by the motion components in surge, sway and yaw. Consequently, the state vectors are chosen as  $\mathbf{v} = [u, v, r]^\top$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = [N, E, \psi]^\top$ . It is also common to assume that the craft has homogeneous mass distribution and  $xz$ -plane symmetry so that

$$I_{xy} = I_{yz} = 0 \quad (6.6)$$

Let the  $\{b\}$ -frame coordinate origin be set in the centerline of the craft in the point CO, such that  $y_g = 0$ . Under the previously stated assumptions, the matrices (3.44) and (3.60) associated with the rigid-body kinetics reduce to

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB} = \begin{bmatrix} m & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m & mx_g \\ 0 & mx_g & I_z \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -mr & -mx_g r \\ mr & 0 & 0 \\ mx_g r & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.7)$$

Notice that surge is decoupled from sway and yaw in  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}$  due to symmetry considerations of the system inertia matrix (see Section 3.3).

The linear approximation to (6.5) about  $u = U = \text{constant}$ ,  $v = 0$  and  $r = 0$  is

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}^*\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} \quad (6.8)$$

where

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}^* = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & mU \\ 0 & 0 & mx_g U \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.9)$$

## 6.2 Potential Coefficients

Hydrodynamic potential theory programs can be used to compute the added mass and damping matrices by integrating the pressure of the fluid over the wetted surface of the hull; see Section 5.1. These programs assume that viscous effects can be neglected. Consequently, it is necessary to add viscous forces manually. The programs are also based on the assumptions that first- and second-order wave forces can be linearly superimposed.

The potential coefficients are usually represented as frequency-dependent matrices for 6 DOF motions. The matrices are:

- $\mathbf{A}(\omega)$  added mass
- $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$  potential damping

where  $\omega$  is the wave excitation frequency of a sinusoidal (regular) wave generated by a wave maker or the ocean. Figure 6.1 illustrates the components in sway.

### Surface Vessels

In seakeeping analysis, the equations of motion are formulated as perturbations

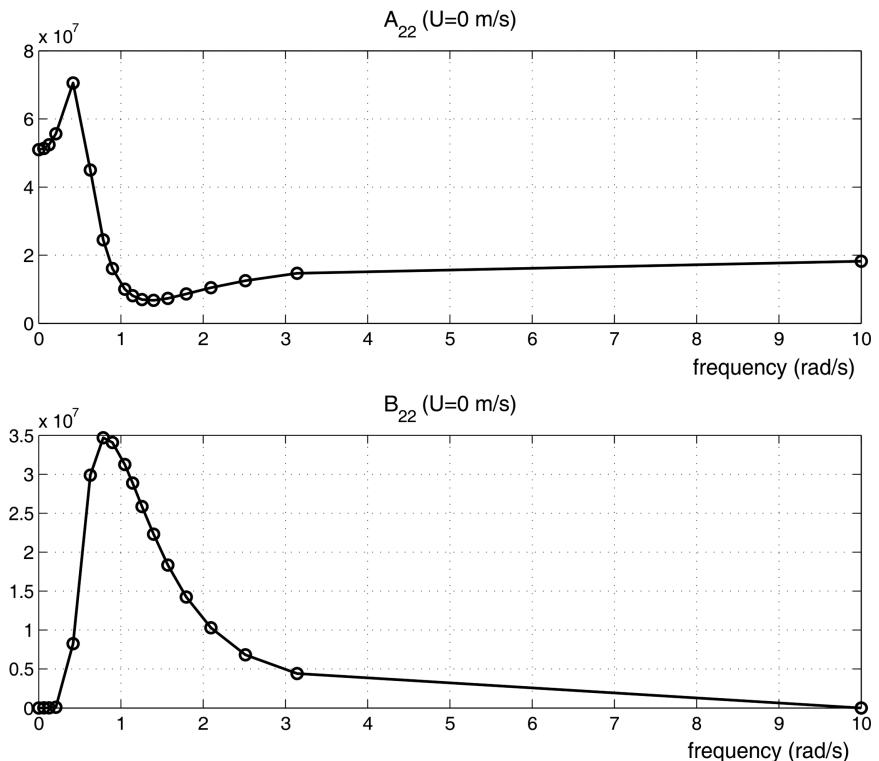
$$\xi = \delta\eta = [\delta x, \delta y, \delta z, \delta\phi, \delta\theta, \delta\psi]^\top \quad (6.10)$$

about an inertial equilibrium frame (see Section 5.3). For a floating body at zero speed this is written as

$$[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\omega)]\ddot{\xi} + \mathbf{B}(\omega)\dot{\xi} + \mathbf{C}\xi = \mathbf{f} \cos(\omega t) \quad (6.11)$$

where  $\mathbf{C}$  is the spring stiffness matrix due to *Archimedes* and the right-hand side of (6.11) is a vector of forced oscillations with amplitudes:

$$\mathbf{f} = [f_1, \dots, f_6]^\top \quad (6.12)$$



**Figure 6.1** Added mass  $A_{22}(\omega)$  and potential damping  $B_{22}(\omega)$  in sway as a function of  $\omega$  for a large tanker.

Equation (6.11) is a pseudo-differential equation combining time and frequency (see Section 5.3.2). This equation is not intended for computer simulations as discussed in Chapter 5 where a proper time-domain representation is derived using the Cummins equation. The matrices  $\mathbf{A}(\omega)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$  and  $\mathbf{C}$  can be treated as a *hydrodynamic mass–damper–spring system* which varies with the frequency  $\omega$  of the forced oscillation. By exposing the craft to different oscillations it is possible to compute added mass and potential damping for all the frequencies, as shown in Section 5.3.

### Underwater Vehicles

For vehicles operating at water depths below the wave-affected zone, the hydrodynamic coefficients will be independent of the wave excitation frequency. Consequently,

$$\mathbf{A}(\omega) = \text{constant} \quad \forall \omega \quad (6.13)$$

$$\mathbf{B}(\omega) = \mathbf{0} \quad (6.14)$$

This means that if a seakeeping code is used to compute the potential coefficients, only one frequency is needed to obtain an estimate of the added mass matrix. In addition, there will be no potential damping. However, viscous damping  $\mathbf{B}_V(\omega)$  will be present.

## Discussion

Equation (6.11) should not be used in computer simulations. As earlier mentioned, (6.11) is not an ordinary differential equation since it combines time and frequency. As stressed in Chapter 5, the time-domain seakeeping model should be represented by the Cummins equation, which is an integro-differential equation (Cummins, 1962). For surface vessels it is common to solve the Cummins equation in the time domain under the assumption of linear theory (see Section 5.4). This introduces *fluid-memory effects*, which can be interpreted as filtered potential damping forces. These forces are retardation functions that can be approximated by transfer functions and state-space models, as shown in Section 5.4. It is standard to include the fluid-memory effects in seakeeping analysis while classical maneuvering theory neglects the fluid-memory by relying on a zero-frequency assumption.

### 6.2.1 3 DOF Maneuvering Model

The classical maneuvering model makes use of the following assumption:

**Definition 6.1 (Zero-Frequency Models for Surge, Sway and Yaw)**

*The horizontal motions (surge, sway and yaw) of a marine craft moving at forward speed can be described by a zero-frequency model where:*

$$\mathbf{M}_A = \mathbf{A}^{\{1,2,6\}}(0) = \begin{bmatrix} A_{11}(0) & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & A_{22}(0) & A_{26}(0) \\ 0 & A_{62}(0) & A_{66}(0) \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.15)$$

$$\mathbf{D}_p = \mathbf{B}^{\{1,2,6\}}(0) = \mathbf{0} \quad (6.16)$$

are constant matrices.

## Discussion

*When applying a feedback control system to stabilize the motions in surge, sway and yaw, the natural periods will be in the range of 100–200 s. This implies that the natural frequencies are in the range of 0.03–0.10 rad/s, which is quite close to the zero wave excitation frequency. Also note that viscous damping forces will dominate the potential damping terms at low frequency and that fluid memory effects can be neglected at higher speeds.*

Definition 6.1 is frequently applied when deriving maneuvering models for ships in a seaway. It is convenient to represent the equations of motion without using frequency-dependent quantities since this reduces model complexity.

### 6.2.2 6 DOF Coupled Motions

One limitation of Definition 6.1 is that it cannot be applied to *heave, roll and pitch*. These modes are second-order mass–damper–spring systems where the dominating frequencies are the natural frequencies. Hence, the constant frequency models in heave, roll and pitch should be formulated at their respective natural frequencies and not at the zero frequency. This suggests the following definition:

**Definition 6.2 (Natural Frequency Models for Heave, Roll and Pitch)**

*The natural frequencies for the decoupled motions in heave, roll and pitch are given by the implicit equations*

$$\omega_{\text{heave}} = \sqrt{\frac{C_{33}}{m + A_{33}(\omega_{\text{heave}})}} \quad (6.17)$$

$$\omega_{\text{roll}} = \sqrt{\frac{C_{44}}{I_x + A_{44}(\omega_{\text{roll}})}} \quad (6.18)$$

$$\omega_{\text{pitch}} = \sqrt{\frac{C_{55}}{I_y + A_{55}(\omega_{\text{pitch}})}} \quad (6.19)$$

where the potential coefficients  $A_{ii}(\omega)$  and  $B_{ii}(\omega)$  ( $i = 3, 4, 5$ ) are computed in the center of flotation (CF). The corresponding mass-damper-spring systems are

$$[m + A_{33}(\omega_{\text{heave}})]\ddot{z} + B_{33}(\omega_{\text{heave}})w + C_{33}z = 0 \quad (6.20)$$

$$[I_x + A_{44}(\omega_{\text{roll}})]\ddot{p} + B_{44}(\omega_{\text{roll}})p + C_{44}\phi = 0 \quad (6.21)$$

$$[I_y + A_{55}(\omega_{\text{pitch}})]\ddot{q} + B_{55}(\omega_{\text{pitch}})q + C_{55}\theta = 0 \quad (6.22)$$

Equations (6.20)–(6.22) are decoupled damped oscillators. However, the natural frequencies (6.17)–(6.19) can also be computed for the 6 DOF coupled model (6.11) by using a modal analysis; see Section 4.3.2.

Consider the unforced 6 DOF linear seakeeping model

$$[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\omega)]\ddot{\xi} + [\mathbf{B}(\omega) + \mathbf{B}_v(\omega)]\dot{\xi} + \mathbf{C}\xi = \mathbf{0} \quad (6.23)$$

where viscous damping is included. Furthermore, assume that three constant matrices  $\bar{\mathbf{A}}$ ,  $\bar{\mathbf{B}}$  and  $\bar{\mathbf{B}}_V$  exist that approximate  $\mathbf{A}(\omega)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$  and  $\mathbf{B}_V(\omega)$ . This system can be transformed from seakeeping coordinates  $\{s\}$  to body-fixed coordinates  $\{b\}$  using the approach in Section 5.4. The resulting model is a linear one:

$$[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{M}_A]\ddot{\mathbf{v}} + [\mathbf{C}_{RB}^* + \mathbf{C}_A^*]\dot{\mathbf{v}} + [\mathbf{D}_P + \mathbf{D}_V]\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{G}\boldsymbol{\eta} = \mathbf{0} \quad (6.24)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{M}_A &= \bar{\mathbf{A}} & \mathbf{D}_P &= \bar{\mathbf{B}} \\ \mathbf{C}_A^* &= U\bar{\mathbf{A}}\mathbf{L} & \mathbf{D}_V &= \bar{\mathbf{B}}_V \\ \mathbf{C}_{RB}^* &= U\mathbf{M}_{RB}\mathbf{L} & \mathbf{G} &= \mathbf{C} \end{aligned} \quad (6.25)$$

and  $\mathbf{L}$  is the selection matrix (3.63).

The potential coefficients  $\mathbf{A}(\omega)$  and  $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$  can be computed using a hydrodynamic code. If we rely on Definitions 6.1 and 6.2 to approximate  $\mathbf{M}_A$ ,  $\mathbf{D}_P$  and  $\mathbf{D}_V$  it is necessary to assume that there are no

couplings between the surge, heave–roll–pitch and the sway–yaw subsystems. Hence, added mass and potential damping can be approximated by two constant matrices:

$$\mathbf{M}_A \approx \begin{bmatrix} A_{11}(0) & 0 & & & & 0 \\ 0 & A_{22}(0) & & & & A_{26}(0) \\ & \dots & & \dots & & \\ & & \boxed{A_{33}(\omega_{\text{heave}}) & 0 & 0} & & \\ & & 0 & A_{44}(\omega_{\text{roll}}) & 0 & \\ & & 0 & 0 & A_{55}(\omega_{\text{pitch}}) & \\ 0 & A_{62}(0) & & \dots & & A_{66}(0) \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.26)$$

$$\mathbf{D}_p \approx \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & & & & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & & & & 0 \\ & \dots & & \dots & & \\ & & \boxed{B_{33}(\omega_{\text{heave}}) & 0 & 0} & & \\ & & 0 & B_{44}(\omega_{\text{roll}}) & 0 & \\ & & 0 & 0 & B_{55}(\omega_{\text{pitch}}) & \\ 0 & 0 & & \dots & & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.27)$$

The natural frequencies  $\omega_{\text{heave}}$ ,  $\omega_{\text{roll}}$  and  $\omega_{\text{pitch}}$  can be computed using the methods in Sections 4.3.1–4.3.2. The linear viscous damping terms are usually approximated by a diagonal matrix:

$$\mathbf{D}_V \approx \text{diag}\{B_{11v}, B_{22v}, B_{33v}, B_{44v}, B_{55v}, B_{66v}\} \quad (6.28)$$

where the elements  $B_{iiv}$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 6$ ) can be computed from the time constants and natural periods of the system (see Section 6.4).

### 6.3 Nonlinear Coriolis Forces due to Added Mass in a Rotating Coordinate System

The model discussed in Section 6.2 was derived using linear theory. In order to extend this to nonlinear maneuvering theory, the Coriolis and centripetal forces will be derived in a Lagrangian framework. The Coriolis and centripetal matrix  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v})$  is a function of added mass  $\mathbf{M}_A$  and depends on which reference frames are considered. Lagrangian theory considers the motion of a rotating frame  $\{b\}$  with respect to  $\{n\}$ .

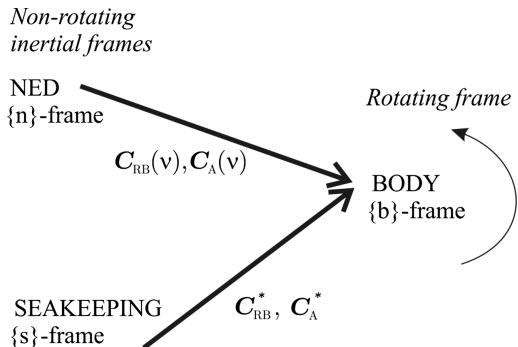
In seakeeping theory, the body frame  $\{b\}$  rotates about  $\{s\}$ . This results in a linear Coriolis and centripetal matrix denoted by  $\mathbf{C}_A^*$  (see Section 5.4.2). Both representations can be used depending on whether a linear or nonlinear model is needed. The rotation of  $\{b\}$  about the inertial systems  $\{n\}$  and alternatively  $\{s\}$  are illustrated in Figure 6.2.

#### 6.3.1 Lagrangian Mechanics

In Section 3.1, it was shown that the rigid-body kinetics of a marine craft can be derived by applying the *Newtonian* formulation. As for the rigid-body kinetics, it is advantageous to separate the added mass forces and moments in terms that belong to the *added mass matrix*  $\mathbf{M}_A$  and a matrix of hydrodynamic Coriolis and centripetal terms denoted  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v})$ . To derive the expressions for these two matrices, an *energy approach* based on Kirchhoff's equations will now be presented. Detailed discussions of Newtonian and Lagrangian mechanics are found in Goldstein (1980), Hughes (1986), Kane *et al.* (1983), Meirovitch (1990) and Egeland and Gravdahl (2002).

The Lagrangian  $L$  is formed by using kinetic energy  $T$  and potential energy  $V$ , according to

$$L = T - V \quad (6.29)$$



**Figure 6.2** Coriolis matrices due to the rotation of the body-fixed frame  $\{b\}$  about the inertial frames  $\{n\}$  or  $\{s\}$ .

The Euler–Lagrange equation is

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{\partial L}{\partial \dot{\eta}} \right) - \frac{\partial L}{\partial \eta} = J_{\Theta}^{-\top}(\eta) \tau \quad (6.30)$$

which in component form corresponds to a set of six second-order differential equations. From the above formula it is seen that the Lagrangian mechanics describes the system dynamics in terms of energy. Formula (6.30) is valid in any reference frame, inertial and body-fixed, as long as *generalized coordinates* are used.

For a marine craft not subject to any motion constraints, the number of independent (*generalized*) coordinates is equal to the number of DOF. For a marine craft moving in 6 DOF the generalized coordinates in  $\{n\}$  can be chosen as

$$\eta = [N, E, D, \phi, \theta, \psi]^{\top} \quad (6.31)$$

It should be noted that the alternative representation

$$\eta = [N, E, D, \eta, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3]^{\top} \quad (6.32)$$

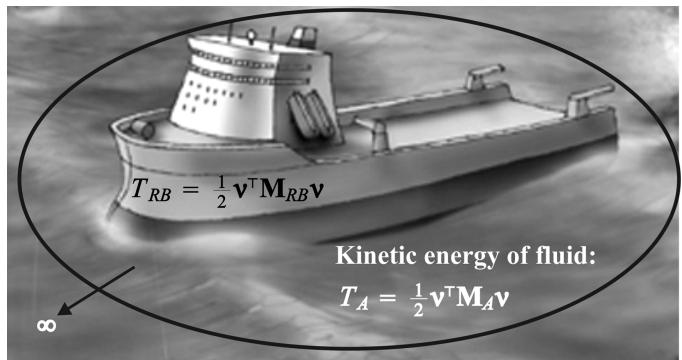
using unit quaternions cannot be used in a Lagrangian approach since this representation is defined by seven parameters. Hence, these parameters are not *generalized coordinates*. It is not straightforward to formulate the equations of motion in  $\{b\}$  since

$$\nu = [u, v, w, p, q, r]^{\top} \quad (6.33)$$

cannot be integrated to yield a set of generalized coordinates in terms of position and orientation. In fact  $\int_0^t \nu d\tau$  has no immediate physical interpretation. Consequently, the Lagrange equation cannot be directly used to formulate the equations of motion in  $\{b\}$ . However, this problem is circumvented by applying Kirchhoff's equations of motion, or the so-called *quasi-Lagrangian* approach; see Meirovitch and Kwak (1989) for details.

### 6.3.2 Kirchhoff's Equations in Vector Form

Consider a marine craft with linear velocity  $\nu_1 := [u, v, w]^{\top}$  and angular velocity  $\nu_2 := [p, q, r]^{\top}$  expressed in  $\{b\}$ . Hence, the force  $\tau_1 := [X, Y, Z]^{\top}$  and moment  $\tau_2 := [K, M, N]^{\top}$  are related to the kinetic



**Figure 6.3** Rigid-body and fluid kinetic energy (ocean surrounding the ship). Illustration by Bjarne Stenberg.

energy (Kirchhoff, 1869)

$$T = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{M} \mathbf{v} \quad (6.34)$$

by the vector equations

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_1} \right) + \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2) \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_1} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_1 \quad (6.35)$$

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_2} \right) + \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_2) \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_2} + \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{v}_1) \frac{\partial T}{\partial \mathbf{v}_1} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_2 \quad (6.36)$$

where  $\mathbf{S}$  is the skew-symmetric cross-product operator in Definition 2.2. Kirchhoff's equations will prove to be very useful in the derivation of the expression for added inertia. Notice that Kirchhoff's equations do not include the gravitational forces.

### 6.3.3 Added Mass and Coriolis–Centripetal Forces due to the Rotation of BODY Relative to NED

The matrix  $\mathbf{C}_A^*$  in (6.25) represents linearized forces due to a rotation of  $\{b\}$  about the seakeeping frame  $\{s\}$ . Instead of using  $\{s\}$  as the inertial frame, we will assume that  $\{n\}$  is the inertial frame and that  $\{b\}$  rotates about  $\{n\}$ . The nonlinear Coriolis and centripetal matrix  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v})$  due to a rotation of  $\{b\}$  about the inertial frame  $\{n\}$  can be derived using an energy formulation based on the constant matrix  $\mathbf{M}_A$ . Since any motion of the marine craft will induce a motion in the otherwise stationary fluid, the fluid must move aside and then close behind the craft in order to let the craft pass through the fluid. As a consequence, the fluid motion possesses kinetic energy that it would lack otherwise (see Figure 6.3). The expression for the fluid kinetic energy  $T_A$  is written as a quadratic form (Lamb, 1932)

$$T_A = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{M}_A \mathbf{v}, \quad \dot{\mathbf{M}}_A = \mathbf{0} \quad (6.37)$$

where  $\mathbf{M}_A = \mathbf{M}_A^\top \geq 0$  is the  $6 \times 6$  system *inertia matrix* of added mass terms:

$$\mathbf{M}_A = - \begin{bmatrix} X_{\dot{u}} & X_{\dot{v}} & X_{\dot{w}} & X_{\dot{p}} & X_{\dot{q}} & X_{\dot{r}} \\ Y_{\dot{u}} & Y_{\dot{v}} & Y_{\dot{w}} & Y_{\dot{p}} & Y_{\dot{q}} & Y_{\dot{r}} \\ Z_{\dot{u}} & Z_{\dot{v}} & Z_{\dot{w}} & Z_{\dot{p}} & Z_{\dot{q}} & Z_{\dot{r}} \\ K_{\dot{u}} & K_{\dot{v}} & K_{\dot{w}} & K_{\dot{p}} & K_{\dot{q}} & K_{\dot{r}} \\ M_{\dot{u}} & M_{\dot{v}} & M_{\dot{w}} & M_{\dot{p}} & M_{\dot{q}} & M_{\dot{r}} \\ N_{\dot{u}} & N_{\dot{v}} & N_{\dot{w}} & N_{\dot{p}} & N_{\dot{q}} & N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.38)$$

The notation of SNAME (1950) for the hydrodynamic derivatives is used in this expression; for instance the hydrodynamic added mass force  $Y$  along the  $y$  axis due to an acceleration  $\dot{u}$  in the  $x$  direction is written as

$$Y = -Y_{\dot{u}}\dot{u}, \quad Y_{\dot{u}} := \frac{\partial Y}{\partial \dot{u}} \quad (6.39)$$

This implies that  $\{M_A\}_{21} = -Y_{\dot{u}}$  in the example above.

#### **Property 6.1 (Hydrodynamic System Inertia Matrix $\mathbf{M}_A$ )**

For a rigid body at rest or moving at forward speed  $U \geq 0$  in ideal fluid, the hydrodynamic system inertia matrix  $\mathbf{M}_A$  is positive semi-definite:

$$\mathbf{M}_A = \mathbf{M}_A^\top \geq 0$$

**Proof.** Newman (1977) has shown this for zero speed. The results extend to forward speed by using the approach presented in Chapter 5.

#### **Remark 6.1**

In a real fluid the 36 elements of  $\mathbf{M}_A$  may all be distinct but still  $\mathbf{M}_A \geq 0$ . Experience has shown that the numerical values of the added mass derivatives in a real fluid are usually in good agreement with those obtained from ideal theory (see Wendel, 1956).

#### **Remark 6.2**

If experimental data are used, the inertia matrix can be symmetrized by using:

$$\mathbf{M}_A = \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{M}_{A,\text{exp}} + \mathbf{M}_{A,\text{exp}}^\top) \quad (6.40)$$

where  $\mathbf{M}_{A,\text{exp}}$  contains the experimentally data.

#### **Added Mass Forces and Moments**

Based on the kinetic energy  $T_A$  of the fluid, it is straightforward to derive the added mass forces and moments. Substituting (6.37) into (6.35)–(6.36) gives the following expressions for the added mass terms

(Imlay, 1961):

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_A &= X_{\dot{u}}\dot{u} + X_{\dot{w}}(\dot{w} + uq) + X_{\dot{q}}\dot{q} + Z_{\dot{w}}wq + Z_{\dot{q}}q^2 \\
 &\quad + X_v\dot{v} + X_p\dot{p} + X_r\dot{r} - Y_vvr - Y_prp - Y_rr^2 \\
 &\quad - X_{\dot{u}}ur - Y_{\dot{w}}wr \\
 &\quad + Y_{\dot{w}}vq + Z_{\dot{p}}pq - (Y_{\dot{q}} - Z_{\dot{r}})qr \\
 Y_A &= X_{\dot{v}}\dot{u} + Y_{\dot{w}}\dot{w} + Y_{\dot{q}}\dot{q} \\
 &\quad + Y_v\dot{v} + Y_p\dot{p} + Y_r\dot{r} + X_vvr - Y_wvp + X_rr^2 + (X_p - Z_r)rp - Z_p p^2 \\
 &\quad - X_w(up - wr) + X_uur - Z_wwp \\
 &\quad - Z_{\dot{q}}pq + X_{\dot{q}}qr \\
 Z_A &= X_{\dot{w}}(\dot{u} - wq) + Z_{\dot{w}}\dot{w} + Z_{\dot{q}}\dot{q} - X_{\dot{u}}uq - X_{\dot{q}}q^2 \\
 &\quad + Y_{\dot{w}}\dot{v} + Z_p\dot{p} + Z_r\dot{r} + Y_vvp + Y_rrp + Y_p p^2 \\
 &\quad + X_uup + Y_wwp \\
 &\quad - X_vvq - (X_p - Y_{\dot{q}})pq - X_rqr \\
 K_A &= X_p\dot{u} + Z_p\dot{w} + K_q\dot{q} - X_iwu + X_iuq - Y_ww^2 - (Y_{\dot{q}} - Z_r)wq + M_rq^2 \\
 &\quad + Y_p\dot{v} + K_p\dot{p} + K_r\dot{r} + Y_wv^2 - (Y_{\dot{q}} - Z_r)vr + Z_pvp - M_rr^2 - K_qur \\
 &\quad + X_wuv - (Y_v - Z_w)vw - (Y_r + Z_q)wr - Y_pwp - X_qur \\
 &\quad + (Y_r + Z_q)vq + K_rpq - (M_q - N_r)qr \\
 M_A &= X_q(\dot{u} + wq) + Z_q(\dot{w} - uq) + M_q\dot{q} - X_w(u^2 - w^2) - (Z_w - X_u)wu \\
 &\quad + Y_q\dot{v} + K_q\dot{p} + M_r\dot{r} + Y_pvr - Y_rvp - K_r(p^2 - r^2) + (K_p - N_r)rp \\
 &\quad - Y_wuv + X_vvw - (X_r + Z_p)(up - wr) + (X_p - Z_r)(wp + ur) \\
 &\quad - M_rpq + K_qqr \\
 N_A &= X_r\dot{u} + Z_r\dot{w} + M_r\dot{q} + X_vu^2 + Y_wwu - (X_p - Y_{\dot{q}})uq - Z_pwq - K_qq^2 \\
 &\quad + Y_r\dot{v} + K_r\dot{p} + N_r\dot{r} - X_vv^2 - X_rvr - (X_p - Y_{\dot{q}})vp + M_rrp + K_qp^2 \\
 &\quad - (X_u - Y_v)uv - X_wvw + (X_q + Y_p)up + Y_rur + Z_qwp \\
 &\quad - (X_{\dot{q}} + Y_p)vq - (K_p - M_q)pq - K_rqr
 \end{aligned} \tag{6.41}$$

Imlay (1961) arranged the equations in four lines with longitudinal components on the first line and lateral components on the second. The third line consists of mixed terms involving  $u$  or  $w$  as one factor. If one or both of these velocities are large enough to be treated as constants, the third line may be treated as an additional term to the lateral equations of motion. The fourth line contains mixed terms that usually can be neglected as second-order terms.

It should be noted that the off-diagonal elements of  $\mathbf{M}_A$  will be small compared to the diagonal elements for most practical applications. A more detailed discussion on the different added mass derivatives can be found in Humphreys and Watkinson (1978).

**Property 6.2 (Hydrodynamic Coriolis–Centripetal Matrix  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v})$ )**

For a rigid body moving through an ideal fluid the hydrodynamic Coriolis and centripetal matrix  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v})$  can always be parameterized such that it is skew-symmetric:

$$\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}) = -\mathbf{C}_A^\top(\mathbf{v}), \quad \forall \mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^6 \quad (6.42)$$

One parametrization satisfying (6.42) is

$$\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & -S(\mathbf{A}_{11}\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{A}_{12}\mathbf{v}_2) \\ -S(\mathbf{A}_{11}\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{A}_{12}\mathbf{v}_2) & -S(\mathbf{A}_{21}\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{A}_{22}\mathbf{v}_2) \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.43)$$

where  $\mathbf{A}_{ij} \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  is given by

$$\mathbf{M}_A = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{A}_{11} & \mathbf{A}_{12} \\ \mathbf{A}_{21} & \mathbf{A}_{22} \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.44)$$

**Proof.** Substituting  $\mathbf{M}_A$  for  $\mathbf{M}$  in (3.46) in Theorem 3.2 directly proves (6.43).

Formula (6.43) can be written in component form according to

$$\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -a_3 & a_2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & a_3 & 0 & -a_1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -a_2 & a_1 & 0 \\ 0 & -a_3 & a_2 & 0 & -b_3 & b_2 \\ a_3 & 0 & -a_1 & b_3 & 0 & -b_1 \\ -a_2 & a_1 & 0 & -b_2 & b_1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.45)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= X_{\dot{u}}u + X_{\dot{v}}v + X_{\dot{w}}w + X_{\dot{p}}p + X_{\dot{q}}q + X_{\dot{r}}r \\ a_2 &= Y_{\dot{u}}u + Y_{\dot{v}}v + Y_{\dot{w}}w + Y_{\dot{p}}p + Y_{\dot{q}}q + Y_{\dot{r}}r \\ a_3 &= Z_{\dot{u}}u + Z_{\dot{v}}v + Z_{\dot{w}}w + Z_{\dot{p}}p + Z_{\dot{q}}q + Z_{\dot{r}}r \\ b_1 &= K_{\dot{u}}u + K_{\dot{v}}v + K_{\dot{w}}w + K_{\dot{p}}p + K_{\dot{q}}q + K_{\dot{r}}r \\ b_2 &= M_{\dot{u}}u + M_{\dot{v}}v + M_{\dot{w}}w + M_{\dot{p}}p + M_{\dot{q}}q + M_{\dot{r}}r \\ b_3 &= N_{\dot{u}}u + N_{\dot{v}}v + N_{\dot{w}}w + N_{\dot{p}}p + N_{\dot{q}}q + N_{\dot{r}}r \end{aligned} \quad (6.46)$$

Properties 6.2 and 8.1 imply that the marine craft dynamics can be represented in terms of nonlinear Coriolis and centripetal forces using relative velocity:

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (6.47)$$

where

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{M}_A \quad (6.48)$$

$$\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r) = \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r) + \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) \quad (6.49)$$

while classical seakeeping theory uses linear matrices  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}^*$  and  $\mathbf{C}_A^*$  as explained in Section 6.2.

**Example 6.1 (Added Mass for Surface Vessels)**

For surface ships such as tankers, cargo ships and cruise-liners it is common to decouple the surge mode from the steering dynamics due to  $xz$ -plane symmetry. Similarly, the heave, pitch, and roll modes are neglected under the assumption that these motion variables are small. Hence,  $\mathbf{v}_r = [u_r, v_r, r]^\top$  implies that the added mass derivatives for a surface ship are

$$\mathbf{M}_A = \mathbf{M}_A^\top = - \begin{bmatrix} X_{\dot{u}} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & Y_{\dot{v}} & Y_{\dot{r}} \\ 0 & Y_{\dot{r}} & N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (N_{\dot{v}} = Y_{\dot{r}}) \quad (6.50)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) = -\mathbf{C}_A^\top(\mathbf{v}_r) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & Y_{\dot{v}}v_r + Y_{\dot{r}}r \\ 0 & 0 & -X_{\dot{u}}u_r \\ -Y_{\dot{v}}v_r - Y_{\dot{r}}r & X_{\dot{u}}u_r & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.51)$$

The Coriolis and centripetal forces are recognized as

$$\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} Y_{\dot{v}}v_r r + Y_{\dot{r}}r^2 \\ -X_{\dot{u}}u_r r \\ \underbrace{(X_{\dot{u}} - Y_{\dot{v}})u_r v_r - Y_{\dot{r}}u_r r}_{\text{Munk moment}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.52)$$

where the first term in the yaw moment is the nonlinear Munk moment, which is known to have destabilizing effects.

**Example 6.2 (Added Mass for Underwater Vehicles)**

In general, the motion of an underwater vehicle moving in 6 DOF at high speed will be highly nonlinear and coupled. However, in many AUV and ROV applications the vehicle will only be allowed to move at low speed. If the vehicle also has three planes of symmetry, this suggests that the contribution from the off-diagonal elements in the matrix  $\mathbf{M}_A$  can be neglected. Hence, the following simple expressions for the matrices  $\mathbf{M}_A$  and  $\mathbf{C}_A$  are obtained:

$$\mathbf{M}_A = \mathbf{M}_A^\top = -\text{diag}\{X_{\dot{u}}, Y_{\dot{v}}, Z_{\dot{w}}, K_{\dot{p}}, M_{\dot{q}}, N_{\dot{r}}\} \quad (6.53)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) = -\mathbf{C}_A^\top(\mathbf{v}_r) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -Z_{\dot{w}}w_r & Y_{\dot{v}}v_r \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & Z_{\dot{w}}w_r & 0 & -X_{\dot{u}}u_r \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -Y_{\dot{v}}v_r & X_{\dot{u}}u_r & 0 \\ 0 & -Z_{\dot{w}}w_r & Y_{\dot{v}}v_r & 0 & -N_{\dot{r}}r & M_{\dot{q}}q \\ Z_{\dot{w}}w_r & 0 & -X_{\dot{u}}u_r & N_{\dot{r}}r & 0 & -K_{\dot{p}}p \\ -Y_{\dot{v}}v_r & X_{\dot{u}}u_r & 0 & -M_{\dot{q}}q & K_{\dot{p}}p & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.54)$$

The diagonal structure is often used since it is time consuming to determine the off-diagonal elements from experiments as well as theory. In practice, the diagonal approximation is found to be quite good for many applications. This is due to the fact that the off-diagonal elements of a positive inertia matrix will be much smaller than their diagonal counterparts.

## 6.4 Viscous Damping and Ocean Current Forces

Hydrodynamic damping for marine craft is mainly caused by:

**Potential Damping:** We recall from the beginning of Section 6.2 that *added mass, damping and restoring forces* and moments are encountered when a body is forced to oscillate with the wave excitation frequency in the absence of incident waves. The radiation-induced damping term is usually referred to as *linear frequency-dependent potential damping*  $B(\omega)$ .

**Skin Friction:** Linear frequency-dependent skin friction  $B_v(\omega)$  due to laminar boundary layer theory is important when considering the low-frequency motion of marine craft (Faltinsen and Sortland, 1987). In addition to linear skin friction, there will be a high-frequency contribution due to a turbulent boundary layer. This is usually referred to as a quadratic or nonlinear skin friction.

**Wave Drift Damping:** Wave drift damping can be interpreted as added resistance for surface vessels advancing in waves. This type of damping is derived from second-order wave theory. Wave drift damping is the most important damping contribution to surge for higher sea states. This is due to the fact that the wave drift forces are proportional to the square of the significant wave height  $H_s$ . Wave drift damping in sway and yaw is small relative to eddy-making damping (vortex shedding). A rule of thumb is that second-order wave drift forces are less than 1 % of the first-order wave forces when the significant wave height is equal to 1 m and 10 % when the significant wave height is equal to 10 m.

**Damping Due to Vortex Shedding:** *D'Alambert's paradox* states that no hydrodynamic forces act on a solid moving completely submerged with constant velocity in a nonviscous fluid. In a viscous fluid, frictional forces are present such that the system is not conservative with respect to energy. This is commonly referred to as *interference drag*. It arises due to the shedding of vortex sheets at sharp edges. The viscous damping force due to vortex shedding can be modeled as

$$f(u) = -\frac{1}{2} \rho C_D(R_n) A |u| u \quad (6.55)$$

where  $u$  is the velocity of the craft,  $A$  is the projected cross-sectional area under water,  $C_D(R_n)$  is the drag coefficient based on the representative area and  $\rho$  is the water density. This expression is recognized as one of the terms in *Morison's equation* (see Faltinsen, 1990). The drag coefficient  $C_D(R_n)$  is a function of the *Reynolds number*:

$$R_n = \frac{u D}{\nu} \quad (6.56)$$

where  $D$  is the characteristic length of the body and  $\nu$  is the kinematic viscosity coefficient ( $\nu = 1.56 \times 10^{-6}$  for salt water at 5 °C with salinity 3.5 %).

**Lifting Forces:** Hydrodynamic lift forces arise from two physical mechanisms. The first is due to the linear circulation of water around the hull. The second is a nonlinear effect, commonly called cross-flow drag, which acts from a momentum transfer from the body to the fluid. This secondary effect is closely linked to vortex shedding.

The different damping terms contribute to both linear and quadratic damping. However, it is in general difficult to separate these effects. In many cases, it is convenient to write total hydrodynamic damping as

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) = \mathbf{D} + \mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{v}_r) \quad (6.57)$$

where  $\mathbf{D}$  is the *linear damping matrix* due to potential damping and possible skin friction and  $\mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{v}_r)$  is the *nonlinear damping matrix* due to quadratic damping and higher-order terms. Hydrodynamic damping satisfies the following dissipative property:

**Property 6.3 (Hydrodynamic Damping Matrix  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)$ )**

For a rigid body moving through an ideal fluid the hydrodynamic damping matrix,

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) = \frac{1}{2} [\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)^\top] + \frac{1}{2} [\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) - \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)^\top] \quad (6.58)$$

will be real, nonsymmetric and strictly positive:

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) > 0, \quad \forall \mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^6 \quad (6.59)$$

or

$$\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) \mathbf{x} = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{x}^\top [\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)^\top] \mathbf{x} > 0 \quad \forall \mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{0} \quad (6.60)$$

Some of the damping terms can be determined by using well-established methods from the literature and experimental techniques.

#### 6.4.1 Linear Viscous Damping

As shown in Section 6.2, the linear damping matrix in CO with decoupled surge dynamics can be written

$$\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{D}_P + \mathbf{D}_V \quad (6.61)$$

$$= - \begin{bmatrix} X_u & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & Y_v & 0 & Y_p & 0 & Y_r \\ 0 & 0 & Z_w & 0 & Z_q & 0 \\ 0 & K_v & 0 & K_p & 0 & K_r \\ 0 & 0 & M_w & 0 & M_q & 0 \\ 0 & N_v & 0 & N_p & 0 & N_r \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.62)$$

where the diagonal terms relate to seakeeping theory according to

$$-X_u = B_{11v} \quad (6.63)$$

$$-Y_v = B_{22v} \quad (6.64)$$

$$-Z_w = B_{33v} + B_{33}(\omega_{\text{heave}}) \quad (6.65)$$

$$-K_p = B_{44v} + B_{44}(\omega_{\text{roll}}) \quad (6.66)$$

$$-M_q = B_{55v} + B_{55}(\omega_{\text{pitch}}) \quad (6.67)$$

$$-N_r = B_{66v} \quad (6.68)$$

Consider a second-order test system stabilized by a PD controller:

$$m\ddot{x} + (d + K_d)\dot{x} + K_p x = 0 \quad (6.69)$$

This system satisfies

$$2\xi\omega_n = \frac{d + K_d}{m}, \quad \omega_n^2 = \frac{K_p}{m} \quad (6.70)$$

In the uncontrolled case  $K_p = K_d = 0$ . Hence, the time constant becomes

$$T = \frac{m}{d} \quad (6.71)$$

In closed loop,  $K_p$  and  $K_d$  are positive constants satisfying

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{T} + \frac{K_d}{m} &= 2\xi \left( \frac{2\pi}{T_n} \right) \\ &= \frac{4\pi\xi}{T_n} \end{aligned} \quad (6.72)$$

If  $K_d$  is specified as  $K_d/m = 1/T$ , the bandwidth of the closed-loop system is approximately doubled and it follows that

$$\frac{2}{T} = \frac{4\pi\xi}{T_n} \quad (6.73)$$

The relationship between the time constant  $T$ , relative damping ratio  $\xi$  and the natural period  $T_n$  under feedback control is

$$T = \frac{T_n}{8\pi\xi} \quad (6.74)$$

The corresponding feedback gains are  $K_p = m\omega_n^2$  and  $K_d = m/T$ . This implies that a PD-controlled ship in surge, sway and yaw with relative damping ratio  $\xi = 0.1$  and natural periods in the range  $100 \text{ s} \leq T_n \leq 150 \text{ s}$  has time constants in the range

$$39.8 \text{ s} \leq T \leq 59.7 \text{ s} \quad (6.75)$$

From (6.71), it is seen that the linear viscous damping terms can be specified as three time constants in surge, sway and yaw ( $T_{\text{surge}}$ ,  $T_{\text{sway}}$ ,  $T_{\text{yaw}}$ ) while additional damping can be added in heave, roll and

pitch as  $(\Delta\zeta_{\text{heave}}, \Delta\zeta_{\text{roll}}, \Delta\zeta_{\text{pitch}})$ . Consequently, we can use the following formulae to estimate linear viscous damping:

$$B_{11v} = \frac{m + A_{11}(0)}{T_{\text{surge}}} = \frac{8\pi\zeta_{\text{surge}}[m + A_{11}(0)]}{T_{n,\text{surge}}} \quad (6.76)$$

$$B_{22v} = \frac{m + A_{22}(0)}{T_{\text{sway}}} = \frac{8\pi\zeta_{\text{sway}}[m + A_{22}(0)]}{T_{n,\text{sway}}} \quad (6.77)$$

$$B_{33v} = 2\Delta\zeta_{\text{heave}}\omega_{\text{heave}}[m + A_{33}(\omega_{\text{heave}})] \quad (6.78)$$

$$B_{44v} = 2\Delta\zeta_{\text{roll}}\omega_{\text{roll}}[I_x + A_{44}(\omega_{\text{roll}})] \quad (6.79)$$

$$B_{55v} = 2\Delta\zeta_{\text{pitch}}\omega_{\text{pitch}}[I_y + A_{55}(\omega_{\text{pitch}})] \quad (6.80)$$

$$B_{66v} = \frac{I_z + A_{66}(0)}{T_{\text{yaw}}} = \frac{8\pi\zeta_{\text{yaw}}[I_z + A_{66}(0)]}{T_{n,\text{yaw}}} \quad (6.81)$$

where typical values for  $T_{\text{surge}}$ ,  $T_{\text{sway}}$  and  $T_{\text{yaw}}$  are 100–250 s,  $\Delta\zeta_{\text{heave}} = \Delta\zeta_{\text{pitch}} = 0$  while additional roll damping  $\Delta\zeta_{\text{roll}}$  could be added to obtain a total roll damping of 0.05–0.10, which is quite common for offshore supply vessels, tankers, semi-submersibles and container ships. For ships with anti-roll tanks a relative damping factor of 0.4–0.6 at the resonance frequency  $\omega_{\text{roll}}$  is common.

#### 6.4.2 Nonlinear Surge Damping

In surge, the viscous damping for ships may be modeled as (Lewis, 1989)

$$X = -\frac{1}{2}\rho S(1+k)C_f(u_r)|u_r|u_r \quad (6.82)$$

$$C_f(u_r) = \underbrace{\frac{0.075}{(\log_{10} R_n - 2)^2}}_{C_F} + C_R \quad (6.83)$$

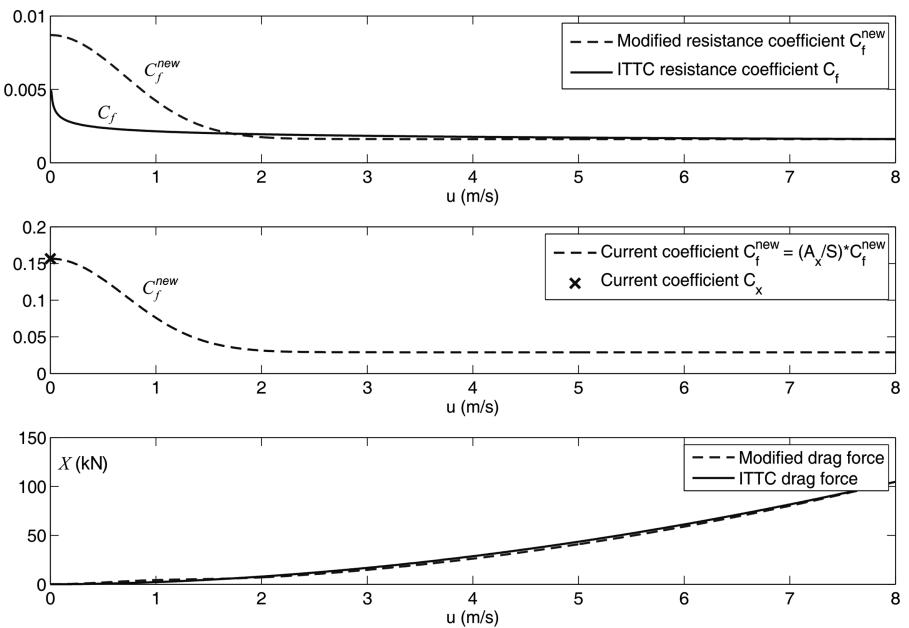
where  $\rho$  is the density of water,  $S$  is the wetted surface of the hull,

$$\begin{aligned} u_r &= u - u_c \\ &= u - V_c \cos(\beta_c - \psi) \end{aligned} \quad (6.84)$$

is the relative surge velocity (see Section 8.3),  $k$  is the form factor giving a viscous correction,  $C_F$  is the flat plate friction from the ITTC 1957 line and  $C_R$  represents *residual friction* due to hull roughness, pressure resistance, wave-making resistance and wave-breaking resistance. For ships in transit  $k$  is typically 0.1 whereas this value is much higher in DP, typically  $k = 0.25$  (Hoerner, 1965). The friction coefficient  $C_F$  depends on the *Reynolds number*:

$$R_n = \frac{u_r L_{pp}}{\nu} \quad (6.85)$$

where  $\nu = 1 \times 10^{-6}$  m/s<sup>2</sup> is the *kinematic viscosity* at 20 °C. For small values of  $(\log_{10} R_n - 2)$  in the expression for  $C_F$ , a minimum value of  $R_n$  should be used in order to avoid the condition where  $C_F$  blows up at low speed.



**Figure 6.4** Modified resistance curve  $C_f^{\text{new}}(u_r)$  and  $C_f(u_r)$  as a function of  $u_r$  when  $C_R = 0$ . The zero speed value  $C_f^{\text{new}}(0) = (A_x/S)C_X$  where  $C_X = 0.16$  is the current coefficient.

For ships, a typically value is  $R_{n,\min} = 10^6$ , which limits the friction coefficient to  $C_{f,\max} < 0.05$  at lower speeds (see Figure 6.4). The damping model in surge can also be written as

$$X = X_{|u|u}|u_r|u_r \quad (6.86)$$

$$X_{|u|u} = -\frac{1}{2}\rho S(1+k)C_f < 0 \quad (6.87)$$

For low-speed maneuvering, this formula gives too little damping compared to the quadratic drag formula

$$X_{|u|u} = \frac{1}{2}\rho A_x C_x \quad (6.88)$$

where  $C_X > 0$  is the current coefficient and  $A_x$  is the frontal project area (see Section 7.3.1). The current coefficients are usually found from experiments using a model ship in up to 1.0 m/s currents. The resistance and current coefficients (6.87) and (6.88) are related by

$$C_X = \frac{S}{A_x}C_f \quad (6.89)$$

One way to obtain sufficient damping at low speed is to modify the resistance curve according to

$$C_f^{\text{new}}(u_r) = C_f(u_r^{\max}) + \left( \frac{A_x}{S} C_X - C(u_r^{\max}) \right) \exp(-\alpha u_r^2) \quad (6.90)$$

where  $\alpha > 0$  (typically 1.0) and the maximum friction coefficient  $C_f(u_r^{\max})$  is computed for maximum relative velocity  $u_r^{\max}$ . The modified resistance curve  $C_f^{\text{new}}(u_r)$  is plotted together with  $C_f(u_r)$  in Figure 6.4. Notice that the resistance curve is increased at lower velocities due to the contribution of the current coefficient  $C_X$ . The second plot shows the current coefficient  $C_X$  at zero speed together with  $C_X^{\text{new}} = 1/2\rho A_x C_f^{\text{new}}$ . The effect of the current coefficient vanishes at higher speeds thanks to the exponentially decaying weight  $\exp(-\alpha u_r^2)$ .

### 6.4.3 Cross-Flow Drag Principle

For relative current angles  $|\beta_c - \psi| \gg 0$ , where  $\beta_c$  is the current direction, the cross-flow drag principle may be applied to calculate the nonlinear damping force in sway and the yaw moment (Faltinsen, 1990):

$$Y = -\frac{1}{2} \rho \int_{-\frac{L_{pp}}{2}}^{\frac{L_{pp}}{2}} T(x) C_d^{2D}(x) |v_r + xr|(v_r + xr) dx \quad (6.91)$$

$$N = -\frac{1}{2} \rho \int_{-\frac{L_{pp}}{2}}^{\frac{L_{pp}}{2}} T(x) C_d^{2D}(x) x |v_r + xr|(v_r + xr) dx \quad (6.92)$$

where  $C_d^{2D}(x)$  is the 2-D drag coefficient,  $T(x)$  is the draft and

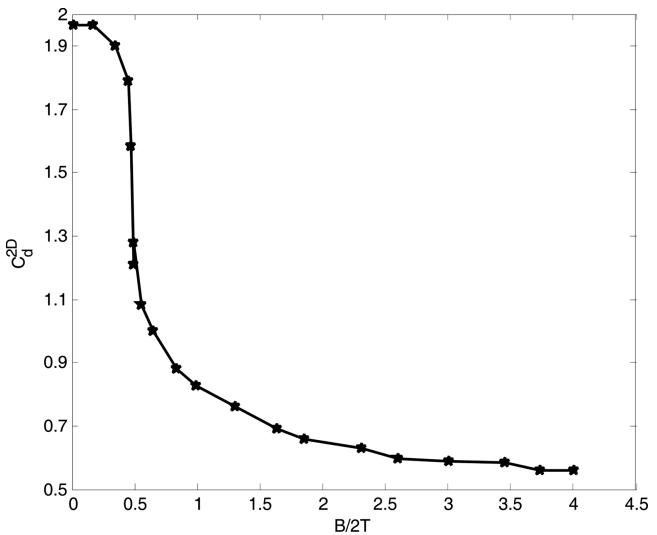
$$\begin{aligned} v_r &= v - v_c \\ &= v - V_c \sin(\beta_c - \psi) \end{aligned} \quad (6.93)$$

is the relative sway velocity (see Section 8.3). This is a strip theory approach where each hull section contributes to the integral. Drag coefficients for different hull forms are found in Hooft (1994). A constant 2-D current coefficient can also be estimated using Hoerner's curve (see Figure 6.5).

#### Matlab

The 2-D drag coefficients  $C_d^{2D}$  can be computed as a function of beam  $B$  and length  $T$  using Hoerner's curve. This is implemented in the Matlab MSS toolbox as

```
Cd=Hoerner(B,T)
```



**Figure 6.5** 2-D cross-flow coefficient  $C_d^{2D}$  as a function of  $B/2T$  (Hoerner, 1965).

A 3-D representation of (6.91)–(6.92) eliminating the integrals can be found by curve fitting formula (6.91) and (6.92) to *second-order modulus terms* to obtain a maneuvering model similar to that of Fedyayevsky and Sobolev (1963):

$$Y = Y_{|v|v}|v_r|v_r + Y_{|v|r}|v_r|r + Y_{v|r}|v_r|r + Y_{|r|r}|r|r \quad (6.94)$$

$$N = N_{|v|v}|v_r|v_r + N_{|v|r}|v_r|r + N_{v|r}|v_r|r + N_{|r|r}|r|r \quad (6.95)$$

where  $Y_{|v|v}$ ,  $Y_{|v|r}$ ,  $Y_{v|r}$ ,  $Y_{|r|r}$ ,  $N_{|v|v}$ ,  $N_{|v|r}$ ,  $N_{v|r}$ , and  $N_{|r|r}$  are maneuvering coefficients defined using the SNAME notation. In the next section, this approach will be used to derive maneuvering models in 3 DOF.

## 6.5 Maneuvering Equations

This section summarizes the linear and nonlinear maneuvering equations using the results in Sections 6.1–6.4. Application specific models for ships and underwater vehicles are presented in Chapter 7.

### 6.5.1 Hydrodynamic Mass–Damper–Spring System

In hydrodynamics it is common to assume that the hydrodynamic forces and moments on a rigid body can be linearly superimposed (see Faltinsen, 1990, 2005). This results in a *hydrodynamic mass–damper–spring system* that can be explained as:

*Forces on the body when the body is forced to oscillate with the wave excitation frequency and there are no incident waves*

The contribution to the hydrodynamic mass–damper–spring forces is as follows:

### Hydrodynamic Mass–Damper

- *Added mass*  $\mathbf{M}_A$  due to the inertia of the surrounding fluid (see Section 6.2). The corresponding Coriolis and centripetal matrix due to added mass is due to the rotation of  $\{b\}$  with respect to  $\{n\}$  and is denoted  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)$  (see Section 6.3).
- *Radiation-induced potential damping*  $\mathbf{D}_P$  due to the energy carried away by generated surface waves.
- *Viscous damping* caused by skin friction, wave drift damping, vortex shedding and lift/drag (see Section 6.4). The resulting hydrodynamic force is written as

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{hyd}} = - \underbrace{\mathbf{M}_A \dot{\mathbf{v}}_r - \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) \mathbf{v}_r}_{\text{added mass}} - \underbrace{\mathbf{D}_P \mathbf{v}_r}_{\text{potential damping}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{visc}} \quad (6.96)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}_r = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_c$  with  $\mathbf{v}_c = [u, v_c, w_c, 0, 0, 0]^\top$  is the relative velocity due to an irrotational constant ocean current (see Section 8.3) and

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{visc}} = - \underbrace{\mathbf{D}_V \mathbf{v}_r}_{\substack{\text{linear} \\ \text{viscous friction}}} - \underbrace{\mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{v}_r) \mathbf{v}_r}_{\substack{\text{nonlinear} \\ \text{viscous damping}}} \quad (6.97)$$

### Hydrostatic Spring Stiffness

- *Restoring forces* due to Archimedes (weight and buoyancy); see Section 4.1:

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{hs} = -\mathbf{g}(\eta) - \mathbf{g}_o \quad (6.98)$$

The potential coefficient matrices  $\mathbf{A}(\omega)$  and  $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$  can be computed using a hydrodynamic code while approximate expressions for  $\mathbf{M}_A$  and  $\mathbf{D}_P$  as well as  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)$  can be computed using (6.26) and (6.27), which are based on Definitions 6.1 and 6.2. Fully coupled matrices  $\mathbf{M}_A$  and  $\mathbf{D}_P$  in 6 DOF can, however, be computed using model experiments or curve fitting to experimental data. This results in constant (frequency-independent) matrices in the following form:

$$\mathbf{M}_A = - \begin{bmatrix} X_{\dot{u}} & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & Y_{\dot{v}} & 0 & Y_{\dot{p}} & 0 & Y_{\dot{r}} \\ 0 & 0 & Z_{\dot{w}} & 0 & Z_{\dot{q}} & 0 \\ 0 & K_{\dot{v}} & 0 & K_{\dot{p}} & 0 & K_{\dot{r}} \\ 0 & 0 & M_w & 0 & M_q & 0 \\ 0 & N_{\dot{v}} & 0 & N_{\dot{p}} & 0 & N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.99)$$

$$\mathbf{D} = - \begin{bmatrix} X_u & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & Y_v & 0 & Y_p & 0 & Y_r \\ 0 & 0 & Z_w & 0 & Z_q & 0 \\ 0 & K_v & 0 & K_p & 0 & K_r \\ 0 & 0 & M_w & 0 & M_q & 0 \\ 0 & N_v & 0 & N_p & 0 & N_r \end{bmatrix} \quad (6.100)$$

where the coefficients are called *hydrodynamic derivatives*. Again it is convenient to assume that the surge motion is decoupled and that the marine craft is symmetric about the  $xz$  plane. This reduces the number of parameters in the model.

The total hydrodynamic damping matrix  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)$  is the sum of the linear part  $\mathbf{D}$  and the nonlinear part  $\mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{v}_r)$  such that

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) := \mathbf{D} + \mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{v}_r) \quad (6.101)$$

If *nonlinear damping* is modeled using the ITTC resistance law in Section 6.4.2 and cross-flow drag formulae in Section 6.4.3, the following expression is obtained:

$$\mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{v}_r) = - \begin{bmatrix} X_{|u|u} |u_r| & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & Y_{|v|v} |v_r| + Y_{|r|v} |r| & 0 & 0 & 0 & Y_{|v|r} |v_r| + Y_{|r|r} |r| \\ 0 & 0 & Z_{|w|w} |w_r| & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & K_{|p|p} |p| & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & M_{|q|q} |q| & 0 \\ 0 & N_{|v|v} |v_r| + N_{|r|v} |r| & 0 & 0 & 0 & N_{|v|r} |v_r| + N_{|r|r} |r| \end{bmatrix}$$

where we have included additional nonlinear damping terms on the diagonal in heave, roll and pitch. In general, there will be coupling terms in all DOF. However, many of these are small so engineering judgement must be used when deriving the model. Standard models for marine craft are discussed in Chapter 7.

The resulting nonlinear hydrodynamic mass–damper–spring forces can be expressed by

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{hyd}} = -\mathbf{M}_A \dot{\mathbf{v}}_r - \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) \mathbf{v}_r - \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) \mathbf{v}_r \quad (6.102)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{hs}} = -\mathbf{g}(\eta) - \mathbf{g}_o \quad (6.103)$$

### 6.5.2 Nonlinear Maneuvering Equations

The hydrodynamic forces (6.102) and (6.103) must be included in the equations of motion in order to integrate acceleration  $\dot{\mathbf{v}}$  to velocity and position. Consider the rigid-body kinetics (6.5):

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB} \ddot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} \quad (6.104)$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{hyd}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{hs}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (6.105)$$

The vector  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  represents the *propulsion* forces and moments. Substituting (6.102) and (6.103) into (6.105) gives the nonlinear maneuvering equations:

$$\underbrace{\mathbf{M}_{RB} \ddot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{v}}_{\text{rigid-body forces}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{M}_A \dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) \mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) \mathbf{v}_r}_{\text{hydrodynamic forces}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{g}(\eta) + \mathbf{g}_o}_{\text{hydrostatic forces}} = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (6.106)$$

A special case of (6.106) is obtained for *ocean currents* that are assumed to be *constant* and *irrotational* in  $\{n\}$  such that (see Section 8.3)

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}}_c = \begin{bmatrix} -S(\omega_{b/n}^b) & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_c \quad (6.107)$$

According to Property 8.1, it is then possible to represent the equations of motion by relative velocities according to

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{g}(\eta) + \mathbf{g}_o = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (6.108)$$

where

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{M}_A \quad (6.109)$$

$$\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r) = \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r) + \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) \quad (6.110)$$

The assumption that the potential coefficients are constant (frequency independent) implies that

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top > 0, \quad \dot{\mathbf{M}} = \mathbf{0} \quad (6.111)$$

which are very useful properties when designing energy-based control laws where the sum of kinetic and potential energy is a natural Lyapunov function candidate.

Models for simulation and control of marine craft are treated in more detail in Chapter 7 where focus is on tailor-made models for dynamic positioning, roll damping, ship maneuvering, path following and autopilot design.

### 6.5.3 Linearized Maneuvering Equations

The linearized maneuvering equations in *surge*, *sway* and *yaw* is a special case of the nonlinear model (6.106):

$$\underbrace{\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}^*\mathbf{v}}_{\text{rigid-body forces}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{M}_A\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}_A^*\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v}_r}_{\text{hydrodynamic forces}} = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (6.112)$$

where restoring forces are neglected, nonlinear Coriolis and centripetal forces are linearized about the cruise speed  $U$  and nonlinear damping is approximated by a linear damping matrix. If ocean currents are neglected, Equation (6.112) reduces to

$$\underbrace{(\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{M}_A)}_{\mathbf{M}}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \underbrace{(\mathbf{C}_{RB}^* + \mathbf{C}_A^* + \mathbf{D})\mathbf{v}}_{\mathbf{N}} = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (6.113)$$

The expressions for  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}^*$  and  $\mathbf{C}_A^*$  are computed using the selection matrix  $\mathbf{L}$  given by (3.63). This gives

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{C}_{RB}^* &= \mathbf{U} \mathbf{M}_{RB} \mathbf{L} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & mU \\ 0 & 0 & mx_g U \end{bmatrix}\end{aligned}\quad (6.114)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{C}_A^* &= \mathbf{U} \mathbf{M}_A \mathbf{L} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -Y_{\dot{v}} U \\ 0 & 0 & -Y_{\dot{r}} U \end{bmatrix}\end{aligned}\quad (6.115)$$

such that

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{bmatrix} m - X_{\dot{u}} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m - Y_{\dot{v}} & mx_g - Y_r \\ 0 & mx_g - N_{\dot{v}} & I_z - N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{v} \\ \dot{r} \end{bmatrix} \\ + \begin{bmatrix} -X_u & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -Y_v & (m - Y_{\dot{v}})U - Y_r \\ 0 & -N_v & (mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}})U - N_r \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ v \\ r \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \tau_1 \\ \tau_2 \\ \tau_6 \end{bmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

Notice that surge is assumed to be decoupled from the sway–yaw subsystem.

# 7

# Models for Ships, Offshore Structures and Underwater Vehicles

This chapter presents hydrodynamic models for ships, offshore structures and underwater vehicles. The foundation for the models are the kinematic equations (Chapter 2), rigid-body kinetics (Chapter 3), hydrostatics (Chapter 4), seakeeping theory (Chapter 5) and maneuvering theory (Chapter 6). Results from these chapters are combined to obtain 1 DOF heading autopilot models, 3 DOF maneuvering and DP models, 4 DOF maneuvering models that include roll and finally 6 DOF coupled models for advanced maneuvers. The models are all expressed in a vectorial setting for effective computer simulation and to simplify control design. Focus is made towards preservation of matrix properties such as symmetry, skew-symmetry, positive definiteness and orthogonality, which are key elements in nonlinear control and estimation theory.

## 7.1 Maneuvering Models (3 DOF)

The 3 DOF horizontal plane models for maneuvering are based on the rigid-body kinetics:

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} \quad (7.1)$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{hyd} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{hs} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (7.2)$$

The hydrostatic forces  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{hs} = \mathbf{0}$  in the horizontal plane. From (6.102) under the assumption that  $\dot{\mathbf{v}}_c \approx \mathbf{0}$ , it follows that

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{hyd} = -\mathbf{M}_A\dot{\mathbf{v}} - \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r - \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r \quad (7.3)$$

Combining (7.1), (7.2) and (7.3) gives

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{J}_{\Theta}(\boldsymbol{\eta})\boldsymbol{v} \quad (7.4)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\boldsymbol{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\boldsymbol{v})\boldsymbol{v} + \mathbf{N}(\boldsymbol{v}_r)\boldsymbol{v}_r = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave} \quad (7.5)$$

where

$$\mathbf{N}(\boldsymbol{v}_r) := \mathbf{C}_A(\boldsymbol{v}_r) + \mathbf{D}(\boldsymbol{v}_r) \quad (7.6)$$

Moreover, added mass Coriolis and centripetal terms together with hydrodynamic damping terms are collected into the matrix  $\mathbf{N}(\boldsymbol{v}_r)$ . This is convenient since it is difficult to distinguish terms in  $\mathbf{C}_A(\boldsymbol{v}_r)$  with similar terms in  $\mathbf{D}(\boldsymbol{v}_r)$ . Hence, only the sum of these terms is used in the model in order to avoid overparametrization.

In the case of ocean currents it is possible to express (7.5) using only the relative velocity vector  $\boldsymbol{v}_r$  and thus avoiding terms in  $\boldsymbol{v}$ . In order to do this,  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\boldsymbol{v})$  must be parametrized independent of linear velocity, for instance by using (3.57). Hence, it follows from Property 8.1 in Section 8.3 that (7.5) can be rewritten as

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\boldsymbol{v}}_r + \underbrace{\mathbf{C}(\boldsymbol{v}_r)\boldsymbol{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\boldsymbol{v}_r)\boldsymbol{v}_r}_{\mathbf{N}(\boldsymbol{v}_r)\boldsymbol{v}_r} = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave} \quad (7.7)$$

where

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}_A + \mathbf{M}_{RB} \quad (7.8)$$

$$\mathbf{C}(\boldsymbol{v}_r) = \mathbf{C}_A(\boldsymbol{v}_r) + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\boldsymbol{v}_r) \quad (7.9)$$

In this representation the generalized velocity  $\boldsymbol{v}_r$  is the only velocity vector while (7.5) uses both  $\boldsymbol{v}$  and  $\boldsymbol{v}_r$ .

### 3 DOF System Matrices

Since the horizontal motion of a ship or semi-submersible is described by the motion components in surge, sway and yaw, the state vectors are chosen as  $\boldsymbol{v} = [u, v, r]^T$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = [N, E, \psi]^T$  (see Figure 7.1). This implies that the dynamics associated with the motion in heave, roll and pitch are neglected, that is  $w = p = q = 0$ . For the horizontal motion of a vessel the kinematic equations of motion reduce from the general 6 DOF expression (2.18) to one principal rotation about the  $z$  axis:

$$\mathbf{J}_{\Theta}(\boldsymbol{\eta})^{\text{3 DOF}} \mathbf{R}(\psi) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\psi) & -\sin(\psi) & 0 \\ \sin(\psi) & \cos(\psi) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.10)$$

It is also common to assume that the craft has homogeneous mass distribution and  $xz$ -plane symmetry such that

$$I_{xy} = I_{yz} = 0 \quad (7.11)$$



**Figure 7.1** Displacement vessel where the horizontal plane model can be used for DP and maneuvering.

Let the  $\{b\}$ -frame coordinate origin be set in the centerline of the craft at the point CO, such that  $y_g = 0$ . Under the previously stated assumptions, matrices (3.44) and (3.60) associated with the rigid-body kinetics reduce to

$$\boldsymbol{M}_{RB} = \begin{bmatrix} m & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m & mx_g \\ 0 & mx_g & I_z \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.12)$$

$$\boldsymbol{C}_{RB}(\boldsymbol{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & -m(x_g r + v) \\ 0 & 0 & mu \\ m(x_g r + v) & -mu & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.13)$$

Notice that surge is decoupled from sway and yaw in  $\boldsymbol{M}_{RB}$  due to symmetry considerations of the system inertia matrix (see Section 3.3). It is assumed that the added mass matrix is computed in CO. This allows for the following reduction of (6.38) and (6.45):

$$\boldsymbol{M}_A = \begin{bmatrix} -X_{\dot{u}} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -Y_{\dot{v}} & -Y_{\dot{r}} \\ 0 & -Y_{\dot{r}} & -N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.14)$$

$$\boldsymbol{C}_A(\boldsymbol{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & Y_{\dot{v}}v + Y_{\dot{r}}r \\ 0 & 0 & -X_{\dot{u}}u \\ -Y_{\dot{v}}v - Y_{\dot{r}}r & X_{\dot{u}}u & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.15)$$

where  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top$ ,  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) = -\mathbf{C}_{RB}^\top(\mathbf{v})$  and  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}) = -\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v})^\top$ . Hence,

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m - X_{\dot{u}} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m - Y_{\dot{v}} & mx_g - Y_r \\ 0 & mx_g - Y_r & I_z - N_r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.16)$$

We will now derive the expressions for  $N(\mathbf{v}_r)$  in (7.6) as a function of  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)$  and  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)$ .

### 7.1.1 Nonlinear Maneuvering Models based on Surge Resistance and Cross-Flow Drag

If we use the surge resistance and cross-flow drag models in Section 6.4, the  $N(\mathbf{v}_r)$  matrix in the maneuvering model (7.6) can be expanded as

$$\mathbf{N}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r = \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{d}(\mathbf{v}_r) \quad (7.17)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}_r = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_c$  is the relative velocity vector and

$$\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & Y_{\dot{v}}v_r + Y_r r \\ 0 & 0 & -X_{\dot{u}}u_r \\ -Y_{\dot{v}}v_r - Y_r r & X_{\dot{u}}u_r & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.18)$$

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{bmatrix} -X_u & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -Y_v & -Y_r \\ 0 & -N_v & -N_r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.19)$$

$$\mathbf{d}(\mathbf{v}_r) = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2}\rho S(1+k)C_f^{\text{new}}(u_r)|u_r|u_r \\ \frac{1}{2}\rho \int_{-L_{pp}/2}^{L_{pp}/2} T(x)C_d^{2D}(x)|v_r + xr|(v_r + xr)dx \\ \frac{1}{2}\rho \int_{-L_{pp}/2}^{L_{pp}/2} T(x)C_d^{2D}(x)x|v_r + xr|(v_r + xr)dx \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.20)$$

The linear damper  $\mathbf{D}$  in this expression is important for low-speed maneuvering and stationkeeping while the term  $\mathbf{d}(\mathbf{v}_r)$  dominates at higher speeds. Linear damping also guarantees that the velocity converges exponentially to zero.

### 7.1.2 Nonlinear Maneuvering Models based on Second-order Modulus Functions

The idea of using second-order *modulus functions* to describe the nonlinear dissipative terms in  $\mathbf{N}(\mathbf{v}_r)$  dates back to Fedyaevsky and Sobolev (1963). Within this framework, a simplified form of Norrbin's nonlinear model (Norrbin, 1970), which retains the most important terms for steering and propulsion

loss assignment, has been proposed by Blanke (1981). This model corresponds to fitting the cross-flow drag integrals (6.91) and (6.92) to second-order modulus functions:<sup>1</sup>

$$\begin{aligned} N(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r &= \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} Y_i v_r r + Y_f r^2 \\ -X_u u_r r \\ (X_u - Y_i) u_r v_r - Y_f u_r r \end{bmatrix} \quad \left( \text{alternatively: } \begin{bmatrix} X_{vr} v_r r + X_{rr} r^2 \\ Y_{ur} u_r r \\ N_{uv} u_r v_r + N_{ur} u_r r \end{bmatrix} \right) \\ &+ \begin{bmatrix} -X_{|u|u} |u_r| u_r \\ -Y_{|v|v} |v_r| v_r - Y_{|v|r} |v_r| r - Y_{|r|r} |v_r| r \\ -N_{|v|v} |v_r| v_r - N_{|v|r} |v_r| r - N_{|r|r} |v_r| r \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

or

$$N(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r = \begin{bmatrix} -X_{|u|u} |u_r| u_r + Y_i v_r r + Y_f r^2 \\ -X_u u_r r - Y_{|v|v} |v_r| v_r - Y_{|v|r} |v_r| r - Y_{|r|r} |v_r| r \\ (X_u - Y_i) u_r v_r - Y_f u_r r - N_{|v|v} |v_r| v_r - N_{|v|r} |v_r| r - N_{|r|r} |v_r| r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.21)$$

From this expression it is seen that

$$\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & Y_i v_r + Y_f r \\ 0 & 0 & -X_u u_r \\ -Y_i v_r - Y_f r & X_u u_r & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.22)$$

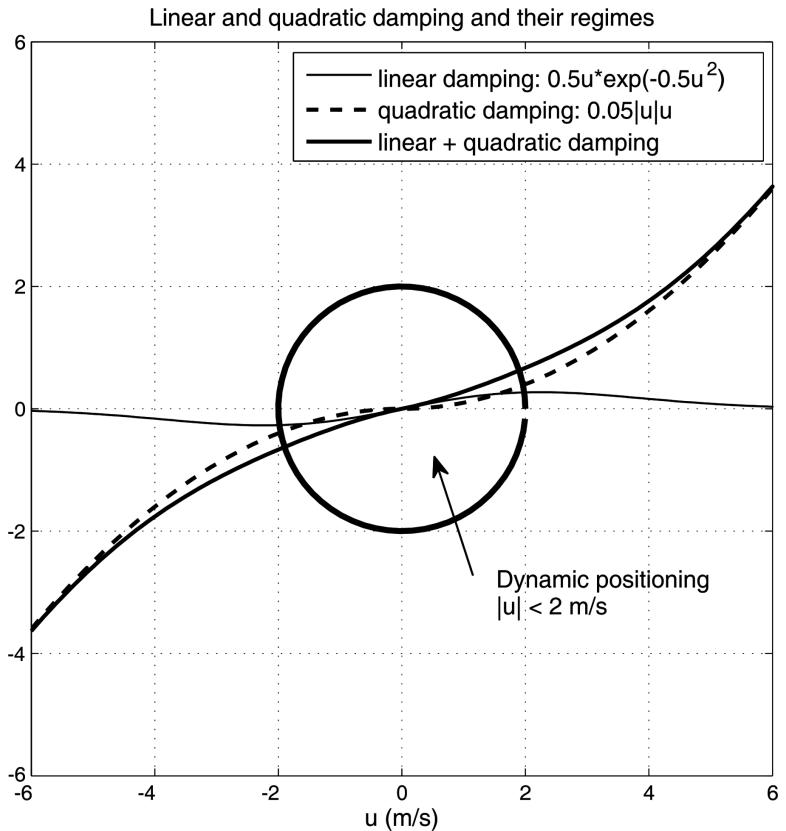
$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) = \begin{bmatrix} -X_{|u|u} |u_r| & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -Y_{|v|v} |v_r| - Y_{|r|r} |v_r| & -Y_{|v|r} |v_r| - Y_{|r|r} |v_r| \\ 0 & -N_{|v|v} |v_r| - N_{|r|r} |v_r| & -N_{|v|r} |v_r| - N_{|r|r} |v_r| \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.23)$$

Recall that  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) = \mathbf{D} + \mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{v}_r)$ . However, linear potential damping and skin friction  $\mathbf{D}$  are neglected in (7.21) since the nonlinear quadratic terms  $\mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{v}_r)$  dominate at higher speeds (see Figure 7.2). This is a good assumption for maneuvering while stationkeeping models should include a nonzero  $\mathbf{D}$ .

Figure 7.2 shows the significance of the linear and quadratic terms for different ship speeds. It is recommended to use different damping models depending on the regime of the control system. In many cases, it is important to include both linear and quadratic damping, since only quadratic damping in the model will cause oscillatory behavior at low speed. The main reason is that linear damping is needed for exponential convergence to zero. For marine craft operating in waves, linear damping will always be present due to potential damping and linear skin friction (Faltinsen and Sortland, 1987). For large ships Blanke (1981) suggests simplifying (7.23) according to

$$\mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{v}_r) = \begin{bmatrix} -X_{|u|u} |u_r| & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -Y_{|v|v} |v_r| & -Y_{|v|r} |v_r| \\ 0 & -N_{|v|v} |v_r| & -N_{|v|r} |v_r| \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.24)$$

<sup>1</sup> The  $\mathbf{C}_A$  terms can also be denoted as  $X_{vr} v_r r$ ,  $X_{rr} r^2$ ,  $Y_{ur} u_r r$ ,  $N_{uv} u_r v_r$  and  $N_{ur} u_r r$ . If these terms are experimentally obtained, viscous effects will be included in addition to the potential coefficients  $Y_i$ ,  $X_u$  and  $Y_f$ .



**Figure 7.2** Linear and quadratic damping and their speeds regimes. Notice that the linear part goes to zero for higher speeds.

This gives

$$N(\mathbf{v}_r) = \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r) \quad (7.25)$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -X_{|u|u} |u_r| & 0 & Y_{\dot{v}} v_r + Y_r r \\ 0 & -Y_{|v|v} |v_r| & -X_{\dot{u}} u_r - Y_{|v|r} |v_r| \\ -Y_{\dot{v}} v_r - Y_r r & X_{\dot{u}} u_r - N_{|v|v} |v_r| & -N_{|v|r} |v_r| \end{bmatrix}$$

### 7.1.3 Nonlinear Maneuvering Models based on Odd Functions

So far, we have discussed nonlinear maneuvering models based on first principles such as surge resistance and cross-flow drag, which have been approximated by second-order *modulus functions* (see Fedyaevsky and Sobolev, 1963; Norrbin, 1970). In many cases a more pragmatic approach is used for curve fitting of experimental data (Clarke, 2003). This is typically done by using *Taylor series* of first- and second-order terms (Abkowitz, 1964) to describe the nonlinear terms in  $N(\mathbf{v}_r)$ .

### The Nonlinear Model of Abkowitz (1964)

One of the standard nonlinear ship models in the literature is that of Abkowitz (1964). Consider the nonlinear rigid-body kinetics:

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} \quad (7.26)$$

with external forces and moment:

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{RB} = [X(\mathbf{x}), Y(\mathbf{x}), N(\mathbf{x})]^\top \quad (7.27)$$

where

$$\mathbf{x} = [u, v, r, \dot{u}, \dot{v}, \dot{r}, \delta]^\top \quad (7.28)$$

and  $\delta$  is the rudder angle. Based on these equations, Abkowitz (1964) proposed a third-order truncated Taylor-series expansion of the functions  $X(\mathbf{x})$ ,  $Y(\mathbf{x})$  and  $N(\mathbf{x})$  at

$$\mathbf{x}_o = [U, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0]^\top \quad (7.29)$$

This gives

$$\begin{aligned} X(\mathbf{x}) &\approx X(\mathbf{x}_0) + \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{\partial X(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_i} \Big|_{\mathbf{x}_0} \Delta x_i + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 X(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_i^2} \Big|_{\mathbf{x}_0} \Delta x_i^2 + \frac{1}{6} \frac{\partial^3 X(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_i^3} \Big|_{\mathbf{x}_0} \Delta x_i^3 \right) \\ Y(\mathbf{x}) &\approx Y(\mathbf{x}_0) + \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{\partial Y(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_i} \Big|_{\mathbf{x}_0} \Delta x_i + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 Y(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_i^2} \Big|_{\mathbf{x}_0} \Delta x_i^2 + \frac{1}{6} \frac{\partial^3 Y(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_i^3} \Big|_{\mathbf{x}_0} \Delta x_i^3 \right) \\ N(\mathbf{x}) &\approx Z(\mathbf{x}_0) + \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \frac{\partial N(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_i} \Big|_{\mathbf{x}_0} \Delta x_i + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 N(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_i^2} \Big|_{\mathbf{x}_0} \Delta x_i^2 + \frac{1}{6} \frac{\partial^3 N(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_i^3} \Big|_{\mathbf{x}_0} \Delta x_i^3 \right) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\Delta \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0 = [\Delta x_1, \Delta x_2, \dots, \Delta x_7]^\top$ . Unfortunately, a third-order Taylor-series expansion results in a large number of terms. By applying some physical insight, the complexity of these expressions can be reduced. Abkowitz (1964) makes the following assumptions:

1. Most ship maneuvers can be described by a 3rd-order truncated Taylor expansion about the steady state condition  $u = u_0$ .
2. Only 1st-order acceleration terms are considered.
3. Standard port/starboard symmetry simplifications except terms describing the constant force and moment arising from single-screw propellers.
4. The coupling between the acceleration and velocity terms is negligible.

Simulations of standard ship maneuvers show that these assumptions are quite good. Applying these assumptions to the expressions  $X(\mathbf{x})$ ,  $Y(\mathbf{x})$  and  $N(\mathbf{x})$  yields

$$\begin{aligned} X &= X^* + X_u \dot{u} + X_u \Delta u + X_{uu} \Delta u^2 + X_{uuu} \Delta u^3 + X_{vv} v^2 + X_{rr} r^2 + X_{\delta\delta} \delta^2 \\ &\quad + X_{rv\delta} rv\delta + X_{r\delta} r\delta + X_{v\delta} v\delta + X_{vvu} v^2 \Delta u + X_{rru} r^2 \Delta u + X_{\delta\delta u} \delta^2 \Delta u \\ &\quad + X_{rvu} rvu + X_{r\delta u} r\delta \Delta u + X_{v\delta u} v\delta \Delta u \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
Y &= Y^* + Y_u \Delta u + Y_{uu} \Delta u^2 + Y_r r + Y_v v + Y_r \dot{r} + Y_v \dot{v} + Y_\delta \delta + Y_{rrr} r^3 + Y_{vvv} v^3 \\
&\quad + Y_{\delta\delta\delta} \delta^3 + Y_{rr\delta} r^2 \delta + Y_{\delta\delta r} \delta^2 r + Y_{rrv} r^2 v + Y_{vvr} v^2 r + Y_{\delta\delta v} \delta^2 v + Y_{vv\delta} v^2 \delta + Y_{\delta vr} \delta v r \\
&\quad + Y_{vu} v \Delta u + Y_{vuu} v \Delta u^2 + Y_{ru} r \Delta u + Y_{ruu} r \Delta u^2 + Y_{\delta u} \delta \Delta u + Y_{\delta uu} \delta \Delta u^2 \\
N &= N^* + N_u \Delta u + N_{uu} \Delta u^2 + N_r r + N_v v + N_r \dot{r} + N_v \dot{v} + N_\delta \delta + N_{rrr} r^3 + N_{vvv} v^3 \\
&\quad + N_{\delta\delta\delta} \delta^3 + N_{rr\delta} r^2 \delta + N_{\delta\delta r} \delta^2 r + N_{rrv} r^2 v + N_{vvr} v^2 r + N_{\delta\delta v} \delta^2 v + N_{vv\delta} v^2 \delta \\
&\quad + N_{\delta vr} \delta v r + N_{vu} v \Delta u + N_{vuu} v \Delta u^2 + N_{ru} r \Delta u + N_{ruu} r \Delta u^2 + N_{\delta u} \delta \Delta u \\
&\quad + N_{\delta uu} \delta \Delta u^2
\end{aligned} \tag{7.30}$$

The hydrodynamic derivatives (7.30) are defined using the notation

$$\begin{aligned}
F^* &= F(\mathbf{x}_0), \quad F_{x_i} = \left. \frac{\partial F(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_i} \right|_{\mathbf{x}_0} \\
F_{x_i x_j} &= \left. \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 F(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} \right|_{\mathbf{x}_0}, \quad F_{x_i x_j x_k} = \left. \frac{1}{6} \frac{\partial^3 F(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_i \partial x_j \partial x_k} \right|_{\mathbf{x}_0}
\end{aligned}$$

where  $F \in \{X, Y, N\}$ .

### PMM Models

The hydrodynamic coefficients can be experimentally determined by using a planar-motion-mechanism (PMM) system, which is a device for experimentally determining the hydrodynamic derivatives required in the equations of motion. This includes coefficients usually classified into the three categories of static stability, rotary stability and acceleration derivatives. The PMM device is capable of oscillating a ship (or submarine) model while it is being towed in a testing tank. The forces are measured on the scale model and fitted to odd functions based on Taylor-series expansions. The resulting model is usually referred to as the PMM model and this model is scaled up to a full-scale ship by using Froude number similarity. This ensures that the ratio between the inertial and gravitational forces is kept constant.

#### 7.1.4 Linearized Maneuvering Models

For marine craft moving at constant (or at least slowly varying) forward speed,

$$U = \sqrt{u^2 + v^2} \approx u \tag{7.31}$$

The 3 DOF maneuvering model of Section 7.1.1 can be decoupled in a forward speed (surge) model and a sway–yaw subsystem for maneuvering.

#### Forward Speed Model (Surge Subsystem)

Starboard–port symmetry implies that surge is decoupled from sway and yaw. Hence, the surge equation in Section 7.1.1 can be written in component form as

$$(m - X_{\dot{u}})\ddot{u} - X_u u_r - X_{|u|u} |u_r| u_r = \tau_1 \quad (7.32)$$

where  $\tau_1$  is the sum of control and external forces in surge.

### Linearized Maneuvering Model (Sway–Yaw Subsystem)

The linearized maneuvering model known as the *potential theory representation* can be written (Fossen, 1994, Clarke and Horn, 1997)

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{N}(u_o)\mathbf{v}_r = \mathbf{b}\delta \quad (7.33)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}_r = [v_r, r]^\top$  and  $\delta$  is the rudder angle. This is based on the assumptions that the cruise speed

$$u = u_o \approx \text{constant} \quad (7.34)$$

and that  $v_r$  and  $r$  are small. The ocean current force is included as a linear term  $N(u_o)[v_c, 0]^\top$ . The potential theory representation is obtained by extracting the 2nd and 6th rows in  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})$  and  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v})$ , Equations (3.60) and (6.45), with  $u = u_o$ , resulting in

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} &\approx \begin{bmatrix} (m - X_{\dot{u}})u_o r \\ (m - Y_{\dot{v}})u_o v + (mx_g - Y_r)u_o r - (m - X_{\dot{u}})u_o v \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & (m - X_{\dot{u}})u_o \\ (X_{\dot{u}} - Y_{\dot{v}})u_o & (mx_g - Y_r)u_o \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ r \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (7.35)$$

Linear damping in sway and yaw takes the following form:

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{bmatrix} -Y_v & -Y_r \\ -N_v & -N_r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.36)$$

Assuming that the ship is controlled by a single rudder:

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\tau} &= \mathbf{b}\delta \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} -Y_\delta \\ -N_\delta \end{bmatrix} \delta \end{aligned} \quad (7.37)$$

and that  $N(u_o)$  contains the speed-dependent terms from  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})$  and the linear damper  $\mathbf{D}$ , finally gives

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m - Y_{\dot{v}} & mx_g - Y_r \\ mx_g - Y_r & I_z - N_r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.38)$$

$$\mathbf{N}(u_o) = \begin{bmatrix} -Y_v & (m - X_{\dot{u}})u_o - Y_r \\ (X_{\dot{u}} - Y_{\dot{v}})u_o - N_v & (mx_g - Y_r)u_o - N_r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.39)$$

$$\mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} -Y_\delta \\ -N_\delta \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.40)$$

### Comment 7.1

Davidson and Schiff (1946) assumed that the hydrodynamic forces  $\tau_{RB}$  are linear in  $\delta$ ,  $\dot{\mathbf{v}}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  (linear strip theory) such that

$$\tau_{RB} = -\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} Y_\delta \\ N_\delta \end{bmatrix}}_b \delta + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} Y_{\dot{v}} & Y_r \\ N_{\dot{v}} & N_r \end{bmatrix}}_{M_A} \dot{\mathbf{v}} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} Y_v & Y_r \\ N_v & N_r \end{bmatrix}}_D \mathbf{v}_r \quad (7.41)$$

This gives

$$\mathbf{N}(u_o) = \begin{bmatrix} -Y_v & mu_o - Y_r \\ -N_v & mx_g u_o - N_r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.42)$$

Notice that the Munk moment  $(X_{\dot{u}} - Y_{\dot{v}})u_o v$  is missing in the yaw equation when compared to (7.39). This is a destabilizing moment known from aerodynamics which tries to turn the craft; see Faltinsen (1990, pp. 188–189). Also notice that the less important terms  $X_{\dot{u}}u_{or}$  and  $Y_{\dot{r}}u_{or}$  are removed from  $\mathbf{N}$  when compared to (7.39). All missing terms are due to the  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v})$  matrix, which is omitted in the linear expression (7.41). Consequently, it is recommended to use (7.39), which includes the terms from the  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)$  matrix.

### Hydrodynamic Derivatives

The hydrodynamic derivatives in (7.38) and (7.39) are related to the zero-speed potential coefficients according to

$$\begin{aligned} -Y_{\dot{v}} &= A_{22}(0) & -N_{\dot{v}} &= A_{62}(0) \\ -Y_{\dot{r}} &= A_{26}(0) & -N_{\dot{r}} &= A_{66}(0) \\ -Y_v &= B_{22}(0) + B_{22v} & -N_v &= B_{62}(0) + B_{62v} \\ -Y_r &= B_{26}(0) + B_{26v} & -N_r &= B_{66}(0) + B_{66v} \end{aligned} \quad (7.43)$$

where the subscript  $v$  for the  $B$  elements denotes the viscous contribution.

## 7.2 Autopilot Models for Heading Control (1 DOF)

Model-based heading controllers for marine craft are usually based on the model representation of Nomoto *et al.* (1957). The Nomoto autopilot model can be derived from the linearized maneuvering model, as explained below.

### 7.2.1 Second-Order Nomoto Model (Yaw Subsystem)

A linear autopilot model for heading control can be derived from the maneuvering model

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{N}(u_o)\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{b}\delta \quad (7.44)$$

by choosing the yaw rate  $r$  as output:

$$r = \mathbf{c}^\top \mathbf{v}, \quad \mathbf{c}^\top = [0, 1] \quad (7.45)$$

Hence, application of the *Laplace transformation* yields

$$\frac{r}{\delta}(s) = \frac{K(1 + T_3 s)}{(1 + T_1 s)(1 + T_2 s)} \quad (7.46)$$

A similar expression is obtained for the sway motion:

$$\frac{v}{\delta}(s) = \frac{K_v(1 + T_v s)}{(1 + T_1 s)(1 + T_2 s)} \quad (7.47)$$

where  $K_v$  and  $T_v$  differ from  $K$  and  $T_3$  in the yaw equation.

Equation (7.46) is referred to as *Nomoto's second-order model* (Nomoto *et al.*, 1957).

### 7.2.2 First-Order Nomoto Model (Yaw Subsystem)

The *first-order Nomoto model* is obtained by defining the *equivalent time constant*:

$$T := T_1 + T_2 - T_3 \quad (7.48)$$

such that

$$\frac{r}{\delta}(s) = \frac{K}{(1 + Ts)} \quad (7.49)$$

Finally,  $\dot{\psi} = r$  yields

$$\frac{\psi}{\delta}(s) = \frac{K}{s(1 + Ts)} \quad (7.50)$$

which is the transfer function that is used in most commercial autopilot systems.

### Time-Domain Representations of the First- and Second-Order Nomoto Models

The time-domain representation for Nomoto's second-order model becomes

$$T_1 T_2 \psi^{(3)} + (T_1 + T_2) \ddot{\psi} + \dot{\psi} = K(\delta + T_3 \dot{\delta}) \quad (7.51)$$

which can be approximated by

$$T \ddot{\psi} + \dot{\psi} = K\delta \quad (7.52)$$

The accuracy of the first-order Nomoto model when compared to the second-order model is illustrated in Example 7.1 where a course stable cargo ship and a course unstable oil tanker are considered (see Section 12.1.1).

### Matlab

```

function nomoto(T1,T2,T3,K)
% NOMOTO(T1,T2,T3,K) generates the Bode plots for
%
%           K          K (1+T3s)
% H1(s) = -----    H2(s) = -----
%           (1+Ts)s      s(1+T1s)(1+T2s)
%
% Author: Thor I. Fossen

T = T1+T2-T3;
d1 = [T 1 0]; n1 = K;
d2 = [T1*T2 T1+T2 1 0]; n2 = K*[T3 1];
[mag1,phase1,w] = bode(n1,d1);
[mag2,phase2] = bode(n2,d2,w);

% shift ship phase with 360 deg for course unstable ship
if K < 0,
phase1 = phase1-360;
phase2 = phase2-360;
end

clf,subplot(211),semilogx(w,20*log10(mag1)),grid
xlabel('Frequency [rad/s]'),title('Gain [dB]')
hold on,semilogx(w,20*log10(mag2),'-'),hold off
subplot(212),semilogx(w,phase1),grid
xlabel('Frequency [rad/s]'),title('Phase [deg]')
hold on,semilogx(w,phase2,'-'),hold off

```

**Example 7.1 (Frequency Response for Nomoto First- and Second-Order Models)**

Consider a Mariner class cargo ship (Chislett and Strøm-Tejsen, 1965a) and a fully loaded tanker (Dyne and Trägårdh, 1975) given by the parameters in Table 7.1. The Bode diagram is generated by using the MSS toolbox commands:

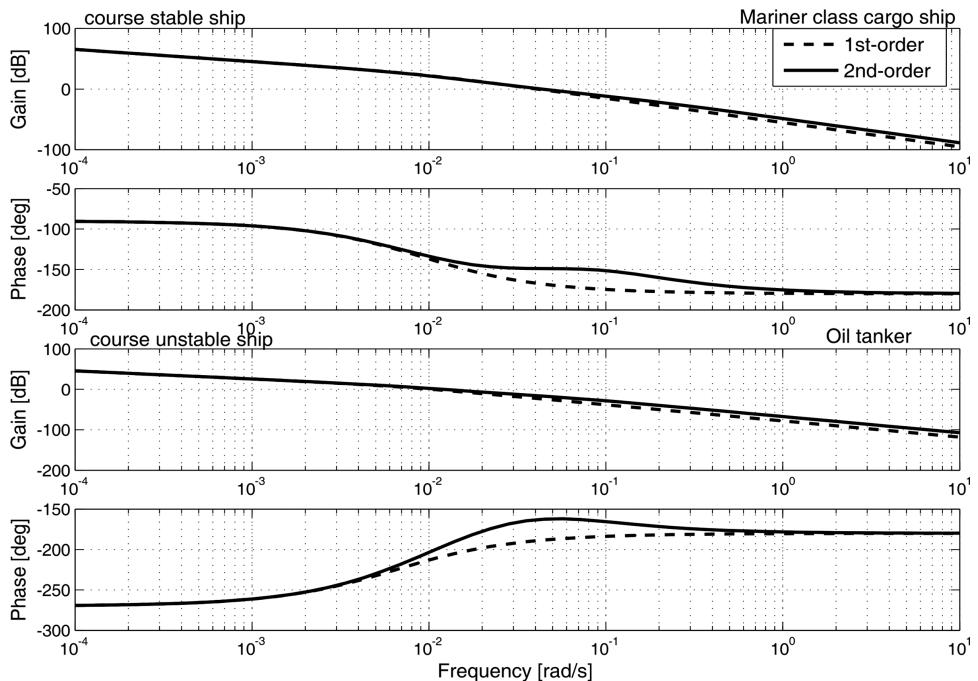
```
T1=118; T2=7.8; T3=18.5; K=0.185;
nomoto(T1, T2, T3, K)
```

```
T1=-124.1; T2=16.4; T3=46.0; K=-0.019;
nomoto(T1, T2, T3, K)
```

It is seen from Figure 7.3 that the first-order approximation is quite accurate up to 0.1 rad/s for the cargo ship and the tanker. A small deviation in the phase around 0.5 rad/s is observed. This is due to the cancelation of the sway dynamics.

**Table 7.1** Parameters for a cargo ship and a fully loaded oil tanker

	$L(\text{m})$	$u_0(\text{m/s})$	$\nabla(\text{dwt})$	$K(1/\text{s})$	$T_1(\text{s})$	$T_2(\text{s})$	$T_3(\text{s})$
Cargo ship	161	7.7	16622	0.185	118.0	7.8	18.5
Oil tanker	350	8.1	389100	-0.019	-124.1	16.4	46.0

**Figure 7.3** First-order and second-order Nomoto transfer functions for a course-stable Mariner class cargo ship and a course-unstable oil tanker.

### 7.2.3 Nonlinear Extensions of Nomoto's Model

The linear Nomoto model can be extended to include nonlinear effects by adding a *static nonlinearity* to describe the *maneuvering characteristics*.

#### Nonlinear Extension of Nomoto's First-Order Model

In Norrin (1963) the following first-order model was proposed:

$$T\dot{r} + H_N(r) = K\delta \quad (7.53)$$

$$H_N(r) = n_3r^3 + n_2r^2 + n_1r + n_0 \quad (7.54)$$

where  $H_N(r)$  is a nonlinear function. For  $H_N(r) = r$ , the linear model (7.52) is obtained.

### Nonlinear Extension of Nomoto's Second-Order Model

Bech and Wagner Smith (1969) propose a second-order model:

$$T_1 T_2 \ddot{r} + (T_1 + T_2)\dot{r} + K H_B(r) = K(\delta + T_3 \dot{\delta}) \quad (7.55)$$

$$H_B(r) = b_3 r^3 + b_2 r^2 + b_1 r + b_0 \quad (7.56)$$

where  $H_B(r)$  can be found from Bech's reverse spiral maneuver. The linear equivalent (7.51) is obtained for  $H_B(r) = r$ .

The linear and nonlinear maneuvering characteristics are shown in Figure 12.12 in Section 12.1.2. They are generated by solving for  $r$  as a function of  $\delta$  using the steady-state solutions of (7.53) or (7.55):

$$H_N(r) = K\delta, \quad H_B(r) = \delta \quad (7.57)$$

The nonlinear maneuvering characteristics can also be generated from full-scale maneuvering tests. For stable ships both the *Bech* and *Dieudonne spiral tests* can be applied, while the Bech spiral is the only one avoiding the hysteresis effect for course-unstable ships; see Section 12.1.2 for details.

For a course-unstable ship,  $b_1 < 0$ , whereas a course-stable ship satisfies  $b_1 > 0$ . A single-screw propeller or asymmetry in the hull will cause a nonzero value of  $b_0$ . Similarly, symmetry in the hull implies that  $b_2 = 0$ . Since a constant rudder angle is required to compensate for constant steady-state wind and current forces, the bias term  $b_0$  could conveniently be treated as an additional rudder off set. This in turn implies that a large number of ships can be described by the polynomial

$$H_B(r) = b_3 r^3 + b_1 r \quad (7.58)$$

The coefficients  $b_i$  ( $i = 0, \dots, 3$ ) are related to those in Norrbin's model  $n_i$  ( $i = 0, \dots, 3$ ) by

$$n_i = \frac{b_i}{|b_1|} \quad (7.59)$$

resulting in

$$H_N(r) = n_3 r^3 + n_1 r \quad (7.60)$$

This implies that  $n_1 = 1$  for a course-stable ship and  $n_1 = -1$  for a course-unstable ship.

#### 7.2.4 Pivot Point (Yaw Rotation Point)

When turning a ship it is important to know at which point the ship turns about. This rotation point or *pivot point* in yaw is defined as follows:

##### **Definition 7.1 (Pivot Point)**

A ship's pivot point  $x_p$  is a point on the centerline measured from the CG about which the ship turns. Consequently, it has no sideways movement (Tzeng, 1998a):

$$v_{p/n} = v_{g/n} + x_p \dot{r} \equiv 0 \quad (7.61)$$

and  $v_{g/n}$  is the sway velocity of CG with respect to  $\{n\}$ . The pivot point will scribe the ship's turning circle.

It is possible to compute the pivot point for a turning ship online by measuring the velocity  $v_{g/n}(t)$  in the CG and the turning rate  $r(t)$ . From (7.61) it follows that

$$x_p(t) = -\frac{v_{g/n}(t)}{r(t)}, \quad r(t) \neq 0 \quad (7.62)$$

This expression is not defined for a zero yaw rate corresponding to a straight-line motion. This means that the pivot point is located at infinity when moving on a straight line or in a pure sway motion.

It is well known to the pilots that the pivot point of a turning ship is located at about 1/5 to 1/4 ship length aft of bow (Tzeng, 1998a). The location of the pivot point of a rudder controlled ship is related to the ratio of the *sway-rudder* and *yaw-rudder* gain coefficients. This can be explained by considering the linearized maneuvering equations in the steady state. From (7.46) and (7.47) we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{v}{r} &= \frac{K_v(1 + T_v s)}{K(1 + T_3 s)} \\ &\stackrel{s=0}{=} \frac{K_v}{K} \end{aligned} \quad (7.63)$$

Consequently, the steady-state location of the pivot point is given by

$$x_{p(s,s)} = -\frac{K_v}{K} \quad (7.64)$$

This expression can also be related to the hydrodynamic derivatives according to

$$x_{p(s,s)} = -\frac{N_r Y_\delta - (Y_r - mu_0) N_\delta}{Y_v N_\delta - N_v Y_\delta} \quad (7.65)$$

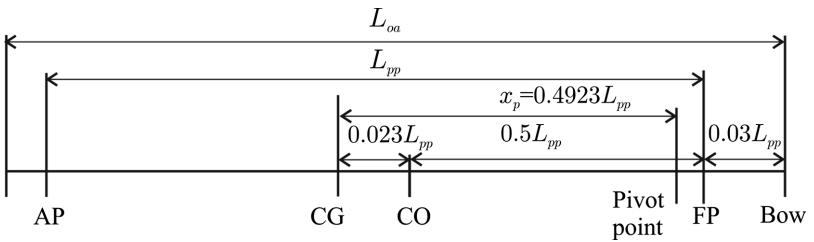
Notice that  $x_{p(s,s)}$  depends on the forward speed  $u_0$ . The nondimensional form becomes (see Section 7.2.5)

$$\begin{aligned} x'_{p(s,s)} &= \frac{x_{p(s,s)}}{L_{pp}} \\ &= -\frac{N'_r Y'_\delta - (Y'_r - m'u'_0) N'_\delta}{Y'_v N'_\delta - N'_v Y'_\delta} \end{aligned} \quad (7.66)$$

### Example 7.2 (Pivot Point for the Mariner Class Vessel)

Consider the Mariner Class vessel (Chislett and Strøm-Tejsen, 1965b) where the nondimensional linear maneuvering coefficients for  $u_0 = 7.175$  m/s (15 knots) are given as

$$\begin{array}{ll} Y'_v = -1160 \times 10^{-5} & N'_v = -264 \times 10^{-5} \\ Y'_r - m'u'_0 = -499 \times 10^{-5} & N'_r = -166 \times 10^{-5} \\ Y'_\delta = 278 \times 10^{-5} & N'_\delta = -139 \times 10^{-5} \end{array}$$



**Figure 7.4** Location of the pivot point for the Mariner Class vessel.

The Mariner Class vessel is programmed in the MSS toolbox file *mariner.m*. The nondimensional pivot point is computed from (7.66). This gives

$$x'_{p(s,s)} = 0.4923 \quad (7.67)$$

or

$$x_{p(s,s)} = 0.4923L_{pp} \quad (7.68)$$

where  $L_{pp} = 160.93$  m is the length between the perpendiculars AP and FP. The overall length is  $L_{oa} = 171.8$  m. The pivot point  $x_{p(s,s)}$  is located ahead of the CG. Since the CG is located at  $x_g = -0.023L_{pp}$  and the bow is approximately  $0.03L_{pp}$  fore of FP, the pivot point is  $0.06L_{pp}$  aft of the bow (see Figure 7.4).

### 7.2.5 Nondimensional Maneuvering and Autopilot Models

When designing course autopilots it is often convenient to normalize the ship steering equations of motion such that the model parameters can be treated as constants with respect to the instantaneous speed  $U$  defined by

$$U = \sqrt{u^2 + v^2} = \sqrt{(u_0 + \Delta u)^2 + \Delta v^2} \quad (7.69)$$

where  $u_0$  is the *service speed* and  $\Delta u$  and  $\Delta v$  are small perturbations in the surge and sway velocities, respectively. Hence,

$$U \approx u_0 \quad (7.70)$$

During course-changing maneuvers the instantaneous speed will decrease due to increased resistance during the turn.

The most commonly used normalization forms for marine craft are the *prime system* of SNAME (1950) and the *bis system* of Norrbin (1970).

**Prime System:** This system uses the craft's instantaneous speed  $U$ , the length  $L = L_{pp}$  (the length between the fore and aft perpendiculars), the time unit  $L/U$  and the mass unit  $1/2\rho L^3$  or  $1/2\rho L^2 T$  as normalization variables. The latter is inspired by wing theory, where the reference area  $A = LT$  is used instead of  $A = L^2$ . The prime system cannot be used for low-speed applications such as dynamic ship positioning, since normalization of the velocities  $u$ ,  $v$  and  $w$  implies dividing by the cruise speed  $U$ , which can be zero for a dynamically positioned ship. As a consequence, the prime system is mostly used in ship maneuvering.

**Bis System:** This system can be used for zero-speed as well as high-speed applications since division of speed  $U$  is avoided. The bis system is based on the use of the length  $L = L_{pp}$ , with the time unit

**Table 7.2** Normalization variables used for the prime and bis systems

Unit	Prime system I	Prime system II	Bis system
Length	$L$	$L$	$L$
Mass	$\frac{1}{2}\rho L^3$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho L^2 T$	$\mu\rho\nabla$
Inertia moment	$\frac{1}{2}\rho L^5$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho L^4 T$	$\mu\rho\nabla L^2$
Time	$\frac{L}{U}$	$\frac{L}{U}$	$\sqrt{L/g}$
Reference area	$L^2$	$LT$	$\mu \frac{2\nabla}{L}$
Position	$L$	$L$	$L$
Angle	1	1	1
Linear velocity	$U$	$U$	$\sqrt{Lg}$
Angular velocity	$\frac{U}{L}$	$\frac{U}{L}$	$\sqrt{g/L}$
Linear acceleration	$\frac{U^2}{L}$	$\frac{U^2}{L}$	$g$
Angular acceleration	$\frac{U^2}{L^2}$	$\frac{U^2}{L^2}$	$\frac{g}{L}$
Force	$\frac{1}{2}\rho U^2 L^2$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho U^2 LT$	$\mu\rho g\nabla$
Moment	$\frac{1}{2}\rho U^2 L^3$	$\frac{1}{2}\rho U^2 L^2 T$	$\mu\rho g\nabla L$

$\sqrt{L/g}$  such that speed becomes  $\sqrt{Lg} > 0$ . In addition, the body mass density ratio  $\mu = m/\rho\nabla$ , where  $m$  is the mass unit and  $\nabla$  is the hull contour displacement, is applied. The density ratio  $\mu$  takes the following values:

- $\mu < 1$  Underwater vehicles (ROVs, AUVs and submarines)
- $\mu = 1$  Floating ships/rigs and neutrally buoyant underwater vehicles
- $\mu > 1$  Heavy torpedoes (typically  $\mu = 1.3\text{--}1.5$ )

The normalization variables for the prime and bis systems are given in Table 7.2. The nondimensional quantities will be distinguished from those with dimension by applying the notation  $(\cdot)'$  for the prime system and  $(\cdot)''$  for the bis system.

### Example 7.3 (Normalization of Parameters)

The hydrodynamic coefficient  $Y_r$  can be made nondimensional by using the prime and bis systems. First, let us determine the dimension of  $Y_r$ . Consider

$$\underbrace{Y}_{[N=kgm/s^2]} = \underbrace{Y_r}_{[\text{unknown}]} \underbrace{r}_{[\text{rad/s}]}$$

Hence, the unknown dimension must be kg m/s since rad is a nondimensional unit. The nondimensional values  $Y'_r$  and  $Y''_r$  are found by using kg, m and s from Table 7.2. Consequently,

$$Y'_r = \frac{Y_r}{\left[\frac{\frac{1}{2}\rho L^3}{[L]}\right]_{[L]} \left[\frac{1}{2}\rho L^3 U\right]_{[L/U]}} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}\rho L^3 U} Y_r \quad (7.71)$$

$$Y''_r = \frac{Y_r}{\frac{1}{\mu\rho\nabla\sqrt{Lg}}_{[\sqrt{L/g}]} \left[\frac{1}{\mu\rho\nabla\sqrt{Lg}}\right]_{[\mu\rho\nabla\sqrt{Lg}]} Y_r} = \frac{1}{\mu\rho\nabla\sqrt{Lg}} Y_r \quad (7.72)$$

For a floating ship,  $Y''_r$  can be further simplified since  $\mu = 1$  and  $m = \rho\nabla$ . Hence,

$$Y''_r = \frac{1}{m\sqrt{Lg}} Y_r \quad (7.73)$$

**Example 7.4 (Normalization of States and Parameters)**

Consider the linear maneuvering model (7.33). Normalization according to the prime system suggests

$$\mathbf{M}'\dot{\mathbf{v}}' + \mathbf{N}'(u'_0)\mathbf{v}' = \mathbf{b}'\delta' \quad (7.74)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}' = [v', r']^\top$  and

$$\mathbf{M}' = \begin{bmatrix} m' - Y'_v & m'x'_g - Y'_r \\ m'x'_g - N'_v & I'_z - N'_r \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{b}' = \begin{bmatrix} -Y'_\delta \\ -N'_\delta \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{N}'(u'_0) = \begin{bmatrix} -Y'_v & m'u'_0 - Y'_r \\ -N'_v & m'x'_g u'_0 - N'_r \end{bmatrix}$$

where

$$u'_0 = \frac{u_0}{U} \approx 1, \quad \text{for } \Delta u \approx 0 \text{ and } \Delta v \approx 0 \quad (7.75)$$

The nondimensional velocities and control input can be transformed to its dimensional values by

$$v = Uv', \quad r = \frac{U}{L}r', \quad \delta = \delta' \quad (7.76)$$

## 6 DOF Normalization Procedure

A systematic procedure for 6 DOF normalization is found by defining a transformation matrix:

$$\mathbf{T} = \text{diag} \left\{ 1, 1, 1, \frac{1}{L}, \frac{1}{L}, \frac{1}{L} \right\} \quad (7.77)$$

$$\mathbf{T}^{-1} = \text{diag}\{1, 1, 1, L, L, L\} \quad (7.78)$$

Consider the nondimensional MIMO model (see Example 7.4)

$$\mathbf{M}'\dot{\mathbf{v}}' + \mathbf{N}'\mathbf{v}' + \mathbf{G}'\boldsymbol{\eta}' = \boldsymbol{\tau}' \quad (7.79)$$

When designing marine craft simulators and gain-scheduled controllers it is convenient to perform the numerical integration in real time using dimensional time. Consequently, it is convenient to use the nondimensional hydrodynamic coefficients as input to the simulator or controller, while the states  $\mathbf{v}$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  and input  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  should have their physical dimensions. For the prime system this is obtained by applying the following transformation to (7.79):

$$\mathbf{M}' \left( \frac{L}{U^2} \mathbf{T}^{-1} \dot{\mathbf{v}} \right) + \mathbf{N}' \left( \frac{1}{U} \mathbf{T}^{-1} \mathbf{v} \right) + \mathbf{G}' \left( \frac{1}{L} \mathbf{T}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\eta} \right) = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2} \rho U^2 L^2} \mathbf{T} \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (7.80)$$

such that

$$(\mathbf{T} \mathbf{M}' \mathbf{T}^{-1}) \dot{\mathbf{v}} + \left( \frac{U}{L} \right) (\mathbf{T} \mathbf{N}' \mathbf{T}^{-1}) \mathbf{v} + \left( \frac{U}{L} \right)^2 (\mathbf{T} \mathbf{G}' \mathbf{T}^{-1}) \boldsymbol{\eta} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2} \rho L^3} \mathbf{T}^2 \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (7.81)$$

Hence,

$$\mathbf{M} = \frac{\rho L^3}{2} \mathbf{T}^{-2} (\mathbf{T} \mathbf{M}' \mathbf{T}^{-1}),$$

$$\mathbf{N} = \frac{\rho L^2 U}{2} \mathbf{T}^{-2} (\mathbf{T} \mathbf{N}' \mathbf{T}^{-1}),$$

$$\mathbf{G} = \frac{\rho L U^2}{2} \mathbf{T}^{-2} (\mathbf{T} \mathbf{G}' \mathbf{T}^{-1})$$

**Table 7.3** 6 DOF normalization variables

	Prime system	Bis system
Acceleration	$\dot{\mathbf{v}} = \frac{U^2}{L} \mathbf{T} \dot{\mathbf{v}}$	$\dot{\mathbf{v}} = g \mathbf{T} \dot{\mathbf{v}}$
Velocity	$\mathbf{v} = \dot{U} \mathbf{T} \mathbf{v}'$	$\mathbf{v} = \sqrt{Lg} \mathbf{T} \mathbf{v}''$
Position/attitude	$\eta = L \mathbf{T} \eta'$	$\eta = L \mathbf{T} \eta''$
Control forces/moment	$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \frac{1}{2} \rho U^2 L^2 \mathbf{T}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\tau}'$	$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mu \rho g \nabla \mathbf{T}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\tau}''$

Notice that  $\mathbf{v}$ ,  $\eta$  and the input vector  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  now have physical dimensions while  $\mathbf{M}'$ ,  $\mathbf{N}'$  and  $\mathbf{G}'$  are nondimensional. Similarly, *bis system* scaling with  $\mu = 1$  gives

$$(\mathbf{T} \mathbf{M}'' \mathbf{T}^{-1}) \dot{\mathbf{v}} + \sqrt{\frac{g}{L}} (\mathbf{T} \mathbf{N}'' \mathbf{T}^{-1}) \mathbf{v} + \frac{g}{L} (\mathbf{T} \mathbf{G}'' \mathbf{T}^{-1}) \eta = \frac{1}{m} \mathbf{T}^2 \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (7.82)$$

Hence,

$$\mathbf{M} = m \mathbf{T}^{-2} (\mathbf{T} \mathbf{M}'' \mathbf{T}^{-1}),$$

$$\mathbf{N} = m \sqrt{\frac{g}{L}} \mathbf{T}^{-2} (\mathbf{T} \mathbf{N}'' \mathbf{T}^{-1}),$$

$$\mathbf{G} = m \frac{g}{L} \mathbf{T}^{-2} (\mathbf{T} \mathbf{G}'' \mathbf{T}^{-1})$$

The 6 DOF normalization procedure is summarized in Table 7.3. The following example demonstrates this for a linearized maneuvering model.

### Example 7.5 (Normalization of Parameters while keeping the Actual States)

Consider the model in Example 7.4:

$$\mathbf{M}' \dot{\mathbf{v}}' + \mathbf{N}'(u'_0) \mathbf{v}' = \mathbf{b}' \delta' \quad (7.83)$$

Transforming the states  $\mathbf{v}'$  and control input  $\delta'$  in (7.80) to dimensional quantities yields

$$(\mathbf{T} \mathbf{M}' \mathbf{T}^{-1}) \dot{\mathbf{v}} + \frac{U}{L} (\mathbf{T} \mathbf{N}'(u'_0) \mathbf{T}^{-1}) \mathbf{v} = \frac{U^2}{L} \mathbf{T} \mathbf{b}' \delta \quad (7.84)$$

where

$$\mathbf{T} = \text{diag}\{1, 1/L\} \quad (7.85)$$

Notice that  $\delta = \delta'$ . Expanding (7.84) yields

$$\begin{bmatrix} m'_{11} & L m'_{12} \\ \frac{1}{L} m'_{21} & m'_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{r} \end{bmatrix} + \frac{U}{L} \begin{bmatrix} n'_{11} & L n'_{12} \\ \frac{1}{L} n'_{21} & n'_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ r \end{bmatrix} = \frac{U^2}{L} \begin{bmatrix} b'_1 \\ \frac{1}{L} b'_2 \end{bmatrix} \delta \quad (7.86)$$

where  $m'_{ij}$ ,  $d'_{ij}$  and  $b'_i$  are defined according to prime systems I or II in Table 7.2.

### Example 7.6 (Normalization Procedure for the Nomoto Time and Gain Constants)

The gain and time constants in Nomoto's first- and second-order models can be made invariant with respect to  $L$  and  $U$  by using

$$K' = (L/U) K, \quad T' = (U/L) T \quad (7.87)$$

This suggests that the first-order ship dynamics can be expressed as

$$(L/U) T' \dot{r} + r = (U/L) K' \delta \quad (7.88)$$

or

$$\dot{r} = -\left(\frac{U}{L}\right) \frac{1}{T'} r + \left(\frac{U}{L}\right)^2 \frac{K'}{T'} \delta \quad (7.89)$$

This representation is quite useful since the nondimensional gain and time constants will typically be in the range  $0.5 < K' < 2$  and  $0.5 < T' < 2$  for most ships. An extension to Nomoto's second-order model is obtained by writing

$$(L/U)^2 T'_1 T'_2 \psi^{(3)} + (L/U)(T'_1 + T'_2) \ddot{\psi} + \dot{\psi} = (U/L) K' \delta + K' T'_3 \dot{\delta} \quad (7.90)$$

where the nondimensional time constants  $T'_i$  are defined as  $T'_i = T_i (U/L)$  for  $(i = 1, 2, 3)$  and the nondimensional gain constant is  $K' = (L/U) K$ .

### 7.3 DP Models (3 DOF)

Models for dynamic positioning (DP) are derived under the assumption of low speed. The DP models are valid for stationkeeping and low-speed maneuvering up to approximately 2 m/s, as indicated by the speed regions shown in Figure 7.2. This section presents a nonlinear DP model based on current coefficients and linear exponential damping that can be used for accurate simulation and prediction. In addition to this, a linearized model intended for controller–observer design is derived.

Consider the nonlinear model:

$$\dot{\eta} = \mathbf{R}(\psi)\mathbf{v} \quad (7.91)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{N}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave} \quad (7.92)$$

where

$$\mathbf{N}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r := \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r \quad (7.93)$$

The state vectors are  $\mathbf{v} = [u, v, r]^\top$  and  $\eta = [N, E, \psi]^\top$ . This implies that the dynamics associated with the motion in heave, roll and pitch are neglected, that is  $w = p = q = 0$ .

The rotation, mass and Coriolis–centripetal matrices for DP are

$$\mathbf{R}(\psi) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\psi) & -\sin(\psi) & 0 \\ \sin(\psi) & \cos(\psi) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.94)$$

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m - X_{\dot{u}} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m - Y_{\dot{v}} & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} \\ 0 & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} & I_z - N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.95)$$

$$C_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & -m(x_g r + v) \\ 0 & 0 & mu \\ m(x_g r + v) & -mu & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.96)$$

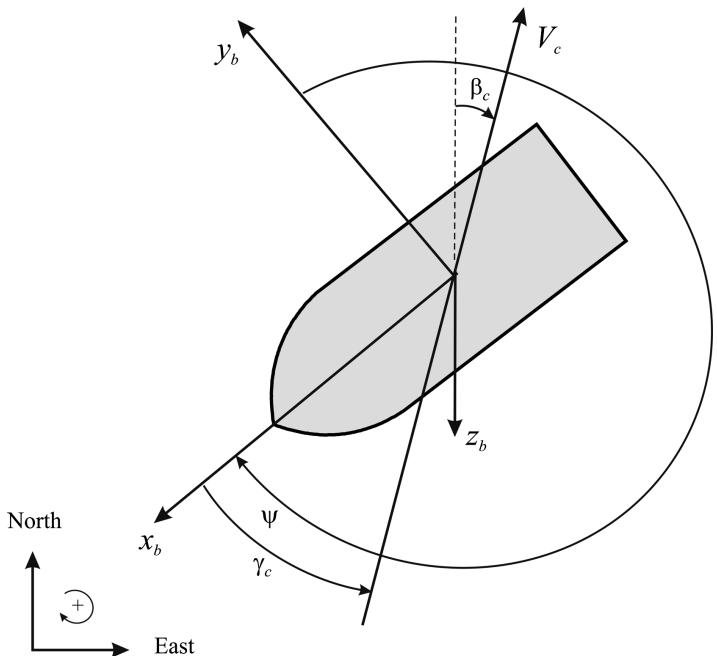
Notice that surge is decoupled from sway and yaw is due to symmetry considerations of the system inertia matrix (Section 3.3). It is assumed that the added mass matrix is computed in CO. The expression for  $N(\mathbf{v}_r)$  will depend on how the dissipative forces are modeled. This is the topic for the next sections.

### 7.3.1 Nonlinear DP Model using Current Coefficients

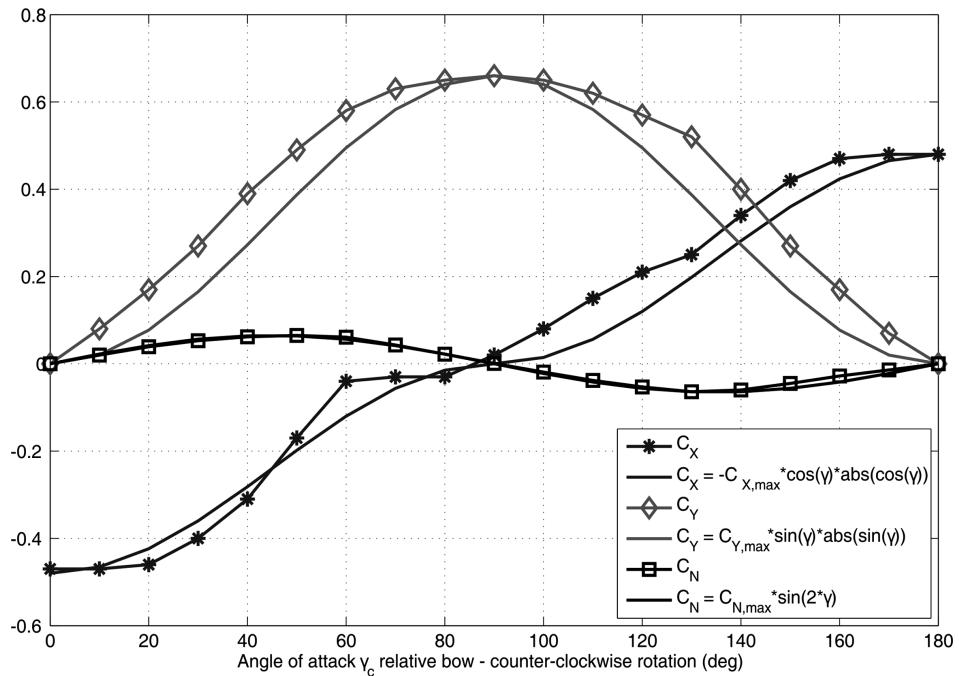
For low-speed applications such as DP, ocean currents and damping can be modeled by three *current coefficients*  $C_X$ ,  $C_Y$  and  $C_N$ . These can be experimentally obtained using scale models in wind tunnels. The resulting forces are measured on the model, which is restrained from moving ( $U = 0$ ). The current coefficients can also be related to the surge resistance, cross-flow drag and the Munk moment used in maneuvering theory. For a ship moving at forward speed  $U > 0$ , quadratic damping will be embedded in the current coefficients if relative speed is used.

#### Zero-Speed Representation

In many textbooks and papers, for instance Blendermann (1994), wind and current coefficients are defined in  $\{\mathbf{b}\}$  relative to the bow using a *counter clockwise rotation*  $\gamma_c$  (see Figure 7.5). The current forces on a



**Figure 7.5** Current speed  $V_c$ , current direction  $\beta_c$  and current angle of attack  $\gamma_c$  relative to the bow.



**Figure 7.6** Experimental current coefficients  $C_X$ ,  $C_Y$  and  $C_N$  for a tanker. Notice that  $\gamma_c$  is a counter clockwise rotation and the angle of attack  $\gamma_c = 0^\circ$  for a current in the bow.

marine craft at rest ( $U = 0$ ) can be expressed in terms of the area-based current coefficients  $C_X(\gamma_c)$ ,  $C_Y(\gamma_c)$  and  $C_N(\gamma_c)$  as

$$X_{\text{current}} = \frac{1}{2} \rho A_{Fc} C_X(\gamma_c) V_c^2 \quad (7.97)$$

$$Y_{\text{current}} = \frac{1}{2} \rho A_{Lc} C_Y(\gamma_c) V_c^2 \quad (7.98)$$

$$N_{\text{current}} = \frac{1}{2} \rho A_{Lc} L_{oa} C_N(\gamma_c) V_c^2 \quad (7.99)$$

where  $V_c$  is the speed of the ocean current. The frontal and lateral projected currents areas are denoted  $A_{Fc}$  and  $A_{Lc}$ , respectively, while  $L_{oa}$  is the length overall and  $\rho$  is the density of water. Typical experimental current coefficients are shown in Figure 7.6.

### Forward Speed Representation

Equations (7.97)–(7.99) only add zero-speed current forces (no damping) to the equations of motion since they only depend on the current speed  $V_c$ . For a ship moving at relative forward speed,  $U_r > 0$ , current forces and quadratic damping in surge and sway are given by

$$X_{\text{current}} = \frac{1}{2} \rho A_{Fc} C_X(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \quad (7.100)$$

$$Y_{\text{current}} = \frac{1}{2} \rho A_{Lc} C_Y(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \quad (7.101)$$

$$N_{\text{current}} = \frac{1}{2} \rho A_{Lc} L_{oa} C_N(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \quad (7.102)$$

These expressions are functions of the relative speed  $V_{rc}$  and direction  $\gamma_{rc}$ :

$$V_{rc} = \sqrt{u_{rc}^2 + v_{rc}^2} = \sqrt{(u - u_c)^2 + (v - v_c)^2} \quad (7.103)$$

$$\gamma_{rc} = -\text{atan2}(v_{rc}, u_{rc}) \quad (7.104)$$

where

$$u_c = V_c \cos(\beta_c - \psi) \quad (7.105)$$

$$v_c = V_c \sin(\beta_c - \psi) \quad (7.106)$$

are the current velocities (see Section 8.3).

### Ocean Current Angle of Attack

From Figure 7.5, it is seen that the angles associated with an ocean current in the horizontal plane for a marine craft at rest satisfy

$$\gamma_c = \psi - \beta_c - \pi \quad (7.107)$$

where  $\beta_c$  is the direction of the ocean current and  $\gamma_c$  is specified relative to the bow. Hence, the velocity components (7.105) and (7.106) can be written

$$u_c = -V_c \cos(\gamma_c) \quad (7.108)$$

$$v_c = V_c \sin(\gamma_c) \quad (7.109)$$

The current goes in the geographic direction  $\beta_c$  in  $\{n\}$  and its magnitude is

$$V_c = \sqrt{u_c^2 + v_c^2} \quad (7.110)$$

Notice that for zero speed the expressions (7.103) and (7.104) become

$$V_{rc} = \sqrt{(u - u_c)^2 + (v - v_c)^2} \stackrel{u=v=0}{=} V_c \quad (7.111)$$

$$\tan(\gamma_{rc}) = -\frac{v - v_c}{u - u_c} \stackrel{u=v=0}{=} -\frac{v_c}{u_c} = \tan(\gamma_c) \quad (7.112)$$

This means that the angles  $\gamma_c$  and  $\gamma_r$  as well as the speeds  $V_{rc}$  and  $V_c$  in general are different for  $U > 0$ . Consequently, the geometrical relationship (7.107) shown in Figure 7.5 only holds for  $U = 0$ .

### Relationship Between Current Coefficients and Surge Resistance/Cross-Flow Drag

The current coefficients can be related to the surge resistance (6.86) and cross-flow drag (6.94)–(6.95) coefficients by assuming low speed such that  $u \approx 0$  and  $v \approx 0$ . This is a good assumption for DP. From (7.108)–(7.109) it follows that the quadratic terms are

$$\begin{aligned} u_r |u_r| &\approx -u_c | -u_c | \\ &= V_c^2 \cos(\gamma_c) |\cos(\gamma_c)| \end{aligned} \quad (7.113)$$

$$\begin{aligned} v_r |v_r| &\approx -v_c | -v_c | \\ &= -V_c^2 \sin(\gamma_c) |\sin(\gamma_c)| \end{aligned} \quad (7.114)$$

$$\begin{aligned} u_r v_r &\approx u_c v_c \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} V_c^2 \sin(2\gamma_c) \end{aligned} \quad (7.115)$$

The next step is to neglect terms in  $r$  (no rotations during stationkeeping) in (6.94)–(6.95) and require that  $C_X$ ,  $C_Y$  and  $C_N$  in (7.97)–(7.99) satisfy

$$X_{\text{current}} = \frac{1}{2} \rho A_{Fc} C_X(\gamma_c) V_c^2 := X_{|u|u} |u_r| u_r \quad (7.116)$$

$$Y_{\text{current}} = \frac{1}{2} \rho A_{Lc} C_Y(\gamma_c) V_c^2 := Y_{|v|v} |v_r| v_r \quad (7.117)$$

$$N_{\text{current}} = \frac{1}{2} \rho A_{Loa} C_N(\gamma_c) V_c^2 := N_{|v|v} |v_r| v_r - \underbrace{(X_u - Y_v) u_r v_r}_{\text{Munk moment}} \quad (7.118)$$

for  $u = v = r = 0$ . Notice that the Munk moment  $(Y_v - X_u) u_r v_r$  in the yaw equation is included in the expression for  $N_{\text{current}}$  (see Section 7.1.4). The other terms are recognized as diagonal quadratic damping terms in  $D(v_r)$ .

This gives the following analytical expressions for the area-based current coefficients:

$$C_X(\gamma_c) = -2 \left( \frac{-X_{|u|u}}{\rho A_{Fc}} \right) \cos(\gamma_c) |\cos(\gamma_c)| \quad (7.119)$$

$$C_Y(\gamma_c) = 2 \left( \frac{-Y_{|v|v}}{\rho A_{Lc}} \right) \sin(\gamma_c) |\sin(\gamma_c)| \quad (7.120)$$

$$C_N(\gamma_c) = \frac{2}{\rho A_{Loa}} (-N_{|v|v} \sin(\gamma_c) |\sin(\gamma_c)| + \frac{1}{2} \underbrace{(X_u - Y_v)}_{A_{22} - A_{11}} \sin(2\gamma_c)) \quad (7.121)$$

These results are similar to Faltinsen (1990, pp. 187–188). The trigonometric functions in (7.119)–(7.121) will be quite close to the shape of the experimental current coefficients shown in Figure 7.6. For tankers, the current coefficients can be computed using the formulae of Leite *et al.* (1998) whereas the ITTC and cross-flow drag principles are commonly used for other hull forms.

The nonlinear DP model based on current coefficients takes the following form:

$$\dot{\eta} = \mathbf{R}(\psi)\eta \quad (7.122)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{D}\exp(-\alpha V_{rc})\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{d}(V_{rc}, \gamma_{rc}) = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave} \quad (7.123)$$

$$\mathbf{d}(V_{rc}, \gamma_{cr}) = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{Fc} C_X(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \\ -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{Lc} C_Y(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \\ -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{Lc} L_{oa} C_N(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 - N_{|r|r} r |r| \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.124)$$

where  $-N_{|r|r} > 0$  is an optional quadratic damping coefficient used to counteract the destabilizing Munk moment in yaw since the current coefficients do not include nonlinear damping in yaw. The model also includes an optional linear damping matrix:

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{bmatrix} -X_u & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -Y_v & -Y_r \\ 0 & -N_v & -N_r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.125)$$

to ensure exponential convergence at low relative speed  $V_r$ . This is done by tuning  $\alpha > 0$ . At higher speeds  $V_{rc} \gg 0$  and the nonlinear term  $\mathbf{d}(V_{rc}, \gamma_{rc})$  dominates over the linear term, which vanishes at higher speeds.

It is also possible to eliminate  $\mathbf{v}$  in (7.123) by using Property 8.1 in Section 8.3. The key assumption is that  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})$  must be parametrized according to (3.57). Hence, it follows that

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}\exp(-\alpha V_{rc})\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{d}(V_{rc}, \gamma_{rc}) = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave} \quad (7.126)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}_r$  is the state vector.

### 7.3.2 Linearized DP Model

As shown in Section 6.4, linear damping is a good assumption for low-speed applications. Similarly, the quadratic velocity terms given by  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r$  and  $\mathbf{d}(V_{rc}, \gamma_{rc})$  can be neglected when designing DP control systems if the ocean currents (drift) are properly compensated for by using integral action. One way to do this is to treat the ocean currents as a slowly varying bias vector  $\mathbf{b}$  expressed in  $\{n\}$ . Hence, the relative velocity vector  $\mathbf{v}_r$  is superfluous. The linear model is usually expressed in *vessel parallel coordinates* (see Section 7.5.3):

$$\dot{\eta}_p = \mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\eta \quad (7.127)$$

such that

$$\dot{\eta}_p = \mathbf{v} \quad (7.128)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\mathbf{b} + \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wind} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{wave} \quad (7.129)$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{b}} = \mathbf{0} \quad (7.130)$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u} \quad (7.131)$$

This model is intended for controller–observer design, where feedback suppresses errors due to the model uncertainty. The control matrix  $\mathbf{B}$  describes the thruster configuration while  $\mathbf{u}$  is the control input vector. Notice that the currents are assumed constant in  $\{n\}$  and therefore transformed to  $\{b\}$  by  $\mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\mathbf{b}$ . The position reference signals  $\mathbf{y} = \boldsymbol{\eta}$  are transformed to vessel parallel coordinates  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_p$  at each time step using (7.127). This removes the kinematic nonlinearity.

## 7.4 Maneuvering Models including Roll (4 DOF)

The maneuvering models presented in Section 7.1 only describe the horizontal motions (*surge*, *sway* and *yaw*). These models are intended for the design and simulation of DP systems, heading autopilots, trajectory-tracking and path-following control systems. Many vessels, however, are equipped with actuators that can reduce the rolling motion. This could be anti-rolling tanks, rudders and fin stabilizers (see Part II). In order to design a control system for roll damping, it is necessary to add the roll equation to the horizontal plane model. Inclusion of roll means that the restoring moment due to buoyancy and gravity must be included. The resulting model is a 4 DOF maneuvering model that includes roll (*surge*, *sway*, *roll* and *yaw*).

The speed equation (7.32) can be decoupled from the sway, roll and yaw modes. The resulting model takes the form

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{N}(u_o)\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{G}\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (7.132)$$

where  $u_o = \text{constant}$ ,  $\mathbf{v} = [v, p, r]^\top$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = [E, \phi, \psi]^\top$  are the states while  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  is the control vector. For a ship with homogeneous mass distribution and  $xz$ -plane symmetry,  $I_{xy} = I_{yz} = 0$  and  $y_g = 0$ .

From the general expressions (3.44) and (6.38) in Sections 3.3 and 6.3.1, respectively, we get (with nonzero  $I_{xz}$ )

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m - Y_v & -mz_g - Y_p & mx_g - Y_r \\ -mz_g - K_v & I_x - K_p & -I_{xz} - K_r \\ mx_g - N_v & -I_{xz} - N_p & I_z - N_r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.133)$$

The expression for  $\mathbf{N}(u_o)$  is obtained by linearization of  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})$  and  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})$  about  $u = u_0$  which gives

$$\mathbf{N}(u_o) = \begin{bmatrix} -Y_v & -Y_p & mu_0 - Y_r \\ -K_v & -K_p & -mz_g u_0 - K_r \\ -N_v & -N_p & mx_g u_0 - N_r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.134)$$

Recall from Section 4.1 that the linear restoring forces and moments for a surface vessel can be written

$$\mathbf{G} = \text{diag}\{0, W\overline{GM}_T, 0\} \quad (7.135)$$

where  $W = mg$  is the weight and  $\overline{GM}_T$  is the transverse metacenter height.

In addition to these equations, the kinematic equations (assuming  $q = \theta = 0$ )

$$\dot{\phi} = p \quad (7.136)$$

$$\dot{\psi} = \cos(\phi)r \approx r \quad (7.137)$$

must be augmented to the system model. The general kinematic expressions are found in Section 2.2.1.

### State-Space Model

The linearized model (7.132) together with (7.136)–(7.137) can be written in state-space form by defining the state vector as  $\mathbf{x} := [v, p, r, \phi, \psi]^\top$ . The elements associated with the matrices  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  are given by

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & a_{14} & 0 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & a_{24} & 0 \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} & a_{34} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}}_A \mathbf{x} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} & \cdots & b_{1r} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} & \cdots & b_{2r} \\ b_{31} & b_{32} & \cdots & b_{3r} \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{bmatrix}}_B \mathbf{u} \quad (7.138)$$

where the elements  $a_{ij}$  are found from

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix} = -\mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{N}(u_o) \quad (7.139)$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} * & a_{14} & * \\ * & a_{24} & * \\ * & a_{34} & * \end{bmatrix} = -\mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{G} \quad (7.140)$$

while the elements  $b_{ij}$  depend on what type of actuators are in use. Finally, the roll and yaw outputs are chosen as

$$\phi = \underbrace{[0, 0, 0, 1, 0]}_{\mathbf{c}_{\text{roll}}^\top} \mathbf{x} \quad (7.141)$$

$$\psi = \underbrace{[0, 0, 0, 0, 1]}_{\mathbf{c}_{\text{yaw}}^\top} \mathbf{x} \quad (7.142)$$

### Decompositions in Roll and Sway–Yaw Subsystems

To simplify the system for further analysis, the state vector is reorganized such that state variables associated with the steering and roll dynamics are separated. Consequently, (7.138) is rewritten as

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\psi} \\ \dot{p} \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{13} & 0 & a_{12} & a_{14} \\ a_{31} & a_{33} & 0 & a_{32} & a_{34} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ a_{21} & a_{23} & 0 & a_{22} & a_{24} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ r \\ \psi \\ p \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} & \cdots & b_{1r} \\ b_{31} & b_{32} & \cdots & b_{3r} \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ b_{21} & b_{22} & \cdots & b_{2r} \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{u} \quad (7.143)$$

Let

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_\psi \\ \dot{x}_\phi \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{A}_{\psi\psi} & \mathbf{A}_{\psi\phi} \\ \mathbf{A}_{\phi\psi} & \mathbf{A}_{\phi\phi} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_\psi \\ x_\phi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{B}_\psi \\ \mathbf{B}_\phi \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{u} \quad (7.144)$$

where  $\mathbf{x}_\psi = [v, r, \psi]^\top$  and  $\mathbf{x}_\phi = [p, \phi]^\top$ .

If the coupling matrices are small, that is  $\mathbf{A}_{\psi\phi} = \mathbf{A}_{\phi\psi} = \mathbf{0}$ , the following subsystems:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{p} \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{22} & a_{24} \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} b_{21} & b_{22} & \cdots & b_{2r} \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{u} \quad (7.145)$$

and

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\psi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{13} & 0 \\ a_{31} & a_{33} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ r \\ \psi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} & \cdots & b_{1r} \\ b_{31} & b_{32} & \cdots & b_{3r} \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{u} \quad (7.146)$$

will describe the ship dynamics. The last expression is recognized as the second-order Nomoto model (7.46) with  $r$  control inputs.

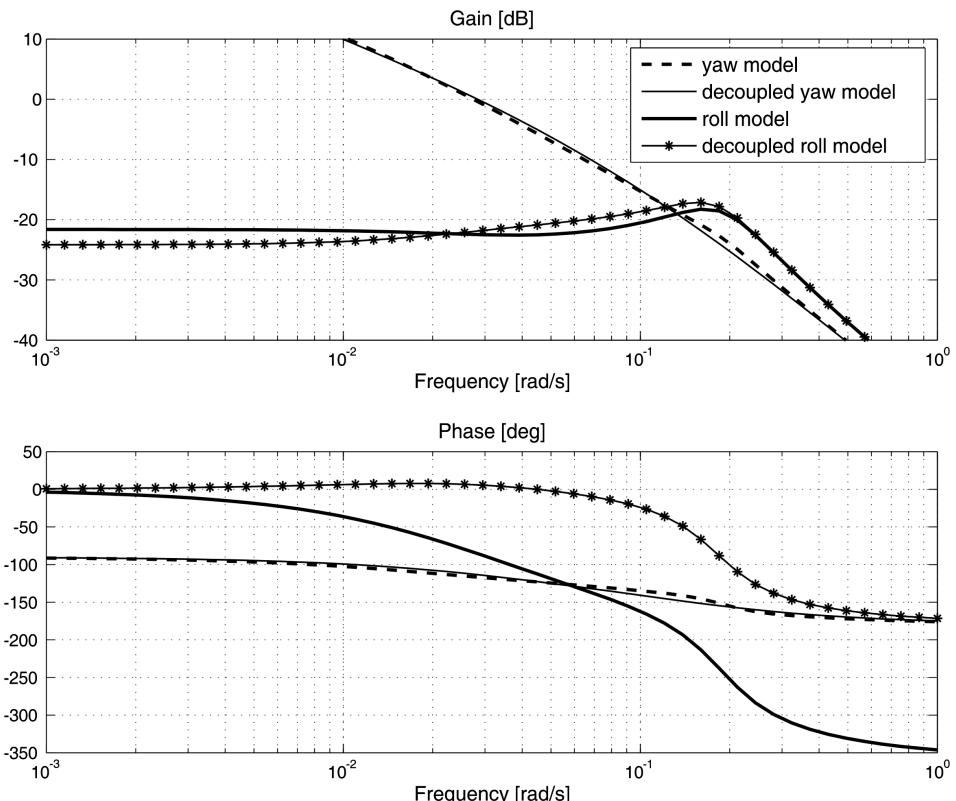
### Transfer Functions for Steering and Rudder-Roll Damping

The linearized model (7.143) is useful for frequency analysis of rudder-roll damping (RRD) systems. For simplicity consider a ship with one rudder  $u = \delta$  and  $\mathbf{b} = [b_{11}, b_{21}, b_{31}, 0, 0]^\top$ . For the state-space model (7.143) the transfer functions  $\phi(s)/\delta(s) = \mathbf{c}_{\text{roll}}^\top (s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1} \mathbf{b}$  and  $\psi(s)/\delta(s) = \mathbf{c}_{\text{yaw}}^\top (s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1} \mathbf{b}$  become

$$\frac{\phi}{\delta}(s) = \frac{b_2 s^2 + b_1 s + b_0}{s^4 + a_3 s^3 + a_2 s^2 + a_1 s + a_0} \approx \underbrace{\frac{K_{\text{roll}} \omega_{\text{roll}}^2 (1 + T_5 s)}{(1 + T_4 s)(s^2 + 2\zeta\omega_{\text{roll}} s + \omega_{\text{roll}}^2)}}_{\text{no coupling between roll and sway--yaw}} \quad (7.147)$$

$$\frac{\psi}{\delta}(s) = \frac{c_3 s^3 + c_2 s^2 + c_1 s + c_0}{s(s^4 + a_3 s^3 + a_2 s^2 + a_1 s + a_0)} \approx \underbrace{\frac{K_{\text{yaw}} (1 + T_3 s)}{s(1 + T_1 s)(1 + T_2 s)}}_{\text{no coupling between roll and sway--yaw}} \quad (7.148)$$

where the decoupled models (7.145) and (7.146) have been applied. In most cases, this approximation is only rough so care should be taken. In Figure 7.7 it is seen that the phase of the roll transfer function



**Figure 7.7** Transfer functions for the roll and sway–yaw subsystems corresponding to the Son and Nomoto container ship.

is inaccurate for the decoupled model. This can be improved by using a model reduction via a balanced state-space realization (see `modred.m` and `ssbal.m` in Matlab).

Also, parametric investigations show that cross-couplings between steering and roll might give robust performance problems of RRD control systems (Blanke and Christensen, 1993). This is also documented in Blanke (1996), who has identified the ship parameters for several loading conditions during sea trials with a series of ships. The results clearly reveal changes in the dynamics between the different ships in the series, indicating that there is a robustness problem due to changes in load conditions and rudder shape. Nonlinear effects also give rise to the same problem. Identification of ship steering-roll models are discussed by Blanke and Tiano (1997). The interested reader is also advised to consult Van der Klugt (1987) for a discussion of decoupled linear models for RRD, while nonlinear models are presented in Section 7.4.1.

#### Example 7.7 (Roll and Sway-Yaw Transfer Functions)

The roll and yaw transfer functions corresponding to the model of Son and Nomoto (1981) are plotted in Figure 7.7 using the MSS toolbox file `ExRRD1.m`. The plots show both the full state-space model (7.138) and the decoupled models (7.145)–(7.146). The model considered is a container ship of length  $L = 175$  m and with a displacement volume of  $21\,222\text{ m}^3$ . The ship is moving at service speed

$u_0 = 7.0$  m/s. The model of Son and Nomoto (1981) is based on a third-order Taylor-series expansion (see Section 7.1.3) of the hydrodynamic forces including higher-order restoring terms replacing (7.135). The nonlinear model is included in the MSS toolbox under the file name container.m while a linearized version of this model is found in Lcontainer.m. The nonlinear model is described more closely in the next section. The numerical values for the transfer functions are

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\phi}{\delta}(s) &= \frac{0.0032(s - 0.036)(s + 0.077)}{(s + 0.026)(s + 0.116)(s^2 + 0.136s + 0.036)} \\ &\approx \frac{0.083(1 + 49.1s)}{(1 + 31.5s)(s^2 + 0.134s + 0.033)}\end{aligned}\quad (7.149)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\psi}{\delta}(s) &= \frac{0.0024(s + 0.0436)(s^2 + 0.162s + 0.035)}{s(s + 0.0261)(s + 0.116)(s^2 + 0.136s + 0.036)} \\ &\approx \frac{0.032(1 + 16.9s)}{s(1 + 24.0s)(1 + 9.2s)}\end{aligned}\quad (7.150)$$

corresponding to

$$\omega_{\text{roll}} = 0.189 \text{ rad/s} \quad (7.151)$$

$$\zeta = 0.36 \quad (7.152)$$

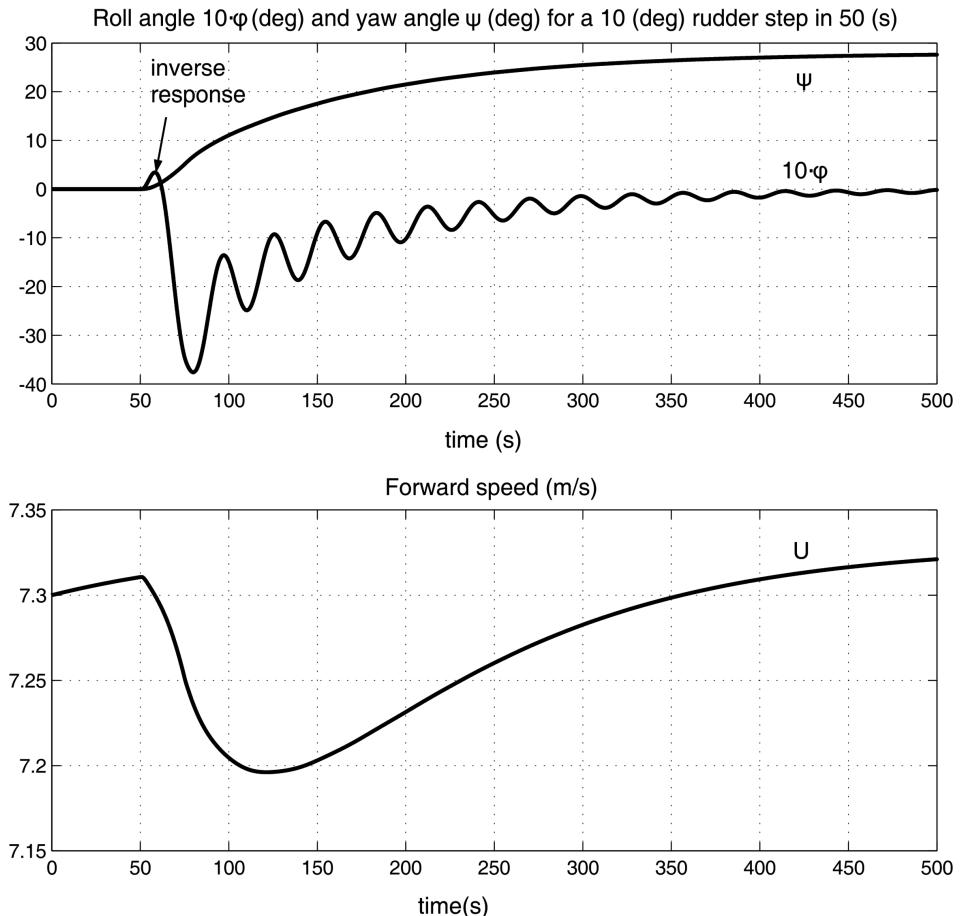
It is seen that the amplitudes of the roll and yaw models are quite close. However, the decoupled model in roll does not describe the phase with sufficient accuracy, so stability problems could be an issue when designing a model-based RRD. The main reason for this is that one pole-zero pair is omitted in the decoupled roll model. Since this is a right-half-plane zero,

$$z = 0.036 \text{ rad/s} \quad (7.153)$$

the pole-zero pair gives an additional phase lag of  $-180$  degrees, as observed in the plot of the full model. This will of course result in serious stability problems when trying to damp the roll motion.

In practice it will be difficult to design an RRD for this system since the controller should reduce the energy at the peak frequency  $\omega_{\text{roll}} = 0.189$  rad/s which is much higher than the right-half-plane zero  $z = 0.036$  rad/s. This is a nonminimum phase property which cannot be changed with feedback (recall that only poles and not zeros can be moved using feedback control). The nonminimum phase characteristic is observed as an inverse response in roll when a step input is applied (see Figure 7.8).

The plots in Figure 7.8 are generated by simulating the nonlinear model of Son and Nomoto (see ExRRD3.m). The nonminimum phase behavior due to the right-half-plane zero is discussed in more detail by Fossen and Laevdal (1994), where both linear and nonlinear analyses of the models of Son and Nomoto are considered. The nonlinear equivalent to a right-half-plane zero is unstable zero dynamics.



**Figure 7.8** Roll angle  $10\dot{\phi}$  and yaw angle  $\psi$  versus time for a 10 degree rudder step in 50 s. Notice the inverse response in roll and speed reduction during turning.

#### 7.4.1 The Nonlinear Model of Son and Nomoto

A nonlinear model including roll for a high-speed container ship has been proposed by Son and Nomoto (1981, 1982):

$$(m + m_x)\ddot{u} - (m + m_y)v\dot{r} = X + \tau_1 \quad (7.154)$$

$$(m + m_y)\ddot{v} + (m + m_x)u\dot{r} + m_y\alpha_y\dot{r} - m_yl_y\dot{p} = Y + \tau_2 \quad (7.155)$$

$$(I_x + J_x)\ddot{p} - m_yl_y\ddot{v} - m_xl_xu\dot{r} = K - W\overline{GM}_T\phi + \tau_4 \quad (7.156)$$

$$(I_z + J_z)\ddot{r} + m_y\alpha_y\dot{v} = N - x_gY + \tau_6 \quad (7.157)$$

where  $m_x = A_{11}(0)$ ,  $m_y = A_{22}(0)$ ,  $J_x = A_{44}(\omega_{roll})$  and  $J_z = A_{66}(0)$  denote the added mass and added moments of inertia. The control inputs are recognized as  $\boldsymbol{\tau} = [\tau_1, \tau_2, \tau_4, \tau_6]^\top$ . The added mass  $x$

coordinates of  $m_x$  and  $m_y$  are denoted by  $\alpha_x$  and  $\alpha_y$ , while  $l_x$  and  $l_y$  are the added mass  $z$  coordinates of  $m_x$  and  $m_y$ , respectively.

The terms on the right-hand side of (7.154)–(7.157) are defined in terms of a third-order Taylor series expansion where small coefficients are neglected. The remaining terms are

$$X = X(u) + (1-t)T + X_{vr}vr + X_{vv}v^2 + X_{rr}r^2 + X_{\phi\phi}\phi^2 + X_\delta \sin \delta + X_{\text{ext}} \quad (7.158)$$

$$Y = Y_vv + Y_{rr}r + Y_{\phi\phi}\phi + Y_p p + Y_{vvv}v^3 + Y_{rrr}r^3 + Y_{vvr}v^2r + Y_{vrr}vr^2 \\ + Y_{vv\phi}v^2\phi + Y_{v\phi\phi}v\phi^2 + Y_{rr\phi}r^2\phi + Y_{r\phi\phi}r\phi^2 + Y_\delta \cos \delta + Y_{\text{ext}} \quad (7.159)$$

$$K = K_vv + K_rr + K_{\phi\phi} + K_p p + K_{vvv}v^3 + K_{rrr}r^3 + K_{vvr}v^2r + K_{vrr}vr^2 \\ + K_{vv\phi}v^2\phi + K_{v\phi\phi}v\phi^2 + K_{rr\phi}r^2\phi + K_{r\phi\phi}r\phi^2 + K_\delta \cos \delta + K_{\text{ext}} \quad (7.160)$$

$$N = N_vv + N_rr + N_{\phi\phi} + N_p p + N_{vvv}v^3 + N_{rrr}r^3 + N_{vvr}v^2r + N_{vrr}vr^2 \\ + N_{vv\phi}v^2\phi + N_{v\phi\phi}v\phi^2 + N_{rr\phi}r^2\phi + N_{r\phi\phi}r\phi^2 + N_\delta \cos \delta + N_{\text{ext}} \quad (7.161)$$

where  $X(u)$  is usually modeled as quadratic drag  $X(u) = X_{|u|u}|u|u$  and the subscript ext denotes external forces and moments due to wind, waves and ocean currents.

### Matlab

The models of Son and Nomoto (1981) are implemented in the MSS toolbox as

```
[xdot,U] = container(x,ui)
```

The linearized model for  $U = U_0$  is accessed as

```
[xdot,U] = Lcontainer(x,ui,U0)
```

where  $x=[u\ v\ r\ x\ y\ psi\ p\ phi\ delta]'$  and  $ui=[delta_c\ n_c]'$ . In the linear case only one input,  $\delta_c$ , is used since the forward speed  $U_0$  is constant. For the nonlinear model, propeller rpm,  $n_c$ , should be positive.

#### 7.4.2 The Nonlinear Model of Blanke and Christensen

An alternative model formulation describing the steering and roll motions of ships has been proposed by Blanke and Christensen (1993). This model is written as

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{G}\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{hyd}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (7.162)$$

where  $\mathbf{v} = [v, p, r]^\top$ ,  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{hyd}} = [Y, K, N]^\top$  and

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m - Y_v & -mz_g - Y_p & mx_g - Y_r \\ -mz_g - K_v & I_x - K_p & 0 \\ mx_g - N_v & 0 & I_z - N_r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.163)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}(v) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & mu \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -mu & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.164)$$

$$\mathbf{G} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -K_\phi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.165)$$

The hydrodynamic forces in  $\tau_{\text{hyd}}$  include both damping and hydrodynamic Coriolis and centripetal terms:

$$Y = Y_{|u|v}|u|v + Y_{ur}ur + Y_{v|v}|v|v + Y_{v|r}v|r| + Y_{|v|r}|v|r \\ + Y_{\phi|uv}|\phi|uv| + Y_{\phi|ur}|\phi|ur| + Y_{\phi|uu}\phi u^2 + Y_{\text{ext}} \quad (7.166)$$

$$K = K_{|u|v}|u|v + K_{ur}ur + K_{v|v}|v|v + K_{v|r}v|r| + K_{|v|r}|v|r \\ + K_{\phi|uv}|\phi|uv| + K_{\phi|ur}|\phi|ur| + K_{\phi|uu}\phi u^2 + K_{|u|p}|u|p \\ + K_{p|p}|p|p| + K_p p + K_{\phi\phi\phi}\phi^3 + K_{\text{ext}} \quad (7.167)$$

$$N = N_{|u|v}|u|v + N_{|u|r}|u|r + N_{r|r}|r|r + N_{v|r}v|r| + N_{|v|r}|v|r \\ + N_{\phi|uv}|\phi|uv| + N_{\phi|ur}|\phi|ur| + N_p p + N_{|p|p}|p|p| + N_{|u|p}|u|p \\ + N_{\phi|u|u}|\phi|u|u| + N_{\text{ext}} \quad (7.168)$$

where the forces and moments associated with the roll motion are assumed to involve the square terms of the surge speed  $u^2$  and  $|u|u$ . The terms  $Y_{\text{ext}}$ ,  $K_{\text{ext}}$  and  $N_{\text{ext}}$  consist of possible contributions from external disturbances while control inputs such as rudders, propellers and bow thrusters are included in  $\tau$ .

### 7.4.3 Nonlinear Model Based on Low-Aspect Ratio Wing Theory

In Ross (2008), the ship is modeled as a low-aspect ratio wing. This approach is well suited to derive a physical *model structure* that can best describe the nonlinear damping forces acting on a marine craft. The parameters of the model must, however, be found by curve fitting the simulated response to time series, for instance by using system identification. In this approach, the lift and drag are derived from two coefficients: namely the lift and drag coefficients, respectively. The resulting expressions are

$$X_{LD} = X_{uu}^L u^2 + X_{uuu}^L u^3 + X_{vv}^L v^2 + X_{rr}^L r^2 + X_{rv}^L rv + X_{uvv}^L uv^2 \\ + X_{rvu}^L rvu + X_{urr}^L ur^2 + \underbrace{X_{vv\phi\phi}^L v^2\phi^2 + X_{vr\phi\phi}^L vr\phi^2 + X_{rr\phi\phi}^L r^2\phi^2}_{\Delta X_{LD}} \quad (7.169)$$

$$Y_{LD} = Y_{uv}^L uv + Y_{ur}^L ur + Y_{uur}^L u^2r + Y_{uvv}^L u^2v + Y_{vvv}^L v^3 + Y_{rrr}^L r^3 \\ + Y_{rvv}^L r^2v + Y_{vvr}^L v^2r + \underbrace{Y_{uv\phi\phi}^L uv\phi^2 + Y_{ur\phi\phi}^L ur\phi^2}_{\Delta Y_{LD}} \quad (7.170)$$

$$K_{LD} = Y_{LD} z_{cp} \\ = K_{uv}^L uv + K_{ur}^L ur + K_{uur}^L u^2r + K_{uvv}^L u^2v + K_{vvv}^L v^3 \\ + K_{rr}^L r^3 + K_{rrv}^L r^2v + K_{vvr}^L v^2r + K_{uv\phi\phi}^L uv\phi^2 + K_{ur\phi\phi}^L ur\phi^2 \quad (7.171)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
N_{LD} &= Y_{LD}x_{cp} \\
&= N_{uv}^L uv + N_{ur}^L ur + N_{uu}^L u^2 r + N_{uvv}^L u^2 v + N_{vvv}^L v^3 \\
&\quad + N_{rrr}^L r^3 + N_{rrv}^L r^2 v + N_{vvv}^L v^2 r + N_{uv\phi\phi}^L uv\phi^2 + N_{ur\phi\phi}^L ur\phi^2
\end{aligned} \tag{7.172}$$

where  $(x_{cp}, z_{cp})$  defines the location of the center of pressure. The roll angle influence on lift and drag is modeled by

$$\Delta X_{LD} = X_{vv\phi\phi}^L v^2 \phi^2 + X_{vr\phi\phi}^L vr\phi^2 + X_{rr\phi\phi}^L r^2 \phi^2 \tag{7.173}$$

$$\Delta Y_{LD} = Y_{uv\phi\phi}^L uv\phi^2 + Y_{ur\phi\phi}^L ur\phi^2 \tag{7.174}$$

In addition to this, viscous roll damping is modeled by a third-order dissipative odd function:

$$K = -K_p p - K_{ppp} p^3 \tag{7.175}$$

The lift and drag forces are forces that arise from circulatory effects. However, since the ship hull is being treated as a low-aspect ratio wing, it is necessary to include an additional nonlinear lift component, with an associated induced drag term. The additional nonlinear lift forces are recognized as the cross-flow drag terms:

$$Y = Y_{|v|v}|v|v + Y_{|v|r}|v|r + Y_{v|r}|v|r + Y_{|r|r}|r|r \tag{7.176}$$

$$K = K_{|v|v}|v|v + K_{|v|r}|v|r + K_{v|r}|v|r + K_{|r|r}|r|r \tag{7.177}$$

$$N = N_{|v|v}|v|v + N_{|v|r}|v|r + N_{v|r}|v|r + N_{|r|r}|r|r \tag{7.178}$$

which were derived in Section 6.4.3.

The resulting damping matrix is

$\mathbf{D}(v) =$

$$\begin{bmatrix}
-X_{uu}^L u - X_{uuu}^L u^2 & -X_{vv}^L v - X_{rv}^L r & 0 & -X_{rr}^L r - X_{urr}^L ur - X_{rr\phi\phi}^L r\phi^2 \\
-X_{rvu}^L rv & -X_{uvv}^L uv - X_{vv\phi\phi}^L v\phi^2 & 0 & -Y_{ur}^L u - Y_{uuu}^L u^2 - Y_{rrr}^L r^2 \\
-Y_{uv\phi\phi}^L v\phi^2 - Y_{ur\phi\phi}^L r\phi^2 & -Y_{rrv}^L r^2 - Y_{|v|v}|v| - Y_{v|r}|r| & 0 & -Y_{vvr}^L v^2 - Y_{|v|r}|v| - Y_{|r|r}|r| \\
-K_{uv\phi\phi}^L v\phi^2 - K_{ur\phi\phi}^L r\phi^2 & -K_{uvu}^L u - K_{uuu}^L u^2 - K_{vvv}^L v^2 & -K_p - K_{ppp} p^2 & -K_{ur}^L u - K_{uuu}^L u^2 - K_{rrr}^L r^2 \\
-N_{uv\phi\phi}^L v\phi^2 - N_{ur\phi\phi}^L r\phi^2 & -K_{rrv}^L r^2 - K_{|v|v}|v| - K_{v|r}|r| & 0 & -K_{vvr}^L v^2 - K_{|v|r}|v| - K_{|r|r}|r| \\
-N_{rvu}^L rv & -N_{uvv}^L uv - N_{vvv}^L v^2 & 0 & -N_{ur}^L u - N_{uuu}^L u^2 - N_{rrr}^L r^2 \\
-N_{rrv}^L r^2 - N_{|v|v}|v| - N_{v|r}|r| & -N_{rvu}^L rv & 0 & -N_{vvr}^L v^2 - N_{|v|r}|v| - N_{|r|r}|r|
\end{bmatrix} \tag{7.179}$$

The 4 DOF equations of motion are

$$M\ddot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(v)\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_A(v)\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{D}(v)\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{G}\eta = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \tag{7.180}$$

where

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m - X_{\dot{u}} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m - Y_{\dot{v}} & -mz_g - Y_{\dot{p}} & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} \\ 0 & -mz_g - K_{\dot{v}} & I_x - K_{\dot{p}} & 0 \\ 0 & mx_g - N_{\dot{v}} & 0 & I_z - N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.181)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & mz_g r & -m(x_g r + v) \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & mu \\ -mz_g r & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ m(x_g r + v) & -mu & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.182)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & Y_{\dot{v}} v \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -X_{\dot{u}} u \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & Y_{\dot{v}} v \\ -Y_{\dot{v}} v & X_{\dot{u}} u & -Y_{\dot{v}} v & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.183)$$

$$\mathbf{G} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -K_{\phi} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.184)$$

## 7.5 Equations of Motion (6 DOF)

Ship models are usually reduced-order models for control of the horizontal plane motions (*surge*, *sway* and *yaw*) in combination with *roll* if roll damping is an issue. Semi-submersible control systems are also designed for the stabilization of the horizontal plane motions, but for these types of vessels it is also of interest to simulate the *heave*, *roll* and *pitch* motions during critical operations such as drilling. The rolling and pitching of a semi-submersible can also be stabilized by using the thrusters located on the pontoons since these have large moment arms that produce restoring moments. The 3 and 4 DOF models in the previous sections are intended for model-based control and observer design (see Section 1.1).

In this section we will discuss 6 DOF models, which are useful for prediction, simulation and control of marine craft performing coupled motions. A 6 DOF model is usually implemented in a computer to describe all dynamics effects as accurately as possible. This is referred to as the *simulation model*; see Figure 1.4 in Section 1.1. The simulation model should be able to reconstruct the time responses of the physical system. Model-based controllers and observers, however, can be designed using reduced-order or simplified models. For marine craft with actuation in all DOFs, such as underwater vehicles, a model-based controller and observer design requires a 6 DOF model, while ship and semi-submersible control systems can be designed using a 3 or 4 DOF model.

### 7.5.1 Nonlinear 6 DOF Vector Representations in BODY and NED

When designing feedback control systems it can be advantageous to formulate the equations of motion in both the  $\{b\}$  and  $\{n\}$  frames in order to exploit physical properties of the model. This section includes nonlinear transformations that can be used to represent the equations of motion in different reference frames.

### Equations of Motion Expressed in BODY

Consider the nonlinear equations of motion expressed in  $\{b\}$  with  $v_c = \mathbf{0}$ :

$$\dot{\eta} = J_k(\eta)v \quad (7.185)$$

$$M\ddot{v} + C(v)v + D(v)v + g(\eta) + g_o = \tau + \tau_{wind} + \tau_{wave} \quad (7.186)$$

where

$$M = M_{RB} + M_A \quad (7.187)$$

$$C(v) = C_{RB}(v) + C_A(v) \quad (7.188)$$

$$D(v) = D + D_n(v) \quad (7.189)$$

The expressions for  $\eta$  and  $J_k(\eta)$  depend on the kinematic representation. Three different choices for  $J_k(\eta)$  will be presented where the subscript  $k \in \{\Theta, q, r\}$  denotes the Euler angle, quaternion and rotation matrix representation, respectively.

### Equations of Motion Expressed in NED

The equations of motion (7.186) when transformed to  $\{n\}$  take the following form:

$$M^*(\eta)\ddot{\eta} + C^*(v, \eta)\dot{\eta} + D^*(v, \eta)\dot{\eta} + g^*(\eta) + g_o^*(\eta) = \tau^* + \tau_{wind}^* + \tau_{wave}^* \quad (7.190)$$

where the expressions for  $M^*$ ,  $C^*(v, \eta)$ ,  $D^*(v, \eta)$ ,  $g^*(\eta)$ ,  $g_o^*(\eta)$ ,  $\tau^*$ ,  $\tau_{wind}^*$ ,  $\tau_{wave}^*$  and the associated kinematic transformations depend on how attitude is represented. Three different choices are outlined below:

**1. Positions and Euler Angles ( $k = \Theta$ ):** The Euler angle representation (2.40) is based on the three parameters  $\phi$ ,  $\theta$  and  $\psi$ . This gives

$$J_\Theta(\eta) := \begin{bmatrix} R_b^n(\Theta_{nb}) & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & T_\Theta(\Theta_{nb}) \end{bmatrix}, \quad J_\Theta^{-1}(\eta) = \begin{bmatrix} R_b^n(\Theta_{nb})^\top & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & T_\Theta^{-1}(\Theta_{nb}) \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.191)$$

where  $\eta := [N, E, D, \phi, \theta, \psi]^\top$ . The representation singularity at  $\theta \neq \pm \pi/2$  in the expression for  $T_\Theta$  implies that the inverse matrix  $J_\Theta^{-1}(\eta)$  does not exist at this value. The transformation is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\eta} &= J_\Theta(\eta)v & \iff v &= J_\Theta^{-1}(\eta)\dot{\eta} \\ \ddot{\eta} &= J_\Theta(\eta)\ddot{v} + \dot{J}_\Theta(\eta)v & \iff \dot{v} &= J_\Theta^{-1}(\eta)[\dot{\eta} - \dot{J}_\Theta(\eta)J_\Theta^{-1}(\eta)\dot{\eta}] \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{M}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta}) &= \mathbf{J}_{\Theta}^{-\top}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \mathbf{M} \mathbf{J}_{\Theta}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \\ \mathbf{C}^*(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) &= \mathbf{J}_{\Theta}^{-\top}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) [\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) - \mathbf{M} \mathbf{J}_{\Theta}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \dot{\mathbf{J}}_{\Theta}(\boldsymbol{\eta})] \mathbf{J}_{\Theta}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \\ \mathbf{D}^*(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) &= \mathbf{J}_{\Theta}^{-\top}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{J}_{\Theta}^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \\ \mathbf{g}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_o^*(\boldsymbol{\eta}) &= \mathbf{J}_{\Theta}^{-\top}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) [\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_o] \\ \boldsymbol{\tau}^* + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}}^* + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}^* &= \mathbf{J}_{\Theta}^{-\top}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) (\boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}) \end{aligned} \quad (7.192)$$

**2. Positions and Quaternions ( $k = q$ ):** The quaternion representation (2.69) avoids the singular points  $\theta \neq \pm \pi/2$  by using four parameters (unit quaternions)  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ ,  $\varepsilon_1$ ,  $\varepsilon_2$  and  $\varepsilon_3$  to represent attitude:

$$\mathbf{J}_q(\boldsymbol{\eta}) := \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{R}_b^n(\mathbf{q}) & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{4 \times 3} & \mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q}) \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{R}_b^n(\mathbf{q})^\top & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 4} \\ \mathbf{0}_{4 \times 3} & 4\mathbf{T}_q^\top(\mathbf{q}) \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.193)$$

Notice that pseudo-inverse  $\mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  is computed using the left *Moore–Penrose pseudo-inverse* and by exploiting the property  $\mathbf{T}_q^\top(\mathbf{q})\mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q}) = 1/4\mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3}$ . Moreover, the left inverse of  $\mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q})$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{T}_q^\dagger(\mathbf{q}) &= (\mathbf{T}_q^\top(\mathbf{q})\mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q}))^{-1} \mathbf{T}_q^\top(\mathbf{q}) \\ &= 4\mathbf{T}_q^\top(\mathbf{q}) \end{aligned} \quad (7.194)$$

For this case,  $\boldsymbol{\eta} := [N, E, D, \eta, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_1]^\top$  and

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} &= \mathbf{J}_q(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v} &\iff \mathbf{v} &= \mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta})\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} \\ \ddot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} &= \mathbf{J}_q(\boldsymbol{\eta})\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \dot{\mathbf{J}}_q(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v} &\iff \dot{\mathbf{v}} &= \mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta})[\ddot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} - \dot{\mathbf{J}}_q(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta})\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}] \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{M}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta}) &= \mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta})^\top \mathbf{M} \mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \\ \mathbf{C}^*(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) &= \mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta})^\top [\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) - \mathbf{M} \mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \dot{\mathbf{J}}_q(\boldsymbol{\eta})] \mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \\ \mathbf{D}^*(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) &= \mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta})^\top \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \\ \mathbf{g}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_o^*(\boldsymbol{\eta}) &= \mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta})^\top [\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_o] \\ \boldsymbol{\tau}^* + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}}^* + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}^* &= \mathbf{J}_q^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\eta})^\top (\boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}) \end{aligned} \quad (7.195)$$

**3. Positions and Angular Rates ( $k = r$ ):** A singularity free three-parameter transformation based on the rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{nb})$  and its inverse  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{nb})^{-1} = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{nb})^\top$  is

$$\mathbf{J}_r(\boldsymbol{\eta}) := \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{R}_b^n(\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{nb}) & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{R}_b^n(\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{nb}) \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{J}_r^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \mathbf{J}_r^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \quad (7.196)$$

where the last three states are angular rates expressed in  $\{n\}$ . This gives

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} &= \mathbf{J}_r(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v} &\iff \mathbf{v} &= \mathbf{J}_r^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta})\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} \\ \ddot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} &= \mathbf{J}_r(\boldsymbol{\eta})\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \dot{\mathbf{J}}_r(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v} &\iff \dot{\mathbf{v}} &= \mathbf{J}_r^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta}) [\ddot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} - \dot{\mathbf{J}}_r(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{J}_r^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta})\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}] \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{M}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta}) &= \mathbf{J}_r(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \mathbf{M} \mathbf{J}_r^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \\
 \mathbf{C}^*(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) &= \mathbf{J}_r(\boldsymbol{\eta}) [\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) - \mathbf{M} \mathbf{J}_r(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \mathbf{J}_r^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta})] \mathbf{J}_r^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \\
 \mathbf{D}^*(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) &= \mathbf{J}_r(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{J}_r^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \\
 \mathbf{g}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_o^*(\boldsymbol{\eta}) &= \mathbf{J}_r(\boldsymbol{\eta}) [\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_o] \\
 \boldsymbol{\tau}^* + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}}^* + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}^* &= \mathbf{J}_r(\boldsymbol{\eta}) (\boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}) \tag{7.197}
 \end{aligned}$$

The following properties hold for the body-fixed vector representation:

**Property 7.1 (System Inertia Matrix  $\mathbf{M}$ )**

For a rigid body the system inertia matrix is positive definite and constant, that is

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top > 0, \quad \dot{\mathbf{M}} = \mathbf{0}$$

where  $\mathbf{M}$  is defined as

$$\mathbf{M} := \begin{bmatrix} m - X_{\dot{u}} & -X_{\dot{v}} & -X_{\dot{w}} & -X_{\dot{p}} & mz_g - X_{\dot{q}} & -my_g - X_{\dot{r}} \\ -X_{\dot{v}} & m - Y_{\dot{v}} & -Y_{\dot{w}} & -mz_g - Y_{\dot{p}} & -Y_{\dot{q}} & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} \\ -X_{\dot{w}} & -Y_{\dot{w}} & m - Z_{\dot{w}} & my_g - Z_{\dot{p}} & -mx_g - Z_{\dot{q}} & -Z_{\dot{r}} \\ -X_{\dot{p}} & -mz_g - Y_{\dot{p}} & my_g - Z_{\dot{p}} & I_x - K_{\dot{p}} & -I_{xy} - K_{\dot{q}} & -I_{zx} - K_{\dot{r}} \\ mz_g - X_{\dot{q}} & -Y_{\dot{q}} & -mx_g - Z_{\dot{q}} & -I_{xy} - K_{\dot{q}} & I_y - M_{\dot{q}} & -I_{yz} - M_{\dot{r}} \\ -my_g - X_{\dot{r}} & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} & -Z_{\dot{r}} & -I_{zx} - K_{\dot{r}} & -I_{yz} - M_{\dot{r}} & I_z - N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix}$$

**Property 7.2 (Coriolis and Centripetal Matrix  $\mathbf{C}$ )**

For a rigid body moving through an ideal fluid the Coriolis and centripetal matrix  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})$  can always be parameterized such that it is skew-symmetric, that is

$$\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) = -\mathbf{C}^\top(\mathbf{v}), \quad \forall \mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^6$$

**Proof.**  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})$  is skew-symmetric under the assumptions that the matrices  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})$  and  $\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v})$  are skew-symmetric.

For the vector representation in  $\{n\}$  it is straightforward to show that:

1.  $\mathbf{M}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \mathbf{M}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta})^\top > 0$
2.  $\mathbf{s}^\top [\dot{\mathbf{M}}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta}) - 2\mathbf{C}^*(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta})] \mathbf{s} = 0$
3.  $\mathbf{D}^*(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) > 0$

since  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top > 0$  and  $\dot{\mathbf{M}} = \mathbf{0}$ . It should be noted that  $\mathbf{C}^*(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta})$  will not be skew-symmetrical although  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})$  is skew-symmetrical.

#### **Example 7.8 (Lyapunov Analysis exploiting MIMO Model Properties)**

Consider the following model:

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{J}_k(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v} \quad (7.198)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (7.199)$$

where  $\mathbf{J}_k(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  can be represented by  $\mathbf{J}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})$ ,  $\mathbf{J}_q(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  or  $\mathbf{J}_r(\boldsymbol{\eta})$ . The obvious Lyapunov function candidate is based on kinetic and potential energy:

$$V = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{M}\mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{K}_p\boldsymbol{\eta} \quad (7.200)$$

where  $\mathbf{K}_p = \mathbf{K}_p^\top > 0$  is a constant gain matrix. Since  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top > 0$  and  $\dot{\mathbf{M}} = \mathbf{0}$ , it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V} &= \mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{K}_p\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} \\ &= \mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \boldsymbol{\eta}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{J}_k(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v} \\ &= \mathbf{v}^\top [\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{J}_k^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{K}_p\boldsymbol{\eta}] \end{aligned} \quad (7.201)$$

Substituting (7.199) into the expression for  $\dot{V}$  gives

$$\dot{V} = \mathbf{v}^\top [\boldsymbol{\tau} - \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{J}_k^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{K}_p\boldsymbol{\eta}] \quad (7.202)$$

Since  $\mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} \equiv \mathbf{0}$  and  $\mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} > 0$ , we can choose the control law of PD type according to

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) - \mathbf{K}_d\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{J}_k^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{K}_p\boldsymbol{\eta} \quad (7.203)$$

with  $\mathbf{K}_d > 0$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V} &= -\mathbf{v}^\top [\mathbf{K}_d + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})]\mathbf{v} \\ &\leq 0 \end{aligned} \quad (7.204)$$

Consequently, GAS follows from Krasowskii-LaSalle's theorem if  $\mathbf{J}_k(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  is nonsingular (see Appendix A.1).

### 7.5.2 Symmetry Considerations of the System Inertia Matrix

We have seen that the 6 DOF nonlinear equations of motion, in their most general representation, require that a large number of hydrodynamic derivatives are known. From a practical point of view this is an unsatisfactory situation. However, the number of unknown parameters can be drastically reduced by using body symmetry conditions.

In general  $\mathbf{M}_A$  and  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}$  will be a full matrices in CO. Let

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{M}_A, \quad \mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top > 0$$

From the definitions of  $\mathbf{M}_A$  and  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}$  it is straightforward to verify the following cases (notice that  $m_{ij} = m_{ji}$ ):

(i)  $xy$  plane of symmetry (bottom/top symmetry):

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & m_{12} & 0 & 0 & 0 & m_{16} \\ m_{21} & m_{22} & 0 & 0 & 0 & m_{26} \\ 0 & 0 & m_{33} & m_{34} & m_{35} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & m_{43} & m_{44} & m_{45} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & m_{53} & m_{54} & m_{55} & 0 \\ m_{61} & m_{62} & 0 & 0 & 0 & m_{66} \end{bmatrix}$$

(ii)  $xz$  plane of symmetry (port/starboard symmetry):

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & 0 & m_{13} & 0 & m_{15} & 0 \\ 0 & m_{22} & 0 & m_{24} & 0 & m_{26} \\ m_{31} & 0 & m_{33} & 0 & m_{35} & 0 \\ 0 & m_{42} & 0 & m_{44} & 0 & m_{46} \\ m_{51} & 0 & m_{53} & 0 & m_{55} & 0 \\ 0 & m_{62} & 0 & m_{64} & 0 & m_{66} \end{bmatrix}$$

(iii)  $yz$  plane of symmetry (fore/aft symmetry):

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & 0 & 0 & 0 & m_{15} & m_{16} \\ 0 & m_{22} & m_{23} & m_{24} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m_{32} & m_{33} & m_{34} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m_{42} & m_{43} & m_{44} & 0 & 0 \\ m_{51} & 0 & 0 & 0 & m_{55} & m_{56} \\ m_{61} & 0 & 0 & 0 & m_{65} & m_{66} \end{bmatrix}$$

(iv)  $xz$  and  $yz$  planes of symmetry (port/starboard and fore/aft symmetries):

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & 0 & 0 & 0 & m_{15} & 0 \\ 0 & m_{22} & 0 & m_{24} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & m_{33} & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m_{42} & 0 & m_{44} & 0 & 0 \\ m_{51} & 0 & 0 & 0 & m_{55} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & m_{66} \end{bmatrix}$$

More generally, the resulting inertia matrix for a body with  $ij$  and  $jk$  planes of symmetry is formed by the intersection  $M_{ij \cap jk} = M_{ij} \cap M_{jk}$ .

(v)  $xz$ ,  $yz$  and  $xy$  planes of symmetry (port/starboard, fore/aft and bottom/top symmetries):

$$\mathbf{M} = \text{diag}\{m_{11}, m_{22}, m_{33}, m_{44}, m_{55}, m_{66}\}$$

### 7.5.3 Linearized Equations of Motion (Vessel Parallel Coordinates)

The following assumption will be applied when deriving the linearized equations of motion:

**Assumption 7.1 (Small Roll and Pitch Angles)**

*The roll and pitch angles*

$$\phi, \theta \text{ are small} \quad (7.205)$$

*These are good assumptions for marine craft where the pitch and roll motions are limited, that is highly metacentric stable craft.*

#### Vessel Parallel Coordinate System

When deriving the linearized equations of motion it is convenient to introduce a vessel parallel coordinate system obtained by rotating the body axes an angle  $\psi$  about the  $z$  axis at each time step. Assumption 7.1 implies that

$$\dot{\eta} = J_\Theta(\eta)v \stackrel{\phi=\theta=0}{\approx} P(\psi)v \quad (7.206)$$

where

$$P(\psi) = \begin{bmatrix} R(\psi) & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & I_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.207)$$

and  $R(\psi) = R_{z,\psi}$  is the rotation matrix in yaw.

**Definition 7.2 (Vessel Parallel Coordinate System)**

*The vessel parallel (VP) coordinate system is defined as*

$$\eta_p := P^\top(\psi)\eta \quad (7.208)$$

where  $\eta_p$  is the NED position and attitude vector expressed in  $\{b\}$  and  $P(\psi)$  is given by (7.207). Notice that  $P^\top(\psi)P(\psi) = I_{6 \times 6}$ .

#### Low-Speed Applications (Stationkeeping)

It is convenient to express the kinematic equations of motion in VP coordinates when using linear theory. From Definition 7.2 it is seen that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\eta}_p &= \dot{P}^\top(\psi)\eta + P^\top(\psi)\dot{\eta} \\ &= \dot{P}^\top(\psi)P(\psi)\eta_p + P^\top(\psi)P(\psi)v \\ &= rS\eta_p + v \end{aligned} \quad (7.209)$$

where  $r = \dot{\psi}$  and

$$S = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.210)$$

For low-speed applications  $r \approx 0$ . Hence, (7.209) reduces to six pure integrators:

$$\dot{\eta}_p \approx v \quad (7.211)$$

This model is useful since it is linear in  $v$ . In fact, this is the main idea for using VP coordinates in ship and rig control designs.

The gravitational and buoyancy forces can also be expressed in terms of VP coordinates. For small angles  $\phi$  and  $\theta$  it is seen that (see Section 4.1)

$$g(\eta) \stackrel{\phi=\theta=0}{\approx} P^\top(\psi) G \eta = \underbrace{P^\top(\psi) G P(\psi)}_G \eta_p = G \eta_p \quad (7.212)$$

Notice that this formula confirms that the restoring forces of a leveled floating vessel ( $\phi = \theta = 0$ ) are independent of the yaw angle  $\psi$ . This is illustrated by the following two examples:

**Neutrally Buoyant Submersible:** For a neutrally buoyant submersible ( $W = B$ ) with  $x_g = x_b$  and  $y_g = y_b$ , Assumption 7.1 implies that (see (4.10))

$$G = \text{diag}\{0, 0, 0, 0, (z_g - z_b)W, (z_g - z_b)W, 0\} \quad (7.213)$$

which is independent of the yaw angle  $\psi$ . Hence, (7.213) satisfies (7.212).

**Surface Vessel:** For a surface vessel,  $G$  is defined by (4.26). Thanks to the special structure of

$$G = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{2 \times 2} & \mathbf{0}_{2 \times 3} & 0 \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 2} & G^{\{3,4,5\}} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad G^{\{3,4,5\}} = \begin{bmatrix} -Z_z & 0 & -Z_\theta \\ 0 & -K_\phi & 0 \\ -M_z & 0 & -M_\theta \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.214)$$

it is again seen that  $P^\top(\psi) G P(\psi) \equiv G$ .

Assumption 7.1 for low-speed applications  $v \approx \mathbf{0}$  implies that the nonlinear Coriolis, centripetal, damping, restoring and buoyancy forces and moments can be linearized about  $v = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\phi = \theta = 0$ .

Since  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$  it makes sense to approximate

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v}}_0 + \underbrace{[\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{v})]\mathbf{v}}_{D\mathbf{v}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_o}_{G\boldsymbol{\eta}_p} = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \underbrace{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}}_{\mathbf{w}} \quad (7.215)$$

which for  $\mathbf{g}_o = \mathbf{0}$  gives

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_p = \mathbf{v} \quad (7.216)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v} + G\boldsymbol{\eta}_p = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \mathbf{w} \quad (7.217)$$

This is a linear time-invariant (LTI) state-space model

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{Ax} + \mathbf{Bu} + \mathbf{Ew} \quad (7.218)$$

where  $\mathbf{x} = [\boldsymbol{\eta}_p^\top, \mathbf{v}^\top]^\top$ ,  $\mathbf{u} = \boldsymbol{\tau}$  and

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \\ -\mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{G} & -\mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{D} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{B} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{M}^{-1} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{E} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{M}^{-1} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.219)$$

The model (7.216)–(7.217) is the foundation for DP and PM control systems design (see Figure 7.9). A linear optimal controller based on (7.216)–(7.217) is presented in Section 13.1.6 while optimal state estimation is discussed in Section 11.3.6.

Notice that the NED positions are computed from  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_p$  by using:

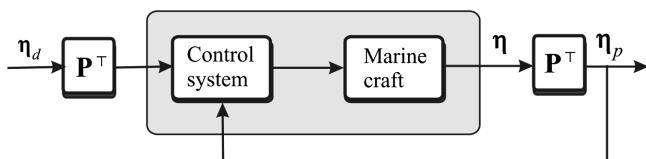
$$\boldsymbol{\eta} = \mathbf{P}(\psi)\boldsymbol{\eta}_p \quad (7.220)$$

Hence, the control system can be based on feedback from the states  $(\boldsymbol{\eta}_p, \mathbf{v})$  while  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  is presented to the human operator using (7.220).

### Marine Craft in Transit (Cruise Condition)

For marine craft in transit the cruise speed is assumed to satisfy

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}_o \quad (7.221)$$



**Figure 7.9** Transformation of desired position  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_d$  and measured position  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  in a feedback control system using vessel parallel coordinates.

This suggests that

$$N(u_o) = \frac{\partial}{\partial v} \{C(v)v + D(v)v\}|_{v=v_o} \quad (7.222)$$

where  $v_o = [u_o, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0]^\top$ . Defining  $\Delta v := v - v_o$  yields

$$\dot{\eta}_p = \Delta v + v_o \quad (7.223)$$

$$M\Delta \dot{v} + N(u_o)\Delta v + G\eta_p = \tau + w \quad (7.224)$$

This corresponds to a linear parameter-varying (LPV) model

$$\dot{x} = A(u_o)x + Bu + Ew + Fv_o \quad (7.225)$$

where  $x = [\eta_p^\top, \Delta v^\top]^\top$ ,  $u = \tau$  and

$$A(u_o) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} & I \\ -M^{-1}G & -M^{-1}N(u_o) \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ M^{-1} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.226)$$

$$E = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ M^{-1} \end{bmatrix}, \quad F = \begin{bmatrix} I \\ \mathbf{0} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.227)$$

The matrix  $A(u_o)$  depends on the forward speed  $u_o$ . This suggests that the control law for transit (maneuvering) should be gain scheduled with respect to the forward speed  $u_o$ . Notice that stationkeeping resulted in an LTI model while maneuvering implies that an LPV model must be used.

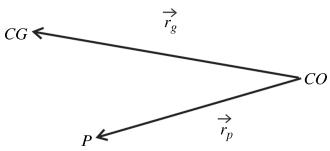
### 7.5.4 Transforming the Equations of Motion to a Different Point

When deriving the nonlinear equations of motion it is convenient to transform inertia, damping, gravitational and buoyancy forces between different points in  $\{b\}$  to exploit structural properties of the model. For instance, the rigid-body translational and rotational parts of the system inertia matrix is decoupled if the coordinate system is located in the CG while it is common to express hydrodynamic added mass and damping in CF or a common reference point CO (see Section 2.1). This means that it is common to solve the equations of motion in three points: CG, CF and CO, all in  $\{b\}$ . The main tool for this is the system transformation matrix, which transforms the generalized velocities, accelerations and forces between two points in the same reference frame.

#### System Transformation Matrix

The system transformation matrix is derived from (3.14) for an arbitrarily point P according to

$$\begin{aligned} v_{p/n}^b &= v_{b/n}^b + \omega_{b/n}^b \times r_{p/n}^b \\ &= v_{b/n}^b - S(r_p^b) \omega_{b/n}^b \\ &= v_{b/n}^b + S^\top(r_p^b) \omega_{b/n}^b \end{aligned} \quad (7.228)$$



**Figure 7.10** Definitions of vectors and coordinate systems.

where  $\mathbf{r}_p^b = [x_p, y_p, z_p]^\top$  is the vector from CO to P expressed in  $\{b\}$  (see Figure 7.10). For notational simplicity, we will define  $\mathbf{r}_p^b := \mathbf{r}_{p/b}^b$  and  $\mathbf{r}_g^b := \mathbf{r}_{cg/b}^b$ .

### Definition 7.3 (System Transformation Matrix)

The system transformation matrix

$$\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{S}^\top(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{H}^{-1}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.229)$$

transforms the linear and angular velocity vectors between the two points CO and P in the  $\{b\}$  frame:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_{p/n}^b \\ \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_{b/n}^b \\ \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.230)$$

◊

$$\mathbf{v}_p = \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{v} \quad (7.231)$$

Similarly, the generalized force vector  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  can be transformed from CO to an arbitrary point P by

$$\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{f}_b^b \\ \mathbf{m}_b^b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{f}_p^b \\ \mathbf{r}_p^b \times \mathbf{f}_p^b + \mathbf{m}_p^b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) & \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{f}_p^b \\ \mathbf{m}_p^b \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.232)$$

◊

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \boldsymbol{\tau}_p \quad (7.233)$$

### Matlab

The system transformation matrix is implemented in the MSS toolbox as

```
function H = Hmtrx(r)
% H = HMTRX(r) % 6x6 system transformation matrix

S = Smtrx(r);
H = [eye(3)      S'
      zeros(3,3) eye(3) ];
```

Definition 7.3 implies that the nonlinear equations of motion can be represented at an arbitrary defined point P by using the transformation matrix  $\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_p^b)$ . Consider the nonlinear equations of motion expressed in  $\{b\}$  with coordinate origin CO:

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (7.234)$$

This expression can be transformed to a point P in  $\{b\}$  by

$$\underbrace{\mathbf{H}^{-\top}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{M} \mathbf{H}^{-1}(\mathbf{r}_p^b)}_{\mathbf{M}_p} \dot{\mathbf{v}}_p + \underbrace{\mathbf{H}^{-\top}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{H}^{-1}(\mathbf{r}_p^b)}_{\mathbf{C}_p(\mathbf{v})} \mathbf{v}_p + \underbrace{\mathbf{H}^{-\top}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{H}^{-1}(\mathbf{r}_p^b)}_{\mathbf{D}_p(\mathbf{v})} \mathbf{v}_p + \underbrace{\mathbf{H}^{-\top}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta})}_{\mathbf{g}_p(\boldsymbol{\eta})} = \underbrace{\mathbf{H}^{-\top}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \boldsymbol{\tau}}_{\boldsymbol{\tau}_p} \quad (7.235)$$

where

$$\mathbf{M}_p = \mathbf{H}^{-\top}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{M} \mathbf{H}^{-1}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \quad (7.236)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_p(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{H}^{-\top}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{H}^{-1}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \quad (7.237)$$

$$\mathbf{D}_p(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{H}^{-\top}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{H}^{-1}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \quad (7.238)$$

$$\mathbf{g}_p(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \mathbf{H}^{-\top}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \quad (7.239)$$

From this it follows that

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{M}_p \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \quad (7.240)$$

$$\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{C}_p(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \quad (7.241)$$

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{D}_p(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \quad (7.242)$$

$$\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_p^b) \mathbf{g}_p(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \quad (7.243)$$

These expressions can be used to specify the inertia, damping and restoring forces in different reference frames in order to exploit different physical properties.

### Transformation of the System Inertia Matrix

It is convenient to specify the rigid-body system inertia matrix (3.44) with respect to the CG such that

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}^{cg} = \begin{bmatrix} m\mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{I}_g \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} m & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & m & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & I_x^{cg} & -I_{xy}^{cg} & -I_{zx}^{cg} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -I_{xy}^{cg} & I_y^{cg} & -I_{yz}^{cg} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -I_{zx}^{cg} & -I_{yz}^{cg} & I_z^{cg} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.244)$$

The expression for  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}^{cg}$  is uniquely defined by seven parameters:  $\{m, I_x^{cg}, I_y^{cg}, I_z^{cg}, -I_{xy}^{cg}, -I_{zx}^{cg}, -I_{yz}^{cg}\}$ . It can be transformed to the coordinate origin CO in  $\{b\}$  by specifying the vector  $\mathbf{r}_p^b = \mathbf{r}_g^b = [x_g, y_g, z_g]^\top$  such that the points P and CG coincide. Accordingly, (7.240) implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{M}_{RB} &= \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \mathbf{M}_{RB}^{cg} \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) = \begin{bmatrix} m\mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} & -m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \\ m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) & \underbrace{\mathbf{I}_g - m\mathbf{S}^2(\mathbf{r}_g^b)}_{\mathbf{I}_b} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} m & 0 & 0 & 0 & mz_g & -my_g \\ 0 & m & 0 & -mz_g & 0 & mx_g \\ 0 & 0 & m & my_g & -mx_g & 0 \\ 0 & -mz_g & my_g & I_x & -I_{xy} & -I_{zx} \\ mz_g & 0 & -mx_g & -I_{xy} & I_y & -I_{yz} \\ -my_g & mx_g & 0 & -I_{zx} & -I_{yz} & I_z \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.245) \end{aligned}$$

which is recognized as (3.44).

### Matlab

The  $6 \times 6$  rigid-body system inertia matrix  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}$  about an arbitrarily point  $o_b$  can be computed by using the following Matlab commands:

```
r_g = [x_g y_g z_g]'; % location of the CG w.r.t. to CO
I_g = [ Ix -Ixy -Ixz % 3x3 inertia matrix about CG
        -Ixy Iy -Iyz
        -Ixz -Iyz Iz ];
MRB_CG = [ m*eye(3) zeros(3,3)
            zeros(3,3) I_g ];
MRB = Hmtrx(r_g)' *MRB_CG*Hmtrx(r_g)
```

### Transformation of the Added Mass System Inertia Matrix

Hydrodynamic seakeeping programs usually compute hydrodynamic added mass in CO or CG depending on the user specifications. Let us assume that the data have been computed in CG and that you want to

transform the result to CO, which is the point where the equations of motion are integrated numerically. The system inertia matrix  $\mathbf{M}_A^{cg}$  is transformed to CO by choosing  $\mathbf{r}_p^b = \mathbf{r}_g^b$  in (7.240). Consequently,

$$\mathbf{M}_A = \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \mathbf{M}_A^{cg} \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)$$

Next, let us assume that  $\mathbf{M}_A$  is a diagonal matrix described by six parameters according to

$$\mathbf{M}_A = -\text{diag}\{X_{\dot{u}}, Y_{\dot{v}}, Z_{\dot{w}}, K_{\dot{p}}, M_{\dot{q}}, N_r\} \quad (7.246)$$

This is often the best estimate you have unless you are using a hydrodynamic software program that computes a full  $\mathbf{M}_A^{cg}$  matrix (see Chapter 5). If you want to solve the equations of motion in CG instead of CO, the matrix  $\mathbf{M}_A$  can be transformed to CG by using

$$\mathbf{M}_A^{cg} = \mathbf{H}^{-\top}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \mathbf{M}_A \mathbf{H}^{-1}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)$$

### Transformation of the Coriolis–Centrifugal Matrix

The Coriolis–centrifugal matrices are derived directly from  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}$  and  $\mathbf{M}_A$  by using the result in Theorem 3.2 or numerically in Matlab:

#### Matlab

The  $6 \times 6$  Coriolis–centrifugal matrix can be computed in Matlab by using the MSS toolbox commands:

```
CA = m2c(MA, nu)
CRB = m2c(MRB, nu)
```

### Computation of the Restoring Forces and Moments

For underwater vehicles the gravitational and buoyancy forces (4.6) can be expressed in CG as

$$\mathbf{g}^{cg}(\eta) = \begin{bmatrix} (W - B) \sin(\theta) \\ -(W - B) \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) \\ -(W - B) \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \\ y_b B \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) - z_b B \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) \\ -z_b B \sin(\theta) - x_b B \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \\ x_b B \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) + y_b B \sin(\theta) \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.247)$$

where  $x_b$ ,  $y_b$  and  $z_b$  are the coordinates of CB with respect to CG. This expression can be transformed from CG to CO by

$$\mathbf{g}(\eta) = \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \mathbf{g}^{cg}(\eta) \quad (7.248)$$

#### Matlab

The restoring forces and moments are generated in the MSS toolbox according to

```
g_CG = gvect(W, B, theta, phi, [0, 0, 0]', [xb, yb, zb]')
g = Hmtrx(r_g)' * g_CG
```

For floating vessels the expression (4.21) can be transformed from CF to CO. In practice, it is common to assume that small angle (linear) theory holds. Hence,

$$\mathbf{G}^{cf} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -Z_z & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -K_\phi & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -M_\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.249)$$

Since  $\mathbf{r}_f = [LCF, 0, 0]^\top$ , that is CF is located a distance LCF from CO, the restoring matrix in CO becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{G} &= \mathbf{H}^\top(\mathbf{r}_f^b) \mathbf{G}^{cf} \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}_f^b) \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -Z_z & 0 & LCF \cdot Z_z & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -K_\phi & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & LCF \cdot Z_z & 0 & -M_\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (7.250)$$

### Matlab

The  $6 \times 6$  system spring stiffness matrix  $\mathbf{G}$  is computed by using the MSS toolbox function Gmtrx.m:

```
A_wp = 1000          % water plane area
nabla = 10000         % displacement
GMT = 1               % transverse metacentric heights
GML = 2               % lateral metacentric heights
r_g = [1 0 10]'      % location of CG w.r.t. CO

% Spring stiffness matrix
G = Gmtrx(nabla,A_wp,GMT,GML,r_g)
```

This produces the numerical result

$$\mathbf{G} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 10055250 & 0 & -10055250 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 100552500 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -10055250 & 0 & 211160250 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

### 7.5.5 6 DOF Models for AUVs and ROVs

As shown in the previous sections, the 6 DOF nonlinear equations of motion can be written

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v} \quad (7.251)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (7.252)$$

Note that:

$$\mathbf{M}_A = \mathbf{A}(\omega) = \text{constant} \quad (7.253)$$

$$\mathbf{B}(\omega) = \mathbf{0} \quad (7.254)$$

for underwater vehicles operating below the wave-affected zone. The system inertia matrix  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{M}_A$  for an underwater vehicle follows the symmetry considerations in Section 7.5.2. If we consider a starboard–port symmetrical marine craft with  $y_g = I_{xy} = I_{yz} = 0$ , this gives

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m - X_{\dot{u}} & 0 & -X_{\dot{w}} & 0 & mz_g - X_{\dot{q}} & 0 \\ 0 & m - Y_{\dot{v}} & 0 & -mz_g - Y_{\dot{p}} & 0 & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} \\ -X_{\dot{w}} & 0 & m - Z_{\dot{w}} & 0 & -mx_g - Z_{\dot{q}} & 0 \\ 0 & -mz_g - Y_{\dot{p}} & 0 & I_x - K_{\dot{p}} & 0 & -I_{zx} - K_{\dot{r}} \\ mz_g - X_{\dot{q}} & 0 & -mx_g - Z_{\dot{q}} & 0 & I_y - M_{\dot{q}} & 0 \\ 0 & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} & 0 & -I_{zx} - K_{\dot{r}} & 0 & I_z - N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix}$$

Consequently, it is straightforward to compute the Coriolis and centripetal matrix  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})$  using the results in Section 3.3 when the structure of  $\mathbf{M}$  has been determined. In general, the damping of an underwater vehicle moving in 6 DOF at high speed will be highly nonlinear and coupled. This could be described mathematically as

$$\mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} |\mathbf{v}|^\top \mathbf{D}_{n1}\mathbf{v} \\ |\mathbf{v}|^\top \mathbf{D}_{n2}\mathbf{v} \\ |\mathbf{v}|^\top \mathbf{D}_{n3}\mathbf{v} \\ |\mathbf{v}|^\top \mathbf{D}_{n4}\mathbf{v} \\ |\mathbf{v}|^\top \mathbf{D}_{n5}\mathbf{v} \\ |\mathbf{v}|^\top \mathbf{D}_{n6}\mathbf{v} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.255)$$

where  $|\mathbf{v}| = [|u|, |v|, |w|, |p|, |q|, |r|]^\top$  and  $\mathbf{D}_{ni}$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 6$ ) are  $6 \times 6$  matrices. Nevertheless, one rough approximation could be to use quadratic drag in surge and the cross-flow drag in sway and yaw (see Section 6.4.3). Alternatively, if the vehicle is performing a noncoupled motion, it makes sense to assume a diagonal structure of  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})$  such that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) = & -\text{diag}\{X_u, Y_v, Z_w, K_p, M_q, N_r\} \\ & -\text{diag}\{X_{|u|u}|u|, Y_{|vv|v}|v|, Z_{|w|w}|w|, K_{|p|p}|p|, M_{|q|q}|q|, N_{|r|r}|r|\} \end{aligned} \quad (7.256)$$

Alternatively, the current coefficient representation in Section 7.3.1 can be used to model the damping. This can be done by replacing  $D_n(v)$  with 6 DOF current coefficients:

$$\mathbf{d}(V_{rc}, \gamma_{cr}) = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{F_c} C_X(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \\ -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{L_c} C_Y(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \\ -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{F_c} C_Z(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \\ -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{L_c} H_{L_c} C_K(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \\ -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{F_c} H_{F_c} C_M(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \\ -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{L_c} L_{oa} C_N(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \end{bmatrix} \stackrel{3DOF}{\approx} \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{F_c} C_X(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \\ -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{L_c} C_Y(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{L_c} L_{oa} C_N(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.257)$$

where  $C_X, C_Y, C_Z, C_K, C_M$  and  $C_N$  are the current coefficients and  $H_{F_c}$  and  $H_{L_c}$  are the centroids above the water line of the frontal and lateral projected areas  $A_{F_c}$  and  $A_{L_c}$ . The 6 DOF model can also be divided into submodels, as shown in the next section.

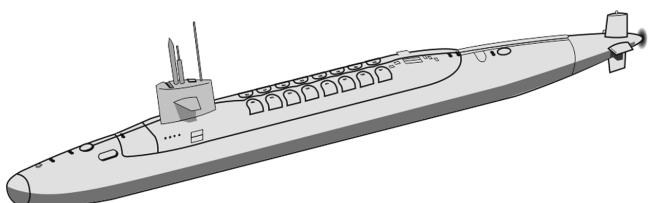
### 7.5.6 Longitudinal and Lateral Models for Submarines

The 6 DOF equations of motion can in many cases be divided into two noninteracting (or lightly interacting) subsystems:

- Longitudinal subsystem: states  $u, w, q$  and  $\theta$
- Lateral subsystem: states  $v, p, r, \phi$  and  $\psi$

This decomposition is good for slender symmetrical bodies (large length/width ratio) or so-called “flying vehicles”, as shown in Figure 7.11; typical applications are aircraft, missiles and submarines (Gertler and Hagen, 1967; Feldman, 1979; Tinker, 1982). This can also be seen from the expression of the system inertia matrix in the case of starboard–port symmetry (see Section 7.5.2):

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & 0 & m_{13} & 0 & m_{15} & 0 \\ 0 & m_{22} & 0 & m_{24} & 0 & m_{26} \\ m_{31} & 0 & m_{33} & 0 & m_{35} & 0 \\ 0 & m_{42} & 0 & m_{44} & 0 & m_{46} \\ m_{51} & 0 & m_{53} & 0 & m_{55} & 0 \\ 0 & m_{62} & 0 & m_{64} & 0 & m_{66} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.258)$$



**Figure 7.11** Slender body submarine (large length/width ratio).

which clearly confirms that the two subsystems

$$\mathbf{M}_{\text{long}} = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & m_{13} & m_{15} \\ m_{31} & m_{33} & m_{35} \\ m_{51} & m_{53} & m_{55} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{M}_{\text{lat}} = \begin{bmatrix} m_{22} & m_{24} & m_{26} \\ m_{42} & m_{44} & m_{46} \\ m_{62} & m_{64} & m_{66} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.259)$$

are decoupled.

### Longitudinal Subsystem

Under the assumption that the lateral states  $v, p, r, \phi$  are small, the longitudinal kinematics for surge, heave and pitch are, see (2.18) and (2.28),

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{D} \\ \dot{\theta} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} w \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -\sin(\theta) \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} u \quad (7.260)$$

For simplicity, it is assumed that higher-order damping can be neglected, that is  $\mathbf{D}_n(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}$ . Coriolis is, however, modeled by assuming that  $u \gg 0$  and that second-order terms in  $v, w, p, q$  and  $r$  are small. Hence, from (3.60) it is seen that

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} m(y_gq + z_gr)p - m(x_gq - w)q - m(x_gr + v)r \\ -m(z_gp - v)p - m(z_gq + u)q + m(x_gp + y_gq)r \\ m(x_gq - w)u - m(z_gr + x_gp)v + m(z_gq + u)w \\ +(I_{yz}q + I_{xz}p - I_zr)p + (-I_{xz}r - I_{xy}q + I_xp)r \end{bmatrix}$$

such that

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} \approx \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -mu \\ 0 & 0 & mx_gu \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.261)$$

Notice that  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) \neq -\mathbf{C}_{RB}^\top(\mathbf{v})$  for the decoupled model. Assuming a diagonal  $\mathbf{M}_A$  as in Example 6.2, the corresponding added mass terms are

$$\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -Z_{\dot{w}}wq + Y_{\dot{v}}vr \\ -Y_{\dot{v}}vp + X_{\dot{u}}uq \\ (Z_{\dot{w}} - X_{\dot{u}})uw + (N_r - K_p)pr \end{bmatrix} \approx \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & X_uu \\ 0 & (Z_{\dot{w}} - X_{\dot{u}})u & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.262)$$

According to (7.5) and (4.6) with  $W = B$  and  $x_g = x_b$ , the dynamics becomes

$$\begin{bmatrix} m - X_{\dot{u}} & -X_{\dot{w}} & mz_g - X_{\dot{q}} \\ -X_{\dot{w}} & m - Z_{\dot{w}} & -mx_g - Z_q \\ mz_g - X_{\dot{q}} & -mx_g - Z_q & I_y - M_{\dot{q}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -X_u & -X_w & -X_q \\ -Z_u & -Z_w & -Z_q \\ -M_u & -M_w & -M_q \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -(m - X_{\dot{u}})u \\ 0 & (Z_{\dot{w}} - X_{\dot{u}})u & mx_gu \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ W \overline{BG}_z \sin(\theta) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \tau_1 \\ \tau_3 \\ \tau_5 \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.263)$$

This model is the basis for forward speed control (state  $u$ ) and depth/diving autopilot design (states  $w, q, \theta$ ). If the forward speed is stabilized by a forward speed controller such that

$$u = u_o = \text{constant} \quad (7.264)$$

forward speed can be eliminated from the longitudinal equations of motion such that

$$\begin{bmatrix} m - Z_w & -mx_g - Z_{\dot{q}} \\ -mx_g - Z_{\dot{q}} & I_y - M_{\dot{q}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -Z_w & -Z_q \\ -M_w & -M_q \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} w \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -(m - X_{\dot{u}})u_o \\ (Z_{\dot{w}} - X_{\dot{u}})u_o & mx_g u_o \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} w \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ W \overline{BG}_z \sin(\theta) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \tau_3 \\ \tau_5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Moreover, if  $\dot{w} = w = 0$  (constant depth) and  $\theta$  is small such that  $\sin(\theta) \approx \theta$ , the linear pitch dynamics becomes

$$(I_y - M_{\dot{q}})\ddot{\theta} - M_q\dot{\theta} + W \overline{BG}_z \theta = \tau_5 \quad (7.265)$$

The natural frequency and period are recognized as

$$\omega_{\text{pitch}} = \sqrt{\frac{W \overline{BG}_z}{I_y - M_{\dot{q}}}} \quad (7.266)$$

$$T_{\text{pitch}} = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_{\text{pitch}}} \quad (7.267)$$

### Lateral Subsystem

Under the assumption that the longitudinal states  $u, w, p, r, \phi$  and  $\theta$  are small, the lateral kinematics, see (7.5) and (2.28), reduce to

$$\dot{\phi} = p \quad (7.268)$$

$$\dot{\psi} = r \quad (7.269)$$

Again it is assumed that higher-order velocity terms can be neglected so that  $D_n(v) = \mathbf{0}$  and that the Coriolis terms in  $u = u_o$  are the most important, see (3.60),

$$C_{RB}(v)v = \begin{bmatrix} -m(y_g p + w)p + m(z_g r + x_g p)q - m(y_g r - u)r \\ -m(y_g q + z_g r)u + m(y_g p + w)v + m(z_g p - v)w \\ m(x_g r + v)u + m(y_g r - u)v - m(x_g p + y_g q)w \\ +(-I_{yz}q - I_{xz}p + I_zr)q + (I_{yz}r + I_{xy}p - I_yq)r \\ +(-I_{yz}r - I_{xy}p + I_yq)p + (I_{xz}r + I_{xy}q - I_xp)q \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence,

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} \approx \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & mu_o \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & mx_g u_o \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.270)$$

Under the assumption of a diagonal  $\mathbf{M}_A$  structure as in Example 6.2, the corresponding added mass terms are

$$\mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} Z_{\dot{u}}wp - X_{\dot{u}}ur \\ (Y_{\dot{v}} - Z_{\dot{w}})vw + (M_{\dot{q}} - N_{\dot{r}})qr \\ (X_{\dot{u}} - Y_{\dot{v}})uv + (K_{\dot{p}} - M_{\dot{q}})pq \end{bmatrix} \approx \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & -X_{\dot{u}}u \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ (X_{\dot{u}} - Y_{\dot{v}})u & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \end{bmatrix} \quad (7.271)$$

Next, assume that  $W = B$ ,  $x_g = x_b$  and  $y_g = y_b$ . Then (7.5) and (4.6) reduce to

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{bmatrix} m - Y_{\dot{v}} & -mz_g - Y_{\dot{p}} & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} \\ -mz_g - Y_{\dot{p}} & I_x - K_{\dot{p}} & -I_{zx} - K_{\dot{r}} \\ mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} & -I_{zx} - K_{\dot{r}} & I_z - N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{p} \\ \dot{r} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -Y_v & -Y_p & -Y_r \\ -M_v & -M_p & -M_r \\ -N_v & -N_p & -N_r \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \end{bmatrix} \\ & + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & (m - X_{\dot{u}})u \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ (X_{\dot{u}} - Y_{\dot{v}})u & 0 & mx_g u \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ p \\ r \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ W \overline{BG}_z \sin(\phi) \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \tau_2 \\ \tau_4 \\ \tau_6 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (7.272)$$

For vehicles where  $\dot{p}$  and  $p$  are small (small roll motions) and the speed is  $u = u_o$ , this reduces to

$$\begin{bmatrix} m - Y_{\dot{v}} & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} \\ mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} & I_z - N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{r} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -Y_v & -Y_r \\ -N_v & -N_r \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ r \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & (m - X_{\dot{u}})u_o \\ (X_{\dot{u}} - Y_{\dot{v}})u_o & mx_g u_o \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ r \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \tau_2 \\ \tau_6 \end{bmatrix}$$

which is the sway–yaw maneuvering model (see Section 7.1.4). The decoupled linear roll equation under the assumption of a small  $\phi$  is

$$(I_x - K_{\dot{p}})\ddot{\phi} - K_p\dot{\phi} + W \overline{BG}_z \phi = \tau_4 \quad (7.273)$$

From this it follows that the natural frequency and period are

$$\omega_{\text{roll}} = \sqrt{\frac{W \overline{BG}_z}{I_x - K_{\dot{p}}}} \quad (7.274)$$

$$T_{\text{roll}} = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_{\text{roll}}} \quad (7.275)$$

# 8

## Environmental Forces and Moments

In Chapters 2–7 nonlinear models for marine craft in 6 DOF were derived. In this chapter, models for environmental forces and moments are presented. These include models for:

- Wind
- Waves
- Ocean currents

The purpose of the chapter is to present models for simulation, testing and verification of feedback control systems. Complementary textbooks on hydrodynamic modeling are Faltinsen (1990), Newman (1977) and Sarpkaya (1981).

### Superposition of Wind and Wave Disturbances

For control system design it is common to assume the *principle of superposition* when considering wind and wave disturbances. For most marine control applications this is a good approximation. In general, the environmental forces will be highly nonlinear and both additive and multiplicative to the dynamic equations of motion. An accurate description of the environmental forces and moments are important in vessel simulators that are produced for human operators.

In Chapter 6 it was shown that the nonlinear dynamic equations of motion can be written

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{g}(\eta) + \mathbf{g}_0 = \underbrace{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}}}_{\mathbf{w}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (8.1)$$

The principle of superposition suggests that the generalized wind- and wave-induced forces are added to the right-hand side of (8.1) by defining

$$\mathbf{w} := \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (8.2)$$

where  $\tau_{\text{wind}} \in \mathbb{R}^6$  and  $\tau_{\text{wave}} \in \mathbb{R}^6$  represent the generalized forces due to wind and waves. Computer-effective models for the simulation of generalized wind and wave forces are presented in Sections 8.1 and 8.2.

### Equations of Relative Motion for Simulation of Ocean Currents

The forces on a marine craft due to ocean currents can be implemented by replacing the generalized velocity vector in the hydrodynamic terms with relative velocities:

$$\mathbf{v}_r = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_c \quad (8.3)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}_c \in \mathbb{R}^6$  is the velocity of the ocean current expressed in  $\{b\}$ . The equations of motion including ocean currents become

$$\underbrace{\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v}}_{\text{rigid-body terms}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{M}_A\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r}_{\text{hydrodynamic terms}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_o}_{\text{hydrostatic terms}} = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \mathbf{w} \quad (8.4)$$

Notice that the rigid-body kinetics is independent of the ocean current. A frequently used simplification is to assume that the ocean currents are *irrotational* and *constant* in  $\{n\}$ . In Section 8.3 it is shown that this assumption implies that (8.4) can be transformed to

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_o = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (8.5)$$

where all mass, Coriolis–centripetal and damping terms are functions of the relative acceleration and velocity vectors only. The matrices  $\mathbf{M}$  and  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r)$  in this model become

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{M}_A \quad (8.6)$$

$$\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r) = \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r) + \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) \quad (8.7)$$

In the linear case, Equation (8.5) reduces to

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{N}\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{G}\boldsymbol{\eta} + \mathbf{g}_o = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \mathbf{w} \quad (8.8)$$

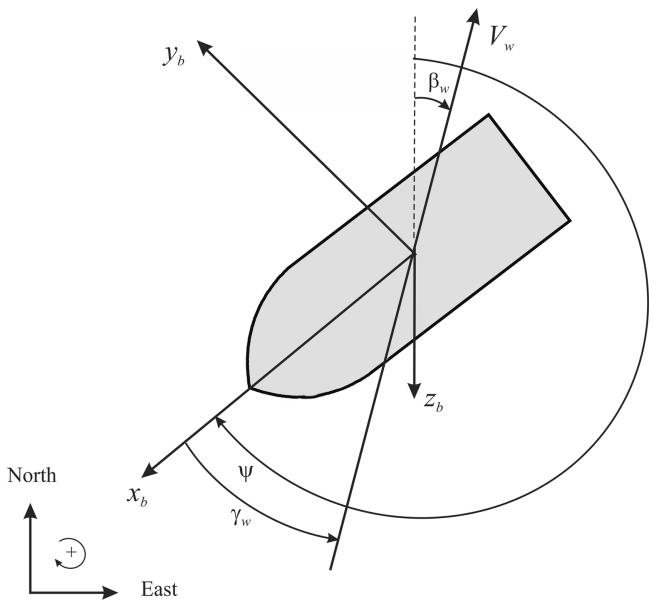
Models for simulation of ocean currents in terms of  $\mathbf{v}_c$  are presented in Section 8.3.

## 8.1 Wind Forces and Moments

Wind is defined as the movement of air relative to the surface of the Earth. Mathematical models of wind forces and moments are used in motion control systems to improve the performance and robustness of the system in extreme conditions. Models for this are presented in the forthcoming sections.

### 8.1.1 Wind Forces and Moments on Marine Craft at Rest

Let  $V_w$  and  $\gamma_w$  denote the wind speed and angle of attack, respectively (see Figure 8.1). The wind forces and moments acting on a marine craft are computed using a similar approach to that of the current



**Figure 8.1** Wind speed  $V_w$ , wind direction  $\beta_w$  and wind angle of attack  $\gamma_w$  relative to the bow.

coefficients defined in Section 7.3.1. For zero speed it is common to write

$$X_{\text{wind}} = qC_X(\gamma_w)A_{Fw} \quad (8.9)$$

$$Y_{\text{wind}} = qC_Y(\gamma_w)A_{Lw} \quad (8.10)$$

$$Z_{\text{wind}} = qC_Z(\gamma_w)A_{Fw} \quad (8.11)$$

$$K_{\text{wind}} = qC_K(\gamma_w)A_{Lw}H_{Lw} \quad (8.12)$$

$$M_{\text{wind}} = qC_M(\gamma_w)A_{Fw}H_{Fw} \quad (8.13)$$

$$N_{\text{wind}} = qC_N(\gamma_w)A_{Lw}L_{oa} \quad (8.14)$$

where  $H_{Fw}$  and  $H_{Lw}$  are the centroids above the water line of the frontal and lateral projected areas  $A_{Fw}$  and  $A_{Lw}$ , respectively, and

$$\gamma_w = \psi - \beta_w - \pi \quad (8.15)$$

where  $\beta_w$  is the wind direction (going to) in  $\{n\}$  (see Figure 8.1).

The dynamic pressure of the apparent wind is

$$q = \frac{1}{2}\rho_a V_w^2 \quad (8.16)$$

where  $\rho_a$  is the air density (see Table 8.1).

The mean velocity profile satisfies a boundary-layer profile (Bretschneider, 1969):

$$V_w(h) = V_{10}(h/10)^\alpha \quad (8.17)$$

**Table 8.1** Air density as a function of temperature

°C	Air density, $\rho$ (kg/m <sup>3</sup> )
-10	1.342
-5	1.317
0	1.292
5	1.269
10	1.247
15	1.225
20	1.204
25	1.184
30	1.165

where  $V_{10}$  is the wind velocity 10 m above the sea surface,  $h$  is the height above the sea surface and  $\alpha = 1/7$ . The nondimensional wind coefficients  $C_X$ ,  $C_Y$ ,  $C_Z$ ,  $C_K$ ,  $C_M$  and  $C_N$  are usually computed using  $h = 10$  m as reference height. To convert the nondimensional wind coefficients to a different reference height, the ratio between the dynamic pressures at the two heights are used:

$$\frac{\frac{1}{2}\rho_a V_w(h_1)^2}{\frac{1}{2}\rho_a V_w(h_2)^2} = \frac{V_w(h_1)^2}{V_w(h_2)^2} = \frac{[V_{10}(h_1/10)^\alpha]^2}{[V_{10}(h_2/10)^\alpha]^2} = \left(\frac{h_1}{h_2}\right)^{2\alpha} \quad (8.18)$$

Consequently, the nondimensional wind coefficients at height  $h_1$  can be converted to height  $h_2$  by multiplying with

$$\left(\frac{h_1}{h_2}\right)^{2\alpha} \quad (8.19)$$

For surface ships it is common to assume that  $Z_{\text{wind}} = M_{\text{wind}} = 0$  while the roll moment  $K_{\text{wind}}$  is used for ships and ocean structures where large rolling angles are an issue. For semi-submersibles both  $K_{\text{wind}}$  and  $M_{\text{wind}}$  are needed in addition to the horizontal motion components  $X_{\text{wind}}$ ,  $Y_{\text{wind}}$  and  $N_{\text{wind}}$ .

The wind speed is usually specified in terms of *Beaufort numbers*, as shown in Table 8.2.

**Table 8.2** Definition of Beaufort numbers (Price and Bishop, 1974)

Beaufort number	Description of wind	Wind speed (knots)
0	Calm	0–1
1	Light air	2–3
2	Light breeze	4–7
3	Gentle breeze	8–11
4	Moderate breeze	12–16
5	Fresh breeze	17–21
6	Strong breeze	22–27
7	Moderate gale	28–33
8	Fresh gale	34–40
9	Strong gale	41–48
10	Whole gale	49–56
11	Storm	57–65
12	Hurricane	More than 65

### Wind Coefficient Approximation for Symmetrical Ships

For ships that are symmetrical with respect to the  $xz$  and  $yz$  planes, the wind coefficients for horizontal plane motions can be approximated by

$$C_X(\gamma_w) \approx -c_x \cos(\gamma_w) \quad (8.20)$$

$$C_Y(\gamma_w) \approx c_y \sin(\gamma_w) \quad (8.21)$$

$$C_N(\gamma_w) \approx c_n \sin(2\gamma_w) \quad (8.22)$$

which are convenient formulae for computer simulations. Experiments with ships indicate that  $c_x \in \{0.50, 0.90\}$ ,  $c_y \in \{0.70, 0.95\}$  and  $c_n \in \{0.05, 0.20\}$ . However, these values should be used with care.

#### 8.1.2 Wind Forces and Moments on Moving Marine Craft

For a ship moving at a forward speed, (8.9)–(8.14) should be redefined in terms of relative wind speed  $V_{rw}$  and angle of attack  $\gamma_{rw}$  according to

$$\tau_{wind} = \frac{1}{2} \rho_a V_{rw}^2 \begin{bmatrix} C_X(\gamma_{rw}) A_{Fw} \\ C_Y(\gamma_{rw}) A_{Lw} \\ C_Z(\gamma_{rw}) A_{Fw} \\ C_K(\gamma_{rw}) A_{Lw} H_{Lw} \\ C_M(\gamma_{rw}) A_{Fw} H_{Fw} \\ C_N(\gamma_{rw}) A_{Lw} L_{oa} \end{bmatrix} \quad (8.23)$$

with

$$V_{rw} = \sqrt{u_{rw}^2 + v_{rw}^2} \quad (8.24)$$

$$\gamma_{rw} = -\text{atan}2(v_{rw}, u_{rw}) \quad (8.25)$$

The relative velocities are

$$u_{rw} = u - u_w \quad (8.26)$$

$$v_{rw} = v - v_w \quad (8.27)$$

while the components of  $V_w$  in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions are (see Figure 8.1)

$$u_w = V_w \cos(\beta_w - \psi) \quad (8.28)$$

$$v_w = V_w \sin(\beta_w - \psi) \quad (8.29)$$

The wind speed  $V_w$  and its direction  $\beta_w$  can be measured by an anemometer and a weathervane, respectively. Anemometer is derived from the Greek word *anemos*, meaning wind. Anemometers can be divided into two classes: those that measure the wind's speed and those that measure the wind's pressure. If the pressure is measured, a formula relating pressure with speed must be applied.

The wind measurements should be low-pass filtered since only the mean wind forces and moments can be compensated for by the propulsion system. In fact, since the inertia of the craft is so large, it is unnecessary for the control system to compensate for wind gust. In order to implement wind feedforward compensation for a DP vessel using (8.23), only the wind coefficients  $C_X$ ,  $C_Y$  and  $C_N$  are needed. They can be experimentally obtained by using a scale model located in a wind tunnel or computed numerically. Different models for computation of the wind coefficients for varying hull geometries will now be discussed.

### 8.1.3 Wind Coefficients Based on Flow over a Helmholtz–Kirchhoff Plate

Blendermann (1994) applies a simple load concept to compute the wind coefficients. This is based on the *Helmholtz–Kirchhoff* plate theory. The load functions are parametrized in terms of four primary wind load parameters: longitudinal and transverse resistance  $CD_l$  and  $CD_t$ , respectively, the cross-force parameter  $\delta$  and the rolling moment factor  $\kappa$ . Numerical values for different vessels are given in Table 8.3.

The longitudinal resistance coefficient  $CD_{l_{AF}}(\gamma_w)$  in Table 8.3 is scaled according to

$$CD_l = CD_{l_{AF}}(\gamma_w) \frac{A_{F_w}}{A_{L_w}} \quad (8.30)$$

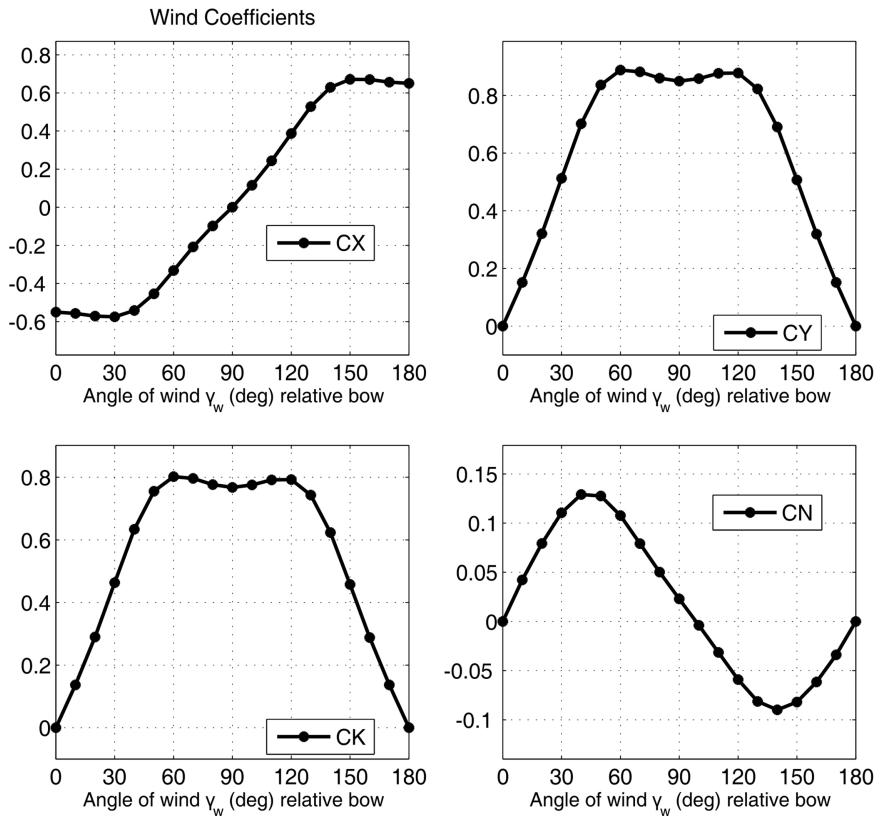
where values for two angles  $\gamma_w \in \{0, \pi\}$  are given. The value  $CD_{l_{AF}}(0)$  corresponds to head wind while  $CD_{l_{AF}}(\pi)$  should be used for tail wind. By using these two values in the regions  $|\gamma_w| \leq \pi/2$  and  $|\gamma_w| > \pi/2$ , respectively, a nonsymmetrical wind load function for surge can be computed. Moreover, this gives different wind loads for head and tail winds, as shown in Figure 8.2. Alternatively, a symmetrical wind profile is obtained by using  $CD_{l_{AF}}(0)$  or the mean of  $CD_{l_{AF}}(0)$  and  $CD_{l_{AF}}(\pi)$ .

Let the mean height of the area  $A_{L_w}$  be denoted by

$$H_M = \frac{A_{L_w}}{L_{oa}} \quad (8.31)$$

**Table 8.3** Coefficients of lateral and longitudinal resistance, cross-force and rolling moment (Blendermann, 1994)

Type of vessel	$CD_t$	$CD_{l_{AF}}(0)$	$CD_{l_{AF}}(\pi)$	$\delta$	$\kappa$
1. Car carrier	0.95	0.55	0.60	0.80	1.2
2. Cargo vessel, loaded	0.85	0.65	0.55	0.40	1.7
3. Cargo vessel, container on deck	0.85	0.55	0.50	0.40	1.4
4. Container ship, loaded	0.90	0.55	0.55	0.40	1.4
5. Destroyer	0.85	0.60	0.65	0.65	1.1
6. Diving support vessel	0.90	0.60	0.80	0.55	1.7
7. Drilling vessel	1.00	0.70–1.00	0.75–1.10	0.10	1.7
8. Ferry	0.90	0.45	0.50	0.80	1.1
9. Fishing vessel	0.95	0.70	0.70	0.40	1.1
10. Liquefied natural gas tanker	0.70	0.60	0.65	0.50	1.1
11. Offshore supply vessel	0.90	0.55	0.80	0.55	1.2
12. Passenger liner	0.90	0.40	0.40	0.80	1.2
13. Research vessel	0.85	0.55	0.65	0.60	1.4
14. Speed boat	0.90	0.55	0.60	0.60	1.1
15. Tanker, loaded	0.70	0.90	0.55	0.40	3.1
16. Tanker, in ballast	0.70	0.75	0.55	0.40	2.2
17. Tender	0.85	0.55	0.55	0.65	1.1



**Figure 8.2** Wind coefficients for the research vessel in Table 8.3 (vessel 13).  $C_X$  is generated using  $CD_{l_{AF}}(0)$  and  $CD_{l_{AF}}(\pi)$  for  $|\gamma_w| \leq \pi/2$  and  $|\gamma_w| > \pi/2$ , respectively.

and let the coordinates  $(s_L, s_H) = (s_L, H_{Lw})$  describe the centroid of the transverse project area  $A_{Lw}$  with respect to the main section and above the water line. Based on these quantities, Blendermann (1994) gives the following expressions for the wind coefficients:

$$C_X(\gamma_w) = - \underbrace{CD_l \frac{A_{Lw}}{A_{Fw}}}_{CD_{l_{AF}}} \frac{\cos(\gamma_w)}{1 - \frac{\delta}{2} \left(1 - \frac{CD_l}{CD_t}\right) \sin^2(2\gamma_w)} \quad (8.32)$$

$$C_Y(\gamma_w) = CD_l \frac{\sin(\gamma_w)}{1 - \frac{\delta}{2} \left(1 - \frac{CD_l}{CD_t}\right) \sin^2(2\gamma_w)} \quad (8.33)$$

$$C_K(\gamma_w) = \kappa C_Y(\gamma_w) \quad (8.34)$$

$$C_N(\gamma_w) = \left[ \frac{s_L}{L_{oa}} - 0.18 \left( \gamma_w - \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \right] C_Y(\gamma_w) \quad (8.35)$$

where the expression for  $C_K(\gamma_w)$  has been modified to comply with (8.12). Notice that in Blendermann (1994)

$$C_K^{\text{Blendermann}}(\gamma_w) = \frac{s_H}{H_M} C_K(\gamma_w) \quad (8.36)$$

where  $s_H = H_L$ . The numerical values for several vessel types are given in Table 8.3.

Consider the research vessel in Table 8.3 with  $A_{Fw} = 160.7 \text{ m}^2$ ,  $A_{Lw} = 434.8 \text{ m}^2$ ,  $s_L = 1.48 \text{ m}$ ,  $s_H = 5.10 \text{ m}$ ,  $L_{oa} = 55.0 \text{ m}$ ,  $L_{pp} = 48.0 \text{ m}$  and  $B = 12.5 \text{ m}$ . For this vessel, the wind coefficients are computed in Matlab according to:

### Matlab

The wind coefficients are plotted in Figure 8.2 using the MSS toolbox example file `ExWindForce.m`. The data sets of Blendermann (1994) are programmed in the Matlab function `blendermann94.m`:

```
[w_wind,CX,CY,CK,CN] = ...
blendermann94(gamma_r,V_r,AFw,ALw,sH,sL,Loa,vessel_no)
```

This function computes the nonsymmetrical version of  $C_X$

### 8.1.4 Wind Coefficients for Merchant Ships

Isherwood (1972) has derived a set of wind coefficients by using multiple regression techniques to fit experimental data of merchant ships. The wind coefficients are parametrized in terms of the following eight parameters:

- $L_{oa}$  – length overall
- $B$  – beam
- $A_{Lw}$  – lateral projected area
- $A_{Tw}$  – transverse projected area
- $A_{SS}$  – lateral projected area of superstructure
- $S$  – length of perimeter of lateral projection of model excluding water line and slender bodies such as masts and ventilators
- $C$  – distance from bow of centroid of lateral projected area
- $M$  – number of distinct groups of masts or king posts seen in lateral projection; king posts close against the bridge front are not included

From regression analyses it was concluded that the measured data were best fitted to the following three equations:

$$C_X = - \left( A_0 + A_1 \frac{2A_L}{L^2} + A_2 \frac{2A_T}{B^2} + A_3 \frac{L}{B} + A_4 \frac{S}{L} + A_5 \frac{C}{L} + A_6 M \right)$$

$$C_Y = B_0 + B_1 \frac{2A_L}{L^2} + B_2 \frac{2A_T}{B^2} + B_3 \frac{L}{B} + B_4 \frac{S}{L} + B_5 \frac{C}{L} + B_6 \frac{A_{SS}}{A_L}$$

$$C_N = C_0 + C_1 \frac{2A_L}{L^2} + C_2 \frac{2A_T}{B^2} + C_3 \frac{L}{B} + C_4 \frac{S}{L} + C_5 \frac{C}{L}$$

where  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  ( $i = 0, \dots, 6$ ) and  $C_j$  ( $j = 0, \dots, 5$ ) are tabulated in Table 8.4, together with the *residual standard errors* (S.E.). The signs of  $C_X$  have been corrected to match the definition of  $\gamma_w$  in Figure 8.1.

### Matlab

The wind coefficients are plotted in Figure 8.3 using the MSS toolbox example file `ExWindForce.m`. Isherwood (1972) are programmed in the Matlab function `isherwood72.m`:

```
[w_wind,CX,CY,CN] = isherwood72(gamma_r,V_r,Loa,B,AFw,ALw,A_SS,S,C,M)
```

### 8.1.5 Wind Coefficients for Very Large Crude Carriers

Wind loads on very large crude carriers (VLCCs) in the range 150 000 to 500 000 dwt can be computed by applying the results of OCIMF (1977). In this work the wind coefficients are scaled using the conversion factor 1/7.6 instead of 1/2. In addition, the signs in sway and yaw must be corrected such that

$$X_{\text{wind}} = \frac{1}{7.6} C_X^{\text{OCIMF}}(\gamma_w) \rho_a V_w^2 A_{Fw} \quad (8.37)$$

$$Y_{\text{wind}} = -\frac{1}{7.6} C_Y^{\text{OCIMF}}(\gamma_w) \rho_a V_w^2 A_{Lw} \quad (8.38)$$

$$N_{\text{wind}} = -\frac{1}{7.6} C_N^{\text{OCIMF}}(\gamma_w) \rho_a V_w^2 A_{Lw} L_{oa} \quad (8.39)$$

where the wind coefficients  $C_X^{\text{OCIMF}}$ ,  $C_Y^{\text{OCIMF}}$  and  $C_N^{\text{OCIMF}}$  correspond to the plots given in OCIMF (1977); see Figures 8.4–8.6.

### 8.1.6 Wind Coefficients for Large Tankers and Medium-Sized Ships

For wind resistance on large tankers in the 100 000 to 500 000 dwt class the reader is advised to consult Van Berlekom *et al.* (1974). Medium-sized ships of the order 600 to 50 000 dwt are discussed by Wagner (1967).

A detailed analysis of wind resistance using semi-empirical loading functions is given by Blendermann (1986). The data sets for seven ships are included in the report.

### 8.1.7 Wind Coefficients for Moored Ships and Floating Structures

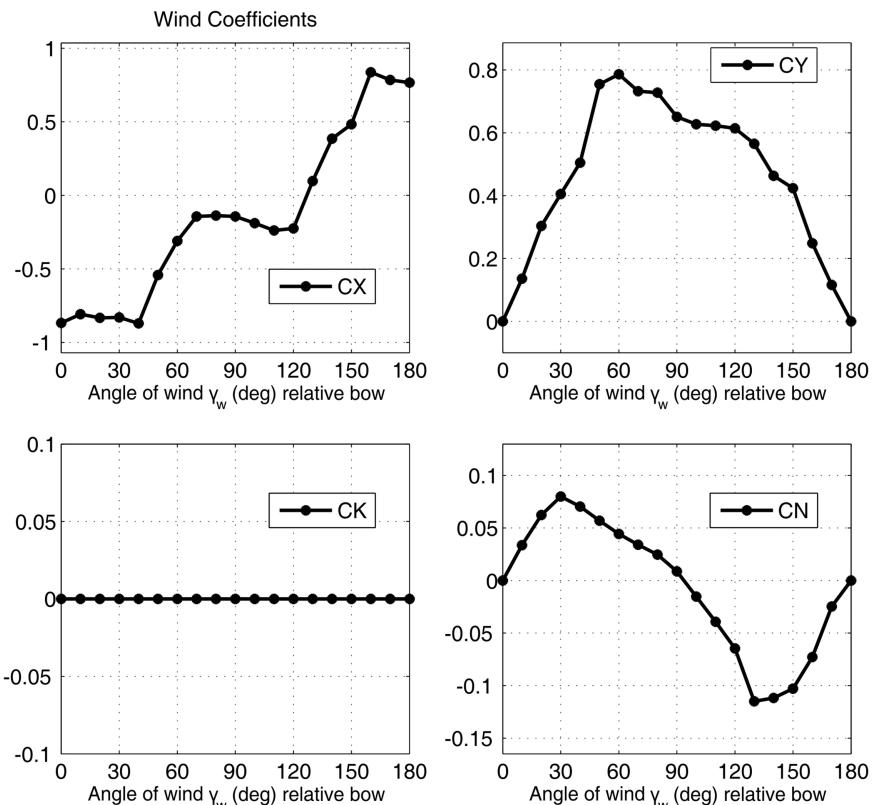
Wind loads on moored ships are discussed by De Kat and Wichers (1991) while an excellent reference for huge pontoon-type floating structures is Kitamura *et al.* (1997).

**Table 8.4** Wind force parameters in surge, sway and yaw (Isherwood, 1972)

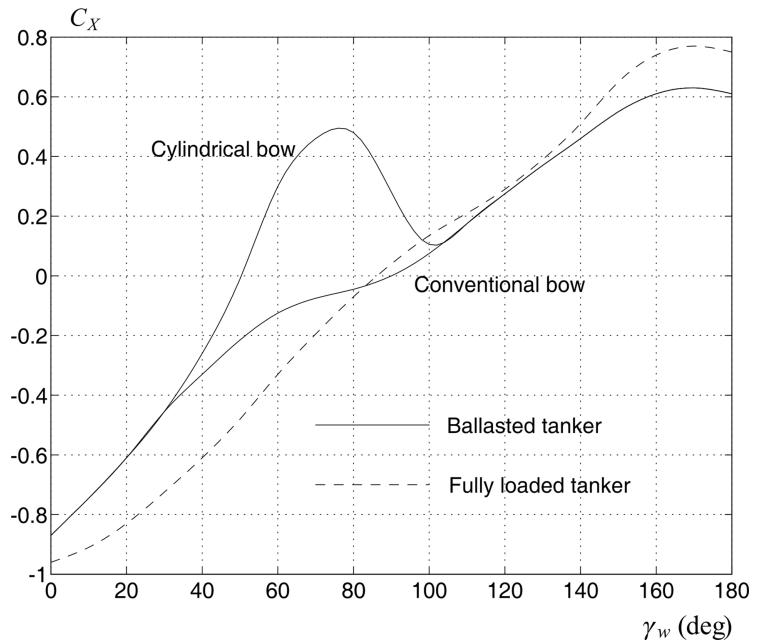
$\gamma_w$ (deg)	$A_0$	$A_1$	$A_2$	$A_3$	$A_4$	$A_5$	$A_6$	S.E.
0	2.152	-5.00	0.243	-0.164	-	-	-	0.086
10	1.714	-3.33	0.145	-0.121	-	-	-	0.104
20	1.818	-3.97	0.211	-0.143	-	-	0.033	0.096
30	1.965	-4.81	0.243	-0.154	-	-	0.041	0.117
40	2.333	-5.99	0.247	-0.190	-	-	0.042	0.115
50	1.726	-6.54	0.189	-0.173	0.348	-	0.048	0.109
60	0.913	-4.68	-	-0.104	0.482	-	0.052	0.082
70	0.457	-2.88	-	-0.068	0.346	-	0.043	0.077
80	0.341	-0.91	-	-0.031	-	-	0.032	0.090
90	0.355	-	-	-	-0.247	-	0.018	0.094
100	0.601	-	-	-	-0.372	-	-0.020	0.096
110	0.651	1.29	-	-	-0.582	-	-0.031	0.090
120	0.564	2.54	-	-	-0.748	-	-0.024	0.100
130	-0.142	3.58	-	0.047	-0.700	-	-0.028	0.105
140	-0.677	3.64	-	0.069	-0.529	-	-0.032	0.123
150	-0.723	3.14	-	0.064	-0.475	-	-0.032	0.128
160	-2.148	2.56	-	0.081	-	1.27	-0.027	0.123
170	-2.707	3.97	-0.175	0.126	-	1.81	-	0.115
180	-2.529	3.76	-0.174	0.128	-	1.55	-	0.112
Mean S.E.								0.103
$\gamma_w$ (deg)	$B_0$	$B_1$	$B_2$	$B_3$	$B_4$	$B_5$	$B_6$	S.E.
10	0.096	0.22	-	-	-	-	-	0.015
20	0.176	0.71	-	-	-	-	-	0.023
30	0.225	1.38	-	0.023	-	-0.29	-	0.030
40	0.329	1.82	-	0.043	-	-0.59	-	0.054
50	1.164	1.26	0.121	-	-0.242	-0.95	-	0.055
60	1.163	0.96	0.101	-	-0.177	-0.88	-	0.049
70	0.916	0.53	0.069	-	-	-0.65	-	0.047
80	0.844	0.55	0.082	-	-	-0.54	-	0.046
90	0.889	-	0.138	-	-	-0.66	-	0.051
100	0.799	-	0.155	-	-	-0.55	-	0.050
110	0.797	-	0.151	-	-	-0.55	-	0.049
120	0.996	-	0.184	-	-0.212	-0.66	0.34	0.047
130	1.014	-	0.191	-	-0.280	-0.69	0.44	0.051
140	0.784	-	0.166	-	-0.209	-0.53	0.38	0.060
150	0.536	-	0.176	-0.029	-0.163	-	0.27	0.055
160	0.251	-	0.106	-0.022	-	-	-	0.036
170	0.125	-	0.046	-0.012	-	-	-	0.022
Mean S.E.								0.044
$\gamma_w$ (deg)	$C_0$	$C_1$	$C_2$	$C_3$	$C_4$	$C_5$	S.E.	
10	0.0596	0.061	-	-	-	-0.074	0.0048	
20	0.1106	0.204	-	-	-	-0.170	0.0074	
30	0.2258	0.245	-	-	-	-0.380	0.0105	
40	0.2017	0.457	-	0.0067	-	-0.472	0.0137	

**Table 8.4** (Continued)

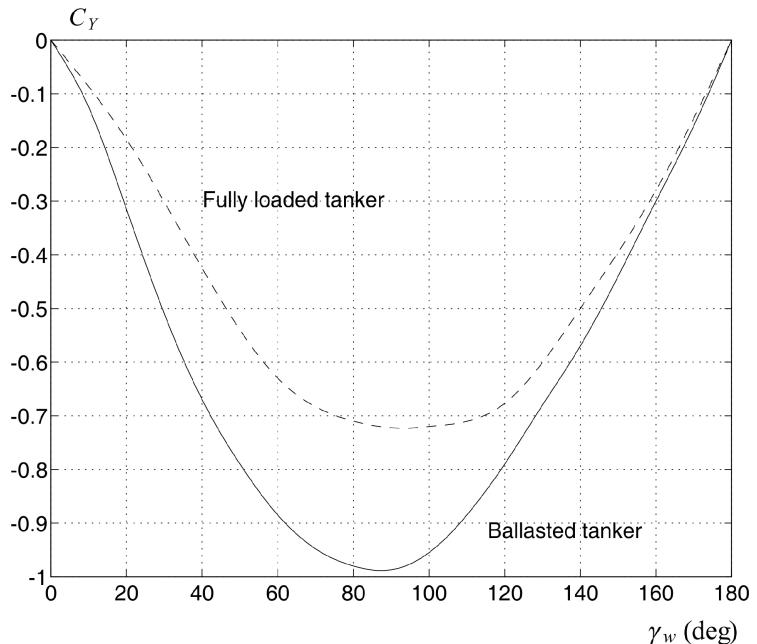
$\gamma_w$ (deg)	$C_0$	$C_1$	$C_2$	$C_3$	$C_4$	$C_5$	S.E.
50	0.1759	0.573	—	0.0118	—	-0.523	0.0149
60	0.1925	0.480	—	0.0115	—	-0.546	0.0133
70	0.2133	0.315	—	0.0081	—	-0.526	0.0125
80	0.1827	0.254	—	0.0053	—	-0.443	0.0123
90	0.2627	—	—	—	—	-0.508	0.0141
100	0.2102	—	-0.0195	—	0.0335	-0.492	0.0146
110	0.1567	—	-0.0258	—	0.0497	-0.457	0.0163
120	0.0801	—	-0.0311	—	0.0740	-0.396	0.0179
130	-0.0189	—	-0.0488	0.0101	0.1128	-0.420	0.0166
140	0.0256	—	-0.0422	0.0100	0.0889	-0.463	0.0162
150	0.0552	—	-0.0381	0.0109	0.0689	-0.476	0.0141
160	0.0881	—	-0.0306	0.0091	0.0366	-0.415	0.0105
170	0.0851	—	-0.0122	0.0025	—	-0.220	0.0057
Mean S.E.							0.0127



**Figure 8.3** Wind coefficients for  $L_{oa} = 100$ ,  $B = 30$ ,  $A_{Lw} = 900$ ,  $A_{Fw} = 300$ ,  $A_{SS} = 100$ ,  $S = 100$ ,  $C = 50$  and  $M = 2$  using the formulae of Isherwood (1972).



**Figure 8.4** Longitudinal wind force coefficient  $C_X^{\text{OCIMF}}$  as a function of  $\gamma_w$  (OCIMF, 1977).



**Figure 8.5** Lateral wind force coefficient  $C_Y^{\text{OCIMF}}$  as a function of  $\gamma_w$  (OCIMF, 1977).

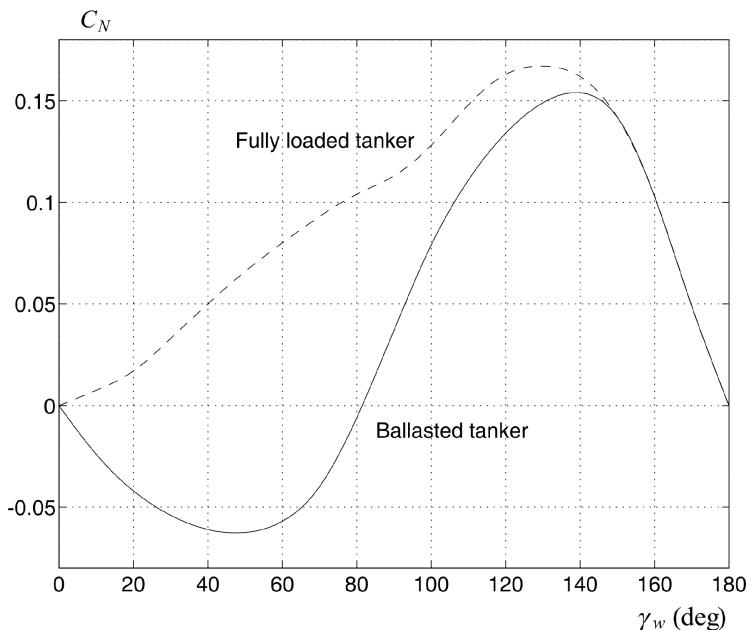


Figure 8.6 Wind moment coefficient  $C_N^{\text{OCIMF}}$  in yaw as a function of  $\gamma_w$  (OCIMF, 1977).

## 8.2 Wave Forces and Moments

A motion control system can be simulated under influence of wave-induced forces by separating the *first-order* and *second-order* effects:

- **First-order wave-induced forces:** wave-frequency (WF) motion observed as zero-mean oscillatory motions.
- **Second-order wave-induced forces:** wave drift forces observed as nonzero slowly varying components.

When designing motion control systems, it is important to evaluate robustness and performance in the presence of waves. Wave forces are observed as a mean slowly varying component and an oscillatory component, which need to be compensated differently by a feedback control system. For instance, the mean component can be removed by using integral action while the oscillatory component usually is removed by using a cascaded notch and low-pass filter. This is usually referred to as *wave filtering*. This section describes wave force models that can be used for prediction, observer-based wave filtering and testing of feedback control systems in the presence of waves. Both methods based on response amplitude operators (RAOs) and linear state-space models will be discussed. This includes:

1. Force RAOs
2. Motion RAOs
3. Linear state-space models (WF models)

The first two methods require that the RAO tables are computed using a hydrodynamic program (see Section 5.1) since the wave forces depend on the geometry of the craft. The last method is attractive due to its simplicity but it is only intended for the testing of robustness and performance of control systems, that is closed-loop analysis.

The resulting wave forces and moments are

$$\tau_{\text{wave}} = \tau_{\text{wave1}} + \tau_{\text{wave2}} \quad (8.40)$$

This is the sum of the first- and second-order wave-induced forces and moments  $\tau_{\text{wave1}}$  and  $\tau_{\text{wave2}}$ , respectively. The next sections explain how these transfer functions can be realized in a time-domain simulator.

### 8.2.1 Sea State Descriptions

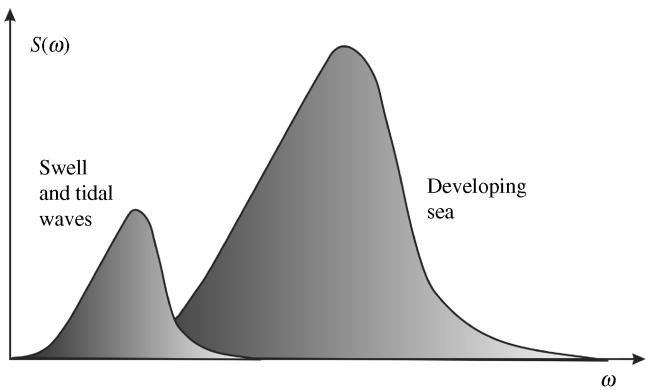
For marine craft the sea states in Table 8.5 can be characterized by the following wave spectrum parameters:

- The significant wave height  $H_s$  (the mean wave height of the one-third highest waves, also denoted as  $H_{1/3}$ )
- One of the following wave periods:
  - The average wave period,  $T_1$
  - Average zero-crossing wave period,  $T_z$
  - Peak period,  $T_p$  (this is equivalent to the modal period,  $T_0$ )

To relate the different periods to each other it is necessary to define the wave spectrum moments.

**Table 8.5** Definition of sea state (SS) codes (Price and Bishop, 1974). Notice that the percentage probability for SS codes 0, 1 and 2 is summarized

Sea state code	Description of sea	Wave height observed (m)	Percentage probability		
			World wide	North Atlantic	Northern North Atlantic
0	Calm (glassy)	0			
1	Calm (rippled)	0–0.1	11.2486	8.3103	6.0616
2	Smooth (wavelets)	0.1–0.5			
3	Slight	0.5–1.25	31.6851	28.1996	21.5683
4	Moderate	1.25–2.5	40.1944	42.0273	40.9915
5	Rough	2.5–4.0	12.8005	15.4435	21.2383
6	Very rough	4.0–6.0	3.0253	4.2938	7.0101
7	High	6.0–9.0	0.9263	1.4968	2.6931
8	Very high	9.0–14.0	0.1190	0.2263	0.4346
9	Phenomenal	Over 14.0	0.0009	0.0016	0.0035



**Figure 8.7** Two peaked wave spectra  $S(\omega)$  where one peak is due to swell and tidal waves and the other peak is due to a developing sea.

### Wave Spectrum Moments

A wave spectrum  $S(\omega)$ , see Figure 8.7, can be classified by means of *wave spectrum moments*:

$$m_k := \int_0^\infty \omega^k S(\omega) d\omega \quad (k = 0, \dots, N) \quad (8.41)$$

For  $k = 0$ , this yields

$$m_0 = \int_0^\infty S(\omega) d\omega \quad (8.42)$$

The instantaneous wave elevation is Gaussian distributed with zero mean and variance:

$$\sigma^2 = m_0 \quad (8.43)$$

where  $\sigma$  is the root-mean-square (RMS) value of the spectrum.

The *modal frequency* (peak frequency)  $\omega_0$  is found by requiring that

$$\left( \frac{dS(\omega)}{d\omega} \right)_{\omega=\omega_0} = 0 \quad (8.44)$$

Hence, the *modal period* becomes

$$T_0 = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0} \quad (8.45)$$

Consequently, the maximum value of  $S(\omega)$  is

$$S_{\max} = S(\omega_0) \quad (8.46)$$

Under the assumption that the wave height is Rayleigh distributed it can be shown that the significant wave height satisfies (Price and Bishop, 1974)

$$H_s = 4\sigma = 4\sqrt{m_0} \quad (8.47)$$

The *average wave period* is defined as

$$T_1 := 2\pi \frac{m_0}{m_1} \quad (8.48)$$

while the *average zero-crossings period* is defined as

$$T_z := 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{m_0}{m_2}} \quad (8.49)$$

### 8.2.2 Wave Spectra

The process of wave generation due to wind starts with small wavelets appearing on the water surface. This increases the drag force, which in turn allows short waves to grow. These short waves continue to grow until they finally break and their energy is dissipated. It is observed that a *developing sea*, or storm, starts with high frequencies creating a spectrum with a peak at a relatively high frequency. A storm that has lasted for a long time is said to create a *fully developed sea*. After the wind has stopped, a low-frequency decaying sea or swell is formed. These long waves form a wave spectrum with a low peak frequency.

If the swell from one storm interacts with the waves from another storm, a wave spectrum with two peak frequencies may be observed. In addition, tidal waves will generate a peak at a low frequency. Hence, the resulting wave spectrum might be quite complicated in cases where the weather changes rapidly (see Figure 8.7).

The state-of-the-art wave spectra will now be presented. These models are used to derive linear approximations and transfer functions for computer simulations, autopilot wave filtering and state reconstruction, which are the topics in Part II.

#### Neumann Spectrum

The earliest spectral formulation is due to Neumann (1952) who proposed the *one-parameter* spectrum

$$S(\omega) = C\omega^{-6} \exp(-2g^2\omega^{-2}V^{-2}) \quad (8.50)$$

where  $S(\omega)$  in  $\text{m/s}^2$  is the wave elevation power spectral density function,  $C$  is an empirical constant,  $V$  is the wind speed and  $g$  is the acceleration of gravity. Six years later Phillips (1958) showed that the high-frequency part of the wave spectrum reached the asymptotic limit

$$\lim_{\omega \gg 1} S(\omega) = \alpha g^2 \omega^{-5} \quad (8.51)$$

where  $\alpha$  is a positive constant. This limiting function of Phillips is still used as the basis for most spectral formulations.

#### Bretschneider Spectrum

The spectrum of Neumann was further extended to a two-parameter spectrum by Bretschneider (1959):

$$S(\omega) = 1.25 \frac{\omega_0^4 H_s^2}{4} \omega^{-5} \exp[-1.25(\omega_0/\omega)^4] \quad (8.52)$$

where  $\omega_0$  is the *modal* or *peak frequency* of the spectrum and  $H_s$  is the *significant wave height* (mean of the one-third highest waves). This spectrum was developed for the North Atlantic, for unidirectional

seas, infinite depth, no swell and unlimited fetch. The significant wave height  $H_s$  is used to classify the type of sea in terms of sea state codes 0, 1, ..., 9, as shown in Table 8.5.

### Pierson–Moskowitz Spectrum

Pierson and Moskowitz (1963) have developed a two-parameter wave spectral formulation for fully developed wind-generated seas from analyses of wave spectra in the North Atlantic Ocean:

$$S(\omega) = A\omega^{-5} \exp(-B\omega^{-4}) \quad (8.53)$$

which is commonly known as the *PM spectrum* (Pierson–Moskowitz spectrum). The PM spectrum is used as the basis for several spectral formulations but with different  $A$  and  $B$  values. In its original formulation, the PM spectrum is only a one-parameter spectrum since only  $B$  changes with the sea state. The parameters are

$$A = 8.1 \times 10^{-3} g^2 = \text{constant} \quad (8.54)$$

$$B = 0.74 \left( \frac{g}{V_{19.4}} \right)^4 = \frac{3.11}{H_s^2} \quad (8.55)$$

where  $V_{19.4}$  is the wind speed at a height of 19.4 m over the sea surface.

#### Matlab

The Bretschneider and PM spectra are implemented in the MSS toolbox as wave spectra 1 and 2:

```
S=wavespec(1,[A,B],w,1)
```

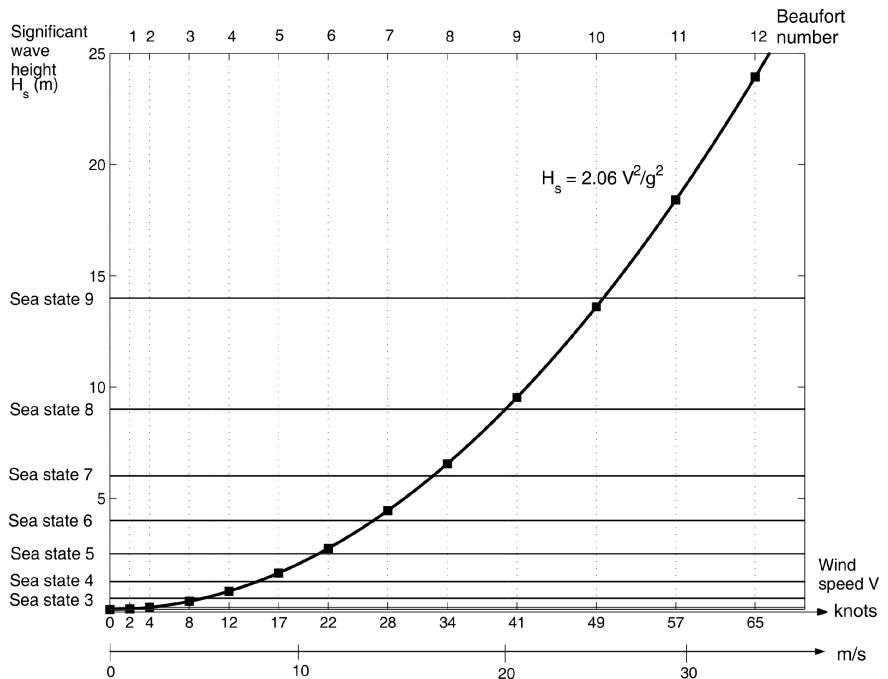
```
S=wavespec(2,V20,w,1)
```

where  $A$  and  $B$  are the spectrum parameters,  $V20$  is wind speed at 20 m height and  $w$  is the wave frequency vector.

The relationship between  $V_{19.4}$  and  $H_s$  in (8.55) is based on the assumption that the waves can be represented by Gaussian random processes and that  $S(\omega)$  is narrow banded. From (8.55) it is seen that

$$H_s = \frac{2.06}{g^2} V_{19.4}^2 \quad (8.56)$$

This implies that the significant wave height is proportional to the square of the wind speed. This is shown in Figure 8.8 where the *sea state codes* and *Beaufort numbers* are plotted against each other; see Tables 8.2 and 8.5.



**Figure 8.8** Plot showing the relationship between significant wave height, wind speed, Beaufort numbers and sea state codes.

The *modal frequency* (peak frequency)  $\omega_0$  for the PM spectrum is found by requiring that

$$\left( \frac{dS(\omega)}{d\omega} \right)_{\omega=\omega_0} = 0 \quad (8.57)$$

Solving for  $\omega_0$  in (8.53) yields

$$\omega_0 = \sqrt[4]{\frac{4B}{5}} \quad \Rightarrow \quad T_0 = 2\pi \sqrt[4]{\frac{5}{4B}} \quad (8.58)$$

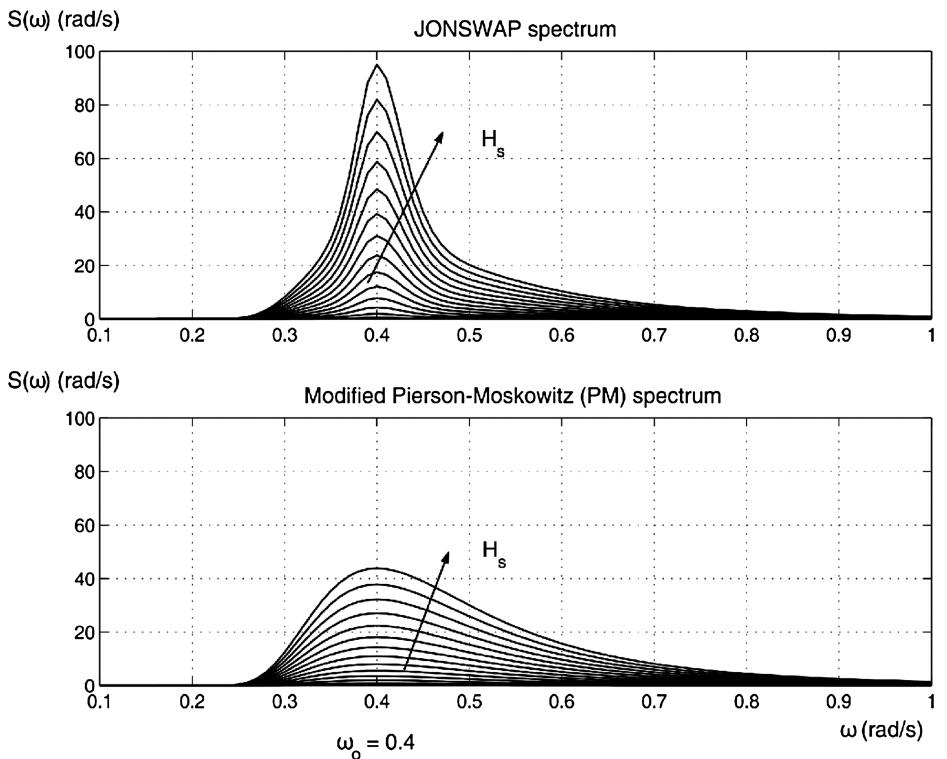
where  $T_0$  is the *modal period*. Consequently, the maximum value of  $S(\omega)$  is

$$S_{\max} = S(\omega_0) = \frac{5A}{4B\omega_0} \exp(-5/4) \quad (8.59)$$

### Modified Pierson–Moskowitz (MPM) Spectrum

In order to predict the responses of marine craft in open sea, the International Ship and Offshore Structures Congress (2nd ISSC, 1964), the International Towing Tank Conferences (12th ITTC, 1969, and 15th ITTC, 1978) have recommended the use of a modified version of the PM spectrum (see Figure 8.9) where

$$A = \frac{4\pi^3 H_s^2}{T_z^4}, \quad B = \frac{16\pi^3}{T_z^4} \quad (8.60)$$



**Figure 8.9** Plot showing the JONSWAP and modified Pierson–Moskowitz spectra for  $\omega_0 = 0.4$  rad/s and  $H_s = 3, 4, \dots, 14$  m.

This representation of the PM spectrum has two parameters  $H_s$  and  $T_z$ , or alternatively  $T_0$  and  $T_1$  given by

$$T_z = 0.710T_0 = 0.921T_1 \quad (8.61)$$

### Matlab

The modified PM spectrum is implemented in the MSS toolbox as wave spectra 3 to 5:

```
S = wavespec(3, [Hs, T0], w, 1)
S = wavespec(4, [Hs, T1], w, 1)
S = wavespec(5, [Hs, Tz], w, 1)
```

where  $H_s$  is the significant wave height,  $T_0, T_1$  and  $T_z$  are the peak, average and average zero-crossing wave periods, respectively, while  $w$  is the wave frequency vector.

The modified PM spectrum should only be used for a fully developed sea with large (infinite) depth, no swell and unlimited fetch. For nonfully developed seas the *JONSWAP* or *Torsethaugen* spectra are recommended.

### JONSWAP Spectrum

In 1968 and 1969 an extensive measurement program was carried out in the North Sea, between the island Sylt in Germany and Iceland. The measurement program is known as the *Joint North Sea Wave Project* (JONSWAP) and the results from these investigations have been adopted as an ITTC standard by the 17th ITTC (1984). Since the JONSWAP spectrum (see Figure 8.9) is used to describe *nonfully developed seas*, the spectral density function will be more peaked than those representing fully developed spectra. The proposed spectral formulation is representative for wind-generated waves under the assumption of finite water depth and limited fetch. The spectral density function is written

$$S(\omega) = 155 \frac{H_s^2}{T_1^4} \omega^{-5} \exp\left(\frac{-944}{T_1^4} \omega^{-4}\right) \gamma^\gamma \quad (8.62)$$

where Hasselmann et al. (1973) suggest that  $\gamma = 3.3$  and

$$Y = \exp\left[-\left(\frac{0.191\omega T_1 - 1}{\sqrt{2}\sigma}\right)^2\right] \quad (8.63)$$

where

$$\sigma = \begin{cases} 0.07 & \text{for } \omega \leq 5.24/T_1 \\ 0.09 & \text{for } \omega > 5.24/T_1 \end{cases} \quad (8.64)$$

Alternative formulations can be derived in terms of the characteristic periods like  $T_0$  and  $T_z$  by using

$$T_1 = 0.834 T_0 = 1.073 T_z \quad (8.65)$$

### Matlab

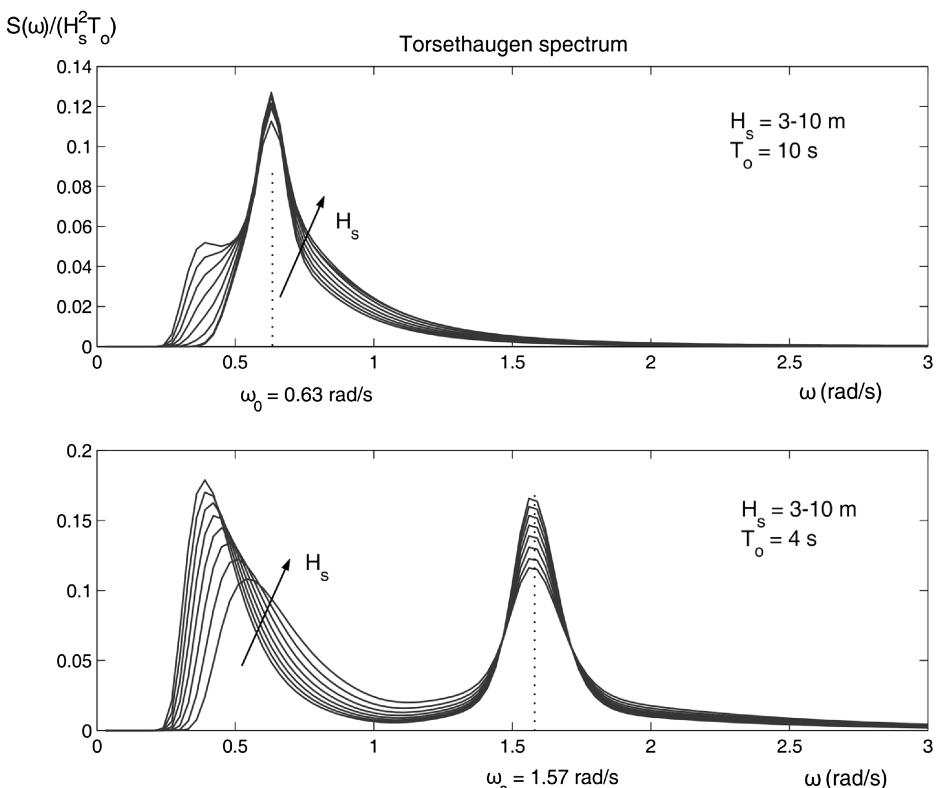
The JONSWAP spectrum is included in the MSS toolbox as wave spectra 6 and 7:

```
S=wavespec(6,[V10,fetch],w,1)
S=wavespec(7,[Hs,w0,gamma],w,1)
```

where  $V_{10}$  is the wind speed at 10 m height,  $H_s$  is the significant wave height,  $w_0$  is peak frequency and  $w$  is the wave frequency vector.

### Torsethaugen Spectrum

The *Torsethaugen spectrum* is an empirical, two-peaked spectrum, which includes the effect of swell (low-frequency peak) and newly developed waves (high-frequency peak). The spectrum was developed



**Figure 8.10** Torsethaugen spectrum: upper plot shows only one peak at  $\omega_0 = 0.63$  rad/s representing swell and developing sea while the lower plot shows low-frequency swell and newly developing sea with peak frequency  $\omega_0 = 1.57$  rad/s.

for Norsk Hydro (Torsethaugen, 1996), and standardized under the Norsok Standard (1999). The spectrum was developed using curve fitting of experimental data from the North Sea.

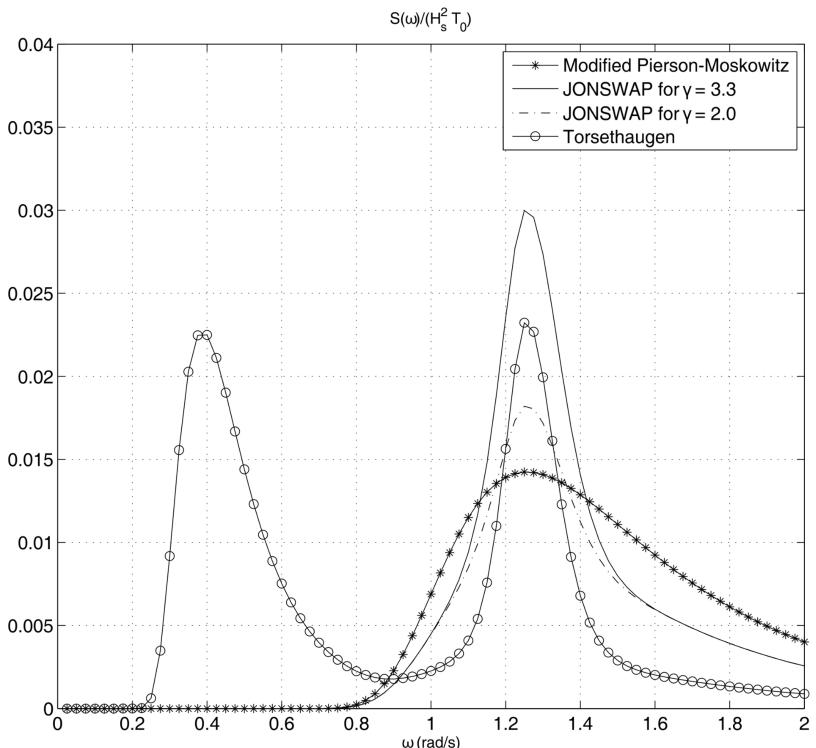
### Matlab

The Torsethaugen spectrum is included in the MSS toolbox as wave spectrum 7:

```
S = wavespec(7, [Hs, w0], w, 1)
```

where  $H_s$  is the significant wave height,  $w_0$  is peak frequency and  $w$  is the wave frequency vector.

If the peak frequency  $\omega_0$  is chosen to be less than approximately 0.6 rad/s, the Torsethaugen spectrum reduces to a one-peak spectrum where swell dominates. For peak frequencies  $\omega_0 > 0.6$  rad/s the two characteristic peaks shown in Figure 8.10 clearly appear. This is due to the fact that developing waves have energy at high frequencies compared to swell. This combined effect is very common in the North Sea, and it makes DP and autopilot design a challenging task in terms of wave filtering.



**Figure 8.11** Comparison of different wave spectra.

### Matlab

The different wave spectra when plotted for the same wave height and peak frequency are shown in Figure 8.11. The plots are generated by using the wave demo option in the MSS toolbox:

```
gncdemo
```

### 8.2.3 Wave Amplitude Response Model

The relationship between the wave spectrum  $S(\omega_k)$  and the wave amplitude  $A_k$  for a wave component  $k$  is (Faltinsen, 1990)

$$\frac{1}{2}A_k^2 = S(\omega_k)\Delta\omega \quad (8.66)$$

where  $\Delta\omega$  is a constant difference between the frequencies. Formula (8.66) can be used to compute wave-induced responses in the time domain.

### Long-Crested Irregular Sea

The wave elevation of a *long-crested* irregular sea in the origin of  $\{s\}$  of the seakeeping reference frame under the assumption of zero speed can be written as the sum of  $N$  harmonic components:

$$\begin{aligned}\xi &= \sum_{k=1}^N A_k \cos(\omega_k + \epsilon_k) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^N \sqrt{2S(\omega_k)\Delta\omega} \cos(\omega_k + \epsilon_k)\end{aligned}\quad (8.67)$$

where  $\epsilon_k$  is the random phase angle of wave component number  $k$ . Since this expression repeats itself after a time  $2\pi/\Delta\omega$  a large number of wave components  $N$  are needed. However, a practical way to avoid this is to choose  $\omega_k$  randomly in the interval

$$\left[ \omega_k - \frac{\Delta\omega}{2}, \omega_k + \frac{\Delta\omega}{2} \right] \quad (8.68)$$

implying that good results can be obtained for  $N$  in the range 50–100.

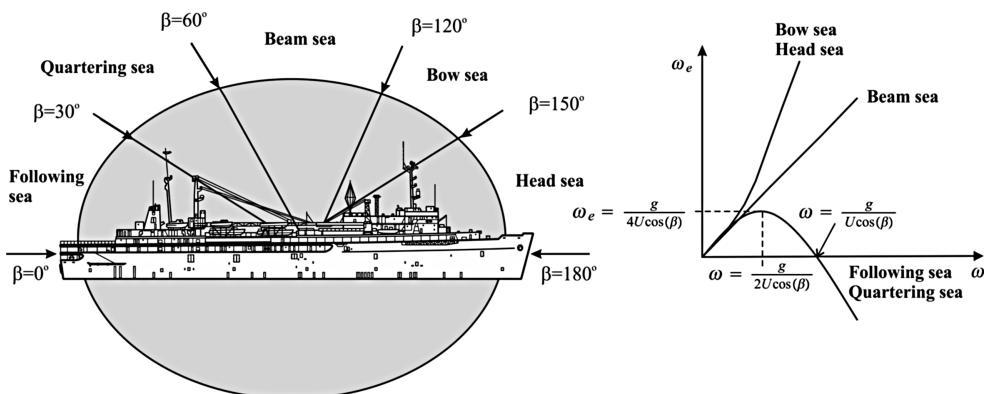
### Short-Crested Irregular Sea

The most likely situation encountered at sea is *short-crested* or confused waves. This is observed as irregularities along the wave crest at right angles to the direction of the wind. The effect of short-crestedness can be modeled by a 2-D wave spectrum:

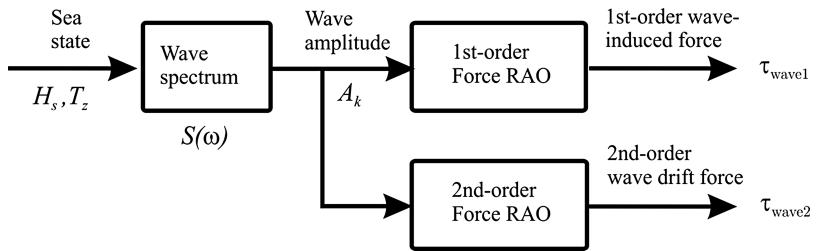
$$S(\omega, \beta) = S(\omega)f(\beta) \quad (8.69)$$

where  $\beta = 0$  corresponds to the main wave propagation direction while a nonzero  $\beta$  value (see Figure 8.12) will spread the energy at different directions. A commonly used spreading function is

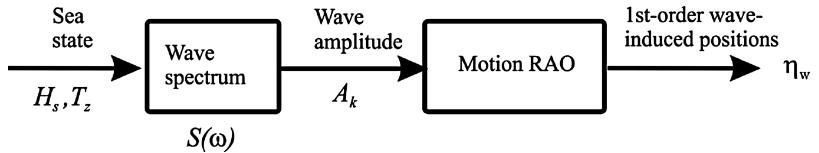
$$f(\beta) = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{\pi} \cos^2(\beta), & -\pi/2 \leq \beta \leq \pi/2 \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases} \quad (8.70)$$



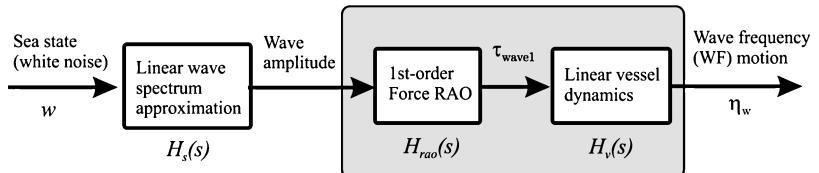
**Figure 8.12** Definition of encounter angle  $\beta$ .



**Figure 8.13** Representation of the wave-induced forces as the product of two transfer functions.



**Figure 8.14** Computational setup for first-order wave-induced positions based on motion RAOs.



**Figure 8.15** Linear approximation for computation of wave-induced positions.

For this case (8.67) becomes

$$\xi = \sum_{k=1}^N \sum_{i=1}^M \sqrt{2S(\omega_k, \beta_i) \Delta\omega \Delta\beta} \cos(\omega_k + \epsilon_k) \quad (8.71)$$

where  $\beta_i$  is taken randomly in the interval

$$\left[ \beta_k - \frac{\Delta\beta}{2}, \beta_k + \frac{\Delta\beta}{2} \right] \quad (8.72)$$

These equations effectively represent the first block in Figures 8.13–8.15.

### Extension to Forward Speed using the Frequency of Encounter

For a marine craft moving at forward speed  $U$ , the peak frequency of the spectrum  $\omega_0$  will be shifted according to

$$\omega_e(U, \omega_0, \beta) = \left| \omega_0 - \frac{\omega_0^2}{g} U \cos(\beta) \right| \quad (8.73)$$

where

$\omega_e$  - encounter frequency (rad/s)

$\omega_p$  - wave spectrum peak frequency (rad/s)

$g$  - acceleration of gravity (m/s<sup>2</sup>)

$U$  - total speed of ship (m/s)

$\beta$  - the angle between the heading and the direction of the wave (rad)

The definition of the encounter angle  $\beta$  is shown in Figure 8.12. The expression for the wave elevation (8.71) can be redefined in terms of the frequency of encounter for a ship moving at forward speed  $U > 0$  and varying wave directions  $\beta_i$ . Moreover,

$$\xi = \sum_{k=1}^N \sum_{i=1}^N \sqrt{2S(\omega_k, \beta_i) \Delta\omega \Delta\beta} \underbrace{\cos(\omega_k - \frac{\omega_k^2}{g} U \cos(\beta_i) + \epsilon_k)}_{\omega_e(U, \omega_k, \beta_i)} \quad (8.74)$$

This modification is particular useful for ship maneuvering.

### 8.2.4 Wave Force Response Amplitude Operators

Force RAOs can be computed for a particular craft using a hydrodynamic program where the hull geometry is specified in an input file. These programs are usually based on potential theory, as described in Section 5.1. Since the equations of motions of a moving craft are expressed in terms of Newton's second law

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\mathbf{v}} = \sum_{i=1}^K \boldsymbol{\tau}_i \quad (8.75)$$

it is advantageous to represent the wave loads as generalized wave-induced forces

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave1}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave2}} \quad (8.76)$$

The wave force responses are computed for different sea states by using a wave spectrum  $S(\omega)$  to describe the wave amplitude components  $A_k$  as discussed in Section 8.2.3. The force RAO relates the wave amplitudes to the wave-induced force, as shown in Figure 8.13. The necessary equations that are needed to represent the force RAOs and compute the wave-induced forces in the time domain are presented now. The Simulink code for this is included in the MSS Hydro toolbox.

#### Normalized Force RAOs

The first- and second-order wave forces for varying wave directions  $\beta_i$  and wave frequencies  $\omega_k$  are denoted  $\tilde{\tau}_{\text{wave1}}^{(\text{dof})}(\omega_k, \beta_i)$  and  $\tilde{\tau}_{\text{wave2}}^{(\text{dof})}(\omega_k, \beta_i)$  where  $\text{dof} \in \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ . The normalized force RAOs are complex variables (WAMIT Inc., 2010):

$$F_{\text{wave1}}^{(\text{dof})}(\omega_k, \beta_i) = \left| \frac{\tilde{\tau}_{\text{wave1}}^{(\text{dof})}(\omega_k, \beta_i)}{\rho g A_k} \right| e^{j\angle \tilde{\tau}_{\text{wave1}}^{(\text{dof})}(\omega_k, \beta_i)} \quad (8.77)$$

$$F_{\text{wave2}}^{(\text{dof})}(\omega_k, \beta_i) = \left| \frac{\tilde{\tau}_{\text{wave2}}^{(\text{dof})}(\omega_k, \beta_i)}{\rho g A_k^2} \right| e^{j\angle \tilde{\tau}_{\text{wave2}}^{(\text{dof})}(\omega_k, \beta_i)} \quad (8.78)$$

The output from the hydrodynamic code is usually an ASCII file containing RAOs in table format. Let us denote the imaginary and real parts of the force RAOs by two Matlab structures:  $\text{Im}_{\text{wave1}}\{\text{dof}\}(k, i)$  and  $\text{Re}_{\text{wave1}}\{\text{dof}\}(k, i)$ . The amplitudes and phases for different frequencies  $\omega_k$  and wave directions  $\beta_i$  for the first-order wave-induced forces can be computed according to the formulae

$$|F_{\text{wave1}}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega_k, \beta_i)| = \sqrt{\text{Im}_{\text{wave1}}\{\text{dof}\}(k, i)^2 + \text{Re}_{\text{wave1}}\{\text{dof}\}(k, i)^2} \quad (8.79)$$

$$\angle F_{\text{wave1}}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega_k, \beta_i) = \text{atan2}(\text{Im}_{\text{wave1}}\{\text{dof}\}(k, i), \text{Re}_{\text{wave1}}\{\text{dof}\}(k, i)) \quad (8.80)$$

The amplitudes and phases for the second-order mean forces are

$$|F_{\text{wave2}}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega_k, \beta_i)| = \text{Re}_{\text{wave2}}\{\text{dof}\}(k, i) \quad (8.81)$$

$$\angle F_{\text{wave2}}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega_k, \beta_i) = 0 \quad (8.82)$$

### Matlab

The motion RAOs are processed in the MSS Hydro Matlab toolbox by using m-file commands:

```
wamit2vessel % read and process WAMIT data
veres2vessel % read and process ShipX (Veres) data
```

The data are represented in the workspace as Matlab structures:

```
vessel.forceRAO.w(k) % frequencies
vessel.forceRAO.amp{\text{dof}}(k, i, speed_no) % amplitudes
vessel.forceRAO.phase{\text{dof}}(k, i, speed_no) % phases
```

where  $\text{speed\_no}=1$  represents  $U = 0$ . For the mean drift forces only surge, sway and yaw are considered ( $\text{dof} \in \{1, 2, 3\}$  where the third component corresponds to yaw)

```
vessel.driftfrc.w(k) % frequencies
vessel.driftfrc.amp{\text{dof}}(k, i, speed_no) % amplitudes
```

It is possible to plot the force RAOs using

```
plotTF
plotWD
```

### Wave Forces (No Spreading Function)

Since the first- and second-order wave forces are represented in terms of the complex variables  $F_{\text{wave1}}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega_k, \beta_i)$  and  $F_{\text{wave2}}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega_k, \beta_i)$ , the responses for sinusoidal excitations can be computed using different wave spectra. When doing this, linear superposition is employed as illustrated in Figure 8.13. Let the wave-induced forces in 6 DOF be denoted by vectors:

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave1}} = [\tau_{\text{wave1}}^{(1)}, \eta_{\text{wave1}}^{(2)}, \eta_{\text{wave1}}^{(3)}, \eta_{\text{wave1}}^{(4)}, \eta_{\text{wave1}}^{(5)}, \eta_{\text{wave1}}^{(6)}]^T \quad (8.83)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave2}} = [\tau_{\text{wave2}}^{(1)}, \eta_{\text{wave2}}^{(2)}, \eta_{\text{wave2}}^{(3)}, \eta_{\text{wave2}}^{(4)}, \eta_{\text{wave2}}^{(5)}, \eta_{\text{wave2}}^{(6)}]^T \quad (8.84)$$

For the no spreading case, the wave direction  $\beta = \text{constant}$  such that

$$\tau_{\text{wave1}}^{\{\text{dof}\}} = \sum_{k=1}^N \rho g |F_{\text{wave1}}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega_k, \beta)| A_k \cos (\omega_e(U, \omega_k, \beta)t + \angle F_{\text{wave1}}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega_k, \beta) + \epsilon_k) \quad (8.85)$$

$$\tau_{\text{wave2}}^{\{\text{dof}\}} = \sum_{k=1}^N \rho g |F_{\text{wave2}}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega_k, \beta)| A_k^2 \cos (\omega_e(U, \omega_k, \beta)t + \epsilon_k) \quad (8.86)$$

where

$$\omega_e(U, \omega_k, \beta) = \omega_k - \frac{\omega_k^2}{g} U \cos(\beta) \quad (8.87)$$

### Wave Forces (Spreading Function)

The more general case, where the spreading function (8.70) is included, can be simulated by using varying wave directions  $\beta_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, M$ ) and

$$\tau_{\text{wave1}}^{\{\text{dof}\}} = \sum_{k=1}^N \sum_{i=1}^M \rho g |F_{\text{wave1}}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega_k, \beta_i)| A_k \cos (\omega_e(U, \omega_k, \beta_i)t + \angle F_{\text{wave1}}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega_k, \beta_i) + \epsilon_k) \quad (8.88)$$

$$\tau_{\text{wave2}}^{\{\text{dof}\}} = \sum_{k=1}^N \sum_{i=1}^M \rho g |F_{\text{wave2}}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega_k, \beta_i)| A_k^2 \cos (\omega_e(U, \omega_k, \beta_i)t + \epsilon_k) \quad (8.89)$$

where

$$\omega_e(U, \omega_k, \beta_i) = \omega_k - \frac{\omega_k^2}{g} U \cos(\beta_i) \quad (8.90)$$

### 8.2.5 Motion Response Amplitude Operators

An alternative to the force RAO representation in Section 8.2.4 is to use motion RAOs for position, velocity and acceleration to compute the wave-induced motions. For force RAOs the response will be generalized forces as shown in Figure 8.13. However, in a linear system it is possible to move the forces through the chain of integrators to obtain generalized position. The first-order wave-induced forces,  $\tau_{\text{wave1}}$ , are zero-mean oscillatory wave forces. Consider the linear system

$$[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\omega)]\ddot{\xi} + \mathbf{B}(\omega)\dot{\xi} + \mathbf{C}\xi = \tau_{\text{wave1}} \quad (8.91)$$

By assuming harmonic motions

$$\xi = \bar{\xi} \cos(\omega t) = \bar{\xi} \operatorname{Re}(e^{j\omega t}) \quad (8.92)$$

where  $\bar{\xi}$  is a vector of amplitudes, (8.91) can be written

$$-\omega^2 [\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\omega)]\bar{\xi} - j\omega \mathbf{B}(\omega)\bar{\xi} + \mathbf{C}\bar{\xi} = \bar{\tau}_{\text{wave1}} \quad (8.93)$$

The responses can be evaluated as

$$\bar{\xi} = \mathbf{H}_v(j\omega)\bar{\tau}_{\text{wave1}} \quad (8.94)$$

where the *force-to-motion* transfer function

$$\mathbf{H}_v(j\omega) = [-\omega^2[\mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{A}(\omega)] - j\omega\mathbf{B}(\omega) + \mathbf{C}]^{-1} \quad (8.95)$$

is a low-pass filter representing the vessel dynamics. This expression confirms that the first-order wave-induced position can be computed by low-pass filtering the generalized forces  $\tau_{\text{wave1}}$ . Since the wave-induced forces,  $\tau_{\text{wave1}}$ , are computed using linear theory, the wave-induced positions,  $\xi$ , are linear responses, which can be modeled by RAOs. Notice that the motion RAOs depend on the model matrices  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}$ ,  $\mathbf{A}(\omega)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(\omega)$  and  $\mathbf{C}$  while force RAOs are only dependent on the wave excitations.

Hydrodynamic programs compute both the motion and force RAOs. Let us denote the first-order wave-induced positions in  $\{n\}$  by the vector

$$\boldsymbol{\eta}_w = [\eta_w^{(1)}, \eta_w^{(2)}, \eta_w^{(3)}, \eta_w^{(4)}, \eta_w^{(5)}, \eta_w^{(6)}]^\top \quad (8.96)$$

such that the total motion becomes

$$\mathbf{y} = \boldsymbol{\eta} + \boldsymbol{\eta}_w \quad (8.97)$$

The wave-induced positions are computed using a wave spectrum according to (see Figure 8.14)

$$\eta_w^{(\text{dof})} = \sum_{k=1}^N \sum_{i=1}^M |\eta_w^{(\text{dof})}(\omega_k, \beta_i)| A_k \cos(\omega_e(U, \omega_k, \beta_i)t + \phi_w^{(\text{dof})}(\omega_k, \beta_i) + \epsilon_k) \quad (8.98)$$

where  $|\eta_w^{(\text{dof})}(\omega_k, \beta_i)|$  and  $\phi_w^{(\text{dof})}(\omega_k, \beta_i)$  are the motion RAO amplitude and phase for frequency  $\omega_k$  and wave direction  $\beta_i$ . This expression does not contain the second-order wave-induced forces. Consequently, wave drift forces must be added manually, for instance by using the wave drift force RAO to compute  $\tau_{\text{wave2}}^{(\text{dof})}$ .

## 8.2.6 State-Space Models for Wave Responses

When simulating and testing feedback control systems it is useful to have a simple and effective way of representing the wave forces. The force RAO representation discussed in Section 8.2.4 requires that the ship geometry is known a priori and that the user has access to a hydrodynamic program for numerical computation of RAO tables. This is also the case for the motion RAO approach discussed in Section 8.2.5.

**1. Linear Approximation for WF Position:** An alternative approach is to represent the motion RAO formulation in Figure 8.14 as a state-space model where the wave spectrum is approximated by a linear filter. In addition to this, the response of the motion RAOs and the linear vessel dynamics in cascade is modeled as constant tunable gains:

$$\mathbf{K} = \text{diag}\{K^{(1)}, K^{(2)}, K^{(3)}, K^{(4)}, K^{(5)}, K^{(6)}\} \quad (8.99)$$

This means that the RAO vessel model is approximated as (see Figure 8.15)

$$\mathbf{H}_{\text{rao}}(s)\mathbf{H}_v(s) \approx \mathbf{K} \quad (8.100)$$

where  $\mathbf{H}_{\text{rao}}(s)$  is the *wave amplitude-to-force* transfer function and  $\mathbf{H}_v(s)$  is the *force-to-motion* transfer function (8.95). The fixed-gain approximation (8.100) produces good results in a closed-loop system where the purpose is to test robustness and performance of a feedback control system in the presence of waves. This is done by tuning of the gains until realistic results are obtained. For marine craft it is common to use position test signals in the magnitude of  $\pm 1.0$  m for surge, sway and heave and attitude test signals of magnitude  $\pm 5.0$ – $10.0$  degrees in roll, pitch and yaw.

Since the WF model as well as motion RAO approach only models the first-order wave-induced motions it is necessary to include second-order wave drift forces when testing integral action in a feedback control system. The state observer must also be able to handle biased measurements.

If the fixed gain approximation (8.100) is applied, the generalized WF position vector  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_w$  in Figure 8.15 becomes

$$\boldsymbol{\eta}_w = \mathbf{K}\mathbf{H}_s(s)\mathbf{w}(s) \quad (8.101)$$

where  $\mathbf{H}_s(s)$  is a diagonal matrix containing linear approximations of the wave spectrum  $S(\omega)$ . This idea dates back to Balchen *et al.* (1976) who observed that the motions of a marine craft could be linearly superpositioned by adding two motion components: the *wave-frequency (WF)* motion  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_w$  and the marine craft *low-frequency (LF)* motion  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ . Moreover, the total motion can be represented as

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v} \quad (8.102)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) + \mathbf{g}_0 = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave2}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (8.103)$$

$$\mathbf{y} = \boldsymbol{\eta} + \boldsymbol{\eta}_w \quad (8.104)$$

Notice that the effect of  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave1}}$  is included in  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_w$  so this signal is not needed when integrating the second equation, that is  $\dot{\mathbf{v}}$ . The WF position for each degree of freedom becomes

$$\boldsymbol{\eta}_w^{\{\text{dof}\}} = \mathbf{K}^{\{\text{dof}\}}\xi^{\{\text{dof}\}} \quad (8.105)$$

$$\xi^{\{\text{dof}\}}(s) = h^{\{\text{dof}\}}(s) w^{\{\text{dof}\}}(s) \quad (8.106)$$

where  $h^{\{\text{dof}\}}(s)$  is a linear approximation of the wave spectral density function  $S(\omega)$  and  $w^{\{\text{dof}\}}(s)$  is a zero-mean Gaussian white noise process with unity power across the spectrum:

$$P_{ww}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega) = 1.0 \quad (8.107)$$

Hence, the power spectral density (PSD) function for  $\xi^{\{\text{dof}\}}(s)$  can be computed as

$$P_{\xi\xi}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega) = |h^{\{\text{dof}\}}(j\omega)|^2 P_{ww}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega) = |h^{\{\text{dof}\}}(j\omega)|^2 \quad (8.108)$$

The ultimate goal is to design an approximation  $P_{\xi\xi}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega)$  to  $S(\omega)$ , for instance by means of nonlinear regression, such that  $P_{\xi\xi}^{\{\text{dof}\}}(\omega)$  reflects the energy distribution of  $S(\omega)$  in the relevant frequency range. Linear approximations that are well suited for this purpose are discussed later.

**2. Linear Approximation for First-order Wave-Induced Forces:** An alternative approach to (8.102)–(8.104) is to approximate the first-order wave-induced forces by a linear filter such that

$$\dot{\eta} = J_{\Theta}(\eta)v \quad (8.109)$$

$$M\ddot{v} + C(v)v + D(v)v + g(\eta) + g_0 = \tau_{wind} + \tau_{wave1} + \tau_{wave2} + \tau \quad (8.110)$$

$$\tau_{wave1} \approx K H_s(s) w(s) \quad (8.111)$$

In this case the *wave amplitude-to-force* transfer function is approximated by a constant tunable gain  $K$  that must be chosen such that the amplitudes of the signals in  $\eta$  are of reasonable magnitude.

### Second-Order Wave Transfer Function Approximation

A linear wave response approximation for  $H_s(s) = \text{diag}\{h^{(1)}(s), \dots, h^{(6)}(s)\}$  is usually preferred by ship control systems engineers, owing to its simplicity and applicability. The first applications were reported by Balchen *et al.* (1976) who proposed modeling the WF motion of a dynamically positioned ship in surge, sway and yaw by three harmonic oscillators without damping. Later Sælid *et al.* (1983) introduced a damping term  $\lambda$  in the wave model to fit the shape of the PM spectrum better. In general, there will be six transfer functions, one for each DOF. For notational simplicity, only one DOF is considered. The wave spectrum can be approximated by a second-order system of relative degree one:

$$h(s) = \frac{K_w s}{s^2 + 2\lambda\omega_0 s + \omega_0^2} \quad (8.112)$$

It is convenient to define the gain constant according to

$$K_w = 2\lambda\omega_0\sigma \quad (8.113)$$

where  $\sigma$  is a constant describing the wave intensity,  $\lambda$  is a damping coefficient and  $\omega_0$  is the dominating wave frequency. Consequently, substituting  $s = j\omega$  yields the frequency response

$$h(j\omega) = \frac{j 2(\lambda\omega_0\sigma)\omega}{(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2) + j 2\lambda\omega_0\omega} \quad (8.114)$$

The magnitude of  $h(j\omega)$  becomes

$$|h(j\omega)| = \frac{2(\lambda\omega_0\sigma)\omega}{\sqrt{(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2)^2 + 4(\lambda\omega_0\omega)^2}} \quad (8.115)$$

From (8.108), it is seen that

$$P_{\xi\xi}(\omega) = |h(j\omega)|^2 = \frac{4(\lambda\omega_0\sigma)^2\omega^2}{(\omega_0^2 - \omega^2)^2 + 4(\lambda\omega_0\omega)^2} \quad (8.116)$$

### Determination of $\sigma$ and $\lambda$

Since the maximum value of  $P_{\xi\xi}(\omega)$  and  $S(\omega)$  are obtained for  $\omega = \omega_0$ , it follows that

$$P_{\xi\xi}(\omega_0) = S(\omega_0) \quad (8.117)$$

‡

$$\sigma^2 = \max_{0 < \omega < \infty} S(\omega) \quad (8.118)$$

For the PM spectrum (8.53) this implies

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{A}{\omega_0^5} \exp\left(-\frac{B}{\omega_0^4}\right)} \quad (8.119)$$

while the term  $\gamma^{Y(\omega_0)}$  must be included for the JONSWAP spectrum. The damping ratio  $\lambda$  can be computed by requiring that the energy, that is the areas under  $P_{gg}(\omega)$  and  $S(\omega)$  of the spectra, be equal.

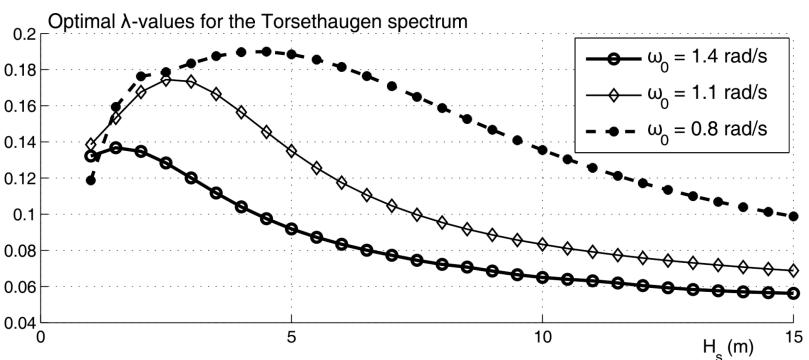
An alternative approach is to use nonlinear least-squares (NLS) to compute  $\lambda$  such that  $P_{gg}(\omega)$  fits  $S(\omega)$  in a least-squares sense; see Figure 8.17. This is demonstrated in Example 8.1 using the Matlab optimization toolbox.

#### **Example 8.1 (Nonlinear Least-Squares Optimization of Linear Spectra)**

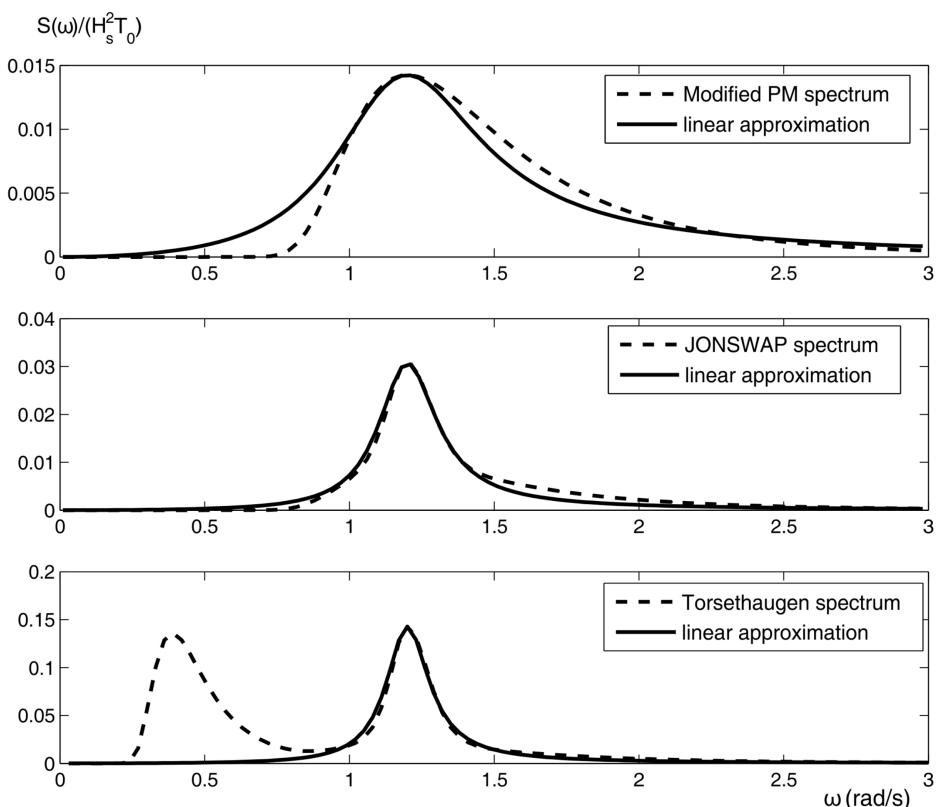
Consider the Matlab script ExLinspec.m for computation of  $\lambda$ . The output of the nonlinear optimization process gives the following  $\lambda$  values for the modified PM and JONSWAP spectra:

	$\omega_0 = 0.5$	$\omega_0 = 0.8$	$\omega_0 = 1.1$	$\omega_0 = 1.4$	Recommended values
$\lambda$ (MPM)	0.2565	0.2573	0.2588	0.2606	0.26
$\lambda$ (JONSWAP)	0.1017	0.1017	0.1017	0.1017	0.10

The  $\lambda$  value for both these spectra are independent of the wave height  $H_s$ . For the Torsethaugen spectrum the  $\lambda$  values vary with both  $H_s$  and  $\omega_0$  as shown in Figure 8.16. The results of the curve-fitting procedure for the three different spectra are shown in Figure 8.17. Since the Torsethaugen spectrum is a two-peaked spectrum a second linear spectrum should be added to fit the swell peak at low frequencies.



**Figure 8.16** Least-squares optimal  $\lambda$  values for the Torsethaugen spectrum for varying  $H_s$  and  $\omega_0$  when a linear spectrum is fitted to the high-frequency peak of the spectrum.



**Figure 8.17** Nonlinear least-squares fit of a linear spectrum to the PM, JONSWAP and Torsethaugen spectra. Only one peak is approximated for the Torsethaugen spectrum.

### Matlab

Power spectral density function:

```
function Pyy = Slin(lambda,w)
% Pyy = Slin(lambda,w) 2nd-order linear PSD function
% w = wave spectrum frequency (rad/s)
% lambda = relative damping factor
global sigma wo
Pyy = 4*(lambda*wo*sigma)^2*w.^2 ./ ((wo^2-w.^2).^2 + ...
    4*(lambda*wo.*w).^2)
```

**Matlab**

Nonlinear least-squares:

```
% Matlab script for plotting of nonlinear least-squares fit,
% see ExLinspec.m
global sigma wo
wo = 1.2; To = 2*pi/wo; Hs = 10; wmax = 3;
w = (0.0001:0.01:wmax)';

% Modified PM
subplot(311)
S = wavespec(3,[Hs,To],w,1); sigma = sqrt(max(S));
lambda = lsqcurvefit('Slin',0.1,w,S)
hold on; plot(w,Slin(lambda,w)); hold off;
legend('Modified PM spectrum','Linear approximation')

% JONSWAP
subplot(312)
S = wavespec(7,[Hs,wo,3.3],w,1); sigma = sqrt(max(S));
lambda = lsqcurvefit('Slin',0.1,w,S)
hold on; plot(w,Slin(lambda,w)); hold off;
legend('Modified PM spectrum','Linear approximation')

% Torsethaugen
subplot(313)
S = wavespec(8,[Hs,wo],w,1); sigma = sqrt(max(S));
lambda = lsqcurvefit('Slin',0.1,w,S)
hold on; plot(w,Slin(lambda,w)); hold off;
legend('Modified PM spectrum','Linear approximation')
```

**State-Space Representations of Linear Wave Spectra**

A linear state-space model can be obtained from (8.112) by transforming this expression to the time domain by defining  $\dot{x}_{w1} = x_{w2}$  and  $x_{w2} = y_w$  as state variables. This implies that the state-space model can be written

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_w = \mathbf{A}_w \mathbf{x}_w + \mathbf{e}_w w \quad (8.120)$$

$$y_w = \mathbf{c}_w^\top \mathbf{x}_w \quad (8.121)$$

where  $w$  is a zero-mean white noise process. Writing this expression in component form yields

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_{w1} \\ \dot{x}_{w2} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -\omega_0^2 & -2\lambda\omega_0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_{w1} \\ x_{w2} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ K_w \end{bmatrix} w \quad (8.122)$$

$$y_w = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_{w1} \\ x_{w2} \end{bmatrix} \quad (8.123)$$

### Higher-Order Wave Transfer Function Approximations

An alternative wave transfer function based on five parameters has been proposed by Grimble *et al.* (1980) and Fung and Grimble (1983). This model takes the form

$$h(s) = \frac{K_w s^2}{s^4 + a_1 s^3 + a_2 s^2 + a_3 s + a_4} \quad (8.124)$$

where  $a_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 4$ ) are four parameters. Consequently, four differential equations are required to describe the wave model:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_{w1} \\ \dot{x}_{w2} \\ \dot{x}_{w3} \\ \dot{x}_{w4} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -a_4 & -a_3 & -a_2 & -a_1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_{w1} \\ x_{w2} \\ x_{w3} \\ x_{w4} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ K_w \end{bmatrix} w \quad (8.125)$$

$$y_w = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_{w1} \\ x_{w2} \\ x_{w3} \\ x_{w4} \end{bmatrix} \quad (8.126)$$

The number of parameters can be reduced by assuming that the denominator can be factorized according to

$$h(s) = \frac{K_w s^2}{(s^2 + 2\lambda\omega_0 s + \omega_0^2)^2} \quad (8.127)$$

Triantafyllou *et al.* (1983) have shown by applying a rational approximation to the Bretschneider spectrum that a satisfactory approximation of the WF motion can be obtained by using the transfer function

$$h(s) = \frac{K_w s^2}{(s^2 + 2\lambda\omega_0 s + \omega_0^2)^3} \quad (8.128)$$

which only has three unknown parameters  $\lambda$ ,  $\omega_0$  and  $K_w$ . The advantage of the higher order models to the simple second-order system (8.112) is that they will represent a more precise approximation to the wave spectrum response through a nonlinear least-squares curve-fitting procedure. The disadvantage, of course, is higher model complexity and perhaps more parameters to determine.

#### **Example 8.2 (Linear Model for First- and Second-order Wave-Induced Forces)**

A marine control system can be tested under the influence of waves by separating the first- and second-order wave-induced forces. For a surface vessel in 3 DOF ( $dof \in \{1, 2, 6\}$ ) the wave forces and

moment are

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} = [X_{\text{wave}}, Y_{\text{wave}}, N_{\text{wave}}]^{\top} \quad (8.129)$$

where  $X_{\text{wave}}$ ,  $Y_{\text{wave}}$  and  $N_{\text{wave}}$  are generated by using

$$X_{\text{wave}} = \frac{K_w^{(1)} s}{s^2 + 2\lambda^{(1)}\omega_e^{(1)} s + (\omega_e^{(1)})^2} w_1 + d_1 \quad (8.130)$$

$$Y_{\text{wave}} = \frac{K_w^{(2)} s}{s^2 + 2\lambda^{(2)}\omega_e^{(2)} s + (\omega_e^{(2)})^2} w_2 + d_2 \quad (8.131)$$

$$N_{\text{wave}} = \frac{K_w^{(6)} s}{s^2 + 2\lambda^{(6)}\omega_e^{(6)} s + (\omega_e^{(6)})^2} w_3 + d_3 \quad (8.132)$$

where the wave drift forces  $d_i$  ( $i = 1, 2, 3$ ) are modeled as slowly varying bias terms (Wiener processes):

$$\dot{d}_1 = w_4 \quad (8.133)$$

$$\dot{d}_2 = w_5 \quad (8.134)$$

$$\dot{d}_3 = w_6 \quad (8.135)$$

Here  $w_i$  ( $i = 1, 2, \dots, 6$ ) are Gaussian white noise processes. The amplitudes of  $X_{\text{wave}}$ ,  $Y_{\text{wave}}$  and  $N_{\text{wave}}$  are adjusted by choosing the constants  $K_w^{(\text{dof})}$  while the spectra are parametrized in terms of the pairs  $\lambda^{(\text{dof})}$  and  $\omega_e^{(\text{dof})}$ . Notice that the frequency of encounter  $\omega_e^{(\text{dof})}$  should be used in the transfer functions for a ship moving at forward speed  $U > 0$ . The wave spectrum parameters should be chosen to represent the true sea state. A good approximation is to use the  $\lambda^{(\text{dof})}$  values in Example 8.1 while a typical wave peak frequency  $\omega_0^{(\text{dof})}$  needed to compute  $\omega_e^{(\text{dof})}$  could be 0.8 rad/s. Alternatively, the sea state description in Table 8.5 can be used to find an appropriate  $\omega_0^{(\text{dof})}$ . Equations (8.133)–(8.135) should be modified by using saturating elements to prevent  $d_i$  from exceeding a predetermined maximum physical limit, that is  $|d_i| \leq d_{i,\max}$ .

### 8.3 Ocean Current Forces and Moments

Ocean currents are horizontal and vertical circulation systems of ocean waters produced by gravity, wind friction and water density variation in different parts of the ocean. Besides *wind-generated currents*, the heat exchange at the sea surface, together with salinity changes, develop an additional sea current component, usually referred to as *thermohaline currents*. A world map showing the most major ocean surface currents is found in Defant (1961).

The oceans are conveniently divided into two water spheres, the cold and warm water spheres. Since the Earth is rotating, the Coriolis force will try to turn the major currents to the East in the northern hemisphere and West in the southern hemisphere. Finally, the major ocean circulations will also have a tidal component arising from planetary interactions like gravity. In coastal regions and fjords, tidal components can reach very high speeds, in fact speeds of 2–3 m/s or more have been measured.

#### Equations of Motion including Ocean Currents

In order to simulate ocean currents and their effect on marine craft motion, the following model can be applied:

$$\underbrace{\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{g}(\eta) + \mathbf{g}_0}_{\text{rigid-body and hydrostatic terms}} + \underbrace{\mathbf{M}_A\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r}_{\text{hydrodynamic terms}} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (8.136)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}_r = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_c$  is the relative velocity vector. The generalized ocean current velocity of an irrotational fluid is

$$\mathbf{v}_c = [\underbrace{u_c, v_c, w_c}_{\mathbf{v}_c^b}, 0, 0, 0]^\top \quad (8.137)$$

where  $u_c$ ,  $v_c$  and  $w_c$  are expressed in  $\{b\}$ . Moreover,  $\mathbf{v}_c^b = [u_c, v_c, w_c]^\top$ . The ocean current velocity vectors in  $\{n\}$  and  $\{b\}$  satisfy

$$\mathbf{v}_c^n = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})\mathbf{v}_c^b \quad (8.138)$$

#### **Definition 8.1 (Irrotational Constant Ocean Current)**

An irrotational constant ocean current in  $\{n\}$  is defined by

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}}_c^n = \dot{\mathbf{R}}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})\mathbf{v}_c^b + \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})\dot{\mathbf{v}}_c^b := \mathbf{0} \quad (8.139)$$

where

$$\dot{\mathbf{R}}_b^n(\Theta_{nb}) = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b) \quad (8.140)$$

Consequently,

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}}_c^b = -\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{v}_c^b \quad (8.141)$$

#### **Property 8.1 (Irrotational Constant Ocean Currents)**

If the Coriolis and centripetal matrix  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r)$  is parametrized independent of linear velocity  $\mathbf{v}_1 = [u, v, w]^\top$ , for instance by using (3.57), and the ocean current is irrotational and constant (Definition 8.1), the rigid-body kinetics satisfies (Hegrenæs, 2010)

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r \quad (8.142)$$

with

$$\mathbf{v}_r = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}^b - \mathbf{v}_c^b \\ \boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} \quad (8.143)$$

**Proof.** Since the Coriolis and centripetal matrix represented by (3.57) is independent of linear velocity  $\mathbf{v}_1 = [u, v, w]^\top$ , it follows that

$$\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r) = \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}) \quad (8.144)$$

The property

$$\mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}}_c + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_c = \mathbf{0} \quad (8.145)$$

is proven by expanding the matrices  $\mathbf{M}_{RB}$  and  $\mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r)$  and corresponding acceleration and velocity vectors according to

$$\begin{bmatrix} m\mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} & -m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \\ m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) & \mathbf{I}_b \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{v}_c^b \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 1} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} m\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b) & -m\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b) \\ m\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_g^b)\mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b) & -\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{I}_b\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_c^b \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 1} \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{0}$$

Finally, it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} &= \mathbf{M}_{RB}[\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \dot{\mathbf{v}}_c] + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r)[\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{v}_c] \\ &= \mathbf{M}_{RB}\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r \end{aligned} \quad (8.146)$$

### Equations of Relative Velocity

Property 8.1 can be used to simplify the representation of the equations of motion (8.136). Moreover,

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{g}(\eta) + \mathbf{g}_0 = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (8.147)$$

where

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}_{RB} + \mathbf{M}_A \quad (8.148)$$

$$\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r) = \mathbf{C}_{RB}(\mathbf{v}_r) + \mathbf{C}_A(\mathbf{v}_r) \quad (8.149)$$

For DP vessels and ships moving on a straight-line path,  $\boldsymbol{\omega}_{b/n}^b \approx \mathbf{0}$ . Hence, the acceleration of the current (8.141) is negligible such that

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}}_c \approx \mathbf{0} \quad (8.150)$$

Under this assumption, the equations of motion (8.147) become

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}_r)\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{g}(\eta) + \mathbf{g}_0 = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} + \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (8.151)$$

We will now turn our attention to simulation models for  $\mathbf{v}_c$ .

### Current Speed and Direction

The ocean current speed is denoted by  $V_c$  while its direction relative to the moving craft is conveniently expressed in terms of two angles: *angle of attack*  $\alpha_c$  and *sideslip angle*  $\beta_c$  as shown in Figure 2.9 in Section 2.4. For computer simulations the ocean current velocity can be generated by using a first-order *Gauss–Markov process*:

$$\dot{V}_c + \mu V_c = w \quad (8.152)$$

where  $w$  is Gaussian white noise and  $\mu \geq 0$  is a constant. If  $\mu = 0$ , this model reduces to a *random walk*, corresponding to time integration of *white noise*. A saturating element is usually used in the integration process to limit the current speed to

$$V_{\min} \leq V_c(t) \leq V_{\max} \quad (8.153)$$

The direction of the current can be fixed by specifying constant values for  $\alpha_c$  and  $\beta_c$ . Time-varying directions can easily be simulated by associating dynamics to  $\alpha_c$  and  $\beta_c$ .

### 8.3.1 3-D Irrotational Ocean Current Model

A 3-D ocean current model is obtained by transforming the current speed  $V_c$  from FLOW axes to NED velocities:

$$\mathbf{v}_c^n = \mathbf{R}_{y,\alpha_c}^\top \mathbf{R}_{z,-\beta_c}^\top \begin{bmatrix} V_c \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (8.154)$$

where the rotation matrices  $\mathbf{R}_{y,\alpha_c}$  and  $\mathbf{R}_{z,-\beta_c}$  are defined in Section 2.4. Assuming that the fluid is irrotational implies that

$$\mathbf{v}_c = [u_c, v_c, w_c, 0, 0, 0]^\top \quad (8.155)$$

Expanding (8.154) yields

$$\mathbf{v}_c^n = \begin{bmatrix} V_c \cos(\alpha_c) \cos(\beta_c) \\ V_c \sin(\beta_c) \\ V_c \sin(\alpha_c) \cos(\beta_c) \end{bmatrix} \quad (8.156)$$

which can be transformed to  $\{b\}$  using the Euler angle rotation matrix. Consequently,

$$\begin{bmatrix} u_c \\ v_c \\ w_c \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta_{nb})^\top \mathbf{v}_c^n \quad (8.157)$$

### 8.3.2 2-D Irrotational Ocean Current Model

For the 2-D case (motions in the horizontal plane), the 3-D equations (8.156) with  $\alpha_c = 0$  reduce to

$$\mathbf{v}_c^n = \begin{bmatrix} V_c \cos(\beta_c) \\ V_c \sin(\beta_c) \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (8.158)$$

Hence, from (8.157) it follows that

$$u_c = V_c \cos(\beta_c - \psi), \quad v_c = V_c \sin(\beta_c - \psi) \quad (8.159)$$

Notice that

$$V_c = \sqrt{u_c^2 + v_c^2} \quad (8.160)$$

### Example 8.3 (Maneuvering Model including Ocean Currents)

Consider a linearized maneuvering model in state-space form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & m_{12} & 0 \\ m_{21} & m_{22} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} - \dot{v}_c \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\psi} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} d_{11} & d_{12} & 0 \\ d_{21} & d_{22} & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v - v_c \\ r \\ \psi \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \delta + \begin{bmatrix} Y_{\text{wind}} \\ N_{\text{wind}} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} Y_{\text{wave}} \\ N_{\text{wave}} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (8.161)$$

where  $v$  is the sway velocity,  $r$  is the yaw rate,  $\psi$  is the yaw angle,  $\delta$  is the rudder angle and  $v_c$  is the transverse current velocity given by

$$v_c = V_c \sin(\beta_c - \psi) \quad (8.162)$$

Assume that the current speed is a Gauss–Markov process (8.152) and the direction  $\beta_c = \text{constant}$ . The ocean current acceleration in  $\{b\}$  becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{v}_c &= \dot{V}_c \sin(\beta_c - \psi) - V_c r \cos(\beta_c - \psi) \\ &= -\mu V_c \sin(\beta_c - \psi) + w \sin(\beta_c - \psi) - V_c r \cos(\beta_c - \psi) \end{aligned} \quad (8.163)$$

The resulting state-space model is

$$\begin{aligned} &\begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & m_{12} & 0 & 0 \\ m_{21} & m_{22} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\psi} \\ \dot{V}_c \end{bmatrix} = \\ &\begin{bmatrix} m_{11}\mu V_c \sin(\beta_c - \psi) + m_{11}V_c r \cos(\beta_c - \psi) + d_{11}V_c \sin(\beta_c - \psi) - d_{11}v - d_{12}r \\ m_{21}\mu V_c \sin(\beta_c - \psi) + m_{21}V_c r \cos(\beta_c - \psi) + d_{21}V_c \sin(\beta_c - \psi) - d_{21}v - d_{22}r \\ r \\ -\mu V_c \end{bmatrix} \\ &+ \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \delta + \begin{bmatrix} Y_{\text{wind}} \\ N_{\text{wind}} \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} Y_{\text{wave}} \\ N_{\text{wave}} \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -m_{11} \sin(\beta_c - \psi) \\ -m_{21} \sin(\beta_c - \psi) \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} w \end{aligned}$$

Notice that the state-space model is nonlinear in  $\psi$ ,  $V_c$  and  $\beta_c$  even though the ship model (8.161) was linear.

# Part Two

## Motion Control

*De Motu Gubernando*

# 9

## Introduction

Guidance, navigation and control (GNC) deals with the design of systems that automatically control or remotely control devices or vehicles that are moving under water, on the surface or in space. While Part I of the textbook is dedicated to modeling of marine craft in 6 degrees of freedom, Part II deals with the design of model-based GNC systems. The theory and cases studies are organized as four independent chapters:

**Chapter 10: Guidance Systems:** Systems for automatically guiding the path of a marine craft, usually without direct or continuous human control.

**Chapter 11: Sensor and Navigation Systems:** Systems for determination of the craft's position/attitude, velocity and acceleration.

**Chapter 12: Motion Control Systems:** PID design methods for automatic control of position/attitude, velocity and acceleration. This involves control systems for stabilization, trajectory-tracking and path-following control of marine craft.

**Chapter 13: Advanced Motion Control Systems:** Design of advanced motion control systems using optimal and nonlinear control theory.

In each chapter, theory and case studies are presented with focus on the following applications:

- Ship and underwater vehicle autopilots for course-keeping and turning control
- Waypoint tracking, trajectory-tracking and path-following control systems for marine craft
- Depth autopilots for underwater vehicles
- Yacht control systems
- Attitude control systems for underwater vehicles
- Dynamic positioning (DP) systems for marine craft
- Position mooring (PM) systems for floating vessels
- Fin and rudder-roll reduction systems
- Buoyancy control systems including trim and heel correction systems
- Propulsion and forward speed control systems

### 9.1 Historical Remarks

The history of model-based ship control starts with the invention of the *gyrocompass* in 1908, which allowed for reliable automatic yaw angle feedback. The gyrocompass was the basic instrument in the

first feedback control system for heading control and today these devices are known as autopilots. The next breakthrough was the development of local positioning systems in the 1970s. Global coverage using satellite navigation systems was first made available in 1994. Position control systems opened for automatic systems for waypoint tracking, trajectory tracking and path following.

The development of local area ship positioning systems such as hydroacoustic reference systems (*SSBL, SBL, LBL*), hyperbolic radio navigation systems (*Decca, Loran-C, Omega*), local electromagnetic distance measuring (EDM) systems (*Artemis, Autotape, Miniran, Mini-Ranger III, Syledis, Tellurometer, Trident III, Trisponder*) and taut wire in conjunction with new results in feedback control contributed to the invention and design of the first dynamic positioning systems for ships and rigs in the late 1970s; see Sections 12.2.10 and 13.1.6. The use of DP systems on a global basis in offshore applications was further strengthened by commercialization of satellite navigation systems. In 1994 *Navstar GPS* was declared fully operational (global coverage) even though the first satellite was launched in 1974 (Parkinson and Spilker, 1995). GPS receivers are standard components in waypoint tracking control systems and ship positioning systems worldwide. They are used commercially and by numerous naval forces. Today, three Global Navigation Satellite Systems (GNSS) are commercially available: Navstar GPS (USA), GLONASS (Russia) and GALILEO (European Union).

### 9.1.1 *The Gyroscope and its Contributions to Ship Control*

During the 1850s the French scientist *J. B. L. Foucault* conducted experiments with a wheel (rotor) mounted in gimbal rings, that is a set of rings that permit it to turn freely in any direction. The name gyroscope was adopted for this device. In the experiments Foucault noticed that the spinning wheel maintained its original orientation in space regardless of the Earth's rotation.

In *Encyclopedia Britannica* the following definition is given for a gyroscope:

**Gyroscope:** any device consisting of a rapidly spinning wheel set in a framework that permits it to tilt freely in any direction—that is, to rotate about any axis. The momentum of such a wheel causes it to retain its attitude when the framework is tilted; from this characteristic derive a number of valuable applications. Gyroscopes are used in such instruments as compasses and automatic pilots onboard ships and aircraft, in the steering mechanisms of torpedoes, in antiroll equipment on large ships and in inertial guidance systems.

The first recorded construction of the gyroscope is usually credited to *C. A. Bohnenberger* in 1810, while the first electrically driven gyroscope was demonstrated in 1890 by *G. M. Hopkins* (see Allensworth, 1999, Bennet, 1979). The development of the electrically driven gyroscope was motivated by the need for more reliable navigation systems in steel ships and underwater warfare. A magnetic compass, as opposed to a gyro compass, is highly sensitive to magnetic disturbances, which are commonly found in steel ships and submarines equipped with electrical devices. In parallel works, *Dr H. Anschütz* of Germany and *Elmer Sperry* of the USA both worked on the practical application of the gyroscope. In 1908 Anschütz patented the first North-seeking gyrocompass, while Elmer Sperry was granted a patent for his ballistic compass including vertical damping three years later.

The invention of the gyroscope was one of the key breakthroughs in automatic ship control since it led to the development of the *automatic pilot* (Fossen, 2000a). Historic aspects in a motion control perspective are discussed by Fossen (2000b) while Fossen and Perez (2009) discuss Kalman filtering for positioning and heading control of ships and offshore rigs in conjunction with the 50th anniversary of the Kalman–Bucy filter. The pioneering work of J. G. Balchen and coauthors on ship automation and dynamic positioning is discussed in Breivik and Sand (2009).

### 9.1.2 Autopilots

The autopilot or *automatic pilot* is a device for controlling an aircraft, marine craft or other vehicles without constant human intervention. The earliest automatic pilots could do no more than maintain a fixed heading and they are still used to relieve the pilot on smaller boats during routine cruising. For ships, course-keeping capabilities were the first applications. Modern autopilots can, however, execute complex maneuvers, such as turning and docking operations, or enable the control of inherently unstable vessels such as submarines and some large oil tankers. Autopilots are used to steer surface ships, submarines, torpedoes, missiles, rockets and spacecraft among others.

As mentioned earlier, the work on the gyrocompass was extended to ship steering and closed-loop control by *Elmer Sperry* (1860–1930) who constructed the first automatic ship-steering mechanism (see Allensworth, 1999; Bennet, 1979). This device, referred to as the *Metal Mike*, was a gyroscope-guided autopilot (*gyro pilot*) or a mechanical helmsman. The first field trials of the Sperry standard gyro pilot were conducted in 1922. Metal Mike emulated much of the behavior of a skilled pilot or a helmsman, including compensating for varying sea states using feedback control and automatic gain adjustments.

*Nicholas Minorsky* (1885–1970) presented a detailed analysis of a position feedback control system where he formulated a three-term control law which is today known as *proportional-integral-derivative* (PID) control (see Minorsky, 1922). Observing the way in which a helmsman steered a ship motivated these three different behaviors. In Bennet (1979), there is an interesting analysis of the work of Sperry and Minorsky and their contributions to autopilot design.

The autopilot systems of Sperry and Minorsky were both single-input single-output (SISO) control systems, where the heading (yaw angle) of the ship was measured by a gyrocompass. Today, this signal is fed back to a computer, in which a PID control system (autopilot) is implemented in software (see Section 12.2.6). The autopilot compares the pilot setpoint (desired heading) with the measured heading and computes the rudder command, which is then transmitted to the rudder servo for corrective action.

More recently PID-type autopilots have been replaced by autopilots based on linear quadratic Gaussian (LQG) and  $\mathcal{H}_\infty$ -control design techniques. One of the advantageous features of these design techniques is that they allow for frequency-dependent notch filtering of first-order wave-induced forces (see Chapter 11). Frequency components around the peak frequency of the wave spectrum in yaw must be prevented from entering the feedback loop in order to avoid wear and tear of the thruster and propeller systems. The drawback of the PID controller in cascade with a deadband, notch and/or low-pass filter is that additional phase lag and nonlinearities are introduced in the closed-loop system (see Section 11.1). A model-based state estimator (Kalman filter) reduces these problems. Linear quadratic and  $\mathcal{H}_\infty$  autopilot designs have been reported in the literature by a large number of authors; see Koyama (1967), Norrbin (1972), Van Amerongen and Van Nauta Lemke (1978, 1980), Donha *et al.* (1998), Tzeng (1998b) and Fossen (1994) and references therein, to mention only some.

In addition to LQG and  $\mathcal{H}_\infty$  control, other design techniques have been applied to ship autopilot designs, for instance nonlinear control theory. Autopilot designs for nonlinear systems are treated in detail in Section 13.3.

### 9.1.3 Dynamic Positioning and Position Mooring Systems

The great successes with PID-based autopilot systems and the development of local area positioning systems suggest that three decoupled PID controllers could be used to control the horizontal motion of a ship in surge, sway and yaw exclusively by means of thrusters and propellers. The idea was tested in the 1970s, and the invention was referred to as a *dynamic positioning* (DP) system. PID designs for DP are presented in Section 12.2.10 while optimal DP is discussed in Section 13.1.6

As for the autopilot systems, a challenging problem was to prevent first-order wave-induced forces entering the feedback loop. Several techniques such as notch and low-pass filtering, and the use of dead-band techniques, were tested for this purpose, but with varying levels of success.

In 1960–1961 the *Kalman filter* was published by Kalman (1960) and Kalman and Bucy (1961). Two years later in 1963, the theory for the linear quadratic (LQ) optimal controller was available. This motivated the application of *LQG controllers* in MIMO ship control such as DP since a state observer (Kalman filter) could be used to estimate the wave frequency (WF) and the ship low-frequency (LF) motions; see Section 11.3.6 and Figure 12.23 in Section 12.2.10. Another advantage of a MIMO control strategy was that the interactions between the surge, sway and yaw modes could be dealt with. This is not possible with three decoupled PID controllers.

The LQG design technique was first applied to DP by Balchen *et al.* (1976, 1980a, 1980b) and Grimble *et al.* (1979, 1980a). Later Grimble and coauthors suggested to use  $\mathcal{H}_\infty$  and  $\mu$ -optimal methods for filtering and control (Katebi *et al.*, 1997a). These methods have been further refined by Katebi *et al.* (1997b) where the nonlinear thruster dynamics is included using describing functions.

After 1995, nonlinear PID control, passive observer design and observer backstepping designs have been applied to DP by Fossen and coauthors with good results; see Grøvlen and Fossen (1996), Fossen and Grøvlen (1998), Strand (1999) and references therein. An overview of DP systems is found in Strand and Sørensen (2000) while extensions to PM systems are presented in Strand (1999). DP and PM systems are discussed in more detail in Sections 12.2.10 and 13.1.6.

### 9.1.4 Waypoint Tracking and Path-Following Control Systems

The successful results with LQG controllers in ship autopilots and DP systems, and the availability of global navigation systems such as GPS and GLONASS, resulted in a growing interest in waypoint tracking and path-following control systems; see Holzhüter and Schultze (1996), Holzhüter (1997), Fossen *et al.* (2003b), Skjetne *et al.* (2004), Breivik and Fossen (2009) and references therein. The transformation of the waypoints to a feasible path or trajectory is in general a nonlinear optimization problem. This is discussed in Chapter 10. Motion controllers can be designed using linear theory or by treating the control problem as nonlinear; see Sections 12.2.7–12.2.9 and 13.3.12. Guidance systems for trajectory-tracking and path-following control are discussed in Chapter 10, while maneuverability and autopilot systems are discussed in Chapters 12–13.

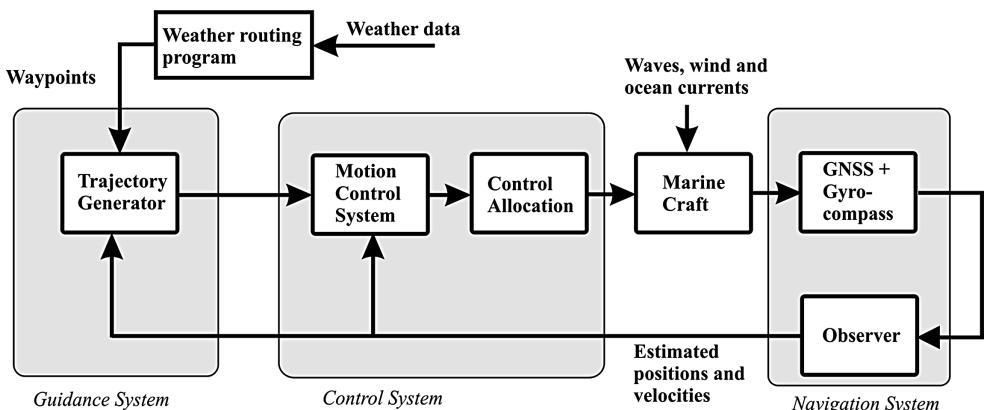
## 9.2 The Principles of Guidance, Navigation and Control

A motion control system is usually constructed as three independent blocks denoted as the *guidance*, *navigation* and *control* (GNC) systems. These systems interact with each other through data and signal transmission as illustrated in Figure 9.1, where a conventional ship autopilot is shown. In more advanced GNC systems, these blocks could be more tightly coupled and even represented by one block. Loose and tight coupling is a trade-off between modularity and high performance. From an industrial point of view it is attractive to have a loosely coupled system since this allows for software updates of single blocks.

In Figure 9.1 the guidance system makes use of the estimated alternatively measured positions and velocities. This is referred to as a *closed-loop guidance system* while a guidance system that only uses reference feedforward (no feedback) is an *open-loop guidance system* (see Figure 9.3).

### Definitions of Guidance, Navigation and Control

In its most advanced form, the GNC blocks represent three interconnected subsystems, as shown in Figure 9.1. The tasks of the subsystems are classified according to:



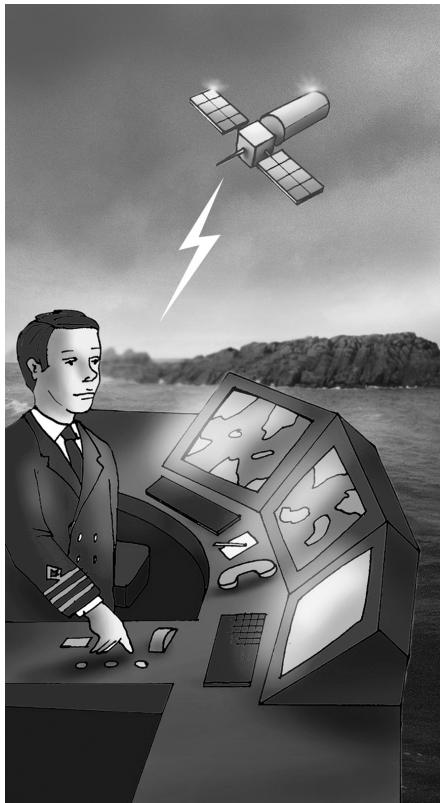
**Figure 9.1** GNC signal flow.

**Guidance** is the action or the system that continuously computes the reference (desired) position, velocity and acceleration of a marine craft to be used by the motion control system. These data are usually provided to the human operator and the navigation system (see Figure 9.2). The basic components of a guidance system are motion sensors, external data such as weather data (wind speed and direction, wave height and slope, current speed and direction) and a computer. The computer collects and processes the information, and then feeds the results to the motion control system. In many cases, advanced optimization techniques are used to compute the optimal trajectory or path for the marine craft to follow. This might include sophisticated features such as fuel optimization, minimum time navigation, weather routing, collision avoidance, formation control and synchronization.

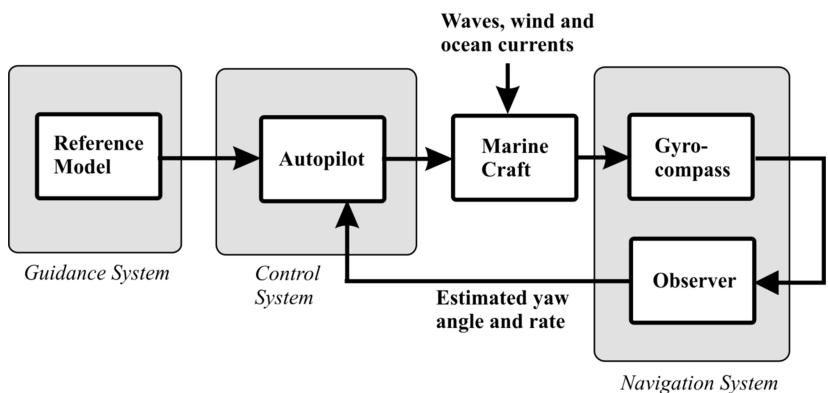
**Navigation** is the science of directing a craft by determining its position/attitude, course and distance traveled. In some cases velocity and acceleration are determined as well. This is usually done by using a global navigation satellite system (GNSS) combined with motion sensors such as accelerometers and gyros. The most advanced navigation system for marine applications is the *inertial navigation system* (INS). Navigation is derived from the Latin *navis*, “ship”, and *agere*, “to drive”. It originally denoted the art of ship driving, including steering and setting the sails. The skill is even more ancient than the word itself, and it has evolved over the course of many centuries into a technological science that encompasses the planning and execution of safe, timely and economical operation of ships, underwater vehicles, aircraft and spacecraft.

**Control**, or more specifically motion control, is the action of determining the necessary control forces and moments to be provided by the craft in order to satisfy a certain *control objective*. The desired control objective is usually seen in conjunction with the guidance system. Examples of control objectives are minimum energy, setpoint regulation, trajectory-tracking, path-following and maneuvering control. Constructing the control algorithm involves the design of feedback and feedforward control laws. The outputs from the navigation system, position, velocity and acceleration are used for feedback control while feedforward control is implemented using signals available in the guidance system and other external sensors.

An autopilot is a GNC system in its most basic form. A state-of-the-art autopilot system consists of a reference model (guidance system), a gyrocompass/observer (navigation system) and an autopilot (control system). This is illustrated in Figure 9.3.



**Figure 9.2** Human operator monitoring the navigation data. Illustration Bjarne Stenberg/Department of Marine Technology, NTNU.



**Figure 9.3** Autopilot GNC blocks where the reference model represent an open-loop guidance system.

### 9.3 Setpoint Regulation, Trajectory-Tracking and Path-Following Control

When designing motion control systems, the control objective must be well defined in order to satisfy the requirement specifications for safe operation of the craft. In this context, it is important to distinguish between the following three important control objectives:

**Setpoint Regulation:** The most basic guidance system is a constant input or setpoint provided by a human operator. The corresponding controller will then be a *regulator*. Examples of setpoint regulation are constant depth, trim, heel and speed control. It could also be regulation to zero, which is commonly required in roll and pitch for instance.

**Trajectory-Tracking Control:** The position and velocity of the marine craft should track desired time-varying position and velocity reference signals. The corresponding feedback controller is a *trajectory-tracking controller*. Tracking control can be used for course-changing maneuvers, speed-changing and attitude control. An advanced guidance system computes optimal time-varying trajectories from a dynamic model for a predefined control objective. If a constant setpoint is used as input to a low-pass filter (reference model) in an open-loop guidance system, the outputs of the filter will be smooth time-varying reference trajectories for position, velocity and acceleration (PVA).

**Path-Following Control:** This is to follow a predefined path independent of time (no temporal constraints). Moreover, no restrictions are placed on the temporal propagation along the path. This is typical for ships in transit between continents or underwater vehicles used to map the seabed.

As soon as the control objective is determined, a motion control system can be designed to satisfy the requirements. Methods for this are presented in Chapters 12–13.

## 9.4 Control of Underactuated and Fully Actuated Craft

When designing motion control systems for marine craft, it is important to distinguish between:

- Underactuated marine craft
- Fully actuated marine craft

It is trivial to control a fully actuated marine craft while underactuation puts limitations on what control objectives can be satisfied. More specifically, the control objective must be formulated such that the craft can satisfy all requirements even if it is equipped with actuators that purely produce forces in some directions. Unfortunately, most marine craft are underactuated since they cannot produce control forces and moments in all DOFs.

#### **Definition 9.1 (Degree-of-Freedom (DOF))**

For a marine craft, DOF is the set of independent displacements and rotations that completely specify the displaced position and orientation of the craft. A craft that can move freely in the 3-D space has a maximum of 6 DOFs, three translational and three rotational components.

Consequently, a fully actuated marine craft operating in 6 DOF must be equipped with actuators that can produce independent forces and moments in all directions. When simulating the motion of such a craft, a total of 12 ordinary differential equations are needed since the order of the system is

$$\text{Order} = 2 \times \text{DOF} \quad (9.1)$$

In many cases this is not practical. For instance, a ship can be equipped with a single rudder and a propeller. Hence, the motion control system cannot satisfy a 6 DOF control objective. It is still possible

to control the ship if the control objective is path-following control for instance. The reason for this is that two control inputs can be used to satisfy two control objectives even though the ship moves in 6 DOF. More specifically:

*Control systems for underactuated and fully actuated marine craft are designed by defining a workspace in which the control objective is specified.*

In order to investigate this, it is necessary to define the configuration space and workspace of a marine craft.

#### 9.4.1 Configuration Space

The *configuration space* of a marine craft is defined as:

**Definition 9.2 (Configuration Space)**

*The n-dimensional configuration space is the space of possible positions and orientations that a craft may attain, possibly subject to external constraints.*

The configuration of a marine craft can be uniquely described by an  $n$ -dimensional vector of *generalized coordinates*, that is the least number of coordinates needed to specify the state of the system.

If  $k$  geometric constraints exist,

$$h_i(\eta) = 0, \quad i = 1, \dots, k \quad (9.2)$$

the possible motions of the craft are restricted to an  $(n - k)$ -dimensional submanifold.

**Example 9.1 (6 DOF Motions)**

*For a marine craft operating in 6 DOF, the displacements and rotations are described by  $n = 6$  generalized positions and velocities*

$$\boldsymbol{\eta} = [x, y, z, \phi, \theta, \psi]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^3 \times \mathcal{S}^3 \quad (9.3)$$

$$\boldsymbol{v} = [u, v, w, p, q, r]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^6 \quad (9.4)$$

*where the Euler angles  $\phi, \theta$  and  $\psi$  are defined on the interval  $\mathcal{S} = [0, 2\pi]$ . Thus the order of the system is 12. This is typically the case for underwater vehicles.*

**Example 9.2 (3 DOF Motions)**

*For a marine craft restricted to operate in the horizontal plane (surge, sway and yaw),  $n = 3$  generalized positions and velocities*

$$\boldsymbol{\eta} = [x, y, \psi]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times \mathcal{S} \quad (9.5)$$

$$\boldsymbol{v} = [u, v, r]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^3 \quad (9.6)$$

*are needed to describe the motions. Thus the order of the system is 6. This is typically the case for ships and offshore rigs.*

In this context, an underactuated marine craft is defined as:

**Definition 9.3 (Underactuated Marine Craft)**

*A marine craft is underactuated if it has less control inputs than generalized coordinates ( $r < n$ ).*

**Definition 9.4 (Fully Actuated Marine Craft)**

A marine craft is fully actuated if it has equal or more control inputs than generalized coordinates ( $r \geq n$ ).

From this it follows that a marine craft that operates in  $n$  DOF has a configuration space of dimension  $\dim(\eta) = n$ . If the craft only has actuators in surge, sway and yaw, the craft is underactuated in the sense of operation in 6 DOF while the design of a motion control system for the horizontal plane motion (dynamic positioning) can be achieved using only three control inputs. Underwater vehicles that have actuators that produce independent forces and moments in 6 DOF are fully actuated. Hence, it makes sense to look at the number of actuators needed (see Figure 9.4) to control motions in a space of dimension  $m < n$  instead of always formulating the control objective in  $n$  DOF. This suggests that the control objective should be formulated in the workspace of the craft and not the configuration space when designing motion control systems.

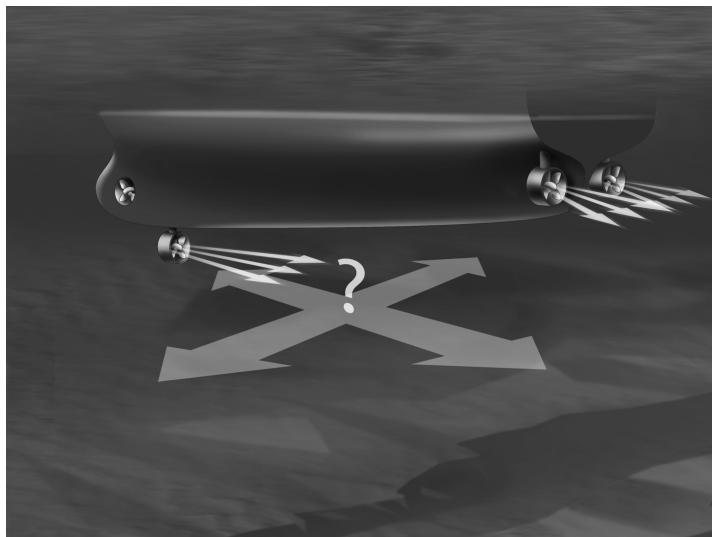
#### 9.4.2 Workspace and Control Objectives

The workspace is defined as:

**Definition 9.5 (Workspace)**

The workspace is a reduced space of dimension  $m < n$  in which the control objective is defined.

The workspace of a conventional heading autopilot system is  $m = 1$  since only the yaw motion is controlled. Similarly, the workspace of a horizontal plane controller, for instance a DP system controlling the motions in surge, sway and yaw, is  $m = 3$ .



**Figure 9.4** Azimuth thrusters for actuation in surge, sway and yaw. Illustration by Bjarne Stenberg/MARINTEK.

Let  $n$  be the dimension of the configuration space,  $m$  the dimension of the workspace and  $r$  denote the number of independently controlled actuators spanning different directions in the configuration space. Hence, we can make the following statements:

- Full actuation means that independent control forces and moments are simultaneously available in all directions. Moreover, all positions in the configuration space have actuation such that  $r = n$ .
- An *underactuated marine craft* has independent control forces and moments in only some DOF. Moreover,  $r < n$ . Stabilizing and tracking controllers for underactuated craft are usually designed by considering a workspace of dimension  $m < n$  satisfying  $m = r$  (fully actuated in the workspace but not in the configuration space).
- *Underactuated control* is a technical term used in control theory to describe a motion control system for a craft that is underactuated in the workspace ( $r < m$ ). To design a control system that achieves stabilization, trajectory-tracking and path-following control for this case is nontrivial. These types of system are not considered in this textbook since they are not used in practice.

This means that it is straightforward to design motion control systems for marine craft in the workspace as long as there is a workspace that is fully actuated and satisfies the control objective, that is  $m = r$ . One obstacle is that the system must be internally stable when reducing the dimension of the configuration space to a smaller space (workspace) intended for feedback control design. Space reduction implies that the uncontrolled equations of motion will appear as  $k$  dynamic constraints that must have bounded solutions in order to avoid the system blowing up.

#### **Example 9.3 (Path-Following Control)**

Consider an underactuated craft in the horizontal plane with actuation in surge and yaw (no actuation in sway). A path-following control system is usually designed by using feedback from the heading angle  $\psi$  and surge velocity  $u$ . Then it is possible to control the speed of the craft along the path using a speed controller and at the same time force the craft on to the path using a heading controller producing rudder commands. The workspace of this system is  $m = 2$  while the motions in surge, sway and yaw corresponds to a configuration space of dimension three ( $n = 3$ ). Consequently,

$$m < n \quad (9.7)$$

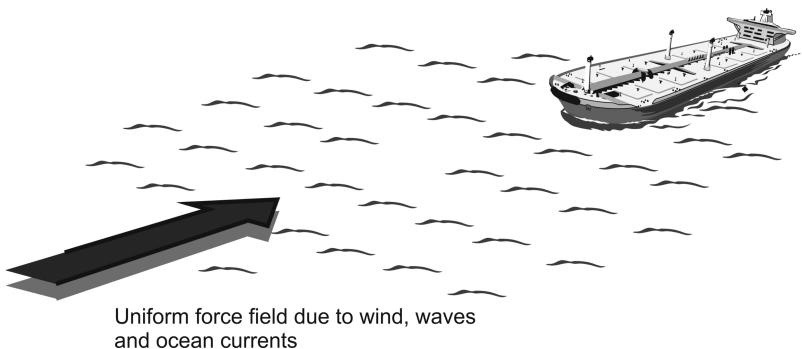
but only two controls ( $r = 2$ ) are needed to satisfy the path-following control objective. However, the uncontrolled sway equation introduces a constraint representing the sway dynamics of the craft. This equation must be stable in order for the overall system to be stable (Fossen et al., 2003b). A case study illustrating this is presented in Section 13.3.12.

#### **Example 9.4 (Dynamic Positioning)**

Consider a fully actuated craft operating in the horizontal plane with actuation in surge, sway and yaw ( $r = 3$ ). A dynamic positioning system can be designed by using feedback from the position  $(x, y)$  and the heading angle  $\psi$ . The dimension of the workspace is  $m = 3$  and the dimension of the configuration space is  $n = 3$ . Hence,  $m = n = r$  and it is straightforward to control  $(x, y, \psi)$ ; see Section 12.2.10.

#### **9.4.3 Weathervaning of Underactuated Craft in a Uniform Force Field**

Marine craft are usually controlled in surge, sway and yaw by using three controls, that is full actuation. However, unlike wheeled cars and other craft operating on the surface of the Earth, it is possible to stabilize the positions of a marine craft by means of two controls. The main reason for this is that marine craft are



Uniform force field due to wind, waves  
and ocean currents

**Figure 9.5** Weathervaning of a tanker. The tanker is aligned in the force field such that the resulting force is acting at the bow along the longitudinal axis.

exposed to drift forces generated by waves, wind and ocean currents. This means that the equations of motion are forced.

For stationkeeping, it is common to assume that the drift forces are slowly varying such that the resulting component due to wind, waves and ocean currents can be treated as a constant uniform force. Hence, a marine craft can be modeled as a rigid body operating in a unified force field similar to a pendulum in the gravity field, as explained in Section 13.3.10. This is an appealing idea in stationkeeping since it is possible to align the craft in the force field such that the resulting environmental force is acting at the bow along the longitudinal axis of the craft (see Figure 9.5). This clearly reduces drag for slender bodies and torpedo-shaped vehicles. Another important observation is that it is possible to stabilize a rigid body in a uniformed force field using only two controls ( $r = 2$ ) even though the configuration space of the craft is surge, sway and yaw, that is  $m = 3$ . This is done by using one control to compensate for the drift force that acts along the longitudinal axis of the body. The other controller is designed to align the craft to the force field. This concept is in fact similar to a weathervane which is aligned to the force field created by the wind. Motion control systems can be designed to behave like a weathervane and are used offshore for stationkeeping of supply vessels and tankers near floating structures in order to save energy. The drawback is that stationkeeping using only two controls implies that the desired heading cannot be specified arbitrarily. Simultaneous control of the motions in surge, sway and yaw to arbitrary values requires three controls.

# 10

## Guidance Systems

This chapter describes methods for the design of *guidance systems* for marine craft (Siouris, 2004, Yanushevsky, 2008). Guidance can be defined as (Shneydor, 1998): “*The process for guiding the path of an object towards a given point, which in general may be moving.*” Draper (1971) states: “*Guidance depends upon fundamental principles and involves devices that are similar for vehicles moving on land, on water, under water, in air, beyond the atmosphere within the gravitational field of Earth and in space outside this field.*” Thus, guidance represents a basic methodology concerned with the transient motion behavior associated with the achievement of motion control objectives (see Breivik and Fossen, 2009).

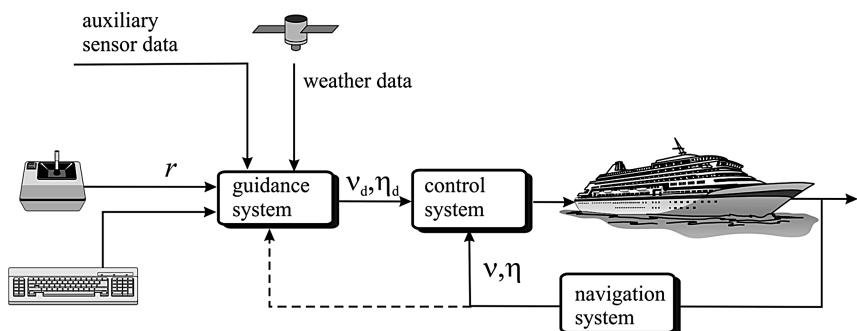
In its simplest form, open-loop guidance systems for marine craft are used to generate a reference trajectory for time-varying *trajectory tracking* or, alternatively, a path for time-invariant *path following* (see Section 9.2). A motion control system will work in close interaction with the guidance system.

In the control literature, the different motion control scenarios are typically classified according to:

- *Setpoint regulation (point stabilization)* is a special case where the desired position and attitude are chosen to be constant.
- *Trajectory tracking*, where the objective is to force the system output  $y(t) \in \mathbb{R}^m$  to track a desired output  $y_d(t) \in \mathbb{R}^m$ . The desired trajectory can be computed using reference models generated by low-pass filters, optimization methods or by simply simulating the marine craft motion using an adequate model of the craft. Feasible trajectories can be generated in the presence of both *spatial* and *temporal constraints*.
- *Path following* is following a predefined path independent of time. No restrictions are placed on the temporal propagation along the path. Spatial constraints can, however, be added to represent obstacles and other positional constraints if they are known in advance.

Tracking control systems can also be designed for target tracking and path tracking. For instance, a target-tracking system tracks the motion of a target that is either stationary (analogous to point stabilization) or that moves such that only its instantaneous motion is known; that is no information about the future target motion is available (Breivik and Fossen, 2009).

As shown in Figure 10.1, the guidance system can use joystick or keyboard inputs, external inputs (weather data, for instance measured wind, wave and current speeds and directions), Earth topological information (digital chart, radar and sonar data), obstacle and collision avoidance data, and finally the state vector, which is available as output from the navigation and sensor systems. The required data are further processed to generate a feasible trajectory for motion control. This can be done using ad hoc techniques or sophisticated methods such as interpolation techniques, dynamic optimization or filtering



**Figure 10.1** In closed-loop guidance (dotted line) the states are fed back to the guidance system while open-loop guidance only uses sensor and reference signal inputs.

techniques. A feasible trajectory means one that is consistent with the craft dynamics. For a linear system, this implies that the eigenvalues of the desired states must be chosen such that the reference model is slower than the craft dynamics.

For a ship or an underwater vehicle, the guidance and control system usually consists of the following subsystems:

- *Attitude control system*
  - *Path-following control system*

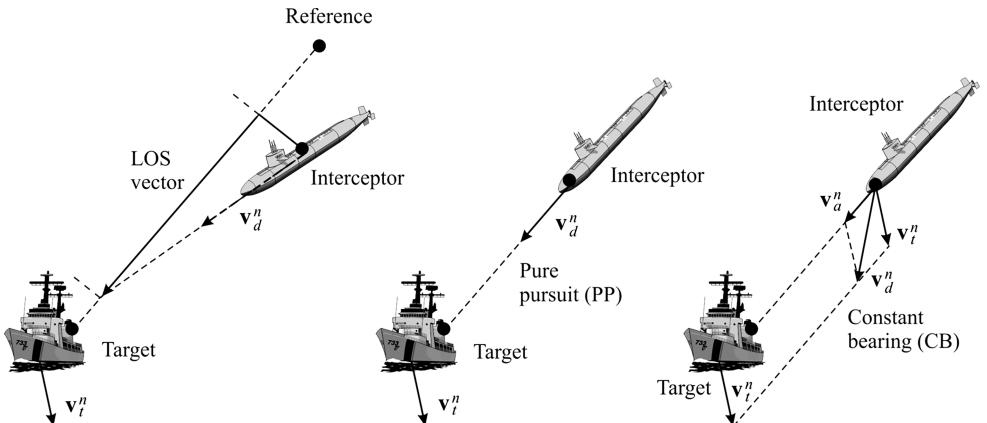
In its simplest form, the attitude control system is a heading autopilot, while roll and pitch are regulated to zero or left uncontrolled. The main function of the attitude feedback control system is to maintain the craft in a desired attitude on the ordered path by controlling the craft in roll, pitch and yaw. The task of the path-following controller is to keep the craft on the predescribed path with some predefined dynamics, for instance a speed control system by generating orders to the attitude control system. For surface vessels it is common to use a heading controller in combination with a speed controller while aircraft and underwater vehicles also need a height/depth controller. The principles and definitions of *guidance, navigation and control* are further outlined in Section 9.2.

## 10.1 Target Tracking

Sometimes no information about the path is known in advance and there is no trajectory to track. Hence, if the goal is to track a moving object, for which no future motion information is available, target-tracking methods can be applied. Guidance laws for target tracking can be used in marine operations such as underway replenishment (UNREP) operations and formation control. UNREP operations involve cargo transfer between two or more cooperating craft in transit. The task of the so-called *guide ship* is to maintain a steady course and speed while the *approach ship* moves up alongside the guide or target ship to receive fuel, munitions and personnel (Skejic *et al.*, 2009).

For surface vessels, the 2-D position of the target is denoted by  $\mathbf{p}_t^n = [N_t, E_t]^\top$ . The control objective of a target-tracking scenario can be formulated as (Breivik and Fossen, 2009)

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} [\mathbf{p}^n(t) - \mathbf{p}_i^n(t)] = \mathbf{0} \quad (10.1)$$



**Figure 10.2** Desired interceptor approach speed  $U_d = \|v_d^n\|$  for the classical guidance principles: line-of-sight LOS, pure pursuit (PP) and constant bearing (CB). The target speed is  $U_t = \|v_t^n\|$ .

where  $\mathbf{p}^n \in \mathbb{R}^2$  is the craft position. The target velocity is  $\mathbf{v}_t^n = \dot{\mathbf{p}}_t^n \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . In the missile guidance community an object that is supposed to destroy another object is referred to as a missile, an interceptor or a pursuer. Conversely, the threatened object is typically called a target or an evader. In the following, the designations *interceptor* and *target* will be used.

An interceptor typically undergoes three phases during its operation:

1. Launch phase
2. Midcourse phase
3. Terminal phase

The greatest accuracy demand is associated with the terminal phase, where the interceptor guidance system must compensate for the accumulated errors from the previous phases to achieve a smallest possible final miss distance to the target. The remainder of this section is based on Breivik and Fossen (2009) and Breivik (2010). The discussion is limited to three terminal guidance strategies, *line-of-sight*, *pure pursuit* and *constant bearing*, which are illustrated in Figure 10.2.

Note that while the main objective of a guided missile is to hit and destroy a physical target in finite time, the analogy is to hit or converge to a virtual target asymptotically. This is also referred to as asymptotic interception given by (10.1).

### 10.1.1 Line-of-Sight Guidance

*Line-of-sight (LOS) guidance* is classified as a three-point guidance scheme since it involves a typically stationary reference point in addition to the interceptor and the target. The LOS denotation stems from the fact that the interceptor is supposed to achieve an intercept by constraining its motion along the LOS vector between the reference point and the target. LOS guidance has typically been employed for surface-to-air missiles, often mechanized by a ground station, which illuminates the target with a beam that the guided missile is supposed to ride, also known as beam-rider guidance. The LOS guidance principle is illustrated in Figure 10.2, where the interceptor velocity  $\mathbf{v}_a^n$  is pointed to LOS vector to obtain the desired velocity  $\mathbf{v}_d^n$ . LOS guidance will be applied to track straight-line paths in section 10.3 while curved paths are discussed in Section 10.4.

### 10.1.2 Pure Pursuit Guidance

*Pure pursuit (PP) guidance* belongs to the two-point guidance schemes, where only the interceptor and the target are considered in the engagement geometry. The interceptor aligns its velocity  $\mathbf{v}_a^n$  along the LOS vector between the interceptor and the target by choosing the desired velocity as

$$\mathbf{v}_d^n = -\kappa \frac{\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n}{\|\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n\|} \quad (10.2)$$

where  $\kappa > 0$ . This strategy is equivalent to a predator chasing a prey in the animal world, and very often results in a tail chase. PP guidance has typically been employed for air-to-surface missiles. The PP guidance principle is represented in Figure 10.2 by a vector pointing directly at the target.

Deviated pursuit guidance is a variant of PP guidance, where the velocity of the interceptor is supposed to lead the interceptor–target line of sight by a constant angle in the direction of the target movement. An equivalent term is fixed-lead navigation.

### 10.1.3 Constant Bearing Guidance

*Constant bearing (CB) guidance* is also a two-point guidance scheme, with the same engagement geometry as PP guidance. However, in a CB engagement, the interceptor is supposed to align the interceptor–target velocity  $\mathbf{v}_d^n$  along the LOS vector between the interceptor and the target. This goal is equivalent to reducing the LOS rotation rate to zero such that the interceptor perceives the target at a constant bearing, closing in on a direct collision course. CB guidance is often referred to as *parallel navigation* and has typically been employed for air-to-air missiles. Also, the CB rule has been used for centuries by mariners to avoid collisions at sea, steering away from a situation where another craft approaches at a constant bearing. Thus, guidance principles can just as well be applied to avoid collisions as to achieve them. The CB guidance principle is indicated in Figure 10.2.

The most common method of implementing CB guidance is to make the rotation rate of the interceptor velocity directly proportional to the rotation rate of the interceptor–target LOS, which is widely known as *proportional navigation (PN)*. However, CB guidance can also be implemented through the direct velocity assignment as proposed by Breivik *et al.* (2006); see Breivik (2010) for details.

The CB desired velocity is given by

$$\mathbf{v}_d^n = \mathbf{v}_t^n + \mathbf{v}_a^n \quad (10.3)$$

$$\mathbf{v}_a^n = -\kappa \frac{\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n}{\|\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n\|} \quad (10.4)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}_a^n = [\dot{N}_a, \dot{E}_a]^\top$  is the approach velocity vector specified such that the desired approach speed  $U_a = \|\mathbf{v}_a^n\|$  is tangential to the LOS vector as shown in Figure 10.2 and

$$\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n := \mathbf{p}^n - \mathbf{p}_t^n \quad (10.5)$$

is the LOS vector between the interceptor and the target,  $\|\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n\| \geq 0$  is the Euclidean length of this vector and

$$\kappa = U_{a,\max} \frac{\|\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n\|}{\sqrt{(\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n)^\top \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n + \Delta_p^2}} \quad (10.6)$$

where  $U_{a,\max}$  specifies the maximum approach speed toward the target and  $\Delta_{\tilde{p}} > 0$  affects the transient interceptor-target rendezvous behavior. The CB guidance law (10.3) computes the velocity commands needed to track the target.

Note that CB guidance becomes equal to PP guidance for a stationary target; that is the basic difference between the two guidance schemes is whether the target velocity is used as a kinematic feedforward or not.

### Convergence and Stability Analyses

The convergence properties of (10.3)–(10.4) and (10.6) can be investigated by considering a Lyapunov function candidate (LFC):

$$V = \frac{1}{2}(\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n)^\top \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n > 0, \quad \forall \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n \neq \mathbf{0} \quad (10.7)$$

Time differentiation of  $V$  along the trajectories of  $\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V} &= (\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n)^\top \dot{\tilde{\mathbf{p}}}^n \\ &= -\kappa \frac{(\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n)^\top \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n}{\|\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n\|} \\ &= -U_{a,\max} \frac{(\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n)^\top \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n}{\sqrt{(\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n)^\top \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n + \Delta_{\tilde{p}}^2}} \\ &< 0, \quad \forall \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n \neq \mathbf{0} \end{aligned} \quad (10.8)$$

The LFC (10.7) is positive definite and radially unbounded, while its derivative with respect to time (10.8) is negative definite when adhering to  $U \geq U_{a,\max} > 0$ . Hence, by standard Lyapunov arguments the origin  $\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n = \mathbf{0}$  is UGAS (see Appendix A.1). Finally, the Jacobian of the error dynamics  $\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n$  at the origin  $\tilde{\mathbf{p}}^n = \mathbf{0}$  has strictly negative eigenvalues, which proves ULES.

### **Example 10.1 (UNREP Operation)**

*For ships equipped with a rudder and a main propeller, the rudder can be used to obtain a parallel course with the guide ship (lateral alignment). We will consider a guide ship moving on a straight line and the goal for the second ship is to approach this ship to carry out a UNREP operation. In Skejic et al. (2009) the lookahead-based steering law of Breivik and Fossen (2009) in Section 10.3 is used to ensure that the approach ship is able to assume a parallel course with the guide ship by adhering to the desired course angle*

$$\chi_d = \chi_t + \chi_r \quad (10.9)$$

*where  $\chi_t$  is the course angle of the guide ship. The heading of the approach ship is adjusted using the steering law  $\chi_r$  such that the lateral distance is adjusted as desired. The lateral distance and cross-track error ( $s, e$ ) are obtained by the following transformation:*

$$\begin{bmatrix} s \\ e \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} s_d \\ e_d \end{bmatrix} + \mathbf{R}_p(\chi_t)^\top (\mathbf{p}^n - \mathbf{p}_t^n) \quad (10.10)$$

*where  $s_d = 0$  (interceptor on parallel course),  $e_d = \text{constant}$  (distance between interceptor and target) and*

$$\mathbf{R}_p(\chi_t) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\chi_t) & -\sin(\chi_t) \\ \sin(\chi_t) & \cos(\chi_t) \end{bmatrix} \in SO(2) \quad (10.11)$$

Hence, the LOS steering law can be chosen as

$$\chi_r = \arctan(-e/\Delta_e) \quad (10.12)$$

where the steering law tuning parameter  $\Delta_e > 0$  represents the lookahead distance. This parameter is given in meters and usually takes values between 1.5 and 2.5 of a ship length  $L_{pp}$ . Finally, the desired heading angle for the approaching ship is input to the ship autopilot, suggesting that

$$\psi_d = \chi_d - \beta \quad (10.13)$$

where the sideslip (drift) angle is

$$\beta = \arcsin\left(\frac{v}{U}\right) \quad (10.14)$$

The speed command  $U_d = \sqrt{u_d^2 + v_d^2} \approx u_d$  (assuming that  $u_d \gg v_d$ ) is computed according to (10.3), (10.4) and (10.6) such that

$$U_d = U_t - \kappa \frac{s}{\sqrt{s^2 + \Delta_s^2}} \quad (10.15)$$

where  $\kappa = U_{a,\max}$  and

$$U_t = \sqrt{u_t^2 + v_t^2} \quad (10.16)$$

The speed tuning parameter  $\Delta_s > 0$  specifies the rendezvous behavior towards the projection of the guide ship on to the parallel course defined by  $e_d$ , ensuring that the approach ship smoothly ramps down its total speed to  $U_t$  as the along-course distance goes to zero.

## 10.2 Trajectory Tracking

Guidance systems designed for tracking a smooth time-varying trajectory  $y_d(t) \in \mathbb{R}^m$  are useful in many applications. The desired speed and acceleration are obtained from time-differentiation of  $y_d(t)$  one and two times, respectively. This means that the signal  $y_d(t)$  defines the desired position/attitude, velocity and acceleration as a function of time  $t$  for a moving craft in 6 DOF. We will make use of the following definition in the forthcoming:

### **Definition 10.1 (Trajectory Tracking)**

A control system that forces the system output  $y(t) \in \mathbb{R}^m$  to track a desired output  $y_d(t) \in \mathbb{R}^m$  solves a trajectory tracking problem.

This definition is consistent with Athans and Falb (1966) and later with Hauser and Hindmann (1995), Ortega *et al.* (1998), Encarnacao and Pascoal (2001) and Skjetne *et al.* (2002, 2004). In this section, methods for computation of the desired trajectory corresponding to a desired virtual target will be presented. The following methods are discussed:

- Low-pass filters for the generation of position, velocity and acceleration (PVA) trajectories
- Time-domain simulation using an adequate model of the craft
- Optimization methods

Within this framework, it is possible to generate feasible trajectories incorporating both *spatial constraints* (obstacle avoidance and maximum velocity/acceleration) and *temporal constraints* (minimum time, on time and maximum time problems)

### Trajectory-Tracking Control

Trajectory-tracking control laws are classified according to the number of available actuators. This can be illustrated by considering a marine craft in *surge*, *sway* and *yaw*. Tracking of a *time-varying reference trajectory*  $\eta_d(t) = [N_d(t), E_d(t), \psi_d(t)]^\top$  is achieved by minimizing the tracking error,  $e(t) := \eta(t) - \eta_d(t)$ . Moreover,

$$e(t) := \begin{bmatrix} N(t) - N_d(t) \\ E(t) - E_d(t) \\ \psi(t) - \psi_d(t) \end{bmatrix} \quad (10.17)$$

Based on this interpretation, the following considerations can be made (see Section 9.3):

- **Three or more controls:** This is referred to as a *fully actuated* dynamic positioning (DP) system and typical applications are crab wise motions (low-speed maneuvering) and stationkeeping, where the goal is to drive  $e(t) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times S \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$ . This is the standard configuration for offshore DP vessels. Feedback control laws for fully actuated vessels are discussed in Chapter 12.
- **Two controls and trajectory-tracking control:** Trajectory tracking in 3 DOF,  $e(t) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \times S$ , with only two controls,  $u(t) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ , is an *underactuated* control problem, which cannot be solved using linear theory. This problem has limited practical use. However, since all marine craft operate in a uniform force field due to mean wind, waves and ocean currents, it is possible to steer the craft along a path with a constant sideslip angle (given by the mean environmental force field) using only two controls, that is turning and forward speed control. This is the classical approach used in path-following control (see Section 12.2.8).
- **Two controls and weather-optimal heading:** If the ship is aligned up against the mean resulting force due to wind, waves and ocean currents, a weathervaning controller can be designed such that only two controls,  $u(t) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ , are needed to stabilize the ship positions. In this approach the heading angle is allowed to vary automatically with the mean environmental forces (Pinkster, 1971, Pinkster and Nienhuis, 1986, Fossen and Strand, 2001) (see Section 13.3.10).
- **Two controls and path-following control:** It is standard procedure to define a 2-D workspace (along-track and cross-track errors) and minimize the cross-track error by means of an LOS path-following controller; see Sections 10.3–10.4 and 12.2.8–12.2.9. Hence, it is possible to follow a path by using only two controls (surge speed and yaw moment). For a conventional ship this is achieved by using a rudder and a propeller only. Since the input and output vectors are of dimension two, the 6 DOF system model must be internally stable.
- **One control:** It is impossible to design stationkeeping systems and trajectory-tracking control systems in 3 DOF for a marine craft using only one control.

For underwater vehicles operating in 6 DOF it is also important to control the heave and sometimes the pitch-roll motions in addition to the surge, sway and yaw motions. However, roll and pitch can be left uncontrolled for metacentrically stable vehicles. For operation in 6 DOF, a fully actuated vehicle must have six or more actuators producing independent forces and moments in all directions in order to track a 6 DOF time-varying reference trajectory.



**Figure 10.3** Joystick control system used to generate reference signals. Illustration by Bjarne Stenberg/SINTEF.

### 10.2.1 Reference Models for Trajectory Generation

In a practical system, it is highly advantageous to keep the software as simple as possible. As a result of this, many industrial systems are designed using linear reference models for trajectory generation. This corresponds to *open-loop guidance* as described in Section 9.2 since no feedback from the states is required. The simplest form of a reference model is obtained by using a low-pass (LP) filter structure:

$$\frac{x_d}{r}(s) = h_{lp}(s) \quad (10.18)$$

where  $x_d$  is the desired state and  $r$  denotes the reference signal usually specified by an operator (see Figure 10.3). The choice of filter should reflect the dynamics of the craft such that a feasible trajectory is constructed. For instance, it is important to take into account physical speed and acceleration limitations of the craft as well as input saturation. This is a nontrivial task so a compromise between performance and accurate tracking must be made by tuning the bandwidth of the reference model. It is important that the bandwidth of the reference model is chosen lower than the bandwidth of the motion control system in order to obtain satisfactory tracking performance and stability.

A frequently used method to generate a smooth reference trajectory  $\mathbf{x}_d \in \mathbb{R}^n$  for tracking control is to use a physically motivated model. For marine craft it is convenient to use reference models

motivated by the dynamics of *mass–damper–spring systems* to generate the desired state trajectories, for instance

$$h_{lp}(s) = \frac{\omega_{n_i}^2}{s^2 + 2\zeta_i\omega_{n_i}s + \omega_{n_i}^2} \quad (10.19)$$

where  $\zeta_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, n$ ) are the *relative damping ratios* and  $\omega_{n_i}$  ( $i = 1, \dots, n$ ) are the *natural frequencies*. For a 6 DOF system, the desired states can be expressed by a MIMO mass–damper–spring system:

$$\mathbf{M}_d \ddot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_d + \mathbf{D}_d \dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_d + \mathbf{G}_d \boldsymbol{\eta}_d = \mathbf{G}_d \mathbf{r} \quad (10.20)$$

where  $\mathbf{M}_d$ ,  $\mathbf{D}_d$  and  $\mathbf{G}_d$  are positive design matrices specifying the desired dynamics of the system. The model (10.20) can also be represented as a linear time invariant (LTI) system:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_d = \mathbf{A}_d \mathbf{x}_d + \mathbf{B}_d \mathbf{r} \quad (10.21)$$

where  $\mathbf{x}_d := [\boldsymbol{\eta}_d^\top, \dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_d^\top]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^{2n}$  is the desired state vector,  $\mathbf{r} \in \mathbb{R}^r$  ( $r \leq n$ ) is a bounded reference vector usually generated by a joystick or a keyboard. The state and input matrices are recognized as

$$\mathbf{A}_d = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \\ -\mathbf{M}_d^{-1} \mathbf{G}_d & -\mathbf{M}_d^{-1} \mathbf{D}_d \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{B}_d = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{M}_d^{-1} \mathbf{G}_d \end{bmatrix} \quad (10.22)$$

### Velocity Reference Model

The velocity reference model should at least be of order two so as to obtain smooth reference signals for the desired velocity  $\mathbf{v}_d$  and acceleration  $\dot{\mathbf{v}}_d$ . Let  $\mathbf{r}^b$  denote the operator input expressed in  $\{b\}$ . The second-order LP filter (10.19) can be used for this purpose. Let

$$\ddot{\mathbf{v}}_d + 2\Delta\Omega\dot{\mathbf{v}}_d + \Omega^2 \mathbf{v}_d = \Omega^2 \mathbf{r}^b \quad (10.23)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}_d$  is the desired velocity,  $\dot{\mathbf{v}}_d$  is the desired acceleration and  $\ddot{\mathbf{v}}_d$  is interpreted as the desired “jerk”. For this model,  $\Delta > 0$  and  $\Omega > 0$  are diagonal design matrices of *relative damping ratios* and *natural frequencies*:

$$\Delta = \text{diag}\{\zeta_1, \zeta_2, \dots, \zeta_n\}$$

$$\Omega = \text{diag}\{\omega_{n_1}, \omega_{n_2}, \dots, \omega_{n_n}\}$$

The state space representation is

$$\mathbf{A}_d = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \\ -\Omega^2 & -2\Delta\Omega \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{B}_d = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ \Omega^2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (10.24)$$

Note that a step in the command  $\mathbf{r}^b$  will give a step in  $\ddot{\mathbf{v}}_d$  while  $\dot{\mathbf{v}}_d$  and  $\mathbf{v}_d$  will be low-pass filtered and therefore smooth signals in a tracking control system. We also notice that the steady-state velocity for a constant reference signal  $\mathbf{r}^b$  is

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{v}_d(t) = \mathbf{r}^b \quad (10.25)$$

## Position and Attitude Reference Models

The position and attitude reference model  $\eta_d$  is typically chosen to be of third order for filtering the steps in  $r^n$ . This suggests that a first-order LP filter should be cascaded with a mass–damper–spring system. Moreover, consider the transfer function:

$$\frac{\eta_{d_i}}{r_i^n}(s) = \frac{\omega_{n_i}^2}{(1 + T_i s)(s^2 + 2\zeta_i \omega_{n_i} s + \omega_{n_i}^2)} \quad (i = 1, \dots, n) \quad (10.26)$$

where a first-order LP filter with time constant  $T_i = 1/\omega_{n_i} > 0$  has been added. This can also be written

$$\frac{\eta_{d_i}}{r_i^n}(s) = \frac{\omega_{n_i}^3}{s^3 + (2\zeta_i + 1)\omega_{n_i} s^2 + (2\zeta_i + 1)\omega_{n_i}^2 s + \omega_{n_i}^3}, \quad (i = 1, \dots, n) \quad (10.27)$$

or in a vectorial setting as

$$\boldsymbol{\eta}_d^{(3)} + (2\Delta + \mathbf{I})\Omega\ddot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_d + (2\Delta + \mathbf{I})\Omega^2\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_d + \Omega^3\boldsymbol{\eta}_d = \Omega^3\mathbf{r}^n \quad (10.28)$$

The state-space representation is

$$A_d = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \\ -\Omega^3 & -(2\Delta + \mathbf{I})\Omega^2 & -(2\Delta + \mathbf{I})\Omega \end{bmatrix}, \quad B_d = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} \\ \Omega^3 \end{bmatrix} \quad (10.29)$$

In the case of  $n$  critically damped systems,  $\zeta_i = 1$  ( $i = 1, \dots, n$ ), we have  $\Delta = \mathbf{I}$ . Consequently,

$$\boldsymbol{\eta}_d^{(3)} + 3\Omega\ddot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_d + 3\Omega^2\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_d + \Omega^3\boldsymbol{\eta}_d = \Omega^3\mathbf{r}^n \quad (10.30)$$

⇓

$$(s + \omega_{n_i})^3 \eta_{d_i} = \omega_{n_i}^3 r_i^n \quad (i = 1, \dots, n) \quad (10.31)$$

These reference models models also satisfy

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \boldsymbol{\eta}_d(t) = \mathbf{r}^n \quad (10.32)$$

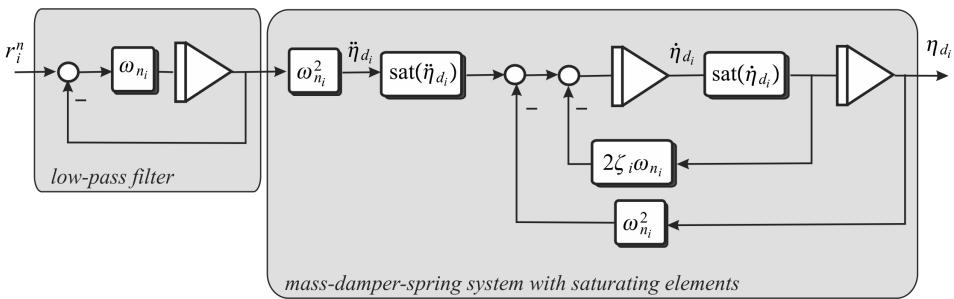
if  $\mathbf{r}^n = \text{constant}$ .

## Saturating Elements

One drawback with a linear reference model is that the time constants in the model often yield a satisfactory response for one operating point of the system while the response for other amplitudes of the operator input  $r_i$  results in completely different behavior. This is due to the exponential convergence of the signals in a linear system. One way to circumvent this problem is to use amplitude gain scheduling so that the reference model design parameters ( $\zeta_i, \omega_i$ ) are scheduled with respect to the magnitude of the input signal  $r_i$ .

The performance of the linear reference model can also be improved by including saturation elements for velocity and acceleration according to

$$\text{sat}(x) = \begin{cases} \text{sgn}(x)x_{\max} & \text{if } |x| \geq x_{\max} \\ x & \text{else} \end{cases} \quad (10.33)$$



**Figure 10.4** Reference model including saturating elements.

Hence, the saturation limits

$$v_i \leq v_i^{\max}, \quad \dot{v}_i \leq \dot{v}_i^{\max} \quad (10.34)$$

should reflect the physical limitations of the craft as illustrated in Example 10.2.

These techniques have been used in model reference adaptive control (MRAC) by Van Amerongen (1982, 1984) and adaptive control of underwater vehicles by Fjellstad *et al.* (1992). The position and attitude reference model should therefore be modified as shown in Figure 10.4.

### Nonlinear Damping

Nonlinear damping can also be included in the reference model to reduce the velocity for large amplitudes or step inputs  $r_i$ . This suggests the modified model:

$$\ddot{\eta}_d^{(3)} + (2\Delta + I)\Omega\ddot{\eta}_d + (2\Delta + I)\Omega^2\dot{\eta}_d + d(\dot{\eta}_d) + \Omega^3\eta_d = \Omega^3r^n \quad (10.35)$$

where the nonlinear function  $d(\dot{\eta}_d) = [d_1(\dot{\eta}_{d_1}), \dots, d_n(\dot{\eta}_{d_n})]^\top$  could be chosen as

$$d_i(\dot{\eta}_{d_i}) = \sum_j \delta_{ij} |\dot{\eta}_{d_i}|^{p_j} \dot{\eta}_{d_i} \quad (i = 1, \dots, n) \quad (10.36)$$

where  $\delta_{ij} > 0$  are design parameters and  $p_j > 0$  are some integers. The effect of nonlinear damping is demonstrated in Example 10.2.

#### Example 10.2 (Reference Model)

Consider the mass-damper-spring reference model:

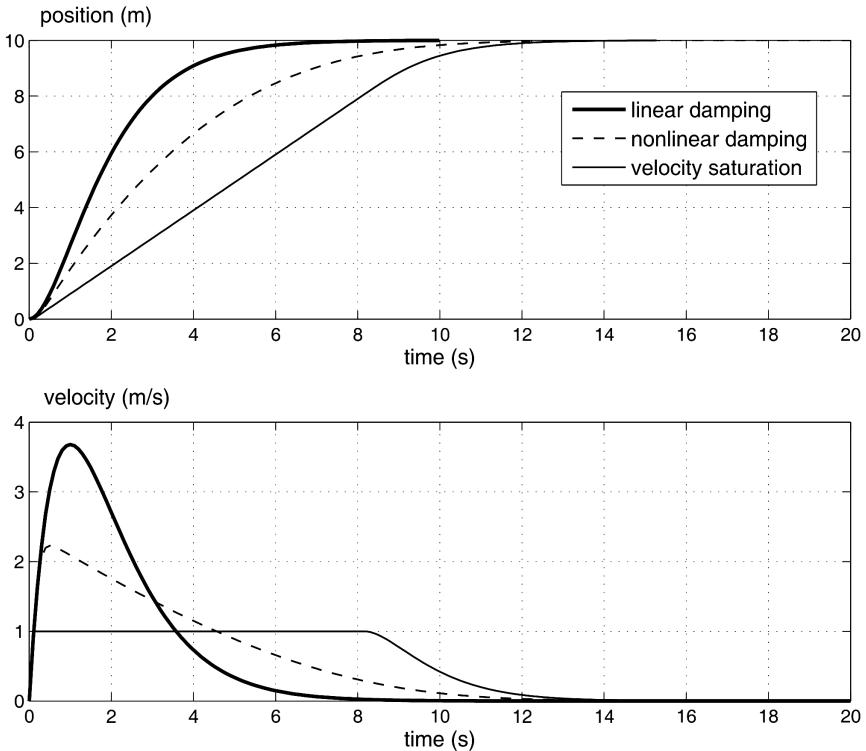
$$\dot{\eta}_d = v_d \quad (10.37)$$

$$\dot{v}_d + 2\zeta\omega_n v_d + \delta |v_d| v_d + \omega_n^2 \eta_d = \omega_n^2 r \quad (10.38)$$

where  $\zeta = \omega_n = 1$ . Figure 10.5 shows a comparison of responses using  $\delta = 0$ ,  $\delta = 1$  and a saturating element,  $v_{\max} = 1$  for an operator step input  $r = 10$ . The Matlab example file *ExRefMod.m* in the MSS toolbox was used to generate the plots.

#### 10.2.2 Trajectory Generation using a Marine Craft Simulator

The reference models in Section 10.2.1 are attractive due to their simplicity. The cutoff frequency of the reference model must never exceed the closed-loop bandwidth of the system in order to guarantee that



**Figure 10.5** Desired position and velocity for a step input  $r = 10$ .

the craft is able to track the desired states. This is difficult to verify in a practical system due to factors such as nonlinearities, saturating elements and time delays. An alternative approach could be to generate a time-varying reference trajectory using a closed-loop model of the craft, where the time constants, relative damping ratios and natural frequencies are chosen to reflect physical limitations of the craft. For instance, the dynamic model can be chosen as

$$\dot{\eta}_d = J_{\Theta}(\eta_d)v_d \quad (10.39)$$

$$M\ddot{v}_d + Nv_d + g(\eta_d) = \tau \quad (10.40)$$

where the damping matrix is modeled as a diagonal matrix:

$$N = \text{diag}\{n_1, \dots, n_6\} > 0 \quad (10.41)$$

The system inertia matrix  $M$  is included in the model to guarantee proper scaling of the control inputs  $\tau$ . Smooth reference trajectories  $(\eta_d(t), v_d(t))$  are then obtained by simulating the model under closed-loop control, for instance by using a nonlinear PD controller (see Section 12.2):

$$\tau = g(\eta_d) - J_{\Theta}^{\top}(\eta_d) \left[ K_p(\eta_d - \eta_{ref}) + K_d \dot{\eta}_d \right] \quad (10.42)$$

where  $\eta_{ref}$  is the setpoint and  $(\eta_d, v_d)$  represents the desired states. The control law (10.42) is in fact a *guidance controller* since it is applied to the reference model. In addition to this, it is useful to include saturation elements for velocity and acceleration to keep these quantities within their physical limits.

### **Example 10.3 (Generation of Reference Trajectories using a Marine Craft Simulator)**

Consider a marine craft moving at forward speed  $U \gg 0$  such that  $u \approx U$  and  $v \approx 0$ . The desired reference trajectories can be modeled as

$$\dot{x}_d = u_d \cos(\psi_d) \quad (10.43)$$

$$\dot{y}_d = u_d \sin(\psi_d) \quad (10.44)$$

with the surge velocity given by

$$(m - X_{\dot{u}})\ddot{u}_d + \frac{1}{2}\rho C_d A |u_d| u_d = \tau \quad (10.45)$$

where  $u_d \gg 0$  is the desired velocity,  $\rho$  is the density of water,  $C_d$  is the drag coefficient,  $A$  is the projected cross-sectional area of the submerged hull in the  $x$  direction and  $(m - X_{\dot{u}})$  is the mass including the hydrodynamic added mass. Notice that the ship is moving so fast that quadratic drag dominates and linear damping due to skin friction can be neglected. The yaw dynamics is chosen as a first-order Nomoto model:

$$\dot{\psi}_d = r_d \quad (10.46)$$

$$Tr_d + r_d = K\delta \quad (10.47)$$

where  $K$  and  $T$  are the design parameters. The guidance system has two inputs, thrust  $\tau$  and rudder angle  $\delta$ . The guidance controllers for speed and yaw angle can be chosen of PI and PID types, respectively:

$$\tau = -K_{p\tau}(u_d - u_{ref}) - K_{i\tau} \int_0^t (u_d - u_{ref}) d\tau \quad (10.48)$$

$$\delta = -K_{p\delta}(\psi_d - \psi_{ref}) - K_{i\delta} \int_0^t (\psi_d - \psi_{ref}) d\tau - K_{d\delta} r_d \quad (10.49)$$

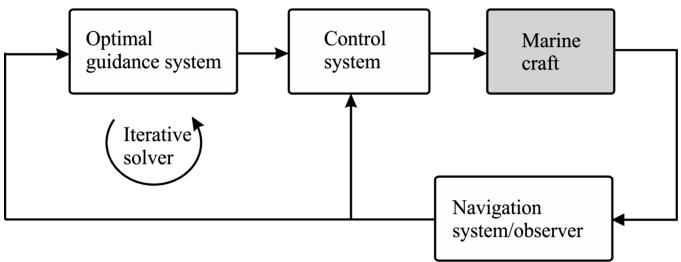
where  $\psi_{ref}$  is generated using an LOS algorithm (see Section 10.3):

$$\psi_{ref} = \text{atan2}(y_{los} - y_d(t), x_{los} - x_d(t)) \quad (10.50)$$

Numerical integration of (10.43)–(10.47) with feedback (10.48)–(10.49) yields a smooth reference trajectory  $(x_d, y_d, \psi_d)$  and speed assignment  $U_d$ .

### **10.2.3 Optimal Trajectory Generation**

Optimization methods can be used for trajectory and path generation. This gives a systematic method for inclusion of static and dynamic constraints. However, the challenge is that an optimization problem must be solved online in order to generate a feasible time-varying trajectory. Implementation and solution of



**Figure 10.6** Optimal trajectory generation using an iterative solver to solve a minimum time or minimum power optimization problem.

optimization problems can be done using linear programming (LP), quadratic programming (QP) and nonlinear methods. All these methods require you to have a solver that can be implemented in your program; see Figure 10.6. For testing and development, the different algorithms can be implemented using the optimization toolbox in Matlab. The optimization problem can be formulated as minimum power or minimum time, for instance

$$J = \min_{\eta_d, v_d} \{ \text{power, time} \} \quad (10.51)$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned} |U| &\leq U_{\max} \text{ (maximum speed)} \\ |r| &\leq r_{\max} \text{ (maximum turning rate)} \\ |u_i| &\leq u_{i,\max} \text{ (saturating limit of control } u_i) \\ |\dot{u}_i| &\leq \dot{u}_{i,\max} \text{ (saturating limit of rate } \dot{u}_i) \end{aligned}$$

which represents the constraints imposed by the vehicle dynamics. It is also possible to add constraints for obstacle avoidance and minimum fuel consumption.

### 10.3 Path Following for Straight-Line Paths

A trajectory describes the motion of a moving object through space as a function of time. The object might be a craft, projectile or a satellite, for example. A trajectory can be described mathematically either by the geometry of the path (see Section 10.4) or as the position of the object over time. *Path following* is the task of following a predefined path independent of time; that is there are no temporal constraints. This means that no restrictions are placed on the temporal propagation along the path. Spatial constraints, however, can be added to represent obstacles and other positional constraints.

A frequently used method for path following is *line-of-sight (LOS) guidance*. A LOS vector from the craft to the next waypoint or a point on the path between two waypoints can be used for both course and heading control. If the craft is equipped with a heading autopilot the angle between the LOS vector and the predetermined path can be used as a setpoint for the heading autopilot. This will force the craft to track the path. Guidance laws composed of *speed* and *LOS steering laws*, which can be combined in various ways to achieve different motion control objectives, are presented in the forthcoming section, which is adapted from Breivik and Fossen (2004b, 2005b, 2009) and Breivik *et al.* (2008).

### 10.3.1 Path Generation based on Waypoints

Systems for waypoint guidance are used both for ships and underwater vehicles. These systems consist of a waypoint generator with a human interface. The selected waypoints are stored in a waypoint database and used for generation of a trajectory or a path for the moving craft to follow. Both trajectory and path-following control systems can be designed for this purpose. Sophisticated features such as weather routing, obstacle avoidance and mission planning can be incorporated in the design of waypoint guidance systems. Some of these features will be discussed in the forthcoming section.

#### Waypoint Representation

The route of a ship or an underwater vehicle is usually specified in terms of waypoints. Each waypoint is defined using Cartesian coordinates  $(x_k, y_k, z_k)$  for  $k = 1, \dots, n$ . The waypoint *database* therefore consists of

$$\text{wpt.pos} = \{(x_0, y_0, z_0), (x_1, y_1, z_1), \dots, (x_n, y_n, z_n)\}$$

For surface craft, only two coordinates  $(x_k, y_k)$  are used. Additionally, other waypoint properties such as speed and heading can be defined, that is

$$\text{wpt.speed} = \{U_0, U_1, \dots, U_n\}$$

$$\text{wpt.heading} = \{\psi_0, \psi_1, \dots, \psi_n\}$$

For surface craft this means that the craft should pass through waypoint  $(x_i, y_i)$  at forward speed  $U_i$  with heading angle  $\psi_i$ . The three states  $(x_i, y_i, \psi_i)$  are also called the *pose*. The heading angle is usually unspecified during cross-tracking, whereas it is more important during a crab wise maneuver close to offshore installations (dynamic positioning).

The waypoint database can be generated using many criteria. These are usually based on:

- **Mission:** The craft should move from some starting point  $(x_0, y_0, z_0)$  to the terminal point  $(x_n, y_n, z_n)$  via the waypoints  $(x_i, y_i, z_i)$ .
- **Environmental data:** Information about wind, waves and ocean currents can be used for energy optimal routing (or avoidance of bad weather for safety reasons).
- **Geographical data:** Information about shallow waters and islands should be included.
- **Obstacles:** Floating constructions and other obstacles must be avoided.
- **Collision avoidance:** Avoiding moving craft close to your own route by introducing safety margins.
- **Feasibility:** Each waypoint must be feasible, in that it must be possible to maneuver to the next waypoint without exceeding the maximum speed and turning rate.

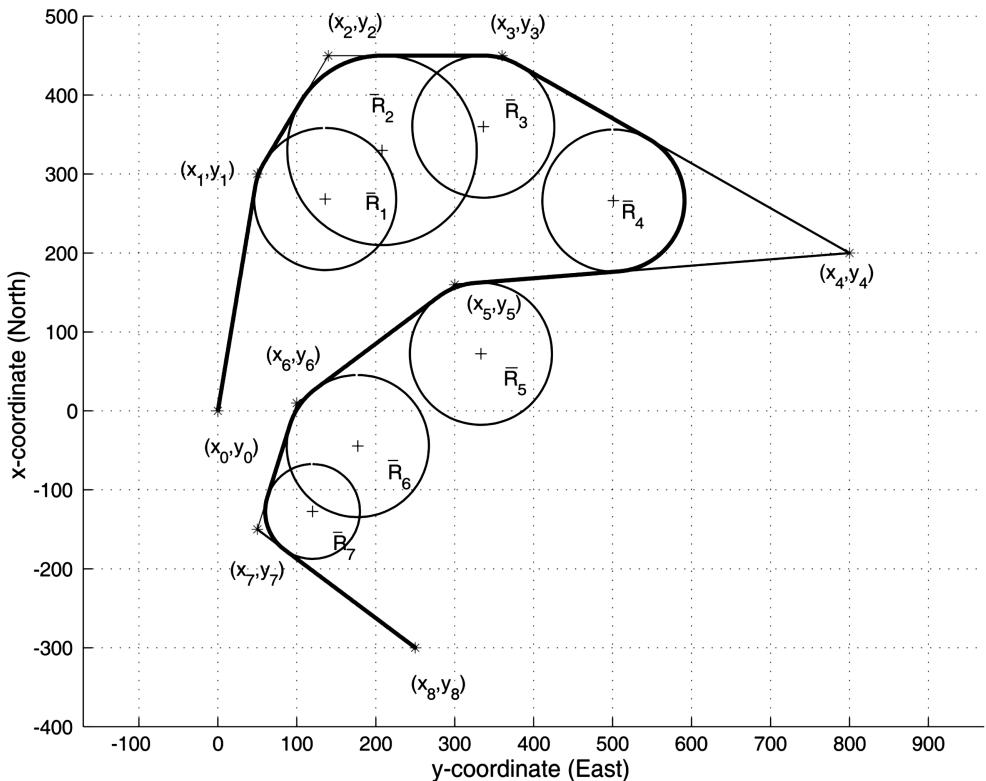
Online replanning can be used to update the waypoint database in case of time-varying conditions such as changing weather or moving craft (collision avoidance). Optimality with regard to weather is discussed in Section 10.4.1. This is referred to as weather routing.

#### Path Generation using Straight Lines and Circular Arcs

In practice it is common to represent the desired path using straight lines and circle arcs to connect the waypoints, as shown in Figure 10.7. This is related to the famous result of Dubins (1957), which can be summarized as:

*The shortest path (minimum time) between two configurations  $(x, y, \psi)$  of a craft moving at constant speed  $U$  is a path formed by straight lines and circular arc segments.*

Since a craft and not a point mass is considered, the start and end configurations of the craft are specified in terms of the positions  $(x, y)$ , heading angle  $\psi$  and speed  $U$ . In addition, it is assumed that there are bounds



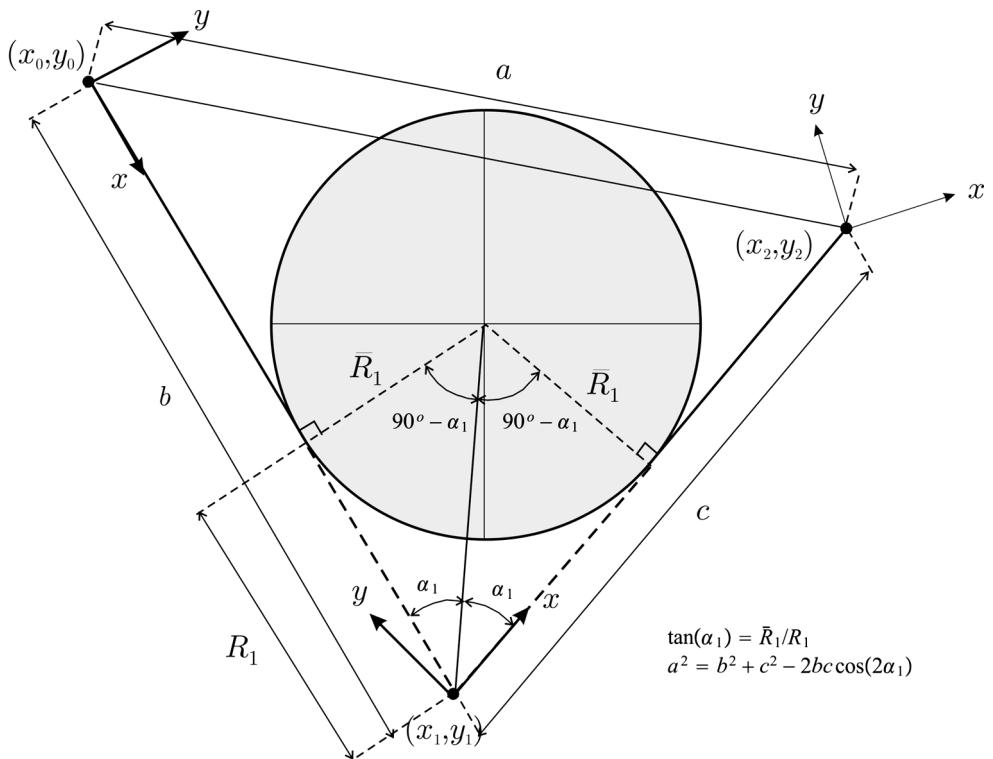
**Figure 10.7** Straight lines and inscribed circles used for waypoint guidance.

on the turning rate  $r$  or the radius. The so-called Dubins path can also be proven by using *Pontryagin's maximum principle*. Generation of Dubins paths including obstacle avoidance are discussed by Tsourdos *et al.* (2010). Extensions to the case with turn rate and acceleration limits (convected Dubins path) are made by Kostov and Degtiariova-Kostova (1993) and Scheuer and Laugier (1998). Path generation for the case of uniform currents are discussed by McGee *et al.* (2006) and Techy and Woolsey (2009, 2010). In the case of time-varying speed, a dynamic optimization problem including the marine craft surge dynamics must be solved.

In this section, the discussion is limited to Dubins paths formed by straight lines and circles as shown in Figure 10.7, where the inscribed circle between two straight lines describes the desired turn. The radius of the inscribed circle is denoted  $\bar{R}_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, n$ ).

The drawback of this strategy, in comparison with a cubic interpolation strategy, for instance, is that a jump in the desired yaw rate  $r_d$  is experienced. This is due to the fact that the desired yaw rate along the straight line is  $r_d = 0$  while it is  $r_d = \text{constant}$  on the circle arc during steady turning. Hence, there will be a jump in the desired yaw rate during transition from the straight line to the circle arc. This produces a small offset during cross-tracking. If a smooth reference trajectory, for instance generated by interpolation, is used, these drawbacks are overcome. However, it is convenient to use straight lines and circle arcs due to their simplicity. Another consideration is that the human operator can specify a circle with radius  $R_i$  about each waypoint (see Figure 10.7). These values are stored in the database as

$$\text{wpt.radius} = \{R_0, R_1, \dots, R_n\}$$



**Figure 10.8** Circle with radius  $\bar{R}_1$  inscribed between the points  $(x_0, y_0)$ ,  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$ .

The point where the circle arc intersects the straight line represents the turning point of the ship. Hence, the radius of the inscribed circle can be computed from  $R_i$  as

$$\bar{R}_i = R_i \tan(\alpha_i) \quad (i = 1, \dots, n) \quad (10.52)$$

where  $\alpha_i$  is defined in Figure 10.8.

### 10.3.2 LOS Steering Laws

This section is based on Breivik and Fossen (2009) and Breivik (2010). For 2-D horizontal plane motions, the speed of the craft is defined as

$$U(t) := \|\mathbf{v}(t)\| = \sqrt{\dot{x}(t)^2 + \dot{y}(t)^2} \geq 0 \quad (10.53)$$

while steering is related to the angle

$$\chi(t) := \text{atan2}(\dot{y}(t), \dot{x}(t)) \in \mathbb{S} := [-\pi, \pi] \quad (10.54)$$

where  $\text{atan2}(y, x)$  is the four-quadrant version of  $\arctan(y/x) \in [-\pi/2, \pi/2]$ . Path following is ensured by proper assignments to  $\chi(t)$  (steering control) as long as  $U(t) > 0$  (positive speed) since the scenario only involves a spatial constraint.

Consider a straight-line path implicitly defined by two waypoints  $\mathbf{p}_k^n = [x_k, y_k]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^2$  and  $\mathbf{p}_{k+1}^n = [x_{k+1}, y_{k+1}]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^2$ , respectively. Also, consider a path-fixed reference frame with origin in  $\mathbf{p}_k^n$  whose  $x$  axis has been rotated by a positive angle:

$$\alpha_k := \text{atan2}(y_{k+1} - y_k, x_{k+1} - x_k) \in \mathbb{S} \quad (10.55)$$

relative to the  $x$  axis. Hence, the coordinates of the craft in the path-fixed reference frame can be computed by

$$\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}(t) = \mathbf{R}_p(\alpha_k)^\top (\mathbf{p}^n(t) - \mathbf{p}_k^n) \quad (10.56)$$

where

$$\mathbf{R}_p(\alpha_k) := \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\alpha_k) & -\sin(\alpha_k) \\ \sin(\alpha_k) & \cos(\alpha_k) \end{bmatrix} \in SO(2) \quad (10.57)$$

and  $\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}(t) = [s(t), e(t)]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^2$  with

$s(t)$  = along-track distance (tangential to path)

$e(t)$  = cross-track error (normal to path)

For path-following purposes, only the cross-track error is relevant since  $e(t) = 0$  means that the craft has converged to the straight line. Expanding (10.56), the along-track distance and cross-track error can be explicitly stated by

$$s(t) = [x(t) - x_k] \cos(\alpha_k) + [y(t) - y_k] \sin(\alpha_k) \quad (10.58)$$

$$e(t) = -[x(t) - x_k] \sin(\alpha_k) + [y(t) - y_k] \cos(\alpha_k) \quad (10.59)$$

and the associated control objective for straight-line path following becomes

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} e(t) = 0 \quad (10.60)$$

In order to ensure that  $e(t) \rightarrow 0$ , both course and heading angle commands can be used.

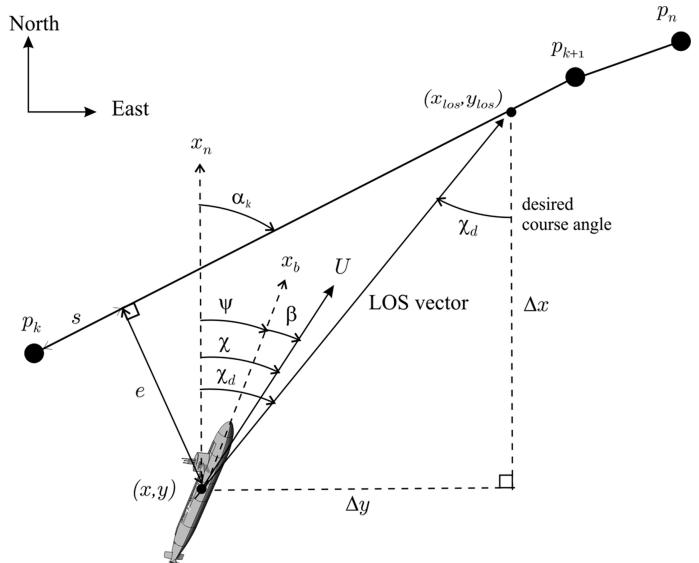
Two different guidance principles can be used to steer along the LOS vector (Breivik and Fossen, 2009):

- *Enclosure-based steering*
- *Lookahead-based steering*

and at the same time stabilize  $e(t)$  to the origin. The two steering methods essentially operate by the same principle, but as will be made clear, the lookahead-based approach motivated by missile guidance has several advantages over the enclosure-based approach.

### Enclosure-Based Steering

Consider a circle with radius  $R > 0$  enclosing  $\mathbf{p}^n = [x, y]^\top$ . If the circle radius is chosen sufficiently large, the circle will intersect the straight line at two points. The enclosure-based strategy for driving  $e(t)$  to zero is then to direct the velocity toward the intersection point  $\mathbf{p}_{\text{los}}^n = [x_{\text{los}}, y_{\text{los}}]^\top$  that corresponds to



**Figure 10.9** LOS guidance where the desired course angle  $\chi_d$  (angle between  $x_n$  and the desired velocity vector) is chosen to point toward the LOS intersection point  $(x_{\text{los}}, y_{\text{los}})$ .

the desired direction of travel, which is implicitly defined by the sequence in which the waypoints are ordered. Such a solution involves directly assigning  $\chi_d$  as shown in Figure 10.9. Since

$$\tan(\chi_d(t)) = \frac{\Delta y(t)}{\Delta x(t)} = \frac{y_{\text{los}} - y(t)}{x_{\text{los}} - x(t)} \quad (10.61)$$

the desired course angle can be computed as

$$\chi_d(t) = \text{atan2}(y_{\text{los}} - y(t), x_{\text{los}} - x(t)) \quad (10.62)$$

In order to calculate the two unknowns in  $\mathbf{p}_{\text{los}}^n = [x_{\text{los}}, y_{\text{los}}]^\top$ , the following two equations must be solved:

$$[x_{\text{los}} - x(t)]^2 + [y_{\text{los}} - y(t)]^2 = R^2 \quad (10.63)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \tan(\alpha_k) &= \frac{y_{k+1} - y_k}{x_{k+1} - x_k} \\ &= \frac{y_{\text{los}} - y_k}{x_{\text{los}} - x_k} = \text{constant} \end{aligned} \quad (10.64)$$

where (10.63) represents the *Pythagoras theorem*, while (10.64) states that the slope of the line between the two waypoints is constant. LOS guidance has been applied to surface ships by McGookin *et al.*

(2000b) and Fossen *et al.* (2003b). These equations are solved in the following, temporarily dropping the time dependence of the variables for notational convenience.

Denote the difference between the  $x$  and  $y$  positions of the two waypoints as  $\Delta x := x_{k+1} - x_k$  and  $\Delta y := y_{k+1} - y_k$ , respectively. The equations are first solved analytically assuming that  $|\Delta x| > 0$  and, second, for the case  $\Delta x = 0$ .

**Case 1:** For  $|\Delta x| > 0$ , Equation (10.64) results in

$$y_{\text{los}} = \left( \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} \right) (x_{\text{los}} - x_k) + y_k \quad (10.65)$$

when choosing to solve for  $y_{\text{los}}$ . For simplicity and brevity in the calculations that follow, denote

$$d := \left( \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} \right), \quad e := x_k, \quad f := y_k$$

Expanding (10.63) yields

$$x_{\text{los}}^2 - 2xx_{\text{los}} + x^2 + y_{\text{los}}^2 - 2yy_{\text{los}} + y^2 = R^2 \quad (10.66)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} y_{\text{los}}^2 &= \left[ \left( \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} \right) (x_{\text{los}} - x_k) + y_k \right]^2 \\ &= [dx_{\text{los}} + (f - de)]^2 \\ &= (dx_{\text{los}} + g)^2 \\ &= d^2x_{\text{los}}^2 + 2dgx_{\text{los}} + g^2 \end{aligned} \quad (10.67)$$

where

$$g := f - de = y_k - \left( \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} \right) x_k$$

has been used. Subsequently, consider

$$2yy_{\text{los}} = 2y(dx_{\text{los}} + g) = 2dyx_{\text{los}} + 2gy \quad (10.68)$$

such that (10.67) and (10.68) inserted into (10.66) gives:

$$(1 + d^2)x_{\text{los}}^2 + 2(dg - dy - x)x_{\text{los}} + (x^2 + y^2 + g^2 - 2gy - R^2) = 0 \quad (10.69)$$

which is a standard, analytically solvable second-order equation. Then, denote

$$\begin{aligned} a &:= 1 + d^2 \\ b &:= 2(dg - dy - x) \\ c &:= x^2 + y^2 + g^2 - 2gy - R^2 \end{aligned}$$

from which the solution of (10.69) becomes

$$x_{\text{los}} = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a} \quad (10.70)$$

where if  $\Delta x > 0$ , then  $x_{\text{los}} = -b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}/2a$ , and if  $\Delta x < 0$ , then  $x_{\text{los}} = -b - \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}/2a$ .

Having calculated  $x_{\text{los}}$ ,  $y_{\text{los}}$  is easily obtained from (10.65). Note that when  $\Delta y = 0$ ,  $y_{\text{los}} = y_k (= y_{k+1})$ .

**Case 2:** If  $\Delta x = 0$ , only (10.63) is valid, which means that

$$y_{\text{los}} = y \pm \sqrt{r^2 - (x_{\text{los}} - x)^2} \quad (10.71)$$

where  $x_{\text{los}} = x_k (= x_{k+1})$ . If  $\Delta y > 0$ , then  $y_{\text{los}} = y + \sqrt{R^2 - (x_{\text{los}} - x)^2}$ , and if  $\Delta y < 0$ , then  $y_{\text{los}} = y - \sqrt{R^2 - (x_{\text{los}} - x)^2}$ . When  $\Delta x = 0$ ,  $\Delta y = 0$  is not an option.

### Lookahead-Based Steering

For lookahead-based steering, the course angle assignment is separated into two parts:

$$\chi_d(e) = \chi_p + \chi_r(e) \quad (10.72)$$

where

$$\chi_p = \alpha_k \quad (10.73)$$

is the *path-tangential angle* (see Figure 10.9), while

$$\chi_r(e) := \arctan \left( \frac{-e}{\Delta} \right) \quad (10.74)$$

is a *velocity-path relative angle*, which ensures that the velocity is directed toward a point on the path that is located a *lookahead distance*  $\Delta(t) > 0$  ahead of the direct projection of  $p^n(t)$  on to the path (Papoulias, 1991).

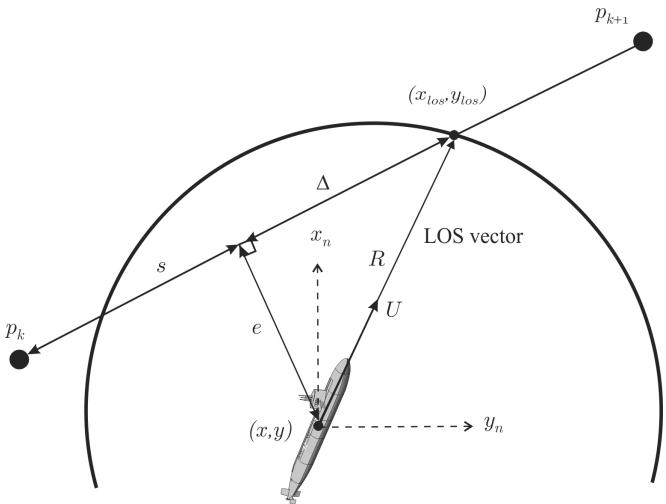
As can be immediately noticed, this lookahead-based steering scheme is less computationally intensive than the enclosure-based approach. It is also valid for all cross-track errors, whereas the enclosure-based strategy requires  $R \geq |e(t)|$ . Furthermore, Figure 10.10 shows that

$$e(t)^2 + \Delta(t)^2 = R^2 \quad (10.75)$$

which means that the enclosure-based approach corresponds to a lookahead-based scheme with a time variation

$$\Delta(t) = \sqrt{R^2 - e(t)^2} \quad (10.76)$$

varying between 0 and  $R$  for  $|e(t)| = R$  and  $|e(t)| = 0$ , respectively.



**Figure 10.10** Circle of acceptance with constant radius  $R$  illustrating the geometric relationship  $e(t)^2 + \Delta(t)^2 = R^2$ .

The steering law (10.74) can also be interpreted as a saturating control law:

$$\chi_r(e) = \arctan(-K_p e) \quad (10.77)$$

where  $K_p(t) = 1/\Delta(t) > 0$ . Notice that the lookahead-based steering law is equivalent to a saturated proportional control law, effectively mapping  $e \in \mathbb{R}$  into  $\chi_r(e) \in [-\pi/2, \pi/2]$ .

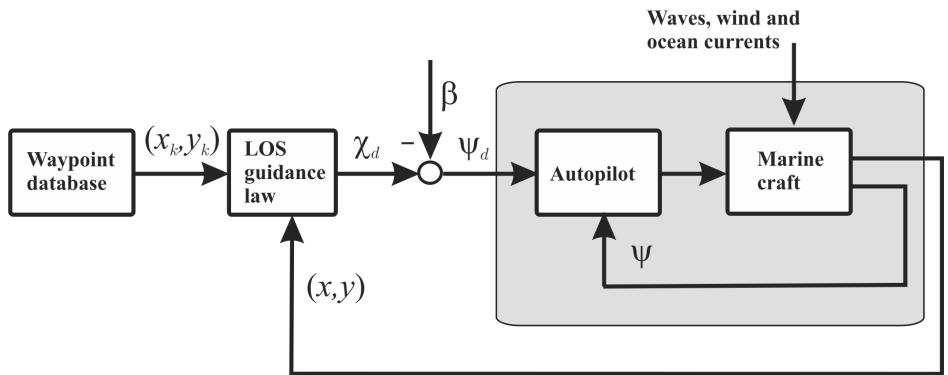
As can be inferred from the geometry of Figure 10.10, a small lookahead distance implies aggressive steering, which intuitively is confirmed by a correspondingly large proportional gain in the saturated control interpretation. This interpretation also suggests the possibility of introducing integral action into the steering law (10.74), such that

$$\chi_r(e) = \arctan\left(-K_p e - K_i \int_0^t e(\tau) d\tau\right) \quad (10.78)$$

where  $K_i > 0$  represents the integral gain. Integral action can be particularly useful for underactuated craft that can only steer by attitude information, enabling them to follow straight-line paths while under the influence of ocean currents and nonzero sideslip angles  $\beta$ , even without having access to velocity information. Thus, considering horizontal path following along straight lines, the desired yaw angle can be computed by

$$\chi_d(e) = \alpha_k + \chi_r(e) \quad (10.79)$$

with  $\chi_r(e)$  as in (10.78). In practice, to avoid overshoot and windup effects, care must be taken when using integral action in the steering law. Specifically, the integral term should only be used when a steady-state off-track condition is detected.



**Figure 10.11** LOS guidance principle where the sideslip angle  $\beta$  either can be chosen as zero and compensated for by using integral action or nonzero by using velocity measurements.

### Path-Following Controllers

Consider the LOS intersection point  $p_{\text{los}}^n$  in Figure 10.9. Different principles for path following can be applied depending on whether you have access to velocity measurements or not:

**Method A (Body  $x$  axis and LOS vector aligned):** Assume that the velocity is unknown and compute the desired heading angle according to the *enclosure-based steering law* (10.62):

$$\psi_d(t) = \text{atan2}(y_{\text{los}} - y(t), x_{\text{los}} - x(t)) \quad (10.80)$$

such that the body  $x$  axis of the craft points in the direction of the LOS intersection point  $p_{\text{los}}^n$ . In this approach, the sideslip angle  $\beta$  is assumed to be unknown and the control objective is  $\psi \rightarrow \psi_d$  (see Figure 10.11). Consequently, a *heading autopilot* of PID type is

$$\tau = -K_p \tilde{\psi} - K_d \dot{\tilde{\psi}} - K_i \int_0^t \tilde{\psi}(\tau) d\tau \quad (10.81)$$

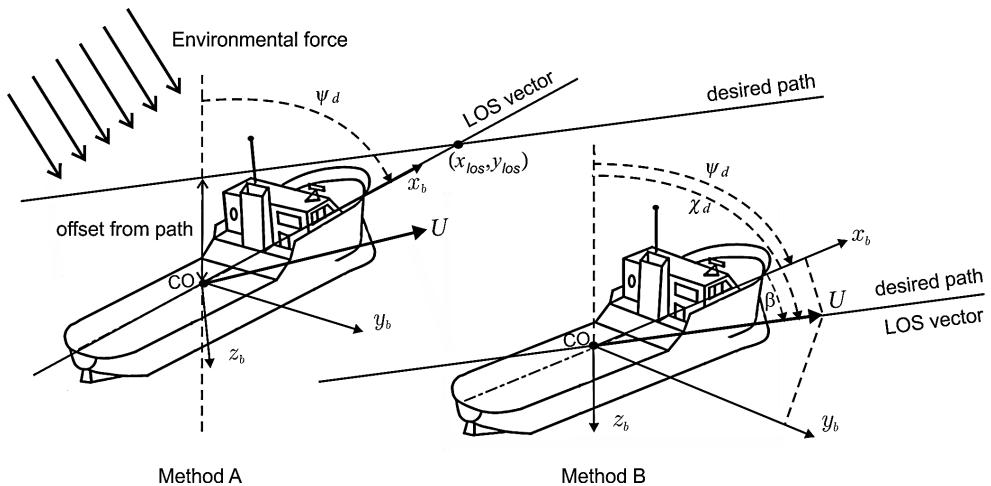
where  $\tilde{\psi} = \psi - \psi_d$  can be used. The price to be paid is that the craft will behave like an object hanging in a rope and the craft's lateral distance to the path will depend on the magnitude of the environmental forces and thus the sideslip angle  $\beta$ . This is due to the fact that  $\psi = \chi$  only if  $\beta = 0$ . If such deviations cannot be accepted, the speed and LOS vectors should be aligned using Method B (see Figure 10.12).

**Method B (Velocity and LOS vectors aligned):** Compute the desired course angle  $\chi_d$  such that the velocity vector is along the path (LOS vector) using the *lookahead-based steering law*:

$$\begin{aligned} \chi_d(e) &= \chi_p + \chi_r(e) \\ &= \alpha_k + \arctan(-K_p e) \end{aligned} \quad (10.82)$$

The control objective  $\chi \rightarrow \chi_d$  is satisfied by transforming the course angle command  $\chi_d$  to a heading angle command  $\psi_d$  by using (2.96). This requires knowledge of  $\beta$  since (see Figure 10.11)

$$\psi_d = \chi_d - \beta \quad (10.83)$$



**Figure 10.12** Body  $x$ -axis aligned with the LOS vector (Method A) or alternatively velocity and LOS vectors aligned (Method B). Notice that Method A gives a lateral offset to the path.

Hence, the velocity and LOS vectors can be aligned using the heading controller (12.178) with the following error signal:

$$\begin{aligned}\tilde{\psi} &= \psi - \psi_d \\ &= \psi - \chi_d + \beta\end{aligned}\quad (10.84)$$

as illustrated in Figure 10.11. If the velocities of the craft are measured, the sideslip angle can be computed by

$$\beta = \arcsin\left(\frac{v}{U}\right) \quad (10.85)$$

Guidance laws of PI type, for instance (10.78), avoid velocity measurements by treating  $\beta$  as an unknown slowly varying disturbance satisfying  $\dot{\beta} \approx 0$ .

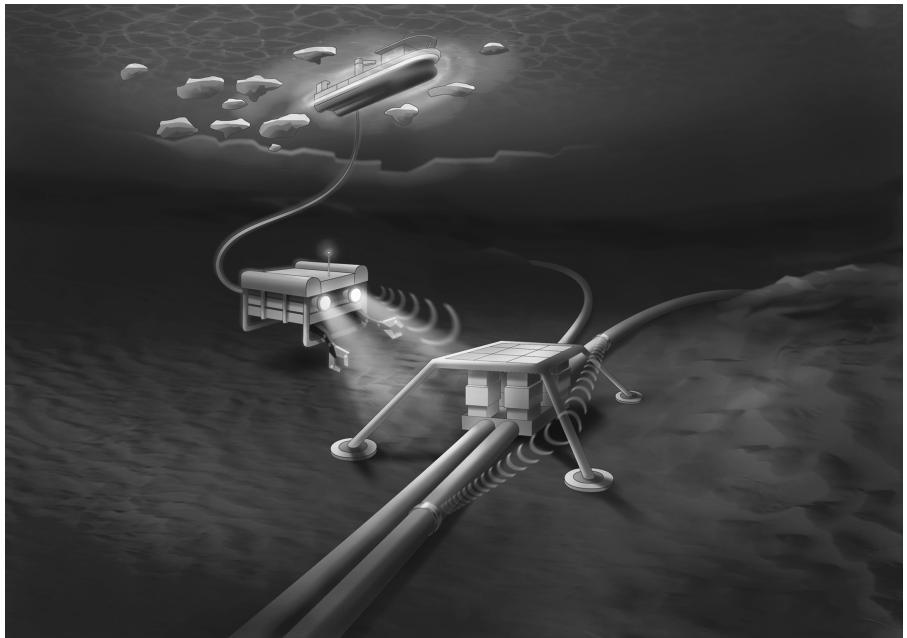
### Circle of Acceptance for Surface Vessels

When moving along a piece wise linear path made up of  $n$  straight-line segments connected by  $n+1$  waypoints, a switching mechanism for selecting the next waypoint is needed. Waypoint  $(x_{k+1}, y_{k+1})$  can be selected on the basis of whether or not the craft lies within a *circle of acceptance* with radius  $R_{k+1}$  around  $(x_{k+1}, y_{k+1})$ . Moreover, if the craft positions  $(x, y)$  at time  $t$  satisfy

$$[x_{k+1} - x(t)]^2 + [y_{k+1} - y(t)]^2 \leq R_{k+1}^2 \quad (10.86)$$

the next waypoint  $(x_{k+1}, y_{k+1})$  should be selected. A guideline could be to choose  $R_{k+1}$  equal to two ship lengths, that is  $R_{k+1} = 2L_{pp}$ .

Note that for the enclosure-based approach, such a switching criterion entails the additional (conservative) requirement  $r \geq R_{k+1}$ . A perhaps more suitable switching criterion solely involves the along-track



**Figure 10.13** Remotely operated vehicle (ROV) performing offshore inspection and maintenance. Illustration by Bjarne Stenberg/SINTEF.

distance  $s$ , such that if the total along-track distance between waypoints  $\mathbf{p}_k^n$  and  $\mathbf{p}_{k+1}^n$  is denoted  $s_{k+1}$ , a switch is made when

$$s_{k+1} - s(t) \leq R_{k+1} \quad (10.87)$$

which is similar to (12.189) but has the advantage that  $\mathbf{p}^n(t)$  does not need to enter the waypoint enclosing circle for a switch to occur; that is no restrictions are put on the cross-track error. Thus, if no intrinsic value is associated with visiting the waypoints and their only purpose is to implicitly define a piece-wise linear path, there is no reason to apply the circle-of-acceptance switching criterion (12.189).

### Extension to 3-D LOS Guidance for Underwater Vehicles

It is straightforward to generalize the concepts of LOS guidance to 3-D maneuvering. Also for this case, the desired course angle  $\chi_d$  can be chosen as (10.62) with the LOS intersection point given by (10.63) and (10.64) under the assumption that the vehicle performs slow maneuvers in the vertical plane such that a depth controller can easily achieve  $z = z_d$ . This works quite well for vehicles moving at low speed since it is not necessary to pitch the vehicle in order to move vertically; see Figure 10.13. A typical example is a working ROV with a broad, flattened front (bluff body) moving vertically using a vertical thruster. The circle of acceptance must, however, be replaced by a *sphere of acceptance* (Healey and Lienard, 1993):

$$[x_{k+1} - x(t)]^2 + [y_{k+1} - y(t)]^2 + [z_{k+1} - z(t)]^2 \leq R_{k+1}^2 \quad (10.88)$$

A more sophisticated approach will be to compute the azimuth and elevation angles needed to move in 3-D to the next waypoint (Breivik and Fossen, 2009). This approach is used for “flying” vehicles equipped with fins for diving and depth control. These vehicles move at a higher speed in order to produce lifting forces (no vertical thrusters) and consequently they behave like an aircraft, where it is possible to control the coupled surge, heave and pitch motions (longitudinal motions).

## 10.4 Path-Following for Curved Paths

This section relaxes the condition that the path consists of straight lines between waypoints. Instead, it is assumed that the guidance systems can make use of a predefined parametrized path. The path-following controller is a *kinematic controller* that generates the desired states for the motion control system using the parametrization of the path. The drawback is that the path must be parametrized and known in advance. In many cases this is not practical and a simpler path consisting of waypoints and straight lines must be used. The solution for this is presented in Section 10.3. Section 10.4.1 discusses path generation while a path-following controller for parametrized paths is derived in Section 10.4.2.

For a parametrized path, the following definitions are adopted from Skjetne *et al.* (2004):

### **Definition 10.2 (Parametrized Path)**

A parametrized path is defined as a geometric curve  $\eta_d(\varpi) \in \mathbb{R}^q$  with  $q \geq 1$  parametrized by a continuous path variable  $\varpi$ .

For marine craft it is common to use a 3-D representation:

$$\mathbf{p}_d^n(\varpi) = [x_d(\varpi), y_d(\varpi), z_d(\varpi)]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^3 \quad (10.89)$$

where the first two coordinates describe the position in the horizontal plane and the last coordinate is the depth. For surface vessels only  $x_d$  and  $y_d$  are needed while underwater vehicles use all three coordinates. The first- and second-order derivatives of  $\mathbf{p}^n(\varpi)$  with respect to  $\varpi$  are denoted as  $\mathbf{p}'$  and  $\mathbf{p}''$ , respectively.

A frequently used solution of the path-following problem is to solve it as the geometric task of a *maneuvering problem*, given by the following definition:

### **Definition 10.3 (Maneuvering Problem)**

The maneuvering problem involves solving two tasks:

1. Geometric Task: Force the position  $\mathbf{p}^n(t)$  to converge to a desired path  $\mathbf{p}_d^n(\varpi(t))$ ,

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} [\mathbf{p}^n(t) - \mathbf{p}_d^n(\varpi(t))] = \mathbf{0} \quad (10.90)$$

for any continuous function  $\varpi(t)$ .

2. Dynamic Task: Force the speed  $\dot{\varpi}$  to converge to a desired speed  $U_d$  according to

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \dot{\varpi}(t) - \frac{U_d(\varpi(t))}{\sqrt{(x'_d)^2 + (y'_d)^2}} \right] = 0 \quad (10.91)$$

The dynamic task follows from

$$U_d(t) = \sqrt{\dot{x}_d^2(t) + \dot{y}_d^2(t)} = \sqrt{x'_d(\varpi)^2 + y'_d(\varpi)^2} \dot{\varpi}(t) \quad (10.92)$$

Definition 10.3 implies that the dynamics  $\varpi(t)$  along the path can be specified independently of the error dynamics. A special case of the maneuvering problem is

$$\dot{\varpi}(t) = 1, \quad \varpi(0) = 0 \quad (10.93)$$

which is recognized as the tracking problem since the solution of (10.93) is  $\varpi = t$ . A solution to the maneuvering problem for fully actuated craft is found in Skjetne *et al.* (2004).

### 10.4.1 Path Generation using Interpolation Methods

The path can be generated using spline or polynomial interpolation methods to generate a curve  $(x_d(\varpi), y_d(\varpi))$  through a set of  $N$  predefined waypoints. Notice that a trajectory  $(x_d(t), y_d(t))$  is obtained by choosing  $\dot{\varpi} = k$  such that  $\varpi = kt$  where  $k \in \mathbb{R}$ .

#### Cubic Spline and Hermite Interpolation

In Matlab, several methods for interpolation are available.

##### Matlab

The different methods for interpolation are found by typing

```
help polyfun
```

Two useful methods for path generation are the cubic spline interpolant (`spline.m`) and the piecewise cubic Hermite interpolating polynomial (`pchip.m`).

The main difference between Hermite and cubic spline and interpolation is how the slopes at the end points are handled. For simplicity let us consider the problem of trajectory generation. The cubic Hermite interpolant ensures that the first-order derivatives  $(\dot{x}_d(t), \dot{y}_d(t))$  are continuous. In addition, the slopes at each endpoint are chosen in such a way that  $(x_d(t), y_d(t))$  are shape preserving and respect monotonicity.

Cubic spline interpolation is usually done by requiring that the second-order derivatives  $(\ddot{x}_d(t), \ddot{y}_d(t))$  at the endpoints of the polynomials are equal, which gives a smooth spline. Consequently, the cubic spline will be more accurate than the Hermite interpolating polynomial if the data values are of a smooth function. The cubic Hermite interpolant, on the contrary, has less oscillations if the data are nonsmooth.

The results of interpolating a set of predefined waypoints to a trajectory  $(x_d(\varpi), y_d(\varpi))$  using the cubic Hermite interpolant and cubic spline interpolation methods are shown in Figure 10.14. It is seen that different behaviors are obtained due to the conditions on the first- and second-order derivatives at the endpoints.

#### Polynomial Interpolation

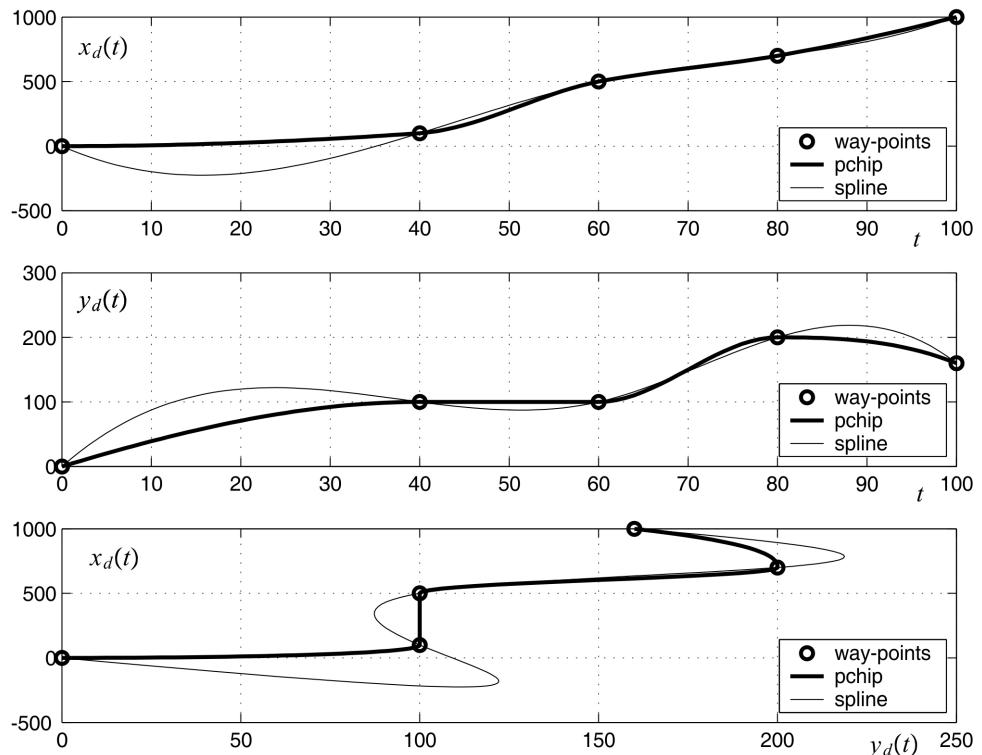
Instead of using the Matlab functions `pchip.m` and `spline.m` a cubic spline can be interpolated through a set of waypoints by considering the *cubic polynomials*

$$x_d(\varpi) = a_3\varpi^3 + a_2\varpi^2 + a_1\varpi + a_0 \quad (10.94)$$

$$y_d(\varpi) = b_3\varpi^3 + b_2\varpi^2 + b_1\varpi + b_0 \quad (10.95)$$

where  $(x_d(\varpi), y_d(\varpi))$  are the position of the craft and where  $\varpi$  is a path variable given by

$$\dot{\varpi} = f(\varpi, t) \quad (10.96)$$



**Figure 10.14** Methods for waypoint interpolation; see ExSpline.m in the MSS toolbox.

The partial derivatives of \$x\_d(\varpi)\$ and \$y\_d(\varpi)\$ with respect to \$\varpi\$ are

$$x'_d(\varpi) = \frac{dx_d(\varpi)}{d\varpi} = 3a_3\varpi^2 + 2a_2\varpi + a_1 \quad (10.97)$$

$$y'_d(\varpi) = \frac{dy_d(\varpi)}{d\varpi} = 3b_3\varpi^2 + 2b_2\varpi + b_1 \quad (10.98)$$

Hence, the desired speed \$U\_d(t)\$ of the craft can be computed as

$$\dot{x}_d(t) = \frac{dx_d(\varpi)}{d\varpi} \dot{\varpi}(t) \quad (10.99)$$

$$\dot{y}_d(t) = \frac{dy_d(\varpi)}{d\varpi} \dot{\varpi}(t) \quad (10.100)$$

resulting in

$$\begin{aligned} U_d(t) &= \sqrt{\dot{x}_d^2(t) + \dot{y}_d^2(t)} \\ &= \sqrt{x'_d(\varpi)^2 + y'_d(\varpi)^2} \dot{\varpi}(t) \end{aligned} \quad (10.101)$$

Similarly, an expression for the acceleration  $\dot{U}_d(t)$  can be found.

### Matlab

The script `ExSpline.m` generates the plots in Figure 10.14:

```
% ExSpline - Cubic Hermite and spline interpolation of waypoints

wpt.pos.x = [0 100 500 700 1000];
wpt.pos.y = [0 100 100 200 160];
wpt.time = [0 40 60 80 100];

t = 0:1:max(wpt.time); % time
x_p = pchip(wpt.time,wpt.pos.x,t); % cubic Hermite interpolation
y_p = pchip(wpt.time,wpt.pos.y,t);
x_s = spline(wpt.time,wpt.pos.x,t); % spline interpolation
y_s = spline(wpt.time,wpt.pos.y,t);

subplot(311), plot(wpt.time,wpt.pos.x,'o',t,[x_p; x_s])
subplot(312), plot(wpt.time,wpt.pos.y,'o',t,[y_p; y_s])
subplot(313), plot(wpt.pos.y,wpt.pos.x,'o',y_p,x_p,y_s,x_s)
```

The unknown parameters  $a_0, a_1, a_2, a_3, b_0, b_1, b_2, b_3$  in (10.94) and (10.95) can also be computed using a cubic spline algorithm, as shown below.

### Cubic Spline Algorithm for Path Generation

The path through the waypoints  $(x_{k-1}, y_{k-1})$  and  $(x_k, y_k)$  must satisfy

$$x_d(\varpi_{k-1}) = x_{k-1}, \quad x_d(\varpi_k) = x_k \quad (10.102)$$

$$y_d(\varpi_{k-1}) = y_{k-1}, \quad y_d(\varpi_k) = y_k \quad (10.103)$$

where  $k = 1, \dots, n$ . In addition, smoothness is obtained by requiring that

$$\lim_{\varpi \rightarrow \varpi_k^-} x'_d(\varpi) = \lim_{\varpi \rightarrow \varpi_k^+} x'_d(\varpi) \quad (10.104)$$

$$\lim_{\varpi \rightarrow \varpi_k^-} x''_d(\varpi) = \lim_{\varpi \rightarrow \varpi_k^+} x''_d(\varpi) \quad (10.105)$$

For this problem, it is possible to add only two boundary conditions (velocity or acceleration) for the  $x$  and  $y$  equations, respectively. Hence,

$$x'_d(\varpi_0) = x'_0, \quad x'_d(\varpi_n) = x'_n \quad (10.106)$$

$$y'_d(\varpi_0) = y'_0, \quad y'_d(\varpi_n) = y'_n \quad (10.107)$$

or

$$x_d''(\varpi_0) = x_0'', \quad x_d''(\varpi_n) = x_n'' \quad (10.108)$$

$$y_d''(\varpi_0) = y_0'', \quad y_d''(\varpi_n) = y_n'' \quad (10.109)$$

The polynomial  $x_d(\varpi_k)$  is given by the parameters  $\mathbf{a}_k = [a_{3k}, a_{2k}, a_{1k}, a_{0k}]^\top$ , resulting in  $4(n - 1)$  unknown parameters. The number of constraints are also  $4(n - 1)$  if only velocity or acceleration constraints are chosen at the end points. The unknown parameters for  $n$  waypoints are collected into a vector:

$$\mathbf{x} = [\mathbf{a}_k^\top, \dots, \mathbf{a}_{n-1}^\top]^\top \quad (10.110)$$

Hence, the cubic interpolation problem can be written as a linear equation:

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{A}(\varpi_{k-1}, \dots, \varpi_k)\mathbf{x}, \quad k = 1, 2, \dots, n \quad (10.111)$$

where

$$\mathbf{y} = [x_{\text{start}}, x_0, x_1, x_1, 0, 0, x_2, x_2, 0, 0, \dots, x_n, x_{\text{final}}]^\top \quad (10.112)$$

The start and end points can be specified in terms of velocity or acceleration constraints  $x_{\text{start}} \in \{x'_0, x''_0\}$  and  $x_{\text{final}} \in \{x'_n, x''_n\}$ , respectively. This gives

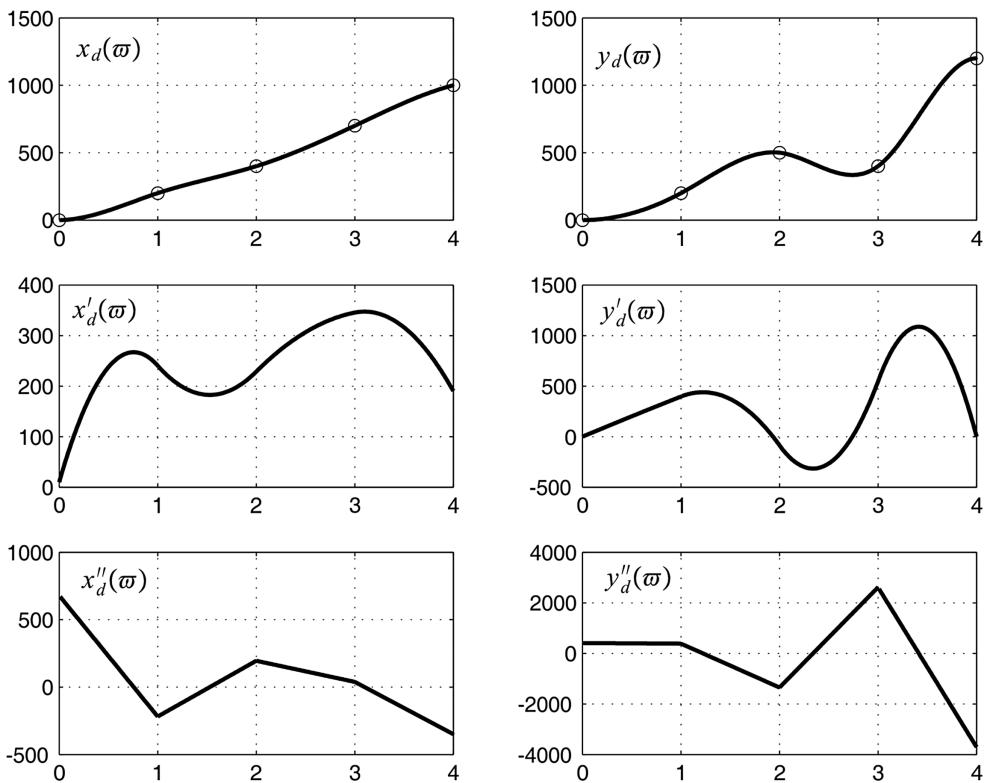
$$\mathbf{A}(\varpi_{k-1}, \dots, \varpi_k) = \left[ \begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{c}_{\text{start}} & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & \dots & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} \\ \mathbf{p}(\varpi_0) & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} \\ \hline \mathbf{p}(\varpi_1) & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} \\ 0 & \mathbf{p}(\varpi_1) & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} \\ -\mathbf{v}(\varpi_1) & \mathbf{v}(\varpi_1) & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} \\ -\mathbf{a}(\varpi_1) & \mathbf{a}(\varpi_1) & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} \\ \hline \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & \mathbf{p}(\varpi_2) & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} \\ \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & \mathbf{p}(\varpi_2) & & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} \\ \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & -\mathbf{v}(\varpi_2) & \mathbf{v}(\varpi_2) & & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} \\ \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & -\mathbf{a}(\varpi_2) & \mathbf{a}(\varpi_2) & & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} \\ \hline \vdots & & & & \ddots \\ \hline \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & & \mathbf{p}(\varpi_n) \\ \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times 4} & \dots & \mathbf{c}_{\text{final}} \end{array} \right] \quad (10.113)$$

where  $\mathbf{c}_{\text{start}} \in \{x'_d(\varpi_0), x''_d(\varpi_0)\}$ ,  $\mathbf{c}_{\text{final}} \in \{x'_d(\varpi_n), x''_d(\varpi_n)\}$  and

$$\mathbf{p}(\varpi_k) = [\varpi_k^3, \varpi_k^2, \varpi_k, 1] \quad (10.114)$$

$$\mathbf{v}(\varpi_k) = \mathbf{p}'(\varpi_k) = [3\varpi_k^2, 2\varpi_k, 1, 0] \quad (10.115)$$

$$\mathbf{a}(\varpi_k) = \mathbf{p}''(\varpi_k) = [6\varpi_k, 2, 0, 0] \quad (10.116)$$



**Figure 10.15** Polynomials  $x_d(\varpi)$  and  $y_d(\varpi)$  and their first- and second-order derivatives.

Equation (10.111) can be solved for  $\varpi_k = 0, 1, \dots, n$  according to

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}^{-1} \mathbf{y} \quad (10.117)$$

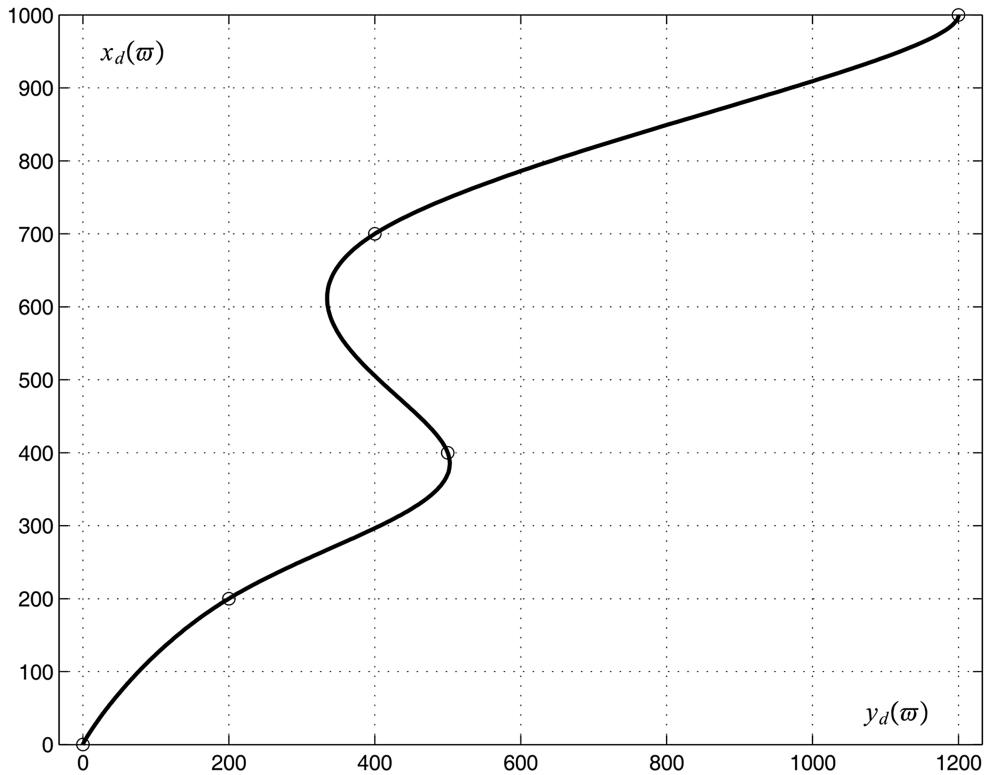
The formulae for  $\mathbf{b}_k = [b_{3k}, b_{2k}, b_{1k}, b_{0k}]^\top$  are obtained in a similar manner.

### Matlab

Formula (10.117) has been implemented in the script `ExPathGen.m` and `pva.m`. The results are for the following set of waypoints:

```
wpt.pos.x = [0 200 400 700 1000]
wpt.pos.y = [0 200 500 400 1200]
```

where  $\varpi = 0, \dots, 4$  are shown in Figures 10.15 and 10.16.



**Figure 10.16** The  $xy$  plot based on a cubic spline.

### Transformation of Path to Reference Trajectories using Desired Speed Profiles

In Figure 10.16 it is seen that the solution between two successive waypoints

$$x_d(\varpi) = a_3\varpi^3 + a_2\varpi^2 + a_1\varpi + a_0 \quad (10.118)$$

$$y_d(\varpi) = b_3\varpi^3 + b_2\varpi^2 + b_1\varpi + b_0 \quad (10.119)$$

is indeed a *time-independent* path when  $x_d(\varpi)$  is plotted against  $y_d(\varpi)$  for increasing  $\varpi$  values.

The path can be transformed to a *time-varying* trajectory by defining a *speed profile*. The speed profile assigns dynamics to  $\varpi(t)$  such that the desired path transforms to a time-dependent reference trajectory at the same time as the desired speed and acceleration profiles are preserved. From (10.101) it is seen that

$$\dot{\varpi}(t) = \frac{U_d(t)}{\sqrt{x'_d(\varpi)^2 + y'_d(\varpi)^2}}, \quad \varpi(t_k) = k \quad (10.120)$$

where  $\varpi(t_k) = k$  is the initial condition of the differential equation and  $U_d(t)$  is the desired speed profile. Let  $U_{\text{ref}}$  be the input to a first-order system:

$$T \dot{U}_d(t) + U_d(t) = U_{\text{ref}}, \quad T > 0 \quad (10.121)$$

A smooth transition from the desired speed  $U_d(t_k)$  at waypoint  $k$  to the next waypoint  $k + 1$  can be made by using

$$U_{\text{ref}} = U_d(t_{k+1}) \quad (10.122)$$

This is illustrated in the following example.

#### **Example 10.4 (Transformation of Path to Reference Trajectories)**

Consider the first two waypoints in the example file `ExPathGen.m`:

$$(x_0, y_0) = (0, 0)$$

$$(x_1, y_1) = (200, 200)$$

The cubic polynomials satisfying (10.117) are

$$x_d(\varpi) = -29.89 \varpi^3 + 135.63 \varpi^2 + 94.25 \varpi$$

$$y_d(\varpi) = 108.05 \varpi^3 - 2.30 \varpi^2 + 94.25 \varpi$$

for  $\varpi \in [0, 1]$ . Let the speed dynamics time constant be  $T = 10$  s. Assume that the craft is initially at rest ( $U_d(t_0) = 0$ ) and that the desired speed of waypoint number 1 is  $U_{\text{ref}} = U_d(t_1) = 5.0$  m/s. The numerical solutions of

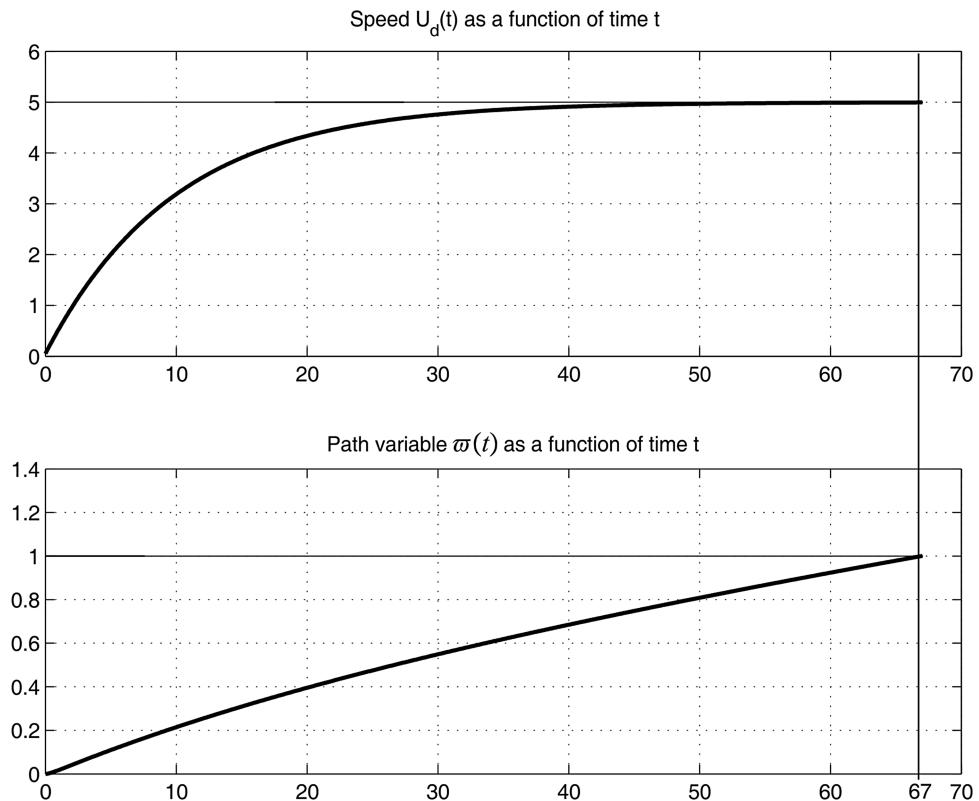
$$\dot{\varpi}(t) = \frac{U_d(t)}{\sqrt{x'_d(\varpi)^2 + y'_d(\varpi)^2}} \quad (10.123)$$

$$T \dot{U}_d(t) + U_d(t) = U_{\text{ref}} \quad (10.124)$$

for waypoints 0 and 1 corresponding to  $\varpi_0(t_0) = 0$  and  $\varpi_1(t_1) = 1$  with  $t_0 = 0$  and  $t_1$  unknown, is shown in Figure 10.17; see `ExPathGen.m`. It is seen that the desired speed of 5.0 m/s is reached in approximately 67 s. Hence, the terminal time must be chosen as  $t_1 \geq 67$  s (corresponding to  $\varpi(t_1) = 1$ ) in order to satisfy the desired speed dynamics. If  $t_1 < 67$  s there is not enough time to reach the desired speed of waypoint 1 unless the time constant  $T$  is reduced. The time constant should reflect what is physically possible for the craft. Notice that the path  $(x_d(\varpi), y_d(\varpi))$  has been transformed to a time-varying reference trajectory  $(x_d(t), y_d(t))$  by assigning a speed profile (10.123) to be solved numerically with the path planner (10.117). This gives design flexibility since the path can be generated off-line using a waypoint database while speed is assigned to the path when the dynamics of the actual craft is considered.

### **Nonlinear Constrained Optimization**

Another solution to trajectory and path generation is to use nonlinear constrained optimization techniques. These methods allow an object function to be specified where minimum time and energy are design goals. In addition, the speed and acceleration constraints of the craft can be added. The drawback is that nonlinear constraint optimization problems are much harder to solve numerically than the methods described



**Figure 10.17** Upper plot shows that the speed  $U_d(t)$  reaches the desired value of 5.0 m/s in approximately 67 s. The lower plot shows that the path variable  $w(t)$  is incremented from 0 to 1 during the speed transition.

in the previous sections. The Matlab optimization toolbox will be used to demonstrate how this can be done.

In general, trajectory-tracking and path-planning problems can be formulated as

$$\begin{aligned}
 J &= \min_{\mathbf{x}} \{f(\mathbf{x})\} \\
 \text{subject to} \quad g_k(\mathbf{x}) &\leq 0 \quad (k = 1, \dots, n_g) \\
 h_j(\mathbf{x}) &= 0 \quad (j = 1, \dots, n_h) \\
 x_{i,\min} &\leq x_i \leq x_{i,\max} \quad (i = 1, \dots, n_x)
 \end{aligned} \tag{10.125}$$

where  $f(\mathbf{x})$  should be minimized with respect to the parameter vector  $\mathbf{x}$  with  $g_i(\mathbf{x})$  and  $h_j(\mathbf{x})$  as non-linear inequality and equality constraints, respectively. An attractive simplification is to use quadratic

programming. Consequently,

$$\begin{aligned} J = \min_{\mathbf{x}} \quad & \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{H} \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{f}^\top \mathbf{x} \right\} \\ \text{subject to} \quad & \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \leq \mathbf{b} \\ & x_{i,\min} \leq x_i \leq x_{i,\max} \quad (i = 1, \dots, n_x) \end{aligned} \quad (10.126)$$

For simplicity, consider two waypoints  $(x_k, y_k)$  and  $(x_{k+1}, y_{k+1})$  satisfying

$$x(t_k) = x_k, \quad y(t_k) = y_k \quad (10.127)$$

$$x(t_{k+1}) = x_{k+1}, \quad y(t_{k+1}) = y_{k+1} \quad (10.128)$$

Choosing the speed constraints as

$$\dot{x}_d(t) = U_d(t) \cos(\psi_d(t)) \quad (10.129)$$

$$\dot{y}_d(t) = U_d(t) \sin(\psi_d(t)) \quad (10.130)$$

where the angle  $\psi_d(t)$  is computed as  $\psi_d(t_k) = \text{atan2}(y_{k+1} - y_k, x_{k+1} - x_k)$ , that is with direction toward the next waypoint. Hence,

$$\dot{x}_d(t_k) = U_k \cos(\psi_k) \quad (10.131)$$

$$\dot{y}_d(t_k) = U_k \sin(\psi_k) \quad (10.132)$$

For two waypoints this results in

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{A}(t_k, t_{k+1}) \mathbf{x} \quad (10.133)$$

where

$$\mathbf{y} = [x_k, x_{k+1}, y_k, y_{k+1}, U_k \cos(\psi_k), U_k \sin(\psi_k), U_{k+1} \cos(\psi_{k+1}), U_{k+1} \sin(\psi_{k+1})]^\top \quad (10.134)$$

and

$$\mathbf{A}(t_k, t_{k+1}) = \begin{bmatrix} t_k^3 & t_k^2 & t_k & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ t_{k+1}^3 & t_{k+1}^2 & t_{k+1} & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & t_k^3 & t_k^2 & t_k & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & t_{k+1}^3 & t_{k+1}^2 & t_{k+1} & 1 \\ 3t_k^2 & 2t_k & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 3t_k^2 & 2t_k & 1 & 0 \\ 3t_{k+1}^2 & 2t_{k+1} & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 3t_{k+1}^2 & 2t_{k+1} & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (10.135)$$

The criterion to minimize is

$$J = \min_{\mathbf{x}} \left\{ [\mathbf{A}(t_k, t_{k+1}) \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}]^\top [\mathbf{A}(t_k, t_{k+1}) \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}] \right\} \quad (10.136)$$

for given pairs  $(t_k, t_{k+1})$  of time. Expanding this expression yields

$$\bar{J} = \frac{1}{2} (J - \mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{y}) = \min_{\mathbf{x}} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A}^\top(t_k, t_{k+1}) \mathbf{A}(t_k, t_{k+1}) \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{A}(t_k, t_{k+1}) \mathbf{x} \right\} \quad (10.137)$$

implying that

$$\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{A}^\top(t_k, t_{k+1}) \mathbf{A}(t_k, t_{k+1}) \quad (10.138)$$

$$\mathbf{f} = -\mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{A}(t_k, t_{k+1}) \quad (10.139)$$

In this expression, the starting time  $t_k$  is given while the arrival time  $t_{k+1}$  is unknown. The cubic polynomials (10.94)–(10.95) imply that there are eight additional unknown parameters to optimize:

$$\mathbf{x} = [a_3, a_2, a_1, a_0, b_3, b_2, b_1, b_0]^\top \quad (10.140)$$

giving a total of nine unknown parameters. In addition, linear constraints  $\mathbf{Ax} \leq \mathbf{b}$  can be added. The reference trajectory can be found using quadratic programming.

### Matlab

Trajectory generation using the optimization toolbox is demonstrated in the following example:

#### *Example 10.5 (Trajectory Generation using Quadratic Programming)*

Consider two waypoints:

$$(x_0, y_0) = (10, 10)$$

$$(x_1, y_1) = (200, 100)$$

with the speed constraint

$$U_d(t) \leq 10 \text{ m/s}$$

in the MSS toolbox script

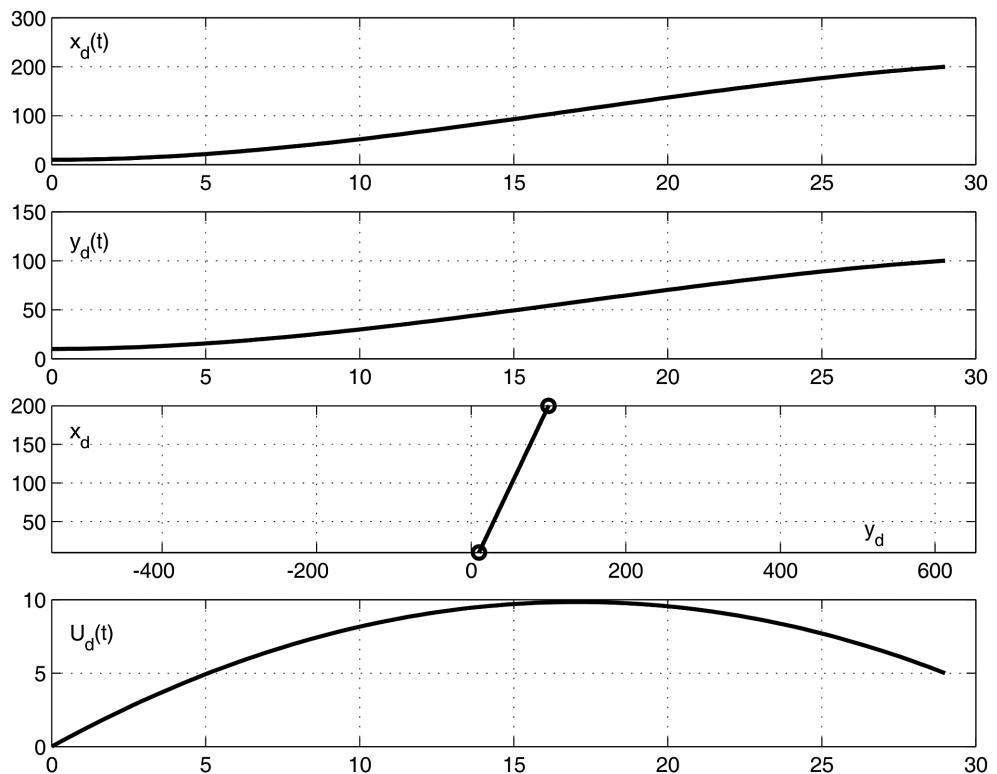
```
ExQuadProg
```

The desired waypoint speeds are  $U_0(t_0) = 0$  m/s and  $U_1(t_1) = 5$  m/s with  $t_0 = 0$  s. The arrival time  $t_1$  is computed in a loop by solving the quadratic optimization problem (10.126) for each time  $t_1 = t_0 + dt$  where  $dt$  is incremented by 1.0 s each time. This process is terminated when the first solution  $U_d(t) \leq 10$  m/s is reached (this can be easily changed if other requirements are more important). The optimal solution:

$$x_d(t) = -0.0102 t^3 + 0.5219 t^2 - 4.28 \times 10^{-12} t + 10.0$$

$$y_d(t) = -0.0048 t^3 + 0.2472 t^2 - 1.04 \times 10^{-12} t + 10.0$$

for  $t \in [t_0, t_1]$  is obtained after 29 loops ( $t_1 = 29$  s) using `quadprog.m` in the Matlab optimization toolbox. The results are shown in Figure 10.18.

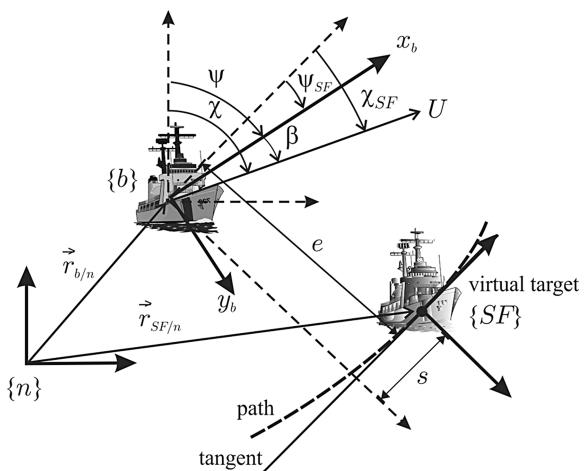


**Figure 10.18** The two upper plots show the cubic polynomials  $x_d(t)$  and  $y_d(t)$ . In the third plot  $y_d(t)$  is plotted against  $x_d(t)$  while the lower plot is speed  $U_d(t)$ .

### Weather Routing

A weather routing or voyage planning system (VPS) computes the most efficient route using meteorological and oceanographic data, information about the craft's hull and propulsion system and shipping economics to ensure that the craft reaches port on time. The data from this analysis can be waypoints with optimal speed and heading information. The routing software of a modern weather routing system includes features such as:

- Surface analysis and forecast models
- Sea state and wind wave models
- Upper air models
- Formation description of low-pressure systems
- Hurricanes and tropical weather models
- Ocean current models
- Vessel performance models
- Cargo condition, trim, draft and deck load
- Link to Internet sources for weather data
- Interface to a satellite system transmitting weather data



**Figure 10.19** Kinematic description of the Serret–Frenet frame.

- Optimization of routes based on a fixed estimated time of arrival (ETA)
- Routing of vessels around hazardous weather conditions

An optimal route is computed using a numerical optimization offline. This can be done by a computer onboard the craft or by a company onshore transmitting the results to the craft electronically on a 24-hour basis. Several companies offer continuous voyage monitoring with status reports and performance evaluations. This allows for replanning during changing weather conditions. Global weather information is available from several forecast centers.

Some useful references for weather routing of ships are Calvert (1989), Hagiwara (1989), Padadakis and Perakis (1990), Lo (1991), Barbier *et al.* (1994), Lo and McCord (1995), McCord and Smith (1995) and Lo and McCord (1998).

#### 10.4.2 Path-Following Kinematic Controller

The path-following controller is a *kinematic controller* that generates the desired states for the motion control system. For a parametrized path in 2-D,

$$\mathbf{p}_d^n(\varpi) = \begin{bmatrix} x_d(\varpi) \\ y_d(\varpi) \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^2 \quad (10.141)$$

the kinematic controller can be designed using a dynamic model of the craft by specifying a reference frame that moves along the path; see Figure 10.19. This reference frame is usually chosen as the *Serret–Frenet frame* (see Frenet, 1847, Serret, 1851). During path following, the craft speed is denoted  $U$  and the kinematic controller is designed to: (i) regulate the distance  $e$  between the vehicle and the path to zero and (ii) regulate the angle  $\chi_{SF}$  between the craft speed vector and the tangent to the path to zero (see Samson, 1992, Micaelli and Samson, 1993).

##### **Definition 10.4 (Serret–Frenet Frame)**

*The virtual target defined by the projection of an actual craft on to a path-tangential reference frame (Serret–Frenet frame {SF}) evolves according to (Lapierre and Soetanto, 2007)*

$$\dot{s} = U \cos(\chi_{SF}) - (1 - \kappa e) \dot{s}_a \quad (10.142)$$

$$\dot{e} = U \sin(\chi_{SF}) - \kappa s \dot{s}_a \quad (10.143)$$

$$\dot{\chi}_{SF} = r + \dot{\beta} - \kappa \dot{s}_a \quad (10.144)$$

where  $U$  is the speed of the craft and  $(e, s)$  is the location on the path of  $\{SF\}$  relative to  $\{b\}$ . If  $s = 0$ , the variable  $e$  represents the closest distance between the actual craft and the origin of  $\{SF\}$  tangential to the path. Hence,  $s$  can be viewed as an extra controller design parameter for evolution along the path. The arc length that the target has moved along the path is denoted  $s_a$  while  $\chi_{SF}$  is the angle between the  $x$  axis of  $\{SF\}$  and the speed vector; see Figure 10.19. Finally,  $\kappa$  is the path curvature.

**Proof:** From Figure 10.19, it is seen that the distance vectors between  $\{n\}$ ,  $\{b\}$  and  $\{SF\}$  satisfies

$$\vec{r}_{b/n} = \vec{r}_{SF/n} + \vec{r}_{b/SF} \quad (10.145)$$

Hence, the time differentiation of  $\vec{r}_{b/SF}$  with  $\{b\}$  as the moving reference frame gives

$$\frac{i}{dt} \vec{r}_{b/SF} = \frac{b}{dt} \vec{r}_{b/SF} + \vec{\omega}_{b/i} \times \vec{r}_{b/SF} \quad (10.146)$$

such that

$$\vec{v}_{b/n} = \vec{v}_{SF/n} + \left( \frac{b}{dt} \vec{r}_{b/SF} + \vec{\omega}_{SF/n} \times \vec{r}_{b/SF} \right) \quad (10.147)$$

Expressing this in  $\{SF\}$  gives

$$\vec{v}_{b/n}^{\text{SF}} = \vec{v}_{SF/n}^{\text{SF}} + \left( \frac{b}{dt} \vec{r}_{b/SF}^{\text{SF}} + \vec{\omega}_{SF/n}^{\text{SF}} \times \vec{r}_{b/SF}^{\text{SF}} \right) \quad (10.148)$$

where  $\vec{r}_{b/SF}^{\text{SF}} = [s, e, 0]^{\top}$  and  $\vec{v}_{b/n}^{\text{SF}} = \mathbf{R}_{z,\chi_{SF}}[U, 0, 0]^{\top}$  is the velocity of the vehicle expressed in  $\{SF\}$ . From this it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{R}_{z,\chi_{SF}} \begin{bmatrix} U \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} &= \vec{v}_{SF/n}^{\text{SF}} + \left( \frac{b}{dt} (\vec{r}_{b/SF}^{\text{SF}}) + \vec{\omega}_{SF/n}^{\text{SF}} \times \vec{r}_{b/SF}^{\text{SF}} \right) \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \dot{s}_a \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \dot{s} \\ \dot{e} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \kappa \dot{s}_a \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} s \\ e \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (10.149)$$

Expanding this expression yields

$$U \cos(\chi_{SF}) = \dot{s} + (1 - \kappa e) \dot{s}_a \quad (10.150)$$

$$U \sin(\chi_{SF}) = \dot{e} + \kappa s \dot{s}_a \quad (10.151)$$

which proves (10.142) and (10.143). The rotation rate of the angle  $\psi - \psi_{SF}$  between  $\{n\}$  and  $\{SF\}$  (see Figure 10.19) is  $(\dot{\psi} - \dot{\psi}_{SF}) = \kappa \dot{s}_a$ . Since  $\chi_{SF} = \psi_{SF} + \beta$ , it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\chi}_{SF} &= \dot{\psi} - \kappa \dot{s}_a + \dot{\beta} \\ &= r + \dot{\beta} - \kappa \dot{s}_a\end{aligned}\quad (10.152)$$

which proves (10.144).

### **Remark 10.1**

If  $\dot{s} = s = 0$ , the  $\{SF\}$  equations become

$$\dot{s}_a = \frac{U \cos(\chi_{SF})}{1 - \kappa e} \quad (10.153)$$

$$\dot{e} = U \sin(\chi_{SF}) \quad (10.154)$$

where the term  $1 - \kappa e$  in the denominator creates a singularity. Hence, the control law requires that the initial position of the craft must be restricted to a tube around the path with radius less than  $1/\kappa_{\max}$ . A discussion on the limitation of this approach is found in Breivik and Fossen (2004a). The constraint  $1 - \kappa e \neq 0$  is, however, removed by using (10.142)–(10.143) where an additional controller parameter  $s$  allows the origin of the  $\{SF\}$  frame to evolve along the path (Lapierre and Soetanto, 2007).

### **Remark 10.2**

In Encarnacao et al. (2000), the ocean current velocities are included in the kinematic equations of motion together with a state estimator to obtain the optimal sideslip angle during path following. This section presents a different approach where the current velocities are modeled as physical forces, with moments in the expression for  $\dot{\beta}$  representing the equation of motion in sway. Furthermore, the ocean currents are compensated for by using integral action in the kinematic controller to reduce sensitivity to model parameters.

### **Marine Craft Model for Kinematic Controller**

For a conventional marine craft with no actuation in the transverse direction, the sway force can be approximated by a maneuvering model (see Section 7.1.1):

$$(m - Y_v)\dot{v} + mur = Y(u_r, v_r, r) \quad (10.155)$$

where the hydrodynamic force is due to added mass and linear damping:

$$Y(u_r, v_r, r) = X_u u_r r + Y_v v_r + Y_r r \quad (10.156)$$

The relative velocities satisfy (see Section 2.4.2)

$$u_r = u - u_c \quad (10.157)$$

$$v_r = v - v_c \quad (10.158)$$

Since ocean currents are slowly varying and the craft speed is constant, the sway acceleration can be approximated by time differentiation of

$$v = U \sin(\beta) \quad (10.159)$$

under the assumptions that  $\dot{U} = 0$ . This gives

$$\dot{v} = U \cos(\beta) \dot{\beta} \quad (10.160)$$

Combining (10.155)–(10.156) and (10.160) gives

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\beta} &= \frac{1}{U \cos(\beta)} \dot{v} \\ &= \frac{1}{(m - Y_v)U \cos(\beta)} [X_{\dot{u}} u_r r + Y_v v_r + Y_r r - m u_r]\end{aligned}\quad (10.161)$$

Consequently,

$$\dot{\beta} = \frac{1}{(m - Y_v)U \cos(\beta)} [(Y_r - (m - X_{\dot{u}})U \cos(\beta) - X_{\dot{u}} u_c)) r + Y_v U \sin(\beta) - Y_v v_c] \quad (10.162)$$

### Kinematic Controller

The {SF} frame plays the role of the virtual target body axes and tracks the real craft. The error coordinates for control design purposes become  $s, e$  and  $\tilde{\chi}_{\text{SF}} = \chi_{\text{SF}} - \chi_d$  which all should be driven to zero. The desired approach angle can be chosen as a function of  $e$  (Micaelli and Samson, 1993):

$$\chi_d(e) = -\chi_a \frac{e^{2ke-1}}{e^{2ke+1}} \quad (10.163)$$

where  $k > 0$  and  $0 < \chi_a < \pi/2$  satisfying  $e\chi_d(e) \leq 0$  for all  $e$ .

An alternative approach is motivated by the LOS algorithm (10.74) (see Breivik and Fossen, 2004a, and Børhaug and Pettersen, 2006):

$$\chi_d(e) = \arctan\left(\frac{-e}{\Delta}\right) \quad (10.164)$$

where  $\Delta > 0$  is a constant parameter. Again notice that  $e\chi_d(e) \leq 0$  for all  $e$ .

#### **Theorem 10.1 (Kinematic Path-Following Controller)**

A feedback linearization controller for (10.144) (Lapierre and Soetanto, 2007)

$$r = \dot{\chi}_d - \dot{\beta} + \kappa \dot{s}_a - K_1 \tilde{\chi}_{\text{SF}} \quad (10.165)$$

$$\dot{s}_a = U \cos(\chi_{\text{SF}}) + K_2 s \quad (10.166)$$

where the yaw rate  $r$  and path tangential speed  $U_d = \dot{s}_a$  are used as control variables, renders the equilibrium point  $(s, e, \tilde{\chi}_{\text{SF}}) = (0, 0, 0)$  UGAS and ULES for  $K_1 > 0$  and  $K_2 > 0$ .

**Proof.** Convergence and stability can be proven by noticing that the error dynamics forms a cascade of two systems. For the first system:

$$\dot{\tilde{\chi}}_{\text{SF}} + K_1 \tilde{\chi}_{\text{SF}} = 0 \quad (10.167)$$

Consequently, the angle  $\chi_{SF} \rightarrow \chi_d$ . For the second system in the cascade, consider the Lyapunov function candidate:

$$V = \frac{1}{2}(s^2 + e^2) > 0, \quad s \neq 0, e \neq 0 \quad (10.168)$$

The time derivative of  $V$  under the assumption that  $\chi_{SF} = \chi_d$  is

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V} &= s(U \cos(\chi_d) - (1 - \kappa e)\dot{s}_a) + e(U \sin(\chi_d) - \kappa s\dot{s}_a) \\ &= sU \cos(\chi_d) + eU \sin(\chi_d) - s(U \cos(\chi_d) + K_2 s) \\ &= -K_2 s^2 + eU \sin(\chi_d)\end{aligned}$$

Exploiting the fact that the desired course angle given by (10.164) satisfies

$$\sin(\chi_d) = \frac{-e}{\sqrt{e^2 + \Delta^2}} \quad (10.169)$$

finally gives

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V} &= -K_2 s^2 - \frac{U}{\sqrt{e^2 + \Delta^2}} e^2 \\ &< 0, \quad s \neq 0, e \neq 0\end{aligned} \quad (10.170)$$

for  $\Delta > 0$  and  $U > 0$ . Since the LFC is positive definite and radially unbounded, while its derivative with respect to time is negative, standard Lyapunov arguments for cascaded systems proves that the equilibrium point  $(s, e, \dot{\chi}_{SF}) = (0, 0, 0)$  is UGAS. In addition, the Jacobian of the error dynamics about the equilibrium point has strictly negative eigenvalues, which proves ULES.

### **Remark 10.3**

A differential equation for the path variable  $\varpi$  can be derived by considering the path curvature  $\kappa(\varpi)$  given by

$$\kappa(\varpi) = \frac{|x'_d y''_d - y'_d x''_d|}{\sqrt{(x'_d)^2 + (y'_d)^2}} \quad (10.171)$$

where  $x_d = x_d(\varpi)$  and  $y_d = y_d(\varpi)$ . The arc length  $s_a$  satisfies

$$ds_a^2 = dx^2 + dy^2 \quad (10.172)$$

and by dividing by  $d\varpi^2$ , this can be rewritten as

$$d\varpi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x'_d(\varpi)^2 + y'_d(\varpi)^2}} ds_a \quad (10.173)$$

Hence, from (10.166) it follows that

$$\dot{\varpi} = \frac{U \cos(\chi_{SF}) + K_2 s}{\sqrt{x'_d(\varpi)^2 + y'_d(\varpi)^2}} \quad (10.174)$$

### Implementation Aspects

When implementing the kinematic controller (10.165)–(10.166), an expression for  $\dot{\beta}$  must be computed from the sway dynamics (10.162). This expression depends on the model parameters. Consider the expression

$$\begin{aligned} r + \dot{\beta} &= r + \frac{1}{(m - Y_v)U \cos(\beta)} [(Y_r - (m - X_{\dot{u}})U \cos(\beta) - X_{\dot{u}}u_c))r + Y_v U \sin(\beta) - Y_v v_c] \\ &= \left(1 - \frac{(m - X_{\dot{u}})}{(m - Y_v)} + \frac{Y_r - X_{\dot{u}}u_c}{(m - Y_v)U \cos(\beta)}\right)r + \frac{Y_v}{(m - Y_v)} \left(\tan(\beta) - \frac{v_c}{U \cos(\beta)}\right) \\ &\approx \left(1 - \frac{(m - X_{\dot{u}})}{(m - Y_v)}\right)r + \frac{Y_v}{(m - Y_v)} \left(\tan(\beta) - \frac{v_c}{U \cos(\beta)}\right) \\ &= \dot{\chi}_d + \kappa \dot{s}_a - K_1 \tilde{\chi}_{SF} \end{aligned} \quad (10.175)$$

where the physical property

$$(m - Y_v)U \cos(\beta) \gg Y_r - X_{\dot{u}}u_c \quad (10.176)$$

has been exploited. Solving for  $r = r_d$  gives the kinematic controller

$$r_d = \left(1 - \frac{(m - X_{\dot{u}})}{(m - Y_v)}\right)^{-1} \left[ \dot{\chi}_d + \kappa U_d - K_1 \tilde{\chi}_{SF} - \frac{Y_v}{(m - Y_v)} \left(\tan(\beta) - \frac{v_c}{U \cos(\beta)}\right) \right] \quad (10.177)$$

$$U_d = U \cos(\chi_{SF}) + K_2 s \quad (10.178)$$

where the desired yaw rate is denoted  $r_d$  and the desired speed  $U_d = \dot{s}_a$  is the path-tangential speed. The sideslip angle

$$\beta = \arcsin\left(\frac{v}{U}\right) \quad (10.179)$$

and current velocity  $v_c$  must be measured or estimated in a state observer. Alternatively,  $\beta$  and  $v_c$  can be treated as slowly varying parameters, which can be compensated for by adding integral action. This suggests that

$$r_d = \left[1 - \frac{(m - X_{\dot{u}})}{(m - Y_v)}\right]^{-1} \left[ \dot{\chi}_d + \kappa U_d - 2\lambda \tilde{\chi}_{SF} - \lambda^2 \int_0^t \tilde{\chi}_{SF}(\tau) d\tau \right] \quad (10.180)$$

where  $\lambda > 0$  is a constant parameter used to tune the bandwidth of the error system:

$$\dot{\tilde{\chi}}_{SF} + 2\lambda \tilde{\chi}_{SF} + \lambda^2 \int_0^t \tilde{\chi}_{SF}(\tau) d\tau = \frac{Y_v}{(m - Y_v)} \left( \tan(\beta) - \frac{v_c}{U \cos(\beta)} \right) \quad (10.181)$$

For a marine craft at constant course, the integral term will balance the forcing term in the steady state such that

$$\lambda^2 \int_0^t \tilde{\chi}_{SF}(\tau) d\tau = \frac{Y_v}{(m - Y_v)} \left( \tan(\beta) - \frac{v_c}{U \cos(\beta)} \right) \quad (10.182)$$

and  $\tilde{\chi}_{SF} \rightarrow 0$ .

# 11

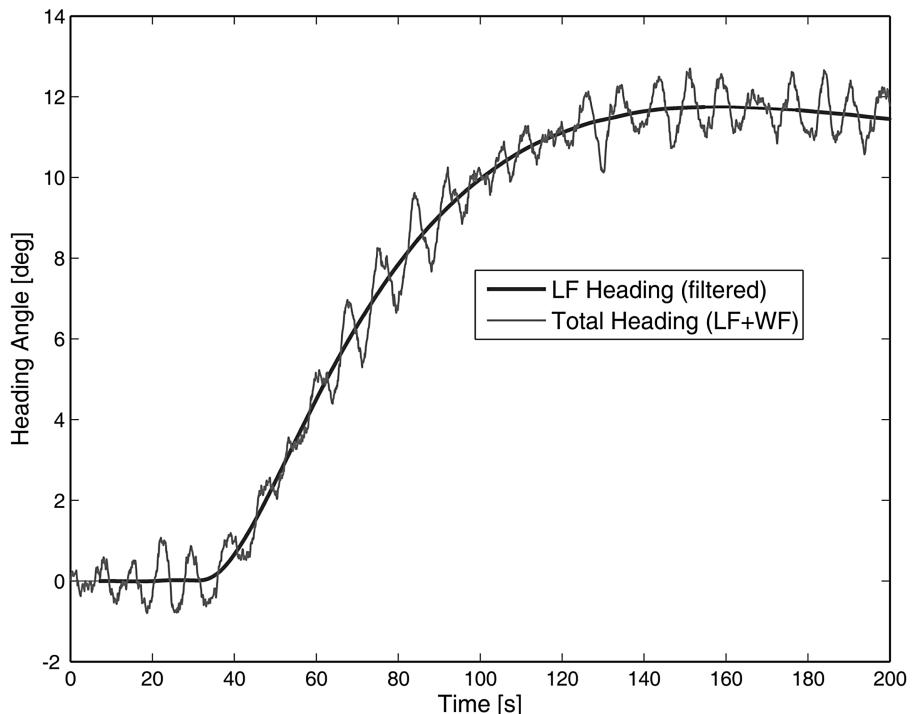
## Sensor and Navigation Systems

Conventional ship and underwater vehicle control systems are implemented with a state estimator for processing of the sensor and navigation data. The quality of the raw measurements are usually monitored and handled by a signal processing unit or a program for quality check and wild-point removal. The processed measurements are transmitted to the sensor and navigation computer which uses a state estimator capable of noise filtering, prediction and reconstruction of unmeasured states. The most famous algorithm is the Kalman filter which was introduced in the 1960s (Kalman, 1960; Kalman and Bucy, 1961). Later, other methods based on passivity and nonlinear theory have been developed.

Wave filtering is one of the most important issues to take into account when designing ship control systems (Fossen, 1994; Fossen and Perez, 2009). Environmental forces due to waves, wind and ocean currents are considered disturbances to the motion control system. These forces, which can be described in stochastic terms, are conceptually separated into low-frequency (LF) and wave-frequency (WF) components; see Figure 11.1.

Waves produce a pressure change on the hull surface, which in turn induces forces. These pressure-induced forces have an oscillatory component that depends linearly on the wave elevation. Hence, these forces have the same frequency as that of the waves and are therefore referred to as *wave-frequency forces*. Wave forces also have a component that depends nonlinearly on the wave elevation (Newman, 1977; Faltinsen, 1990). Nonlinear wave forces are due to the quadratic dependence of the pressure on the fluid-particle velocity induced by the passing of the waves. If, for example, two sinusoidal incident waves have different frequencies, then their quadratic relationship gives pressure forces with frequencies at both the sum and difference of the incident wave frequencies. They also contribute with zero-frequency or mean forces. Hence, the nonlinear wave forces have a wider frequency range than the incident waves. The mean wave forces cause the craft to drift. The forces with a frequency content at the difference of the wave frequencies can have LF content, which can lead to resonance in the horizontal motion of marine craft with mooring lines or under positioning control (Faltinsen, 1990). The high-frequency wave-pressure-induced forces, which have a frequency content at the sum of the wave frequencies, are normally too high to be considered in ship-motion control, but these forces can contribute to structural vibration in the hull. For further details about wave loads and their effects on ship motion, see Newman (1977) and Faltinsen (1990).

In low-to-medium sea states, the frequency of oscillations of the linear wave forces do not normally affect the operational performance of the craft. Hence, controlling only LF motion avoids correcting the motion for every single wave, which can result in unacceptable operational conditions for the propulsion system due to power consumption and potential wear of the actuators. Operations that require the control of only the LF motion include dynamic positioning, heading autopilots and thruster-assisted position



**Figure 11.1** Separation of the total motion of a marine craft into LF and WF motion components.

mooring. Dynamic positioning refers to the use of the propulsion system to regulate the horizontal position and heading of the craft. In thruster-assisted position mooring, the propulsion system is used to reduce the mean loading on the mooring lines. Additional operations that require the control of only the LF motion include slow maneuvers that arise, for example, from following underwater remotely operated vehicles. Operations that require the control of only the WF motions include heave compensation for deploying loads on the sea floor (Perez and Steinmann, 2007) as well as ride control of passenger vessels, where reducing roll and pitch motion helps avoid motion sickness (Perez, 2005).

It is important that only the slowly varying forces are counteracted by the steering and propulsion systems; the oscillatory motion due to the waves (first-order wave-induced forces) should be prevented from entering the feedback loop. This is done by using *wave filtering* techniques (Balchen *et al.*, 1976). A wave filter is usually a model-based observer that separates the position and heading measurements into LF and WF position and heading signals; see Figure 11.1.

#### **Definition 11.1 (Wave Filtering)**

*Wave filtering can be defined as the reconstruction of the LF motion components from noisy measurements of position, heading and in some cases velocity and acceleration by means of a state observer or a filter.*

#### **Remark 11.1**

*If a state observer is applied, estimates of the WF motion components (first-order wave-induced forces) can also be computed.*

Wave filtering is crucial in ship motion control systems since the WF part of the motion should not be compensated for by the control system unless wave-induced vibration damping is an issue. This is the case for high-speed craft. If the WF part of the motion enters the feedback loop, this will cause unnecessary use of the actuators (thrust modulation) and reduce the tracking performance, which, again, results in increased fuel consumption.

In this chapter, model-based wave filtering and observer design using linear wave response models are discussed. This is one of the most important features of a high-precision ship control system. The best commercial autopilot and DP systems all have some kind of wave filtering in order to reduce wear and tear on the steering machine, as well as thrust modulation.

## 11.1 Low-Pass and Notch Filtering

Low-pass and notch filters can be used to reduce motions induced by ocean waves in the feedback loop. This assumes that the filters can be implemented in series, as shown in Figure 11.2. For wave periods in the interval  $5 \text{ s} < T_0 < 20 \text{ s}$ , the dominating wave frequency (modal frequency)  $f_0$  of a wave spectrum will be in the range (see Section 8.2)

$$0.05 \text{ Hz} < f_0 < 0.2 \text{ Hz} \quad (11.1)$$

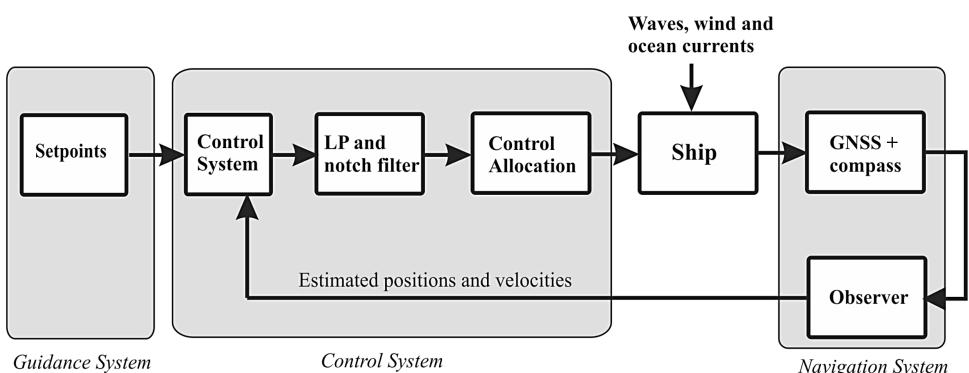
The circular frequency  $\omega_0 = 2\pi f_0$  corresponding to periods  $T_0 > 5 \text{ s}$  is

$$\omega_0 < 1.3 \text{ rad/s} \quad (11.2)$$

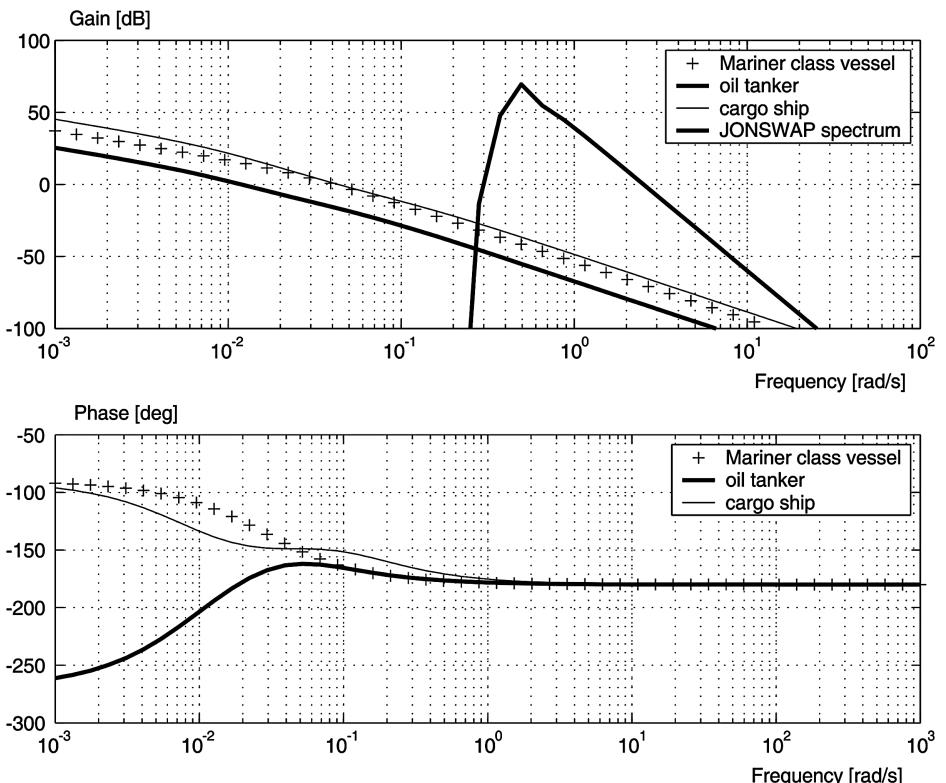
Waves within the frequency band (11.1) can be accurately described by first- and second-order wave theory. The first-order wave forces produce large *oscillations* about a *mean* wave force, which can be computed from second-order wave theory (see Figure 11.1). The mean wave (drift) force is slowly varying and is usually compensated for by using *integral action* in the control law, while *wave filtering* must be performed to remove first-order components from the feedback loop.

For instance, first-order wave forces around  $f_0 = 0.1 \text{ Hz}$  can be close to or outside the control bandwidth of the marine craft depending of the craft considered. For a large oil tanker, the crossover frequency can be as low as  $0.01 \text{ rad/s}$ , as shown in Figure 11.3, while smaller vessels such as cargo ships and the Mariner class vessel are close to  $0.05 \text{ rad/s}$ .

A feedback control system will typically move the bandwidth of these vessels up to  $0.1 \text{ rad/s}$ , which still is below the wave spectrum shown in Figure 11.3. However, the wave forces will be inside the bandwidth of the servos and actuators of the craft. Hence, the wave forces must be filtered out before



**Figure 11.2** LP and notch filters in series with the control system.



**Figure 11.3** Bode plots showing  $\psi/\delta(s)$  for three different vessels and the JONSWAP wave spectrum for  $\omega_0 = 0.5$  rad/s and  $H_s = 5$  m.

feedback is applied in order to avoid unnecessary control action. In other words, we do not want the rudder and thruster actuators of the ship to compensate for the first-order WF motion. This is usually referred to as *wave filtering*.

### 11.1.1 Low-Pass Filtering

For sea states where the WF motion is much higher than the bandwidth  $\omega_b$  of the controller, a low-pass filter can be used to filter out the WF motions if  $\omega_b$  satisfies

$$\omega_b \ll \omega_e \quad (11.3)$$

where

$$\omega_e = \left| \omega_0 - \omega_0^2 \frac{U}{g} \cos(\beta) \right| \quad (11.4)$$

is the frequency of encounter (see Figure 8.12). This is typically the case for large vessels such as oil tankers. In the autopilot case, the design objective can be understood by considering the *measurement equation*

$$y(s) = \underbrace{h_{\text{ship}}(s)\delta(s)}_{\psi(s)} + \underbrace{h_{\text{wave}}(s)w(s)}_{\psi_w(s)} \quad (11.5)$$

where  $y(s)$  is the compass measurement,  $w(s)$  is a zero-mean Gaussian white noise process and  $\delta(s)$  is the rudder input. The signal  $\psi(s)$  represents the LF motion, while  $\psi_w(s)$  is the WF motion. Linear theory suggests that, see (8.112) and (7.46),

$$h_{\text{wave}}(s) = \frac{K_w s}{s^2 + 2\lambda\omega_0 s + \omega_0^2} \quad (11.6)$$

$$h_{\text{ship}}(s) = \frac{K(1 + T_3 s)}{s(1 + T_1 s)(1 + T_2 s)} \quad (11.7)$$

Feedback directly from  $y$  will therefore include the WF motion. For a large tanker, proper *wave filtering* can be obtained by using a low-pass filter to produce an estimate of  $\psi(s)$  such that

$$\hat{\psi}(s) = h_{lp}(s)y(s) \quad (11.8)$$

Consequently, the feedback control law  $\delta$  should be a function of  $\hat{\psi}$  and not  $y$  in order to avoid first-order wave-induced rudder motions.

For instance, a first-order low-pass filter with time constant  $T_f$  can be designed according to

$$h_{lp}(s) = \frac{1}{1 + T_f s}, \quad \omega_b < \frac{1}{T_f} < \omega_e \quad (11.9)$$

This filter will suppress forces over the frequency  $1/T_f$ . This criterion is obviously hard to satisfy for smaller craft since  $\omega_b$  can be close to or even larger than  $\omega_e$ .

Higher-order low-pass filters can be designed by using a *Butterworth filter*, for instance. The  $n$ th-order Butterworth filter:

$$h_{lp}(s) = \frac{1}{p(s)} \quad (11.10)$$

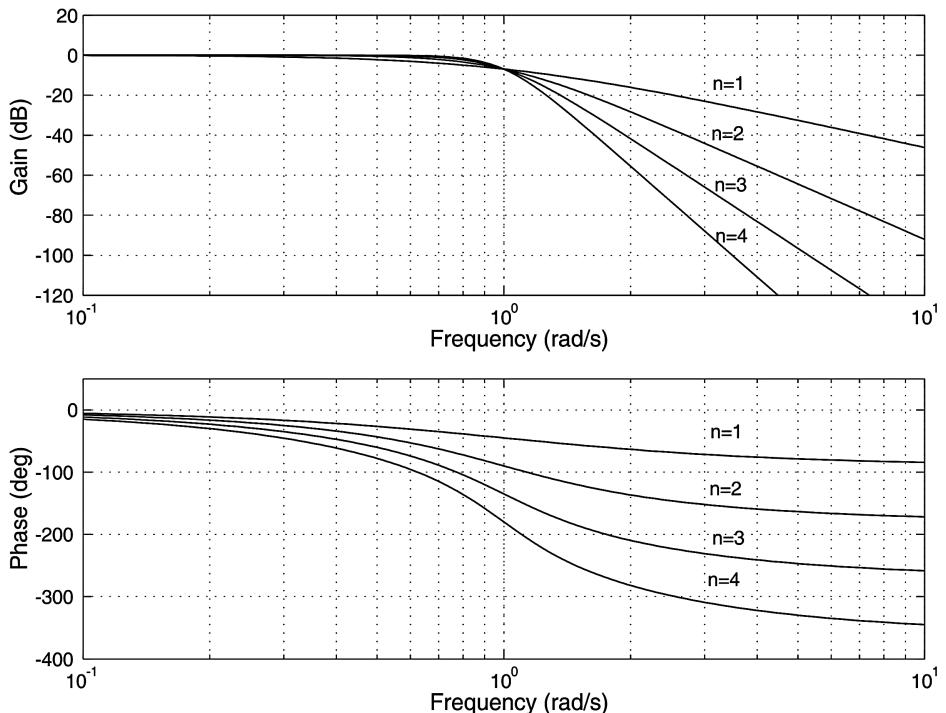
is found by solving the Butterworth polynomial:

$$p(s)p(-s) = 1 + (s/j\omega_f)^{2n} \quad (11.11)$$

for  $p(s)$ . Here  $n$  denotes the order of the filter while  $\omega_f$  is the cutoff frequency. For  $n = 1, \dots, 4$  the solutions are

$$(n=1) \quad h_{lp}(s) = \frac{1}{1 + s/\omega_f}$$

$$(n=2) \quad h_{lp}(s) = \frac{\omega_f^2}{s^2 + 2\zeta\omega_f s + \omega_f^2}; \quad \zeta = \sin(45^\circ)$$



**Figure 11.4** Bode plot showing the Butterworth filter for  $n = 1, \dots, 4$  with cutoff frequency  $\omega_f = 1.0 \text{ rad/s}$ .

$$(n = 3) \quad h_{lp}(s) = \frac{\omega_f^2}{s^2 + 2\xi\omega_f s + \omega_f^2} \cdot \frac{1}{1 + s/\omega_f}; \quad \xi = \sin(30^\circ)$$

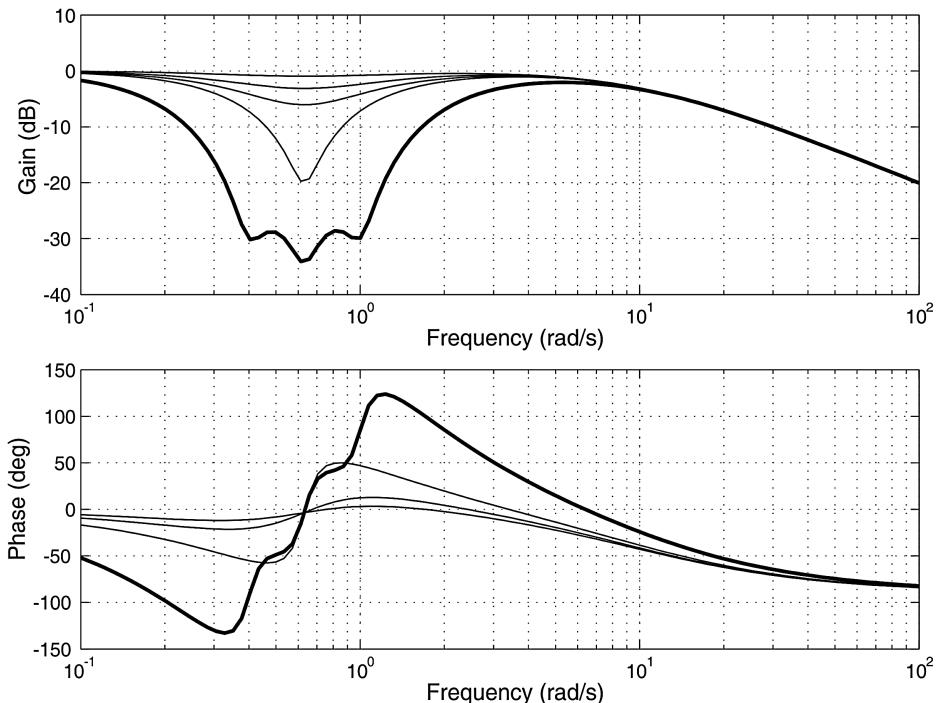
$$(n = 4) \quad h_{lp}(s) = \prod_{i=1}^2 \frac{\omega_f^2}{s^2 + 2\xi_i\omega_f s + \omega_f^2}; \quad \xi_1 = \sin(22.5^\circ), \quad \xi_2 = \sin(67.5^\circ)$$

A higher-order low-pass filter implies better disturbance suppression of the price of additional phase lags (see Figure 11.4).

### 11.1.2 Cascaded Low-Pass and Notch Filtering

For smaller craft the bandwidth of the controller  $\omega_b$  can be close to or within the range  $\omega_{\min} < \omega_e < \omega_{\max}$  of the wave spectrum. This problem can be handled by using a low-pass filter in cascade with a notch filter:

$$\hat{\psi}(s) = h_{lp}(s)h_n(s)y(s) \quad (11.12)$$



**Figure 11.5** Bode plot showing the notch filter for  $\zeta \in \{0.1, 0.5, 0.9\}$  and  $\omega_0 = 0.63$  rad/s in cascade with a low-pass filter with time constant  $T_f = 0.1$  s. The thick line represents three cascaded notch filters at  $\omega_1 = 0.4$  rad/s,  $\omega_2 = 0.63$  rad/s and  $\omega_3 = 1.0$  rad/s.

where

$$h_n(s) = \frac{s^2 + 2\zeta\omega_n s + \omega_n^2}{(s + \omega_n)^2} \quad (11.13)$$

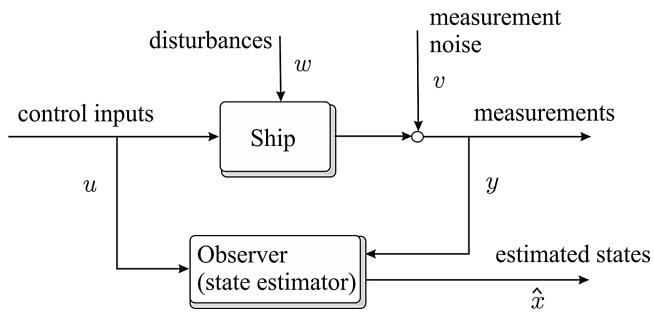
Here  $0 < \zeta < 1$  is a design parameter used to control the magnitude of the notch while the notch frequency  $\omega_n$  should be chosen equal to the peak frequency  $\omega_0$  of the spectrum for a marine craft at zero speed (dynamic positioning). The low-pass and notch filters are shown in Figure 11.5 for different values of  $\zeta$ .

For a marine craft moving at forward speed  $U$  the optimal notch frequency will be

$$\omega_n = \omega_e \quad (11.14)$$

This frequency can be computed online by using a frequency tracker or adaptive filtering techniques. Since the estimate of  $\omega_n$  can be poor and one single-notch filter only covers a small part of the actual frequency range of the wave spectrum, an alternative filter structure consisting of three cascaded notch filters with fixed center frequencies has been suggested; see Grimble and Johnson (1989):

$$h_n(s) = \prod_{i=1}^3 \frac{s^2 + 2\zeta\omega_i s + \omega_i^2}{(s + \omega_i)^2} \quad (11.15)$$



**Figure 11.6** Block diagram showing the system model and the observer signal flow.

The center frequencies of the notch filters are typically chosen as  $\omega_1 = 0.4$  rad/s,  $\omega_2 = 0.63$  rad/s and  $\omega_3 = 1.0$  rad/s. This is shown in Figure 11.5. Notice that additional phase lag is introduced when using a cascaded notch filter.

## 11.2 Fixed Gain Observer Design

The simplest state estimator is designed as a fixed gain observer where the ultimate goal of the observer is to reconstruct the unmeasured state vector  $\hat{x}$  from the measurements  $u$  and  $y$  of a dynamical system (see Figure 11.6). In order for this to succeed, the system must be *observable*.

### 11.2.1 Observability

Observability can be understood as a measure for how well internal states  $x$  of a system can be inferred by knowledge of its external outputs  $u$  and  $y$ . The *observability* and *controllability* of a system are mathematical duals. More specifically, a system is said to be observable if, for any possible sequence of state and control vectors, the current state can be determined in finite time using only the outputs. In other words, this means that from the outputs of the system it is possible to determine the behavior of the entire system. If a system is not observable, this means that the current values of some of its states cannot be determined through output sensors. This implies that their value is unknown to the controller and, consequently, that it will be unable to fulfil the control specifications referred to these outputs.

For time-invariant linear systems, a convenient observability test is given by the following definition:

#### Definition 11.2 (Observability)

Consider the linear time-invariant system:

$$\dot{x} = Ax + Bu \quad (11.16)$$

$$y = Hx \quad (11.17)$$

The state and output matrix ( $A$ ,  $H$ ) must satisfy the observability condition to ensure that the state  $x$  can be reconstructed from the output  $y$  and the input  $u$ . The observability condition requires that the matrix (Gelb et al., 1988)

$$\mathcal{O} = [H^\top \mid A^\top H^\top \mid \cdots \mid (A^\top)^{n-1} H^\top] \quad (11.18)$$

must be of full column rank such that (at least) a left inverse exists.

### 11.2.2 Luenberger Observer

Consider an *observable* linear time-invariant system:

$$\dot{x} = Ax + Bu + Ew \quad (11.19)$$

$$y = Hx + v \quad (11.20)$$

where  $w$  and  $v$  are zero-mean white noise terms. An observer copying the dynamics (11.19)–(11.20) under the assumption that the zero-mean noise terms  $w$  and  $v$  can be neglected is

$$\dot{\hat{x}} = A\hat{x} + Bu + \gamma(y, \hat{y}) \quad (11.21)$$

$$\hat{y} = H\hat{x} \quad (11.22)$$

where  $\gamma(y, \hat{y})$  is an *injection term* to be constructed such that  $\hat{x} \rightarrow x$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . Note that the variables of a state observer are commonly denoted by a “hat” to distinguish them from the variables of the equations satisfied by the physical system.

The *Luenberger observer* is obtained by choosing the injection term  $\gamma$  as

$$\gamma(y, \hat{y}) = K\varepsilon, \quad \varepsilon = y - \hat{y} = H\tilde{x} \quad (11.23)$$

where  $K$  = constant is a matrix of observer gains.

Assume that  $w = v = \mathbf{0}$ . Defining the estimation error as  $\tilde{x} := x - \hat{x}$  implies that the difference between (11.19) and (11.21) can be written

$$\dot{\tilde{x}} = A\tilde{x} - \gamma(y, \hat{y}) \quad (11.24)$$

For the Luenberger observer, the error dynamics becomes

$$\dot{\tilde{x}} = (A - KH)\tilde{x} \quad (11.25)$$

Asymptotical convergence of  $\tilde{x}$  to zero can be obtained for a constant  $K$  if the system  $(A, H)$  is observable, as explained in Section 11.2.1.

#### Matlab

If the observability matrix  $O$  is nonsingular, the poles of the error dynamics can be placed in the left half-plane by using the Matlab function:

```
K = place(A', H, p)'
```

where  $p = [p_1, \dots, p_n]$  is a vector describing the desired locations of the observer error poles (must be distinct). Notice that both  $K$  and  $A$  are transposed, since the dual problem of the regulator problem is solved.

Examples 11.1–11.2 in Section 11.2.3 demonstrate how the Luenberger observer can be used in ship control when only compass measurements are available. Emphasis is placed on wave filtering and the estimation of the yaw rate.

### 11.2.3 Case Study: Luenberger Observer for Heading Autopilots using only Compass Measurements

An alternative to LP and notch filtering of wave-induced forces is to apply a state estimator (observer). A state estimator can be designed to separate the LF components of the motion from the noisy measurements by using a model of the ship and the WF motions. In fact, a model-based wave filter is well suited to separate the LF and WF motions from each other, even for marine craft, where the control bandwidth is close to or higher than the encounter frequency. It will now be shown how this can be done by considering a ship autopilot for heading control. It is assumed that the heading angle  $\psi$  is measured using a gyro or a magnetic compass while angular rate is left unmeasured, even though it is possible to use a gyro to measure the yaw rate  $\dot{\psi}$ .

#### **Example 11.1 (Nomoto Ship Model Exposed to Wind, Waves and Ocean Currents)**

Assume that a first-order Nomoto model describes the LF motion of the ship with sufficient accuracy:

$$\dot{\psi} = r \quad (11.26)$$

$$\dot{r} = -\frac{1}{T}r + \frac{K}{T}(\delta - b) + w_r \quad (11.27)$$

$$\dot{b} = -\frac{1}{T_b}b + w_b \quad (11.28)$$

where the rudder offset  $b$  is modeled as a first-order Markov process with  $T_b \gg T$ . In the limiting case, that is  $T_b \rightarrow \infty$ , this reduces to a Wiener process ( $\dot{b} = w_b$ ). The rudder bias model is needed to counteract slowly varying moments on the ship due to wave drift forces, LF wind and ocean currents. Consequently, the bias term  $b$  ensures that  $\delta = b$  gives  $r = 0$  and  $\psi = \text{constant}$  in the steady state. The linear wave model (8.122)–(8.123) can be used to model the wave response:

$$\dot{\xi}_w = \psi_w \quad (11.29)$$

$$\dot{\psi}_w = -\omega_0^2 \xi_w - 2\lambda\omega_0 \psi_w + K_w w_w \quad (11.30)$$

The process noise terms  $w_r$ ,  $w_b$  and  $w_w$  are modeled as zero-mean Gaussian white noise processes. By combining the ship and wave models, the compass measurement equation can be expressed by the sum

$$y = \psi + \psi_w + v \quad (11.31)$$

where  $v$  represents zero-mean Gaussian measurement noise. Notice that neither the yaw rate  $r$  nor the wave states  $\xi_w$  and  $\psi_w$  are measured. The resulting SISO state-space model for  $u = \delta$ ,  $\mathbf{x} = [\xi_w, \psi_w, \psi, r, b]^\top$  and  $\mathbf{w} = [w_w, w_r, w_b]^\top$  becomes

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}u + \mathbf{E}\mathbf{w} \quad (11.32)$$

$$y = \mathbf{h}^\top \mathbf{x} + v \quad (11.33)$$

where

$$A = \left[ \begin{array}{cc|ccc} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -\omega_0^2 & -2\lambda\omega_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{T} & -\frac{K}{T} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{K}{T_b} \end{array} \right], \quad b = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ \frac{K}{T} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.34)$$

$$E = \left[ \begin{array}{c|cc} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \underbrace{2\lambda\omega_0\sigma}_{K_w} & 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right], \quad h^\top = [0, 1, 1, 0, 0] \quad (11.35)$$

### Matlab

The following example shows how the Luenberger observer gains of a ship autopilot system can be computed in Matlab.

#### Example 11.2 (Luenberger Observer Gains)

It is straightforward to see that the autopilot model with WF, wind and ocean current model (11.34)–(11.35) is observable from the input  $\delta$  to the compass measurement  $y$ . Let  $K = 1$ ,  $T = 50$ ,  $\lambda = 0.1$ ,  $\omega_0 = 1$  and  $T_b = 1000$ ; then

```
K = 1; T=50; lambda = 0.1; wo =1; Tb = 1000;

A = [ 0 1 0 0 0
      -wo*wo -2*lambda*wo 0 0 0
      0 0 0 1 0
      0 0 0 -1/T -K/T
      0 0 0 0 -1/Tb      ]
      h = [0,1,1,0,0] '
      n = rank(obsv(A,h'))
```

results in  $n = 5$  corresponding to  $\text{rank}(O) = 5$ . Hence, the system is observable according to Definition 11.2, implying that the states  $r$ ,  $b$ ,  $\psi_w$  and  $\xi_w$  can be reconstructed from a single measurement  $y = \psi + \psi_w + v$  using a Luenberger observer:

$$\dot{\hat{x}} = Ax + bu + k(y - \hat{y}) \quad (11.36)$$

$$\hat{y} = h^\top \hat{x} \quad (11.37)$$

The filter gains can be computed by using pole placement in Matlab, for instance:

```
k = place(A',h,[p1,p2,p3,p4,p5])'
```

where  $p1, p2, p3, p4$  and  $p5$  are the desired closed-loop poles of the error dynamics (11.25).

## 11.3 Kalman Filter Design

The Kalman filter is an efficient recursive filter that estimates the state of a linear or nonlinear dynamic system from a series of noisy measurements. It is widely used in sensor and navigation systems since it can reconstruct unmeasured states as well as remove white and colored noise from the state estimates. It is also possible to include wild-point removal capabilities. In cases of temporarily loss of measurements, the filter equations behave such as a predictor. As soon as new measurements are available, the predictor is corrected and updated online to give the minimum variance estimate. This feature is particularly useful when satellite signals are lost since the Kalman filter can predict the motion using only gyros and accelerometers. Inertial navigation systems and observers for inertial measurement units are discussed in Section 11.5.

Together with the linear quadratic regulator (LQR), the Kalman filter solves the linear quadratic Gaussian (LQG) control problem; see Section 13.1. This section summarizes the most useful results for the design of discrete-time and continuous-time Kalman filters for marine craft.

The key assumption when designing a Kalman filter is that the system model is observable. This is necessary in order to obtain convergence of the estimated states  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$  to  $\mathbf{x}$ . Moreover, if the system model is *observable* (see Definition 11.2), the state vector  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  can be reconstructed recursively through the measurement vector  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^m$  and the control input vector  $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbb{R}^p$  as shown in Figure 11.6.

### 11.3.1 Discrete-Time Kalman Filter

The discrete-time Kalman filter (Kalman, 1960) is defined in terms of the discretized system model:

$$\mathbf{x}(k+1) = \Phi \mathbf{x}(k) + \Delta \mathbf{u}(k) + \Gamma \mathbf{w}(k) \quad (11.38)$$

$$\mathbf{y}(k) = \mathbf{H} \mathbf{x}(k) + \mathbf{v}(k) \quad (11.39)$$

where

$$\Phi = \exp(Ah) \approx \mathbf{I} + Ah + \frac{1}{2}(Ah)^2 + \cdots + \frac{1}{N!}(Ah)^N \quad (11.40)$$

$$\Delta = A^{-1}(\Phi - \mathbf{I})B, \quad \Gamma = A^{-1}(\Phi - \mathbf{I})E \quad (11.41)$$

and  $h$  is the sampling time.

#### Matlab

The discretized system matrices can be computed as

```
[PHI, DELTA] = c2d(A, B, h)
[PHI, GAMMA] = c2d(A, E, h)
```

where  $\text{PHI}=\Phi$ ,  $\text{DELTA}=\Delta$  and  $\text{GAMMA}=\Gamma$ . Notice that Euler integration implies choosing  $N = 1$  such that  $\Phi(k) = \mathbf{I} + Ah$ .

**Table 11.1** Discrete-time Kalman filter

Design matrices	$\mathbf{Q}(k) = \mathbf{Q}^\top(k) > 0, \mathbf{R}(k) = \mathbf{R}^\top(k) > 0$ (usually constant)
Initial conditions	$\bar{\mathbf{x}}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0$ $\bar{\mathbf{P}}(0) = E[(\mathbf{x}(0) - \hat{\mathbf{x}}(0))(\mathbf{x}(0) - \hat{\mathbf{x}}(0))^\top] = \mathbf{P}_0$
Kalman gain matrix	$\mathbf{K}(k) = \bar{\mathbf{P}}(k)\mathbf{H}^\top(k) [\mathbf{H}(k)\bar{\mathbf{P}}(k)\mathbf{H}^\top(k) + \mathbf{R}(k)]^{-1}$
State estimate update	$\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k) = \bar{\mathbf{x}}(k) + \mathbf{K}(k)[\mathbf{y}(k) - \mathbf{H}(k)\bar{\mathbf{x}}(k)]$
Error covariance update	$\hat{\mathbf{P}}(k) = [\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{K}(k)\mathbf{H}(k)]\bar{\mathbf{P}}(k)[\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{K}(k)\mathbf{H}(k)]^\top + \mathbf{K}(k)\mathbf{R}(k)\mathbf{K}^\top(k), \quad \hat{\mathbf{P}}(k) = \hat{\mathbf{P}}(k)^\top > 0$
State estimate propagation	$\bar{\mathbf{x}}(k+1) = \Phi(k)\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k) + \Delta(k)\mathbf{u}(k)$
Error covariance propagation	$\bar{\mathbf{P}}(k+1) = \Phi(k)\hat{\mathbf{P}}(k)\Phi^\top(k) + \Gamma(k)\mathbf{Q}(k)\Gamma^\top(k)$

The linear discrete-time Kalman filter algorithm is given in Table 11.1. This algorithm, however, requires that the state estimation error covariance matrix  $\hat{\mathbf{P}}(k) = \hat{\mathbf{P}}(k)^\top > 0$  is computed online. Since the matrix is symmetrical, the number of differential equations will be  $n(n + 1)/2$  for  $\mathbf{P}(k) \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ . In addition, there are  $n$  state estimates corresponding to  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k)$ .

### 11.3.2 Continuous-Time Kalman Filter

Consider the linear continuous-time system:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{E}\mathbf{w} \quad (11.42)$$

where the process noise  $\mathbf{w}$  is assumed to be a zero-mean Gaussian white noise process with covariance matrix  $\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{Q}^\top > 0$ . In the one-dimensional case  $\mathbf{Q}$  corresponds to the squared *standard deviation*  $\sigma^2$ . Furthermore, let the measurement equation (sensor system) be represented by

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{H}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{v} \quad (11.43)$$

where the measurement noise  $\mathbf{v}$  is assumed to be a zero-mean Gaussian white noise process with covariance matrix  $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}^\top > 0$ .

If the system (11.42)–(11.43) is *observable* (see Definition 11.2), the state vector  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  can be reconstructed recursively through the measurement vector  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^m$  and the control input vector  $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbb{R}^p$  (see Figure 11.6). The continuous-time KF algorithms are given in Table 11.2.

**Table 11.2** Continuous-time Kalman filter

Design matrices	$\mathbf{Q}(t) = \mathbf{Q}^\top(t) > 0, \mathbf{R}(t) = \mathbf{R}^\top(t) > 0$ (usually constant)
Initial conditions	$\hat{\mathbf{x}}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0$ $\mathbf{P}(0) = E[(\mathbf{x}(0) - \hat{\mathbf{x}}(0))(\mathbf{x}(0) - \hat{\mathbf{x}}(0))^\top] = \mathbf{P}_0$
Kalman gain matrix propagation	$\mathbf{K}(t) = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{H}^\top(t)\mathbf{R}^{-1}(t)$
State estimate propagation	$\dot{\hat{\mathbf{x}}}(t) = \mathbf{A}(t)\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t) + \mathbf{B}(t)\mathbf{u}(t) + \mathbf{K}(t)[\mathbf{y}(t) - \mathbf{H}(t)\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t)]$
Error covariance propagation	$\dot{\mathbf{P}}(t) = \mathbf{A}(t)\mathbf{P}(t) + \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{A}^\top(t) + \mathbf{E}(t)\mathbf{Q}(t)\mathbf{E}^\top(t) - \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{H}^\top(t)\mathbf{R}^{-1}(t)\mathbf{H}(t)\mathbf{P}(t), \quad \mathbf{P}(t) = \mathbf{P}^\top(t) > 0$

In the linear case it is computationally advantageous to use the steady-state solution of the KF. This filter will in fact have the same structure as the fixed-gain observers of Section 11.2.3. The only difference is the method for computation of the filter gain matrix.

### Continuous-Time Steady-State Kalman Filter

A frequently used simplification of the continuous-time Kalman filter is the steady-state solution obtained for the linear time-invariant (LTI) system:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{E}\mathbf{w} \quad (11.44)$$

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{H}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{v} \quad (11.45)$$

where  $\mathbf{w}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  are zero-mean Gaussian white noise processes. The steady-state Kalman filter is given by

$$\dot{\hat{\mathbf{x}}} = \mathbf{A}\hat{\mathbf{x}} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{K}_\infty(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{H}\hat{\mathbf{x}}) \quad (11.46)$$

$$\mathbf{K}_\infty = \mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{H}^\top \mathbf{R}^{-1} \quad (11.47)$$

where  $\mathbf{P}_\infty = \mathbf{P}_\infty^\top > 0$  is the positive definite solution of the *algebraic matrix Riccati equation*

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{P}_\infty + \mathbf{P}_\infty\mathbf{A}^\top + \mathbf{E}\mathbf{Q}\mathbf{E}^\top - \mathbf{P}_\infty\mathbf{H}^\top \mathbf{R}^{-1}\mathbf{H}\mathbf{P}_\infty = \mathbf{0} \quad (11.48)$$

### 11.3.3 Extended Kalman Filter

The Kalman filter can also be applied to nonlinear systems in the form

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{E}\mathbf{w} \quad (11.49)$$

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{H}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{v} \quad (11.50)$$

where  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  is a nonlinear vector field. For this system, the state vector can be estimated using the discrete-time extended Kalman filter (EKF) algorithm of Table 11.3.

The discrete-time quantities  $\mathcal{F}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k), \mathbf{u}(k))$ ,  $\Phi(k)$  and  $\Gamma(k)$  in Table 11.3 can be found by using *forward Euler* integration, for instance. Moreover,

$$\mathcal{F}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k), \mathbf{u}(k)) \approx \hat{\mathbf{x}}(k) + h[\mathbf{f}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k)) + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u}(k)] \quad (11.51)$$

$$\Phi(k) \approx \mathbf{I} + h \left. \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}(k), \mathbf{u}(k))}{\partial \mathbf{x}(k)} \right|_{\mathbf{x}(k)=\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k)} \quad (11.52)$$

$$\Gamma(k) \approx h\mathbf{E} \quad (11.53)$$

**Table 11.3** Discrete-time extended Kalman filter (EKF)

Design matrices	$\mathbf{Q}(k) = \mathbf{Q}^\top(k) > 0, \mathbf{R}(k) = \mathbf{R}^\top(k) > 0$ (usually constant)
Initial conditions	$\bar{\mathbf{x}}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0$ $\bar{\mathbf{P}}(0) = E[(\mathbf{x}(0) - \hat{\mathbf{x}}(0))(\mathbf{x}(0) - \hat{\mathbf{x}}(0))^\top] = \mathbf{P}_0$
Kalman gain matrix	$\mathbf{K}(k) = \bar{\mathbf{P}}(k)\mathbf{H}^\top(k)[\mathbf{H}(k)\bar{\mathbf{P}}(k)\mathbf{H}^\top(k) + \mathbf{R}(k)]^{-1}$
State estimate update	$\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k) = \bar{\mathbf{x}}(k) + \mathbf{K}(k)[\mathbf{y}(k) - \mathbf{H}(k)\bar{\mathbf{x}}(k)]$
Error covariance update	$\hat{\mathbf{P}}(k) = [\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{K}(k)\mathbf{H}(k)]\bar{\mathbf{P}}(k)[\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{K}(k)\mathbf{H}(k)]^\top + \mathbf{K}(k)\mathbf{R}(k)\mathbf{K}^\top(k), \quad \hat{\mathbf{P}}(k) = \hat{\mathbf{P}}(k)^\top > 0$
State estimate propagation	$\bar{\mathbf{x}}(k+1) = \mathcal{F}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k), \mathbf{u}(k))$
Error covariance propagation	$\bar{\mathbf{P}}(k+1) = \Phi(k)\hat{\mathbf{P}}(k)\Phi^\top(k) + \Gamma(k)\mathbf{Q}(k)\Gamma^\top(k)$

where  $h > 0$  is the sampling time. The EKF has been widely used in many applications. In Jouffroy and Fossen (2010) it has been shown that the continuous-time EKF is incremental GES under the assumption that the  $\mathbf{P}$  matrix of the Riccati equation is uniformly positive definite and upper bounded, that is

$$p_{\min}\mathbf{I} \leq \mathbf{P}(t) \leq p_{\max}\mathbf{I} \quad (11.54)$$

for two strictly positive constants  $p_{\min}$  and  $p_{\max}$ . This guarantees that the estimates converge exponentially to the actual states.

### 11.3.4 Corrector–Predictor Representation for Nonlinear Observers

When implementing nonlinear observers, the *corrector–predictor representation* of the discrete-time EKF can be used to handle effectively slow measurement rates, multiple measurement rates and *dead-reckoning*. Consider the continuous-time nonlinear observer:

$$\dot{\hat{\mathbf{x}}} = \mathbf{f}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}, \mathbf{u}) + \gamma(\mathbf{y}, \hat{\mathbf{y}}) \quad (11.55)$$

with the linear injection term

$$\gamma(\mathbf{y}, \hat{\mathbf{y}}) = \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{y} - \hat{\mathbf{y}}) \quad (11.56)$$

The discrete-time corrector–predictor formulation for the nonlinear system model (11.55) in terms of Euler integration becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Corrector} \quad \hat{\mathbf{x}}(k) &= \bar{\mathbf{x}}(k) + \mathbf{K}_d[\mathbf{y}(k) - \bar{\mathbf{y}}(k)] \\ \text{Predictor} \quad \bar{\mathbf{x}}(k+1) &= \bar{\mathbf{x}}(k) + h\mathbf{f}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k), \mathbf{u}(k)) \end{aligned} \quad (11.57)$$

where  $\mathbf{K}_d = h\mathbf{K}$  and  $h$  is the sampling time. At each time  $t_k$  a measurement  $\mathbf{y}(k)$  is available, the corrector updates the state  $\bar{\mathbf{x}}(k)$  to  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k)$ . The updated state is used by the predictor to predict the states at time  $t_{k+1}$  based on the nonlinear system model  $\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u})$ .

#### Example 11.3 (Corrector–Predictor for Ship Navigation using Two Measurement Rates)

Consider a ship navigation system where the predictor runs at 100 Hz. The IMU and GPS measurements,  $y_{\text{IMU}}$  and  $y_{\text{GPS}}$ , are received at 100 Hz (same as the sampling time) and 10 Hz, respectively.

The corrector-predictor representation can be modified to handle two measurement frequencies by modifying the gain  $\mathbf{K}_d$  or the measurement vector  $\mathbf{y}$  according to

$h = 0.01$  sampling time  
GPS = 10 counter for GPS measurements  
 $\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{x}_0$  initial state vector

while estimating

<b>Method A</b>	<b>Method B</b>
$\mathbf{y}_{\text{IMU}} = \text{measurement}$	$\mathbf{y}_{\text{IMU}} = \text{measurement}$
$\mathbf{y}_{\text{GPS}} = \text{measurement}$	
$\mathbf{K}_d = [hk_{\text{IMU}}, 0]^\top$	$\mathbf{K}_d = [hk_{\text{IMU}}, 10hk_{\text{GPS}}]^\top$
if GPS = 10	if GPS = 10
$\mathbf{K}_d = [hk_{\text{IMU}}, 10hk_{\text{GPS}}]^\top$	$\mathbf{y}_{\text{GPS}} = \text{measurement}$
GPS = 0	GPS = 0
end	end
if dead-reckoning (no updates)	if dead-reckoning (no updates)
$\mathbf{K}_d = [0, 0]^\top$	$\mathbf{K}_d = [0, 0]^\top$
end	end
$\mathbf{y} = [\mathbf{y}_{\text{IMU}}^\top, \mathbf{y}_{\text{GPS}}^\top]^\top$	$\mathbf{y} = [\mathbf{y}_{\text{IMU}}^\top, \mathbf{y}_{\text{GPS}}^\top]^\top$
$\hat{\mathbf{x}} = \bar{\mathbf{x}} + \mathbf{K}_d [\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{H}\bar{\mathbf{x}}]$	$\hat{\mathbf{x}} = \bar{\mathbf{x}} + \mathbf{K}_d [\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{H}\bar{\mathbf{x}}]$
$\mathbf{u} = \text{control system (optionally)}$	$\mathbf{u} = \text{control system (optionally)}$
$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \bar{\mathbf{x}} + h\mathbf{f}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}, \mathbf{u})$	$\bar{\mathbf{x}} = \bar{\mathbf{x}} + h\mathbf{f}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}, \mathbf{u})$
GPS = GPS + 1	GPS = GPS + 1
end	

Dead-reckoning refers to the case where there are no updates (signal loss) for a period of time. During sensor failures, the best thing to do is to trust the model without any updates. Hence, the corrector is bypassed by setting  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k) = \bar{\mathbf{x}}(k)$  and prediction is based on the system model only:

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}}(k+1) = \bar{\mathbf{x}}(k) + h\mathbf{f}(\bar{\mathbf{x}}(k), \mathbf{u}(k)) \quad (11.58)$$

Notice that observers with linear injection terms can use both methods while observers with nonlinear injection terms only can use the second method.

### 11.3.5 Case Study: Kalman Filter for Heading Autopilots using only Compass Measurements

This section explains how observers and wave filters for heading autopilots can be designed.

#### Heading Sensors

The main sensor components for a heading controlled marine craft are:

- Magnetic and/or gyroscopic compasses measuring  $\psi$
- Yaw rate gyro measuring  $r$

In many commercial systems only the compass is used for feedback control since the yaw rate can be estimated quite well by a state estimator.

A compass is the primary device for direction-finding on the surface of the Earth. Compasses may operate on magnetic or gyroscopic principles or by determining the direction of the Sun or a star. The discussions will be restricted to magnetic and gyroscopic compasses, since these are the primary devices onboard commercial ships and rigs.

The magnetic compass is an old Chinese invention, which probably dates back to 100 AD. Knowledge of the compass as a directional device came to western Europe sometime in the 12th century and it is today a standard unit in all commercial and navy ships.

A magnetic compass is in fact an extremely simple device (as opposed to a gyroscopic compass). It consists of a small, lightweight magnet balanced on a nearly frictionless pivot point. The magnet is generally called a needle. The magnetic field inside the Earth has its south end at the North Pole and opposite. Hence, the North end of the compass needle points towards the North Pole (opposite magnets attract). The magnetic field of the Earth is, however, not perfectly aligned along the Earth's rotational axis. It is skewed slightly off center. This skew or bias is called the *declination* and it must be compensated for. It is therefore common to indicate what the declination is on navigational maps. Sensitivity to magnetic variations and declination cause problems in ship navigation. These problems were overcome after the introduction of the gyroscopic compass.

The first recorded construction of the gyroscope is usually credited to *C. A. Bohnenberger* in 1810 while the first electrically driven gyroscope was demonstrated in 1890 by *G. M. Hopkins* (see Allensworth, 1999; Bennet, 1979). A gyroscope is a disk mounted on a base in such a way that the disk can spin freely on its  $x$  and  $y$  axes; that is the disk will remain in a fixed position in whatever directions the base is moved. A properly mounted gyroscope will always turn to match its plane of rotation with that of the Earth, just as a magnetic compass turns to match the Earth's magnetic field.

The large variations in the magnetic character of ships caused by electrical machinery and weapon systems made the construction of accurate declination or deviation tables for the magnetic compass very difficult. In parallel works, *Dr H. Anschütz* of Germany and *Elmer Sperry* of the USA worked on a practical application of *Hopkins'* gyroscope. In 1908 Anschütz patented the first North-seeking gyrocompass, while Elmer Sperry was granted a patent for his ballistic compass, which includes vertical damping, three years later.

In 1910, when the Anschütz gyro compass appeared, the problem with magnetic variations in ship navigation was eliminated. However, this compass proved to be quite unsatisfactory during rolling of the ship, since it produced an "intercardinal rolling error". Therefore in 1912 Anschütz redesigned the compass to overcome this defect. One year later, the Sperry compass entered the market and it became a serious competitor with the Anschütz. Today gyroscopic compasses are produced by a large number of companies for both commercial and navy ships.

### System Model for Heading Autopilot Observer Design

As in the case of positioning, we consider the first-order wave-induced motion as an output disturbance. Hence the measured yaw angle can be decomposed into

$$y = \psi + \psi_w + v \quad (11.59)$$

where  $\psi$  is the response due to the control action and LF disturbance,  $\psi_w$  represents the first-order wave-induced motion and  $v$  is zero-mean Gaussian white measurement noise introduced by the compass. To estimate  $\psi$  and  $r$  from  $y$ , and at the same time obtain wave filtering, one can use a WF

model to predict the wave motions  $\psi_w$ . The main tool for this is a linear time-invariant Kalman filter based on

$$\dot{\xi}_w = \psi_w \quad (11.60)$$

$$\dot{\psi}_w = -\omega_0^2 \xi_w - 2\lambda\omega_0 \psi_w + w_1 \quad (11.61)$$

where  $\lambda$  and  $\omega_0$  are the relative damping ratio and peak frequency of the filter used to represent the wave-induced yaw motion. The yaw dynamics of a marine craft is given by the Nomoto model (see Section 7.2):

$$\dot{\psi} = r \quad (11.62)$$

$$\dot{r} = -\frac{1}{T}r + \frac{1}{m}(\tau_{\text{wind}} + \tau_N) + b + w_2 \quad (11.63)$$

$$\dot{b} = w_3 \quad (11.64)$$

where  $b$  is a bias term and  $w_1$ ,  $w_2$  and  $w_3$  are zero-mean Gaussian white noise processes. The constant  $m = I_z - N_r$  is introduced for convenience such that the rudder angle  $\delta$  generates a yaw moment  $\tau_N$  given by

$$\tau_N = m \frac{K}{T} \delta = N_\delta \delta \quad (11.65)$$

while  $\tau_{\text{wind}}$  represents an optional term for wind feedforward. Notice that neither the yaw rate  $r$  nor the wave states  $\xi_w$  and  $\psi_w$  are measured. The resulting state-space model is

$$\dot{x} = Ax + bu + Ew \quad (11.66)$$

$$y = h^\top x + v \quad (11.67)$$

where

$$x = [\xi_w, \psi_w, \psi, r, b]^\top \quad (11.68)$$

$$u = \tau_{\text{wind}} + \tau_N \quad (11.69)$$

$$w = [w_1, w_2, w_3]^\top \quad (11.70)$$

and

$$A = \left[ \begin{array}{cc|ccc} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -\omega_0^2 & -2\lambda\omega_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1/T & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right], \quad b = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1/m \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.71)$$

$$E = \left[ \begin{array}{c|cc} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right], \quad h^\top = [0, 1, 1, 0, 0] \quad (11.72)$$

In order to implement a Kalman filter for a heading autopilot, the system model can be used in a discrete- or continuous-time filter, as presented in Sections 11.3.1–11.3.2. The main problem in the realization

of the state estimator is that the parameters  $T, m, \omega_0$  and  $\lambda$  are uncertain. The parameters  $T$  and  $m$  can be estimated from tests performed in calm water while the parameters  $\omega_0$  and  $\lambda$  of the first-order WF model and the covariance of the driving noise  $w_1$  can be estimated from maneuvering trials or parameter estimation.

Holzhüter (1992) claims that the damping coefficient in the wave model can be chosen rather arbitrarily as long as it is low (typically  $\lambda = 0.01\text{--}0.1$ ), whereas the wave frequency  $\omega_0$  can be treated as a tunable or gain scheduled parameter. In some cases it can be advantageous to estimate  $\omega_0$  online by applying a frequency tracker or adaptive control theory (Strand and Fossen, 1999).

### Matlab

The following example illustrates how the Kalman filter gains can be computed in Matlab for a ship exposed to waves.

#### **Example 11.4 (Continuous-Time Steady-State KF for Ship Autopilots)**

For the ship-wave system (11.66)–(11.67), the SISO continuous-time state estimator takes the form

$$\dot{\hat{x}} = A\hat{x} + bu + k_\infty(y - h^\top x) \quad (11.73)$$

where the Kalman filter gain is

$$k_\infty = \frac{1}{r} P_\infty h \quad (11.74)$$

The covariance matrix  $P_\infty = P_\infty^\top > 0$  is given by the ARE:

$$AP_\infty + P_\infty A^\top + EQE^\top - \frac{1}{r} P_\infty hh^\top P_\infty = \mathbf{0} \quad (11.75)$$

The KF gain  $k_\infty$  is computed in Matlab as

$$\begin{aligned} R &= r \\ Q &= \text{diag}\{q_{11}, q_{22}, q_{33}\} \\ [k, P] &= \text{lqe}(A, E, h, Q, R) \end{aligned}$$

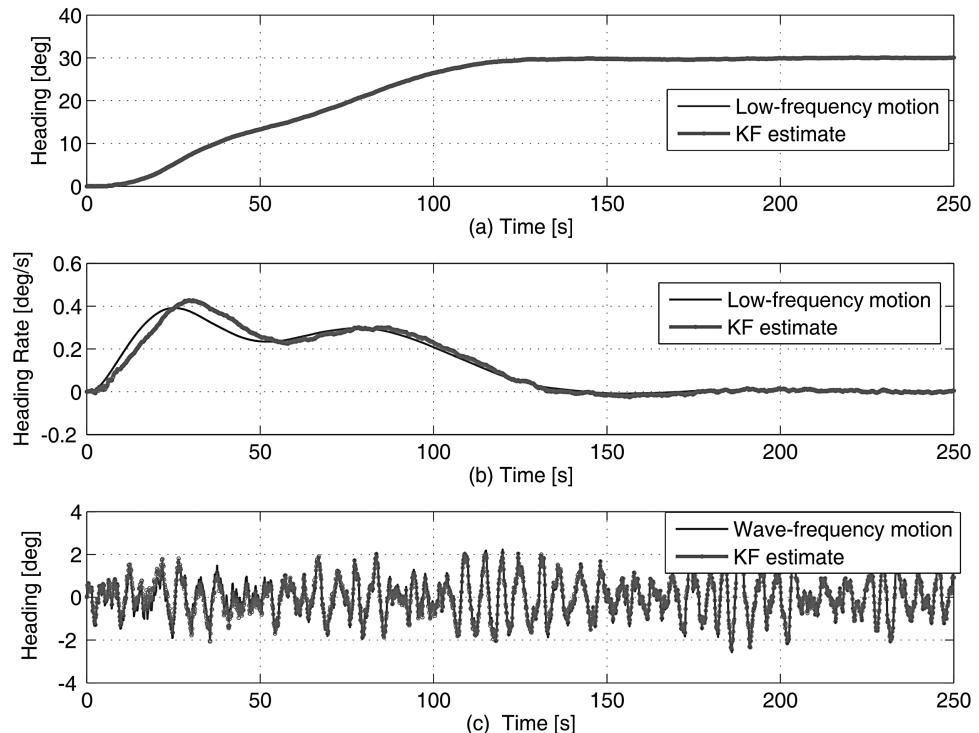
where the tuning of the filter is done by choosing the four design parameters  $r$ ,  $q_{11}$ ,  $q_{22}$  and  $q_{33}$ . The first of these,  $r$ , represents the compass covariance, which can be computed by logging a time series  $\psi(t)$  of the compass at a constant heading. Hence, the Matlab command

$$r = \text{cov}(\psi)$$

gives a good estimate of the measurement noise. The disadvantage with the KF approach is that information about the process noise  $w_1, w_2$  and  $w_3$  represented by the weights  $q_{11}, q_{22}$  and  $q_{33}$  are necessary. These three quantities are usually found by trial and error. The variance of the process and measurement noise will vary with each sea state, implying that several sets of KF gains must be computed.

#### **Example 11.5 (Kalman-Filter-Based Wave Filter for the Mariner Class Vessel)**

To illustrate the performance of Kalman filter-based wave filtering, we consider the case study in Fossen and Perez (2009) of an autopilot application taken from the Marine Systems Simulator (MSS, 2011). This



**Figure 11.7** Kalman filter performance for a heading autopilot designed for the Mariner class cargo ship: (a) shows the true LF heading  $\psi$  and estimate  $\hat{\psi}$ , (b) shows the true LF heading rate  $r$  and estimate  $\hat{r}$  and (c) shows the WF component of the heading  $\psi_w$  and its estimate  $\hat{\psi}_w$ .

simulation package implemented in Matlab-Simulink provides models of marine craft and a library of Simulink blocks for heading autopilot control system design. A Simulink block for Kalman filter-based wave filtering is also included.

The marine craft considered is a 160 m Mariner class vessel with a nominal service speed of 15 knots, or 7.7 m/s. The parameters of a complete and validated nonlinear model for the Mariner class vessel are given in Fossen (1994). From the step tests performed on the nonlinear model, a first-order Nomoto model is identified with the parameters  $K = 0.185 \text{ s}^{-1}$  and  $T = 107.3 \text{ s}$ . Based on the time constant, a sampling period of 0.5 s is chosen for the implementation of the Kalman filter. The standard deviation of the noise of the compass is 0.5 degrees. From a record of heading motion while the rudder is kept constant, the parameters of the first-order wave-induced motion model are estimated, namely  $\zeta = 0.1$ ,  $\omega_0 = 1.2 \text{ rad/s}$ , and the standard deviation of the noise driving the filter is  $\sigma_{w1} = \sqrt{300} \text{ rad/s}$ .

Figure 11.7 demonstrates the performance of the Kalman filter. The two upper plots show the true LF heading angle and rate together with the Kalman filter estimates while the lower plot shows the first-order wave-induced heading angle and its estimate.

### 11.3.6 Case Study: Kalman Filter for Dynamic Positioning Systems using GNSS and Compass Measurements

Kalman filtering (or *optimal state estimation* in the sense of minimum variance) allows the user to estimate the state  $x$  of a dynamic system from a noise-contaminated input–output pair  $(u, y)$ . The interested reader

is advised to consult Brown and Hwang (1998) or Gelb *et al.* (1988) for details on Kalman filter design. Applications specific to the field of guidance and control can be found in Lin (1992).

Dynamic positioning (DP) systems have been commercially available for marine craft since the 1960s. The first DP systems were designed using conventional PID controllers in cascade with low-pass and/or notch filters to suppress the wave-induced motion components. From the middle of the 1970s more advanced filtering techniques were available thanks to the Kalman filter (Kalman, 1960). This motivated Balchen and coauthors to develop optimal wave filtering and state estimation; see Balchen *et al.* (1976, 1980a, 1980b). KF-based wave filtering has also been discussed by Grimble *et al.* (1980a, 1980b), Fung and Grimble (1981, 1983), Fotakis *et al.* (1982), Sælid and Jenssen (1983), Sælid *et al.* (1983), Reid *et al.* (1984), Holzhüter and Strauch (1987), Holzhüter (1992), Sørensen *et al.* (1995, 1996, 2000), Fossen and Strand (2000) and Fossen and Perez (2009).

In this section, the *Kalman filter* is presented for DP applications. Both observers include wave filtering, bias state estimation and reconstruction of the LF motion components, and estimates of the nonmeasured body velocities are considered. Positioning feedback systems are described more closely in Sections 12.2.10 and 13.1.6. Before observer design is discussed, a general introduction to navigation systems is given.

### Global Navigation Satellite Systems (GNSS)

Several Global Navigation Satellite Systems (GNSS) provide autonomous geospatial positioning with global coverage. The United States *NAVSTAR Global Positioning System* (GPS) has been fully operative since 1995 (see Hofmann-Wellenhof *et al.*, 1994; Parkinson and Spilker, 1995). In addition to GPS, the Russian *GLObal'naya NAVigatsionnaya Sputnikovaya Sistema* (GLONASS) has been restored; see Kayton and Fried (1997) and Leick (1995), for instance. A more recent and more accurate system is the European Union's *GALILEO* positioning system, which will be complementary to GPS and GLONASS. For this purpose, integrated GNSS receivers capable of combining signals from one or more systems can be used. This also improves redundancy in marine control systems. The GNSS measurements are usually used in a motion control system that operates in the three planar degrees of freedom, namely *surge* (forward motion), *sway* (transverse motion) and *yaw* (rotation about the vertical axis, also called heading). The position of the marine craft is normally measured by differential GNSS, while the heading is measured by a gyrocompass. Additional types of sensors are usually available to ensure reliability of the positioning system, namely inertial measurement units, hydro acoustic position sensors, taut wires and laser sensors.

- *Differential and Augmented GNSS:* The main idea of a *differential* GNSS system is that a fixed receiver located, for example, *on shore* with a known position is used to calculate the GNSS position errors. The position errors are then transmitted to the GNSS receiver on board the ship and used as corrections to the actual ship position. In a *differential* GNSS the horizontal positioning errors are squeezed down to less than 1 m, which is the typical accuracy of a ship positioning system today (Hofmann-Wellenhof *et al.*, 1994).
- *Carrier Differential GNSS:* A GNSS receiver in lock is able to track the phase shift of the carrier and output the fractional phase measurement at each epoch. However, the overall phase measurement contains an unknown number of carrier cycles. This is called the integer ambiguity ( $N$ ). This ambiguity exists because the receiver merely begins counting carrier cycles from the time a satellite signal is placed in an active track. For GPS, the precision of the phase measurement is about 0.01 cycles ( $\approx 0.01 \times 19 \text{ cm} = 1.9 \text{ mm}$ ), and if  $N$  is determined, it allows for highly accurate position measurements. Ambiguity resolution is a very active research area, and there are several receivers known as *real-time kinematic* (RTK) receivers on the market today that utilize carrier measurements to achieve position accuracy in the order of a few centimeters. These position measurements are, however, not as robust as GPS and DGPS.

### System Model for Dynamic Positioning Observer Design

In Section 7.3 it was shown that the 3 DOF nonlinear model for DP can be written as

$$\dot{\eta} = R(\psi)v \quad (11.76)$$

$$M\dot{v} + C_{RB}(v)v + D \exp(-\alpha V_{rc})v_r + d(V_{rc}, \gamma_{rc}) = \tau + \tau_{wind} \quad (11.77)$$

where  $\eta = [N, E, \psi]^\top$ ,  $v = [u, v, r]^\top$  and

$$d(V_{rc}, \gamma_{rc}) = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{Fc} C_X(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \\ -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{Lc} C_Y(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 \\ -\frac{1}{2}\rho A_{Lc} L_{od} C_N(\gamma_{rc}) V_{rc}^2 - N_{|r|r} |r| \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.78)$$

This model is highly nonlinear but it is possible to use the extended KF to estimate the velocities and ocean currents using only position and heading measurements. However, the model can be simplified. In particular,  $C_{Xc}(\gamma_{rc})$ ,  $C_{Yc}(\gamma_{rc})$  and  $C_{Nc}(\gamma_{rc})$  are difficult to estimate with accuracy and extensive hydrodynamic tests are expensive to perform. In such cases, it is common practice to simplify the observer model in terms of a linear damping matrix and a bias term in the form (Fossen and Strand, 1999b)

$$D \exp(-\alpha V_{rc})v_r + d(V_{rc}, \gamma_{rc}) \approx Dv - R^\top(\psi)b \quad (11.79)$$

where

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} d_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & d_{22} & d_{23} \\ 0 & d_{32} & d_{33} \end{bmatrix}, \quad b = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ b_3 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.80)$$

In this model, the effects of the ocean currents as well as unmodeled nonlinear dynamics are lumped into a bias term  $b$ . The resulting DP model becomes

$$\dot{\xi} = A_w \xi + E_w w_1 \quad (11.81)$$

$$\dot{\eta} = R(\psi)v \quad (11.82)$$

$$\dot{b} = w_2 \quad (\text{alternatively } \dot{b} = -T^{-1}b + w_2) \quad (11.83)$$

$$M\dot{v} = -Dv + R^\top(\psi)b + \tau + \tau_{wind} + w_3 \quad (11.84)$$

$$y = \eta + C_w \xi + v \quad (11.85)$$

where the output  $\eta_w = C_w \xi$  represents three linear wave response models in surge, sway and yaw with state vector  $\xi \in \mathbb{R}^6$  and  $A_w \in \mathbb{R}^{6 \times 6}$ ,  $E_w \in \mathbb{R}^{6 \times 3}$  and  $C_w \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 6}$  are constant matrices of appropriate dimensions describing the sea state. The variables  $w_i$  ( $i = 1, 2, 3$ ) are zero-mean Gaussian noise vectors representing model uncertainty. The measurement  $y$  is the sum of the LF and WF components corresponding to the GNSS and compass measurements. The bias is usually modeled as a *Wiener process* (random walk):

$$\dot{b} = w_2 \quad (11.86)$$

An alternative model is the *first-order Markov* model:

$$\dot{b} = -T^{-1}b + w_2 \quad (11.87)$$

where  $T = \text{diag}\{T_1, T_2, T_3\} \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  is a user-specified diagonal matrix of positive bias time constants. These models can be used to describe slowly varying environmental forces and moments due to:

- second-order wave drift forces
- ocean currents
- wind forces (alternatively implemented as wind feedforward)

The estimate of  $\dot{\boldsymbol{b}}$  will be nonphysical since it contains several components. Many DP operators call this *DP current* since it is experienced as a drift force due to second-order wave drift forces, ocean currents and unmodeled dynamics.

The model (11.81)–(11.85) is nonlinear since the kinematic transformation matrix  $\mathbf{R}(\psi)$  depends on the state  $\psi$ . This suggests that the DP observer must be based on the extended KF formulation. For a DP system operating at constant heading or slow turning rates, the following assumption can be used:

**Assumption (Constant Heading):** The yaw rate is zero ( $r = 0$ ) such that  $\dot{\mathbf{R}}(\psi) = \mathbf{0}$ .

Hence, the use of vessel parallel coordinates implies that (see Section 7.5.3)

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_p = \mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} \quad (11.88)$$

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{b}}_p = \mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\dot{\boldsymbol{b}} \quad (11.89)$$

Consequently, the kinematics (11.76) can be approximated by a linear model:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_p &= \mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} + \dot{\mathbf{R}}^\top(\psi)\boldsymbol{\eta} \\ &= \mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\mathbf{R}(\psi)\boldsymbol{v} + \dot{\mathbf{R}}^\top(\psi)\boldsymbol{\eta} \\ &= \boldsymbol{v} + \dot{\mathbf{R}}^\top(\psi)\boldsymbol{\eta} \\ &\approx \boldsymbol{v} \end{aligned} \quad (11.90)$$

If the heading angle is constant, the bias model in vessel parallel coordinates can be formulated as

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{b}}_p = \boldsymbol{w}_2 \quad (11.91)$$

**Remark:** Notice that if the heading angle is changed,  $\boldsymbol{b}_p$  needs time to converge to its new value due to the dependency of the rotation matrix. In many commercial systems, the constant heading assumption is removed by designing an EKF for the nonlinear model (11.76)–(11.77) which includes the rotation matrix.

### Linear DP Observer Model for Constant Heading

The resulting DP observer model in vessel parallel coordinates becomes

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\xi}} = \mathbf{A}_w\boldsymbol{\xi} + \mathbf{E}_w\boldsymbol{w}_1 \quad (11.92)$$

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_p = \boldsymbol{v} \quad (11.93)$$

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{b}}_p = \boldsymbol{w}_2 \quad (\text{alternatively } \dot{\boldsymbol{b}}_p = -\mathbf{T}^{-1}\boldsymbol{b}_p + \boldsymbol{w}_2) \quad (11.94)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\boldsymbol{v}} = -\mathbf{D}\boldsymbol{v} + \boldsymbol{b}_p + \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{w}_3 \quad (11.95)$$

$$\boldsymbol{y} = \boldsymbol{\eta}_p + \mathbf{C}_w\boldsymbol{\xi} + \boldsymbol{v} \quad (11.96)$$

The control forces usually have two components:

$$\tau = -\hat{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \mathbf{B}_u \mathbf{u} \quad (11.97)$$

where  $\hat{\tau}_{\text{wind}}$  is an estimate of the wind forces implemented by using feedforward compensation and  $\mathbf{B}_u \mathbf{u}$  represents actuator forces. The wind feedforward term, which is proportional to the square of the measured wind velocity, depends on the craft's projected area in the direction of the wind (see Section 8.1). The vector  $\mathbf{u}$  is the command to the actuators, which are assumed to have a much faster dynamic response than the craft; thus the coefficient  $\mathbf{B}_u$  represents the mapping from the actuator command to the force generated by the actuator. For example, if the command to a propeller is the rotation speed, then the corresponding coefficient in  $\mathbf{B}_u$  maps the speed to the generated thrust.

The resulting model for a DP observer design is the fifteenth-order state-space model:

$$\dot{x} = Ax + Bu + Ew \quad (11.98)$$

$$y = Hx + v \quad (11.99)$$

where  $x = [\xi^\top, \eta_p^\top, b_p^\top, v^\top]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^{15}$  is the state vector,  $u \in \mathbb{R}^p$  ( $p \geq 3$ ) is the control vector,  $w = [w_1^\top, w_2^\top, w_3^\top]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^9$  represents the process noise vector and  $v \in \mathbb{R}^3$  is a vector of measurement noise. The system matrices are

$$A = \left[ \begin{array}{c|ccc} A_w & \mathbf{0}_{6 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{6 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{6 \times 3} \\ \hline \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 6} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 6} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & -T^{-1} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 6} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & M^{-1} & -M^{-1}D \end{array} \right], \quad B = \left[ \begin{array}{c} \mathbf{0}_{6 \times p} \\ \hline \mathbf{0}_{3 \times p} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times p} \\ M^{-1}B_u \end{array} \right] \quad (11.100)$$

$$E = \left[ \begin{array}{c|cc} E_w & \mathbf{0}_{6 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{6 \times 3} \\ \hline \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & I_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & M^{-1} \end{array} \right], \quad H = [C_w \mid I_{3 \times 3} \quad \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \quad \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3}] \quad (11.101)$$

### Continuous-Time Kalman Filter

The continuous-time filter equations for (11.98) and (11.99) are (see Table 11.2 in Section 11.2.3)

$$\dot{\hat{x}} = A\hat{x} + Bu + \underbrace{PH^\top R^{-1}(y - H\hat{x})}_K \quad (11.102)$$

$$\dot{P} = AP + PA^\top + EQE^\top - PH^\top R^{-1}HP \quad (11.103)$$

Notice that the covariance matrices  $Q = Q^\top \in \mathbb{R}^{9 \times 9}$  and  $R = R^\top \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  must be specified by the user. The measurement covariance matrix can be chosen as

$$R = \text{diag} \{ \sigma_{v1}^2, \sigma_{v2}^2, \dots, \sigma_{vp}^2 \}$$

where the covariance  $\sigma_{vi}^2$  of the measurement noise of the sensor  $i$  can be estimated by the sample covariance from a data record taken while the craft is at port with no motion. The matrix  $Q$  can also be chosen to be diagonal with positive tunable parameters. These are usually found by trial and error. The estimation of the covariance  $Q$  of the state noise  $w$  in (11.98) is more complex since it depends

on the sea state, the heading of the craft relative to the environmental forces and how uncertain the model is. This covariance matrix is chosen to be block diagonal, that is

$$\mathbf{Q} = \text{diag}\{\mathbf{Q}_1, \mathbf{Q}_2, \mathbf{Q}_3\} \quad (11.104)$$

The matrix  $\mathbf{Q}_1 \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  is the covariance of the noise  $\mathbf{w}_1$ , which drives the noise filter representing linear wave-induced motion,  $\mathbf{Q}_2 \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  is the covariance of the noise  $\mathbf{w}_2$ , which represents the uncertainty in the equation of motion, and  $\mathbf{Q}_3 \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  is the covariance of the noise  $\mathbf{w}_3$ , which represents the uncertainty in the bias term that models the rest of the environmental forces. The matrices  $\mathbf{Q}_2$  and  $\mathbf{Q}_3$  are usually chosen to be diagonal. The entries of the matrix  $\mathbf{Q}_2$  are taken as a fraction of the variance of the position measurement noises. The entries of  $\mathbf{Q}_3$  are high values. These choices provide a filter with an appropriate balance of the uncertainty in various parts of the model. The covariance  $\mathbf{Q}_1$  is estimated together with the parameters of the WF motion model from data measured before and during the operation of the craft.

### Discrete-Time Kalman Filter

Since the GNSS measurement frequency can be as low as 1–10 Hz it is advantageous to implement the discrete-time version of the KF. The discrete-time system model is written as

$$\mathbf{x}(k+1) = \Phi \mathbf{x}(k) + \Delta \mathbf{u}(k) + \Gamma \mathbf{w}(k) \quad (11.105)$$

$$\mathbf{y}(k) = \mathbf{H} \mathbf{x}(k) + \mathbf{v}(k) \quad (11.106)$$

where

$$\Phi = \exp(Ah) \quad (11.107)$$

$$\Delta = A^{-1}(\Phi - I)\mathbf{B} \quad (11.108)$$

$$\Gamma = A^{-1}(\Phi - I)\mathbf{E} \quad (11.109)$$

Here  $h$  is the sampling time, and the equivalent discrete-time noises  $\mathbf{w}(k)$  and  $\mathbf{v}(k)$  are Gaussian and white with zero mean. The discrete-time Kalman filter uses the *corrector–predictor* representation (see Table 11.1 in Section 11.3.1):

#### Kalman Gain:

$$\mathbf{K}(k) = \bar{\mathbf{P}}(k) \mathbf{H}^\top(k) [\mathbf{H}(k) \bar{\mathbf{P}}(k) \mathbf{H}^\top(k) + \mathbf{R}(k)]^{-1} \quad (11.110)$$

#### Corrector:

$$\hat{\mathbf{P}}(k) = [I - \mathbf{K}(k) \mathbf{H}(k)] \bar{\mathbf{P}}(k) [I - \mathbf{K}(k) \mathbf{H}(k)]^\top + \mathbf{K}(k) \mathbf{R}(k) \mathbf{K}^\top(k) \quad (11.111)$$

$$\hat{\mathbf{x}}(k) = \bar{\mathbf{x}}(k) + \mathbf{K}(k) [\mathbf{y}(k) - \mathbf{H}(k) \bar{\mathbf{x}}(k)] \quad (11.112)$$

#### Predictor:

$$\bar{\mathbf{x}}(k+1) = \Phi(k) \hat{\mathbf{x}}(k) + \Delta(k) \mathbf{u}(k) \quad (11.113)$$

$$\bar{\mathbf{P}}(k+1) = \Phi(k) \hat{\mathbf{P}}(k) \Phi^\top(k) + \Gamma(k) \mathbf{Q}(k) \Gamma^\top(k) \quad (11.114)$$

In order to implement a Kalman filter, the parameters of the model as well as the covariance of the state measurement noises in the model are necessary. The mass and damping parameters of the model can be initially estimated from hydrodynamic computations. Then, an update of the parameter estimates can be obtained from data of tests performed in calm water (Fossen *et al.*, 1996).

The parameters are re-estimated after significant changes in heading or at regular intervals of 20 minutes, which is the time period for which the sea state can be considered to be stationary. Since the craft is in a positioning control mode, the total motion measured can be recorded and detrended to obtain an estimate of the wave-induced motion vector  $\hat{\eta}_w(k)$ , or, equivalently, a first-order high-pass filter can be used (Holzhüter and Strauch, 1987). These data can then be used to estimate the parameters of the wave-induced motion model, for which it is convenient to consider the directly parameterized innovations form (Ljung, 1999)

$$\hat{\xi}(k+1) = A_w(\theta)\hat{\xi}(k) + K_w(\theta)\epsilon(k) \quad (11.115)$$

$$\hat{\eta}_w(k) = C_w(\theta)\hat{\xi}(k) + \epsilon(k) \quad (11.116)$$

where  $\theta$  is the vector of parameters to be estimated and  $\epsilon(k)$  is the vector of innovations. The parameter estimation problem can then be formulated as (Fossen and Perez, 2009)

$$\hat{\theta} = \arg \min_{\theta} \det \sum_{k=1}^N \epsilon(k, \theta) \epsilon(k, \theta)^T \quad (11.117)$$

with

$$\epsilon(k, \theta) = \hat{\eta}_w(k) - C_w(\theta)\hat{\xi}(k) \quad (11.118)$$

$$\hat{\xi}(k+1) = A_w(\theta)\hat{\xi}(k) + K_w(\theta)\epsilon(k, \theta) \quad (11.119)$$

where  $\eta_w(k)$  is replaced by the estimate  $\hat{\eta}_w(k)$  obtained from detrending the measured data. Equations (11.117)–(11.119) comprise a standard prediction error estimation problem whose solution is related to the maximum likelihood estimate of the parameter vector  $\theta$  (Harvey, 1989; Ljung, 1999).

Once the parameters of the mode are estimated, the covariance  $\hat{Q}_\epsilon$  of the innovations can also be estimated from the sample covariance of the predictions errors. Then, the Kalman filter can be implemented with the innovation WF model and thus we can chose  $Q_1 = \hat{Q}_\epsilon$ . This choice entails no loss of information.

An alternative to the procedure described above consists of fixing the damping  $\zeta$  of the WF model to a value in the range 0.01 to 0.1 as suggested in Holzhüter (1992) and estimate only the natural frequency  $\omega_0$  and noise covariance (Holzhüter and Strauch, 1987; Holzhüter, 1992). This estimation approach is summarized in Fossen (1994), where recursive least squares is used for parameter estimation. A related approach, also based on recursive least squares, is given in Perez (2005).

## 11.4 Nonlinear Passive Observer Designs

The drawback of the Kalman filter is that it is difficult and time-consuming to tune the state estimator, which is a stochastic system with 15 states and 120 covariance equations. The main reason for this is that the numerous covariance tuning parameters may be difficult to relate to physical quantities. This results in an *ad hoc* tuning procedure for the process covariance matrix  $Q$  while the measurement covariance matrix  $R$  usually is well defined in terms of sensor specifications.

In the 1990s, vectorial observer backstepping was presented as an alternative design methodology for DP state estimation (Fossen and Grøvlen, 1998). The motivation for this was to avoid vessel parallel coordinates or linearization of the yaw kinematics in order to obtain a global stability result. Another motivating factor was to reduce the relatively time-consuming process of tuning the Kalman filter covariance matrices online. In fact, vectorial observer backstepping resulted in a uniformly globally exponentially stable (UGES) output feedback control system, which could be directly applied to stationkeeping of ships and rigs. The work of Fossen and Grøvlen (1998) is, however, based on a simplified model of the environmental forces, since it is assumed that the WF motion and bias states can be neglected in the design. Aarset *et al.* (1998) have shown that these results can be extended to the general case by including a dynamic model for wave filtering and bias state estimation. It is also possible to extend this result to ships that are course-unstable (open-loop unstable in sway and yaw) thanks to the results by Robertson and Johansson (1998) and Lindegaard and Fossen (2001b).

A drawback with observer backstepping and also Kalman filter-based design techniques is that a relatively large number of parameters must be determined through experimental testing of the craft. This motivated the research of a nonlinear passivity-based observer, since passivity arguments simplify the tuning procedure significantly (Fossen and Strand, 1999b). Hence, the time needed for sea trials and tuning can be drastically reduced. The nonlinear passive observer, as opposed to a linearized or extended Kalman filter, guarantees global convergence of all estimation errors (including the bias terms) to zero. Hence, only one set of observer gains is needed to cover the whole state space. In addition, the number of observer tuning parameters is significantly reduced and the wave filter parameters are directly coupled to the dominating wave frequency. Passivity implies that the phase of the error dynamics is limited by 90 degrees, which gives excellent stability properties. Passivity theory also proved to be a new tool with respect to accurate tuning of the observer. The proposed nonlinear observer opens the way for new controller designs that are more in line with the actual structure of the physical system, for instance by using a nonlinear separation principle (Loria *et al.*, 2000).

For extensions to adaptive wave filtering, see Strand and Fossen (1999), while extensions to position mooring systems are found in Strand (1999).

#### *11.4.1 Case Study: Passive Observer for Dynamic Positioning using GNSS and Compass Measurements*

The passive observer is based on Fossen and Strand (1999b) in which the Kalman filter zero yaw rate assumption is removed. The following assumptions are, however, necessary to prove passivity:

**Assumption P1:**  $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$ . The zero-mean Gaussian white noise terms are omitted in the analysis of the observer. If they are included in the Lyapunov function analysis the error dynamics will be uniformly ultimated bounded (UUB) instead of uniform global asymptotical/exponential stable (UGAS/UGES).

**Assumption P2:**  $\mathbf{R}(y_3) = \mathbf{R}(\psi)$ , implying that  $y_3 = \psi + \psi_w \approx \psi$ . This is a good assumption since the magnitude of the wave-induced yaw disturbance  $\psi_w$  will normally be less than 5 degrees in extreme weather situations (sea state codes 5–9) and less than 1 degree during normal operation of the ship (sea state codes 0–4).

The following model properties of the inertia and damping matrices will be exploited in the passivation design:

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top > 0, \quad \dot{\mathbf{M}} = \mathbf{0}, \quad \mathbf{D} > 0$$

### System Model for Nonlinear Passive Observer

The application of Assumptions P1–P2 to (11.81)–(11.85) gives the following DP observer model:

$$\dot{\xi} = A_w \xi \quad (11.120)$$

$$\dot{\eta} = R(y_3)\nu \quad (11.121)$$

$$\dot{b} = -T^{-1}b \quad (\text{alternatively } \dot{b} = 0) \quad (11.122)$$

$$M\nu = -D\nu + R^\top(y_3)b + \tau + \tau_{\text{wind}} \quad (11.123)$$

$$y = \eta + C_w \xi \quad (11.124)$$

For notational simplicity (11.120), (11.121) and (11.124) are written in state-space form:

$$\dot{\eta}_0 = A_0 \eta_0 + B_0 R(y_3)\nu \quad (11.125)$$

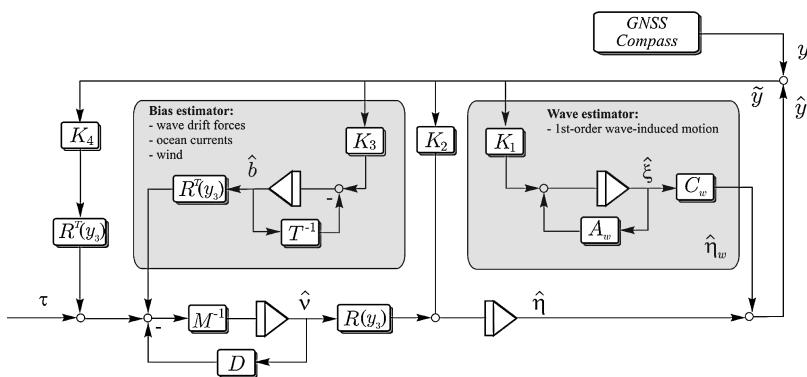
$$y = C_0 \eta_0 \quad (11.126)$$

where  $\eta_0 = [\xi^\top, \eta^\top]^\top$  and

$$A_0 = \begin{bmatrix} A_w & \mathbf{0}_{6 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 6} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix}, \quad B_0 = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{6 \times 3} \\ I_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix}, \quad C_0 = [C_w \quad I_{3 \times 3}] \quad (11.127)$$

### Observer Equations

The observer equations can be chosen to copy the dynamics (11.120)–(11.124) resulting in 15 ODEs with no covariance updates, as shown in Figure 11.8. Moreover,



**Figure 11.8** Block diagram showing the nonlinear passive DP observer.

$$\dot{\hat{\xi}} = A_w \hat{\xi} + K_1(\omega_o) \tilde{y} \quad (11.128)$$

$$\dot{\hat{\eta}} = R(y_3) \hat{v} + K_2 \tilde{y} \quad (11.129)$$

$$\dot{\hat{b}} = -T^{-1} \hat{b} + K_3 \tilde{y} \quad (\text{alternatively } \dot{\hat{b}} = K_3 \tilde{y}) \quad (11.130)$$

$$M \dot{\hat{v}} = -D \hat{v} + R^\top(y_3) \hat{b} + \tau + \tau_{\text{wind}} + R^\top(y_3) K_4 \tilde{y} \quad (11.131)$$

$$\hat{y} = \hat{\eta} + C_w \hat{\xi} \quad (11.132)$$

where  $\tilde{y} = y - \hat{y}$  is the estimation error and  $K_1(\omega_o) \in \mathbb{R}^{6 \times 3}$  and  $K_{2,3,4} \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  are observer gain matrices to be interpreted later. Notice that  $K_1(\omega_o)$  is a function of the wave spectra peak frequencies  $\omega_o = [\omega_{o1}, \omega_{o2}, \omega_{o3}]^\top$  in surge, sway and yaw.

The main difference in performance of the two bias state estimators (11.130) is that the first model includes low-pass filtering ( $T > 0$ ) instead of pure integration of the white noise term  $K_3 \tilde{y}$ . This results in *exponential stability* while application of the model  $\dot{\hat{b}} = K_3 \tilde{y}$  only results in *asymptotic stability*.

### Observer Estimation Errors

As for (11.125) and (11.126), the system (11.128), (11.129) and (11.132) is written in state-space form:

$$\dot{\hat{\eta}}_0 = A_0 \hat{\eta}_0 + B_0 R(y_3) \hat{v} + K_0(\omega_o) \tilde{y} \quad (11.133)$$

$$\hat{y} = C_0 \hat{\eta}_0 \quad (11.134)$$

where  $\hat{\eta}_0 = [\hat{\xi}^\top, \hat{\eta}^\top]^\top$  and

$$K_0(\omega_o) = \begin{bmatrix} K_1(\omega_o) \\ K_2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.135)$$

The estimation errors are defined as  $\tilde{v} = v - \hat{v}$ ,  $\tilde{b} = b - \hat{b}$  and  $\tilde{\eta}_0 = \eta_0 - \hat{\eta}_0$ . Hence, the error dynamics can be written

$$\dot{\tilde{\eta}}_0 = [A_0 - K_0(\omega_o) C_0] \tilde{\eta}_0 + B_0 R(y_3) \tilde{v} \quad (11.136)$$

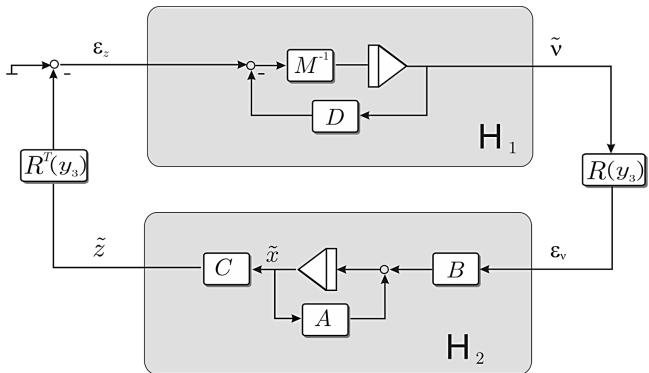
$$\dot{\tilde{b}} = -T^{-1} \tilde{b} - K_3 \tilde{y} \quad (\text{alternatively } \dot{\tilde{b}} = -K_3 \tilde{y}) \quad (11.137)$$

$$M \dot{\tilde{v}} = -D \tilde{v} + R^\top(y_3) \tilde{b} - R^\top(y_3) K_4 \tilde{y} \quad (11.138)$$

In the Lyapunov analysis of the error dynamics (11.136)–(11.138), it is possible to prove UGES for  $T > 0$  (Fossen and Strand, 1999b) since  $\dot{V}(x, t) < 0$  (negative definite). If the bias model  $\dot{b} = \mathbf{0}$  is applied, that is  $T \rightarrow \infty$ , the Lyapunov analysis results in  $\dot{V}(x, t) \leq 0$  (negative semi-definite). Since the error dynamics is nonautonomous and recall that  $y_3 = y_3(t)$  is time varying, Krasovskii–LaSalle’s theorem cannot be applied to prove UGAS. However, it is possible to prove UGAS by using Matrosov’s theorem. Technicalities with respect to the limiting case  $T \rightarrow \infty$  are omitted in this section, but the analysis for  $T > 0$  is given below.

The dynamics of the velocity estimation error (11.138) is rewritten as

$$M \dot{\tilde{v}} = -D \tilde{v} - R^\top(y_3) \tilde{z} \quad (11.139)$$



**Figure 11.9** Block diagram showing the dynamics of the position/bias and velocity estimation errors.

where

$$\tilde{z} = K_4 \tilde{y} - \tilde{b} \quad (11.140)$$

By defining a new state vector

$$\tilde{x} = \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{\eta}_0 \\ \tilde{b} \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.141)$$

Equations (11.136), (11.137) and (11.140) can be written in compact form as

$$\dot{\tilde{x}} = A \tilde{x} + B R(y_3) \tilde{v} \quad (11.142)$$

$$\tilde{z} = C \tilde{x} \quad (11.143)$$

where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} A_0 - K_0(\omega_o)C_0 & \mathbf{0}_{9 \times 9} \\ -K_3 C_0 & -T^{-1} \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} B_0 \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix}, \quad C = [K_4 C_0 \quad I_{3 \times 3}] \quad (11.144)$$

In Figure 11.9 the error signals  $\epsilon_z$  and  $\epsilon_v$  are defined according to

$$\epsilon_z := -R^\top(y_3) \tilde{z} \quad (11.145)$$

$$\epsilon_v := R(y_3) \tilde{v} \quad (11.146)$$

Thus, the observer error system can be viewed as two linear blocks  $H_1$  and  $H_2$ , interconnected through the bounded transformation matrix  $R(y_3)$ ; that is

$$H_1 : \{M \dot{\tilde{v}} = -D \tilde{v} + \epsilon_z\} \quad (11.147)$$

$$H_2 : \begin{cases} \dot{\tilde{x}} = A \tilde{x} + B \epsilon_v \\ \tilde{z} = C \tilde{x} \end{cases} \quad (11.148)$$

### Stability Analysis for the Passive Observer

Based on the physical properties of the ship dynamics, the following statement can be made:

**Proposition 11.1 (Strictly Passive Velocity Error Dynamics)**

The mapping  $\mathcal{H}_1$  is state strictly passive.

**Proof.** Let,

$$S_1 = \frac{1}{2} \tilde{\mathbf{v}}^\top \mathbf{M} \tilde{\mathbf{v}} \quad (11.149)$$

be a positive definite storage function. Time differentiation of  $S_1$  along the trajectories of  $\tilde{\mathbf{v}}$  yields

$$\dot{S}_1 = -\frac{1}{2} \tilde{\mathbf{v}}^\top (\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{D}^\top) \tilde{\mathbf{v}} - \tilde{\mathbf{z}}^\top \mathbf{R}(y_3) \tilde{\mathbf{v}} \quad (11.150)$$

Using the fact that  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_z = -\mathbf{R}^\top(y_3)\tilde{\mathbf{z}}$ , yields

$$\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_z^\top \tilde{\mathbf{v}} = \dot{S}_1 + \frac{1}{2} \tilde{\mathbf{v}}^\top (\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{D}^\top) \tilde{\mathbf{v}} \quad (11.151)$$

Hence,

$$\int_{t_0}^t \boldsymbol{\epsilon}_z^\top(\tau) \tilde{\mathbf{v}}(\tau) d\tau \geq \alpha \tilde{\mathbf{v}}^\top \tilde{\mathbf{v}} + \beta \quad (11.152)$$

where  $\alpha = \frac{1}{2}\lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{M})$  is a positive constant and

$$\beta = \frac{1}{2} \int_{t_0}^t \tilde{\mathbf{v}}^\top (\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{D}^\top) \tilde{\mathbf{v}} d\tau \geq 0 \quad (11.153)$$

is the dissipated energy due to hydrodynamic damping. Thus, (11.152) proves that  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_z \mapsto \tilde{\mathbf{v}}$  or the block  $H_1$  is state strictly passive.

For definitions on passivity see, for instance, Sepulchre *et al.* (1997), Ortega *et al.* (1998) or Lozano *et al.* (2000).

In order to show that the interconnected system in Figure 11.9 is passive, one of the blocks must be passive while the other block must be strictly passive (Lozano *et al.*, 2000). Since the mapping  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_z \mapsto \tilde{\mathbf{v}}$  is strictly passive (block  $H_1$ ), post-multiplication with the bounded transformation matrix  $\mathbf{R}(y_3)$  and pre-multiplication by its transpose will not affect the passivity properties. Hence, it only remains to show that the the mapping  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_v \mapsto \tilde{\mathbf{z}}$  (block  $H_2$ ) is *passive*. This can be done by applying the *Kalman–Yakubovich–Popov (KYP) lemma*.

**Lemma 11.1 (Kalman–Yakubovich–Popov)**

Let  $\mathbf{Z}(s) = \mathbf{C}(s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1}\mathbf{B}$  be an  $m \times m$  transfer function matrix, where  $\mathbf{A}$  is Hurwitz,  $(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B})$  is controllable and  $(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{C})$  is observable. Then  $\mathbf{Z}(s)$  is strictly positive real (SPR) if and only if there exist positive definite matrices  $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{P}^\top$  and  $\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{Q}^\top$  such that

$$\mathbf{PA} + \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{P} = -\mathbf{Q} \quad (11.154)$$

$$\mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{C} \quad (11.155)$$

**Proof.** See Yakubovich (1973) or Khalil (2002).

**Theorem 11.1 (Passive Observer Error Dynamics)**

The interconnected system (11.147) and (11.148) is passive if the observer gain matrices  $\mathbf{K}_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 4$ ) are chosen such that (11.148) satisfies the KYP lemma.

**Proof.** Since it is established that  $H_1$  is strictly passive and  $H_2$ , which is given by the matrices  $(A, B, C)$ , can be made SPR by choosing the gain matrices  $K_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 4$ ) according to the KYP lemma, the interconnected system (11.147) and (11.148) is passive (Fossen and Strand, 1999b).

### Determination of the Observer Gains

In practice it is easy to find a set of gain matrices  $\mathbf{K}_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 4$ ) satisfying the KYP lemma. Notice that the mapping  $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_v \mapsto \tilde{\mathbf{z}}$  (block  $H_2$ ) describes three decoupled systems in surge, sway and yaw. This suggests that the observer gain matrices should have a diagonal structure:

$$\mathbf{K}_1(\omega_o) = \begin{bmatrix} \text{diag}\{K_{11}(\omega_{o1}), K_{12}(\omega_{o2}), K_{13}(\omega_{o3})\} \\ \text{diag}\{K_{14}(\omega_{o1}), K_{15}(\omega_{o2}), K_{16}(\omega_{o3})\} \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.156)$$

$$\mathbf{K}_2 = \text{diag}\{K_{21}, K_{22}, K_{23}\} \quad (11.157)$$

$$\mathbf{K}_3 = \text{diag}\{K_{31}, K_{32}, K_{33}\} \quad (11.158)$$

$$\mathbf{K}_4 = \text{diag}\{K_{41}, K_{42}, K_{43}\} \quad (11.159)$$

Consequently, three decoupled transfer functions can be found:

$$\mathbf{H}(s) = \text{diag}\{h_1(s), h_2(s), h_3(s)\} \quad (11.160)$$

such that

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{\mathbf{z}}(s) &= \mathbf{H}(s)\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_v(s) \\ &= \mathbf{H}_0(s)\mathbf{H}_B(s)\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_v(s) \end{aligned} \quad (11.161)$$

where

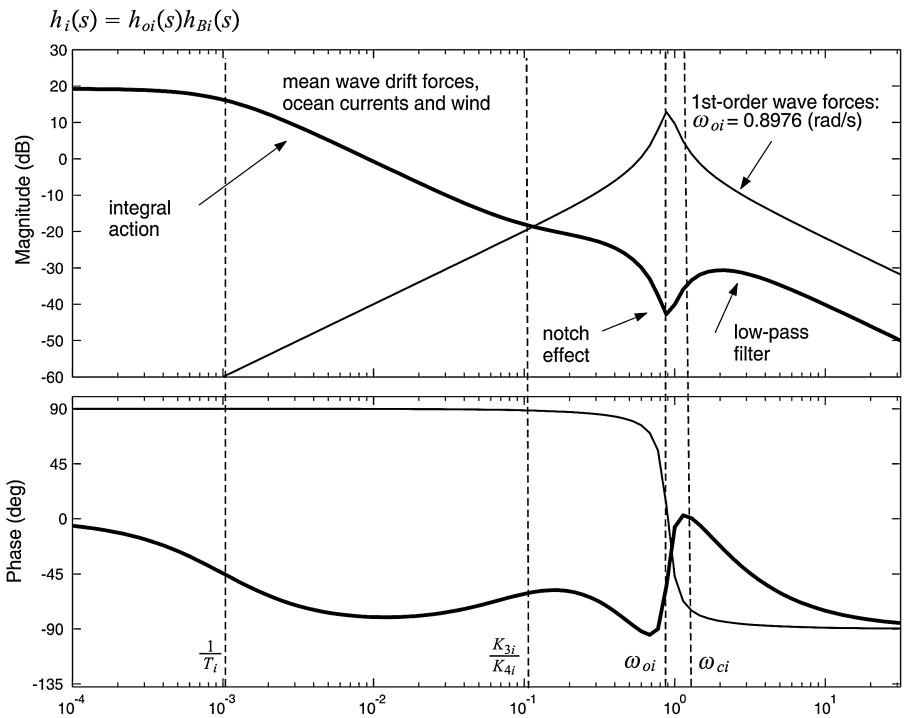
$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{H}_0(s) &= \mathbf{C}_0[s\mathbf{I} + \mathbf{A}_0 - \mathbf{K}_0(\omega_0)\mathbf{C}_0]^{-1}\mathbf{B}_0 \\ \mathbf{H}_B(s) &= \mathbf{K}_4 + (s\mathbf{I} + \mathbf{T}^{-1})^{-1}\mathbf{K}_3 \end{aligned}$$

The diagonal structure of  $\mathbf{H}(s)$  is illustrated in Figure 11.10. The transfer functions  $h_{oi}(s)$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 3$ ) and  $h_{Bi}(s)$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 3$ ) corresponding to  $\mathbf{H}_0(s)$  and  $\mathbf{H}_B(s)$ , respectively, become

$$h_{oi}(s) = \frac{s^2 + 2\lambda_i\omega_{oi}s + \omega_{oi}^2}{s^3 + (K_{1(i+3)} + K_{2i} + 2\lambda_i\omega_{oi})s^2 + (\omega_{oi}^2 + 2\lambda_i\omega_{oi}K_{2i} - K_{1i}\omega_{oi}^2)s + \omega_{oi}^2K_{2i}} \quad (11.162)$$

$$\begin{aligned} h_{Bi}(s) &= K_{4i} \frac{s + \left(\frac{1}{T_i} + \frac{K_{3i}}{K_{4i}}\right)}{s + \frac{1}{T_i}} \\ &\stackrel{T_i \gg 1}{\approx} K_{4i} \frac{s + \frac{K_{3i}}{K_{4i}}}{s + \frac{1}{T_i}} \end{aligned} \quad (11.163)$$

where  $\omega_{oi}$  is the wave spectrum peak frequency,  $T_i$  is defined in (11.87) and  $\lambda_i$  is the relative damping ratio of the wave spectrum. In order to obtain the desired notch effect (wave filtering) of the observer, the



**Figure 11.10** Bode plot showing the transfer function  $h_i(s)$  in surge ( $i = 1$ ) when  $1/T_i \ll K_{3i}/K_{4i} < \omega_{oi} < \omega_{ci}$ ; see ExPassiveObs.m in the MSS toolbox.

desired shape of  $h_{oi}(s)$  is specified as

$$h_{di}(s) = \frac{s^2 + 2\lambda_i\omega_{oi}s + \omega_{oi}^2}{(s^2 + 2\zeta_{ni}\omega_{oi}s + \omega_{oi}^2)(s + \omega_{ci})} \quad (11.164)$$

where  $\zeta_{ni} > \lambda_i$  determines the notch and  $\omega_{ci} > \omega_{oi}$  is the filter cutoff frequency. Typically  $\zeta_{ni} = 1.0$  and  $\lambda_i = 0.1$ . Equating (11.162) and (11.164) yields the following formulae for the filter gains in  $\mathbf{K}_1(\omega_o)$  and  $\mathbf{K}_2$ :

$$K_{1i}(\omega_{oi}) = -2(\zeta_{ni} - \lambda_i) \frac{\omega_{ci}}{\omega_{oi}} \quad (11.165)$$

$$K_{1(i+3)}(\omega_{oi}) = 2\omega_{oi}(\zeta_{ni} - \lambda_i) \quad (11.166)$$

$$K_{2i} = \omega_{ci} \quad (11.167)$$

Notice that the filter gains can be gain-scheduled with respect to the dominating wave frequencies  $\omega_{oi}$  if desired. In Figure 11.10 the transfer function  $h_i(s) = h_{Bi}(s)h_{oi}(s)$  is illustrated when all filter gains are properly selected. It is important that the three decoupled transfer functions  $h_i(s)$  all have a phase greater

than  $-90^\circ$  in order to meet the SPR requirement. It turns out that the KYP lemma and therefore the SPR requirement can easily be satisfied if the following tuning rules for  $T_i$ ,  $K_{3i}$  and  $K_{4i}$  are applied:

$$1/T_i \ll K_{3i}/K_{4i} < \omega_{oi} < \omega_{ci} \quad (i = 1, \dots, 3) \quad (11.168)$$

Here  $\omega_{oi}$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 3$ ) are the dominating wave frequencies and  $T_i \gg 1$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 3$ ) are the bias time constants used to specify the limited integral effect in the bias estimator.

### Uniform Global Exponential Stability

The passivity analysis mainly serves as a tool to determine the observer gains. In order to ensure that all estimation errors converge exponentially to zero the following theorem is applied.

#### **Theorem 11.2 (Uniformly Globally Exponentially Stable Observer Error Dynamics)**

*Under Assumptions P1–P2 the nonlinear observer given by (11.128)–(11.132) is uniformly globally exponentially stable.*

**Proof.** Consider the following Lyapunov function candidate:

$$V = \tilde{v}^\top M \tilde{v} + \tilde{x}^\top P \tilde{x} \quad (11.169)$$

Differentiation of  $V$  along the trajectories of  $\tilde{v}$  and  $\tilde{x}$  and application of Assumptions P1–P2 yields

$$\dot{V} = -\tilde{v}^\top (D + D^\top) \tilde{v} + \tilde{x}^\top (PA + A^\top P) \tilde{x} + 2\tilde{v}^\top R^\top(y_3)B^\top P \tilde{x} - 2\tilde{v}^\top R^\top(y_3)\tilde{z} \quad (11.170)$$

Application of the KYP lemma, that is  $B^\top P \tilde{x} = C \tilde{x} = \tilde{z}$ , to (11.170) yields

$$\dot{V} = -\tilde{v}^\top (D + D^\top) \tilde{v} - \tilde{x}^\top Q \tilde{x} < 0, \quad \forall \tilde{x} \neq 0, \tilde{v} \neq 0 \quad (11.171)$$

Hence,  $\tilde{v}$  and  $\tilde{x} = [\tilde{\xi}^\top, \tilde{\eta}^\top, \tilde{b}^\top]^\top$  converge exponentially to zero.

### Computer Simulations and Experimental Results

A combination of computer simulations and full-scale experiments have been used to evaluate the performance and robustness of the nonlinear passive observer.

#### **Example 11.6 (Passive Nonlinear DP Observer)**

*The case studies are based on the following models of the ship–bias–wave system (Fossen and Strand, 1999b):*

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} 5.3122 \times 10^6 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 8.2831 \times 10^6 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3.7454 \times 10^9 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.172)$$

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 5.0242 \times 10^4 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2.7229 \times 10^5 & -4.3933 \times 10^6 \\ 0 & -4.3933 \times 10^6 & 4.1894 \times 10^8 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.173)$$

with the coordinate system located in the CG. In the experiments the bias time constants were chosen as

$$\mathbf{T} = \text{diag}\{1000, 1000, 1000\} \quad (11.174)$$

The wave model parameters were chosen as  $\lambda_i = 0.1$  and  $\omega_{oi} = 0.8976$  rad/s, corresponding to a wave period of 7.0 s in surge, sway and yaw. The notch filter parameters were chosen as  $\xi_{ni} = 1.0$  and  $\omega_{ci} = 1.2255\omega_{oi} = 1.1$  rad/s. From (11.165)–(11.167) we get (see the MSS toolbox script ExPassiveObs.m)

$$\mathbf{K}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -\text{diag}\{2.2059, 2.2059, 2.2059\} \\ \text{diag}\{1.6157, 1.6157, 1.6157\} \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.175)$$

$$\mathbf{K}_2 = \text{diag}\{1.1, 1.1, 1.1\} \quad (11.176)$$

The loop transfer function  $h_{oi}(s) = h_{Bi}(s)h_{oi}(s)$  for

$$\mathbf{K}_3 = 0.1\mathbf{K}_4 \quad (11.177)$$

$$\mathbf{K}_4 = \text{diag}\{0.1, 0.1, 0.01\} \quad (11.178)$$

is plotted in Figure 11.10.

Both the simulation study and the full-scale experiment were performed with a measurement frequency of 1 Hz. The simulation study was performed with nonzero noise terms  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\mathbf{w}$  even though these terms were assumed to be zero in the Lyapunov analysis. This was done to demonstrate the excellent performance of the observer in the presence of stochastic noise.

The results of the computer simulations are shown in Figures 11.11–11.12. The plots illustrate that all state estimates converge to their true values. In Figures 11.13–11.14 full-scale experimental results with the same observer are reported. Again, excellent convergence and performance in surge, sway and yaw are observed. In the full-scale experiment it was not possible to verify that the velocity estimates converged to their true values; see the lower plots in Figure 11.14. The main reason for this was that only GPS position measurements were available. However, simulation studies indicate that the velocity estimates converge to their true values as well.

#### 11.4.2 Case Study: Passive Observer for Heading Autopilots using only Compass Measurements

The DP observer in Section 11.4.1 can be reduced to 1 DOF and used in autopilot designs. For this purpose, the autopilot model in Section 11.3.5 is considered. In the 1 DOF case, the compass measurement is taken as the sum of the LF and WF signals:

$$y = \psi + \psi_w \quad (11.179)$$

The corresponding system model is

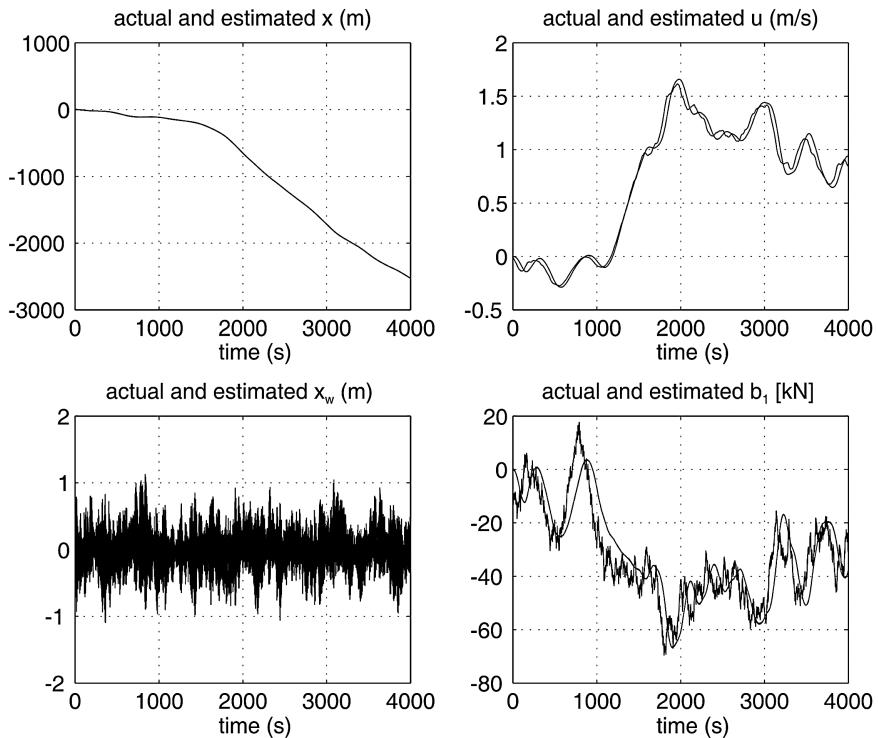
$$\dot{\xi}_w = \psi_w \quad (11.180)$$

$$\dot{\psi}_w = -\omega_0^2 \xi_w - 2\lambda\omega_0 \psi_w \quad (11.181)$$

$$\dot{\psi} = r \quad (11.182)$$

$$\dot{r} = -\frac{1}{T}r + \frac{1}{m}(\tau_{\text{wind}} + \tau_N) + b \quad (11.183)$$

$$b = -\frac{1}{T_b}b \quad (11.184)$$



**Figure 11.11** Simulation study: LF and WF position, velocity, bias and their estimates in surge.

where  $\lambda$  and  $\omega_0$  are the relative damping ratio and peak frequency of the wave spectrum, respectively. The constant  $m = I_z - N_r$  is introduced for convenience such that the rudder angle  $\delta$  generates a yaw moment  $\tau_N$  given by

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_N &= m \frac{K}{T} \delta \\ &= N_\delta \delta\end{aligned}\quad (11.185)$$

while  $\tau_{\text{wind}}$  represents an optional term for wind feedforward. Notice that neither the yaw rate  $r$  nor the wave states  $\xi_w$  and  $\psi_w$  are measured. The resulting state-space model is

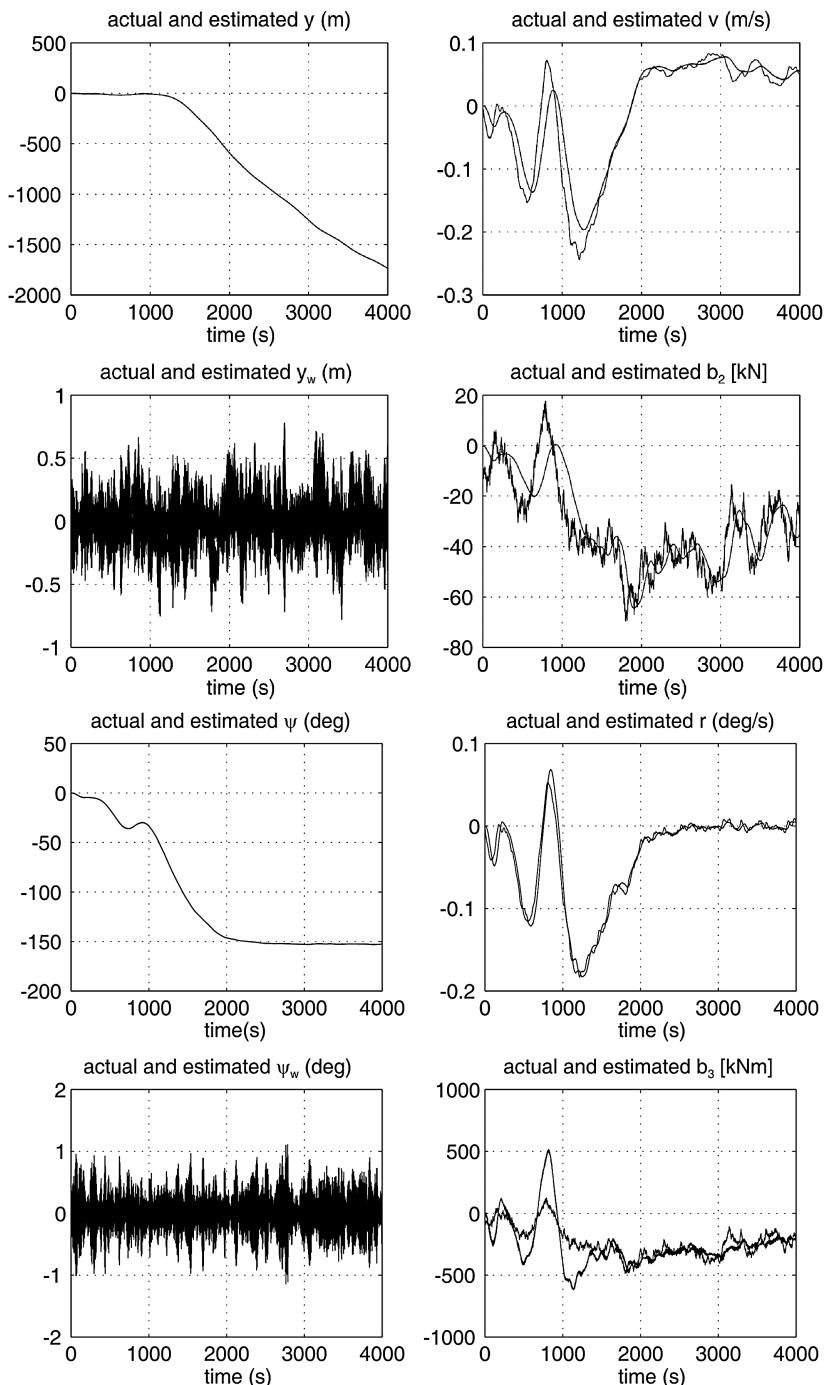
$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}u \quad (11.186)$$

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{h}^\top \mathbf{x} \quad (11.187)$$

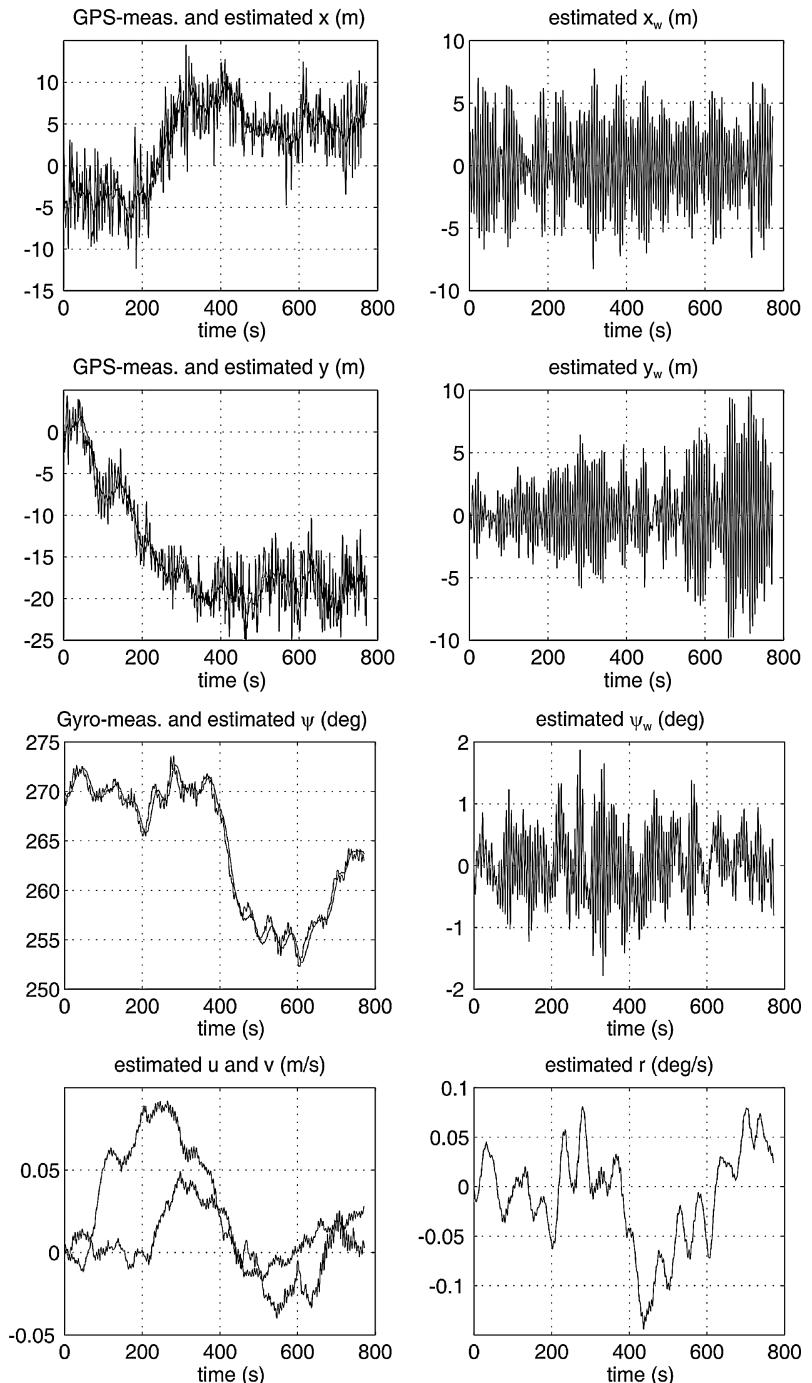
where  $\mathbf{x} = [\xi_w, \psi_w, \psi, r, b]^\top$ ,  $u = \tau_{\text{wind}} + \tau_N$  and

$$\mathbf{A} = \left[ \begin{array}{cc|ccc} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -\omega_0^2 & -2\lambda\omega_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1/T & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1/T_b \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{b} = \left[ \begin{array}{c} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1/m \\ 0 \end{array} \right] \quad (11.188)$$

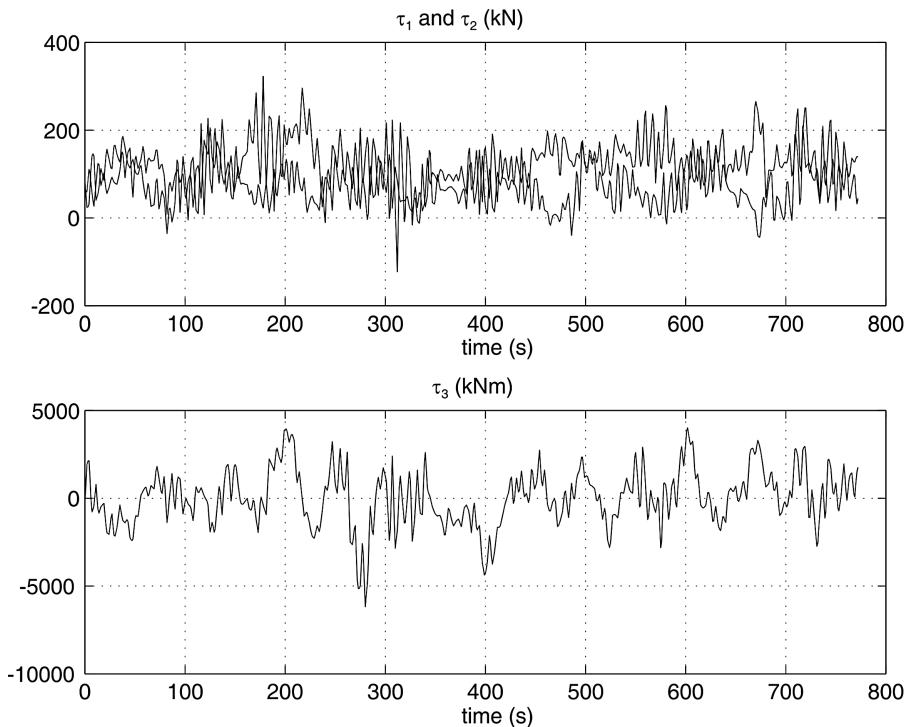
$$\mathbf{h}^\top = [0, 1, 1, 0, 0] \quad (11.189)$$



**Figure 11.12** Simulation study: LF and WF position, velocity, bias and their estimates in sway and yaw.



**Figure 11.13** Experimental data. Three upper plots: actual position (LF+WF) with estimates of the LF and WF positions in surge, sway and yaw. Lower plots: estimates of the LF velocities.



**Figure 11.14** Experimental data: control inputs in surge, sway and yaw.

The passive observer copying the dynamics (11.186) and (11.187) is

$$\dot{\hat{x}} = A\hat{x} + bu + k(y - h^\top \hat{x}) \quad (11.190)$$

$$y = h^\top x \quad (11.191)$$

Expanding this expression gives

$$\dot{\hat{\xi}}_w = \hat{\psi}_w + K_1 \varepsilon \quad (11.192)$$

$$\dot{\hat{\psi}}_w = -\omega_0^2 \hat{\xi}_w - 2\lambda\omega_0 \hat{\psi}_w + K_2 \varepsilon \quad (11.193)$$

$$\dot{\hat{r}} = \hat{r} + K_3 \varepsilon \quad (11.194)$$

$$\dot{\hat{b}} = -\frac{1}{T} \hat{r} + \frac{1}{m} (\tau_{\text{wind}} + \tau_N) + \hat{b} + K_4 \varepsilon \quad (11.195)$$

$$\dot{\hat{b}} = -\frac{1}{T_b} \hat{b} + K_5 \varepsilon \quad (11.196)$$

where  $\varepsilon = y - \hat{y}$  is the estimation error. The observer gains  $K_1$ ,  $K_2$ ,  $K_3$ ,  $K_4$  and  $K_5$  can be computed by noticing that the observer error dynamics can be reformulated as two subsystems for yaw angle/rudder bias and yaw rate. These systems form a *passive interconnection* if the observer gains are chosen according to

$$\mathbf{k} = \begin{bmatrix} -2\omega_0(1-\lambda)/\omega_c \\ 2\omega_0(1-\lambda) \\ \omega_c \\ K_4 \\ K_5 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.197)$$

where  $\omega_c > \omega_0$  is the filter cutoff frequency and the remaining gains must satisfy

$$0 < 1/T_b < K_5/K_4 < \omega_0 < \omega_c \quad (11.198)$$

The design problem is now reduced to choosing  $K_4$  and  $K_5$  such that the ratio  $K_5/K_4$  satisfies the passive gain constraint (11.198).

### Matlab

The passive wave filter can be simulated using the Simulink block:

passive autopilot wave filter 2

in the MSS toolbox (see Example 11.7).

A more detailed analysis of the passive observer is done in Section 11.4.1, which discusses applications to ship positioning in 3 DOF.

#### **Example 11.7 (Passive Wave Filtering)**

Consider the Mariner class cargo ship with  $K = 0.185 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ,  $T = T_1 + T_2 - T_3 = 107.3 \text{ s}$  and input  $\tau_N/m = (K/T)\delta$ , where  $\delta$  is the rudder angle (Chislett and Strøm-Tøjsen, 1965a). The bias time constant is chosen to be rather large, for instance  $T_b = 100 \text{ s}$ . The wave response model is modeled by a linear approximation to the JONSWAP spectrum with  $\lambda = 0.1$  and  $\omega_0 = 1.2 \text{ rad/s}$  (see Section 8.2.6). Hence, (11.34)–(11.35) become

$$\mathbf{A} = \left[ \begin{array}{cc|ccc} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1.44 & -0.24 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -0.0093 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -0.01 \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0.0017 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.199)$$

$$\mathbf{E} = \left[ \begin{array}{c|cc} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0.24\sigma & 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right], \quad \mathbf{h}^\top = [0, 1, 1, 0, 0] \quad (11.200)$$

where  $\sigma > 0$  reflects the sea state. Using passivity as a tool for filter design with cutoff frequency  $\omega_c = 1.1 \omega_0$  yields

$$\mathbf{k} = \begin{bmatrix} K_1 \\ K_2 \\ \hline K_3 \\ K_4 \\ K_5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -2\omega_0(1-\lambda)/\omega_c \\ 2\omega_0(1-\lambda) \\ \hline \omega_c \\ K_4 \\ K_5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1.64 \\ 1.80 \omega_0 \\ \hline 1.10 \omega_0 \\ K_4 \\ K_5 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.201)$$

This clearly shows that the gains should be adjusted with varying  $\omega_0$ . Choosing  $K_4 = 0.1$  and  $K_5 = 0.01$  such that  $K_5/K_4 = 0.1$  yields the transfer functions shown later in Figure 11.16. Notice that the notch effect at  $\omega_0$  for  $h_3(s)$  and  $h_4(s)$  represents the state estimates  $\hat{\psi}$  and  $\hat{r}$ . We also see that high-frequency motion components above  $\omega_c$  are low-pass filtered. Finally, the transfer function  $h_2(s)$  representing reconstruction of the WF motion  $\hat{\psi}_w$  filters out signals on the outside of the wave response spectrum, while signals close to  $\omega_0$  pass through the filter with unity gain, that is 0 dB. The poles of the error dynamics are

$$\begin{aligned} p_1 &= -0.7248 + 0.4388i \\ p_2 &= -0.7248 - 0.4388i \\ p_3 &= -2.1762 \\ p_4 &= -0.1037 \\ p_5 &= -0.0098 \end{aligned}$$

The time series for  $\sigma = 6.25$  are shown in Figure 11.15.

### Wave Filter Frequency Analysis

Consider the state estimator

$$\dot{\hat{x}} = \mathbf{A}\hat{x} + \mathbf{b}u + \mathbf{k}(y - \mathbf{h}^\top \hat{x}) \quad (11.202)$$

It is then straightforward to show that

$$\hat{x}(s) = (s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{k}\mathbf{h}^\top)^{-1}(\mathbf{k}y(s) + \mathbf{b}u(s)) \quad (11.203)$$

Assume that  $u(s) = 0$  (no feedback) such that

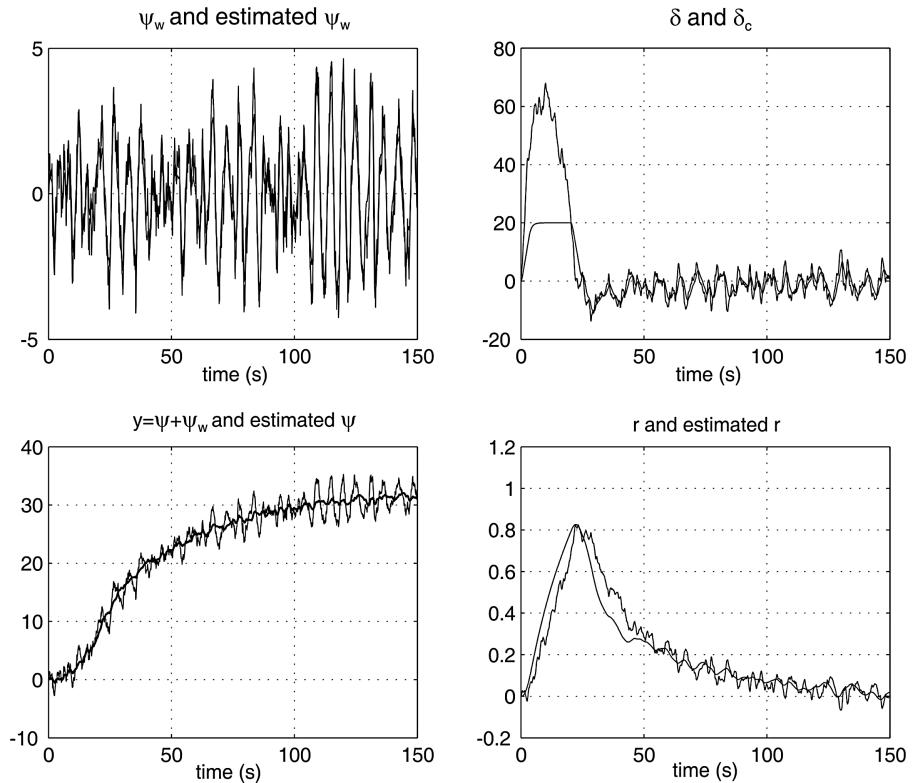
$$\mathbf{h}(s) = [h_1, h_2, h_3, h_4, h_5]^\top = (s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{k}\mathbf{h}^\top)^{-1}\mathbf{k} \quad (11.204)$$

The states of interest are

$$\hat{\psi}_w(s) = h_2(s)y(s) \quad (11.205)$$

$$\hat{\psi}(s) = h_3(s)y(s) \quad (11.206)$$

$$\hat{r}(s) = h_4(s)y(s) \quad (11.207)$$



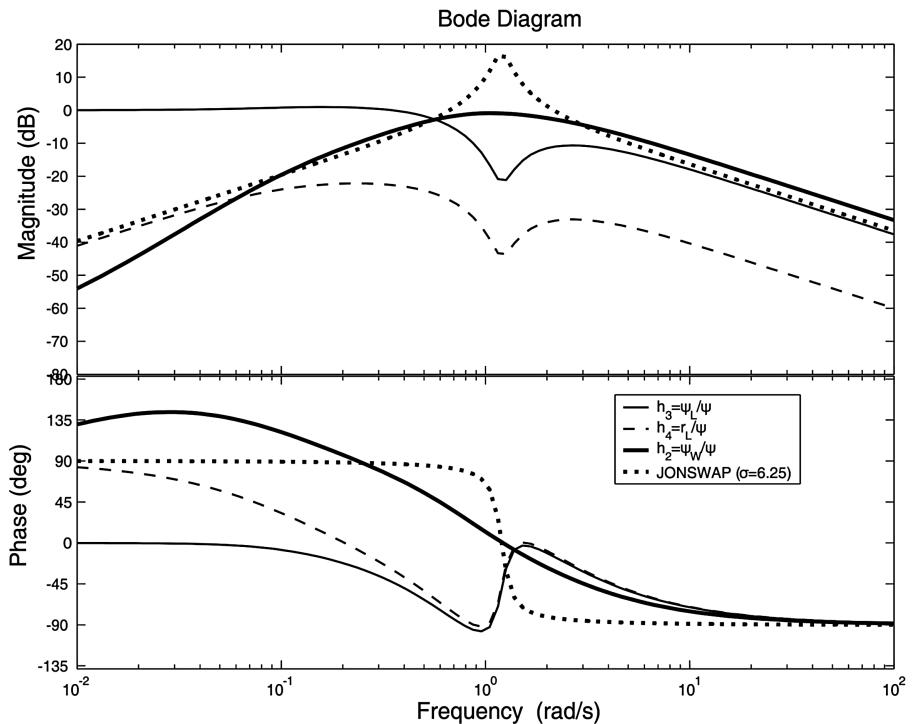
**Figure 11.15** Time series showing the performance of the passive wave filter.

where  $h_3(s)$  represents a notch filter with a low-pass filter in cascade:

$$h_3(s) = h_{\text{notch}}(s) \cdot h_{\text{low pass}}(s) \quad (11.208)$$

The filter  $h_4(s)$  also possesses notch filtering in cascade with a second filter representing a limited differentiator for generation of  $\hat{r}(s)$  from  $y(s)$ . Notice that  $h_2(s)$  is close to 1 (0 dB) in a band around the wave spectrum, while lower and higher frequencies are suppressed in order to reconstruct  $\psi_w(s)$  from  $y(s)$ . This can be seen from the Bode plot in Figure 11.16. These results have also been theoretically verified by Grimble (1978). In this work Grimble showed that the *stationary Kalman filter* for the ship positioning problem will be approximately equivalent to a notch filter in cascade with a second filter, typically a low-pass filter.

When including the feedback term  $u(s)$  in the analysis, it is well known that application of an observer is superior to notch and low-pass filtering in cascade, since the observer uses the input  $u(s)$  for prediction in addition to filtering the measured output  $y(s)$ . In fact, this input signal reduces the problems associated with additional phase lag in the filtered signal, which is the main problem with most standard filters (low-pass, high-pass and notch). Simulation results verifying these observations have been documented by Grimble (1978).



**Figure 11.16** Bode plot showing the wave filter transfer functions and the JONSWAP spectrum.

#### 11.4.3 Case Study: Passive Observer for Heading Autopilots using both Compass and Rate Measurements

In this section the design of the previous section is modified to include a rate gyro in addition to the compass. This is advantageous since the gyro can be integrated with the compass in an optimal manner, resulting in less variance and better accuracy of the state estimates. One simple way to do this is to treat the gyro measurements as an input to the system model by writing the yaw dynamics according to

$$\dot{\psi} = u_{\text{gyro}} + b \quad (11.209)$$

where  $b$  denotes the gyro bias and  $u_{\text{gyro}}$  is the *rate gyro measurement*. The WF model is similar to (11.180)–(11.181). This model will give proper wave filtering of the state  $\psi$ . However, the estimate of  $r$  is not wave filtered, since this signal is taken directly from the gyro measurement  $u_{\text{gyro}}$ . This can be improved by filtering  $u_{\text{gyro}}$  with a notch filter  $h_{\text{notch}}(s)$  and a low-pass filter  $h_{\text{lp}}(s)$  to the cost of some phase lag:

$$u_f = h_{\text{notch}}(s) h_{\text{lp}}(s) u_{\text{gyro}} \quad (11.210)$$

The observer equations become

$$\dot{\hat{\xi}}_w = \hat{\psi}_w + K_1 \varepsilon \quad (11.211)$$

$$\dot{\hat{\psi}}_w = -\omega_0^2 \hat{\xi}_w - 2\lambda \omega_0 \hat{\psi}_w + K_2 \varepsilon \quad (11.212)$$

$$\dot{\hat{\psi}} = u_f + \hat{b} + K_3 \varepsilon \quad (11.213)$$

$$\dot{\hat{b}} = -\frac{1}{T_b} \hat{b} + K_4 \varepsilon \quad (11.214)$$

where  $\varepsilon = y - \hat{\psi} - \hat{\psi}_w$  and  $T_b \gg 0$ . Notice that the gyro bias must be estimated online since it will vary with temperature and possible scale factor/misalignment errors when mounted onboard the ship. This is a slowly varying process so the gain  $K_4$  can be chosen quite small, reflecting a large bias time constant. If passivity-based pole placement (11.197) is used,  $K_1$ ,  $K_2$  and  $K_3$  become

$$K_1 = -2 \frac{\omega_0}{\omega_c} (1 - \lambda), \quad K_2 = 2\omega_0(1 - \lambda), \quad K_3 = \omega_c \quad (11.215)$$

Alternatively, the KF algorithm can be used to compute the gains.

### Matlab

The observer with compass and rate measurements can be simulated using the Simulink block:

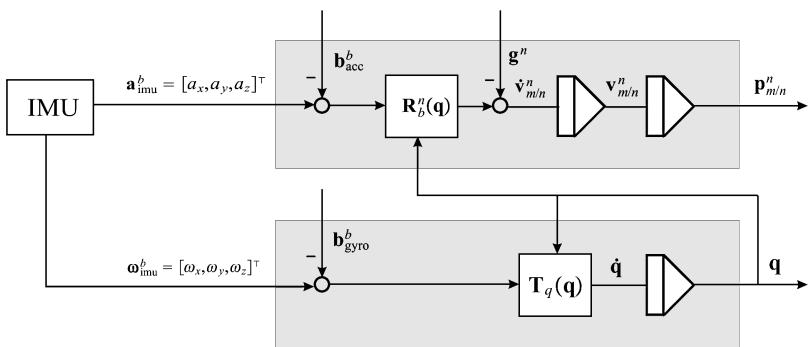
passive autopilot wave filter 1

in the MSS toolbox.

Other techniques for the integration of compass and rate measurements are described in Lindegaard (2003).

## 11.5 Integration Filters for IMU and Global Navigation Satellite Systems

An inertial measurement unit (IMU) can be integrated with a satellite navigation system in a state observer to obtain estimates of generalized position and velocity in 6 DOFs. The measurements available from a typical IMU are three-axes rate gyros, accelerometers and magnetometers. A stand alone IMU solution, where acceleration measurements are integrated twice and gyro outputs are integrated once to obtain positions and attitude, respectively, will drift due to sensor biases, misalignments and temperature variations (see Figure 11.17). Hence, an estimator providing feedback and compensation of bias drift terms is needed. The kinematic equations (strapdown equations) which are integrated numerically in conjunction with an IMU constitutes an inertial navigation system (INS). The INS drift can be removed by GNSS/INS integration in a state observer. The 6 DOF solution for drift compensation requires that the coupled observers for linear and angular velocity estimation are constructed while the special case where only the 3 DOF rotation dynamics is considered is referred to as an attitude and heading reference system (AHRS).



**Figure 11.17** The principle for integration of IMU sensor data. The position and quaternion outputs will drift due to the bias terms.

The position and velocity accuracies will mainly depend on the GNSS quality while acceleration and attitude depend on the quality of the accelerometers, gyros and magnetometers. If a low-cost IMU is used, the position and attitude estimates will drift rapidly during GNSS shortages while a more expensive unit will have better stand alone capabilities. Construction of integrated GNSS/INS navigation systems, their performance and stand alone capabilities are described more closely in Farrell and Barth (1998), Titterton and Weston (1997) and Grewal *et al.* (2001), to mention only some. Strapdown inertial navigation systems are usually designed using the EKF. However, a nonlinear observer avoiding the Riccati equations is presented by Vik and Fossen (2001).

The goal of this section is to present low-cost IMU/GNSS integration techniques for marine craft navigation by neglecting the Earth rotation and assuming that the GNSS signals are available all the time. Consequently, the *North-East-Down* reference frame  $\{n\}$  is assumed to be the inertial reference frame even though the Earth is moving relatively to a star fixed reference frame. This is, indeed, a good approximation for a marine craft navigating on the surface of the Earth. The solutions presented here are not intended for INS stand alone applications or cases with GNSS failure.

## IMU Measurements

Today inertial measurement technology is available for commercial users thanks to a significant reduction in price during the last decades. As a consequence of this, low-cost inertial sensors can be integrated with a satellite navigation system using a conventional Kalman filter or a nonlinear state observer; see Farrell and Barth (1998), Titterton and Weston (1997), Grewal *et al.* (2001) and Vik and Fossen (2001). The key components of the IMU are:

- **Gyrosopes:** The classic gyro is a spinning wheel that utilizes conservation of momentum to detect rotation, and belongs naturally in a gimballed system. For strapdown applications, optical gyros such as ring laser gyros (RLG) and fiber optic gyros (FOG) have been used for some time, and are also expected to be the standard for high accuracy strapdown inertial systems for the foreseeable future. For low and medium cost applications, gyros based on micro-electric-mechanical systems (MEMSs) are expected to be dominant (Barbour and Schmidt, 1998).
- **Accelerometers:** There are several different types of accelerometer. Two of these are *mechanical* and *vibratory accelerometers*. The mechanical accelerometer can be a *pendulum*, which in its simplest form is based on Newton's second law of motion:

$$F = ma$$

A force  $F$  acting on a body of mass  $m$  causes the body to accelerate with respect to inertial space. When the case of the instrument is subjected to an acceleration along its sensitive axis, the proof mass tends to resist the change in movement due to its own inertia. As a result, the mass is displaced with respect to the case. Under steady-state conditions the force acting on the mass will be balanced by the tension of the spring. The extension of the spring then provides a measure of the force, which is proportional to the acceleration.

The *vibratory accelerometers* are usually based on measurement of frequency shifts due to increased or decreased tension in a string. The operation is similar to that of a violin. When a violin string is tightened, the frequency goes up. Similarly, when the accelerometer proof mass attached to a quartz beam is loaded, the frequency of the quartz beam increases. The difference in frequency is measured, and is proportional to the applied acceleration. In addition to quartz technology, vibrating beam accelerometers using silicon are also being developed.

The inertial sensors are mounted onboard the craft in a body-fixed coordinate system  $\{m\}$  located at  $\mathbf{r}_m^b := \mathbf{r}_{m/b}^b = [x_m, y_m, z_m]^\top$  with respect to the  $\{b\}$ -frame coordinate origin CO. This is referred to as a strapdown system because the sensors are strapped to the craft and a lightweight digital computer is used to perform computations. Thus the need for a mechanical gimbal system is eliminated. Instead of transforming the IMU measurements to the coordinate origin of  $\{b\}$ , the state estimator is formulated in  $\{m\}$  and the estimated states are transformed to  $\{b\}$  using the lever arm given by  $\mathbf{r}_m^b$ . The tool for this is the transformation matrix in Section 7.5.4. The estimated velocity vector  $\hat{\mathbf{v}}_m = [\hat{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^b]^\top, (\hat{\omega}_{m/n}^b)^\top]^\top$  can be transformed to  $\{b\}$  to obtain  $\hat{\mathbf{v}}$  by using the following transformation:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{v}}_{b/n}^b \\ \hat{\omega}_{b/n}^b \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{H}^{-1}(\mathbf{r}_m^b) \begin{bmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^b \\ \hat{\omega}_{m/n}^b \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.216)$$

⇓

$$\hat{\mathbf{v}} = \mathbf{H}^{-1}(\mathbf{r}_m^b) \hat{\mathbf{v}}_m \quad (11.217)$$

where

$$\mathbf{H}^{-1}(\mathbf{r}_m^b) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{r}_m^b) \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{I}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.218)$$

If the IMU is mounted close to the coordinate origin CO this transformation is not needed.

The measurements from the three-axis rate gyros, accelerometers and magnetometers are conveniently expressed as (Mahony *et al.*, 2008)

$$\mathbf{a}_{\text{imu}}^b = \mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta)(\hat{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^n + \mathbf{g}^n) + \mathbf{b}_{\text{acc}}^b + \mathbf{w}_{\text{acc}}^b \quad (11.219)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\omega}_{\text{imu}}^b = \boldsymbol{\omega}_{m/n}^b + \mathbf{b}_{\text{gyro}}^b + \mathbf{w}_{\text{gyro}}^b \quad (11.220)$$

$$\mathbf{m}_{\text{imu}}^b = \mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta)\mathbf{m}^n + \mathbf{b}_{\text{mag}}^b + \mathbf{w}_{\text{mag}}^b \quad (11.221)$$

where  $\Theta = [\phi, \theta, \psi]^\top$  is a vector of Euler angles and  $\mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta)$  is the rotation matrix between  $\{n\}$  and  $\{b\}$  (see Section 2.2). Alternatively, the quaternion rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_n^b(q)$  can be used. The accelerometer and gyro biases are denoted as  $\mathbf{b}_{\text{acc}}^b$  and  $\mathbf{b}_{\text{gyro}}^b$  while  $\mathbf{b}_{\text{mag}}^b$  is the local magnetic disturbance. Additive zero-mean sensor measurement noises are modeled by  $\mathbf{w}_{\text{acc}}^b$ ,  $\mathbf{w}_{\text{gyro}}^b$  and  $\mathbf{w}_{\text{mag}}^b$ .

The IMU measurement model is only valid for low-speed applications such as a marine craft moving on the surface of the Earth since it assumes that  $\{n\}$  is nonrotating. For terrestrial navigation the Earth rotation will affect the results and it is necessary to express the velocities and accelerations in  $\{i\}$ . Inertial navigation systems are also sensitive to scale factor and misalignments angles due to inaccurate mounting of the IMU (Titterton and Weston, 1997). These effects can, however, be neglected for local area navigation and low-speed applications. The following sections discuss effective methods for GNSS/INS integration.

## Gravity

The gravity of Earth in  $\{n\}$  is modeled as a constant vector:

$$\mathbf{g}^n = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ g \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.222)$$

Gravity increases from 9.789 m/s<sup>2</sup> at the equator to 9.832 m/s<sup>2</sup> at the poles. The nominal “average” value at the surface of the Earth, known as standard gravity, is, by definition,  $g = 9.80665$  m/s<sup>2</sup>.

## Compass Heading and Roll-Pitch Angles from Magnetometers

The magnetic field of the Earth is similar to a simple bar magnet. The magnetic field is a magnetic dipole that has its field lines originating at a point near the South Pole and terminating at a point near the North Pole. The field lines vary in both strength and direction about the face of the Earth. At each location on the Earth, the field lines intersect the Earth’s surface at a specific angle of inclination. Near the equator, the field lines are approximately parallel to the Earth’s surface and thus the inclination angle in this region is 0°. As one travels North from the equator the field lines become progressively steeper. At the magnetic pole, the field lines are directed almost straight down into the Earth and the inclination is 90°. Consequently, the inclination angle varies with latitude.

It is necessary to perform filtering and calibration of the magnetometer to remove the bias  $\mathbf{b}_{\text{mag}}^b$  and noise  $\mathbf{w}_{\text{mag}}^b$ . The calibrated measurements are denoted

$$\begin{bmatrix} m_x \\ m_y \\ m_z \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{m}_{\text{imu}}^b - \mathbf{b}_{\text{mag}}^b \quad (11.223)$$

The magnetic compass heading can be determined from the three magnetometer measurements if the tilt angles of the device are known. If the magnetometer is sitting in a local horizontal plane leveled to the surface of the Earth such that  $\phi = \theta = 0$ , the *magnetic* heading angle  $\psi_m$  is recognized as the direction planar with the surface of the Earth satisfying

$$\tan(\psi_m) = \frac{m_y}{m_x} \quad (11.224)$$

One method to determine the roll and pitch angles is to use a tilt sensor. Alternatively, a gyroscope can be used to maintain a known inertial reference frame at all times. If the roll and pitch

angles are known the magnetic readings  $m_x$ ,  $m_y$  and  $m_z$  can be transformed to the horizontal plane according to

$$\begin{bmatrix} h_x \\ h_y \\ h_z \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{R}_{y,\theta} \mathbf{R}_{x,\phi} \begin{bmatrix} m_x \\ m_y \\ m_z \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.225)$$

or

$$\begin{bmatrix} h_x \\ h_y \\ h_z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\theta) & 0 & \sin(\theta) \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin(\theta) & 0 & \cos(\theta) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \cos(\phi) & -\sin(\phi) \\ 0 & \sin(\phi) & \cos(\phi) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} m_x \\ m_y \\ m_z \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.226)$$

The horizontal components are

$$h_x = m_x \cos(\theta) + m_y \sin(\theta) \sin(\phi) + m_z \cos(\phi) \sin(\theta) \quad (11.227)$$

$$h_y = m_y \cos(\phi) - m_z \sin(\phi) \quad (11.228)$$

The sign of the arguments  $h_x$  and  $h_y$  must be taken into account when computing the magnetic heading. This is can be done by using the following mapping:

$$\psi_m = \begin{cases} 180^\circ - \frac{180^\circ}{\pi} \arctan\left(\frac{h_y}{h_x}\right) & \text{if } h_x < 0 \\ -\frac{180^\circ}{\pi} \arctan\left(\frac{h_y}{h_x}\right) & \text{if } h_x > 0, h_y < 0 \\ 360^\circ - \frac{180^\circ}{\pi} \arctan\left(\frac{h_y}{h_x}\right) & \text{if } h_x > 0, h_y > 0 \\ 90^\circ & \text{if } h_x = 0, h_y < 0 \\ 270^\circ & \text{if } h_x = 0, h_y > 0 \end{cases} \quad (11.229)$$

To determine true North heading  $\psi$  the appropriate declination angle which depends on the latitude must be added or subtracted.

### 11.5.1 Integration Filter for Position and Linear Velocity

The expression for the linear acceleration in  $\{n\}$  is derived from the acceleration measurement equation (11.219). Moreover,

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^n = \mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta)^\top [\mathbf{a}_{\text{imu}}^b - \mathbf{b}_{\text{acc}}^b - \mathbf{w}_{\text{acc}}^b] - \mathbf{g}^n \quad (11.230)$$

Since the measurement noise  $E(\mathbf{w}_{\text{acc}}^b) = \mathbf{0}$ , the velocity observer will be designed under the assumption that the term  $\mathbf{w}_{\text{acc}}^b$  can be neglected when analyzing the stability properties of the error dynamics.

### Integration of IMU and GNSS Position Measurements

The state estimator will be formulated in  $\{m\}$ . The position of the IMU coordinate system  $\{m\}$  with respect to the NED reference frame  $\{n\}$  expressed in  $\{n\}$  is denoted by  $\mathbf{p}_{m/n}^n$ . If the GNSS receiver is located at  $\mathbf{r}_{\text{gnss}}^b = [x_{\text{gnss}}, y_{\text{gnss}}, z_{\text{gnss}}]^\top$  with respect to  $\{m\}$ , the GNSS position measurements  $\mathbf{p}_{\text{gnss}}^n = [N_{\text{gnss}}, E_{\text{gnss}}, D_{\text{gnss}}]^\top$  must be corrected for rotations  $\Theta$  and lever arm  $\mathbf{r}_{\text{gnss}}^b$  according to

$$\mathbf{p}_{m/n}^n = \mathbf{p}_{\text{gnss}}^n - \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta) \mathbf{r}_{\text{gnss}}^b \quad (11.231)$$

If the GNSS receiver is located next to the IMU,  $\mathbf{r}_{\text{gnss}}^b = \mathbf{0}$ , the position measurements satisfies  $\mathbf{p}_{m/n}^n = \mathbf{p}_{\text{gnss}}^n$ .

The translational dynamics including acceleration bias is (see Figure 11.17)

$$\dot{\mathbf{p}}_{m/n}^n = \mathbf{v}_{m/n}^n \quad (11.232)$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^n = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta)[\mathbf{a}_{\text{imu}}^b - \mathbf{b}_{\text{acc}}^b] - \mathbf{g}^n \quad (11.233)$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{acc}}^b = \mathbf{0} \quad (11.234)$$

$$\mathbf{y}_1 = \mathbf{p}_{m/n}^n \quad (11.235)$$

where  $\mathbf{y}_1$  is the GNSS measurement. A nonlinear design method for simultaneously linear and angular velocity estimation has been proposed by Hua (2010) using GNSS/INS measurements. This method discusses stability of accelerated vehicles where the linear and angular dynamics are coupled. The EKF method discussed in Section 11.3.3 can also be used for this purpose. However, Kalman filtering requires linearization of the rotation matrix and implementation of time-varying Riccati equations that suffer from singularities. Hence, care must be taken when implementing the EKF. An alternative approach is to use a nonlinear decoupled fixed-gain observer where it is assumed that the attitude signal  $\Theta$  is available when estimating the linear velocity  $\hat{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^n$ . Algorithms for computation of  $\Theta$  are presented in Section 11.5.2.

Consider the following nonlinear observer for linear velocity (see Figure 11.17):

$$\dot{\hat{\mathbf{p}}}_{m/n}^n = \hat{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^n + \mathbf{K}_1 \tilde{\mathbf{y}}_1 \quad (11.236)$$

$$\dot{\hat{\mathbf{v}}}_{m/n}^n = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta)[\mathbf{a}_{\text{imu}}^b - \hat{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{acc}}^b] - \mathbf{g}^n + \mathbf{K}_2 \tilde{\mathbf{y}}_1 \quad (11.237)$$

$$\dot{\hat{\mathbf{b}}}_{\text{acc}}^b = \mathbf{K}_3 \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta)^T \tilde{\mathbf{y}}_1 \quad (11.238)$$

$$\tilde{\mathbf{y}}_1 = \hat{\mathbf{p}}_{m/n}^n \quad (11.239)$$

where  $\tilde{\mathbf{y}}_1 = \mathbf{y}_1 - \hat{\mathbf{y}}_1 = \mathbf{p}_{m/n}^n - \hat{\mathbf{p}}_{m/n}^n$  is the injection term. The linear velocity estimate  $\hat{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^n$  expressed in  $\{n\}$  is transformed to  $\{b\}$  using the rotation matrix

$$\hat{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^b = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta) \hat{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^n \quad (11.240)$$

The observer error dynamics becomes

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{\tilde{\mathbf{p}}}_{m/n}^n \\ \dot{\tilde{\mathbf{v}}}_{m/n}^n \\ \dot{\tilde{\mathbf{b}}}_{\text{acc}}^b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -\mathbf{K}_1 & \mathbf{I} & \mathbf{0} \\ -\mathbf{K}_2 & \mathbf{0} & -\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta) \\ -\mathbf{K}_3 \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta)^T & \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{\mathbf{p}}_{m/n}^n \\ \tilde{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^n \\ \tilde{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{acc}}^b \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.241)$$

‡

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}(\Theta) \mathbf{x} \quad (11.242)$$

The gains  $\mathbf{K}_1$ ,  $\mathbf{K}_2$  and  $\mathbf{K}_3$  can be chosen such that  $\mathbf{x}$  converges exponentially to zero. This is not straightforward since the matrix  $\mathbf{A}(\Theta)$  depends on the attitude vector  $\Theta$  and thus becomes time varying.

For marine craft a practical solution to this problem can be found by noticing that the angular rates  $\omega_{m/n}^b = \omega_{b/n}^b = [p, q, r]^\top$  are quite small. This is the key assumption in order to apply the result of Lindegaard and Fossen (2001a). Consider the transformation

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{T}(\Theta)\mathbf{z} \quad (11.243)$$

where  $\mathbf{T}(\Theta)$  is a transformation matrix

$$\mathbf{T}(\Theta) = \text{diag}\{\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta), \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta), \mathbf{I}\} \quad (11.244)$$

satisfying  $\mathbf{T}(\Theta)^{-1} = \mathbf{T}(\Theta)^\top$ . Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{z}} &= \mathbf{T}(\Theta)^\top \dot{\mathbf{x}} + \dot{\mathbf{T}}(\Theta)^\top \mathbf{x} \\ &= \mathbf{T}(\Theta)^\top \mathbf{A}(\Theta) \mathbf{x} + \dot{\mathbf{T}}(\Theta)^\top \mathbf{x} \\ &= \mathbf{T}(\Theta)^\top \mathbf{A}(\Theta) \mathbf{T}(\Theta) \mathbf{z} + \dot{\mathbf{T}}(\Theta)^\top \mathbf{T}(\Theta) \mathbf{z} \end{aligned} \quad (11.245)$$

Stability of this system can be guaranteed under the assumption that  $\dot{\mathbf{T}}(\Theta)$  is sufficiently small. This is indeed satisfied if the angular rate vector  $\omega_{m/n}^b$  of the craft is small. Moreover,

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{T}}(\Theta) &= \text{diag}\{\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta) \mathbf{S}(\omega_{m/n}^b), \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta) \mathbf{S}(\omega_{m/n}^b), \mathbf{0}\} \\ &\approx \mathbf{0} \end{aligned} \quad (11.246)$$

if  $\mathbf{S}(\omega_{m/n}^b) \approx \mathbf{0}$ . This is a good assumption for a marine craft since  $\omega_{m/n}^b$  is quite small during rolling, pitching and yawing. Hence, from a practical point of view it is sufficient to check stability of the system:

$$\dot{\mathbf{z}} = \mathbf{T}(\Theta)^\top \mathbf{A}(\Theta) \mathbf{T}(\Theta) \mathbf{z} \quad (11.247)$$

A pole-placement algorithm can be derived by using the following property:

### **Property 11.1 (Commuting Matrices)**

A matrix  $\mathbf{K} \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 3}$  is said to commute with the rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta)$  if

$$\mathbf{K} \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta) = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta) \mathbf{K} \quad (11.248)$$

Examples of  $\mathbf{K}$  matrices satisfying Property 11.1 are linear combinations:

$$\mathbf{K} = a_1 \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta) + a_2 \mathbf{I} + a_3 \mathbf{k} \mathbf{k}^\top \quad (11.249)$$

where

$$\mathbf{k} = [0, 0, 1]^\top \quad (11.250)$$

is the axis of rotation and  $a_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 3$ ) are scalars.

If the observer gain matrices  $\mathbf{K}_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, 3$ ) are chosen to commute with the rotation matrix  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta)$ , Property 11.1 implies that the error dynamics (11.247) can be written

$$\dot{\mathbf{z}} = \mathbf{A} \mathbf{z} \quad (11.251)$$

where  $A$  is a constant system matrix:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -K_1 & I & 0 \\ -K_2 & 0 & -I \\ -K_3 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.252)$$

Then it follows that

$$A = T(\Theta)^\top A(\Theta) T(\Theta) \quad (11.253)$$

One way to satisfy this is to choose the matrices  $K_i$  with the following diagonal structure:

$$K_i = \text{diag}\{k_i, k_i, l_i\}, \quad i = 1, 2, 3 \quad (11.254)$$

where surge and sway have the same gains  $k_i > 0$  and heave can be tuned independently by  $l_i > 0$ . This clearly satisfies (11.249) since  $a_1 = 0$ ,  $a_2 > 0$  and  $a_3 > 0$ . Hence, stability can be checked by computing the eigenvalues of  $A$  since the eigenvalues of  $A$  and  $A(\Theta)$  are equal for all  $\Theta$ . A necessary condition for exponential stability is that the eigenvalues of  $A$  lie in the left half-plane, that is  $A$  must be *Hurwitz*.

### Integration of IMU and GNSS Position and Velocity Measurements

It is straightforward to modify the observer (11.236)–(11.239) to include GNSS velocity measurements,  $y_2 = v_{m/n}$ . Moreover,

$$\dot{\tilde{p}}_{m/n}^n = \hat{v}_{m/n}^n + K_{11}\tilde{y}_1 + K_{21}\tilde{y}_2 \quad (11.255)$$

$$\dot{\hat{v}}_{m/n}^n = R_b^n(\Theta)[a_{\text{imu}}^b - \hat{b}_{\text{acc}}^b] - g^n + K_{12}\tilde{y}_1 + K_{22}\tilde{y}_2 \quad (11.256)$$

$$\dot{\hat{b}}_{\text{acc}}^b = K_{13}R_b^n(\Theta)^\top \tilde{y}_1 + K_{23}R_b^n(\Theta)^\top \tilde{y}_2 \quad (11.257)$$

$$\hat{y}_1 = \hat{p}_{m/n}^n \quad (11.258)$$

$$\hat{y}_2 = \hat{v}_{m/n}^n \quad (11.259)$$

where  $\tilde{y}_i = y_i - \hat{y}_i$  ( $i = 1, 2$ ) results in the error dynamics

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{\tilde{p}}_{m/n}^n \\ \dot{\hat{v}}_{m/n}^n \\ \dot{\hat{b}}_{\text{acc}}^b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -K_{11} & I - K_{21} & 0 \\ -K_{12} & -K_{22} & -R_b^n(\Theta) \\ -K_{13}R_b^n(\Theta)^\top & -K_{23}R_b^n(\Theta)^\top & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{p}_{m/n}^n \\ \tilde{v}_{m/n}^n \\ \tilde{b}_{\text{acc}}^b \end{bmatrix} \Downarrow \dot{x} = A(\Theta)x \quad (11.260)$$

Choosing the gains  $\mathbf{K}_{ij}$  ( $i = 1, 2, 3, j = 1, 2$ ) according to Property 11.1 such that they commute with  $\mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta)$  and assuming that the angular rate vector  $\omega_{m/n}^b$  is small, gives the following error dynamics:

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\mathbf{z}} &= \mathbf{T}^\top(\Theta) \mathbf{A} \mathbf{T}(\Theta) \mathbf{z} \\ &= \mathbf{A} \mathbf{z}\end{aligned}\quad (11.261)$$

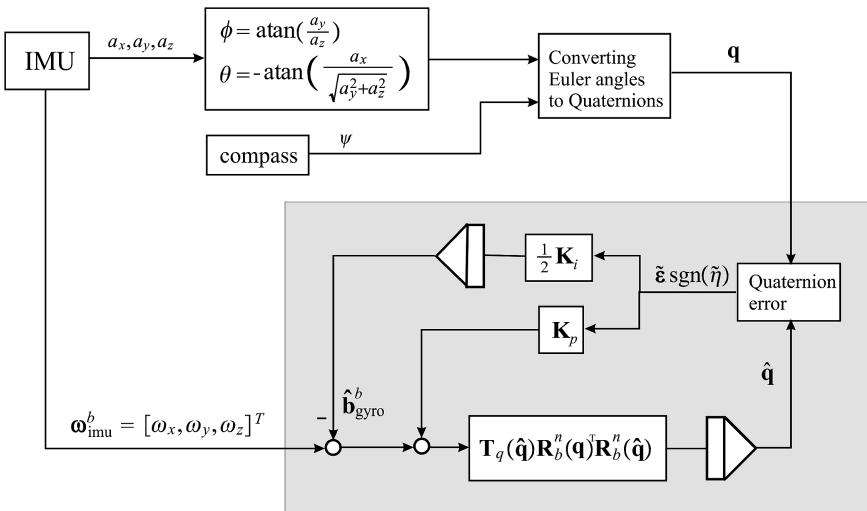
where

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} -\mathbf{K}_{11} & \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{K}_{21} & \mathbf{0} \\ -\mathbf{K}_{12} & -\mathbf{K}_{22} & -\mathbf{I} \\ -\mathbf{K}_{13} & -\mathbf{K}_{23} & \mathbf{0} \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.262)$$

Hence, exponential convergence of  $\mathbf{z}$  to zero is guaranteed if the gains  $\mathbf{K}_{ij}$  are chosen such that  $\mathbf{A}$  is *Hurwitz*.

### 11.5.2 Accelerometer and Compass Aided Attitude Observer

A nonlinear attitude observer can be designed by integrating the gyro measurements  $\omega_{\text{imu}}$  to obtain an estimate of the quaternions  $\hat{\mathbf{q}}$ . The quaternion estimate is corrected by approximating  $\mathbf{q}$  using accelerometer and compass measurements (see Figure 11.18). The attitude observer in this section can be viewed as a special case of Vik and Fossen (2001) where the Earth rotation is neglected. An attitude observer can also be derived using the EKF algorithm. However, the nonlinear representation is highly advantageous from an implementation point of view since it avoids numerical integration of a large number of the Kalman filter Riccati equations.



**Figure 11.18** Block diagram showing the nonlinear attitude observer with the IMU acceleration mapping.

### Mapping from Linear Accelerations to Roll and Pitch Angles

Before designing the attitude observer, it is necessary to map the three-axis linear IMU accelerations to roll and pitch angles. The principle for this is that the angle between the acceleration and gravity vectors can be computed using trigonometry. This is a static mapping that suffers from inaccuracies when performing high-acceleration maneuvers. For ships this works quite well but aircraft and other highly maneuverable vehicles should use other methods. The static acceleration mapping, together with a magnetometer, is used to construct a Euler angle measurement vector  $\Theta$ , which again is used to compute  $q$  as illustrated in Figure 11.18.

The IMU acceleration measurements

$$\mathbf{a}_{\text{imu}}^b = \mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta)(\dot{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^n + \mathbf{g}^n) + \mathbf{b}_{\text{acc}}^b + \mathbf{w}_{\text{acc}}^b \quad (11.263)$$

can be transformed to roll and pitch angles by noticing that for three orthogonal accelerometers onboard a craft at rest,  $\dot{\mathbf{v}}_{m/n}^n = \mathbf{0}$ , the measurement equation is

$$\mathbf{a}_{\text{imu}}^b = \mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta)\mathbf{g}^n + \mathbf{b}_{\text{acc}}^b + \mathbf{w}_{\text{acc}}^b \quad (11.264)$$

The initial accelerometer biases  $\mathbf{b}_{\text{acc}}^b$  are usually removed by calibrating the accelerometer in a laboratory for varying temperatures. This can be implemented as a look-up table in combination with a temperature sensor. It is also necessary to remove the dynamic drift and measurement noise  $\mathbf{w}_{\text{acc}}^b$  by low-pass filtering the accelerometer measurements properly before the roll and pitch angles are computed. The key assumption is to assume that the average acceleration with respect to the environment during some period of time is zero, for instance 10–20 seconds. For aircraft this assumption does not hold since they can generate significant accelerations lasting longer than the maximum time.

After calibration and filtering, this suggests that

$$\mathbf{a}_{\text{imu}}^b \approx \mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta)\mathbf{g}^n \quad (11.265)$$

‡

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_x \\ a_y \\ a_z \end{bmatrix} \approx \mathbf{R}_n^b(\Theta) \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ g \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -g \sin(\theta) \\ g \cos(\theta) \sin(\phi) \\ g \cos(\theta) \cos(\phi) \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.266)$$

Taking the ratios

$$\frac{a_y}{a_z} \approx \tan(\phi), \quad \frac{a_x}{g} \approx -\sin(\theta), \quad \frac{a_y^2 + a_z^2}{g^2} \approx \cos^2(\theta) \quad (11.267)$$

this gives

$$\phi \approx \text{atan}\left(\frac{a_y}{a_z}\right) \quad (11.268)$$

$$\theta \approx -\text{atan}\left(\frac{a_x}{\sqrt{a_y^2 + a_z^2}}\right) \quad (11.269)$$

Notice that the transformation is singular for  $\phi = \pm 90$  degrees. When combined with a compass measuring the heading  $\psi$  the attitude vector  $\Theta = [\phi, \theta, \psi]^\top$  is completely determined. The Euler angles  $\Theta$  can

easily be transformed to unit quaternions  $\mathbf{q} = [\eta, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3]^\top$  by using Algorithm 2.2 in Section 2.2.3. The quaternion representation is advantageous when implementing the attitude observer in a computer.

### Attitude Observer

In Section 2.2.2 the unit quaternion differential equation was written

$$\dot{\mathbf{q}} = \mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q})\boldsymbol{\omega}_{m/n}^b \quad (11.270)$$

with

$$\mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q}) = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} -\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}^\top \\ \eta \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}) \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.271)$$

From the gyro measurement equation (11.220) it follows that

$$\boldsymbol{\omega}_{m/n}^b = \boldsymbol{\omega}_{\text{imu}}^b - \mathbf{b}_{\text{gyro}}^b - \mathbf{w}_{\text{gyro}}^b \quad (11.272)$$

Consequently,

$$\dot{\mathbf{q}} = \mathbf{T}_q(\mathbf{q}) [\boldsymbol{\omega}_{\text{imu}}^b - \mathbf{b}_{\text{gyro}}^b - \mathbf{w}_{\text{gyro}}^b] \quad (11.273)$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b = \mathbf{0} \quad (11.274)$$

where  $\mathbf{b}_{\text{gyro}}^b$  is the gyro bias. The nonlinear attitude observer of Salcudean (1991) has been extended to include gyro bias estimation by Vik *et al.* (1999), Vik (2000) and Vik and Fossen (2001):

$$\dot{\hat{\mathbf{q}}} = \mathbf{T}_q(\hat{\mathbf{q}}) \underbrace{\mathbf{R}_b^n(\mathbf{q})^\top \mathbf{R}_b^n(\hat{\mathbf{q}})}_{\mathbf{R}^\top(\tilde{\mathbf{q}})} [\boldsymbol{\omega}_{\text{imu}}^b - \hat{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b + \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\varepsilon} \operatorname{sgn}(\tilde{\eta})] \quad (11.275)$$

$$\dot{\hat{\mathbf{b}}}_{\text{gyro}}^b = -\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{K}_i \tilde{\varepsilon} \operatorname{sgn}(\tilde{\eta}) \quad (11.276)$$

where  $\mathbf{K}_p = \mathbf{K}_p^\top > 0$  and  $\mathbf{K}_i = \mathbf{K}_i^\top > 0$  are tunable gain matrices. The observer structure is shown in Figure 11.18.

The quaternion estimation error is defined as

$$\tilde{\mathbf{q}} := \hat{\mathbf{q}}^* \otimes \mathbf{q} \quad (11.277)$$

where  $\mathbf{q} = [\eta, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3]^\top$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{q}}^* = [\hat{\eta}, -\hat{\varepsilon}_1, -\hat{\varepsilon}_2, -\hat{\varepsilon}_3]^\top$  is the conjugate of  $\hat{\mathbf{q}}$  corresponding to multiplying the vector  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} = [\hat{\varepsilon}_1, \hat{\varepsilon}_2, \hat{\varepsilon}_3]^\top$  with  $-1$ . The symbol  $\otimes$  denotes the *quaternion product*, which is defined as (Chou, 1992)

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{q}_1 \otimes \mathbf{q}_2 &:= \begin{bmatrix} \eta_1 \eta_2 - \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_1^\top \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_2 \\ \eta_2 \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_1 + \eta_1 \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_2 + \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_1 \times \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_2 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \eta_1 & -\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_1^\top \\ \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_1 & \eta_1 \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{S}(\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_1) \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{q}_2 \end{aligned} \quad (11.278)$$

This yields

$$\tilde{\mathbf{q}} = \begin{bmatrix} \hat{\eta}\eta + \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}}^\top \boldsymbol{\varepsilon} \\ -\eta\hat{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} + \hat{\eta}\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} - S(\hat{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}})\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.279)$$

Notice that  $\tilde{\mathbf{q}} \neq \mathbf{q} - \hat{\mathbf{q}}$ . After some tedious calculations, it can be shown that the observer error dynamics becomes

$$\dot{\tilde{\mathbf{q}}} = -\mathbf{T}(\tilde{\mathbf{q}}) [\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b + \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} \text{sgn}(\tilde{\eta})] \quad (11.280)$$

$$\dot{\tilde{\mathbf{b}}}_{\text{gyro}}^b = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{K}_i \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} \text{sgn}(\tilde{\eta}) \quad (11.281)$$

From (11.271) it is seen that the expression for  $\dot{\tilde{\mathbf{q}}}$  can be written as

$$\dot{\tilde{\mathbf{q}}} = -\frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} -\tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}}^\top \\ \tilde{\eta}\mathbf{I} + S(\tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}}) \end{bmatrix} [\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b + \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} \text{sgn}(\tilde{\eta})] \quad (11.282)$$

or

$$\dot{\tilde{\eta}} = \frac{1}{2} \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}}^\top [\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b + \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} \text{sgn}(\tilde{\eta})] \quad (11.283)$$

$$\dot{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}}} = -\frac{1}{2} [\tilde{\eta}\mathbf{I} + S(\tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}})] [\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b + \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} \text{sgn}(\tilde{\eta})] \quad (11.284)$$

Since the measurement noise  $E(\mathbf{w}_{\text{gyro}}^b) = \mathbf{0}$ , the term  $\mathbf{w}_{\text{gyro}}^b$  is neglected in the Lyapunov analysis. Consider

$$V = \frac{1}{2} (\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b)^\top \mathbf{K}_i^{-1} \tilde{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b + H(\tilde{\eta}) \quad (11.285)$$

where different candidates for  $H(\tilde{\eta})$  are found in Table 11.4 (Fjellstad and Fossen, 1994). Notice that the function  $H(\tilde{\eta})$  is Lipschitz. Hence, time differentiation of  $V$  along the trajectories of  $\dot{\tilde{\mathbf{b}}}_{\text{gyro}}^b$  and  $\dot{\tilde{\eta}}$  yields

$$\dot{V} = (\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b)^\top \mathbf{K}_i^{-1} \dot{\tilde{\mathbf{b}}}_{\text{gyro}}^b + \frac{\partial H(\tilde{\eta})}{\partial \tilde{\eta}} \dot{\tilde{\eta}} \quad (11.286)$$

Choosing  $H(\tilde{\eta}) = 1 - |\tilde{\eta}|$  such that  $\partial H(\tilde{\eta})/\partial \tilde{\eta} = -\text{sgn}(\tilde{\eta})$  (see the first row in Table 11.4) yields

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V} &= \frac{1}{2} (\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b)^\top \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} \text{sgn}(\tilde{\eta}) - \text{sgn}(\tilde{\eta}) \frac{1}{2} \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}}^\top [\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b + \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} \text{sgn}(\tilde{\eta})] \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} \leq 0 \end{aligned} \quad (11.287)$$

Thienel and Sanner (2003) have proven that the equilibrium points  $\tilde{\mathbf{q}} = [\pm 1, 0, 0, 0]^\top$  of the attitude observer error dynamics is asymptotically stable if the pair  $(\mathbf{A}(t), \mathbf{C})$  is uniformly completely observable

**Table 11.4** Alternative choices of attitude update laws

$H(\tilde{\eta})$	Update law	Stable equation	Unstable equation
$1 -  \tilde{\eta} $	$-\mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}} \text{sgn}(\tilde{\eta})$	$\tilde{\eta} = \pm 1$	
$1 - \tilde{\eta}$	$-\mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}}$	$\tilde{\eta} = 1$	$\tilde{\eta} = -1$
$1 + \tilde{\eta}$	$\mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}}$	$\tilde{\eta} = -1$	$\tilde{\eta} = 1$

for the system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = A(t)\mathbf{x} \quad (11.288)$$

where  $\mathbf{x} = [\tilde{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}^\top, (\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b)^\top]^\top$  and

$$A(t) = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{K}_p \text{sgn}(\tilde{\eta}) [\tilde{\eta}\mathbf{I} + S(\tilde{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}})] & -\frac{1}{2} [\tilde{\eta}\mathbf{I} + S(\tilde{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}})] \\ \frac{1}{2}\text{sgn}(\tilde{\eta})\mathbf{I} & \mathbf{0} \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.289)$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V} &= -\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{C}^\top \mathbf{C} \mathbf{x} \\ &\leq 0 \end{aligned} \quad (11.290)$$

where

$$\mathbf{C} = \left[ \sqrt{\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{K}_i}, \mathbf{0} \right] \quad (11.291)$$

This corresponds to a persistency of excitation (PE) argument ensuring exponential convergence of the estimation error  $\tilde{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b$  to zero. Global results cannot be obtained since this system has two equilibrium points. This is a well-known topological limitation as described by Bhat and Bernstein (2000).

### Vertical Reference Unit (VRU)

The special solution of the observer when only  $\phi$  and  $\theta$  are estimated (no compass measurement) is referred to as a *vertical reference unit* (VRU). The performance of state-of-the-art VRUs has been evaluated by Ingram *et al.* (1996).

A VRU is particularly useful if you want to transform the GNSS position and velocity measurements

$$\mathbf{p}_{\text{gnss}}^n = [N_{\text{gnss}}, E_{\text{gnss}}, D_{\text{gnss}}]^\top \quad (11.292)$$

$$\mathbf{v}_{\text{gnss}}^n = [\dot{N}_{\text{gnss}}, \dot{E}_{\text{gnss}}, \dot{D}_{\text{gnss}}]^\top \quad (11.293)$$

for a GNSS receiver located at the position  $\mathbf{r}_{\text{gnss}}^b = [x_{\text{gnss}}, y_{\text{gnss}}, z_{\text{gnss}}]^\top$  to the IMU coordinate system  $\{m\}$ . The NED position  $\mathbf{p}_{m/n}^n$  and linear velocity  $\mathbf{v}_{m/n}^n$  of the craft are found as

$$\mathbf{p}_{m/n}^n = \mathbf{p}_{\text{gnss}}^n - \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta)\mathbf{r}_{\text{gnss}}^b \quad (11.294)$$

$$\mathbf{v}_{m/n}^n = \mathbf{v}_{\text{gnss}}^n - \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta)\mathbf{S}(\omega_{b/n}^b)\mathbf{r}_{\text{gnss}}^b \quad (11.295)$$

since  $\mathbf{S}(\omega_{b/n}^b) = \mathbf{S}(\omega_{m/n}^b)$ . The expression for the NED velocity (11.295) makes use of  $\dot{\mathbf{r}}_{\text{gnss}}^b = \mathbf{0}$ ; that is the position of the GNSS receiver is constant when mounted onboard a rigid craft. Consequently,

$$\mathbf{v}_{m/n}^n = \dot{\mathbf{p}}_{m/n}^n = \dot{\mathbf{p}}_{\text{gnss}}^n - \dot{\mathbf{R}}_b^n(\Theta)\mathbf{r}_{\text{gnss}}^b \quad (11.296)$$

where  $\dot{\mathbf{p}}_{\text{gnss}}^n = \mathbf{v}_{\text{gnss}}^n$  and  $\dot{\mathbf{R}}_b^n(\Theta) = \mathbf{R}_b^n(\Theta)\mathbf{S}(\omega_{b/n}^b)$ ; see Theorem 2.2 in Section 2.2.1.

### 11.5.3 Attitude Observer using Gravitational and Magnetic Field Directions

The attitude observer developed in Section 11.5.2 suffers from the assumption that  $\mathbf{v}_{m/n}^n = \mathbf{0}$  when computing the roll and pitch angles from accelerometer measurements. Hence, inaccuracies propagate

to  $\mathbf{q}$  and thus the observer injection term. An alternative approach could be to use accelerometer and magnetometer measurements directly to update the estimator. Mahony *et al.* (2008) have derived a nonlinear attitude observer with an injection term that compares the directions of the measurement vectors when transformed from the body-fixed frame to the inertial frame using true and estimated attitude.

Let  $\mathbf{v}_{0i}^n$  ( $i = 1, \dots, n$ ) denote a set of  $n$  known inertial directions. This vector can be expressed in  $\{b\}$  by using the quaternion rotation matrix

$$\mathbf{v}_i^b = \mathbf{R}_n^b(\mathbf{q})\mathbf{v}_{0i}^n + \mathbf{w}_i \quad (11.297)$$

where  $\mathbf{w}_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, n$ ) are zero-mean noise processes. Since only the direction of the measurement is relevant to the observer, it is assumed that all measurements are normalized such that  $\|\mathbf{v}_{0i}^n\| = 1$ . The associated estimate of  $\mathbf{v}_i^b$  is computed as

$$\hat{\mathbf{v}}_i^b = \mathbf{R}_n^b(\hat{\mathbf{q}})\mathbf{v}_{0i}^n \quad (11.298)$$

where  $\hat{\mathbf{q}}$  is the estimate of the quaternion vector. Hence, the difference between the two signals (11.297) and (11.298) is zero if  $\hat{\mathbf{q}} = \mathbf{q}$ .

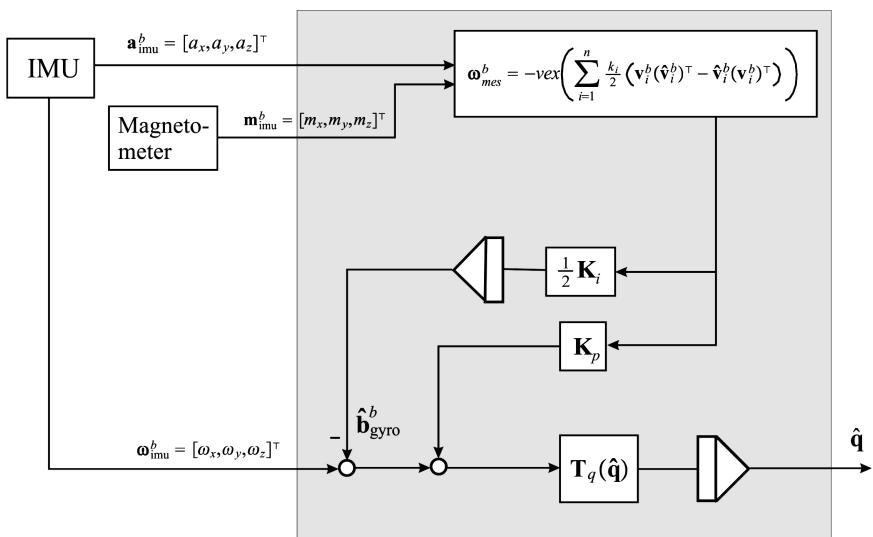
The attitude observer can be implemented using normalized acceleration and magnetometer measurements according to

$$\mathbf{v}_1^b = \frac{\mathbf{a}_{\text{imu}}^b}{\|\mathbf{a}_{\text{imu}}^b\|}, \quad \mathbf{v}_2^b = \frac{\mathbf{m}_{\text{mag}}^b}{\|\mathbf{m}_{\text{mag}}^b\|} \quad (11.299)$$

where the acceleration  $\mathbf{a}_{\text{imu}}^b$  and magnetometer  $\mathbf{m}_{\text{mag}}^b$  measurements are given by (11.219) and (11.221), respectively.

### Explicit Complementary Filter with Bias Correction

The quaternion representation of the Mahony *et al.* (2008) attitude observer can be expressed as (see Figure 11.19)



**Figure 11.19** Nonlinear attitude observer-based directional measurements.

$$\boldsymbol{\omega}_{\text{mes}}^b = -\text{vex} \left( \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{k_i}{2} (\mathbf{v}_i^b (\hat{\mathbf{v}}_i^b)^\top - \hat{\mathbf{v}}_i^b (\mathbf{v}_i^b)^\top) \right) \quad (11.300)$$

$$\dot{\hat{\mathbf{q}}} = \mathbf{T}_q(\hat{\mathbf{q}}) [\boldsymbol{\omega}_{\text{imu}}^b - \hat{\mathbf{b}}_{\text{gyro}}^b + \mathbf{K}_p \boldsymbol{\omega}_{\text{mes}}^b] \quad (11.301)$$

$$\dot{\hat{\mathbf{b}}}_{\text{gyro}}^b = -\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{K}_i \boldsymbol{\omega}_{\text{mes}}^b \quad (11.302)$$

where  $k_i$  is a tunable gain and the operator  $\text{vex}: \text{SO}(3) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  denotes the inverse of the cross-product operator  $\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{a})$ . Moreover,

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{S}(\mathbf{a})\mathbf{b} \quad (11.303)$$

$$\text{vex}(\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{a})) = \mathbf{a} \quad (11.304)$$

Hence, the following expression corresponding to (11.300) can be derived:

$$\text{vex}(\mathbf{ab}^T - \mathbf{ba}^T) = \begin{bmatrix} a_3 b_2 - a_2 b_3 \\ a_1 b_3 - a_3 b_1 \\ a_2 b_1 - a_1 b_2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.305)$$

The estimate  $\hat{\mathbf{v}}_1^b$  corresponding to the accelerometer measurement is computed according to

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\mathbf{v}}_1^b &= \mathbf{R}_n^b(\hat{\mathbf{q}})\mathbf{v}_{01}^n \\ &= \mathbf{R}_n^b(\hat{\mathbf{q}}) \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (11.306)$$

where the known inertial direction of gravity  $\mathbf{v}_{01}^n = \mathbf{g}^n / \|\mathbf{g}^n\|$  is exploited.

The magnetometer measures three inertial components:

$$\mathbf{m}_{\text{mag}}^b = [m_x, m_y, m_z]^\top \quad (11.307)$$

when the sensor unit is mounted in a craft at rest to sense the components of the Earth's magnetic field. Consequently, the normalized magnetometer estimate in  $\{b\}$  becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\mathbf{v}}_2^b &= \mathbf{R}_n^b(\hat{\mathbf{q}})\mathbf{v}_{02}^n \\ &= \mathbf{R}_n^b(\hat{\mathbf{q}}) \frac{1}{\sqrt{m_x^2 + m_y^2 + m_z^2}} \begin{bmatrix} m_x \\ m_y \\ m_z \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (11.308)$$

### Stability Analysis

The stability proof of Mahony *et al.* (2008) assumes that the reference vectors  $\mathbf{v}_{0i}^n$  are constant. This has been relaxed by Grip *et al.* (2011) using the projection algorithm. From this work it is concluded that the equilibrium point of the quaternion error dynamics is semi-global exponential stable for  $n \geq 2$  independent inertial directions  $\mathbf{v}_{0i}^n$ .

# 12

## Motion Control Systems

Motion control systems for marine craft have been an active field of research since the first mechanical autopilot was constructed by *Elmer Sperry* in 1911. Modern control systems are based on a variety of design techniques such as PID control, linear quadratic optimal and stochastic control,  $\mathcal{H}_\infty$  control methods, fuzzy systems, neural networks and nonlinear control theory, to mention only some. In the first part of the book, models for simulation of marine craft were presented. In this chapter, dynamic models are used to design model-based control systems. The dynamic properties and limitation of the craft are incorporated into the design process to obtain robust performance. Many of the presented design methods have been successfully implemented and tested onboard ships, underwater vehicles and floating vessels.

Chapter 12 covers state-of-the-art PID control methods for setpoint regulation, trajectory-tracking control and path-following control of marine craft. This includes autopilot design, stationkeeping, position mooring systems, cross-tracking control systems and LOS control systems. In addition to this, control allocation methods are discussed. Advance methods such as linear quadratic optimal control, sliding mode control, state feedback linearization and integrator backstepping are discussed in Chapter 13.

### Preview of the Chapter

This chapter starts with open-loop analysis and maneuverability (Section 12.1) followed by state-of-the-art linear PID design methods (Section 12.2). Conventional PID control systems have their origin from SISO linear systems theory. However, it is possible to generalize this to nonlinear MIMO systems by using results from robotics (Fossen, 1991). This requires that the marine craft equations of motion are expressed in a vectorial setting:

$$\dot{\eta} = J_\Theta(\eta)v \quad (12.1)$$

$$M\ddot{v} + C(v)v + D(v)v + g(\eta) = \tau + w \quad (12.2)$$

For this model class, MIMO nonlinear PID control systems can be designed by exploiting the fact that the mass matrix is positive definite and constant ( $M = M^\top > 0$ ,  $\dot{M} = 0$ ), the Coriolis and centripetal matrix  $C(v) = -C^\top(v)$  is skew-symmetrical and the damping matrix  $D(v) > 0$  is strictly positive.

### 12.1 Open-Loop Stability and Maneuverability

When designing a motion control system a compromise between stability and maneuverability must be made. More specifically:



**Figure 12.1** Maneuverability versus stability. Illustration by Bjarne Stenberg.

- *Stability* of an uncontrolled marine craft can be defined as the ability to return to an equilibrium point after a disturbance, without any corrective action of the actuators.
- *Maneuverability*, on the other hand, is defined as the capability of the craft to carry out specific maneuvers.

It is well known that a craft that is easy to maneuver, for instance a fighter aircraft or a high-speed watercraft, can be marginally stable or even unstable in open loop. On the other hand, excessive stability implies that the control effort will be excessive in a maneuvering situation whereas a marginally stable ship is easy to maneuver. Consequently, a compromise between stability and maneuverability must be made (see Figure 12.1).

### 12.1.1 Straight-Line, Directional and Positional Motion Stability

For marine craft it is common to distinguish between three types of stability, namely:

- *Straight-line stability*
- *Directional or course stability*
- *Positional motion stability*

This can be explained using open-loop and closed-loop stability analyzes. In order to understand the different types of stability one can consider the following test system:

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{x} &= u \cos(\psi) - v \sin(\psi) \\ &\approx u_0 \cos(\psi)\end{aligned}\tag{12.3}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{y} &= u \sin(\psi) + v \cos(\psi) \\ &\approx u_0 \sin(\psi)\end{aligned}\quad (12.4)$$

$$\dot{\psi} = r \quad (12.5)$$

$$Tr + r = K\delta + w \quad (12.6)$$

where  $w$  is the external disturbances and  $u_0 = \text{constant}$  is the cruise speed. The first two equations represent the  $(x, y)$  position of the ship while the last two equations describe the yaw dynamics modeled by Nomoto's first-order model. For simplicity, it is assumed that the yaw motion of the craft is stabilized by a PD-controlled rudder servo:

$$\delta = -K_p(\psi - \psi_d) - K_d r \quad (12.7)$$

where  $\psi_d = \text{constant}$  denotes the desired heading angle and  $K_p$  and  $K_d$  are two positive regulator gains. Substituting the control law (12.7) into Nomoto's first-order model (12.6) yields the closed-loop system

$$\underbrace{T}_{m} \ddot{\psi} + \underbrace{(1 + KK_d)}_{d} \dot{\psi} + \underbrace{KK_p}_{k} \psi = \underbrace{KK_p \psi_d + w}_{f(t)} \quad (12.8)$$

The closed-loop system represents a second-order mass-damper-spring system

$$m\ddot{\psi} + d\dot{\psi} + k\psi = f(t) \quad (12.9)$$

with driving input

$$f(t) = k\psi_d + w \quad (12.10)$$

The eigenvalues  $\lambda_{1,2}$ , the natural frequency  $\omega_n$  and the relative damping ratio  $\zeta$  for the mass-damper-spring system are

$$\lambda_{1,2} = \frac{-d \pm \sqrt{d^2 - 4km}}{2m} \quad (12.11)$$

$$\omega_n = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \quad (12.12)$$

$$\zeta = \frac{d}{2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{km}} \quad (12.13)$$

### Matlab

The test system (12.8) is simulated in Matlab for varying model parameters using the MSS toolbox script

`StabDemo`

The simulation results and the stability analysis are presented on the next pages. This includes the following cases:

- Instability
- Straight-line stability
- Directional stability
- Positional motion stability

**Instability:** For uncontrolled marine craft ( $K_p = K_d = 0$ ) instability occurs when

$$\lambda_1 = -\frac{d}{m} = -\frac{1}{T} > 0$$

$$\lambda_2 = 0$$

which simply states that  $T < 0$ . This is common for large tankers.

**Straight-Line Stability:** Consider an uncontrolled marine craft ( $K_p = K_d = 0$ ) moving in a straight path. If the new path is straight after a disturbance  $w$  in yaw the craft is said to have straight-line stability. The direction of the new path will usually differ from the initial path because no restoring forces are present ( $k = 0$ ). This corresponds to

$$\lambda_1 = -\frac{d}{m} = -\frac{1}{T} < 0$$

$$\lambda_2 = 0$$

Consequently, the requirement  $T > 0$  implies straight-line stability for the uncontrolled craft ( $\delta = 0$ ).

**Directional Stability (Stability on Course):** Directional stability is a much stronger requirement than straight-line stability (see Figure 12.2). Directional stability requires the final path to be parallel to the initial path that is obtained for  $K_p > 0 \Rightarrow k > 0$ . Additional damping is added through  $K_d > 0$ . This corresponds to PD control. A marine craft is said to be directionally stable if both eigenvalues have negative real parts, that is

$$\operatorname{Re}\{\lambda_{1,2}\} < 0$$

The following two types of directional stability are observed:

*No oscillations* ( $d^2 - 4km \geq 0$ ): This implies that both eigenvalues are negative and real, that is  $\zeta \geq 1$  such that

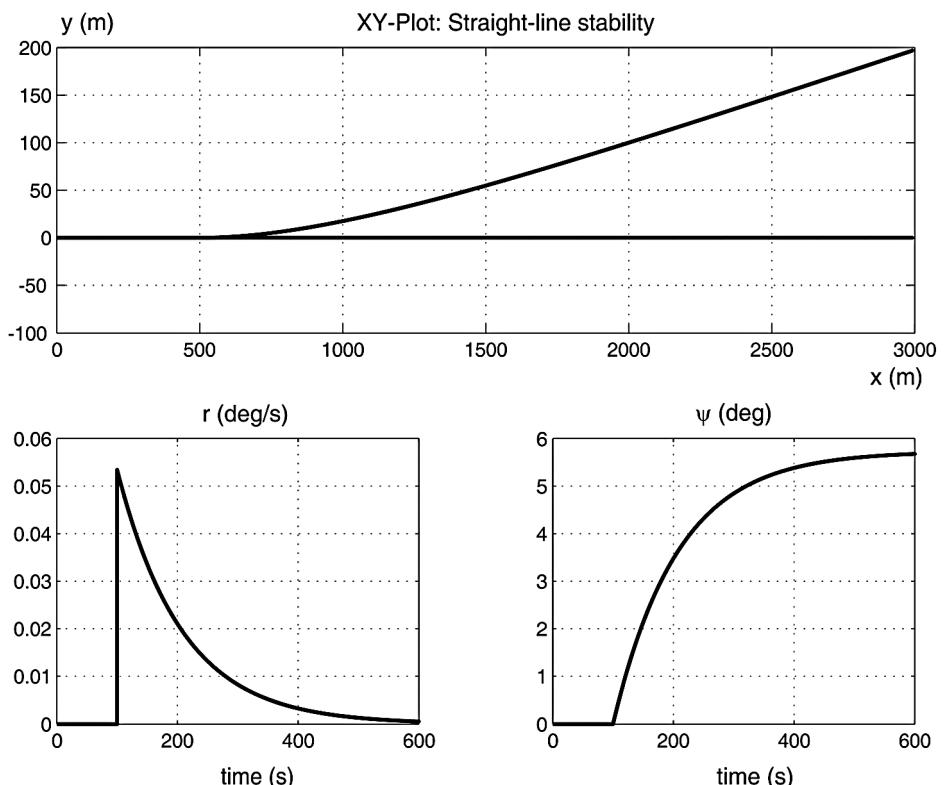
$$\lambda_{1,2} = \frac{-d \pm \sqrt{d^2 - 4km}}{2m} = \left( -\zeta \pm \sqrt{\zeta^2 - 1} \right) \omega_n < 0$$

For a critically damped system  $\zeta = 1.0$ , such that  $\lambda_{1,2} = -1/2(d/m) = -\omega_n$ .

*Damped oscillator* ( $d^2 - 4km < 0$ ): This corresponds to two imaginary eigenvalues  $\lambda_{1,2}$  with negative real parts ( $\zeta < 1$ ), that is

$$\lambda_{1,2} = \frac{-d \pm j\sqrt{4km - dm}}{2m} = \left( -\zeta \pm j\sqrt{1 - \zeta^2} \right) \omega_n$$

Directional stability for a critically damped ( $\zeta = 1.0$ ) and underdamped craft ( $\zeta = 0.1$ ) is shown in Figures 12.3–12.4. Notice the oscillations in both positions and yaw angle in Figure 12.4. Directional stability requires feedback control since there are no restoring forces in yaw. However, in heave, roll



**Figure 12.2** Straight-line stability for a ship when an impulse  $w(t)$  is injected at  $t = 100$  s.

and pitch where metacentric restoring forces are present ( $k > 0$ ) no feedback is required to damp out the oscillations.

**Positional Motion Stability:** Positional motion stability implies that the ship should return to its original path after a disturbance (see Figure 12.5). This can be achieved by including integral action in the controller. Hence, a PID controller can be designed to compensate for the unknown disturbance term  $w$  while a PD controller will generally result in a steady-state offset.

#### Example 12.1 (Straight-Line Stability)

Consider the cargo ship and oil tanker of Example 7.1. Recall that the equivalent time constant in Nomoto's first-order model was defined as

$$T := T_1 + T_2 - T_3$$

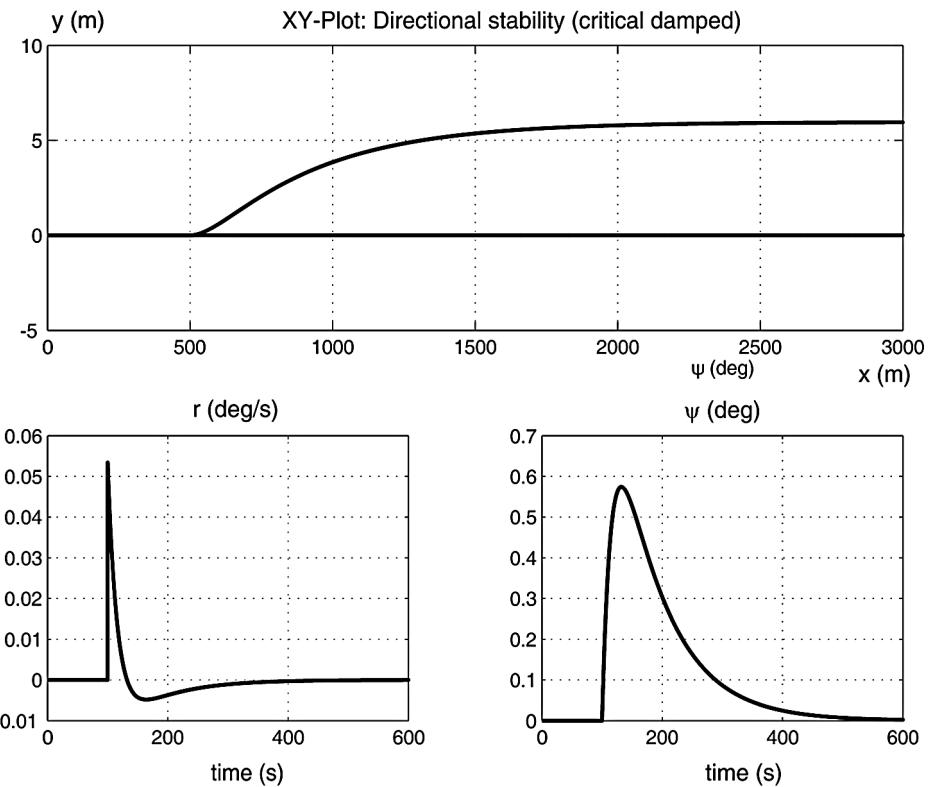
Hence, the uncontrolled cargo ship has an equivalent time constant

$$T_{\text{cargo ship}} = 118.0 + 7.8 - 18.5 = 107.3 \text{ s} > 0$$

while the oil tanker has an equivalent time constant

$$T_{\text{oil tanker}} = -124.1 + 16.4 - 46.0 = -153.7 \text{ s} < 0$$

This implies that the cargo ship is straight-line stable while the oil tanker is unstable.



**Figure 12.3** Directional stability for a critically damped ship ( $\zeta = 1.0$ ) when an impulse  $w(t)$  is injected at  $t = 100$  s.

### Criteria for Straight-Line Stability

Recall that a ship is said to be dynamically straight-line stable if it returns to a straight-line motion after a disturbance in yaw without any corrective action from the rudder. Consequently, instability refers to the case when the ship goes into a starboard or port turn without any rudder deflections. For Nomoto's first-order model straight-line motion was guaranteed for a positive time constant  $T$ . Similarly, it is possible to derive a criterion for straight-line stability for the state-space model (7.33):

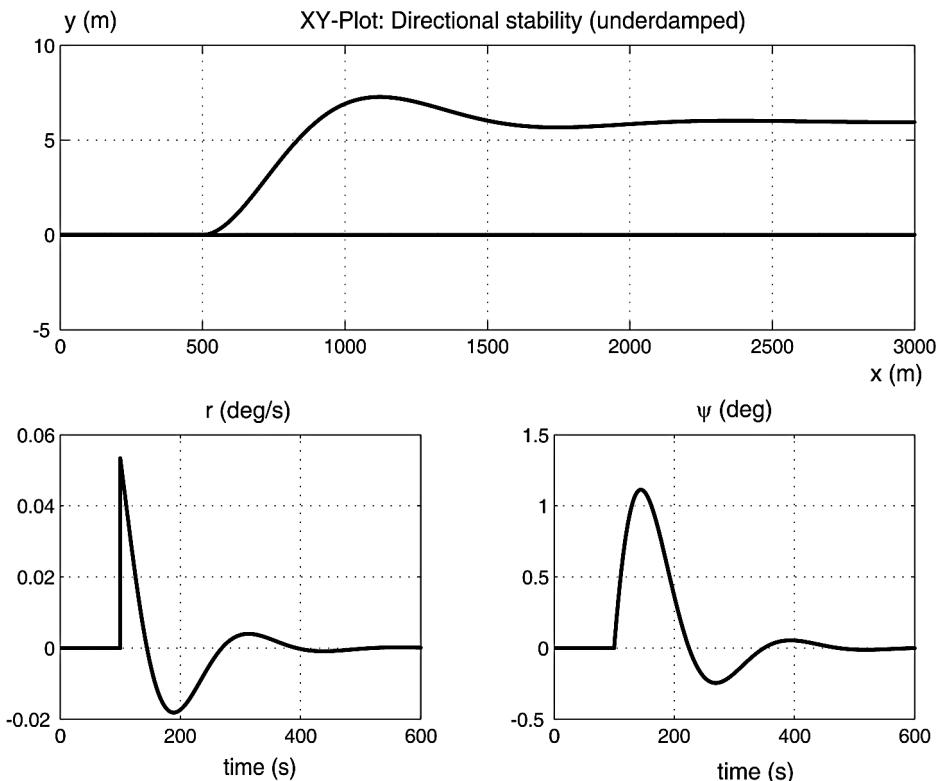
$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{N}(u_0)\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{b}\delta \quad (12.14)$$

where  $\mathbf{v} = [v, r]^\top$ . Applications of *Laplace's transformation* to the linear model (12.14) with  $\mathbf{v}(0) = \mathbf{0}$  yields

$$[\mathbf{M}s + \mathbf{N}(u_0)]\mathbf{v}(s) = \mathbf{b}\delta(s) \quad (12.15)$$

Consequently,

$$\mathbf{v}(s) = [\mathbf{M}s + \mathbf{N}(u_0)]^{-1}\mathbf{b}\delta(s) = \frac{\text{adj}(\mathbf{M}s + \mathbf{N}(u_0))}{\det(\mathbf{M}s + \mathbf{N}(u_0))}\mathbf{b}\delta(s) \quad (12.16)$$



**Figure 12.4** Directional stability for an underdamped ship ( $\zeta = 0.1$ ) when an impulse  $w(t)$  is injected at  $t = 100$  s.

The characteristic equation is

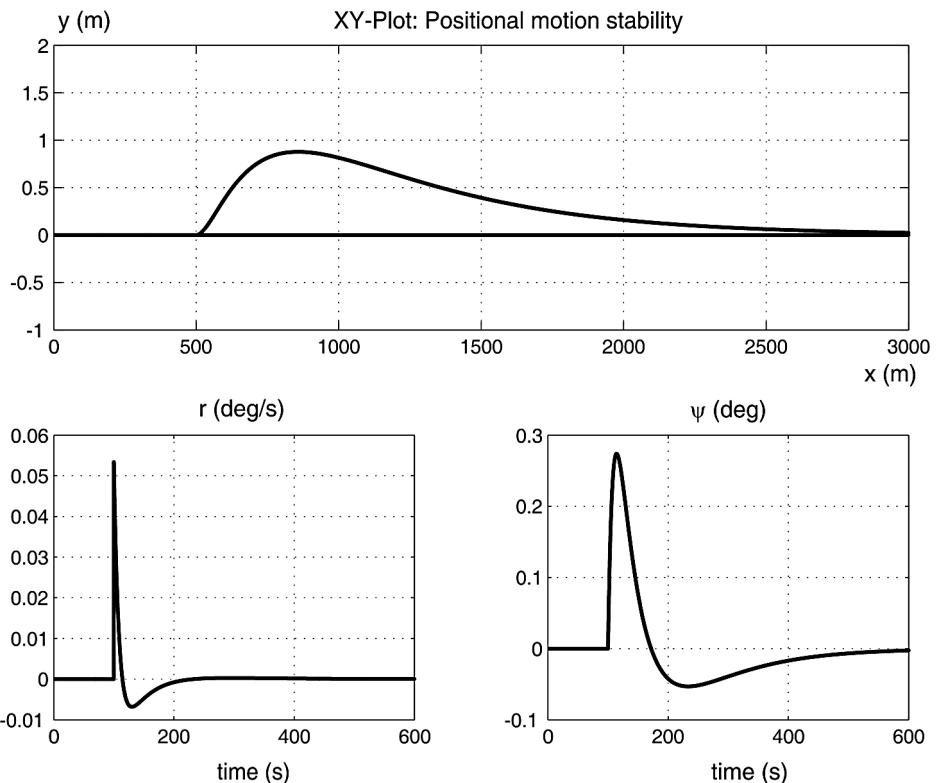
$$\det(\mathbf{M}\sigma + \mathbf{N}(u_0)) = A\sigma^2 + B\sigma + C = 0 \quad (12.17)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \det(\mathbf{M}) \\ B &= n_{11}m_{22} + n_{22}m_{11} - n_{12}m_{21} - n_{21}m_{12} \\ C &= \det(\mathbf{N}(u_0)) \end{aligned} \quad (12.18)$$

The two roots  $\sigma_{1,2}$  of (12.17), both of which must have negative real parts for open-loop stability, are

$$\operatorname{Re}\{\sigma_{1,2}\} = \operatorname{Re} \left\{ \frac{-B \pm \sqrt{B^2 - 4AC}}{2A} \right\} < 0 \quad (12.19)$$



**Figure 12.5** Positional motion stability for a PID-controlled ship when an impulse  $w(t)$  is injected at  $t = 100$  s.

The quantities  $\sigma_{1,2}$  are often referred to as the control-fixed stability indices for straight-line stability. Alternatively, the Routh stability criterion can be applied.

### Theorem 12.1 (The Routh Stability Criterion)

Consider the characteristic equation

$$a_n \lambda^n + a_{n-1} \lambda^{n-1} + a_{n-2} \lambda^{n-2} + \dots + a_0 = 0 \quad (12.20)$$

To apply the Routh criterion, the Routh array shown in Table 12.1 must be constructed. The coefficients  $a_i$  are the coefficients of the characteristic equation (12.20) and  $b_i, c_i, d_i, \dots$  are defined as

$$\begin{aligned} b_1 &= (a_{n-1}a_{n-2} - a_n a_{n-3})/a_{n-1} & b_2 &= (a_{n-1}a_{n-4} - a_n a_{n-5})/a_{n-1} & \dots \\ c_1 &= (b_1 a_{n-3} - a_{n-1} b_2)/b_1 & c_2 &= (b_1 a_{n-5} - a_{n-1} b_3)/b_1 & \dots \\ d_1 &= (c_1 b_2 - c_2 b_1)/c_1 & & & \dots \end{aligned}$$

Necessary and sufficient conditions for the system to be stable are:

1. All the coefficients of the characteristic equation must be nonzero and have the same sign.
2. All the coefficients of the first column of the Routh array must have the same sign.

**Table 12.1** Routh array

$\lambda^n$	$a_n$	$a_{n-2}$	$a_{n-4}$	...
$\lambda^{n-1}$	$a_{n-1}$	$a_{n-3}$	$a_{n-5}$	...
$\lambda^{n-2}$	$b_1$	$b_2$	$b_3$	...
$\lambda^{n-3}$	$c_1$	$c_2$	$c_3$	...
$\lambda^{n-4}$	$d_1$	$d_2$	$d_3$	...
⋮	...			

If Condition 2 is violated, the number of sign changes will indicate how many roots of the characteristic equation will have positive real parts. Hence, the system will be unstable.

**Proof.** See Routh (1877).

According to the Routh stability criterion, necessary and sufficient conditions for a ship given by (12.14) with characteristic equation (12.17) to be stable are

$$A, B, C > 0 \quad (12.21)$$

The first condition  $A = \det(\mathbf{M}) > 0$  is automatically satisfied since the inertia matrix  $\mathbf{M}$  is always positive definite for a marine craft. Condition  $B > 0$  implies that

$$n_{11}m_{22} + n_{22}m_{11} > n_{12}m_{21} + n_{21}m_{12} \quad (12.22)$$

Consequently, the products of the diagonal elements of  $\mathbf{M}$  and  $N(u_0)$  must be larger than the products of the off-diagonal elements. This is satisfied for most ships. Consequently, condition (12.21) reduces to

$$C = \det(N(u_0)) > 0 \quad (12.23)$$

This condition has also been verified by Abkowitz (1964), who stated the following theorem.

**Theorem 12.2 (Straight-Line Stability (Abkowitz, 1964))**

A ship is dynamically stable in straight-line motion if the hydrodynamic derivatives satisfy

$$\begin{aligned} \det(N(u_0)) &= \det \begin{bmatrix} -Y_v & mu_0 - Y_r \\ -N_v & mx_g u_0 - N_r \end{bmatrix} \\ &= Y_v(N_r - mx_g u_0) - N_v(Y_r - mu_0) > 0 \end{aligned} \quad (12.24)$$

**Proof.** This is seen as a consequence of (12.23) and (12.24).

It is interesting to notice that making  $C$  more positive will improve stability and thus reduce the ship's maneuverability, and the other way around. Straight-line stability implies that the new path of the ship will be a straight line after a disturbance in yaw. The direction of the new path will usually differ from the initial path. Contrary to this, unstable ships will go into a starboard or port turn without any rudder

deflection. It should be noted that most modern large tankers are slightly unstable. For such ships, the criterion (12.24) corresponds to one of the poles being in the right half-plane.

### Straight-Line Stability in Terms of Time Constants

The criterion (12.21) can be related to Nomoto's second-order model (7.46) by noticing that

$$T_1 T_2 = \frac{A}{C} > 0, \quad T_1 + T_2 = \frac{B}{C} > 0 \quad (12.25)$$

Consequently, straight-line stability is guaranteed if  $T_1 > 0$  and  $T_2 > 0$ . This can also be seen from

$$\sigma_{1,2} = -\frac{1}{T_{1,2}} = \operatorname{Re} \left\{ \frac{-B \pm \sqrt{B^2 - 4AC}}{2A} \right\} < 0 \quad (12.26)$$

### Criteria for Directional Stability

Dynamic stability on course, or directional stability, cannot be obtained without activating the rudder. Usually a PID control system is used to generate the necessary rudder action to stabilize the ship. For simplicity, consider a PD controller:

$$\delta = -K_p(\psi - \psi_d) - K_d r \quad (12.27)$$

which after substitution into Nomoto's second-order model yields the closed-loop dynamics:

$$T_1 T_2 \psi^{(3)} + (T_1 + T_2 + T_3 K K_d) \ddot{\psi} + (1 + K K_d + T_3 K K_p) \dot{\psi} + K K_p \psi = K K_p \psi_d \quad (12.28)$$

From this expression, the cubic characteristic equation

$$A\sigma^3 + B\sigma^2 + C\sigma + D = 0 \quad (12.29)$$

is recognized, where

$$A = T_1 T_2 \quad (12.30)$$

$$B = T_1 + T_2 + T_3 K K_d \quad (12.31)$$

$$C = 1 + K K_d + T_3 K K_p \quad (12.32)$$

$$D = K K_p \quad (12.33)$$

The requirement for directional stability is

$$\operatorname{Re}\{\sigma_{1,2,3}\} < 0 \quad (12.34)$$

This can be checked by forming the Routh array:

$$\begin{array}{cc} A & C \\ B & D \\ \frac{BC-AD}{B} & 0 \\ D & \end{array} \quad (12.35)$$

Consequently, sufficient and necessary conditions for the ship to be dynamically stable on course are

$$A, B, C, D > 0 \quad (12.36)$$

$$BC - AD > 0 \quad (12.37)$$

This again implies that the controller gains  $K_p$  and  $K_d$  must be chosen such that the conditions (12.36) and (12.37) are satisfied.

### 12.1.2 Maneuverability

Several ship maneuvers can be used to evaluate the robustness, performance and limitations of a ship. This is usually done by defining a criterion in terms of a *maneuvering index* or by simply using a *maneuvering characteristic* to compare the maneuverability of the test ship with previously obtained results from other ships. A frequently used measure of maneuverability is the turning index of Norrbin (1965).

#### The Norrbin Measure of Maneuverability

Norrbin (1965) defines the *turning index* as

$$P := \frac{\psi'(t' = 1)}{\delta'(t' = 1)} \quad (12.38)$$

where  $t' = t(U/L)$  is the nondimensional time.  $P$  is a measure of turning ability or maneuverability since it can be interpreted as the heading change per unit rudder angle in one ship length traveled at  $U = 1$  m/s. An expression for  $P$  can be found by solving the ODE:

$$T' \ddot{\psi}' + \dot{\psi}' = K' \delta' \quad (12.39)$$

with  $\delta' = \text{constant}$ . This results in

$$\psi'(t') = K'[t' - T' + T' \exp(-(t'/T'))] \delta'(t') \quad (12.40)$$

A second-order Taylor expansion of  $\exp(-t'/T')$  is

$$\exp(-t'/T') = 1 - \frac{t'}{T'} + \frac{(t')^2}{2(T')^2} + O(3) \quad (12.41)$$

such that

$$\frac{\psi'(t')}{\delta'(t')} \approx K' \left[ t' - T' + T' \left( 1 - \frac{t'}{T'} + \frac{(t')^2}{2(T')^2} \right) \right] = K \frac{(t')^2}{2T'} \quad (12.42)$$

$$\frac{\psi'(t' = 1)}{\delta'(t' = 1)} \approx K' \left[ \frac{(t')^2}{2T'} \right]_{t'=1} = \frac{K'}{2T'} \quad (12.43)$$

Consequently,

$$P \approx \frac{1}{2} \frac{K'}{T'} \quad (12.44)$$

The  $P$  number is a good measure of maneuverability for course-stable ships. Norrbin concludes that  $P > 0.3$  guarantees a reasonable standard of course-change quality for most ships while  $P > 0.2$  seems to be sufficient for large oil tankers. For poorly stable ships it is recommended to use  $P$  together with another maneuverability index, for instance the slope  $dr'/d\delta'$  or the width of the  $r'-\delta'$  loop (see Figure 12.12 later).

### Maneuvering Characteristics

A maneuvering characteristic can be obtained by changing or keeping a predefined course and speed of the ship in a systematic manner by means of active controls. For most surface vessels these controls are rudders, fins, propellers and thrusters. However, since ship maneuverability depends on the water depth, environmental forces, ship speed and hydrodynamic derivatives care must be taken when performing a full-scale maneuvering test. A guide for sea trials describing how these maneuvers should be performed is found in SNAME (1989). The following standard ship maneuvers have been proposed by the International Towing Tank Conference (ITTC):

- **Turning Circle:** This trial is mainly used to calculate the ship's steady turning radius and to check how well the steering machine performs under course-changing maneuvers.
- **Kempf's Zigzag Maneuver:** The zigzag test is a standard maneuver used to compare the maneuvering properties and control characteristic of a ship with those of other ships. Another feature is that the experimental results of the test can be used to calculate the  $K$  and  $T$  values of Nomoto's first-order model.
- **Pull-Out Maneuver:** The pull-out maneuver can be used to check whether the ship is straight-line stable or not. The maneuver can also be used to indicate the degree of stability.
- **Dieudonné's Spiral Maneuver:** The spiral maneuver is also used to check straight-line stability. The maneuver gives an indication of the range of validity of the linear theory.
- **Bech's Reverse Spiral Maneuver:** The reverse spiral maneuver can be used for unstable ships to produce a nonlinear maneuvering characteristic. The results from the test indicate which rudder corrections are required to stabilize an unstable ship.
- **Stopping Trials:** Crash stops and low-speed stopping trials can be used to determine the ship's head reach and maneuverability during emergency situations.

### Turning Circle

This is probably the oldest maneuvering test. The test can be used as an indication on how well the steering machine and rudder control performs during course-changing maneuvers. It is also used to calculate standard measures of maneuverability such as *tactical diameter*, *advance* and *transfer* shown in Figure 12.6; see Gertler and Hagen (1960) for a detailed description.

### Matlab

The turning circle for the Mariner class vessel is computed using the MSS toolbox script ExTurnCircle.m, where:

```
t_final = 700; % final simulation time (sec)
t_rudderexecute = 100; % time rudder is executed (sec)
h = 0.1; % sampling time (sec)

% Mariner class cargo ship, cruise speed U0 = 7.7 m/s
x = zeros(7,1); % x=[u v r x y psi delta]' (initial values)
u i= -15*pi/180; % delta_c=-delta_R at time t = t_rudderexecute

[t,u,v,r,x,y,psi,U] =...
turncircle('mariner', x, ui, t_final, t_rudderexecute, h);
```

The results are plotted in Figure 12.6. Similar results are obtained by replacing mariner.m with the container ship, container.m; see ExTurnCircle.m.

The maneuvering characteristics for the Mariner class vessel were computed to be:

---

Rudder execute (x coordinate):	769 m
Steady turning radius:	711 m
Maximum transfer:	1 315 m
Maximum advance:	947 m
Transfer at 90 degrees heading:	534 m
Advance at 90 degrees heading:	943 m
Tactical diameter at 180 degrees heading:	1 311 m

---

The *steady turning radius R* is perhaps the most interesting quantity obtained from the turning trials. In the maneuvering trial code of the 14th ITTC (1975) it is proposed to turn the ship over at maximum speed and with a rudder angle of minimum 15° to obtain the turning circle. The rudder angle  $\delta$  should be held constant such that a constant rate of turn is reached (in practice a turning circle of 540° may be necessary).

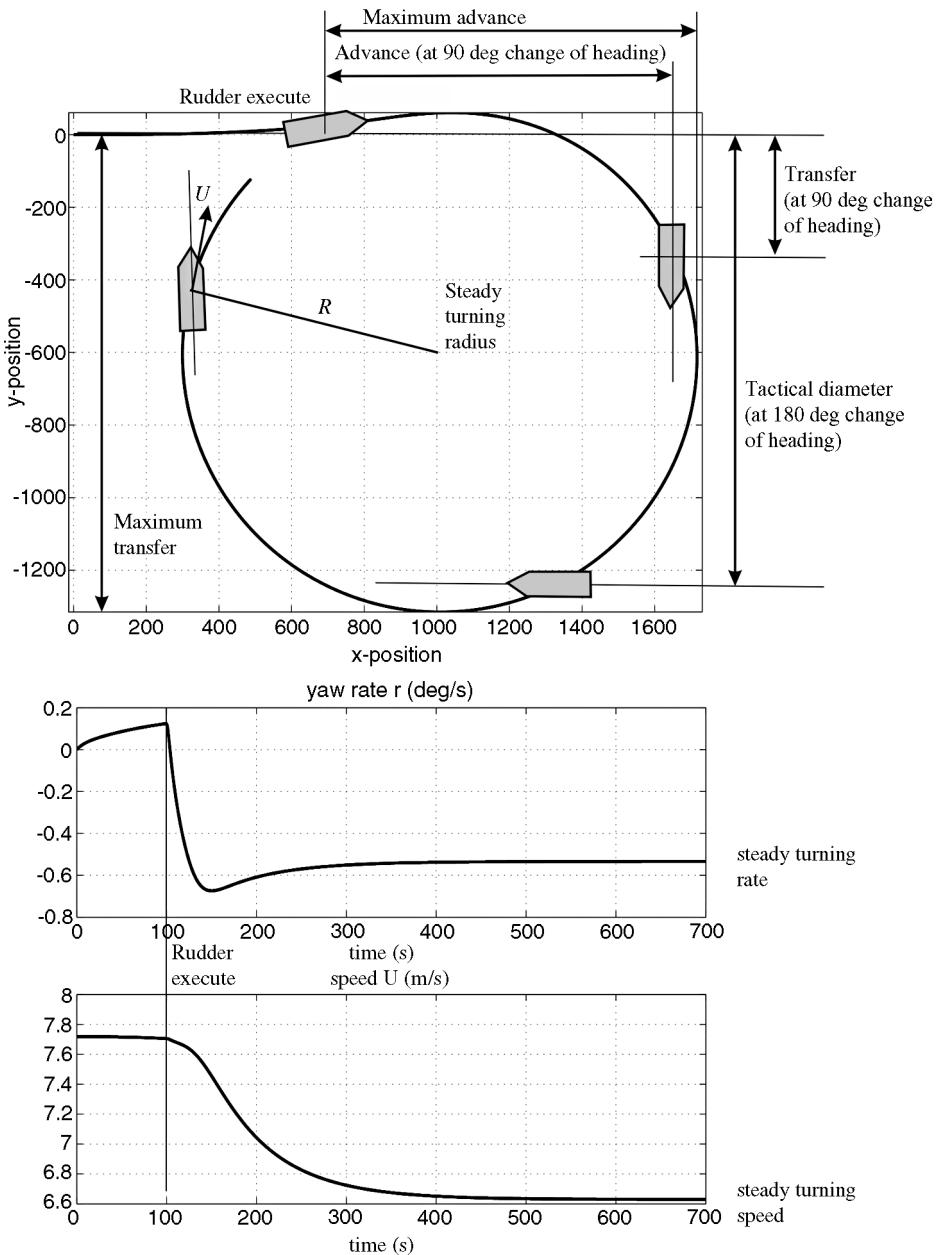
The output from a positioning system is used to calculate the tactical diameter, steady turning radius, maximum advance and maximum transfer. A typical turning circle corresponding to a negative rudder angle is shown in Figure 12.6.

For a constant rudder angle  $\delta$ , the ship will move in a circle with constant turning radius  $R$  and speed  $U$  in the steady state, that is  $\dot{v} = \mathbf{0}$ . Solving (7.33) for the steady-state solution of  $v = [v, r]^T$  yields

$$N(u_0)v = b\delta \implies v = N^{-1}(u_0)b\delta \quad (12.45)$$

The equation for  $r$  in this expression becomes

$$r = \frac{(Y_v N_\delta - N_v Y_\delta)}{Y_v(N_r - mx_g u_0) - N_v(Y_r - mu_0)} \delta \quad (12.46)$$



**Figure 12.6** Turning circle, yaw rate and speed for the Mariner class vessel for a constant rudder angle  $\delta_R = -15$  degrees applied at  $t = 100$  s.

The ship's turning radius  $R$  is defined as

$$R := \frac{U}{r} \quad \text{where} \quad U = \sqrt{u^2 + v^2} \quad (12.47)$$

Introducing the length  $L = L_{pp}$  of the ship, the following expression for the ratio  $(R/L)$  is obtained:

$$\left(\frac{R}{L}\right) = \left(\frac{U}{L}\right) \frac{C}{(Y_v N_\delta - N_v Y_\delta)} \frac{1}{\delta}, \quad \delta \neq 0 \quad (12.48)$$

where

$$C = \det(N(u_0)) = Y_v(N_r - mx_g u_0) - N_v(Y_r - mu_0) > 0 \quad (\text{stable ship})$$

is recognized as one of the stability derivatives in the straight-line stability criterion discussed in Section 12.1.1. From (12.48) it is seen that increased stability (large  $C$ ) implies that the turning radius will increase. Consequently, a highly stable ship requires more maneuvering effort than a marginally stable one. The ratio  $(R/L)$  can also be written in terms of nondimensional quantities by

$$\left(\frac{R}{L}\right) = \frac{Y'_v(N'_r - m'x'_g) - N'_v(Y'_r - m')}{Y'_v N'_\delta - N'_v Y'_\delta} \frac{1}{\delta}, \quad \delta \neq 0 \quad (12.49)$$

This formula is independent of the ship speed. It should be noted that the formulae for the turning radius are based on linear theory, which assumes that  $\delta$  is small and accordingly that  $R$  is large.

Another feature of the turning test is that the Nomoto gain and time constants can be determined. This is illustrated in the following example where a cargo ship is considered.

### **Example 12.2 (Determination of the Nomoto Gain and Time Constants)**

*The Nomoto gain and time constants can be computed from a turning test by using nonlinear least-squares curve fitting, for instance. Solving the ODE:*

$$T\dot{r} + r = K\delta \quad (12.50)$$

for a step input  $\delta = \delta_0 = \text{constant}$  yields

$$r(t) = \exp(-t/T)r(0) + [1 - \exp(-t/T)] K\delta_0 \quad (12.51)$$

where  $K$  and  $T$  are unknowns. The Matlab MSS toolbox script ExKT.m fits this model to a simulated step response of the model mariner.m, which is a nonlinear model of the Mariner class vessel.

The results for a step  $\delta_0 = 5^\circ$  and  $U = 7.7 \text{ m/s} = 15 \text{ knots}$ , are (see Figure 12.7)

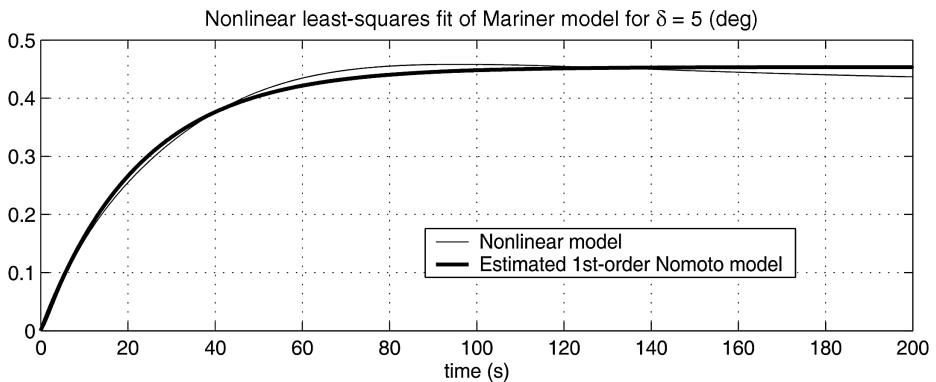
$$K = 0.09 \text{ s}^{-1} \quad (12.52)$$

$$T = 22.6 \text{ s} \quad (12.53)$$

The Norrbom measure of maneuverability becomes

$$P = \frac{1}{2} \frac{K'}{T'} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{K}{T} \left(\frac{L}{U}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{0.09}{22.6}\right) \left(\frac{160.9}{7.7}\right)^2 = 0.87 \quad (12.54)$$

which guarantees good maneuverability since  $P > 0.3$ . The turning circle is shown in Figure 12.6, indicating that the steady-state turning radius is 711 m.



**Figure 12.7** Plot showing the estimated linear model and the nonlinear Mariner model for a step  $\delta = \delta_0 = 5$  degrees.

### Matlab

```
% ExKT Script for computation of Nomoto gain and time constants
% using nonlinear least squares. The rudder input is 5 deg at t=0

N = 2000;           % number of samples
h = 0.1;            % sample time

xout = zeros(N,2);
x = zeros(7,1);
delta_R = 5*(pi/180);          % rudder angle step input

for i=1:N,
    xout(i,:) = [(i-1)*h ,x(3)];
    xdot = mariner(x,delta_R);      % nonlinear Mariner model
    x = euler2(xdot,x,h);         % Euler integration
end

% time-series
tdata = xout(:,1);
rdata = xout(:,2)*180/pi;

% nonlinear least-squares parametrization: x(1)=1/T and x(2)=K
x0 = [0.01 0.1]';
F = inline('exp(-tdata*x(1))*0 +...
            x(2)*(1-exp(-tdata*x(1)))*5','x','tdata')
x = lsqcurvefit(F,x0, tdata, rdata);

plot(tdata,rdata,'g',tdata,exp(-tdata*x(1))*0 +...
      x(2)*(1-exp(-tdata*x(1)))*5,'r'),grid
```

```

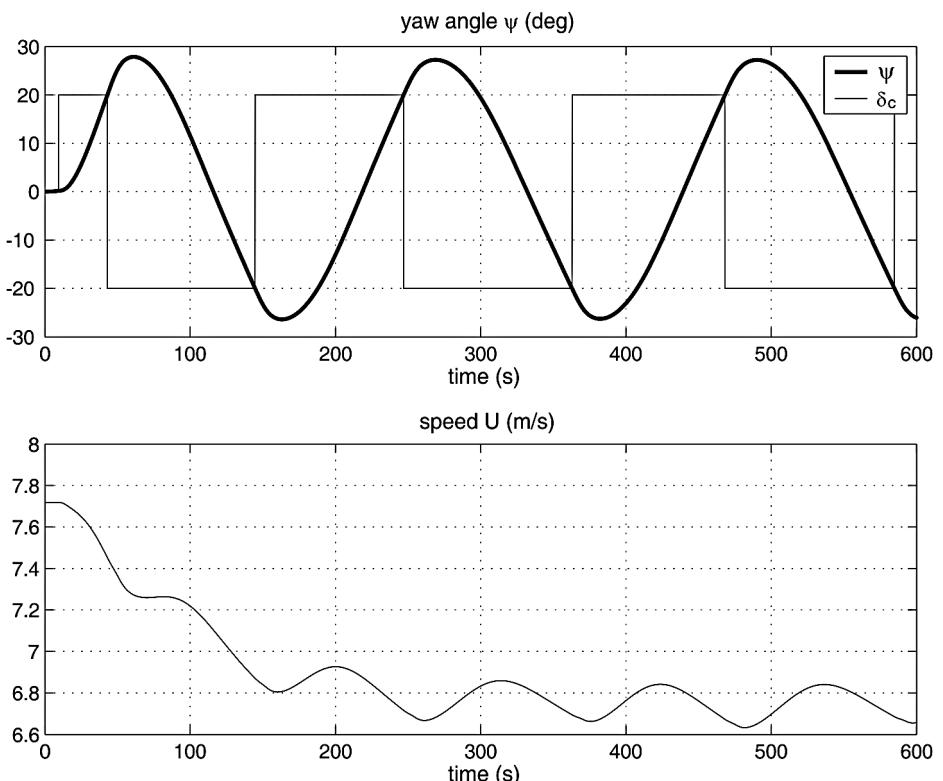
title('NLS fit of Mariner model for \delta = 5 (deg)')
xlabel('time (s)')
legend('Nonlinear model', 'Estimated 1st-order Nomoto model')

```

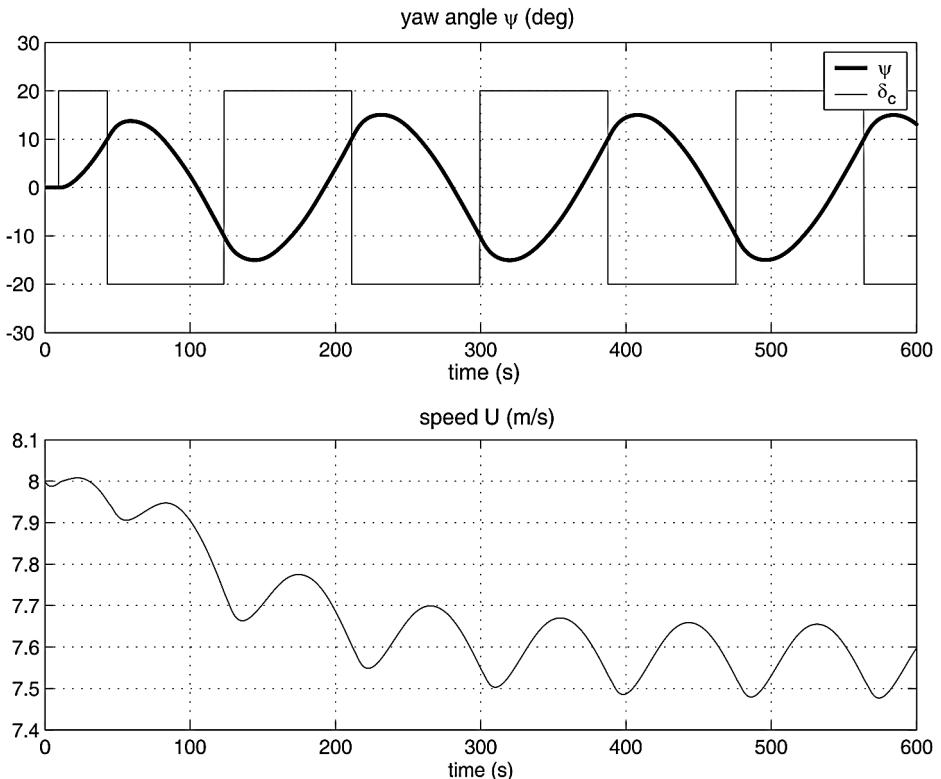
### Kempf's Zigzag Maneuver

The zigzag test was first proposed by Kempf (1932). Comprehensive test results of 75 freighters are published in Kempf (1944). The zigzag time response (see Figures 12.8–12.9) is obtained by moving the rudder  $20^\circ$  to starboard from an initially straight course. The rudder setting is kept constant until the heading is changed  $20^\circ$ , and then the rudder is reversed  $20^\circ$  to port. Again, this rudder setting is maintained until the ship's heading has reached  $20^\circ$  in the opposite direction. This process continues until a total of five rudder step responses have been completed. This test is usually referred to as a  $20^\circ$ – $20^\circ$  maneuver; the first angle refers to the actual rudder settings while the second angle denotes how much the heading angle should change before the rudder is reversed.

The zigzag maneuver was standardized by the International Towing Tank Conference (ITTC) in 1963. For larger ships, ITTC has recommended the use of a  $10^\circ$ – $10^\circ$  or a  $20^\circ$ – $10^\circ$  maneuver to reduce the time and waterspace required.



**Figure 12.8** A  $20^\circ$ – $20^\circ$  maneuver for the Mariner class vessel.



**Figure 12.9** A  $20^\circ$ – $10^\circ$  maneuver for the container ship.

The only apparatus required to perform the test is a compass and a stopwatch. Alternatively, a computer interfaced for real-time logging of compass data can be used. The results from the zigzag maneuver can be used to compare the maneuvering properties of different ships. Maneuvering trials are also used in the design process since it is possible to test scale models in towing tanks to see how well they perform. In addition, maneuvering characteristics can be computed using hull parameters and by performing computer simulations based on seakeeping and maneuvering models.

#### **Example 12.3 (Zigzag Maneuvering Trials)**

Both the Mariner class vessel (*mariner.m*) and the container ship (*container.m*) are simulated for a  $20^\circ$ – $20^\circ$  and a  $20^\circ$ – $10^\circ$  zigzag maneuver, respectively, by using the Matlab script *ExZigZag.m*.

The simulation results for the two vessels are shown in Figures 12.8–12.9.

#### **Matlab**

```
t_final = 600; % final simulation time (sec)
t_rudderexecute = 10; % time rudder is executed (sec)
h = 0.1; % sampling time (sec)
```

```
% 20-20 zigzag maneuver for the Mariner class cargo ship
% cruise speed U0 = 7.7 m/s (see mariner.m)
x = zeros(7,1); % x = [ u v r x y psi delta ]' (initial values)
ui = 0; % delta_c = 0 for time t < t_rudderexecute
[t,u,v,r,x,y,psi,U] =...
    zigzag('mariner',x,ui,t_final,t_rudderexecute,h,[20,20]);

% 20-10 zigzag maneuver for a container ship
% cruise speed 8.0 m/s see container.m
x = [8.0 0 0 0 0 0 0 70]'; % x = [ u v r x y psi delta n ]'
delta_c = 0; % delta_c = 0 for time t < t_rudderexecute
n_c = 80; % n_c = propeller revolution in rpm
ui = [delta_c, n_c];
[t,u,v,r,x,y,psi,U] =...
    zigzag('container',x,ui,t_final,t_rudderexecute,h,[20,10]);
```

### Pull-Out Maneuver

In 1969 Roy Burcher proposed a simple test procedure to determine whether a ship is straight-line stable or not. This test is referred to as the pull-out maneuver (12th ITTC, 1969). The pull-out maneuver involves a pair of maneuvers in which a rudder angle of approximately 20° is applied and returned to zero after steady turning has been attained. Both a port and a starboard turn should be performed.

During the test the ship's rate of turn must be measured or at least calculated by numerical derivation of the measured compass heading. If the ship is straight-line stable the rate of turn will decay to the same value for both the starboard and port turns (see Figure 12.10). The ship is unstable if the steady rate of turn from the port and starboard turns differ (see Figure 12.11). The difference between these two steady rates of turn corresponds exactly to the height of Dieudonné's spiral loop.

#### **Example 12.4 (Pullout Maneuver for a Stable and an Unstable Ship)**

Both the Mariner class vessel (*mariner.m*) and the Esso Osaka tanker (*tanker.m*) are simulated under a pullout maneuver by using the Matlab script *ExPullout.m*.

#### **Matlab:**

```
delta_c = 20*pi/180; % rudder angle for maneuver (rad)
h = 0.1; % sampling time (sec)

% Mariner class cargo ship, speed U0 = 7.7 m/s (see mariner.m)
x = zeros(7,1); % x = [ u v r x y psi delta ]' (initial values)
```

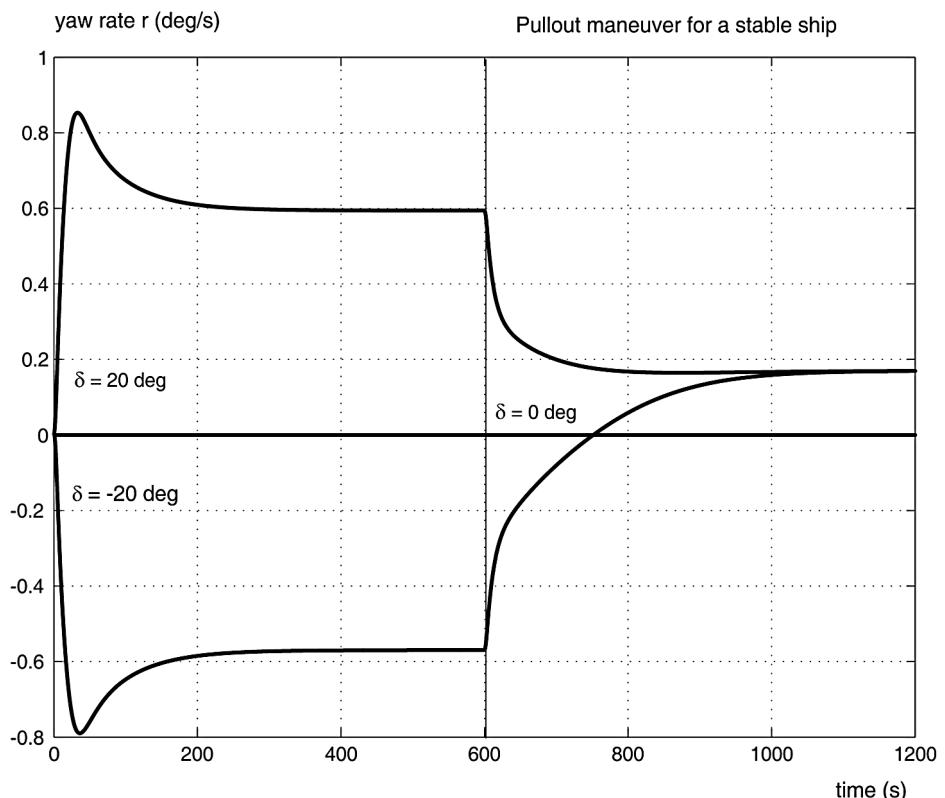
```

ui = delta_c;      % ui = delta_c
[t,r1,r2] = pullout('mariner',x,ui,h);

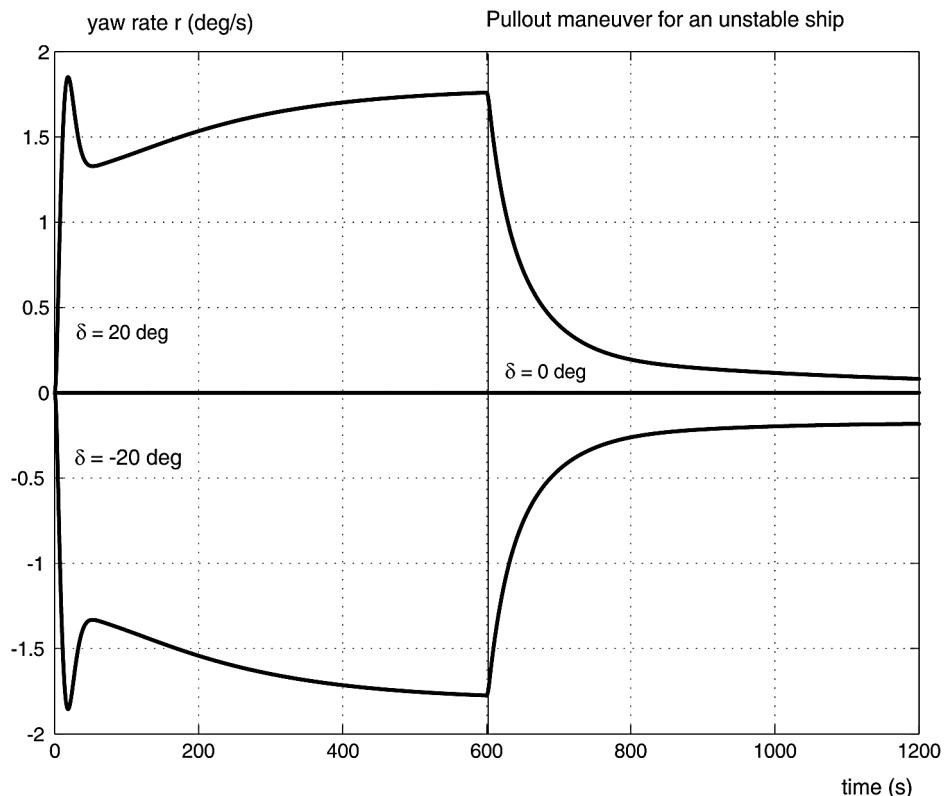
% The Esso Osaka tanker (see tanker.m)
n = 80;
U = 8.23;
x = [ U 0 0 0 0 0 n ]';    % x = [ u v r x y psi delta n ]'
n_c = 80;                  % n_c = propeller revolution in rpm
depth = 200;                % water depth
ui = [delta_c, n_c, depth];
[t,r1,r2] = pullout('tanker',x,ui,h);

```

The results are shown in Figures 12.10–12.11 where the curves meet for the stable ship (Mariner class vessel) while there is an offset between the curves for the unstable model of the Esso Osaka tanker.



**Figure 12.10** Pull-out maneuver for the Mariner class vessels. Notice that the positive and negative curves meet for the stable ship.



**Figure 12.11** Pullout maneuver for the Esso Osaka tanker. Notice that the positive and negative curves do not meet.

### Dieudonné's Spiral Maneuver

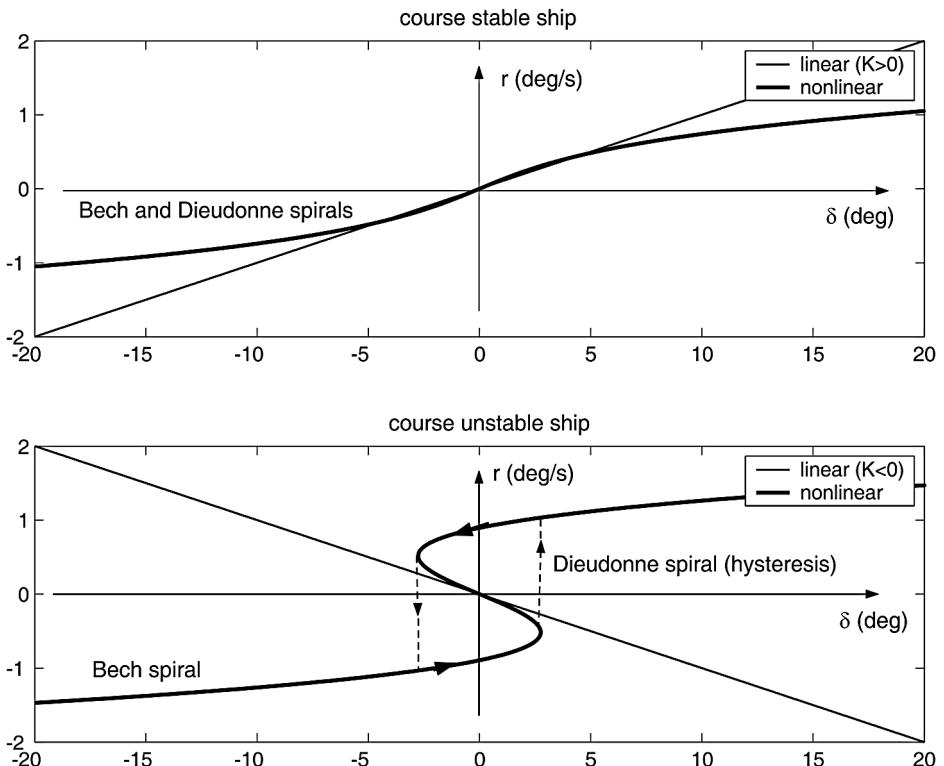
The direct spiral test was published first in 1949–1950 by the French scientist Jean Dieudonné. An English translation is found in Dieudonné (1953). The direct spiral maneuver is used to check straight-line stability. As seen from Figure 12.12, the maneuver also gives an indication of the degree of stability and the range of validity of the linear theory.

To perform the test the ship should initially be held on a straight course. The rudder angle is then put to  $25^\circ$  starboard and held until a steady yawing rate is obtained. After this the rudder angle is decreased in steps of  $5^\circ$  and again held until constant yawing rates are obtained for all the rudder angles. The procedure is performed for all rudder angles between  $25^\circ$  starboard and  $25^\circ$  port. In the range around zero rudder angle the step of  $5^\circ$  rudder should be reduced to obtain more precise values. The results are plotted in an  $r$ – $\delta$  diagram, as shown in Figure 12.12. It should be noted that the spiral maneuver should be performed in still air and calm water to obtain the best results.

For straight-line unstable ships it is recommended to use Bech's reverse spiral maneuver.

### Bech's Reverse Spiral Maneuver

For stable ships both Dieudonné's direct and Bech's reverse spiral tests can be used. For unstable ships within the limits indicated by the pull-out maneuver Bech's reverse spiral should be applied. The reverse



**Figure 12.12** An  $r-\delta$  diagram showing the Dieudonne and Bech spirals for both a stable and course-unstable ship. Notice the hysteresis loop in the Dieudonne spiral for the unstable ship.

spiral test was first published by Mogens Bech in 1966 and later in 1968 (Bech, 1968). Since then the reverse spiral test has been quite popular, because of the simplicity and reliability of the method. The reverse spiral test is also less time-consuming than Dieudonné's spiral test.

By observing that the ship steering characteristic is nonlinear outside a limited area, Bech (1968) suggested that one describes the *mean* value of the required rudder deflection  $\delta_{ss}$  to steer the ship at a constant rate of turn  $r_{ss}$  as a nonlinear function:

$$\delta_{ss} = H_B(r_{ss}) \quad (12.55)$$

where  $H_B(r_{ss})$  is a nonlinear function describing the maneuvering characteristic.

This can be understood by considering Nomoto's second-order model:

$$T_1 T_2 \ddot{r} + (T_1 + T_2) \dot{r} + K H_B(r) = K(\delta + T_3 \dot{\delta}) \quad (12.56)$$

where the linear term  $r$  has been replaced with a function  $H_B(r)$ . Assuming that  $r = r_{ss}$  is constant in the steady state, that is  $\ddot{r} = \dot{r} = \dot{\delta} = 0$ , directly gives (12.55). This implies that the  $r-\delta$  curve will be a single-valued (one-to-one) function of  $r$  for both the stable and unstable ship (see Figure 12.12). If the conventional spiral test is applied to an unstable ship a hysteresis loop will be observed.

The full-scale test is performed by measuring the necessary rudder action required to bring the ship into a desired rate of turn. For an unstable ship this implies that the rudder angle will oscillate about a mean rudder angle. The amplitude of the rudder oscillations should be kept to a minimum. After some time a *balance condition* is reached and both the mean rudder angle and rate of turn can be calculated. Care should be taken for large ships since they will require some more time to converge to their “balance condition”.

## 12.2 PID Control and Acceleration Feedback

This section discusses PID control design for SISO and MIMO motion control systems. The presented methods are used in many industrial systems. The PID control laws are also extended to include optional acceleration feedback. This topic is also covered by Lindegaard (2003), where experimental results with a model ship are used to document performance improvements due to acceleration feedback. Acceleration feedback can be implemented in conjunction with PID control without increasing the demand for control energy.

### 12.2.1 Linear Mass–Damper–Spring Systems

Consider the following two equivalent systems:

$$m\ddot{x} + d\dot{x} + kx = 0 \quad (12.57)$$

$$\ddot{x} + 2\xi\omega_n\dot{x} + \omega_n^2x = 0 \quad (12.58)$$

The step response is shown in Figure 12.13. From (12.57) and (12.58) it follows that

$$2\xi\omega_n = \frac{d}{m}, \quad \omega_n^2 = \frac{k}{m} \quad (12.59)$$

For second-order systems it is convenient to introduce

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_n &= \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} && \text{natural frequency (undamped oscillator corresponding to } d = 0) \\ \zeta &= \frac{d}{2m\omega_n} && \text{relative damping ratio} \end{aligned}$$

#### Damped Oscillator

For the damped system  $d > 0$ , the frequency of the oscillation will be smaller than the natural frequency. This can be explained by considering the eigenvalues of the mass–damper–spring system (12.58):

$$\lambda_{1,2} = -\underbrace{\zeta\omega_n}_a \pm j\omega \quad (12.60)$$

From Figure 12.14 it is seen that

$$a^2 + \omega^2 = \omega_n^2, \quad \zeta = \frac{a}{\omega_n} = \cos(\phi) \quad (12.61)$$

**Matlab**

The step responses in Figure 12.13 is computed using (see ExMDS.m):

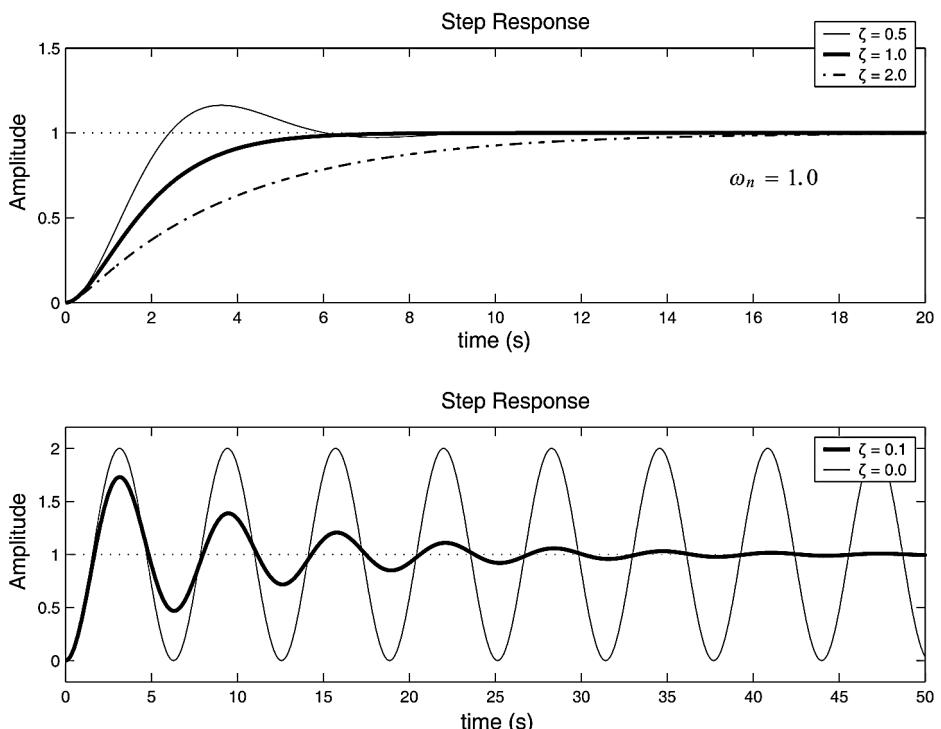
```

wn = 1; % natural frequency

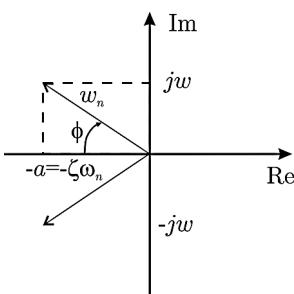
subplot(211)
t = 0:0.01:20;
z = 0.5; sys = tf([wn*wn],[1 2*z*wn wn*wn]); step(sys,t)
hold on
z = 1.0; sys = tf([wn*wn],[1 2*z*wn wn*wn]); step(sys,t)
z = 2.0; sys = tf([wn*wn],[1 2*z*wn wn*wn]); step(sys,t)
hold off

subplot(212)
t = 0:0.01:50;
z = 0.1; sys = tf([wn*wn],[1 2*z*wn wn*wn]); step(sys,t)
hold on
sys = tf([wn*wn],[1 0 wn*wn]); step(sys,t)
hold off

```



**Figure 12.13** The upper plot shows a mass–damper–spring system for different relative damping ratios. The lower plot shows the undamped oscillator together with a damped oscillator. The plots are generated by ExMDS.m.



**Figure 12.14** Graphical illustration of natural frequency  $\omega_n$ , frequency of the damped system  $\omega$  and absolute damping factor  $a$ .

and

$$a = \text{absolute damping factor}$$

$$\omega = \text{frequency of oscillation (damped system)}$$

The undamped oscillator is obtained by choosing  $a = 0$ . It is convenient to set

$$\omega = r\omega_n \quad (12.62)$$

where  $r$  is a reduction factor denoting the ratio between the natural frequency  $\omega_n$  and the frequency  $\omega$  of the linearly damped system. For marine craft a reduction of 0.5% in the natural frequency is common (Faltinsen, 1990). Hence,

$$r = 1 - \frac{0.5}{100} = 0.995 \quad (12.63)$$

From (12.61) and (12.62) it is seen that

$$a^2 + (r\omega_n)^2 = \omega_n^2 \quad (12.64)$$

⇓

$$a = \underbrace{\sqrt{1 - r^2}}_{\zeta} \omega_n \quad (12.65)$$

For  $r = 0.995$  we obtain  $\zeta = 0.1$ , which is quite typical for a ship with bilge keels while the heave and pitch motions usually are more damped, for instance  $\zeta = 0.2$ . Next,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{m} &= 2\zeta\omega_n \\ &= 2\zeta\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \end{aligned} \quad (12.66)$$

which yields the following formula for linear damping:

$$d = 2\zeta\sqrt{km}, \quad \zeta = \sqrt{1 - r^2} \quad (12.67)$$

This formula is quite useful to determine the linear damping in *heave*, *roll* and *pitch* of an uncontrolled marine craft (open loop) since the mass  $m$  and spring (metacentric) coefficient  $k$  are easily obtained by other methods (see Chapters 3–5). The frequency of oscillation is

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m} - \left(\frac{d}{2m}\right)^2} \quad (12.68)$$

which for  $d = 0$  reduces to the natural frequency of the undamped oscillator:

$$\omega \stackrel{d=0}{=} \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} = \omega_n \quad (12.69)$$

Damping in *surge*, *sway* and *yaw*, however, cannot be determined by formula (12.67) since  $k = 0$  in a pure *mass-damper* system. Linear damping for such a system:

$$m\ddot{x} + d\dot{x} = \tau \quad (12.70)$$

can be found by specifying the time constant  $T > 0$ . Let  $T = m/d$  such that (12.70) becomes

$$T\ddot{x} + \dot{x} = \frac{1}{d}\tau \quad (12.71)$$

which yields the following design formula:

$$d = \frac{m}{T} \quad (12.72)$$

for the *mass-damper* system. Equations (12.67) and (12.72) will be referred to as the *linear damping formulae* for a *mass-damper-spring* and a *mass-damper* system, respectively. A relationship between the time constant  $T$  and the natural frequency  $\omega_n$  in a PD-controlled system can be derived by considering (12.70) under feedback:

$$\tau = -K_d\dot{x} - K_p x \quad (12.73)$$

This gives the closed-loop system

$$m\ddot{x} + (d + K_d)\dot{x} + K_p x = 0 \quad (12.74)$$

and

$$2\zeta\omega_n = \frac{d + K_d}{m} \quad (12.75)$$

$$\omega_n = \sqrt{\frac{K_p}{m}} \quad (12.76)$$

In closed loop,  $K_p$  and  $K_d$  are positive constants and the natural period  $T_n = 2\pi/\omega_n$  satisfies

$$\begin{aligned} 2\zeta\omega_n &= 2\zeta \frac{2\pi}{T_n} \\ &= \frac{d + K_d}{m} \\ &= \frac{1}{T} + \frac{K_d}{m} \end{aligned} \quad (12.77)$$

If  $K_d/m \approx 1/T$ , corresponding to increasing  $1/T$  to  $2/T$  by feedback control, the following useful relationship between the time constant and the natural period of a PD-controlled mass-damper system is obtained:

$$T \approx \frac{T_n}{2\pi\zeta} \quad (12.78)$$

### **Example 12.5 (Linear Damping in Roll and Pitch for Submarines)**

Consider the linear pitch equation (7.265):

$$(I_y - M_{\dot{q}})\ddot{\theta} - M_q\dot{\theta} + \overline{BG}_z W \theta = \tau_5$$

Hence, the linear damping coefficient can be computed by using (12.67):

$$-M_q = 2\sqrt{1 - r^2} \sqrt{\overline{BG}_z W(I_y - M_{\dot{q}})} > 0$$

where  $M_{\dot{q}}$ ,  $W$  and  $\overline{BG}_z$  are assumed to be known and  $r > 0$  is a design parameter. For roll a similar expression is obtained (see (7.273)):

$$-K_p = 2\sqrt{1 - r^2} \sqrt{\overline{BG}_z W(I_x - K_p)} > 0$$

### **Example 12.6 (Linear Damping in Yaw for Ships and Underwater Vehicles)**

Consider the Nomoto model (see Section 7.1.4):

$$(I_z - N_r)\ddot{r} - N_r r = N_\delta \delta \quad (12.79)$$

Assume that the moment of inertia  $I_z - N_r$  is known. The linear damping coefficient  $N_r$  can be estimated by specifying the time constant. If it is assumed that the closed-loop yawing motion has a natural period  $T_n = 150$  s and relative damping ratio  $\zeta = 1.0$  (critically damped), it is possible to compute an estimate of the time constant in yaw using (12.78):

$$T \approx \frac{150 \text{ s}}{2\pi \times 1.0} = 23.8 \text{ s} \quad (12.80)$$

and from (12.72) the unknown hydrodynamic derivative becomes

$$-N_r = \frac{I_z - N_r}{T} \quad (12.81)$$

### 12.2.2 Acceleration Feedback

It is possible to extend the results of Section 12.2.1 to include acceleration feedback. Consider a mass-damper-spring system:

$$m\ddot{x} + d\dot{x} + kx = \tau + w \quad (12.82)$$

Let the control law be

$$\tau = \tau_{\text{PID}} - K_m \ddot{x} \quad (12.83)$$

where  $K_m > 0$  is the acceleration feedback gain and  $\tau_{\text{PID}}$  represents a conventional PID controller. This yields

$$(m + K_m)\ddot{x} + d\dot{x} + kx = \tau_{\text{PID}} + w \quad (12.84)$$

or equivalently

$$\ddot{x} + \frac{d}{m + K_m}\dot{x} + \frac{k}{m + K_m}x = \frac{1}{m + K_m}\tau_{\text{PID}} + \frac{1}{m + K_m}w \quad (12.85)$$

From this expression it is noticed that besides increasing the mass from  $m$  to  $m + K_m$ , acceleration feedback also reduces the gain in front of the disturbance  $w$  from  $1/m$  to  $1/(m + K_m)$ . Hence, the system is expected to be less sensitive to an external disturbance  $w$  if acceleration feedback is applied.

This design can be further improved by introducing a frequency-dependent *virtual mass* in the following form (Sagatun *et al.*, 2001):

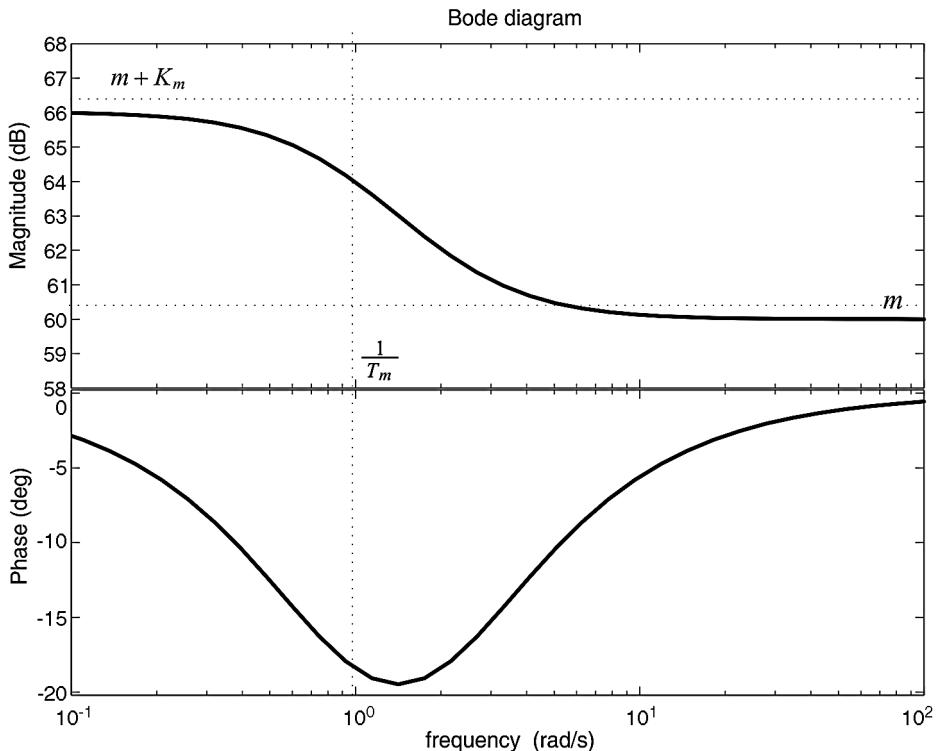
$$\tau = \tau_{\text{PID}} - h_m(s)\ddot{x} \quad (12.86)$$

If  $h_m(s)$  is chosen as a low-pass filter:

$$h_m(s) = \frac{K_m}{T_m s + 1} \quad (12.87)$$

with gain  $K_m > 0$  and time constant  $T_m > 0$ , it is seen that

$$\underbrace{\left( m + \frac{K_m}{T_m s + 1} \right)}_{m_{\text{total}}(s)} \ddot{x} + d\dot{x} + kx = \tau_{\text{PID}} + w \quad (12.88)$$



**Figure 12.15** Total mass  $m_{\text{total}}(s)$  as a function of frequency for  $m = K_m = 1000$  (60 dB) and  $T_m = 1.0$  s.

where the total mass of the system in closed loop is

$$m_{\text{total}}(s) = m + \frac{K_m}{T_m s + 1} = \frac{m T_m s + (m + K_m)}{T_m s + 1} \quad (12.89)$$

Hence, it can be concluded that the total mass is  $m + K_m$  at low frequencies ( $s \rightarrow 0$ ) while at high frequencies ( $s \rightarrow \infty$ ) the total mass  $m + K_m$  reduces to  $m$ . This is shown in Figure 12.15.

The filter  $h_m(s)$  can be chosen rather arbitrarily depending on the application. For instance, a low-pass filter will remove high-frequency acceleration feedback components while a notch structure can be used to remove first-order wave-induced forces. This is seen by letting

$$g(s) = \frac{1}{m + h_m(s)} \quad (12.90)$$

such that (12.88) takes the form

$$\ddot{x} + g(s)d\dot{x} + g(s)kx = g(s)\tau_{\text{PID}} + g(s)w \quad (12.91)$$

where  $g(s)$  is chosen such that the disturbance  $w$  is suppressed in a limited frequency band (low-pass, high-pass and notch). It will next be shown how a PID controller can be designed independently of the acceleration feedback loop.

### 12.2.3 PID Control with Acceleration Feedback

Consider the controller:

$$\tau = \underbrace{kx_d}_{\text{reference feedforward}} - \underbrace{\left( K_p \tilde{x} + K_d \dot{x} + K_i \int_0^t \tilde{x}(\tau) d\tau \right)}_{\text{PID controller}} - \underbrace{h_m(s) \ddot{x}}_{\text{acceleration feedback}} \quad (12.92)$$

with gains  $K_p > 0$ ,  $K_d > 0$  and  $K_i > 0$  and tracking error  $\tilde{x} = x - x_d$  (see Figure 12.16).

For simplicity, assume that  $h_m(s) = K_m$  and  $K_i = 0$ . This gives

$$\tau = kx_d - (K_p \tilde{x} + K_d \dot{x}) - K_m \ddot{x} \quad (12.93)$$

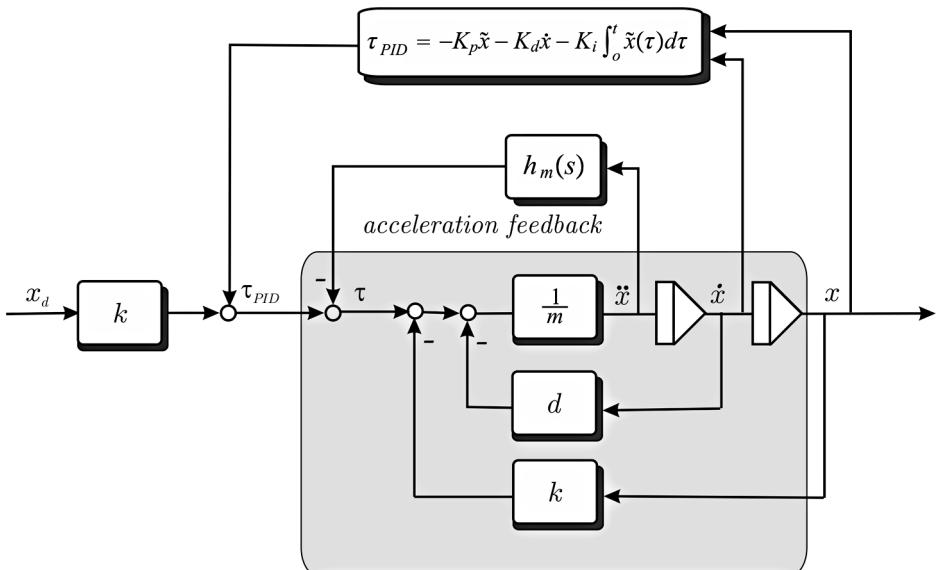
The closed-loop system becomes

$$(m + K_m)\ddot{x} + (d + K_d)\dot{x} + (k + K_p)\tilde{x} = w \quad (12.94)$$

such that

$$\omega_n = \sqrt{\frac{k + K_p}{m + K_m}} \quad (12.95)$$

$$\zeta = \frac{d + K_d}{2(m + K_m)\omega_n} \quad (12.96)$$



**Figure 12.16** Acceleration feedback (inner loop) and PID feedback (outer loop).

Pole placement of the mass–damper–spring system suggests that  $K_p$  and  $K_d$  can be computed by specifying  $\omega_n$  and  $\zeta$  in (12.95) and (12.96). Solving for  $K_p$  and  $K_d$ , yields

$$K_p = (m + K_m)\omega_n^2 - k \quad (12.97)$$

$$K_d = 2\zeta\omega_n(m + K_m) - d \quad (12.98)$$

such that (12.94) becomes

$$\ddot{x} + 2\zeta\omega_n\dot{x} + \omega_n^2x = \omega_n^2x_d + \frac{1}{m + K_m}w \quad (12.99)$$

$$\Downarrow \{m + K_m \gg 1\}$$

$$\frac{x}{x_d}(s) \approx \frac{\omega_n^2}{s^2 + 2\zeta\omega_n s + \omega_n^2} \quad (12.100)$$

This is a good approximation for  $m + K_m \gg 1$ . An even better approach is to add integral action  $K_i > 0$  to compensate for a large constant disturbance  $w$ . Let the PID controller be written as

$$\tau = \underbrace{kx_d}_{\text{reference feedforward}} - \underbrace{K_p \left( 1 + T_d s + \frac{1}{T_i s} \right)}_{\text{PID}} \tilde{x} - \underbrace{K_m \ddot{x}}_{\text{acceleration feedback}} \quad (12.101)$$

where  $T_d = K_d/K_p$  and  $T_i = K_p/K_i$  are the derivative and integral time constants, respectively. A *rule-of-thumb* is to choose

$$\frac{1}{T_i} \approx \frac{\omega_n}{10} \quad (12.102)$$

which states that the integrator is 10 times slower than the natural frequency  $\omega_n$ . This yields

$$K_i = \frac{\omega_n}{10} K_p = \frac{\omega_n}{10} [(m + K_m)\omega_n^2 - k] \quad (12.103)$$

The natural frequency  $\omega_n$  can be related to the system bandwidth  $\omega_b$  by using the following definition:

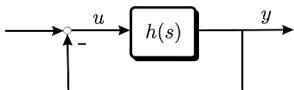
#### **Definition 12.1 (Control Bandwidth)**

The control bandwidth of a system  $y = h(s)u$  with negative unity feedback is defined as the frequency  $\omega_b$  at which the loop transfer function  $l(s) = h(s) \cdot 1$  is

$$|l(j\omega)|_{\omega=\omega_b} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$$

or equivalently

$$20 \log |l(j\omega)|_{\omega=\omega_b} = -3 \text{ dB}$$



**Figure 12.17** Closed-loop feedback system.

From this definition it can be shown that the control bandwidth of a second-order system:

$$h(s) = \frac{\omega_n^2}{s^2 + 2\zeta\omega_n s + \omega_n^2} \quad (12.104)$$

with negative unity feedback is (see Figure 12.17)

$$\omega_b = \omega_n \sqrt{1 - 2\zeta^2 + \sqrt{4\zeta^4 - 4\zeta^2 + 2}} \quad (12.105)$$

For a critically damped system,  $\zeta = 1.0$ , this expression reduces to

$$\omega_b = \omega_n \sqrt{\sqrt{2} - 1} \approx 0.64 \omega_n \quad (12.106)$$

Table 12.2 summarizes the pole-placement algorithm.

### Example 12.7 (Ship Autopilot Design)

Consider the Nomoto model (Nomoto et al., 1957):

$$T\ddot{\psi} + \dot{\psi} = K\delta \quad (12.107)$$

where  $\psi$  is the yaw angle and  $\delta$  is the rudder angle (control input). From (12.82) it is seen that

$$m = \frac{T}{K}, \quad d = \frac{1}{K}, \quad k = 0 \quad (12.108)$$

**Table 12.2** PID and acceleration feedback pole-placement algorithm

1. Specify the bandwidth  $\omega_b > 0$  and the relative damping ratio  $\zeta > 0$
2. Compute the natural frequency:  $\omega_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-2\zeta^2+\sqrt{4\zeta^4-4\zeta^2+2}}} \omega_b$
3. Specify the gain:  $K_m \geq 0$  (optionally acceleration feedback)
4. Compute the P gain:  $K_p = (m + K_m)\omega_n^2 - k$
5. Compute the D gain:  $K_d = 2\zeta\omega_n(m + K_m) - d$
6. Compute the I gain:  $K_i = \frac{\omega_n}{10} K_p$

The PID and acceleration feedback controller gains are found by using pole placement in terms of the design parameters  $K_m$ ,  $\omega_n$  and  $\zeta$ , resulting in

$$\begin{aligned} K_m &\geq 0 \\ K_p &= \frac{T + KK_m}{K} \omega_n^2 > 0 \\ K_d &= \frac{T + KK_m}{K} 2\zeta\omega_n - \frac{1}{K} > 0 \\ K_i &= \frac{T + KK_m}{10K} \omega_n^3 > 0 \end{aligned}$$

For  $K_m = 0$  (no angular acceleration feedback in yaw) this reduces to a conventional autopilot of PID type with gains:

$$\begin{aligned} K_p &= \frac{\omega_n^2 T}{K} > 0 \\ K_d &= \frac{2\zeta\omega_n T - 1}{K} > 0 \\ K_i &= \frac{\omega_n^3 T}{10K} > 0 \end{aligned}$$

#### 12.2.4 MIMO Nonlinear PID Control with Acceleration Feedback

The PID control concept can be generalized to nonlinear mechanical systems by exploiting the kinematic equations of motion in the design. Consider the nonlinear model

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})\boldsymbol{v} \quad (12.109)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\boldsymbol{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\boldsymbol{v})\dot{\boldsymbol{v}} + \mathbf{D}(\boldsymbol{v})\boldsymbol{v} + \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{w} \quad (12.110)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$  and  $\boldsymbol{v}$  are assumed to be measured. Consider the control law

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) - \mathbf{H}_m(s)\dot{\boldsymbol{v}} + \mathbf{J}_\Theta^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta})\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{PID}} \quad (12.111)$$

with acceleration feedback  $\mathbf{H}_m(s)\dot{\boldsymbol{v}}$ , gravity compensation  $\mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  and PID controller

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{PID}} = -K_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}} - K_d \dot{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}} - K_i \int_0^t \tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}(\tau) d\tau \quad (12.112)$$

For simplicity, assume that  $K_i = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\mathbf{H}_m(s) = \mathbf{K}_m$  (PD control with fixed gain acceleration feedback). This yields the closed-loop system

$$\mathbf{H}\ddot{\boldsymbol{v}} + [\mathbf{C}(\boldsymbol{v}) + \mathbf{D}(\boldsymbol{v}) + \mathbf{K}_d^*(\boldsymbol{\eta})]\boldsymbol{v} + \mathbf{J}_\Theta^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \boldsymbol{w} \quad (12.113)$$

where  $\tilde{\eta} = \eta - \eta_d$ ,

$$\mathbf{K}_d^*(\eta) = \mathbf{J}_\Theta^\top(\eta) \mathbf{K}_d \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\eta) \quad (12.114)$$

and

$$\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{M} + \mathbf{K}_m$$

In the stability analysis it is assumed that  $\dot{\eta}_d = \mathbf{0}$ , that is regulation of  $\eta$  to  $\eta_d = \text{constant}$ . A Lyapunov function candidate for this system is

$$V = \underbrace{\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{H} \mathbf{v}}_{\substack{\text{kinetic} \\ \text{energy}}} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{2} \tilde{\eta}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\eta}}_{\substack{\text{potential} \\ \text{energy}}} \quad (12.115)$$

where  $\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{H}^\top > 0$  and  $\mathbf{K}_p = \mathbf{K}_p^\top > 0$ . Time differentiation of (12.115) along the trajectories of  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\tilde{\eta}$  yields

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V} &= \mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{H} \dot{\mathbf{v}} + \dot{\eta}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\eta} \\ &= \mathbf{v}^\top (\mathbf{H} \dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{J}_\Theta^\top(\eta) \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\eta}) \end{aligned} \quad (12.116)$$

since  $\dot{\tilde{\eta}} = \dot{\eta} - \dot{\eta}_d = \dot{\eta}$  and  $\dot{\eta}^\top = \mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{J}_\Theta^\top(\eta)$ . Substituting (12.113) into (12.116) yields

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V} &= \mathbf{v}^\top (\mathbf{w} - [\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{K}_d^*(\eta)] \mathbf{v}) \\ &= \mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{w} - \mathbf{v}^\top [\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{K}_d^*(\eta)] \mathbf{v} \end{aligned} \quad (12.117)$$

since  $\mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{v} = 0$  for all  $\mathbf{v}$ ; see Property 7.2 in Section 7.5.

If  $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$ , Krasovskii–LaSalle’s Theorem A.2 in Appendix A.1 can be used to prove that the system (12.109)–(12.110) with nonlinear PD control ( $\mathbf{K}_i = \mathbf{0}$ ) is *globally asymptotically stable* (GAS) if  $\mathbf{J}_\Theta(\eta)$  is defined for all  $\eta$  (no representation singularity). Moreover, the trajectories will converge to the set  $\Omega$  found from

$$\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = -\mathbf{v}^\top [\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{K}_d^*(\eta)] \mathbf{v} \equiv 0 \quad (12.118)$$

which is true for  $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$ . Therefore,

$$\Omega = \{(\tilde{\eta}, \mathbf{v}) : \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}\} \quad (12.119)$$

Now,  $\mathbf{v} \equiv \mathbf{0}$  implies that  $\mathbf{H} \dot{\mathbf{v}} = -\mathbf{J}_\Theta^\top(\eta) \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\eta}$ , which is nonzero as long as  $\tilde{\eta} \neq \mathbf{0}$ . Hence, the system cannot get “stuck” at an equilibrium point value other than  $\tilde{\eta} = \mathbf{0}$ . Since the equilibrium point  $(\tilde{\eta}, \mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{0})$  is the largest invariant set  $M$  in  $\Omega$ , the equilibrium point is GAS according to Theorem A.2.

In the case  $\mathbf{w} \neq \mathbf{0}$  but  $\dot{\mathbf{w}} = \mathbf{0}$ , the system trajectories will converge to a ball about the origin  $(\tilde{\eta}, \mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{0})$ . The radius of the ball depends on the magnitude of the disturbance  $\mathbf{w}$ . This is referred to as uniform ultimate boundedness (UUB).

If integral action is included with  $K_i > 0$  (PID control), it is possible to prove local asymptotic stability (LAS) also for the case  $\mathbf{w} \neq \mathbf{0}$ . This result is well known from robotics (Arimoto and Miyazaki, 1984). The bias term  $\mathbf{w}$  can also be removed by using parameter adaptation (Fossen *et al.*, 2001).

### 12.2.5 Case Study: Heading Autopilot for Ships and Underwater Vehicles

The principal blocks of a heading angle autopilot system, shown in Figure 12.18, are:

**Control System:** The feedback control system provides the necessary commands to track the desired yaw angle  $\psi_d$ . The output is the yaw moment  $\tau_N$ .

**Control Allocation:** This module distributes the output from the feedback control system, usually the yaw moment  $\tau_N$ , to the actuators (rudders and in some cases propellers and thrusters) in an optimal manner (see Section 12.3). For single-screw ships the controller yaw moment  $\tau_N$  will simply be a function of the rudder command  $\delta_c$ .

**Reference Model:** The autopilot reference model computes smooth trajectories  $\psi_d$ ,  $r_d$  and  $\dot{r}_d$  needed for *course-changing* maneuvers. *Course-keeping* is the special case then  $\psi_d = \text{constant}$  and  $r_d = \dot{r}_d = 0$  (see Section 10.2.1).

**Compass and Yaw Gyro:** The compass measures the yaw angle  $\psi$  which is needed for feedback. In some cases a yaw rate gyro is available for yaw rate feedback, that is feedback from  $r = \dot{\psi}$ .

**Observer/Wave Filter:** In its simplest form the first-order wave-induced motion components  $\psi_w$  and  $r_w$  are filtered out from the measurements  $y_1 = \psi + \psi_w$  and  $y_2 = r + r_w$ , and consequently prevented from entering the feedback loop. This is known as *wave filtering*, where the output of the filter is the LF motion components  $\psi$  and  $r$ . This is necessary to avoid excessive rudder action. In cases where  $y_2$  is not measured the wave filter must be constructed as a state observer so that  $r$  can be estimated from the yaw angle measurement  $y_1$ ; see Sections 11.3.5, 11.4.2 and 11.4.3.

**Wind Feedforward:** In cases where a wind sensor is available for *wind speed* and *direction*, a wind model can be used for wind feedforward. This is often advantageous since the integral action term in the PID controller does not have to integrate up the wind disturbance term. However, an accurate model of the wind force and moment as a function of ship speed and wind direction is needed to implement wind feedforward.

The different autopilot blocks of Figure 12.18 needed to implement a PID control law based on the Nomoto model will now be discussed.

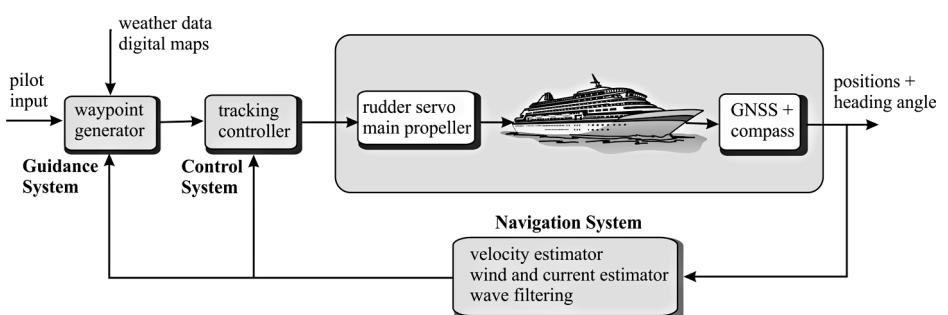


Figure 12.18 Block diagram of a heading autopilot system.

### Autopilot Reference Model

A modern autopilot must have both course-keeping and turning capabilities. This can be obtained in one design by using a reference model to compute the desired states  $\psi_d$ ,  $r_d$  and  $\dot{r}_d$  needed for turning, while

$$\psi_d = \text{constant} \quad (12.120)$$

can be treated as a special case of turning. A simple third-order filter for this purpose was derived in Section 10.2.1. Moreover,

$$\frac{\psi_d}{\psi_r}(s) = \frac{\omega_n^3}{(s + \omega_n)(s^2 + 2\zeta\omega_n s + \omega_n^2)} \quad (12.121)$$

where the reference  $\psi_r$  is the operator input,  $\zeta$  is the relative damping ratio and  $\omega_n$  is the natural frequency. Notice that

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \psi_d(t) = \psi_r \quad (12.122)$$

and that  $\dot{\psi}_d$  and  $\ddot{\psi}_d$  are smooth and bounded for steps in  $\psi_r$ . This is the main motivation for choosing a third-order model since a second-order model will result in steps in  $\ddot{\psi}_d$  for steps in  $\psi_r$ .

In many cases it is advantageous to limit the desired yaw rate  $|r_d| \leq r_{\max}$  during turning. This can be done by including a saturating element in the reference model (see Van Amerongen, 1982, 1984). The yaw acceleration  $a_d = \dot{\psi}_d$  can also be limited such that  $|a_d| \leq a_{\max}$  by using a second saturating element. The resulting state-space model including velocity and acceleration saturating elements becomes

$$\dot{\psi}_d = \text{sat}(r_d) \quad (12.123)$$

$$\dot{r}_d = \text{sat}(a_d) \quad (12.124)$$

$$\dot{a}_d = -(2\zeta + 1)\omega_n \text{sat}(a_d) - (2\zeta + 1)\omega_n^2 \text{sat}(r_d) + \omega_n^3(\psi_r - \psi_d) \quad (12.125)$$

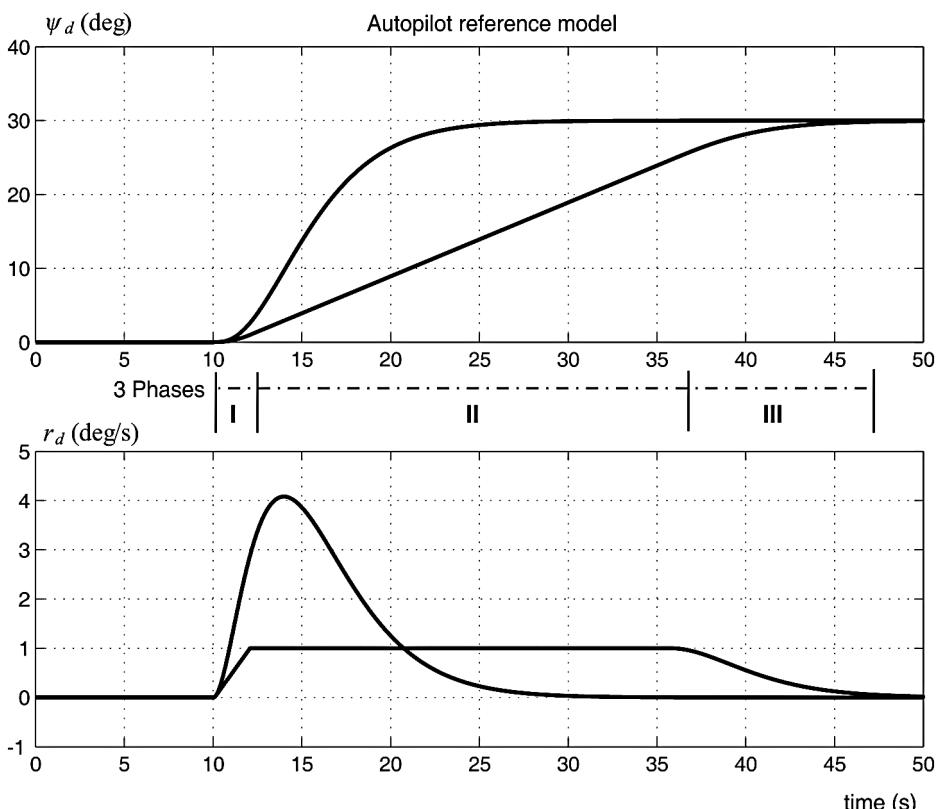
The saturating element is defined as

$$\text{sat}(x) := \begin{cases} \text{sgn}(x)x_{\max} & \text{if } |x| \geq x_{\max} \\ x & \text{else} \end{cases} \quad (12.126)$$

The autopilot reference model has been simulated in Matlab with yaw rate limitation  $r_{\max} = 1.0 \text{ deg/s}$ , acceleration limit  $a_{\max} = 0.5 \text{ deg/s}^2$  and command  $\psi_r = 30 \text{ deg}$ . The results are shown in Figure 12.19. Notice that the unlimited (linear) case yields unsatisfactorily high values for  $r_d$ .

The main motivation for using a rate-limiting element in the reference model is that the course-changing maneuver will be described by three phases (positive turn):

- I:** Start of turn, acceleration ( $r_d > 0$  and  $0 < \dot{r}_d \leq a_{\max}$ )
- II:** Steady turning ( $r_d = r_{\max}$  and  $\dot{r}_d = 0$ )
- III:** End of turn, deceleration ( $r_d > 0$  and  $-a_{\max} \leq \dot{r}_d < 0$ )



**Figure 12.19** The plots show the effect of including a rate limiter of  $r_{\max} = 1$  deg/s in a third-order reference model for heading. Notice that  $r_d$  becomes very high in the linear case while  $\psi_d$  looks satisfactory in both cases.

For a negative turn the signs of the turning rate and acceleration must be changed. The three phases are advantageous when performing a large change in course. The effect of a saturating element and nonlinear damping in a reference model are also demonstrated in Example 10.2 in Section 10.2.1.

A more sophisticated method for generating heading reference signals could be to use optimization techniques to compute the desired yaw angle, but then at the expense of a more complicated software algorithm to be implemented in real time.

### Conventional PID Control

The autopilot systems of *Sperry* and *Minorsky* were both SISO control systems where the heading angle of the ship was measured by a gyro compass (see Section 9.1). Today, this signal is fed back to a computer in which a PID control system (autopilot) is implemented in software. The autopilot compares the operator setpoint (desired heading) with the measured heading and computes the rudder command, which is then transmitted to the rudder servo for corrective action.

The main difference between the autopilot systems of Sperry and Minorsky and the modern autopilot is the increased functionality that has been added with sophisticated features such as:

- Wave filtering, which avoids first-order wave forces being fed back to the actuators (see Section 11.3.5).
- Adaptation to varying environmental conditions, shallow water effects and time-varying model parameters, for instance changes in mass and center of gravity.
- Wind feedforward for accurate and rapid course-changing maneuvers.
- Reference feedforward using a dynamic model,  $\psi_d$ ,  $r_d$  and  $\dot{r}_d$ , for course-changing maneuvers. Course-keeping is obtained by using a constant reference signal,  $\psi_d = \text{constant}$ , as input to the reference model.

### Full State Feedback Control

Consider the Nomoto model of Section 7.2 in the following form:

$$(I_z - N_r)\dot{r} - N_r r = \tau_{\text{wind}} + \tau_N \quad (12.127)$$

where  $\tau_{\text{wind}}$  is an optional input for wind feedforward and  $\tau_N$  is the yaw moment generated by the controller. The constants  $m = I_z - N_r$ ,  $d = -N_r$  and

$$T = \frac{m}{d} = \frac{I_z - N_r}{-N_r} \quad (12.128)$$

are introduced such that

$$\dot{r} + \frac{1}{T}r = \frac{1}{m}(\tau_{\text{wind}} + \tau_N) \quad (12.129)$$

The yaw moment can be generated by a single rudder:

$$\tau_N = N_s \delta \quad (12.130)$$

or several actuators  $u_i (i = 1, \dots, r)$  satisfying

$$\tau_N = \mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{u}, \quad \mathbf{u} = [u_1, \dots, u_r]^\top \quad (12.131)$$

Assume that both  $\psi$  and  $r$  are measured by using a compass and a rate gyro. A PID controller for heading control is (see Section 12.2.3)

$$\tau_N(s) = -\hat{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \tau_{\text{FF}}(s) - \underbrace{K_p \left( 1 + T_d s + \frac{1}{T_i s} \right)}_{\tau_{\text{PID}}} \tilde{\psi}(s) \quad (12.132)$$

where  $\tau_N$  is the controller yaw moment,  $\tau_{\text{FF}}$  is a feedforward term to be decided,  $\tilde{\psi} = \psi - \psi_d$  is the heading error and

$$K_p > 0 \quad \text{proportional gain constant}$$

$$T_d > 0 \quad \text{derivative time constant}$$

$$T_i > 0 \quad \text{integral time constant}$$

The wind feedforward term  $\hat{\tau}_{\text{wind}}$  is an estimate of the wind moment  $\tau_{\text{wind}}$  using wind coefficients and an anemometer measuring wind speed  $V_w$  and direction  $\beta_w$ . An estimate of the wind yaw moment can be computed according to (see Section 8.1)

$$\hat{\tau}_{\text{wind}} = \frac{1}{2} \rho_a V_{rw}^2 C_N(\gamma_{rw}) A_{Lw} L_{oa} \quad (12.133)$$

where the relative wind speed and angle of attack are

$$V_{rw} = \sqrt{u_{rw}^2 + v_{rw}^2} \quad (12.134)$$

$$\gamma_{rw} = -\text{atan2}(v_{rw}, u_{rw}) \quad (12.135)$$

The relative velocities depend on the heading angle  $\psi$ , wind direction  $\beta_w$  and wind speed  $V_w$  according to

$$u_{rw} = u - u_w = u - V_w \cos(\beta_w - \psi) \quad (12.136)$$

$$v_{rw} = v - v_w = v - V_w \sin(\beta_w - \psi) \quad (12.137)$$

When wind feedforward is implemented it is important that the wind measurements are low-pass filtered to avoid rapid changes in heading command. Wind feedforward is an optional term since the integrator in the PID control law can compensate for a slowly varying wind moment as well. The main difference will be the response time. In general, wind feedforward will be much faster than integral action since the integrator needs several minutes to remove a large wind component during the start-up of an autopilot system. Integral action works fairly well during fixed heading (stationkeeping and transit) while in a maneuvering situation large course deviations might be expected. Consequently, it is advantageous to implement wind feedforward to reduce the loads on the integrator and obtain maximum performance during start-up and in maneuvering situations. However, if the wind coefficients are poorly known, the closed-loop system can be destabilized by the wind feedforward term so care must be taken.

A continuous-time representation of the controller (12.132) is

$$\tau_N = -\hat{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \tau_{FF} - K_p \tilde{\psi} - \underbrace{K_p T_d}_{K_d} \tilde{r} - \underbrace{\frac{K_p}{T_i}}_{K_i} \int_0^t \tilde{\psi}(\tau) d\tau \quad (12.138)$$

where  $\tilde{r} := r - r_d$  and  $\tilde{\psi} := \psi - \psi_d$ . The controller gains can be found by pole placement; see Table 12.2 in Section 12.2.3. By specifying the control bandwidth  $\omega_b$ , we get

$$\omega_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - 2\xi^2 + \sqrt{4\xi^4 - 4\xi^2 + 2}}} \omega_b \quad (12.139)$$

$$\begin{aligned} K_p &= m\omega_n^2 \\ K_d &= m \left( 2\zeta\omega_n - \frac{1}{T} \right) \stackrel{T \gg 0}{\approx} 2\zeta\omega_n m \\ K_i &= \frac{\omega_n}{10} K_p \end{aligned}$$

The relative damping ratio  $\zeta$  is usually chosen in the range 0.8–1.0, which means that the only tunable parameter is the control bandwidth  $\omega_b$  (typically 0.01 rad/s for large tankers and 0.1 rad/s for smaller ships and underwater vehicles). This makes the system very easy to tune. However, it is important to have a good estimate of  $m = I_z - N_f$  to obtain good performance.

### Control Allocation

For a rudder-controlled craft, the input command is computed from (12.130), implying that

$$\delta = \frac{1}{N_\delta} \tau_N \quad (12.140)$$

In the case of several actuators, the generalized inverse can be used to compute  $\mathbf{u}$  from (12.131) if the scalar  $\mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{b} \neq 0$  (see Section 12.3). This gives

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{b}(\mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{b})^{-1} \tau_N \quad (12.141)$$

### Reference Feedforward

The *feedforward* term  $\tau_{FF}$  in (12.132) is determined such that perfect tracking during course-changing maneuvers is obtained. Using Nomoto's first-order model (12.129) as a basis for feedforward control, suggests that *reference feedforward* should be implemented according to

$$\tau_{FF} = m \left( \dot{r}_d + \frac{1}{T} r_d \right) \quad (12.142)$$

Substituting (12.142) and (12.132) into (12.129), the error dynamics becomes

$$\ddot{e} + \frac{1}{T} \dot{e} = \frac{1}{m} \tau_{PID} \quad (12.143)$$

where  $e = \psi - \psi_d$ . Since this system is linear, the closed-loop system can be analyzed in the frequency plane by using *Bode* plots. Consider the transfer function

$$h(s) = \frac{e}{\tau_{PID}}(s) = \frac{T/m}{s(Ts + 1)} \quad (12.144)$$

and let

$$\begin{aligned} h_{\text{PID}}(s) &= K_p \left( 1 + T_d s + \frac{1}{T_i s} \right) \\ &= K_p \frac{T_i T_d s^2 + T_d s + 1}{T_i s} \end{aligned} \quad (12.145)$$

Hence, the loop transfer function becomes

$$\begin{aligned} l(s) &= h(s)h_{\text{PID}}(s) \\ &= \frac{T}{m} \frac{K_p}{T_i} \frac{(T_i T_d s^2 + T_i s + 1)}{s^2(Ts + 1)} \end{aligned} \quad (12.146)$$

A frequently used approximation for (12.145) is found by assuming that  $T_i \gg T_d$  such that  $T_i \approx T_i + T_d$ . Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} h_{\text{PID}}(s) &= K_p \left( 1 + T_d s + \frac{1}{T_i s} \right) \\ &\approx K_p \frac{1 + (T_i + T_d)s + T_d T_i s^2}{T_i s} \\ &= K_p \frac{(1 + T_i s)(1 + T_d s)}{T_i s} \end{aligned} \quad (12.147)$$

### Output Feedback using Only Compass Measurements

In many cases ships are only equipped with a gyrocompass for feedback control. If this is the case, the rate can be estimated using an observer, as shown in Sections 11.3.5 and 11.4.2. This approach also gives wave filtering. Alternatively, the D term in the controller must be replaced with a limited differentiator:

$$r(s) \approx \frac{T_d s}{\alpha T_d s + 1} \psi(s), \quad 0 < \alpha \ll 1 \quad (12.148)$$

such that the high-frequency components of  $\psi(s)$  are filtered out. If we apply the low-pass filter

$$h_{\text{LP}}(s) = \frac{1}{\alpha T_d s + 1} \quad (12.149)$$

to all terms in the PID controller, (12.147) takes the form

$$h_{\text{PID}}(s) = K_p \frac{(T_i s + 1)(T_d s + 1)}{T_i s (\alpha T_d s + 1)}$$

The controller can be implemented in the time domain as

$$\tau_N = \tau_{FF} - K_p \tilde{\psi}_{LP} - \underbrace{K_p T_d}_{K_d} \tilde{r}_{LP} - \underbrace{K_p / T_i}_{K_i} \int_0^t \tilde{\psi}_{LP}(\tau) d\tau \quad (12.150)$$

with two filters:

$$\tilde{\psi}_{LP}(s) = \frac{1}{\alpha T_d s + 1} \tilde{\psi}(s), \quad \tilde{r}_{LP}(s) = \frac{T_d s}{\alpha T_d s + 1} \tilde{\psi}(s) \quad (12.151)$$

The parameter  $0 < \alpha < 1$  is usually chosen as 0.1 while  $T_i = 10T_d$ , such that

$$\frac{1}{T_i} \ll \frac{1}{T_d} \ll \frac{1}{\alpha T_d} \quad (12.152)$$

### 12.2.6 Case Study: Heading Autopilot with Acceleration Feedback for Ships and Underwater Vehicles

An autopilot system can be extended to exploit acceleration feedback by differentiating the output of a yaw rate gyro  $r_{gyro}$  according to

$$\dot{r} \approx \frac{s}{s + \omega_f} r_{gyro} \quad (12.153)$$

The filter frequency  $\omega_f$  must, however, be larger than the control bandwidth  $\omega_b$ . In most cases this is easy to satisfy since  $\omega_f$  can be chosen as high as 10–50 Hz if an accurate yaw-rate gyro is applied. A discrete-time representation of the filter (12.153) is found in Appendix B.3. This is particularly useful for smaller marine craft, which are more vulnerable to environmental forces than large marine craft. The main idea is to increase the moment of inertia by yaw rate feedback, such that external disturbances are suppressed; see Section 12.2.3. Consider the controller

$$\tau_N = -\hat{\tau}_{wind} + \underbrace{\tau_{FF} - K_p \tilde{\psi} - K_d \tilde{r} - K_i \int_0^t \tilde{\psi}(\tau) d\tau}_{\text{PID}} - \underbrace{K_m \dot{r}}_{\text{acceleration feedback}} \quad (12.154)$$

$$\tau_{FF} = (m + K_m) \left( \dot{r}_d + \frac{1}{T} r_d \right) \quad (12.155)$$

Notice that the term  $K_m$  must be included in  $\tau_{FF}$  correspondingly. Substituting these expressions into (12.129) yields the closed-loop error dynamics

$$(m + K_m) \ddot{e} + \left( \frac{m}{T} + K_d \right) \dot{e} + K_p e + K_i \int_0^t e(\tau) d\tau = 0 \quad (12.156)$$

Based on Table 12.2 in Section 12.2.3, this suggests the following pole-placement algorithm for a critically damped system ( $\zeta = 1$ ) with bandwidth  $\omega_b$ :

$$\omega_n = 1.56\omega_b \quad (12.157)$$

$$K_p = (m + K_m)\omega_n^2 \quad (12.158)$$

$$K_d = 2\zeta\omega_n(m + K_m) - \frac{m}{T} \stackrel{T \gg 0}{\approx} 2\zeta\omega_n(m + K_m) \quad (12.159)$$

$$K_i = \frac{\omega_n}{10} K_p \quad (12.160)$$

where the additional moment of inertia  $K_m$  can be specified as a percentage (0–100 %) of the total moment of inertia  $m$  according to

$$K_m = \frac{\alpha}{100}m, \quad \alpha \in [0, 100] \quad (12.161)$$

The only tunable parameter in addition to  $K_m$  is the control bandwidth  $\omega_b$  and this makes the system very easy to tune. However, it is important to have a good estimate of  $m = I_z - N_r$  to obtain good performance.

A final implementation issue is the problem of first-order wave-induced forces. Using a wave filter for  $\psi$ ,  $r$  and  $\dot{r}$  is recommended if all these signals are used in feedback. Wave filtering for systems using velocity and acceleration feedback is discussed by Lindegaard and Fossen (2001a) and Lindegaard (2003).

### 12.2.7 Case Study: Linear Cross-Tracking System for Ships and Underwater Vehicles

Often it is of primary importance to steer a ship, a submersible or a rig along a desired path with a prescribed speed. The path is usually defined in terms of waypoints using the Cartesian coordinates  $(x_k, y_k) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ . Waypoint guidance systems can be designed as trajectory-tracking controllers. In its simplest form this involves the use of a classical autopilot system where the yaw angle command  $\psi_d$  is generated such that the cross-track error is minimized. This can be done in a multivariable controller, for instance of  $\mathcal{H}_\infty$  or LQG type, or by including an additional PID tracking error control-loop in the autopilot. A waypoint trajectory-tracking system is usually designed such that the ship can move forward with reference speed  $U_d$  at the same time as the path cross-track error is minimized. The desired path can be generated using a route management system or by specifying the desired route by waypoints; see Section 10.2. If weather data are available, the optimal route can be generated such that the effects of wind and water resistance are minimized.

When designing a 3 DOF trajectory-tracking control system, the solution will depend on the number of available actuators. For most craft only two controls are needed: thrust  $T$  for speed control and a rudder  $\delta$  for steering control.

Consider a path parametrized by two waypoints:  $\mathbf{p}_k = [x_k, y_k]^\top$  and  $\mathbf{p}_{k+1} = [x_{k+1}, y_{k+1}]^\top$ , respectively. Next, we introduce a path-fixed reference frame  $\{p\} = (x_p, y_p, z_p)$  with origin  $o_n$  in  $\mathbf{p}_k$ , whose  $x_p$  axis has been rotated a positive angle:

$$\alpha_k := \text{atan2}(y_{k+1} - y_k, x_{k+1} - x_k) \quad (12.162)$$

relative to the  $x$  axis of the inertial reference frame  $\{n\} = \{x, y, z\}$ . Recall from (10.56) that the along-track distance and cross-track errors are

$$s(t) = (x(t) - x_k) \cos(\alpha_k) + (y(t) - y_k) \sin(\alpha_k) \quad (12.163)$$

$$e(t) = -(x(t) - x_k) \sin(\alpha_k) + (y(t) - y_k) \cos(\alpha_k) \quad (12.164)$$

Consequently, the error term  $e$  represents the deviation to the path in the  $y$  direction in NED coordinates.

Since the craft is moving along a straight line, the sway velocity  $v$  and yaw angle  $\psi$  will be small. The cross-track error expressed in the path-fixed reference frame  $\{p\}$  is

$$e = y_p \quad (12.165)$$

and the kinematic equations reduce to

$$\dot{x}_p = u \cos(\psi) - v \sin(\psi) \stackrel{v \approx 0 \text{ and } \psi \approx 0}{\approx} U \quad (12.166)$$

$$\dot{y}_p = u \sin(\psi) + v \cos(\psi) \stackrel{v \approx 0 \text{ and } \psi \approx 0}{\approx} U\psi \quad (12.167)$$

Consequently, the craft is moving with approximately constant speed  $U = \sqrt{u^2 + v^2} \approx u$  along the path. A conventional cross-track controller is usually designed by using Nomoto's model in the following form:

$$\dot{y}_p = U\psi \quad (12.168)$$

$$\dot{\psi} = r \quad (12.169)$$

$$Tr + r = K\delta + b \quad (12.170)$$

$$\dot{b} = 0 \quad (12.171)$$

where  $b$  is a bias term and  $\delta$  is the control input. Consequently,

$$e(s) = h_\delta(s)\delta(s) + h_b(s)b(s) \quad (12.172)$$

where

$$h_\delta(s) = \frac{e}{\delta}(s) = \frac{KU}{s^2(1 + Ts)} \quad (12.173)$$

$$h_b(s) = \frac{e}{b}(s) = \frac{U}{s^2(1 + Ts)} \quad (12.174)$$

This is a linear system and it is straightforward to design a PID controller:

$$\delta = -K_p e - K_d \dot{e} - K_i \int_0^t e(\tau) d\tau \quad (12.175)$$

for the regulation of  $e$  to zero. Integral action is needed in order to compensate for the bias term  $b$  representing environmental forces and the rudder offset.

### 12.2.8 Case Study: LOS Path-Following Control for Ships and Underwater Vehicles

A line-of-sight (LOS) path-following controller can be designed for conventional craft by representing the desired path by waypoints, as described in Section 10.3. This is particularly useful for underwater vehicles and surface vessels in transit operations where the user can specify the path by straight lines using a digital chart. For curved paths, the approach of Section 12.2.9 can be used.

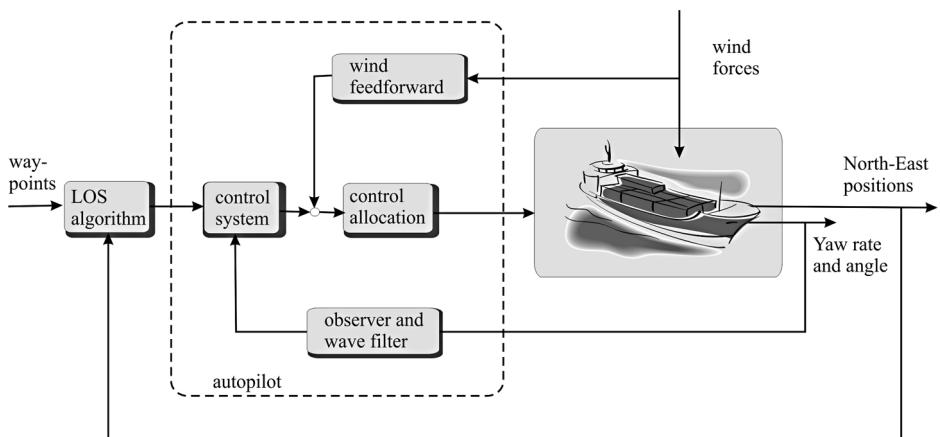
If the craft is equipped with a conventional heading autopilot, an outer feedback loop representing the guidance system can be designed as shown in Figure 12.20. This is practical since a commercial autopilot system can be treated as a black box where the outer-loop LOS algorithm computes heading commands to the autopilot. For this purpose, the guidance laws of Section 10.3.2 can be used to steer along the LOS vector which again forces the craft to track the path. When designing path-following control systems both the desired *heading* and *course* angles can be used since

$$\psi_d = \chi_d - \beta \quad (12.176)$$

where the sideslip angle is given by

$$\beta = \arcsin\left(\frac{v}{U}\right) \quad (12.177)$$

Notice that  $\beta$  depends on the surge and sway velocities, implying that  $\beta$  must be computed using Doppler or GNSS velocity measurements, for instance. Alternatively, a state estimator for  $\beta$  can be designed.



**Figure 12.20** Conventional autopilot used in conjunction with an LOS guidance algorithm in the outer loop.

The heading autopilot is usually a PID controller with feedforward (see Section 12.2.6):

$$\tau_N = -\hat{\tau}_{wind} + \tau_{FF} - K_p \tilde{\psi} - K_d \dot{\tilde{\psi}} - K_i \int_0^t \tilde{\psi}(\tau) d\tau \quad (12.178)$$

$$\tau_{FF} = m \left( \dot{r}_d + \frac{1}{T} r_d \right) \quad (12.179)$$

where  $\tilde{\psi} = \psi - \psi_d$ , and  $K_p > 0$ ,  $K_d > 0$  and  $K_i > 0$  are the controller gains.

**Body  $x$  axis aligned to the LOS vector:** If the sideslip angle  $\beta$  is unknown, the body  $x$  axis of the craft can be aligned with the LOS vector to the price of a tracking offset (see Section 10.3.2).

*Enclosure-based steering:* In this approach, the desired heading angle  $\psi_d$  is chosen as:

$$\psi_d = \chi_d = \text{atan2}(y_{los} - y, x_{los} - x) \quad (12.180)$$

and the body  $x$  axis of the craft points in the direction of the LOS intersection point  $p_{los}^n = [x_{los}, y_{los}]^\top$ , as shown Figure 10.9.

**Velocity and LOS vectors aligned:** In order to align the velocity and LOS vectors, the desired course angle  $\chi_d$  must be specified such that the velocity vector points towards the intersection point  $p_{los}$ . The course angle command  $\chi_d$  needed to accomplish this can be computed using one of the following guidance algorithms (see Section 10.3.2):

*Enclosure-based steering:* The course angle is chosen as

$$\chi_d = \text{atan2}(y_{los} - y, x_{los} - x) \quad (12.181)$$

and mapped into a heading command by

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_d &= \chi_d - \beta \\ &= \chi_d - \arcsin\left(\frac{v}{U}\right) \end{aligned} \quad (12.182)$$

This approach requires velocity measurements.

*Lookahead-based steering:* The course angle command (Breivik and Fossen, 2009)

$$\chi_d = \chi_p + \chi_r(e) \quad (12.183)$$

is chosen as the sum of the *path-tangential angle*  $\chi_p$  and the *velocity-path relative angle*  $\chi_r(e)$  to ensure that the velocity is directed toward a point on the path that is located a *lookahead distance*  $\Delta > 0$  (Papoulias, 1991) ahead of the direct projection of  $p^n$  on to the path. In this context

$$\chi_p = \alpha_k \quad (12.184)$$

$$\chi_r(e) = \arctan(-K_p e) \quad (12.185)$$

where  $\chi_r$  is a proportional controller and  $e(t)$  is the cross-track error given by

$$e(t) = -[x(t) - x_k] \sin(\alpha_k) + [y(t) - y_k] \cos(\alpha_k) \quad (12.186)$$

Lookahead-based steering can be implemented in terms of the heading controller (12.178) by using the transformation

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_d &= \chi_d - \beta \\ &= \chi_p + \chi_r - \beta\end{aligned}\quad (12.187)$$

If the sideslip angle  $\beta$  is unknown, a PI controller

$$\chi_r(e) = \arctan \left( -K_p e - K_i \int_0^t e(\tau) d\tau \right) \quad (12.188)$$

together with the approximation  $\psi_d \approx \chi_p + \chi_r$  can be used to compensate for sideslip.

When moving along a piece wise linear path made up of  $n$  straight-line segments connected by  $n + 1$  waypoints, a switching mechanism for selecting the next waypoint is needed. Waypoint  $(x_{k+1}, y_{k+1})$  can be selected on a basis of whether the craft lies within a *circle of acceptance* with radius  $R_{k+1}$  around  $(x_{k+1}, y_{k+1})$ . Moreover, if the craft positions  $(x, y)$  at time  $t$  satisfy

$$[x_{k+1} - x(t)]^2 + [y_{k+1} - y(t)]^2 \leq R_{k+1}^2 \quad (12.189)$$

the next waypoint  $(x_{k+1}, y_{k+1})$  should be selected. This is described more closely in Section 10.3.2, which also discusses extensions from 2-D to 3-D path-following control.

### 12.2.9 Case Study: Path-Following Control for Ships and Underwater Vehicles using Serret-Frenet Coordinates

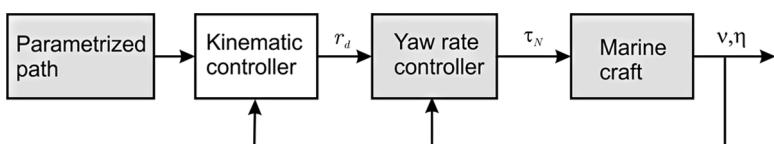
In Section 10.4.2 a guidance law for curved parametrized paths was presented. The guidance law assumes that there exists a parametrized path

$$\mathbf{P}_d^n(\varpi) = \begin{bmatrix} x_d(\varpi) \\ y_d(\varpi) \end{bmatrix} \quad (12.190)$$

as a function of the path variable  $\varpi$ . The main idea is to use a kinematic controller to compute yaw commands  $r_d$  to a yaw rate feedback control system that turns the marine craft such that the predefined path is followed. In 2-D this is a simple rotation about the vertical axis. The kinematic controller can be designed using a dynamic model of the marine craft by specifying a reference frame that moves along the path. This reference frame is usually chosen as the *Serret–Frenet frame* (see Frenet, 1847, Serret, 1851), as shown in Figure 10.19. The kinematic controller can be implemented in cascade with the yaw rate controller, as illustrated in Figure 12.21.

We will look at the implementation aspects of the path-following controller by considering the yaw dynamics of the marine craft in the following form:

$$(I_z - N_r)\dot{r} - N_r r = \tau_N \quad (12.191)$$



**Figure 12.21** Cascaded kinematic and yaw rate controller for path-following control.

where  $I_z - N_r > 0$  and  $-N_r > 0$  are constant parameters. The controller yaw moment  $\tau_N$  can easily be designed to regulate  $r$  to  $r_d$ , for instance by using the following feedback control law:

$$\tau_N = -N_r r - K_p(r - r_d) \quad (12.192)$$

where  $K_p > 0$  is a design parameter and  $r_d$  is the desired yaw rate generated by the kinematic controller. In Section 10.4.2 it was shown that

$$r_d = \left(1 - \frac{(m - X_{\dot{u}})}{(m - Y_i)}\right)^{-1} \left(\dot{\chi}_d + \kappa U_d - K_1 \tilde{\chi}_{SF} - \frac{Y_v}{(m - Y_i)} \left(\tan(\beta) - \frac{v_c}{U \cos(\beta)}\right)\right) \quad (12.193)$$

where  $\tilde{\chi}_{SF} = \chi_{SF} - \chi_d$  renders the equilibrium point  $(s, e, \tilde{\chi}_{SF}) = (0, 0, 0)$  UGAS and ULES. Unfortunately, this expression requires knowledge of the sideslip angle

$$\beta = \arcsin\left(\frac{v}{U}\right) \quad (12.194)$$

and the current velocity  $v_c$ . One way to avoid this is to replace the term proportional to  $\tan(\beta)$  with an integral term. This of course is based on the assumption that the sideslip angle changes slowly. The PI guidance law then takes the following form:

$$r_d = \left(1 - \frac{(m - X_{\dot{u}})}{(m - Y_i)}\right)^{-1} \left(\dot{\chi}_d + \kappa U_d - K_p \tilde{\chi}_{SF} - K_i \int_0^t \tilde{\chi}_{SF}(\tau) d\tau\right) \quad (12.195)$$

where  $K_p = 2\lambda$  and  $K_i = \lambda^2$  are parametrized using  $\lambda > 0$  as a design parameter and (see Section 10.4.2):

$$\chi_d = \arctan\left(\frac{-e}{\Delta}\right) \quad (12.196)$$

$$U_d = U \cos(\chi_{SF}) + K_2 s \quad (12.197)$$

The dynamic equations of the guidance law are

$$\dot{s} = U \cos(\chi_{SF}) - (1 - \kappa e) U_d \quad (12.198)$$

$$\dot{e} = U \sin(\chi_{SF}) - \kappa U_d s \quad (12.199)$$

$$\dot{\chi}_{SF} = r + \dot{\beta} - \kappa U_d \quad (12.200)$$

An alternative approach to integral action is to use a state estimator to estimate the ocean currents (Encarnacao *et al.*, 2000). Cascaded design techniques based on backstepping and Lyapunov analysis are discussed by Lapierre and Soetanto (2007) and Børhaug and Pettersen (2006), while Breivik and Fossen (2004a) present an alternative approach for Serret–Frenet path-following control where the path curvature  $\kappa$  is superfluous.

### 12.2.10 Case Study: Dynamic Positioning Control System for Ships and Floating Structures

Control systems for stationkeeping and low-speed maneuvering are commonly known as dynamic positioning (DP) systems. The Norwegian classification society DnV (1990) defines a DP vessel according to:

*Dynamically positioned vessel:* a free-floating vessel which maintains its position (fixed location or predetermined track) exclusively by means of thrusters.

It is, however, possible to exploit rudder forces in DP also by using the propeller to generate rudder lift forces (Lindegard and Fossen, 2003).

For ships that are anchored, additional spring forces are introduced into the control model. These systems are referred to as position mooring (PM) systems (see Section 12.2.11). Optimality with respect to changing weather conditions will be discussed in Section 13.3.10 using the concept of weather optimal positioning control (WOPC).

#### DP and PM Systems

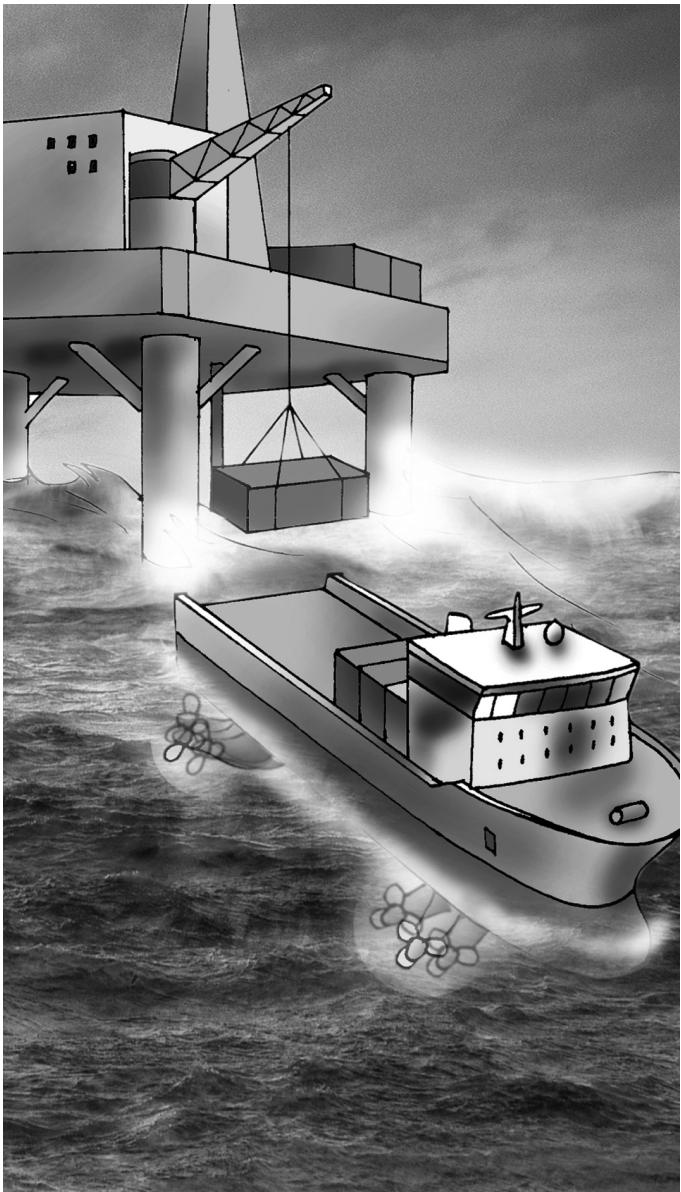
In the 1960s, systems for automatic control of the horizontal position, in addition to the heading, were developed. Systems for the simultaneous control of the three horizontal motions (surge, sway and yaw) are today commonly known as *DP systems* and are used in a wide range of marine operations such as stationkeeping, drilling and offloading, as illustrated in Figure 12.22. More recently anchored positioning systems or *PM systems* have been designed; see Section 12.2.11. For a free-floating vessel the thrusters are the prime actuators for stationkeeping, while for a PM system the assistance of thrusters are only complementary since most of the position-keeping is provided by a deployed anchor system. Different DP applications are described more closely in Strand and Sørensen (2000).

DP systems have traditionally been a *low-speed* application, where the basic DP functionality is either to keep a fixed position and heading or to move slowly from one location to another (*marked positioning*). In addition, specialized tracking functions for cable and pipe-layers, and operations of ROVs have been included. The traditional *autopilot* and *waypoint-tracking* functionalities have also been included in modern DP systems. The trend today is that *high-speed* operation functionality merges with classical DP functionality, resulting in a *unified system* for all speed ranges and types of operations.

The first DP systems were designed using conventional PID controllers in cascade with low-pass and/or notch filters to suppress the wave-induced motion components. This was based on the assumption that the interactions were negligible (Sargent and Cowgill, 1976, and Morgan, 1978). From the middle of the 1970s a new model-based control concept utilizing stochastic optimal control theory and Kalman filtering techniques was employed with the DP problem by Balchen *et al.* (1976). The Kalman filter is used to separate the LF and WF motion components such that only feedback from the LF motion components is used (see Chapter 11). Later extensions and modifications of this work have been proposed by numerous authors; see Balchen *et al.* (1980a, 1980b), Grindle *et al.* (1980a, 1980b), Fung and Grindle (1983), Sælid *et al.* (1983) and more lately Fossen *et al.* (1996), Sørensen *et al.* (1996, 2000), Fossen and Grøvlen (1998) and Fossen and Strand (1999a).

#### Roll and Pitch Damping in DP

Traditionally DP systems have been designed for 3 DOF low-speed trajectory-tracking control by means of thrusters and propellers. However, extensions to 5 DOF control for the purpose of roll and pitch damping of semi-submersibles has been proposed by Sørensen and Strand (1998). It is well known that for marine structures with a small waterplane area and low metacentric height, which results in relatively low hydrostatic restoration compared to the inertia forces, an unintentional coupling phenomenon between



**Figure 12.22** Dynamically positioned supply vessel used in offshore offloading. Illustration by Bjarne Stenberg/Department of Marine Technology, NTNU.

the vertical and the horizontal planes through the thruster action can be invoked. Examples are found in semi-submersibles and SWATHs, which typically have natural periods in roll and pitch in the range of 35–65 s. If the inherent vertical damping properties are small, the amplitudes of roll and pitch may be emphasized by the thruster's induction by up to  $2^{\circ}$ – $5^{\circ}$  in the resonance range. These oscillations have

caused discomfort to the vessel's crew and have in some cases limited the operation. Hence, the motions in both the horizontal and vertical planes should be considered in the controller design, as proposed in Sørensen and Strand (2000).

### Optimal Setpoint Chasing in DP for Drilling and Intervention Vessels

Further extension in the development of DP systems includes extended functionality adapted for the particular marine operation considered. In Sørensen *et al.* (2001) a function for optimal setpoint chasing in DP of drilling and intervention vessels is proposed in order to minimize riser angle offsets at the sea bed and on the vessel.

### Controller and Observer Models

For DP systems an LF controller model will be employed for feedback since dynamics at higher frequencies are negligible in stationkeeping. Recall from Section 7.3.2 that

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_p = \mathbf{v} \quad (12.201)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{b}_p + \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}} + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wave}} \quad (12.202)$$

where VP coordinates have been employed (see Section 7.5.3). The bias term is expressed in  $\{\mathbf{b}\}$  using the transformation  $\mathbf{b}_p = \mathbf{R}(\psi)^T \mathbf{b}$ .

The North-East positions and heading measurements are related to  $\boldsymbol{\eta}_p$  by

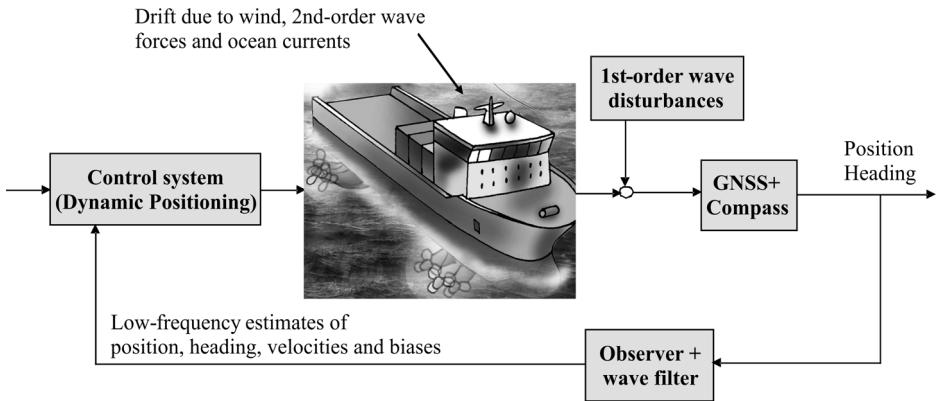
$$\boldsymbol{\eta} = \mathbf{R}(\psi)\boldsymbol{\eta}_p \quad (12.203)$$

In some cases additional measurements are available such as GNSS and Doppler log velocity  $\mathbf{v}$  as well as anemometer measurements, which can be used to compute an estimate of the generalized wind forces  $\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{wind}}$ . The bias  $\mathbf{b}$  is treated as an unknown state due to wave drift, ocean currents and unmodeled dynamics.

### DP Control System

The craft is exposed to *waves*, *ocean currents* and *wind*. The observer–controller must be robust and compensate for environmental forces and unmodeled dynamics. These are the most important design requirements in an industrial vessel control system since a full-state feedback controller will not work in bad weather unless the environmental forces are included in the design specifications. In commercial DP systems it is therefore necessary to include the following features:

- *Integral action* to compensate for slowly varying forces (bias term  $\mathbf{b}$ ) due to ocean currents, second-order wave drift forces and unmodeled dynamics.
- *Wind feedforward control* to compensate for *mean* wind forces. Wind gust cannot be compensated for since the actuators do not have the capacity for moving a large vessel in the frequency range of the wind gust.
- *Wave filtering* to avoid where first-order wave-induced oscillations are fed back to the control system as explained in Chapter 11. This is an important feature since the actuators cannot move a large vessel fast enough to suppress the disturbances.
- *State estimator* for noise filtering and estimation of unmeasured states, for instance linear and angular velocities. The main tool for this is the Kalman filter, alternatively nonlinear and passive observers as described in Sections 11.3–11.4.
- *Optimal allocation of thrust* where the main goal is to compute optimal setpoints for thrusters, rudders and other actuators based on the force and moment commands generated by the DP control system. This is treated in detail in Section 12.3.



**Figure 12.23** Dynamic positioning system. The observer can be implemented as a Kalman filter or a passive observer. Illustration by Bjarne Stenberg.

The different blocks in a closed-loop DP system is shown in Figure 12.23. The control system can be designed as a MIMO nonlinear PID controller using the results in Section 12.2.4. Moreover,

$$\tau = -\hat{\tau}_{wind} + \mathbf{R}^T(\eta)\boldsymbol{\tau}_{PID} \quad (12.204)$$

where  $\hat{\tau}_{wind}$  is an estimate of the generalized wind forces and the PID controller is expressed in  $\{n\}$  according to:

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{PID} = -\mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\eta} - \mathbf{K}_d \dot{\eta} - \mathbf{K}_i \int_0^t \tilde{\eta}(\tau) d\tau \quad (12.205)$$

By combining (12.204) and (12.205), the DP control law becomes

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = -\hat{\tau}_{wind} - \mathbf{R}^T(\eta)\mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\eta} - \underbrace{\mathbf{R}^T(\eta)\mathbf{K}_d \mathbf{R}(\eta)}_{\mathbf{K}_d^*} \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{R}^T(\eta)\mathbf{K}_i \int_0^t \tilde{\eta}(\tau) d\tau \quad (12.206)$$

where

$$\mathbf{K}_d^* := \mathbf{R}^T(\eta)\mathbf{K}_d\mathbf{R}(\eta) \quad (12.207)$$

It is common to choose  $\mathbf{K}_d$  as a diagonal matrix and thus  $\mathbf{K}_d^* = \mathbf{K}_d$ . For the full-state feedback case, asymptotic stability follows using Lyapunov arguments (see Section 12.2.4). However, in order to implement the nonlinear PID controller a state estimator and wave filter must be designed. This is straightforward for the linearized DP model (12.201)–(12.203) where additional states for the WF motions can be augmented and used directly in a Kalman filter (see Section 11.3.6). GAS and convergence of the nonlinear PID controller (12.206) in combination with a linear Kalman filter cannot be guaranteed but the solution has been used in many industrial systems with excellent performance and robustness. Hence, from a practical point of view this is indeed a well-proven concept. An alternative approach could be to use linear vessel

parallel coordinates and a separation principle to guarantee asymptotic stability via a linear quadratic Gaussian optimal control philosophy (see Section 13.1.6).

It is, however, possible to prove UGAS for the nonlinear PID controller in combination with the nonlinear passive observer of Section 11.4 under certain conditions. Consider the passive observer:

$$\dot{\hat{\xi}} = A_w \hat{\xi} + K_1(\omega_o) \tilde{y} \quad (12.208)$$

$$\dot{\hat{\eta}} = R(y_3) \hat{v} + K_2 \tilde{y} \quad (12.209)$$

$$\dot{\hat{b}} = -T^{-1} \hat{b} + K_3 \tilde{y} \quad (12.210)$$

$$M \dot{\hat{v}} = -D \hat{v} + R^\top(y_3) \hat{b} + \tau + \tau_{\text{wind}} + R^\top(y_3) K_4 \tilde{y} \quad (12.211)$$

$$\hat{y} = \hat{\eta} + C_w \hat{\xi} \quad (12.212)$$

where drift is estimated using the bias term  $\hat{b}$ . For the DP controller (12.206), the drift forces have been compensated for by adding integral action in the controller. A PD controller motivated by (12.206), where slowly varying environmental forces are compensated by using the observer bias estimates,  $R^\top(\psi) \hat{b}$ , has been proposed by Loria *et al.* (2000):

$$\tau = -\hat{\tau}_{\text{wind}} - R^\top(\psi) K_p (\hat{\eta} - \eta_d) - K_d^* \hat{v} - R^\top(\psi) \hat{b} \quad (12.213)$$

Notice that the integral term in the controller (12.206) is removed and replaced by the bias estimate. It is then possible to show that the equilibrium point of the observer–controller is UGAS. The stability proof is based on a *separation principle*, which holds for nonlinear systems (Loria *et al.*, 2000).

### Wind Feedforward

It is possible to implement wind feedforward  $\tau_{\text{wind}}$  in DP control systems. However, this requires that the wind forces and moment are known as functions of the wind speed and direction, as well as ship hull parameters. Different wind models are presented in Section 8.1, suggesting that

$$\hat{\tau}_{\text{wind}} = \frac{1}{2} \rho_a V_{rw}^2 \begin{bmatrix} C_X(\gamma_{rw}) A_{Fw} \\ C_Y(\gamma_{rw}) A_{Lw} \\ C_N(\gamma_{rw}) A_{Lw} L_{oa} \end{bmatrix} \quad (12.214)$$

where the relative wind speed and angle of attack are

$$V_{rw} = \sqrt{u_{rw}^2 + v_{rw}^2} \quad (12.215)$$

$$\gamma_{rw} = -\text{atan2}(v_{rw}, u_{rw}) \quad (12.216)$$

The relative velocity components depend on the heading angle  $\psi$ , wind direction  $\beta_w$  and wind speed  $V_w$  according to

$$u_{rw} = u - u_w = u - V_w \cos(\beta_w - \psi) \quad (12.217)$$

$$v_{rw} = v - v_w = v - V_w \sin(\beta_w - \psi) \quad (12.218)$$

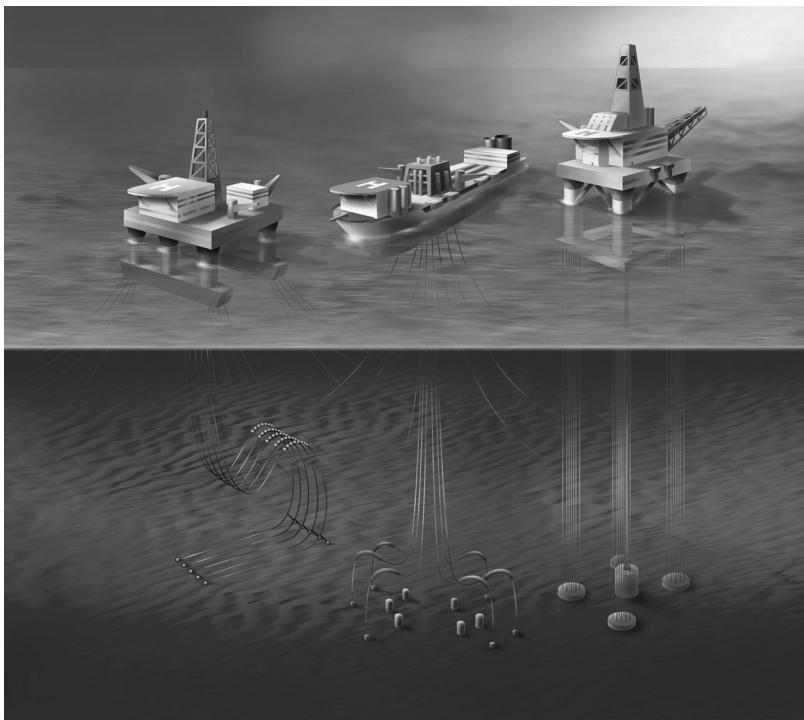
When wind feedforward is implemented, it is important that the wind measurements are low-pass filtered to avoid rapid changes in the actuator commands. Wind feedforward is an optional term since the integrator in the DP system can compensate for slowly varying wind forces as well. The main difference will be the response time. In general, wind feedforward will be much faster than integral action since the integrator needs several minutes to remove a large wind component during the start-up of the DP system.

### 12.2.11 Case Study: Position Mooring Control System for Ships and Floating Structures

Figure 12.24 illustrates different mooring strategies for ships and floating structures. The results of Section 12.2.10 can be generalized to PM systems by adding a spring to the model. Consider the model

$$\dot{\eta}_p = v \quad (12.219)$$

$$M\ddot{v} + Dv + K_p\eta_p = b_p + \tau + \tau_{wind} + \tau_{wave} \quad (12.220)$$



**Figure 12.24** Mooring systems for a submersible, FPSO and platform. Illustration by Bjarne Stenberg.

where  $\boldsymbol{v} = [u, v, r]^\top$  and  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = [N, E, \psi]^\top$ . For this system:

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m_{22} & m_{23} \\ 0 & m_{32} & m_{33} \end{bmatrix} \quad (12.221)$$

$$\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{D}^\top = \begin{bmatrix} d_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & d_{22} & d_{23} \\ 0 & d_{32} & d_{33} \end{bmatrix} \quad (12.222)$$

$$\mathbf{K} = \text{diag}\{k_{11}, k_{22}, k_{33}\} \quad (12.223)$$

The additional spring  $\mathbf{K}\boldsymbol{\eta}_p$  due to the mooring system adds spring stiffness in surge, sway and yaw described by the parameters  $k_{11} > 0$ ,  $k_{22} > 0$  and  $k_{33} \geq 0$ . With this in mind, two different design philosophies for mooring systems are quite common:

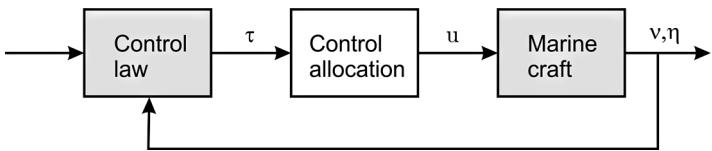
- *Turret mooring systems* have cables that are connected to the turret via bearings. This allows the vessel to rotate around the anchor legs. In this case, the rotational spring can be neglected such that  $k_{33} = 0$ . The turret can be mounted either internally or externally. An external turret is fixed, with appropriate reinforcements, to the bow or stern of the ship. In the internal case the turret is placed within the hull in a moon pool. A moon pool is a wet porch, that is an opening in the floor or base of the hull giving access to the water below, allowing technicians or researchers to lower tools and instruments into the sea. Turret mooring systems allow the vessel to rotate in the horizontal plane (yaw) into the direction where environmental loading due to wind, waves and ocean currents is minimal. This is referred to as weathervaning.
- *Spread mooring systems* are used to moor Floating Production, Storage and Offloading (FPSO) units, tankers and floating platforms (see Figure 12.24). The system consists of mooring lines attached somewhere to the vessel. The drawback with a spread mooring system is that it restrains the vessel from rotating ( $k_{33} > 0$ ) and hence weathervaning is impossible. On the other hand, it is relatively inexpensive to equip an existing vessel with mooring lines that can be attached directly to the hull.

For thruster-assisted PM systems the thrusters are complementary to the mooring system and the main idea is to provide the system with additional damping, for instance by using a D controller:

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = -\mathbf{K}_d \boldsymbol{v} \quad (12.224)$$

The mooring term  $\mathbf{K}\boldsymbol{\eta}_p$  is in fact a P controller but additional spring forces can be included by position feedback if necessary. Integral action is not used in PM systems, since the ship is only allowed to move within a limited radius from the equilibrium point or field-zero point (FZP). If the vessel moves outside the specified radius of the mooring system, a stabilizing control system of PD type can be used to drive the vessel inside the circle again. This is usually done in an energy perspective since it is important to reduce the fuel consumption of PM systems. Consequently, in bad weather it will be more optimal to use additional thrust to stay on the circle rather than move the vessel to the FZP. In good weather, no control action is needed since the vessel is free to move within the circle.

PM systems have been commercially available since the 1980s, and provide a flexible solution for floating structures for drilling and oil and gas exploitation on the smaller and marginal fields (Sørensen *et al.*, 2000). Modeling and control of turret-moored ships are complicated problems since the mooring



**Figure 12.25** Block diagram showing the control allocation block in a feedback control system.

forces and moments are inherently nonlinear (Strand *et al.*, 1998). The control design of PM systems using nonlinear theory is addressed by Strand (1999).

## 12.3 Control Allocation

For marine craft in  $n$  DOF it is necessary to distribute the generalized control forces  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}^n$  to the actuators in terms of control inputs  $u \in \mathbb{R}^r$  as shown in Figure 12.25 (Fossen and Johansen, 2006). If  $r > n$  this is an *overactuated control* problem while  $r < n$  is referred to as *underactuated control*; see the discussion in Section 9.4. The input matrix is square for  $r = n$ , that is the number of actuators is equal to the number of DOFs.

Computation of  $u$  from  $\tau$  is a model-based optimization problem, which in its simplest form is unconstrained while physical limitations such as input amplitude and rate saturations imply that a constrained optimization problem must be solved. Another complication is actuators that can be rotated at the same time as they produce control forces. An example is azimuth thrusters on an offshore supply vessel. This increases the number of available controls from  $r$  to  $r + p$ , where  $p$  denotes the number of rotatable actuators for which additional nonlinearities are introduced.

### 12.3.1 Actuator Models

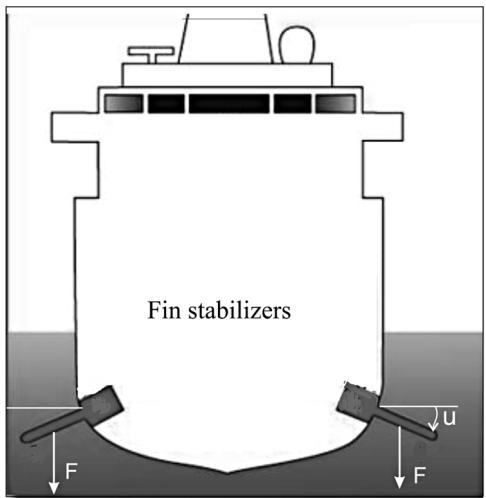
The control force due to a propeller, a rudder or a fin can be written (assuming linearity)

$$F = ku \quad (12.225)$$

where  $k$  is the force coefficient and  $u$  is the control input depending on the actuator considered; see Table 12.3. The linear model  $F = ku$  can also be used to describe nonlinear monotonic control forces. For instance, if the rudder force  $F$  is quadratic in rudder angle  $\delta$ , that is  $F = k \delta |\delta|$ , the choice  $u = \delta |\delta|$ , which has a unique inverse  $\delta = \text{sgn}(u)\sqrt{|u|}$ , satisfies (12.225).

**Table 12.3** Definition of actuators and control variables

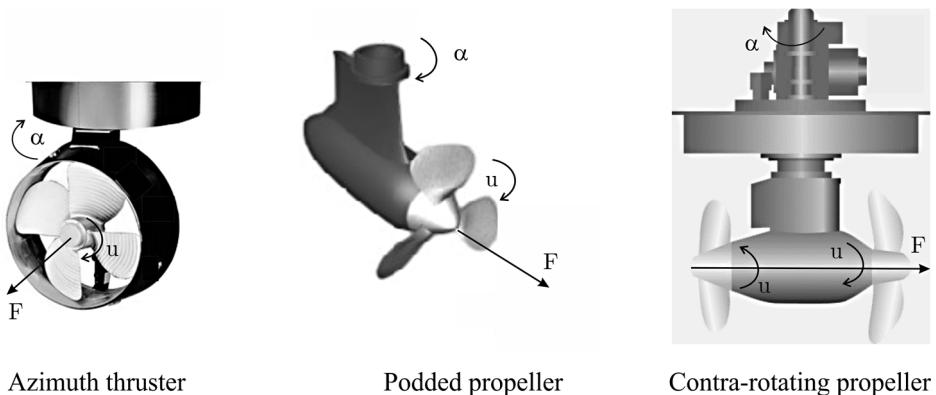
Actuator	$u$ (control input)	$\alpha$ (control input)	$f^\top$ (force vector)
Main propellers (longitudinal)	Pitch and rpm	–	$[F, 0, 0]$
Tunnel thrusters (transverse)	Pitch and rpm	–	$[0, F, 0]$
Azimuth (rotatable) thruster	Pitch and rpm	Angle	$[F \cos(\alpha), F \sin(\alpha), 0]$
Aft rudders	Angle	–	$[0, F, 0]$
Stabilizing fins	Angle	–	$[0, 0, F]$



**Figure 12.26** Fin stabilized ship where the vertical force  $F = ku$  is proportional to the angle  $u$  for small deflections.

For marine craft the most common actuators are:

- **Main propellers:** The main propellers of the craft are mounted aft of the hull, usually in conjunction with rudders. They produce the necessary force  $F_x$  in the  $x$  direction needed for transit.
- **Tunnel thrusters:** These are transverse thrusters going through the hull of the craft. The propeller unit is mounted inside a transverse tube and produces a force  $F_y$  in the  $y$  direction. Tunnel thrusters are only effective at low speeds, which limits their use to low-speed maneuvering and stationkeeping.
- **Azimuth thrusters:** Thruster units that can be rotated an angle  $\alpha$  about the  $z$  axis and produce two force components ( $F_x, F_y$ ) in the horizontal plane are usually referred to as azimuth thrusters. They are usually mounted under the hull of the craft and the most sophisticated units are retractable. Azimuth thrusters are frequently used in DP systems since they can produce forces in different directions. Hence, this becomes an overactuated control problem that can be optimized with respect to power and possible failure situations.
- **Aft rudders:** Rudders are the primary steering device for conventional marine craft. They are located aft of the craft and the rudder force  $F_y$  will be a function of the rudder deflection (the drag force in the  $x$  direction is usually neglected in the control analysis). A rudder force in the  $y$  direction will produce a yaw moment that can be used for steering control.
- **Stabilizing fins:** Stabilizing fins are used for the damping of vertical vibrations and roll motions (see Figure 12.26). They produce a force  $F_z$  in the  $z$  directions that is a function of the fin deflection. For small angles this relationship is linear. Fin stabilizers can be retractable, allowing for selective use in bad weather. The lift forces are small at low speed so the most effective operating condition is in transit.
- **Control surfaces:** Control surfaces can be mounted at different locations to produce lift and drag forces. For underwater vehicles these could be fins for diving, rolling and pitching and rudders for steering.
- **Water jets:** Water jets are an alternative to main propellers aft of the ship. They are usually used for high-speed craft.



**Figure 12.27** Propellers that can be rotated an angle  $\alpha$  to produce a force  $F$  in an arbitrary direction.

The forces and moments in 6 DOF corresponding to the force vector  $\mathbf{f} = [F_x, F_y, F_z]^\top$  can be written (see Table 12.3)

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{f} \\ \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{f} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} F_x \\ F_y \\ F_z \\ F_z l_y - F_y l_z \\ F_x l_z - F_z l_x \\ F_y l_x - F_x l_y \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{4 \text{ DOF}} \boldsymbol{\tau} = \begin{bmatrix} F_x \\ F_y \\ F_z \\ F_z l_y - F_y l_z \\ F_y l_x - F_x l_y \\ F_x l_z - F_z l_x \end{bmatrix} \quad (12.226)$$

where  $\mathbf{r} = [l_x, l_y, l_z]^\top$  are the moment arms. For rotatable (azimuth) thrusters the control force  $F$  will be a function of the rotation angle  $\alpha$  and propeller revolution  $u$  (see Figure 12.27). Consequently, an azimuth thruster in the horizontal plane will have two force components,  $F_x = F \cos(\alpha)$  and  $F_y = F \sin(\alpha)$ , while the main propeller aft of the ship only produces a longitudinal force  $F_x = F$  (see Table 12.3).

### Thrust Configuration and Force Coefficient Matrices

The control forces and moments  $\mathbf{f} = [u_1, \dots, u_n]^\top$  are conveniently expressed as

$$\mathbf{f} = \mathbf{K}\mathbf{u} \quad (12.227)$$

where  $\mathbf{u} = [u_1, \dots, u_r]^\top$  is a vector of control inputs and  $\mathbf{K} \in \mathbb{R}^{r \times r}$  is a diagonal force coefficient matrix given by

$$\mathbf{K} = \text{diag}\{K_1, \dots, K_r\}, \quad \mathbf{K}^{-1} = \text{diag} \left\{ \frac{1}{K_1}, \dots, \frac{1}{K_r} \right\} \quad (12.228)$$

The actuator forces and moments relate to the control forces and moments by

$$\begin{aligned}\tau &= T(\alpha)f \\ &= T(\alpha)Ku\end{aligned}\quad (12.229)$$

where  $\alpha = [\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_p]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^p$  is a vector of azimuth angles and  $T(\alpha) \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times r}$  is the thrust configuration matrix. For a marine craft equipped with  $r$  actuators for operation in  $n$  DOFs, the thrust configuration matrix describes the geometry or locations of the actuators.

**Thrust Configuration Matrix for Nonrotatable Thrusters:** The trivial case refers to a marine craft equipped with nonrotatable thrusters such that

$$T = [t_1, \dots, t_r] = \text{constant}$$

The thrust configuration matrix is defined in terms of a set of column vectors  $t_i \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . In 4 DOF (*surge*, *sway*, *roll* and *yaw*) the column vectors for some standard actuators are

$$t_i = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ -l_{y_i} \end{bmatrix}}_{\text{main propeller}}, \quad t_i = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -l_{z_i} \\ l_{x_i} \end{bmatrix}}_{\text{tunnel thruster and aft rudder}}, \quad t_i = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ l_{y_i} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}}_{\text{stabilizing fin}}$$

An example using this representation is found in Section 13.1.5 discussing fin and rudder control systems.

**Thrust Configuration Matrix for Rotatable Thrusters:** For marine craft equipped with azimuth thrusters in combination with nonrotatable thrusters we write:

$$T(\alpha) = [t_1, \dots, t_r] \quad (12.230)$$

where  $\alpha = [\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_p]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^p$  is a vector of azimuth angles. The thrust configuration matrix is defined in terms of a set of column vectors  $t_i \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . In 4 DOF (*surge*, *sway* *roll* and *yaw*) the column vectors take the following form:

$$t_i = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} \cos(\alpha_i) \\ \sin(\alpha_i) \\ -l_{z_i} \sin(\alpha_i) \\ l_{x_i} \sin(\alpha_i) - l_{y_i} \cos(\alpha_i) \end{bmatrix}}_{\text{azimuth thruster}}, \quad t_i = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ -l_{y_i} \end{bmatrix}}_{\text{main propeller}}, \quad t_i = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -l_{z_i} \\ l_{x_i} \end{bmatrix}}_{\text{tunnel thruster and aft rudder}}, \quad t_i = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ l_{y_i} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}}_{\text{stabilizing fin}}$$

An example using this representation is found in Section 12.3.5 discussing dynamic positioning systems.

**Extended Thrust Configuration Matrix for Rotatable Actuators:** When solving the control allocation optimization problem an alternative representation to (12.230) is the extended thrust configuration matrix. Equation (12.230) is nonlinear in the controls  $\alpha$ . This implies that a nonlinear optimization problem must be solved. In order to avoid this, the rotatable thrusters can be treated as two forces. Consider a rotatable thruster in the horizontal plane (the same methodology can be used for thrusters that can be rotated in the vertical plane):

$$\begin{aligned} F_{x_i} &= F_i \cos(\alpha_i) \\ &= K_i u_i \cos(\alpha_i) \end{aligned} \quad (12.231)$$

$$\begin{aligned} F_{y_i} &= F_i \sin(\alpha_i) \\ &= K_i u_i \sin(\alpha_i) \end{aligned} \quad (12.232)$$

Next, the extended force vector is defined according to

$$\mathbf{f}_e := \mathbf{K}_e \mathbf{u}_e \quad (12.233)$$

such that

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{T}_e \mathbf{K}_e \mathbf{u}_e \quad (12.234)$$

where  $\mathbf{T}_e$  and  $\mathbf{K}_e$  are the extended thrust configuration and coefficient matrices, respectively, and  $\mathbf{u}_e$  is a vector of extended control inputs where the azimuth controls are defined as

$$u_{ix} := u_i \cos(\alpha_i) \quad (12.235)$$

$$u_{iy} := u_i \sin(\alpha_i) \quad (12.236)$$

This approach was used by Sørdalen (1997b). The following example illustrates how this model can be established for an underwater vehicle equipped with two main propellers and two azimuth thrusters in the horizontal plane (Fossen *et al.*, 2009).

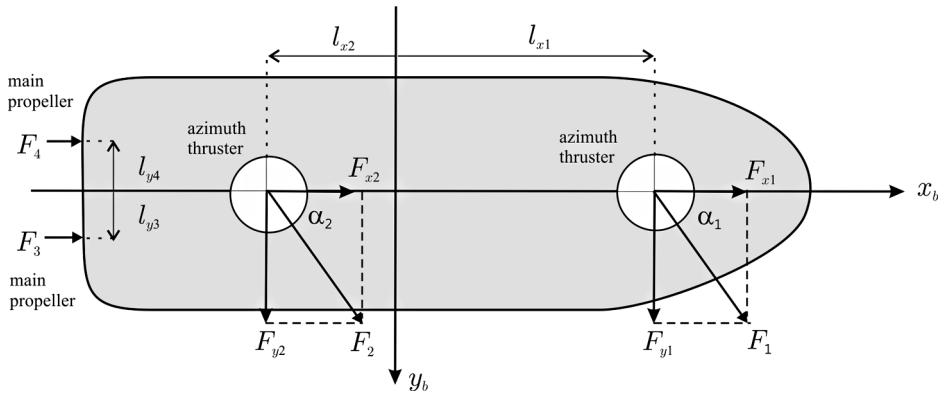
#### Example 12.8 (Thrust Configuration Matrix for an Underwater Vehicle)

The forces and moment  $X$ ,  $Y$  and  $N$  in surge, sway and yaw, respectively, for the AUV thruster configuration shown in Figure 12.28 satisfy

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{T}(\alpha) \mathbf{K} \mathbf{u} \quad (12.237)$$

iff

$$\begin{bmatrix} X \\ Y \\ N \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\alpha_1) & \cos(\alpha_2) & 1 & 1 \\ \sin(\alpha_1) & \sin(\alpha_2) & 0 & 0 \\ l_{x1} \sin(\alpha_1) & l_{x2} \sin(\alpha_2) & -l_{y3} & -l_{y4} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} K_1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & K_2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & K_3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & K_4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ u_3 \\ u_4 \end{bmatrix} \quad (12.238)$$



**Figure 12.28** AUV equipped with two azimuth thrusters (forces  $F_1$  and  $F_2$ ) and two main propellers (forces  $F_3$  and  $F_4$ ). The azimuth forces are decomposed along the  $x$  and  $y$  axes.

The extended thrust vector  $\mathbf{u}_e$  corresponding to (12.234) and (12.235)–(12.236) satisfies

$$\tau_e = \mathbf{T}_e \mathbf{K}_e \mathbf{u}_e \quad (12.239)$$

iff

$$\begin{bmatrix} X \\ Y \\ N \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & l_{x1} & 0 & l_{x2} & -l_{y3} & -l_{y4} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} K_1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & K_1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & K_2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & K_2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & K_3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & K_4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_{1x} \\ u_{1y} \\ u_{2x} \\ u_{2y} \\ u_3 \\ u_4 \end{bmatrix} \quad (12.240)$$

Notice that  $\mathbf{T}_e = \text{constant}$  while  $\mathbf{T}(\alpha)$  depends on  $\alpha$ . This means that the extended control input vector  $\mathbf{u}_e$  can be solved directly from (12.234), for instance using the pseudo-inverse approach presented in Section 12.3.2. This is not the case for (12.230), which represents a nonlinear optimization problem. If  $\mathbf{u}_e$  is computed using the pseudo-inverse, the azimuth control can be derived from the extended control vector elements by mapping the pairs  $(u_{1x}, u_{1y})$  and  $(u_{2x}, u_{2y})$  according to

$$u_1 = \sqrt{u_{1x}^2 + u_{1y}^2}, \quad \alpha_1 = \text{atan2}(u_{1y}, u_{1x}) \quad (12.241)$$

$$u_2 = \sqrt{u_{2x}^2 + u_{2y}^2}, \quad \alpha_2 = \text{atan2}(u_{2y}, u_{2x}) \quad (12.242)$$

The last two controls  $u_3$  and  $u_4$  are elements five and six in  $\mathbf{u}_e$ .

### 12.3.2 Unconstrained Control Allocation for Nonrotatable Actuators

The simplest allocation problem is the one where all control forces are produced by thrusters in fixed directions alone or in combination with rudders and control surfaces. This implies that

$$\alpha = \alpha_0 = \text{constant}, \quad T = T(\alpha_0) \quad (12.243)$$

It will be assumed that the allocation problem is *unconstrained*; that is there are no bounds on the vector elements  $f_i, \alpha_i$  and  $u_i$ , and their time derivatives. Saturating control and constrained control allocation are discussed in Sections 12.3.3–12.3.4.

For marine craft where the configuration matrix  $T$  is square or nonsquare ( $r \geq n$ ), that is there are equal or more control inputs than controllable DOFs, it is possible to find an “optimal” distribution of control forces  $f$  for each DOF by using an explicit method. Consider the unconstrained least-squares (LS) optimization problem (Fossen and Sagatun, 1991):

$$\begin{aligned} J &= \min_f \{f^\top W f\} \\ \text{subject to: } \tau - Tf &= \mathbf{0} \end{aligned} \quad (12.244)$$

Here  $W$  is a positive definite matrix, usually diagonal, weighting the control forces. For marine craft that have both control surfaces and propellers, the elements in  $W$  should be selected so that using the control surfaces are considerably less expensive than using the propellers.

#### Explicit Solution to the LS Optimization Problem using Lagrange Multipliers

Consider the Lagrangian (Fossen, 1994)

$$L(f, \lambda) = f^\top W f + \lambda^\top (\tau - Tf) \quad (12.245)$$

where  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}^r$  is a vector of Lagrange multipliers. Consequently, differentiating the Lagrangian  $L$  with respect to  $f$  yields

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial f} = 2Wf - T^\top \lambda = \mathbf{0} \quad (12.246)$$

$\Downarrow$

$$f = \frac{1}{2} W^{-1} T^\top \lambda \quad (12.247)$$

Next, assume that  $TW^{-1}T^\top$  is nonsingular such that

$$\tau = Tf = \frac{1}{2} TW^{-1} T^\top \lambda \quad (12.248)$$

$\Downarrow$

$$\lambda = 2(TW^{-1}T^\top)^{-1}\tau \quad (12.249)$$

Substituting the Lagrange multipliers  $\lambda = 2(\mathbf{T}\mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\top)^{-1}\boldsymbol{\tau}$  into (12.247) yields

$$\mathbf{f} = \underbrace{\mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\top(\mathbf{T}\mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\top)^{-1}}_{\mathbf{T}_w^\dagger}\boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (12.250)$$

where the matrix

$$\mathbf{T}_w^\dagger = \mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\top(\mathbf{T}\mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\top)^{-1} \quad (12.251)$$

is recognized as the *generalized inverse*. For the case  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{I}$ , that is equally weighted control forces, (12.251) reduces to the right *Moore–Penrose pseudo-inverse*

$$\mathbf{T}^\dagger = \mathbf{T}^\top(\mathbf{T}\mathbf{T}^\top)^{-1} \quad (12.252)$$

Since

$$\mathbf{f} = \mathbf{T}_w^\dagger\boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (12.253)$$

the control input vector  $\mathbf{u}$  can be computed from (12.230) as

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{K}^{-1}\mathbf{T}_w^\dagger\boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (12.254)$$

Notice that this solution is valid for all  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}_0$  but not optimal with respect to a time-varying  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}_0$  (only  $\mathbf{f}$ ). Optimality with respect to  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$  in addition to (12.247) is discussed in Section 12.3.4.

### Matlab

The generalized inverse for the case  $\mathbf{T} = \mathbf{T}(\boldsymbol{\alpha}_0) = \text{constant}$  is implemented in the Matlab MSS toolbox as

```
u=ualloc(K,T,W,tau)
```

### 12.3.3 Constrained Control Allocation for Nonrotatable Actuators

In industrial systems it is important to minimize the power consumption by taking advantage of the additional control forces in an overactuated control problem. From a critical point of view concerning safety it is also important to take into account actuator limitations such as saturation, wear and tear as well as other constraints. In general this leads to a *constrained optimization problem*.

### Explicit Solution using Piecewise Linear Functions

An explicit solution approach for parametric quadratic programming has been developed by Tøndel *et al.* (2003a) while applications to marine craft are presented by Johansen *et al.* (2005). In this work the constrained optimization problem is formulated as

$$\begin{aligned} J &= \min_{f, s, \bar{f}} \left\{ f^\top W f + s^\top Q s + \beta \bar{f} \right\} \\ \text{subject to:} \\ Tf &= \tau + s \\ f_{\min} &\leq f \leq f_{\max} \\ -\bar{f} &\leq f_1, f_2, \dots, f_r \leq \bar{f} \end{aligned} \quad (12.255)$$

where  $s \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is a vector of *slack variables*. The first term of the criterion corresponds to the LS criterion (12.244), while the third term is introduced to minimize the largest force  $\bar{f} = \max_i |f_i|$  among the actuators. The constant  $\beta \geq 0$  controls the relative weighting of the two criteria. This formulation ensures that the constraints  $f_i^{\min} \leq f_i \leq f_i^{\max}$  ( $i = 1, \dots, r$ ) are satisfied, if necessary by allowing the resulting generalized force  $Tf$  to deviate from its specification  $\tau$ . To achieve accurate generalized force, the slack variable should be close to zero. This is obtained by choosing the weighting matrix  $Q \gg W > 0$ . Moreover, saturation is handled in an optimal manner by minimizing the combined criterion (12.255).

Letting

$$z = [f^\top, s^\top, \bar{f}]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^{r+n+1} \quad (12.256)$$

and

$$p = [\tau^\top, f_{\min}^\top, f_{\max}^\top, \beta]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^{n+2r+1} \quad (12.257)$$

denotes the parameter vector, it is straightforward to see that the optimization problem (12.255) can be reformulated as a QP problem:

$$\begin{aligned} J &= \min_z \left\{ z^\top \Phi z + z^\top R p \right\} \\ \text{subject to:} \\ A_1 z &= C_1 p \\ A_2 z &\leq C_2 p \end{aligned} \quad (12.258)$$

where

$$\Phi = \begin{bmatrix} W & \mathbf{0}_{r \times n} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times 1} \\ \mathbf{0}_{n \times r} & Q & \mathbf{0}_{n \times 1} \\ \mathbf{0}_{1 \times r} & \mathbf{0}_{1 \times n} & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad R = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{(r+n+1) \times (n+2r)} & \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{(r+n) \times 1} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{A}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{T} & -\mathbf{I}_{n \times n} & \mathbf{0}_{n \times 1} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{C}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{I}_{n \times n} & \mathbf{0}_{n \times (2r+1)} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{A}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -\mathbf{I}_{r \times r} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times n} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times 1} \\ \mathbf{I}_{r \times r} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times n} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times 1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \mathbf{I}_{r \times r} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times n} & \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ \mathbf{I}_{r \times r} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times n} - & \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{C}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{r \times n} & -\mathbf{I}_{r \times r} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times r} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times 1} \\ \mathbf{0}_{r \times n} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times r} & \mathbf{I}_{r \times r} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times 1} \\ \mathbf{0}_{r \times n} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times r} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times r} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times 1} \\ \mathbf{0}_{r \times n} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times r} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times r} & \mathbf{0}_{r \times 1} \end{bmatrix}$$

Since  $\mathbf{W} > 0$  and  $\mathbf{Q} > 0$  this is a convex quadratic program in  $\mathbf{z}$  parametrized by  $\mathbf{p}$ . Convexity guarantees that a global solution can be found. The optimal solution  $\mathbf{z}^*(\mathbf{p})$  to this problem is a continuous piecewise linear function  $\mathbf{z}^*(\mathbf{p})$  defined on any subset

$$\mathbf{p}_{\min} \leq \mathbf{p} \leq \mathbf{p}_{\max} \quad (12.259)$$

of the parameter space. Moreover, an exact representation of this piecewise linear function can be computed offline using multiparametric QP (mp-QP) algorithms (Tøndel *et al.*, 2003b) or the *Matlab Multi-Parametric Toolbox* (MPT) by Kvasnica *et al.* (2004). Consequently, it is not necessary to solve the QP (12.255) in real time for the current value of  $\tau$  and the parameters  $f_{\min}$ ,  $f_{\max}$  and  $\beta$  if they are allowed to vary. In fact, it suffices to evaluate the known piecewise linear function  $\mathbf{z}^*(\mathbf{p})$  as a function of the given parameter vector  $\mathbf{p}$ , which can be done efficiently with a small amount of computations. For details of the implementation aspects of the mp-QP algorithm see Johansen *et al.* (2004) and references therein. An online control allocation algorithm is presented in Tøndel *et al.* (2003a).

### Explicit Solution for Varying $\alpha$ using Piecewise Linear Functions

An extension of the mp-QP algorithm to marine craft equipped with azimuth thrusters and rudders has been given by Tøndel *et al.* (2003a). A propeller with a rudder can produce a thrust vector within a range of directions and magnitudes in the horizontal plane for low-speed maneuvering and stationkeeping. The set of attainable thrust vectors is nonconvex because significant lift can be produced by the rudder only with forward thrust. The attainable thrust region can, however, be decomposed into a finite union of convex polyhedral sets. A similar decomposition can be made for azimuth thrusters including forbidden sectors. Hence, this can be formulated as a mixed-integer-like convex QP problem, and by using, arbitrarily, number, of rudders as well as thrusters, other propulsion devices can be handled. Actuator rate and position constraints are also taken into account. Using a mp-QP software, an explicit piecewise linear representation of the least-squares optimal control allocation law can be precomputed. The method has been tested on a scale model of a supply vessel by Tøndel *et al.* (2003a) and a scale model of a floating platform by Spjøtvold (2008).

## Explicit Solutions based on Minimum Norm and Null-Space Methods

In flight and aerospace control systems, the problems of control allocation and saturating control have been addressed by Durham (1993, 1994a, 1994b). Durham also discusses an explicit solution to avoid saturation, referred to as the “direct method”. By noticing that there are infinite combinations of admissible controls that generate control forces on the boundary of the closed subset of attainable controls, the “direct method” calculates admissible controls in the interior of the attainable forces as scaled-down versions of the unique solutions for force demands. Unfortunately it is not possible to minimize the norm of the control forces on the boundary or some other constraint since the solutions on the boundary are unique. The computational complexity of the algorithm is proportional to the square of the number of controls, which can be problematic in real-time applications.

In Bordignon and Durham (1995) the null-space interaction method is used to minimize the norm of the control vector, when possible, and still access the attainable forces to overcome the drawbacks of the “direct method”. This method is also explicit but much more computationally intensive. For instance, 20 independent controls imply that up to 3.4 billion points have to be checked at each sample. In Durham (1999) a computationally simple and efficient method to obtain near-optimal solutions is described. The method is based on prior knowledge of the controls’ effectiveness and limits such that precalculation of several generalized inverses can be done.

## Iterative Solutions

An alternative to the explicit solution could be to use an iterative solution to solve the QP problem. The m-file function `quadprog.m` in the Matlab optimization toolbox can be used for computer simulations, while a stand alone compiled QP solver must be implemented in a real-time application. The drawback with the iterative solution is that several iterations may have to be performed at each sample in order to find the optimal solution. An advantage of the iterative approach is that there is more flexibility for online reconfiguration, as, for example, a change in  $\mathbf{W}$  may require that the explicit solutions are recalculated. Computational complexity is also greatly reduced by a “warm start”; that is the numerical solver is initialized with the solution of the optimization problem computed at the previous sample.

### 12.3.4 Constrained Control Allocation for Azimuth Thrusters

The control allocation problem for marine craft equipped with azimuth thrusters is in general a *nonconvex* optimization problem that is hard to solve. The primary constraint is

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{T}(\boldsymbol{\alpha})\mathbf{f} \quad (12.260)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\alpha} \in \mathbb{R}^p$  denotes the azimuth angles. The azimuth angles must be computed at each sample together with the control inputs  $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbb{R}^r$  which are subject to both amplitude and rate saturations. In addition, azimuth thrusters can only operate in feasible sectors  $\alpha_{i,\min} \leq \alpha_i \leq \alpha_{i,\max}$  at a limiting turning rate  $\dot{\alpha}_i$ . Another problem is that the inverse

$$\mathbf{T}_w^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) = \mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\top(\boldsymbol{\alpha})[\mathbf{T}(\boldsymbol{\alpha})\mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\top(\boldsymbol{\alpha})]^{-1} \quad (12.261)$$

can be singular for certain  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$  values. The consequence of such a singularity is that no force is produced in certain directions. This may greatly reduce dynamic performance and maneuverability as the azimuth angles can be changed only slowly. This suggests that the following criterion should be minimized (Johansen *et al.*, 2004):

$$J = \min_{f, \alpha, s} \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^r \bar{P}_i |f_i|^{3/2} + s^\top Q s + (\alpha - \alpha_0)^\top \Omega (\alpha - \alpha_0) + \frac{\varrho}{\varepsilon + \det(T(\alpha) W^{-1} T^\top(\alpha))} \right\} \quad (12.262)$$

subject to:

$$\begin{aligned} T(\alpha) f &= \tau + s \\ f_{\min} &\leq f \leq f_{\max} \\ \alpha_{\min} &\leq \alpha \leq \alpha_{\max} \\ \Delta\alpha_{\min} &\leq \alpha - \alpha_0 \leq \Delta\alpha_{\max} \end{aligned}$$

where

- $\sum_{i=1}^r \bar{P}_i |f_i|^{3/2}$  represents power consumption where  $\bar{P}_i > 0$  ( $i = 1, \dots, r$ ) are positive weights.
- $s^\top Q s$  penalizes the error  $s$  between the commanded and achieved generalized force. This is necessary in order to guarantee that the optimization problem has a feasible solution for any  $\tau$  and  $\alpha_0$ . The weight  $Q > 0$  is chosen to be large enough so that the optimal solution is  $s \approx \mathbf{0}$  whenever possible.
- $f_{\min} \leq f \leq f_{\max}$  is used to limit the use of force (saturation handling).
- $\alpha_{\min} \leq \alpha \leq \alpha_{\max}$  denotes the feasible sectors of the azimuth angles.
- $\Delta\alpha_{\min} \leq \alpha - \alpha_0 \leq \Delta\alpha_{\max}$  ensures that the azimuth angles do not move too much within one sample, taking  $\alpha_0$  equal to the angles at the previous sample. This is equivalent to limiting  $\dot{\alpha}$ , that is the turning rate of the thrusters.
- The term

$$\frac{\varrho}{\varepsilon + \det(T(\alpha) W^{-1} T^\top(\alpha))}$$

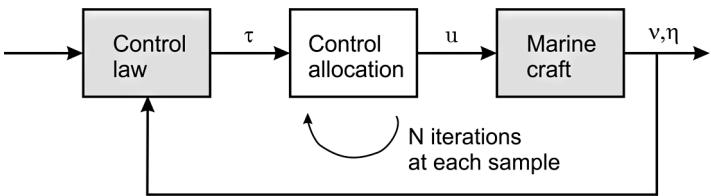
is introduced to avoid singular configurations given by  $\det(T(\alpha) W^{-1} T^\top(\alpha)) = 0$ . To avoid division by zero,  $\varepsilon > 0$  is chosen as a small number, while  $\varrho > 0$  is scalar weight. A large  $\varrho$  ensures high maneuverability at the cost of higher power consumption and vice versa.

The optimization problem (12.262) is a nonconvex nonlinear program and requires a significant amount of computations at each sample (Nocedal and Wright, 1999). The nonlinear program is solved by using iterations as shown in Figure 12.29. The following two implementation strategies are attractive alternatives to nonlinear program efforts.

### Iterative Solutions using Quadratic Programming

The problem (12.262) can be locally approximated with a *convex* QP problem by assuming that:

1. The power consumption can be approximated by a quadratic term in  $f$  near the last force  $f_0$  such that  $f = f_0 + \Delta f$ .
2. The singularity avoidance penalty can be approximated by a linear term linearized about the last azimuth angle  $\alpha_0$  such that  $\alpha = \alpha_0 + \Delta\alpha$ .



**Figure 12.29** Control allocation using an iterative solution.

The resulting QP criterion is (Johansen *et al.*, 2004)

$$J = \min_{\Delta f, \Delta \alpha, s} \left\{ (f_0 + \Delta f)^\top P (f_0 + \Delta f) + s^\top Q s + \Delta \alpha^\top \Omega \Delta \alpha + \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} \left( \frac{\varrho}{\varepsilon + \det(\mathbf{T}(\alpha) \mathbf{W}^{-1} \mathbf{T}^\top(\alpha))} \right) \Big|_{\alpha_0} \Delta \alpha \right\} \quad (12.263)$$

subject to:

$$\begin{aligned} s + \mathbf{T}(\alpha_0) \Delta f + \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} (\mathbf{T}(\alpha_0) f)|_{\alpha_0, f_0} \Delta \alpha &= \tau - \mathbf{T}(\alpha_0) f_0 \\ f_{\min} - f_0 \leq \Delta f &\leq f_{\max} - f_0 \\ \alpha_{\min} - \alpha_0 \leq \Delta \alpha &\leq \alpha_{\max} - \alpha_0 \\ \Delta \alpha_{\min} \leq \Delta \alpha &\leq \Delta \alpha_{\max} \end{aligned}$$

The convex QP problem (12.263) can be solved by using standard software for numerical optimization, for instance the m-file function `quadprog.m` in the Matlab optimization toolbox.

### Iterative Solutions using Linear Programming

Linear approximations to the thrust allocation problem have been discussed by Webster and Sousa (1999) and Lindfors (1993). In Lindfors (1993) the azimuth thrust constraints

$$|f_i| = \sqrt{[f_i \cos(\alpha_i)]^2 + [f_i \sin(\alpha_i)]^2} \leq f_i^{\max} \quad (12.264)$$

are represented as circles in the  $(f_i \cos \alpha_i, f_i \sin \alpha_i)$  plane. The nonlinear program is transformed to a linear programming (LP) problem by approximating the azimuth thrust constraints by straight lines forming a polygon. If eight lines are used to approximate the circles (octagons), the worst case errors will be less than  $\pm 4.0\%$ . The criterion to be minimized is a linear combination of  $\|f\|$ , that is magnitude of force in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions, weighted against the magnitudes  $|\sqrt{[f_i \cos(\alpha_i)]^2 + [f_i \sin(\alpha_i)]^2}|$  representing azimuth thrust. Hence, singularities and azimuth rate limitations are not weighted in the cost function. If these are important, the QP formulation should be used.

### Explicit Solution using the Singular Value Decomposition and Filtering Techniques

An alternative method to solve the constrained control allocation problem is to use the singular value decomposition (SVD) and a filtering scheme to control the azimuth directions such that they are aligned with the direction where most force is required, paying attention to singularities (Sørøldalen, 1997b).

Results from sea trials have been presented in Sørdalen (1997a). A similar technique using the damped least-squares algorithm has been reported in Berge and Fossen (1997), where the results are documented by controlling a scale model of a supply vessel equipped with four azimuth thrusters.

### 12.3.5 Case Study: DP Control Allocation System

Most DP ships use thrusters to maintain their position and heading. Both *fixed pitch* (FP) and *controllable pitch* (CP) propellers are available for this purpose.

#### Fixed-Speed CP and Variable-Speed FP Propellers

The thrust  $F$  from a *variable-speed FP* propeller can be modeled as

$$F(n) = Kn |n| \quad (\text{or } F(n) = Kn) \quad (12.265)$$

where  $K = \text{constant}$  is the thrust coefficient and  $n$  is the propeller revolutions per minute (rpm). Some propellers show linear behavior in  $n$  while others are quadratic. Even combinations of the linear and quadratic behavior are observed in practice.

CP propellers are screw blade propellers where the blades can be turned under the control of a hydraulic servo. This introduces a second control variable, pitch  $p$ , which is used to obtain the desired thrust  $F$  for different propeller revolutions  $n$ . If  $P$  is the “traveled distance per revolution” and  $D$  is the propeller diameter then  $p = P/D$  represents the pitch ratio.

The thrust from a *fixed-speed CP* propeller can be approximated by

$$F(n, p) = K(n)|(p - p_0)|(p - p_0) \quad (\text{or } F(n, p) = K(n)(p - p_0)) \quad (12.266)$$

where the force coefficient  $K(n)$  now depends on the propeller revolution. Again, thrust is quadratic, alternatively linear, in  $p - p_0$  or combinations of both. The pitch offset is denoted as  $p_0$ . For DP ships using fixed-speed CP propellers it is common to operate at one or two fixed propeller revolutions such that only  $p$  is used for active control by the DP system; see Example 12.9.

For ships in transit a constant demand for thrust and power suggests that a fixed-speed CP propeller should be used while low-speed applications such as DP operations require little thrust in good weather, suggesting that a variable-speed FP propeller might be advantageous (see Figure 12.30). Notice that the fixed-speed CP propeller also requires power at zero thrust.

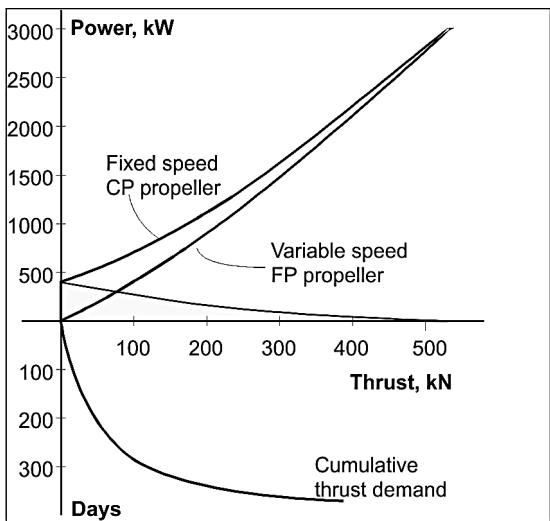
#### Example 12.9 (Experimental Thrust Characteristics)

The supply vessel in Fossen et al. (1996) is equipped with a main propeller and tunnel thrusters. The measured thrust is shown as asterisks in Figure 12.31 while the solid lines are least-square fits to the quadratic thrust function (12.266). The main propeller operated at  $n = 122$  rpm and  $n = 160$  rpm, while the tunnel thruster ran at  $n = 236$  rpm resulting in

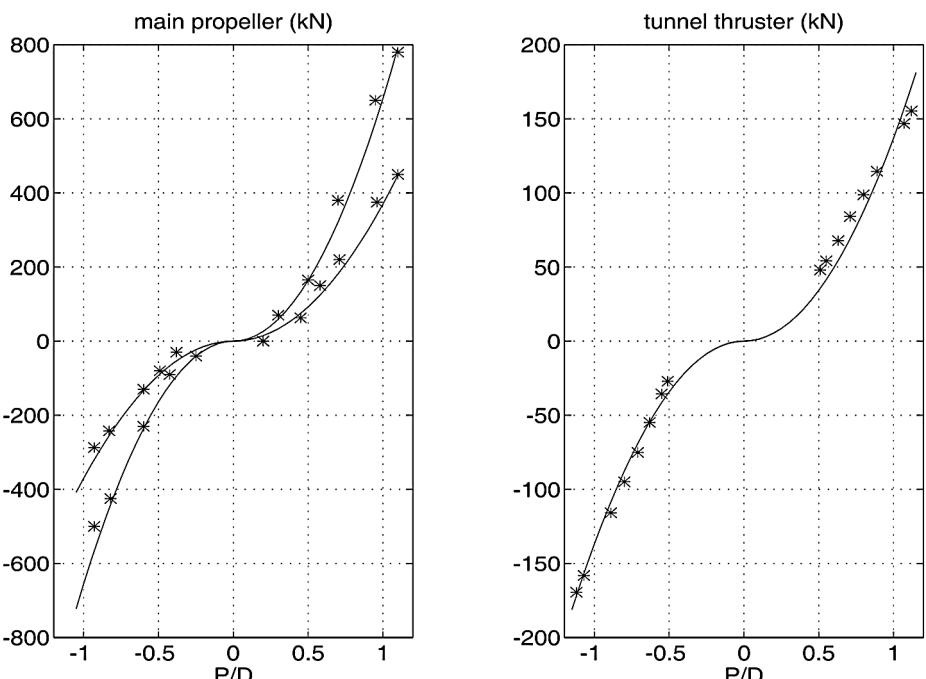
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Main propeller} \quad F(122, p) &= 370 |p| p & F(236, p) &= 137 |p| p \\ \text{Tunnel thruster} \quad F(160, p) &= 655 |p| p \end{aligned}$$

#### Actuator Configuration and Thrust Coefficient Matrices

Recall from Section 12.3 that the forces and moment  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}^3$  (*surge*, *sway* and *yaw*) can be written



**Figure 12.30** Power consumption of fixed-speed CP and variable speed FP propellers.



**Figure 12.31** Thrust  $F(n, p) = K(n)p |p|$  versus pitch  $p$  for a main propeller (left-hand plot) and a tunnel thruster (right-hand plot). The asterisks are experimental measured values and the solid lines are least-square fits to a quadratic model.

$$\tau = T(\alpha) f \quad (12.267)$$

$$f = Ku \quad (12.268)$$

where  $f \in \mathbb{R}^r$  ( $r$  = number of thrusters) is the thrust force vector and  $u \in \mathbb{R}^r$  is a DP control variable given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{CP: } u &= [|p_1|p_1, |p_2|p_2, \dots, |p_r|p_r]^\top, & (\text{or } u = [p_1, p_2, \dots, p_r]^\top) \\ \text{FP: } u &= [|n_1|n_1, |n_2|n_2, \dots, |n_r|n_r]^\top, & (\text{or } u = [n_1, n_2, \dots, n_r]^\top) \end{aligned} \quad (12.269)$$

The *thrust coefficient matrix*  $K$  is a diagonal matrix of thrust coefficients given by

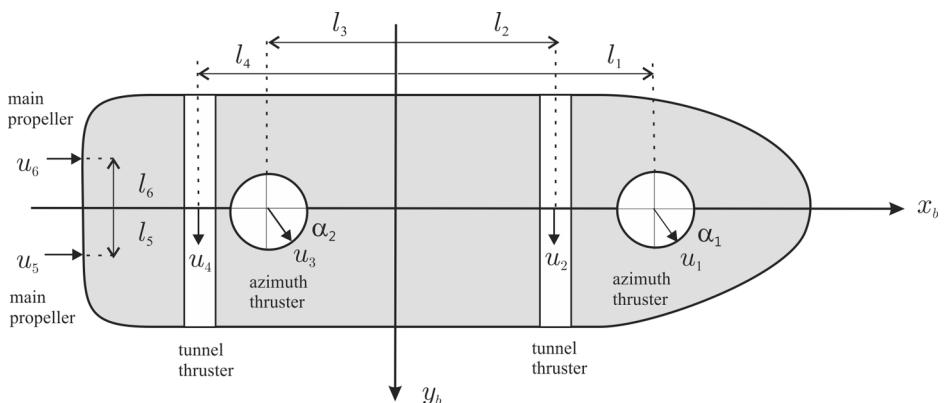
$$K = \text{diag}\{K_1(n_1), K_2(n_2), \dots, K_r(n_r)\} \quad (12.270)$$

The *actuator configuration matrix*  $T(\alpha) \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times r}$  only depends on the location of the actuators and possible angles  $\alpha$  used for rotatable thrusters (azimuth thruster).

#### Example 12.10 (Supply Vessel Thrust Configuration and Coefficient Matrices)

Computation of  $T(\alpha)$  can be illustrated by considering the supply vessel in Figure 12.32, which is equipped with two main propellers (aft of the ship), two tunnel thrusters and two azimuth thrusters, which can be rotated to arbitrary angles  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$ , and therefore produce thrust in different directions; see Figure 12.32. Hence, we have eight control variables (six rpm setpoints and two azimuth angles) for 3 DOF. The control variables are assigned according to (clockwise numbering of  $u_i$ ):

$u_1, \alpha_1$	fore azimuth thruster	$u_4$	aft tunnel thruster
$u_2$	fore tunnel thruster	$u_5$	starboard main propeller
$u_3, \alpha_2$	aft azimuth thruster	$u_6$	port main propeller



**Figure 12.32** Schematic drawing showing the thruster configuration for an offshore supply vessel.

From Section 12.3 it follows that

$$\mathbf{K} = \text{diag}\{K_1, K_2, K_3, K_4, K_5, K_6\} \quad (12.271)$$

$$\mathbf{T}(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\alpha_1) & 0 & \cos(\alpha_2) & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ \sin(\alpha_1) & 1 & \sin(\alpha_2) & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ l_1 \sin(\alpha_1) & l_2 & l_3 \sin(\alpha_2) & l_4 & -l_5 & -l_6 \end{bmatrix} \quad (12.272)$$

where  $l_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, r$ ) are the moment arms in yaw. It is also seen that  $l_5 = -l_6$  (symmetrical location of the main propellers). The thrust demands are defined such that positive thrust results in positive motion according to the VP axis system. The resulting forces and moment are

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{T}(\boldsymbol{\alpha})\mathbf{K}\mathbf{u} \quad (12.273)$$

$\Updownarrow$

$$\begin{bmatrix} X \\ Y \\ N \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\alpha_1) & 0 & \cos(\alpha_2) & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ \sin(\alpha_1) & 1 & \sin(\alpha_2) & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ l_1 \sin(\alpha_1) & l_2 & l_3 \sin(\alpha_2) & l_4 & -l_5 & -l_6 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} K_1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & K_2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & K_3 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & K_4 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & K_5 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & K_6 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ u_3 \\ u_4 \\ u_5 \\ u_6 \end{bmatrix} \quad (12.274)$$

One of the advantages of the model representation (12.267) is that input uncertainties only appear in the diagonal force coefficient matrix  $\mathbf{K}$ , since  $\mathbf{T}(\boldsymbol{\alpha})$  will be perfectly known. In fact, this decomposition is highly advantageous since it can be exploited when designing the feedback control system where robust measures for uncertainties in  $\mathbf{K}$  must be taken.

### Example 12.11 (Supply Vessel Thrust Allocation)

In order to implement a DP control system for the vessel shown in Figure 12.32 a thrust allocation algorithm is needed. The simplest algorithm is the generalized inverse

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{K}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\alpha})\boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (12.275)$$

$$\mathbf{T}^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) = \mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\top(\boldsymbol{\alpha})[\mathbf{T}(\boldsymbol{\alpha})\mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\top(\boldsymbol{\alpha})]^{-1} \quad (12.276)$$

where  $\mathbf{W} = \mathbf{W}^T > 0$  is a positive definite weighting matrix, usually chosen to be diagonal.  $\mathbf{W}$  should be selected so that using the tunnel and azimuth thrusters is less expensive (small  $K_i$  value) than using the main propellers (large  $K_i$  value). This solution is easy to use for constant azimuth angles  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$ . As soon as  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$  is allowed to vary or the control input saturates, a strategy for this must be developed. This significantly complicates the control allocation software. Many companies solve this in an ad hoc manner and the price is extensive failure testing in order to cover all failure situations. An alternative to this is to use an optimal solution for varying  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$  and limited thrust  $\mathbf{f}$  such as the one presented in Section 12.3. This of course requires an iterative solver to be implemented in the control loop and extensive testing is needed to verify that the optimal solution is convergent and stable. For a system with quadratic thrust characteristics, the computed  $\mathbf{u}$  values must be mapped to pitch or rpm commands. If  $u_i = |p_i|p_i$ , it is straightforward to verify that

$$p_i = \text{sgn}(u_i)\sqrt{|u_i|} \quad (12.277)$$

The generalized inverse

$$\mathbf{T}^\dagger(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) = \frac{1}{\det[\mathbf{T}(\boldsymbol{\alpha})\mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\top(\boldsymbol{\alpha})]} \mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\top(\boldsymbol{\alpha}) \text{adj}[\mathbf{T}(\boldsymbol{\alpha})\mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{T}^\top(\boldsymbol{\alpha})] \quad (12.278)$$

will be a function of the azimuth angles  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$  in Figure 12.32. The expression for the determinant in (12.278) will be nonzero for all combinations of  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$ , since the craft has more actuators than needed for 3 DOF stabilization (overactuated). However, for some craft a singular configuration may exist; that is the determinant becomes zero for certain combinations of  $\alpha_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, r$ ). The expression for the determinant can also be used to compute optimal angles  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$  in a minimum energy sense by simply maximizing the determinant with respect to  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$ .

# 13

## Advanced Motion Control Systems

State-of-the-art motion control systems are usually designed using PID control methods, as described in Chapter 12. This chapter presents more advanced methods for optimal and nonlinear control of marine craft. The main motivation for this is design simplicity and performance. Nonlinear control theory can often yield a more intuitive design than linear theory. Linearization destroys model properties and the results can be a more complicated design process with limited physical insight. Chapter 13 is written for the advanced user who wants to exploit a more advanced model and use this model to improve the performance of the control system. Readers of this chapter need background in optimal and nonlinear control theory.

### Preview of the Chapter

Chapter 13 starts with linear quadratic optimal control theory (Section 13.1) with the focus on regulation, trajectory-tracking control and disturbance feedforward. Optimal motion control systems are designed by considering the linearized equations of motion (Section 7.5.3) in the following form:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{Ax} + \mathbf{Bu} + \mathbf{Ew} \quad (13.1)$$

For a marine craft, the linear model (13.1) is based on several assumptions such as zero or constant cruise speed  $u$  together with the assumptions that the velocities  $v$ ,  $w$ ,  $p$ ,  $q$  and  $r$  are small. In addition, the kinematic equation  $\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v}$  must be linearized under a set of assumptions on the Euler angles  $\phi$ ,  $\theta$  and  $\psi$ .

When linearizing the equations of motion, several model properties such as symmetry of the inertia matrix  $\mathbf{M}$ , skew-symmetry of the Coriolis and centripetal matrix  $\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})$  and positiveness of the damping matrix  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})$  are destroyed, and this often complicates the control design. Also physical properties that are important tools for good engineering judgement are lost. This is seen by comparing the LQ design procedure with the nonlinear techniques in Sections 13.2–13.4. It is also demonstrated how the nonlinear controllers can be related to the PID control design methods in Chapter 12 in particular, under the assumption of setpoint regulation. Often it is useful to think about the nonlinear controller as a PID control system where additional terms are added to obtain global stability results. Keeping this in mind, it is also possible to derive a nonlinear controller using advanced methods and then use engineering insight to simplify the representation of the controller. The resulting controller should be as simple as possible

but still contain the most important terms when implementing the algorithm into a computer. In fact, a so-called simplified nonlinear controller will be recognized as a PID controller with additional terms. Many nonlinear methods are popular due to their simplicity and design flexibility. The assumptions on  $u, v, w, p, q, r$  and  $\phi, \theta, \psi$  which are needed when linearizing the models are also avoided.

The nonlinear design methods in this chapter are based on the robot-like model of Fossen (1991):

$$\dot{\eta} = J_\theta(\eta)v \quad (13.2)$$

$$M\ddot{v} + C(v)v + D(v)v + g(\eta) = \tau + w \quad (13.3)$$

It is important to understand the physical properties of the model in order to know which terms in the model can be omitted when deriving a model-based nonlinear controller. This is an important question since model inaccuracies can destabilize a feedback control system. Often better results are obtained when uncertain terms are chosen to be zero in the controller.

## 13.1 Linear Quadratic Optimal Control

Optimal control deals with the problem of finding a control law for a given system such that a certain optimality criterion is achieved. This is usually a cost function that depends on the state and control variables. The optimal control law is a set of differential equations that minimize the cost functional and it can be derived using Pontryagin's maximum principle (a necessary condition) or by solving the Hamilton–Jacobi–Bellman equation (a sufficient condition). We will limit our discussion to linear systems and quadratic cost functions. This is referred to as linear quadratic (LQ) optimal control theory (Athans and Falb, 1966).

### 13.1.1 Linear Quadratic Regulator

A fundamental design problem is the regulator problem, where it is necessary to regulate the outputs  $y \in \mathbb{R}^m$  of the system to zero or a constant value while ensuring that they satisfy time-response specifications. A linear quadratic regulator (LQR) can be designed for this purpose by considering the state-space model

$$\dot{x} = Ax + Bu \quad (13.4)$$

$$y = Cx \quad (13.5)$$

where  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $u \in \mathbb{R}^r$  and  $y \in \mathbb{R}^m$ . In order to design a linear optimal control law the system  $(A, B, C)$  must be controllable while observability (see Definition 11.2 in Section 11.2.3) is necessary if some of the states must be estimated. Controllability for linear time-invariant systems is given by the following definition

#### **Definition 13.1 (Controllability)**

*The state and input matrix  $(A, B)$  must satisfy the controllability condition to ensure that there exists a control  $u(t)$  that can drive any arbitrary state  $x(t_0)$  to another arbitrary state  $x(t_1)$  for  $t_1 > t_0$ . The controllability condition requires that the matrix (Gelb et al., 1988)*

$$\mathcal{C} = [B \mid AB \mid \cdots \mid (A)^{n-1}B] \quad (13.6)$$

*must be of full row rank such that a right inverse exists.*

The feedback control law for the system (13.4)–(13.5) is found by minimizing the quadratic cost function

$$\begin{aligned} J &= \min_u \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (\mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{R} \mathbf{u}) dt \right. \\ &\quad \left. = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{C}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{C} \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{R} \mathbf{u}) dt \right\} \end{aligned} \quad (13.7)$$

where  $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}^\top > 0$  and  $\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{Q}^\top \geq 0$  are the weighting matrices. The steady-state solution to this problem is (Athans and Falb, 1966)

$$\mathbf{u} = -\underbrace{\mathbf{R}^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty}_{\mathbf{G}} \mathbf{x} \quad (13.8)$$

$$\mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty - \mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{B} \mathbf{R}^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty + \mathbf{C}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.9)$$

where  $\mathbf{P}_\infty = \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \mathbf{P}(t)$ . The optimal feedback control system is illustrated in Figure 13.1.

### Matlab

The steady-state LQR feedback control law is computed as (see the script `ExLQR.m`)

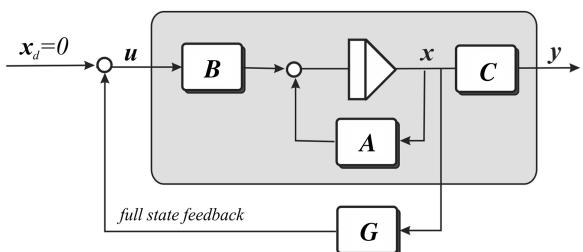
```

Q = diag([1]); % user editable tracking error weights (dim m x m)
R = diag([1]); % user editable input weights (dim r x r)

% System matrices
A = [0 1; -1 -2]; % user editable state matrix (dim n x n)
B = [0; 1]; % user editable input matrix (dim n x r)
C = [1 0]; % user editable output matrix (dim m x n)

% Compute the optimal feedback gain matrix G
[K, P, E] = lqr(A, B, C'*Q*C, R);
G = -K

```



**Figure 13.1** Block diagram showing the linear quadratic regulator (LQR).

The Matlab function `lqr.m` also returns the eigenvalues of the closed-loop system

$$\dot{x} = (A + BG)x \quad (13.10)$$

denoted by the symbol  $\Xi$ .

### 13.1.2 LQR Design for Trajectory Tracking and Integral Action

The LQR can be redesigned to track a time-varying reference trajectory  $x_d \in \mathbb{R}^n$  for a large class of mechanical systems possessing certain structural properties. This section presents a simple solution to this problem while a more general solution is presented in Section 13.1.3.

#### Transformation of the LQ Tracker to a Setpoint Regulation Problem

In order to transform a trajectory-tracking problem to a setpoint regulation problem *reference feedforward* can be used. Unmeasured slowly varying or constant disturbances are compensated for by including integral action. This is usually done by augmenting an integral state  $\dot{z} = e$  to the system model. A mass–damper–spring system will be used to demonstrate the design methodology.

#### *Example 13.1 (Mass–Damper–Spring Trajectory-Tracking Problem)*

Consider the mass–damper–spring system

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{x} &= v \\ m\dot{v} + dv + kx &= \tau\end{aligned}$$

Let

$$\tau = \tau_{FF} + \tau_{LQ} \quad (13.11)$$

where the feedforward term is chosen as

$$\tau_{FF} = m\dot{v}_d + dv_d + kx_d \quad (13.12)$$

such that

$$m\ddot{e} + d\dot{e} + ke = \tau_{LQ} \quad (13.13)$$

where  $e = x - x_d$  and  $\dot{e} = v - v_d$ . The desired states are computed using a reference model:

$$\dot{x}_d = v_d \quad (13.14)$$

$$\dot{v}_d = \phi(v_d, r) \quad (13.15)$$

where  $r$  is the setpoint. The trajectory-tracking control problem has now been transformed to an LQ setpoint regulation problem given by (13.13), which can be written in state-space form as

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{x} &= \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -\frac{d}{m} & -\frac{k}{m} \end{bmatrix}}_A x + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{m} \end{bmatrix}}_B u \\ e &= \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}}_C x\end{aligned}$$

where  $x = [e, \dot{e}]^\top$  and  $u = \tau_{LQ}$ .

### Integral Action

In Example 13.1 it was shown that a feedforward term  $\tau_{FF}$  could transform the LQ trajectory-tracking problem to an LQR problem. For the system model

$$\dot{x} = Ax + Bu \quad (13.16)$$

integral action is obtained by augmenting the integral state  $z \in \mathbb{R}^m$  to the state vector. Let

$$\dot{z} = y = Cx \quad (13.17)$$

where the  $C$  matrix is used to extract potential integral states from the  $x$  vector. This system is a standard LQR problem:

$$\dot{x}_a = A_a x_a + B_a u \quad (13.18)$$

where  $x_a = [z^\top, x^\top]^\top$  and

$$A_a = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} & C \\ \mathbf{0} & A \end{bmatrix}, \quad B_a = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ B \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.19)$$

The control objective is regulation of  $x_a$  to zero using  $u$ . This is obtained by choosing the performance index

$$J = \min_u \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t (x_a^\top Q_a x_a + u^\top R u) d\tau \right\} \quad (13.20)$$

where  $R = R^\top > 0$  and  $Q_a = Q_a^\top \geq 0$  are the weighting matrices. Hence, the solution of the LQR setpoint regulation problem is (see Section 13.1.1)

$$\begin{aligned} u &= -R^{-1} B_a^\top P_\infty x_a \\ &= -R^{-1} [\mathbf{0} \quad B^\top] \begin{bmatrix} P_{11} & P_{12} \\ P_{21} & P_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z \\ x \end{bmatrix} \\ &= -\underbrace{R^{-1} B^\top P_{12}}_{K_i} z - \underbrace{R^{-1} B^\top P_{22}}_{K_p} x \end{aligned} \quad (13.21)$$

where  $P_{12}$  and  $P_{22}$  are found by solving the *algebraic Riccati equation* (ARE)

$$P_\infty A_a + A_a^\top P_\infty - P_\infty B_a R^{-1} B_a^\top P_\infty + Q_a = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.22)$$

Notice that the feedback term  $u$  includes feedback from the tracking errors  $e$  and  $\dot{e}$  as well as the integral state

$$z = \int_0^t e(\tau) d\tau \quad (13.23)$$

#### 13.1.3 General Solution of the LQ Trajectory-Tracking Problem

Consider the state-space model

$$\dot{x} = Ax + Bu + Ew \quad (13.24)$$

$$y = Cx \quad (13.25)$$

The LQ trajectory-tracking control problem is addressed under the assumption that both the state vector  $\mathbf{x}$  and disturbance vector  $\mathbf{w}$  are measured or at least obtained by state estimation. If the estimated values are used for  $\mathbf{x}$  and  $\mathbf{w}$ , stability can be proven by applying a *separation principle*. This is known as LQG control in the literature and involves the design of a *Kalman filter* for reconstruction of the unmeasured states, which again requires that the system is *observable*. For simplicity, full-state feedback is assumed in this chapter. The interested reader is recommended to consult the extensive literature on LQG control for output feedback control; see Athans and Falb (1966) and Brian *et al.* (1989), for instance.

### Reference Feedforward Assumptions

Consider a time-varying reference system:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_d = \phi(\mathbf{x}_d, \mathbf{r}) \quad (13.26)$$

$$\mathbf{y}_d = \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}_d \quad (13.27)$$

where  $\mathbf{x}_d \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is the desired state,  $\mathbf{y}_d \in \mathbb{R}^p$  ( $p \leq n$ ) is the desired output,  $\mathbf{r} \in \mathbb{R}^r$  ( $r \leq n$ ) is the setpoint and  $\phi : \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^r \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^p$ . If linear theory is assumed the dynamics of the desired state can be conveniently represented by

$$\phi(\mathbf{x}_d, \mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{A}_d\mathbf{x}_d + \mathbf{B}_d\mathbf{r} \quad (13.28)$$

This is a linear reference model for trajectory-tracking control; see Section 10.2.1 for how to choose  $\mathbf{A}_d$  and  $\mathbf{B}_d$ . A special case is regulation:

$$\mathbf{y}_d = \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}_d = \text{constant} \quad (13.29)$$

### Disturbance Feedforward Assumptions

Two cases of disturbance feedforward are considered:

1. The disturbance vector  $\mathbf{w} = \text{constant}$  for all  $t > T_p$  where  $T_p$  is the present time. An example of this is a marine craft exposed to constant (or at least slowly varying) wind forces. This is a reasonable assumption since the *average* wind speed and direction are not likely to change in minutes.
2. The disturbance  $\mathbf{w} = \mathbf{w}(t)$  varies as a function of time  $t$  for future time  $t > T_p$ . This is the case for most physical disturbances. However, a feedforward solution requires that  $\mathbf{w}$  is known (or at least estimated) for  $t \geq 0$ . In many cases this is unrealistic so the best we can do is to assume that  $\mathbf{w}(t) = \mathbf{w}(T_p) = \text{constant}$ , that is in a finite future time horizon so that it conforms to Case 1 above.

### Control Objective

The control objective is to design a linear quadratic optimal trajectory-tracking controller using a time-varying smooth reference trajectory  $\mathbf{y}_d$  given by the system (13.26)–(13.27). Assume that the desired output  $\mathbf{y}_d = \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x}_d$  is known for all time  $t \in [0, T]$ , where  $T$  is the final time. Define the error signal:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{e} &:= \mathbf{y} - \mathbf{y}_d \\ &= \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_d) \end{aligned} \quad (13.30)$$

The goal is to design an optimal trajectory-tracking controller that tracks the desired output, that is regulates the error  $\mathbf{e}$  to zero while minimizing

$$J = \min_u \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{e}^\top(T) \mathbf{Q}_f \mathbf{e}(T) + \frac{1}{2} \int_{t_0}^T (\mathbf{e}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{e} + \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{R} \mathbf{u}) dt \right\}$$

subject to     $\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{E}\mathbf{w}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0$

(13.31)

where  $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}^\top > 0$  and  $\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{Q}^\top \geq 0$  are the tracking error and control weighting matrices, respectively. The weight matrix  $\mathbf{Q}_f = \mathbf{Q}_f^\top \geq 0$  can be included to add penalty to the final state. Notice that this is a *finite time-horizon* optimal control problem and it has to be solved by using the *differential Riccati equation* (DRE); see Athans and Falb (1966, pp. 793–801).

It is assumed that the desired output signal comes from a linear reference generator given by

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_d = \mathbf{A}_d \mathbf{x}_d + \mathbf{B}_d \mathbf{r} \quad (13.32)$$

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{C} \mathbf{x}_d \quad (13.33)$$

where  $\mathbf{r}$  is a given reference input, which is filtered through the generator.  $\mathbf{C}$  is the same output matrix as in the plant. A special case of (13.31) is the one with no weight on the final state; that is  $\mathbf{Q}_f = \mathbf{0}$ , resulting in the quadratic performance index

$$J = \min_u \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (\mathbf{e}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{e} + \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{R} \mathbf{u}) dt \right\} \quad (13.34)$$

Substituting (13.30) into (13.34) yields the equivalent formulation

$$J = \min_u \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (\tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \tilde{\mathbf{Q}} \tilde{\mathbf{x}} + \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{R} \mathbf{u}) dt \right\} \quad (13.35)$$

where  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_d$  and

$$\tilde{\mathbf{Q}} = \mathbf{C}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{C} \geq 0 \quad (13.36)$$

### Linear Time-Varying Systems

It can be shown that the optimal control law is (Brian *et al.*, 1989)

$$\mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{R}^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top [\mathbf{P}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h}_1 + \mathbf{h}_2] \quad (13.37)$$

where  $\mathbf{P}$ ,  $\mathbf{h}_1$  and  $\mathbf{h}_2$  originate from the *Hamiltonian* system.  $\mathbf{P}$  accounts for the feedback part,  $\mathbf{h}_1$  accounts for the feedforward part due to the time-varying nature of the reference signal  $\mathbf{y}_d$  and  $\mathbf{h}_2$  accounts for the feedforward part due to the measurable time-varying disturbance  $\mathbf{w}$ . The equations that need to be solved are

$$\dot{\mathbf{P}} = -\mathbf{P}\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{P} + \mathbf{P}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{R}^{-1}\mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P} - \tilde{\mathbf{Q}} \quad (13.38)$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{h}}_1 = -[\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\mathbf{R}^{-1}\mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P}]^\top \mathbf{h}_1 + \tilde{\mathbf{Q}}\mathbf{x}_d \quad (13.39)$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{h}}_2 = -[\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\mathbf{R}^{-1}\mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P}]^\top \mathbf{h}_2 - \mathbf{P}\mathbf{E}\mathbf{w} \quad (13.40)$$

with

$$\mathbf{P}(T) = \tilde{\mathbf{Q}}_f \quad (13.41)$$

$$\mathbf{h}_1(T) = -\tilde{\mathbf{Q}}_f \mathbf{x}_d(T) \quad (13.42)$$

$$\mathbf{h}_2(T) = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.43)$$

where  $\tilde{\mathbf{Q}}_f = \mathbf{C}^\top \mathbf{Q}_f \mathbf{C}$ . Equations (13.38)–(13.40) represent three differential equations: a matrix DRE and two vector differential equations (adjoint operators), respectively. Notice that the initial conditions for these equations are not known, but rather the final conditions are known. Consequently, they have to be integrated *backward* in time a priori to find the initial conditions, and then be executed forward in time again with the closed-loop plant from  $[0, T]$ .

There are different ways of doing this. A frequently used method is to discretize the system and run the resulting difference equation backward. A simple Euler integration routine for (13.38) is given below, where  $\delta$  is set as a small *negative* sampling time. Moreover, using a first-order Taylor expansion

$$\mathbf{P}(t + \delta) \approx \mathbf{P}(t) + \delta\{-\mathbf{P}\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{P} + \mathbf{P}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{R}^{-1}\mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P} - \tilde{\mathbf{Q}}\} \quad (13.44)$$

with  $\mathbf{P}(T) = \tilde{\mathbf{Q}}_f$  produces  $\mathbf{P}(0)$ . Another procedure is to simulate backwards in time. The system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, t) + \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}, t)\mathbf{u}, \quad t \in [T, 0] \quad (13.45)$$

can be simulated backwards in time by the following change of integration variable  $t = T - \tau$  with  $dt = -d\tau$ , and

$$-\frac{d\mathbf{x}(T - \tau)}{d\tau} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}(T - \tau), T - \tau) + \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}(T - \tau), T - \tau)\mathbf{u}(T - \tau) \quad (13.46)$$

Let  $\mathbf{z}(\tau) = \mathbf{x}(T - \tau)$ ; then

$$\frac{d\mathbf{z}(\tau)}{d\tau} = -\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{z}(\tau), T - \tau) - \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{z}(\tau), T - \tau)\mathbf{u}(T - \tau) \quad (13.47)$$

This system can now be simulated forward in time with the initial condition  $\mathbf{z}(0) = \mathbf{x}(T)$ .

The method is demonstrated in Example 13.2, where it is assumed that both  $\mathbf{x}_d$  and  $\mathbf{w}$  are time varying but known for all future  $t$ . A special case dealing with constant values for  $\mathbf{x}_d$  and  $\mathbf{w}$  will be studied later.

### Example 13.2 (Optimal Time-Varying LQ Trajectory-Tracking Problem)

Consider a mass-damper-spring system:

$$m\ddot{x} + d\dot{x} + kx = u + w \quad (13.48)$$

where  $m$  is the mass,  $d$  is the damping coefficient,  $k$  is the spring stiffness coefficient,  $u$  is the input and  $w$  is the disturbance. Choosing the states as  $x_1 = x$  and  $x_2 = \dot{x}$ , the following state-space realization is obtained:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{x}_1 \\ \dot{x}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -\frac{k}{m} & -\frac{d}{m} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{m} \end{bmatrix} u + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{m} \end{bmatrix} w \quad (13.49)$$

For simplicity, assume that  $m = k = 1$  and  $d = 2$  such that

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} u + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} w \quad (13.50)$$

$$y = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x} \quad (13.51)$$

where  $\mathbf{x} = [x_1, x_2]^\top$ . The disturbance signal is assumed to be known for all future time and is simply chosen as

$$w = \cos(t) \quad (13.52)$$

Similarly, the reference signal is assumed to be known for all future time and is given by the generator

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_d = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}_d + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} r \quad (13.53)$$

$$y_d = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x}_d \quad (13.54)$$

where

$$r = \sin(t) \quad (13.55)$$

The Matlab MSS toolbox script `ExLQFinHor.m` demonstrates how forward and backward integration can be implemented for the mass-damper-spring system. The simulation results are shown in Figures 13.2–13.3.

### Approximate Solution for Linear Time-Invariant Systems

Unfortunately, the theory dealing with the limiting case

$$J = \min_u \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^T (\mathbf{e}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{e} + \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{R} \mathbf{u}) dt \right\} \quad (13.56)$$

is not available. This solution is very useful since it represents a steady-state solution of the LQ trajectory-tracking problem. Fortunately, this problem can be circumvented by assuming that  $T$  is large but still limited; that is

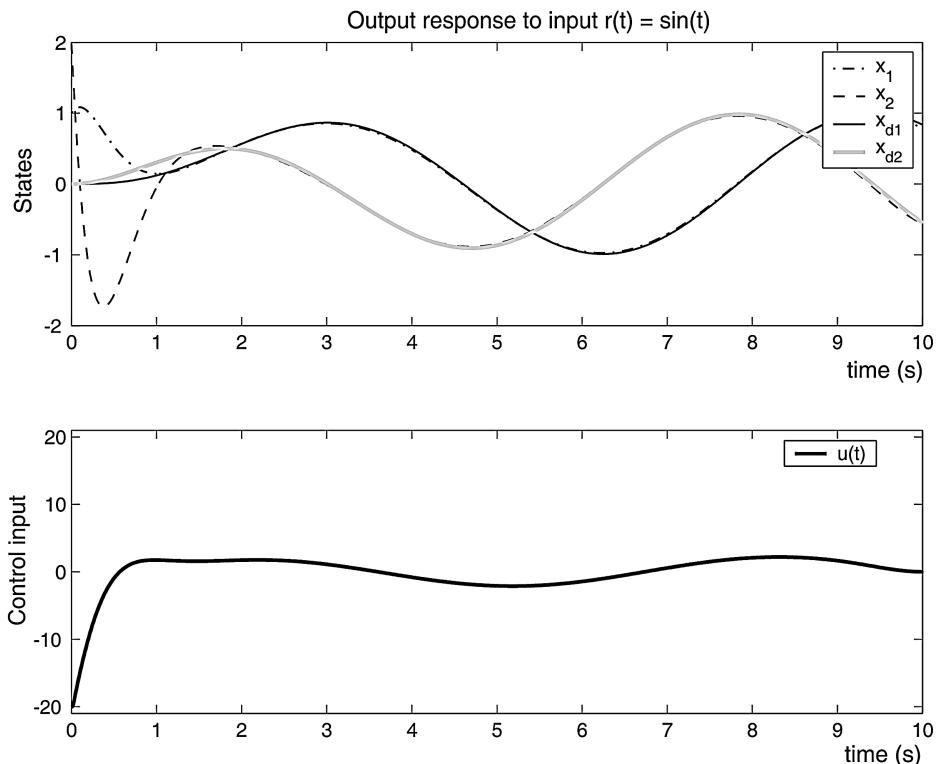
$$0 \ll T_1 \leq T < \infty \quad (13.57)$$

where  $T_1$  is a large constant. For  $T \rightarrow \infty$  the solution of (13.38) will tend to the constant matrix  $\mathbf{P}_\infty$  satisfying the *algebraic Riccati equation* (ARE)

$$\mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty - \mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{B} \mathbf{R}^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty + \tilde{\mathbf{Q}} = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.58)$$

This solution is interpreted as the steady-state solution of (13.38) where  $\mathbf{P}(t) \approx \mathbf{P}_\infty$  for all  $t \in [0, T_1]$ . This is verified in the upper plot of Figure 13.3. Furthermore, it is assumed that

$$\mathbf{x}_d = \text{constant}, \quad \mathbf{w} = \text{constant}, \quad \forall t \in [0, T_1] \quad (13.59)$$



**Figure 13.2** Upper plot: states  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  and the reference trajectories  $x_{d1}$  and  $x_{d2}$  as a function of time. Lower plot: optimal control  $u$  as a function of time.

In practice the assumption that  $\mathbf{x}_d$  is constant can be relaxed with  $\mathbf{x}_d$  being slowly varying compared to the state dynamics. A similar argument can be used for  $\mathbf{w}$ . It is also common to drop the disturbance feedforward term since integral action in the controller can compensate for nonzero slowly varying disturbances.

Next, if the eigenvalues of the matrix

$$\mathbf{A}_c = \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{G}_1 \quad \text{where} \quad \mathbf{G}_1 = -\mathbf{R}^{-1}\mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty \quad (13.60)$$

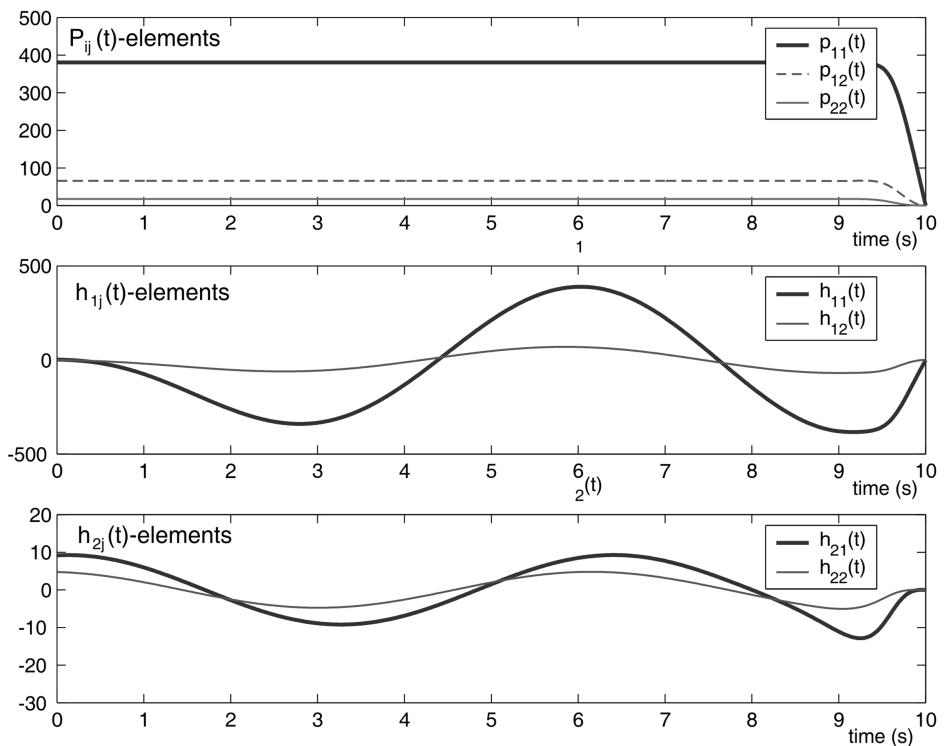
have negative real parts

$$\lambda_i(\mathbf{A}_c) < 0 \quad (i = 1, \dots, n) \quad (13.61)$$

the steady-state solution for  $\mathbf{h}_1$  and  $\mathbf{h}_2$  in (13.39) and (13.40) on  $[0, T_1]$  becomes

$$\mathbf{h}_{1\infty} = (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{G}_1)^{-\top} \tilde{\mathbf{Q}}\mathbf{x}_d \quad (13.62)$$

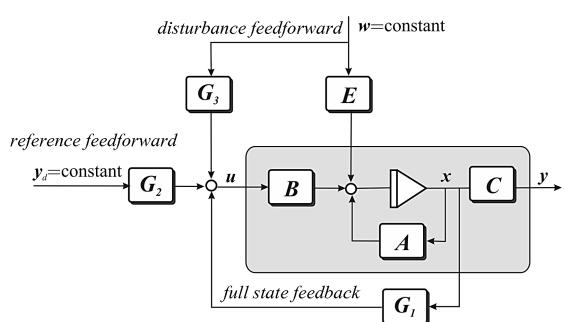
$$\mathbf{h}_{2\infty} = -(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{G}_1)^{-\top} \mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{E}\mathbf{w} \quad (13.63)$$



**Figure 13.3** Optimal solutions of the elements in  $\mathbf{P}$ ,  $\mathbf{h}_1$  and  $\mathbf{h}_2$  as a function of time.

Substitution of (13.58) into (13.37) yields the steady-state optimal control law (see Figure 13.4)

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{G}_1 \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{G}_2 \mathbf{y}_d + \mathbf{G}_3 \mathbf{w} \quad (13.64)$$



**Figure 13.4** Block diagram showing the full state feedback LQ tracker solution with disturbance feedforward.

where  $y_d = \text{constant}$  and  $w = \text{constant}$ , and

$$G_1 = -R^{-1}B^\top P_\infty \quad (13.65)$$

$$G_2 = -R^{-1}B^\top (A + BG_1)^{-\top} C^\top Q \quad (13.66)$$

$$G_3 = R^{-1}B^\top (A + BG_1)^{-\top} P_\infty E \quad (13.67)$$

### Matlab

The function `lqtracker.m` is implemented in the MSS toolbox for computation of the matrices  $G_1$ ,  $G_2$  and  $G_3$ :

```
function [G1,G2,G3] = lqtracker(A,B,C,Q,R)
[K,P,E] = lqr(A,B,C'*Q*C,R);
G1 = -inv(R)*B'*P;
Temp = inv((A+B*G1)');
G2 = -inv(R)*B'*Temp*C'*Q;
G3 = inv(R)*B'*Temp*P*E;
```

For a mass-damper-spring system the optimal trajectory tracking controller is found using `ExLQtrack.m`:

```
%Design matrices
Q = diag([1]); % tracking error weights
R = diag([1]); % input weights

% System matrices
A = [0 1; -1 -2]; % state matrix
B = [0; 1]; % input matrix
C = [1 0]; % output matrix

% Optimal gain matrices
[G1,G2,G3] = lqtracker(A,B,C,Q,R)
```

### SISO Systems

Consider the SISO state-space model

$$\dot{x} = Ax + bu + Ew \quad (13.68)$$

$$y = c^\top x \quad (13.69)$$

where  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $u \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $y \in \mathbb{R}$ . For SISO systems, the performance index (13.34) simplifies to

$$\begin{aligned} J &= \min_u \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^T (q e^2 + r u^2) d\tau \right. \\ &\quad \left. = \frac{q}{2} \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^T \left( e^2 + \frac{r}{q} u^2 \right) dt \right\} \end{aligned} \quad (13.70)$$

where  $q \geq 0$  and  $r > 0$  are two scalars. By choosing  $q = 1$  (without loss of generality) and defining  $\lambda := r/q > 0$ , the performance index (13.70) changes to

$$J^* = \min_u \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{t_0}^T (e^2 + \lambda u^2) dt \right\} \quad (13.71)$$

Consequently, the steady-state optimal solution can be approximated as

$$u = \mathbf{g}_1^\top \mathbf{x} + g_2 y_d + \mathbf{g}_3^\top \mathbf{w} \quad (13.72)$$

where

$$\mathbf{g}_1^\top = -\frac{1}{\lambda} \mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty \quad (13.73)$$

$$g_2 = -\frac{1}{\lambda} \mathbf{b}^\top (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{b}\mathbf{g}_1^\top)^{-\top} \mathbf{c} \quad (13.74)$$

$$\mathbf{g}_3^\top = \frac{1}{\lambda} \mathbf{b}^\top (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{b}\mathbf{g}_1^\top)^{-\top} \mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{E} \quad (13.75)$$

Here  $\mathbf{P}_\infty = \mathbf{P}_\infty^\top > 0$  is the solution of the ARE:

$$\mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty - \frac{1}{\lambda} \mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{b} \mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty + \mathbf{c} \mathbf{c}^\top = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.76)$$

For a mass–damper–spring system the term  $\mathbf{g}_1^\top \mathbf{x}$  can be viewed as a PD controller while  $g_2 y_d$  and  $\mathbf{g}_3^\top \mathbf{w}$  represent reference and disturbance feedforward, respectively.

### 13.1.4 Case Study: Optimal Heading Autopilot for Ships and Underwater Vehicles

Autopilots for rudder-controlled ships and underwater vehicles can be designed by considering a linear quadratic optimization problem:

$$J = \min_\delta \left\{ \frac{\alpha}{T} \int_0^T [e^2 + \lambda_1 r^2 + \lambda_2 \delta^2] d\tau \right\} \quad (13.77)$$

where  $\alpha$  is a constant to be interpreted later,  $e = \psi_d - \psi$  is the heading error,  $\delta$  is the actual rudder angle and  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  are two factors weighting the cost of heading errors  $e$  and heading rate  $r$  against the control effort  $\delta$ . This criterion can also be reformulated to describe marine craft that not are turned using a single

rudder by replacing the quadratic term  $\delta^2$  with other control inputs. In the forthcoming, we will restrict our analysis to a single input.

For marine craft, operation in restricted waters usually requires accurate control, while the minimization of fuel consumption is more important in open seas. This can be obtained by changing the weights  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$ . We will discuss three criteria for control weighting that have all been derived by considering a ship. However, the same principles apply for underwater vehicles.

### The Steering Criterion of Koyama

The first criterion was derived by Koyama (1967) who observed that the ship's swaying motion  $y$  could be approximated by a sinusoid

$$y = \sin(et) \implies \dot{y} = e \cos(et) \quad (13.78)$$

during autopilot control. The length of one arch  $L_a$  of the sinusoid is

$$L_a = \int_0^\pi \sqrt{(1 + \dot{y}^2)} d\tau = \int_0^\pi \sqrt{[1 + e^2 \cos^2(e\tau)]} d\tau \approx \pi \left(1 + \frac{e^2}{4}\right) \quad (13.79)$$

Hence, the relative elongation due to a sinusoidal course error is

$$\frac{\Delta L}{L} = \frac{L_a - L}{L} = \frac{\pi(1 + e^2/4) - \pi}{\pi} = \frac{e^2}{4} \quad (13.80)$$

This suggests that the percentage loss of speed during course control can be calculated by using the elongation in distance due to a sinusoidal course error. Consequently, Koyama (1967) proposed minimizing the speed loss term  $e^2/4$  against the increased resistance due to steering given by the quadratic term  $\delta^2$ . This motivates the following criterion:

$$J = \min_{\delta} \left\{ 100 \left( \frac{\pi}{180} \right)^2 \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T \left[ \frac{e^2}{4} + \lambda_2 \delta^2 \right] d\tau \right\} \approx \frac{0.0076}{T} \int_0^T [e^2 + \lambda_2 \delta^2] d\tau \quad (13.81)$$

In this context (13.77) can be interpreted as

$$J = \text{loss of speed (\%)} \quad (13.82)$$

$$\alpha = 0.0076 \quad (13.83)$$

Notice that  $\lambda_1 = 0$  for this method. In practice it might be desirable to penalize  $r^2$  by choosing  $\lambda_1 > 0$ . For ships, Koyama suggested a  $\lambda_2$  factor of approximately 8–10. Experiments show that such high values for  $\lambda_2$  avoid large rudder angles, and thus high turning rates. Therefore,  $\lambda_2 = 10$  will be a good choice in bad weather, where it is important to suppress high-frequency rudder motions.

### Norrbin's Steering Criterion

Another approach for computation of  $\lambda_2$  was proposed by Norrbin (1972). Consider the surge dynamics of a rudder-controlled marine craft in the form

$$(m - X_u)\dot{u} = X_{|u|u}|u|u + (1 - t)T + T_{\text{loss}} \quad (13.84)$$

where

$$T_{\text{loss}} = (m + X_{vr})vr + X_{cc\delta\delta}C^2 \delta^2 + (X_{rr} + mx_g)r^2 + X_{\text{ext}} \quad (13.85)$$

Norrbin (1972) suggested minimizing the loss term  $T_{\text{loss}}$  to obtain maximum forward speed  $u$ . Consequently, the controller should minimize the centripetal term  $vr$ , the square rudder angle  $\delta^2$  and the square heading rate  $r^2$ , while the unknown disturbance term  $X_{\text{ext}}$  is neglected in the analysis. The assumptions in doing this are as follows:

1. The sway velocity  $v$  is approximately proportional to  $r$ . From Section 7.2 it follows that

$$v(s) = \frac{K_v(T_v s + 1)}{K(T s + 1)} r(s) \approx \frac{K_v}{K} r(s) \quad (13.86)$$

if  $T_v \approx T$ . Hence, the centripetal term  $vr$  will be approximately proportional to the square of the heading rate; that is  $vr \approx (K_v/K)r^2$ .

2. The ship's yawing motion is periodic under autopilot control such that

$$r_{\max} = \omega_r e_{\max} \quad (13.87)$$

where  $\omega_r$  is the frequency of the sinusoidal yawing.

These two assumptions suggest that the loss term  $T_{\text{loss}}$  can be minimized by minimizing  $e^2$  and  $\delta^2$  which is the same result obtained in Koyama's analysis. The only difference between the criteria of Norrbin and Koyama is that the  $\lambda_2$  values arising from Norrbin's approach will be different when computed for the same ship. The performance of the controller also depends on the sea state. This suggests that a trade-off between the  $\lambda_2$  values proposed by Koyama and Norrbin could be made according to

$\underbrace{\text{(calm sea)}}_{\text{Norrbin}}$	$0.1 \leq \lambda_2 \leq 10$	$\underbrace{\text{(rough sea)}}_{\text{Koyama}}$
---	------------------------------	---

(13.88)

### Van Amerongen and Van Nauta Lemke's Steering Criterion

Experiments with the steering criteria of Koyama and Norrbin soon showed that the performance could be further improved by considering the squared yaw rate  $r^2$ , in addition to  $e^2$  and  $\delta^2$  (Van Amerongen and Van Nauta Lemke, 1978). Consequently, the following criterion was proposed:

$$J = \min_{\delta} \left\{ \frac{0.0076}{T} \int_0^T (e^2 + \lambda_1 r^2 + \lambda_2 \delta^2) d\tau \right\} \quad (13.89)$$

For a tanker and a cargo ship, Van Amerongen and Van Nauta Lemke (1978, 1980) gave the following values for the weighting factors  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  corresponding to the data set of Norrbin (1972):

Tanker:  $L_{pp} = 300$  m,  $\lambda_1 = 15\ 000$ ,  $\lambda_2 = 8.0$

Cargo ship:  $L_{pp} = 200$  m,  $\lambda_1 = 1\ 600$ ,  $\lambda_2 = 6.0$

The solution of the optimal steering criteria is found by considering Nomoto's first-order model in the form

$$\dot{\psi}' = r' \quad (13.90)$$

$$T'\dot{r} + (U/L)r = (U/L)^2 K' \delta \quad (13.91)$$

Straightforward application of optimal control theory to the criterion of Van Amerongen and Van Nauta Lempke (1978) yields (see Section 13.1.3)

$$\delta = -K_p(\psi - \psi_d) - K_d r \quad (13.92)$$

where the controller gains are computed using the steady-state solution (13.73) and (13.76). This gives

$$K_p = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\lambda_2}} \quad (13.93)$$

$$K_d = \frac{L}{U} \frac{\sqrt{1 + 2K_p K' T' + K'^2 (U/L)^2 (\lambda_1/\lambda_2)} - 1}{K'} \quad (13.94)$$

Consequently, the solution of the criteria of Koyama and Norrbom is obtained by setting  $\lambda_1 = 0$  and  $\lambda_2 = \lambda$ , which yields

$$K_p = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\lambda}} \quad (13.95)$$

$$K_d = \frac{L}{U} \frac{\sqrt{1 + 2K_p K' T'} - 1}{K'} \quad (13.96)$$

From these expressions it is seen that  $K_p$  depends on the weighting factor  $\lambda$ , while  $K_d$  depends on  $K_p$  as well as the model parameters  $K'$  and  $T'$ . Hence, accurate steering requires that  $K'$  and  $T'$  are known with sufficient accuracy.

An extension to Nomoto's second-order model is found by considering the state-space model (see Section 7.2)

$$\dot{x} = Ax + Bu \quad (13.97)$$

$$y = Cx \quad (13.98)$$

where  $x = [v, r, \psi]^\top$ ,  $u = \delta$ ,  $y = [r, \psi]^\top$  and

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & 0 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad C = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.99)$$

Let  $\mathbf{y} = [0, \psi_d]^\top = \text{constant}$  and

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{e} &= \mathbf{y} - \mathbf{y}_d \\ &= \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_d)\end{aligned}\quad (13.100)$$

The steady-state optimal solution minimizing the quadratic performance index

$$J = \min_u \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (\mathbf{e}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{e} + \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{R} \mathbf{u}) d\tau \right\} \quad (13.101)$$

where  $\mathbf{Q} = \text{diag}\{q_{11}, q_{22}\} \geq 0$  and  $\mathbf{R} = r_{11} > 0$  are the weights is (see Section 13.1.3)

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{G}_1 \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{G}_2 \mathbf{y}_d \quad (13.102)$$

where

$$\mathbf{G}_1 = -\mathbf{R}^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty \quad (13.103)$$

$$\mathbf{G}_2 = -\mathbf{R}^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} \mathbf{G}_1)^{-\top} \mathbf{C}^\top \mathbf{Q} \quad (13.104)$$

and  $\mathbf{P}_\infty$  is the solution of the matrix Riccati equation:

$$\mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty - \mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{B} \mathbf{R}^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty + \mathbf{C}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.105)$$

The robustness of optimal autopilots for course-keeping control with a state estimator is analyzed in Holzhüter (1992).

### 13.1.5 Case Study: Optimal Fin and Rudder-Roll Damping Systems for Ships

The roll motion of ships and underwater vehicles can be damped by using fins alone or in combination with rudders. The main motivation for using roll stabilizing systems on merchant ships is to prevent cargo damage and to increase the effectiveness of the crew by avoiding or reducing seasickness. This is also important from a safety point of view. For naval ships critical marine operations include landing a helicopter, formation control, underway replenishment, or the effectiveness of the crew during combat.

Several *passive* and *active* (feedback control) systems have been proposed to accomplish roll reduction; see Burger and Corbet (1960), Lewis (1967) and Bhattacharyya (1978) for a more detailed discussion. Design methods for rudder-roll damping and fin stabilization systems are found in Perez (2005). Some passive solutions are:

**Bilge Keels:** Bilge keels are fins in planes approximately perpendicular to the hull or near the turn of the bilge. The longitudinal extent varies from about 25 to 50 % of the length of the ship. Bilge keels are widely used, are inexpensive but increase the hull resistance. In addition to this, they are effective mainly around the natural roll frequency of the ship. This effect significantly decreases with the speed of the ship. Bilge keels were first demonstrated in 1870.

**Hull Modifications:** The shape and size of the ship hull can be optimized for minimum rolling using hydrostatic and hydrodynamic criteria. This must, however, be done before the ship is built.

**Anti-Rolling Tanks:** The most common anti-rolling tanks in use are free-surface tanks, U-tube tanks and diversified tanks. These systems provide damping of the roll motion even at small speeds. The disadvantages are the reduction in metacenter height due to free water surface effects and that a large amount of space is required. The earliest versions were installed about the year 1874.

The most widely used systems for *active* roll damping are:

**Fin Stabilizers:** Fin stabilizers are highly useful devices for roll damping. They provide considerable damping if the speed of the ship is not too low. The disadvantage with additional fins is increased hull resistance and high costs associated with the installation, since at least two new hydraulic systems must be installed. Retractable fins are popular, since they are inside the hull when not in use (no additional drag). It should be noted that fins are not effective at low speed and that they cause underwater noise in addition to drag. Fin stabilizers were patented by *John I. Thornycroft* in 1889.

**Rudder-Roll Damping (RRD):** Roll damping by means of the rudder is relatively inexpensive compared to fin stabilizers, has approximately the same effectiveness and causes no drag or underwater noise if the system is turned off. However, RRD requires a relatively fast rudder to be effective; typically rudder rates of  $\dot{\delta}_{\max} = 5\text{--}20 \text{ deg/s}$  are needed. RRD will not be effective at low ship speeds.

**Gyroscopic Roll Stabilizers:** Gyroscopic roll stabilizers are typically used for boats and yachts under 100 feet. The ship gyroscopic stabilizer has a spinning rotor that generates a roll stabilizing moment that counteracts the wave-induced roll motions. Unlike stabilizing fins, the ship gyroscopic stabilizer can only produce a limited roll stabilizing moment and effective systems require approximately 3 to 5 % of the craft's displacement.

For a history of ship stabilization, the interested reader is advised to consult Bennett (1991), while a detailed evaluation of different ship roll stabilization systems can be found in Sellars and Martin (1992).

Rudder-roll damping (RRD) was first suggested in the late 1970s; see Cowley and Lambert (1972, 1975), Carley (1975), Lloyd (1975) and Baitis (1980). Research in the early 1980 showed that it was indeed feasible to control the heading of a ship with at least one rudder while simultaneously using the rudder for roll damping. If only one rudder is used, this is an *underactuated control* problem. In the linear case this can be solved by *frequency separation* of the steering and roll modes since heading control can be assumed to be a low-frequency trajectory-tracking control problem while roll damping can be achieved at higher frequencies.

Before designing an RRD system the applicability of the control system in terms of effectiveness should be determined (Roberts, 1993). For a large number of ships it is in fact impossible to obtain a significant roll damping effect due to limitations of the rudder servo and the relatively large inertia of the ship.

Motivated by the results in the 1970s, RRD was tested by the US Navy by Baitis *et al.* (1983, 1989), in Sweden by Källström (1987), Källström *et al.* (1988), Källström and Schultz (1990) and Källström and Theoren (1994), and in the Netherlands by Amerongen and coauthors. Van Amerongen *et al.* (1987), Van Amerongen and Van Nauta Lempke (1987) and Van der Klugt (1987) introduced LQG theory in RRD systems. A similar approach has been proposed by Katebi *et al.* (1987), while adaptive RRD is discussed in Zhou (1990).

Blanke and co-workers have developed an RRD autopilot (Blanke *et al.*, 1989) that has been implemented by the Danish Navy on 14 ships (Munk and Blanke, 1987). Sea trials show that some of the ships had less efficient RRD systems than others. In Blanke and Christensen (1993) it was shown that the cross-couplings between steering and roll were highly sensitive to parametric variations, which again resulted in robustness problems. Different loading conditions and varying rudder shapes have been identified as reasons for this (Blanke, 1996). In Stoustrup *et al.* (1995) it has been shown that a robust RRD controller can be designed by separating the roll and steering specifications and then optimizing the two controllers independently. The coupling effects between the roll and yaw modes have also been measured in model scale and compared with full-scale trial results (Blanke and Jensen, 1997), while a new approach to identification of steering-roll models has been presented by Blanke and Tiano (1997).

More recently  $H_\infty$  control has been used to deal with model uncertainties in RRD control systems. This allows the designer to specify frequency-dependent weights for frequency separation between the steering and roll modes; see Yang and Blanke (1997, 1998). Qualitative feedback theory (QFT) has also

been applied to solve the combined RRD heading control problem under model uncertainty; see Hearn and Blanke (1998). Results from sea trials are reported in Blanke *et al.* (2000).

Simulation and full-scale experimental results of RRD systems using a multivariate autoregressive model and the minimum AIC estimate procedure have been reported by Oda *et al.* (1996, 1997). Experimental results with various control strategies are also reported by Sharif *et al.* (1996). A nonlinear RRD control system using sliding-mode control for compensation of modeling errors is reported in Lauvdal and Fossen (1997).

A gain scheduling algorithm for input rate and magnitude saturations in RRD damping systems has been developed by Lauvdal and Fossen (1998). This method is motivated by the automatic gain controller (AGC) by Van der Klugt (1987) and a technique developed for stabilization of integrator chains with input rate saturation.

In this section the focus will be on linear quadratic optimal RRD. The interested reader is recommended to consult the references above and Perez (2005) for other design techniques.

### Linear Quadratic Optimal RRD Control System

Consider the 4 DOF maneuvering model (7.138) in Section 7.4:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{Ax} + \mathbf{Bu} \quad (13.106)$$

where  $\mathbf{x} = [v, p, r, \phi, \psi]^\top$  and

$$\phi = \mathbf{c}_{\text{roll}}^\top \mathbf{x}, \quad \psi = \mathbf{c}_{\text{yaw}}^\top \mathbf{x} \quad (13.107)$$

The transfer functions corresponding to (13.106) and (13.107) are

$$\frac{\phi}{\delta}(s) = \frac{b_2 s^2 + b_1 s + b_0}{s^4 + a_3 s^3 + a_2 s^2 + a_1 s + a_0} \approx \frac{K_{\text{roll}} \omega_{\text{roll}}^2 (1 + T_5 s)}{(1 + T_4 s)(s^2 + 2\zeta\omega_{\text{roll}} s + \omega_{\text{roll}}^2)} \quad (13.108)$$

$$\frac{\psi}{\delta}(s) = \frac{c_3 s^3 + c_2 s^2 + c_1 s + c_0}{s(s^4 + a_3 s^3 + a_2 s^2 + a_1 s + a_0)} \approx \frac{K_{\text{yaw}} (1 + T_3 s)}{s(1 + T_1 s)(1 + T_2 s)} \quad (13.109)$$

The control objective is a simultaneous heading control  $\psi = \psi_d = \text{constant}$  and RRD ( $p_d = \phi_d = 0$ ) using one control input. There will be a trade-off between accurate heading control (minimizing  $\tilde{\psi} = \psi - \psi_d$ ) and control action needed to increase the natural frequency  $\omega_{\text{roll}}$  and damping ratio  $\zeta_{\text{roll}}$ . Also notice that it is impossible to regulate  $\phi$  to a nonzero value while simultaneously controlling the heading angle to a nonzero value by means of a single rudder. This can easily be seen by performing a steady-state analysis of the closed-loop system. This suggests that the output of the controller should be specified as

$$\mathbf{y} = [p, r, \phi, \psi]^\top, \quad \mathbf{y}_d = [0, 0, 0, \psi_d]^\top \quad (13.110)$$

Choosing  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{Cx}$  implies that

$$\mathbf{C} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.111)$$

Application of optimal control theory implies that the control objective should be specified as an optimization problem for course keeping, roll damping and minimum fuel consumption. The trade-off between these quantities can be expressed as

$$J = \min_{\mathbf{u}} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (\tilde{\mathbf{y}}^\top \mathbf{Q} \tilde{\mathbf{y}} + \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{R} \mathbf{u}) d\tau \right\} \quad (13.112)$$

where  $\tilde{\mathbf{y}} = \mathbf{y} - \mathbf{y}_d$ ,  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_d$  and  $\mathbf{x}_d = [0, 0, 0, 0, \psi_d]^\top$ . Accurate steering is weighted against roll damping by specifying the cost matrix  $\mathbf{Q} = \text{diag}\{\mathcal{Q}_p, \mathcal{Q}_r, \mathcal{Q}_\phi, \mathcal{Q}_\psi\} \geq 0$ , while  $\mathbf{R} = \text{diag}\{R_1, R_{21}, \dots, R_r\} > 0$  weights the use of the different rudder servos.

The solution to the LQ trajectory-tracking problem is (see Section 13.1.3)

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{G}_1 \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{G}_2 \mathbf{y}_d \quad (13.113)$$

where

$$\mathbf{G}_1 = -\mathbf{R}^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty \quad (13.114)$$

$$\mathbf{G}_2 = -\mathbf{R}^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{G}_1)^{-\top} \mathbf{C}^\top \mathbf{Q} \quad (13.115)$$

with  $\mathbf{P}_\infty = \mathbf{P}_\infty^\top > 0$  given by

$$\mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty - \mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{B} \mathbf{R}^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty + \mathbf{C}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.116)$$

### Frequency Separation and Bandwidth Limitations

Since  $(\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B})$  is controllable and full-state feedback is applied, it is possible to move all the five poles of the system. The closed-loop system becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\mathbf{x}} &= \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u} \\ &= \underbrace{(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{G}_1^\top)}_{\mathbf{A}_c} \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{G}_2 \underbrace{\mathbf{h}\psi_d}_{\mathbf{y}_d} \end{aligned} \quad (13.117)$$

where

$$\mathbf{h} = [0, 0, 0, 1]^\top \quad (13.118)$$

The closed-loop transfer function in yaw is

$$\psi(s) = \mathbf{c}_{\text{yaw}}^\top (s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}_c)^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{G}_2 \mathbf{h} \psi_d(s) \quad (13.119)$$

which clearly satisfy

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \psi(t) = \psi_d \quad (13.120)$$

Notice that integral action in yaw is needed in a practical implementation of the controller. Similarly, the closed-loop roll dynamics becomes

$$\phi(s) = \mathbf{c}_{\text{roll}}^\top (s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A}_c)^{-1} \mathbf{B} \mathbf{G}_2 \mathbf{h} \psi_d(s) \quad (13.121)$$

If one rudder is used to control both  $\phi$  and  $\psi$ , frequency separation is necessary to achieve this. Assume that the steering dynamics is slower than the frequency  $1/T_l$  and that the natural frequency in roll is higher than  $1/T_h$ . Hence, the vertical reference unit (VRU) and compass measurements can be low- and high-pass filtered according to

$$\frac{\phi}{\phi_{\text{vru}}}(s) = h_h(s) = \frac{T_h s}{1 + T_h s} \quad (13.122)$$

$$\frac{\psi}{\psi_{\text{compass}}}(s) = h_l(s) = \frac{1}{1 + T_l s} \quad (13.123)$$

It is also necessary to filter the roll and yaw rate measurements  $p(s)$  and  $r(s)$ . These signals can also be computed by numerical differentiation of  $\phi_{\text{vru}}(s)$  and  $\psi_{\text{vru}}(s)$  using a state estimator.

This suggests that the bandwidth of the yaw angle control system must satisfy (frequency separation)

$$\omega_b \ll \omega_{\text{roll}} \quad (13.124)$$

This again implies that the low- and high-pass filters must satisfy

$$\underbrace{\omega_{\text{yaw}}}_{\substack{\text{cross-over} \\ \text{frequency}}} < \underbrace{\omega_b}_{\substack{\text{bandwidth} \\ \text{in yaw}}} < \underbrace{1/T_l}_{\substack{\text{low-pass filter} \\ \text{frequency}}} < \underbrace{1/T_h}_{\substack{\text{high-pass filter} \\ \text{frequency}}} < \underbrace{\omega_{\text{roll}}}_{\substack{\text{natural} \\ \text{frequency}}}$$

which clearly puts a restriction on the ships that can be stabilized. For many ships this requirement is impossible to satisfy due to limitations of the rudder servos and control forces.

### **Example 13.3 (RRD Control System Using One Rudder)**

Let  $\mathbf{G}_1 = [g_{11}, g_{12}, g_{13}, g_{14}, g_{15}]$  and  $\mathbf{G}_2 = [0, 0, 0, g_{24}]$  such that the solution (13.113) of the SISO LQ trajectory-tracking problem can be written

$$\delta = [g_{11}, g_{12}, g_{13}, g_{14}, g_{15}] \mathbf{x} + g_{24} \psi_d \quad (13.125)$$

or

$$\delta = \underbrace{-K_v v}_{\substack{\text{sway feedback}}} \underbrace{-K_p(\psi - \psi_d) - K_d r}_{\substack{\text{PD heading controller}}} \underbrace{-K_{r1} p - K_{r2} \phi}_{\substack{\text{roll damper}}} \quad (13.126)$$

where  $K_v = -g_{11}$ ,  $K_p = -g_{15} = g_{24}$ ,  $K_d = -g_{13}$ ,  $K_{r1} = -g_{12}$  and  $K_{r2} = -g_{14}$ . Frequency separation suggests that

$$\delta = h_l(s)\delta_{\text{course}} + h_h(s)\delta_{\text{roll}} \quad (13.127)$$

where

$$\delta_{\text{course}} = -K_v v - K_p(\psi - \psi_d) - K_d r \quad (13.128)$$

$$\delta_{\text{roll}} = -K_{r1} p - K_{r2} \phi \quad (13.129)$$

The controller gains can be found by using the MSS toolbox m-function (see Section 13.1.3):

```
[G1,G2]=lqtracker(A,B,C,Q,R)
```

Alternatively, the gains can be computed by using pole placement. The two subsystems (7.145) and (7.146) with heading autopilot and RRD become (neglecting the interactions between the systems)

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{p} \\ \dot{\phi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \underbrace{a_{22} - b_{21}K_{r1}}_{-2\zeta_{\text{roll}}\omega_{\text{roll}}} & \underbrace{(a_{24} - b_{21}K_{r2})}_{-\omega_{\text{roll}}^2} \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p \\ \phi \end{bmatrix} = 0 \quad (13.130)$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\psi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} - b_{11}K_v & a_{13} - b_{11}K_d & -b_{11}K_p \\ a_{31} - b_{31}K_v & a_{33} - b_{31}K_d & -b_{31}K_p \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v \\ r \\ \psi - \psi_d \end{bmatrix} = 0 \quad (13.131)$$

The poles can be specified directly in Matlab using

```
[Kr1,Kr2]=place(A_phiphi,B_phiphi,[p_phi1,p_phi2])
```

```
[Kv,Kp,Kd]=place(A_psipsi,B_psipsi,[p_psi1,p_psi2,p_psi3])
```

For roll it is seen that

$$-\omega_{\text{roll}}^2 = a_{24} - b_{21}K_{r2}, \quad -2\zeta_{\text{roll}}\omega_{\text{roll}} = a_{22} - b_{21}K_{r1} \quad (13.132)$$

or

$$K_{r1} = \frac{a_{22} + 2\zeta_{\text{roll}}\omega_{\text{roll}}}{b_{21}}, \quad K_{r2} = \frac{a_{24} + \omega_{\text{roll}}^2}{b_{21}} \quad (13.133)$$

where  $\zeta_{\text{roll}}$  and  $\omega_{\text{roll}}$  are pole-placement design parameters that can be used instead of eigenvalues. The model of Son and Nomoto (see `ExRRD2.m` in the MSS toolbox) has been used to demonstrate how an LQ optimal RRD control system can be designed. The linear state-space model for the container ship is

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -0.0406 & -1.9614 & 0.2137 & 0.1336 & 0 \\ 0.0011 & -0.1326 & -0.1246 & -0.0331 & 0 \\ -0.0010 & 0.0147 & -0.1163 & -0.0006 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} -0.0600 \\ 0.0035 \\ 0.0026 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.134)$$

The controller gains were computed using `[G1, G2]=lqtracker(A, B, C, Q, R)` with the weights

```
Q=diag([10000 1000 10 1]), R=0.5
```

resulting in

```
G1=[0.1631-16.1193-6.7655-1.1644-0.4472], G2=[0 0 0 0.4472]
```

Notice that  $g_{15} = -g_{24}$ . The open- and closed-loop poles are computed in Matlab by using the commands `damp(A)` and `damp(A+B*G1)`; see Table 13.1.

**Table 13.1** Eigenvalues, damping ratios and frequencies for the RRD control system

Eigenvalues		Damping		Frequencies (rad/s)	
Open loop	Closed loop	Open loop	Closed loop	Open loop	Closed loop
0	-0.061	—	1.00	—	0.016
-0.027	-0.026	1.00	1.00	0.027	0.026
-0.071 + 0.183 <i>i</i>	-0.100 + 0.165 <i>i</i>	0.36	0.52	0.197	0.193
-0.071 - 0.183 <i>i</i>	-0.100 - 0.165 <i>i</i>	0.36	0.52	0.197	0.193
-0.121	-0.131	1.00	1.00	0.121	0.131

It is seen that the natural frequency and relative damping ratio in roll are  $\omega_{\text{roll}} = 0.193 \text{ rad/s}$  and  $\zeta_{\text{roll}} = 0.36$ , respectively. This is improved to  $\omega_{\text{roll}} = 0.197 \text{ rad/s}$  and  $\zeta_{\text{roll}} = 0.52$  by roll feedback. It is difficult to increase the relative damping ratio further due to limitations of the steering machine ( $\dot{\delta}_{\max} = 20 \text{ deg/s}$  and  $\delta_{\max} = 20 \text{ deg}$ ). These values can, however, be changed in RRDcontainer.m.

Since the roll frequency  $\omega_{\text{roll}}$  is 0.193 rad/s and the cross-over frequency in yaw  $\omega_{\text{yaw}}$  is 0.03 rad/s, see Figure 7.7 in Example 7.7, it is approximately one decade between the frequencies  $\omega_{\text{yaw}}$  and  $\omega_{\text{roll}}$ . Therefore, frequency separation can be obtained by choosing the low-pass and high-pass filter frequencies as  $1/T_l = 0.1 \text{ rad/s}$  in yaw and  $1/T_h = 0.05 \text{ rad/s}$  in roll, respectively. It is seen that the heading controller moves the poles to -0.061, -0.026 and -0.131, resulting in satisfactory course-changing capabilities (see Figure 13.5). It is also seen that the course-keeping performance is degraded during RRD. The additional yawing motion, typically 1–2 degrees in amplitude, is the price paid for adding roll feedback to an autopilot system. Also notice that the right half-plane zero in the transfer function  $\phi/\delta_1(s)$  given by (7.147) is unchanged since feedback only moves the poles.

### Performance Criterion for RRD

The percentage roll reduction of RRD system can be computed by using the following criterion of Oda *et al.* (1992):

$$\text{Roll reduction} = \frac{\sigma_{\text{AP}} - \sigma_{\text{RRD}}}{\sigma_{\text{AP}}} \times 100 \% \quad (13.135)$$

where

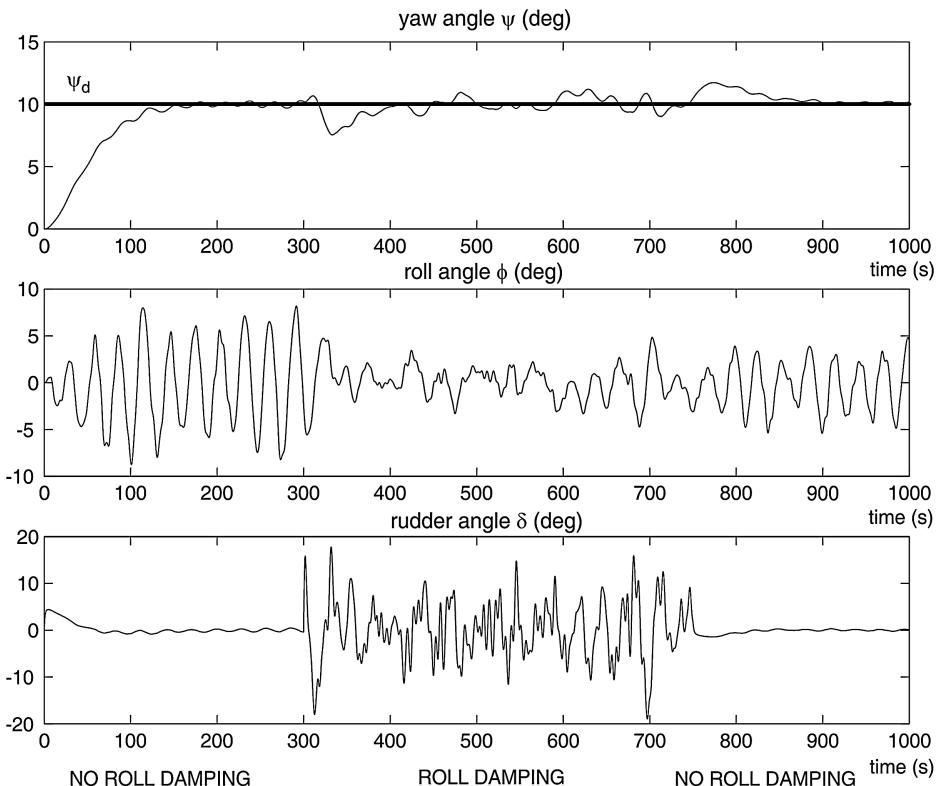
$\sigma_{\text{AP}}$  = standard deviation of roll rate during course-keeping (RRD off)

$\sigma_{\text{RRD}}$  = standard deviation of roll rate during course-keeping (RRD on)

For the case study in Example 13.3,  $\sigma_{\text{AP}} = 0.0105$  and  $\sigma_{\text{RRD}} = 0.0068$ . This resulted in a roll reduction of approximately 35 % during course-keeping. For small high-speed vessels a roll reduction as high as 50–75 % can be obtained. This of course depends on the shape of the hull (hydrodynamic effects) and the capacity of the steering machine. In particular the maximum rudder rate  $\dot{\delta}_{\max}$  should be in the magnitude of 15–20 % to obtain good results.

### Optimal Fin and RRD Systems

The most effective roll damping systems are those that combine stabilizing fins and rudders; see Källström (1981), Roberts and Braham (1990) and Perez (2005). Warship stabilization using integrated rudder and fins are discussed by Roberts (1992). More recently robust fin stabilizer controller design using the QFT



**Figure 13.5** Performance of RRD control system during course-keeping and a  $10^\circ$  course-changing maneuver. The RRD system is active between  $t = 300\text{--}700\text{ s}$ .

and  $H_\infty$  design techniques have been presented by Hearns *et al.* (2000), while the performance of classical PID, optimized PID (Hickey *et al.*, 2000) and  $H_\infty$  controllers are compared in Katebi *et al.* (2000). Sea trials with the *MV Barfleur* using PID and  $H_\infty$  controllers are presented in Hickey *et al.* (1997) and experimental results with a fin and RRD control system onboard a frigate-size Royal Naval warship are reported in Sharif *et al.* (1995, 1996).

Reduction of vertical accelerations of fast ferries using fins and a T-foil is discussed by Esteban *et al.* (2000) and Giron-Sierra *et al.* (2001), while the modeling and identification results are reported in de-la-Cruz *et al.* (1998) and Aranda *et al.* (2000).

Fin stabilizers are useful for roll reduction since they are highly effective, work on a large number of ships and are more easier to control than RRD systems, even for varying load conditions and actuator configurations. Fin stabilizers are effective at high speed, but at the price of additional drag and added noise. The most economical systems are retractable fins, where additional drag is avoided during normal operation, since fin stabilizers are not needed in moderate weather. Another advantageous feature of fin stabilizing systems is that they can be used to control  $\phi$  to a nonzero value (heel control). This is impossible with an RRD control system where the accurate control of  $\psi$  has priority.

Notice that a stand alone fin stabilization system can be constructed by simply removing the rudder inputs from the input matrix. When designing an LQ optimal fin and RRD system the following model representations can be used:

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (13.136)$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{f}, \quad \mathbf{f} = \mathbf{K}\mathbf{u} \quad (13.137)$$

In this representation,  $\mathbf{K}$  is the diagonal matrix of force coefficients and  $\mathbf{T}$  is the actuator configuration matrix (see Section 12.3). We can premultiply (13.136) with  $\mathbf{M}^{-1}$  to obtain

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}} = \underbrace{-\mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{D}}_{\text{upper left part of } \mathbf{A} \text{ in (7.138)}} \mathbf{v} + \underbrace{\mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{T}\mathbf{K}}_{\text{upper part of } \mathbf{B} \text{ in (7.138)}} \mathbf{u} \quad (13.138)$$

In the first representation, the generalized force  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  is used as the control input while the last representation uses  $\mathbf{u}$ , that is propeller rpm, rudder angles and fin angles. In practice it is advantageous to use (13.136) instead of (13.138), since actuator failures can be handled independently by the control allocation algorithm without redesigning the control law. Notice that the  $\mathbf{B}$  matrix in (13.138) depends on  $\mathbf{T}$  and  $\mathbf{K}$  while these matrices are not used in (13.136); see Section 12.3.

### Energy Optimal Criterion for Combined Fin and RRD

It is possible to derive LQ controllers for both models (13.136) and (13.138). This is demonstrated by considering a ship equipped with  $r_1$  rudders and  $r_2$  fins. The total number of actuators is  $r = r_1 + r_2$ , implying that  $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbb{R}^r$ . The DOFs considered are *sway*, *roll* and *yaw*; that is  $n = 3$ . Consequently,  $\mathbf{v} = [v, p, r]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . It is also assumed that the ship is fully actuated such that  $r \geq n$ . The generalized forces are

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\tau} &= \mathbf{T}\mathbf{f} \\ &= \mathbf{T}\mathbf{K}\mathbf{u} \end{aligned} \quad (13.139)$$

It is advantageous to solve for the optimal control force  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  and then use control allocation to compute  $\mathbf{u}$ . For most systems the inverse (see `alloc.m` in the Matlab MSS toolbox)

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{K}^{-1}\mathbf{T}_w^\dagger \boldsymbol{\tau} \quad (13.140)$$

exists. An energy optimal criterion weighting  $f$ ,  $u$  or  $\tau$  against accurate tracking and roll damping is

$$\begin{aligned}
 J &= \min_f \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (\mathbf{e}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{e} + \mathbf{f}^\top \mathbf{R}_f \mathbf{f}) d\tau \right\} \\
 &= \min_u \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (\mathbf{e}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{e} + \mathbf{u}^\top \underbrace{\mathbf{K}^\top \mathbf{R}_f \mathbf{K}}_{\mathbf{R}_u} \mathbf{u}) d\tau \right\} \\
 &= \min_\tau \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (\mathbf{e}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{e} + \boldsymbol{\tau}^\top \underbrace{(\mathbf{T}_w^\dagger)^\top \mathbf{R}_u \mathbf{T}_w}_{\mathbf{R}_\tau} \boldsymbol{\tau}) d\tau \right\}
 \end{aligned} \tag{13.141}$$

where  $\mathbf{e} = \mathbf{y} - \mathbf{y}_d$ . The elements in  $\mathbf{Q} = \text{diag}\{Q_p, Q_r, Q_\phi, Q_\psi\} \geq 0$  are used to weight accurate steering against roll damping. The rudder and fin servos are weighted against each other by specifying the elements in  $\mathbf{R}_f = \text{diag}\{R_{\delta 1}, R_{\delta 2}, \dots, R_{\delta r_1}, R_{f1}, R_{f2}, \dots, R_{fr_2}\} > 0$ . If  $r_1 = 0$  and  $R_{\delta 1} = R_{\delta 2} = \dots = R_{\delta r_1} = 0$  only fin stabilization is obtained (no rudders).

The control weights satisfy

$$\mathbf{R}_u = \mathbf{K}^\top \mathbf{R}_f \mathbf{K}, \quad \mathbf{R}_\tau = (\mathbf{T}_w^\dagger)^\top \mathbf{R}_f \mathbf{T}_w^\dagger \tag{13.142}$$

The solution to the LQ problem (13.141) with  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  as the control variable is (see Section 13.1.3)

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{G}_1 \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{G}_2 \mathbf{y}_d \tag{13.143}$$

$$\mathbf{G}_1 = -[(\mathbf{T}_w^\dagger)^\top \mathbf{R}_f \mathbf{T}_w^\dagger]^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty \tag{13.144}$$

$$\mathbf{G}_2 = -[(\mathbf{T}_w^\dagger)^\top \mathbf{R}_f \mathbf{T}_w^\dagger]^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} \mathbf{G}_1)^{-\top} \mathbf{C}^\top \mathbf{Q} \tag{13.145}$$

where  $\mathbf{Q}$  and  $\mathbf{R}_f$  are design matrices while  $\mathbf{P}_\infty = \mathbf{P}_\infty^\top > 0$  is given by

$$\mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty - \mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{B} [(\mathbf{T}_w^\dagger)^\top \mathbf{R}_f \mathbf{T}_w^\dagger]^{-1} \mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty + \mathbf{C}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{0} \tag{13.146}$$

## Operability and Motion Sickness Incidence Criteria

Operability criteria for manual and intellectual work as well as motion sickness are important design criteria for the evaluation of autopilot and roll damping systems. Sea-sickness is especially important in high-speed craft and ships with high vertical accelerations.

**Human Operability Limiting Criteria in Roll:** Operability limiting criteria with regard to vertical and lateral accelerations, and roll angle for the effectiveness of the crew and the passengers are given in

**Table 13.2** Criteria for effectiveness of the crew (Faltinsen, 1990)

Standard deviation (root mean square) criteria			
Vertical acceleration ( $\dot{w}$ )	Lateral acceleration ( $\dot{v}$ )	Roll angle ( $\phi$ )	Description of work
0.20 g	0.10 g	6.0 deg	Light manual work
0.15 g	0.07 g	4.0 deg	Heavy manual work
0.10 g	0.05 g	3.0 deg	Intellectual work
0.05 g	0.04 g	2.5 deg	Transit passengers
0.02 g	0.03 g	2.0 deg	Cruise liner

Table 13.2. This gives an indication on what type of work that can be expected to be carried out for different roll angles/sea states.

**ISO 2631-3:1985 Criterion for Motion Sickness Incidence:** In addition to operability, limiting criteria passenger comfort can be evaluated with respect to motion sickness. The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) motion seasickness incidence criterion is reported in ISO 2631-1 (1997). This report replaces ISO 2631-3 (1985); see <http://www.iso.ch>. The most important factors for seasickness are vertical (heave) accelerations  $a_z$  ( $\text{m/s}^2$ ), exposure time  $t$  (hours) and encounter frequency  $\omega_e$  ( $\text{rad/s}$ ). The ISO standard criterion for MSI proposes an MSI of 10 %, which means that 10 % of the passengers become seasick during  $t$  hours. The MSI curves as a function of exposure time are shown in Figure 13.6, where

$$a_z(t, \omega_e) = \begin{cases} 0.5\sqrt{2/t} & \text{for } 0.1 \text{ Hz} < \frac{\omega_e}{2\pi} \leq 0.315 \text{ Hz} \\ 0.5\sqrt{2/t} \cdot 6.8837 \left(\frac{\omega_e}{2\pi}\right)^{1.67} & \text{for } 0.315 \text{ Hz} \leq \frac{\omega_e}{2\pi} \leq 0.63 \text{ Hz} \end{cases} \quad (13.147)$$

### Matlab

The MSI curves (13.147) as functions of the exposure time are implemented in the Matlab MSS toolbox as

```
[a_z,w_e] = ISOmsi(t)
```

Figure 13.6 is generated by using the example file

```
ExMSI
```

The main limitation of the ISO criterion is that it only predicts the exceedence of the 10 % MSI point. It is also assumed that the accelerations in the CG are representative for the entire ship and that a representative wave period can be used instead of the actual wave. In many cases it is advantageous to use the extended sickness method for more accurate predictions. This method is presented below.

**Probability Integral Method for MSI:** The O'Hanlon and McCauley (1974) probability integral method is convenient to use since it produces an MSI criterion in percentage for combinations of heave acceleration  $a_z$  ( $\text{m/s}^2$ ) and frequency of encounter  $\omega_e$  ( $\text{rad/s}$ ). The MSI index is defined as the

number of sea sick people in percentage for an exposure time of two hours; see Lloyd (1989) and Lewis (1989). The criterion is as follows:

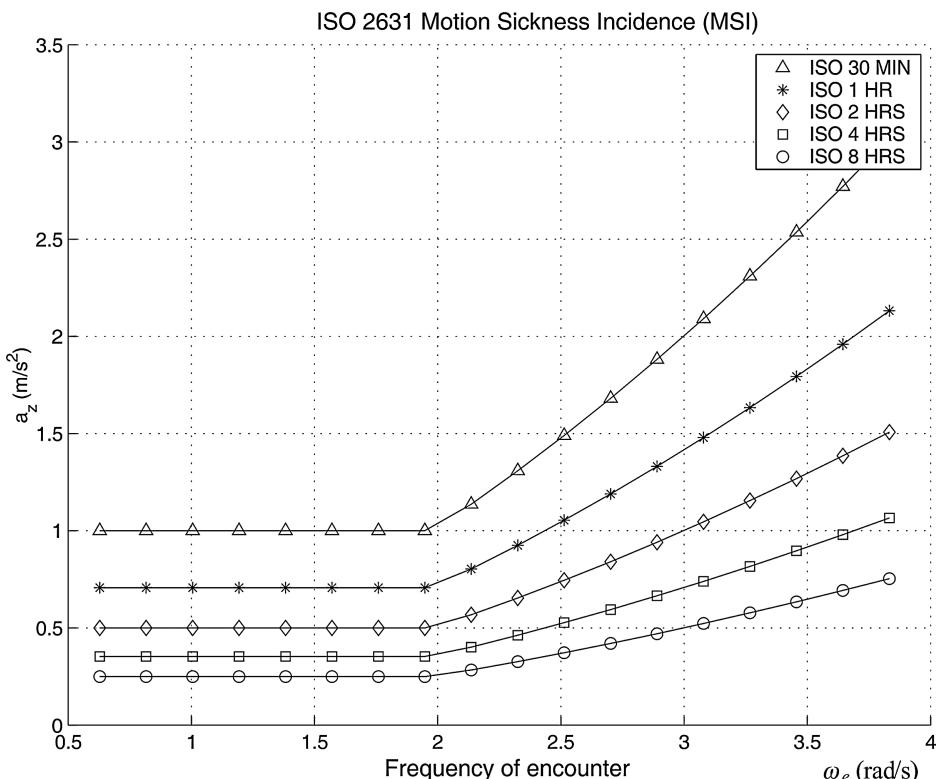
$$\text{MSI} = 100 \left[ 0.5 \pm \text{erf} \left( \frac{\pm \log_{10}(a_z/g) \mp \mu_{\text{MSI}}}{0.4} \right) \right] \quad (\%) \quad (13.148)$$

where

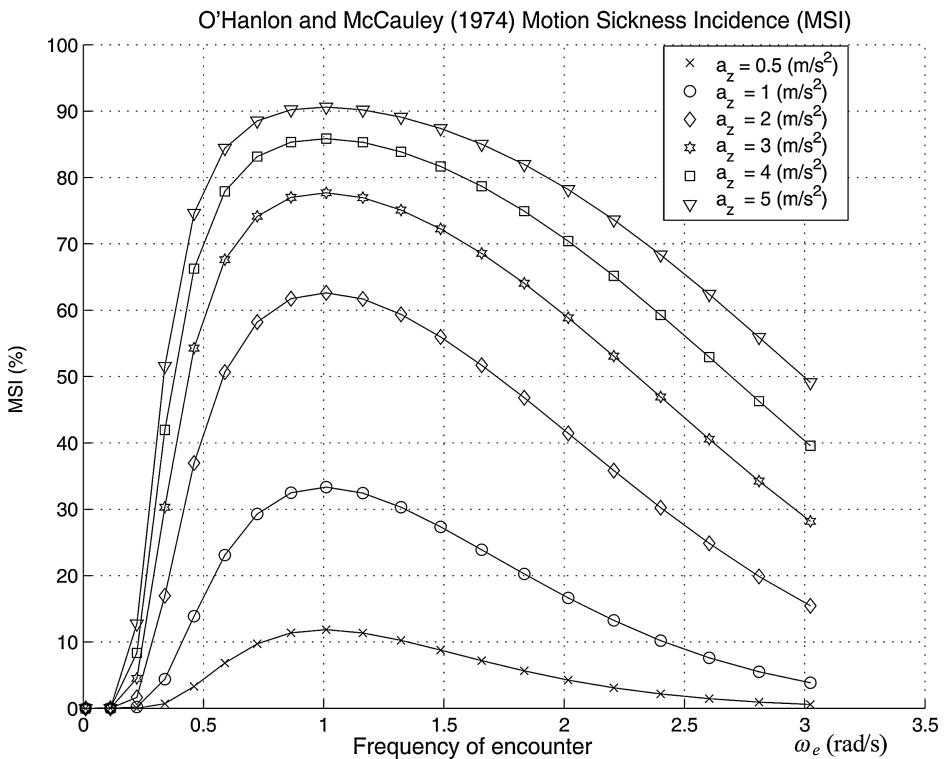
$$\mu_{\text{MSI}} = -0.819 + 2.32 \left( \log_{10} \omega_e \right)^2 \quad (13.149)$$

and

$$\text{erf}(x) = \text{erf}(-x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_0^x \exp \left( -\frac{z^2}{2} \right) dz \quad (13.150)$$



**Figure 13.6** Heave acceleration  $a_z$  ( $\text{m/s}^2$ ) as a function of frequency of encounter  $\omega_e$  ( $\text{rad/s}$ ) for different exposure times. The ISO curves represent an MSI of 10 %.



**Figure 13.7** MSI is the number of motion sick persons in percentage during a two hour exposure time as a function of encounter frequency  $\omega_e$  (rad/s) and heave acceleration  $a_z$  (m/s<sup>2</sup>).

### Matlab

The Matlab MSS toolbox function

```
msi = HMmsi(a_z,w_e)
```

can be used for computation of the MSI. Notice that the erf function in `HMmsi.m` is scaled differently from the Matlab function `erf.m`. The MSI curves in Figure 13.7 are plotted for different  $a_z$  and  $\omega_e$  using the example file

`ExMSI`

The major drawback of the O'Hanlon and McCauley method is that it only applies to a two hour exposure time. Another effect to take into account is that the O'Hanlon and McCauley MSI criterion is derived from tests with young men seated separately in insulated cabins. According to ISO 2631-1, the MSI number is about 1.5 higher among women and children, suggesting that the actual MSI number for passengers of average age and sex distribution should be at least 1.25 times higher.

### 13.1.6 Case Study: Optimal Dynamic Positioning System for Ships and Floating Structures

In Section 12.2.10 a nonlinear PID controller was designed for DP and the equilibrium point was rendered asymptotically stable under the assumption of full-state feedback. Output feedback in terms of a nonlinear passive observer was also discussed and UGAS of the resulting system was relying on a nonlinear separation principle (Loria *et al.*, 2000). An alternative to the nonlinear PID controller is to formulate the problem as a linear optimal control problem using vessel parallel coordinates. The LQ controller will be designed under the assumption that all states can be measured. This assumption can, however, be relaxed by combining the LQ controller with a Kalman filter for optimal state estimation; see Section 11.3.6. The resulting control law is known as the LQG optimal controller, and convergence and stability of the interconnected system can be proven using a linear separation principle (Gelb *et al.*, 1988).

**Controller Model:** Recall from Section 7.3.2 that

$$\dot{\eta}_p = v \quad (13.151)$$

$$M\dot{v} + Dv = b_p + \tau + \tau_{\text{wind}} + \tau_{\text{wave}} \quad (13.152)$$

where VP coordinates have been employed (see Section 7.5.3). The North-East positions and heading are related to  $\eta_p$  according to

$$\eta = R(\psi)\eta_p \quad (13.153)$$

In order to incorporate the limitations of the propellers, the model is augmented by actuator dynamics. The simplest way of doing this is to define three time constants in *surge*, *sway* and *yaw* such that

$$\dot{\tau} = A_{\text{thr}}(\tau - \tau_{\text{com}}) \quad (13.154)$$

where  $\tau_{\text{com}}$  is the commanded thrust and  $A_{\text{thr}} = -\text{diag}\{1/T_{\text{surge}}, 1/T_{\text{sway}}, 1/T_{\text{yaw}}\}$  is a diagonal matrix containing the time constants. The resulting state-space model becomes

$$\dot{x}_c = Ax_c + B\tau_{\text{com}} \quad (13.155)$$

where the controller states are  $x_c := [\eta_p^\top, v^\top, \tau^\top]^\top$  and

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & I & 0 \\ 0 & -M^{-1}D & M^{-1} \\ 0 & 0 & A_{\text{thr}} \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ -A_{\text{thr}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.156)$$

This model is the basis for the LQ controller.

**Observer Model:** The Kalman filter can be designed using only position and heading measurements. For this purpose the filter states are chosen as  $x_f := [\eta_p^\top, b_p^\top, v_p^\top]^\top$ . The WF model is omitted for simplicity but in an industrial system six more states should be added following the approach in

Section 11.3.6, for instance. The filter model takes the following form:

$$\dot{x}_f = Fx_f + G\tau + Ew \quad (13.157)$$

$$z = Hx_f + v \quad (13.158)$$

where

$$F = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & I_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & M^{-1} & -M^{-1}D \end{bmatrix}, \quad G = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ M^{-1} \end{bmatrix}, \quad H = [I_{3 \times 3}, \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3}, \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3}] \quad (13.159)$$

### Controllability and Observability

It is important to be aware that the controller model must be controllable and the observer model must be observable to guarantee a stable solution for the LQG controller. These conditions can easily be verified in Matlab by considering the following example:

#### Matlab

The following example demonstrates how observability and controllability can be checked for a ship in surge, sway and yaw.

#### *Example 13.4 (Observability and Controllability of Ships)*

Consider a supply vessel with nondimensional system matrices (Fossen et al., 1996):

$$M'' = \begin{bmatrix} 1.1274 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1.8902 & -0.0744 \\ 0 & -0.0744 & 0.1278 \end{bmatrix}, D'' = \begin{bmatrix} 0.0358 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.1183 & -0.0124 \\ 0 & -0.0041 & 0.0308 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.160)$$

These values are defined in accordance to the bis system (see Section 7.2.5) such that

$$M = mT^{-2}(TM''T^{-1}), \quad D = m\sqrt{g/L} T^{-2}(TD''T^{-1}) \quad (13.161)$$

where  $T = \text{diag}\{1, 1, L\}$ . Assume that  $A_{\text{thr}} = -1/100 \times I_{3 \times 3}$ . The linear state-space model in surge, sway and yaw is computed as

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & I_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & -M^{-1}D & M^{-1} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & A_{\text{thr}} \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ -A_{\text{thr}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.162)$$

$$F = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & I_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & M^{-1} & -M^{-1}D \end{bmatrix}, \quad H = [I_{3 \times 3}, \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3}, \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3}]$$

Notice that only the positions ( $N, E$ ) and yaw angle  $\psi$  are defined as the outputs for the observer. Observability and controllability can be checked in Matlab using the commands (see `ExObsCtr.m`):

```
n_obs = rank(obsv(F, H))
n_ctr = rank(ctrb(A, B))
```

Since  $n_{\text{obs}} = n_{\text{ctr}} = 9$  the supply vessel is both observable and controllable.

Since the supply vessel is controllable, it is straightforward to design an optimal control law with wind feedforward and integral action. In order to do this, it is convenient to split the control input into two parts:

$$\tau_{\text{com}} = \tau_{\text{LQ}} - \hat{\tau}_{\text{wind}} \quad (13.163)$$

where  $\tau_{\text{LQ}}$  is the optimal feedback and  $\hat{\tau}_{\text{wind}}$  is an estimate of the generalized wind forces that can be implemented using (12.214).

### Optimal Feedback Control

The LQ control objective is to obtain  $x = \mathbf{0}$  such that  $\eta_p = v = \tau = \mathbf{0}$ . This is achieved by minimizing the performance index:

$$J = \min_{\tau_{\text{LQ}}} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (x^\top Q x + \tau_{\text{LQ}}^\top R \tau_{\text{LQ}}) d\tau \right\} \quad (13.164)$$

where  $R = R^\top > 0$  and  $Q = Q^\top \geq 0$  are two cost matrices to be specified by the user. The  $Q$  matrix is defined as  $Q := \text{diag}\{Q_1, Q_2, Q_3\}$  where the weights  $Q_1$ ,  $Q_2$  and  $Q_3$  put penalty on position and heading  $\eta_p$ , velocity  $v$  and actuator dynamics  $\tau$ , respectively. The optimal control law minimizing (13.164) is (see Section 13.1.1)

$$\tau_{\text{LQ}} = \underbrace{-R^{-1}B^\top P_\infty}_G x \quad (13.165)$$

where  $P_\infty$  is the solution of the ARE:

$$P_\infty A + A^\top P_\infty - P_\infty B R^{-1} B^\top P_\infty + Q = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.166)$$

### Integral Action

In order to obtain zero steady-state errors in *surge*, *sway* and *yaw*, integral action must be included in the control law. Integral action can be obtained by using state augmentation. Since we want the three outputs ( $N, E, \psi$ ) to be regulated to zero, no more than three integral states can be augmented to the system. Define a new state variable:

$$z := \int_0^t y(\tau) d\tau \implies \dot{z} = y \quad (13.167)$$

Here  $y$  is a subspace of  $x$  given by

$$y = Cx \quad (13.168)$$

with

$$C = [I_{3 \times 3} \quad \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \quad \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3}] \quad (13.169)$$

Next consider an augmented model with state vector  $\mathbf{x}_a := [\mathbf{z}^\top, \mathbf{x}^\top]^\top$  such that

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_a = \mathbf{A}_a \mathbf{x}_a + \mathbf{B}_a \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{com}} \quad (13.170)$$

where

$$\mathbf{A}_a = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{C} \\ \mathbf{0}_{9 \times 3} & \mathbf{A} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{B}_a = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{B} \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.171)$$

### Matlab

Controllability of the augmented system  $(\mathbf{A}_a, \mathbf{B}_b)$  is checked in Matlab by using the command (see ExObsCtr.m):

```
n_ctr=rank(ctrlb(Aa,Ba))
```

which gives  $n\_ctr = 12$ . Hence, the supply vessel with additional states for integral action is controllable.

The performance index for the integral controller becomes

$$J = \min_{\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{LQ}}} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T (\mathbf{x}_a^\top \mathbf{Q}_a \mathbf{x}_a + \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{LQ}}^\top \mathbf{R} \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{LQ}}) d\tau \right\} \quad (13.172)$$

where  $\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}^\top > 0$  and

$$\mathbf{Q}_a = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{Q}_I & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{Q} \end{bmatrix} \geq 0 \quad (13.173)$$

The matrix  $\mathbf{Q}_I = \mathbf{Q}_I^\top > 0$  is used to specify the integral times in *surge*, *sway* and *yaw*. The optimal PID controller is (see Section 13.1.1)

$$\boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{LQ}} = \mathbf{G}_a \mathbf{x}_a = \mathbf{G} \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{G}_I \underbrace{\int_0^t \mathbf{y}(\tau) d\tau}_z \quad (13.174)$$

where  $\mathbf{G}_a = [\mathbf{G}_I, \mathbf{G}]$  and

$$\mathbf{G}_a = -\mathbf{R}^{-1} \mathbf{B}_a^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty \quad (13.175)$$

$$\mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{A}_a + \mathbf{A}_a^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty - \mathbf{P}_\infty \mathbf{B}_a \mathbf{R}^{-1} \mathbf{B}_a^\top \mathbf{P}_\infty + \mathbf{Q}_a = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.176)$$

### LQG Control–Linear Separation Principle

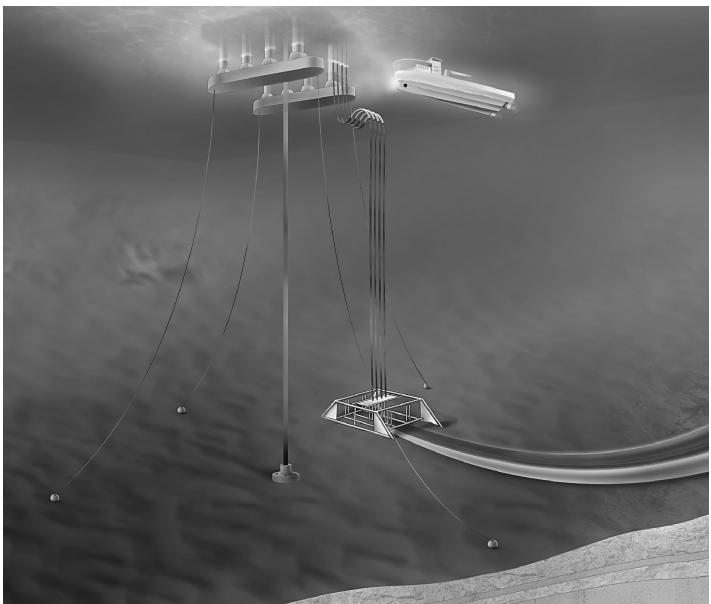
In practice only some of the states are measured. A minimum requirement is that the position and heading of the craft is measured such that velocities and bias terms can be estimated by an observer. This is usually done under the assumption that the states  $\mathbf{x}$  can be replaced with the estimated states  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$  such that the optimal integral controller (13.174) can be modified as

$$\tau_{LQ} = \mathbf{G}\hat{\mathbf{x}} + \mathbf{G}_I\mathbf{C} \int_0^t \hat{\mathbf{x}}(\tau) d\tau \quad (13.177)$$

where the state estimate  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$  can be computed using

- Kalman filter (Section 11.3.6)
- Nonlinear passive observer (Section 11.4.1)

For the Kalman filter in cascade with the LQ controller there exists a *linear separation principle* guaranteeing that  $\hat{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow \mathbf{x}$  and that  $\mathbf{x} \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$  (Athans and Falb, 1966). This is referred to as LQG control and it was first applied to design DP systems by Balchen *et al.* (1976, 1980a, 1980b) and Grimble *et al.* (1980a, 1980b). Optimal DP systems are used to maintain the position of offshore drilling and supply vessels (see Figure 13.8).



**Figure 13.8** Oil production using a dynamically positioned semi-submersible. Illustration by Bjarne Stenberg/MARINTEK.

## 13.2 State Feedback Linearization

The basic idea with feedback linearization is to transform the nonlinear system dynamics into a linear system (Freund, 1973). Feedback linearization is discussed in more detail by Isidori (1989) and Slotine and Li (1991). Conventional control techniques such as pole-placement and linear quadratic optimal control theory can then be applied to the linear system. In robotics, this technique is commonly referred to as *computed torque* control (Sciavicco and Siciliano, 1996).

Feedback linearization is easily applicable to ships and underwater vehicles since these models basically are nonlinear *mass-damper-spring* systems, which can be transformed into a linear system by using a nonlinear mapping. Transformations that can be used for applications both in BODY and NED coordinates will be presented. Trajectory-tracking control in the BODY frame is used for velocity control while NED frame applications are recognized as position and attitude control. Combined position and velocity control systems will also be discussed.

### 13.2.1 Decoupling in the BODY Frame (Velocity Control)

The control objective is to transform the marine craft dynamics into a linear system:

$$\dot{v} = a^b \quad (13.178)$$

where  $a^b$  can be interpreted as a body-fixed *commanded acceleration* vector. The body-fixed vector representation should be used to control the linear and angular velocities. Consider the nonlinear marine craft dynamics in the form

$$M\dot{v} + n(v, \eta) = \tau \quad (13.179)$$

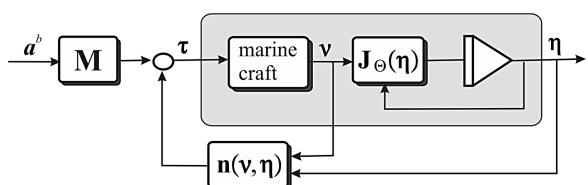
where  $\eta$  and  $v$  are assumed to be measured and  $n$  is the nonlinear vector

$$n(v, \eta) = C(v)v + D(v)\eta + g(\eta) \quad (13.180)$$

The nonlinearities can be canceled out by simply selecting the control law as (see Figure 13.9)

$$\tau = Ma^b + n(v, \eta) \quad (13.181)$$

where the commanded acceleration vector  $a^b$  can be chosen by, for instance, pole placement or linear quadratic optimal control theory. However, note that to investigate optimality of the original system, the optimal control and cost function must be transformed back through the nonlinear mapping.



**Figure 13.9** Nonlinear decoupling in the BODY frame.

### Pole Placement

Let  $\Lambda > 0$  be a diagonal design matrix

$$\Lambda = \text{diag}\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\}$$

used to specify the desired control bandwidth,  $v_d$  the desired linear and angular velocity vector and  $\tilde{v} = v - v_d$  the velocity tracking error. Then the commanded acceleration vector can be chosen as a PI controller with acceleration feedforward:

$$a^b = \dot{v}_d - K_p \tilde{v} - K_i \int_0^t \tilde{v}(\tau) d\tau \quad (13.182)$$

Choosing the gains as

$$K_p = 2\Lambda, \quad K_i = \Lambda^2$$

yields the second-order error dynamics

$$M(\ddot{v} - a^b) = M \left( \ddot{v} + 2\Lambda \tilde{v} + \Lambda^2 \int_0^t \tilde{v}(\tau) d\tau \right) = 0 \quad (13.183)$$

This implies that for each DOF both poles are in  $s = -\lambda_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, n$ ). Consequently,

$$(s + \lambda_i)^2 \int_0^t \tilde{v}(\tau) d\tau = 0 \quad (i = 1, \dots, n) \quad (13.184)$$

The reference model of Section 10.2.1 can be used to generate a smooth velocity trajectory  $v_d$  for trajectory-tracking control.

#### 13.2.2 Decoupling in the NED Frame (Position and Attitude Control)

For position and attitude control the dynamics are decoupled in the NED reference frame. Consider

$$\ddot{\eta} = a^n \quad (13.185)$$

where  $a^n$  can be interpreted as the commanded acceleration in NED. Consider the kinematic and kinetic equations in the form

$$\dot{\eta} = J_{\Theta}(\eta)v \quad (13.186)$$

$$M\dot{v} + n(v, \eta) = \tau \quad (13.187)$$

where both  $\eta$  and  $v$  are assumed measured. Differentiation of the kinematic equation (13.186) with respect to time yields

$$\dot{v} = J_{\Theta}^{-1}(\eta)[\ddot{\eta} - J_{\Theta}(\eta)v] \quad (13.188)$$

The nonlinear control law

$$\tau = \mathbf{M}\mathbf{a}^b + \mathbf{n}(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) \quad (13.189)$$

applied to (13.187) yields

$$\mathbf{M}(\dot{\mathbf{v}} - \mathbf{a}^b) = \mathbf{M}\mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\eta})[\ddot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} - \dot{\mathbf{J}}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{a}^b] = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.190)$$

Choosing

$$\mathbf{a}^n = \dot{\mathbf{J}}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{a}^b \quad (13.191)$$

yields the linear decoupled system

$$\mathbf{M}^*(\ddot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} - \mathbf{a}^n) = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.192)$$

where  $\mathbf{M}^* = \mathbf{J}_\Theta^\top(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{M}\mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\eta}) > 0$ . From (13.191) it is seen that

$$\mathbf{a}^b = \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\eta})[\mathbf{a}^n - \dot{\mathbf{J}}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v}] \quad (13.193)$$

where the commanded acceleration  $\mathbf{a}^n$  can be chosen as a PID control law with acceleration feedforward:

$$\mathbf{a}^n = \ddot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_d - \mathbf{K}_d \dot{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}} - \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}} - \mathbf{K}_i \int_0^t \tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}(\tau) d\tau \quad (13.194)$$

where  $\mathbf{K}_p$ ,  $\mathbf{K}_d$  and  $\mathbf{K}_i$  are positive definite matrices chosen such that the error dynamics

$$\ddot{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}} + \mathbf{K}_d \dot{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}} + \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}} + \mathbf{K}_i \int_0^t \tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}(\tau) d\tau = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.195)$$

is GES. One simple pole-placement algorithm for PID control is

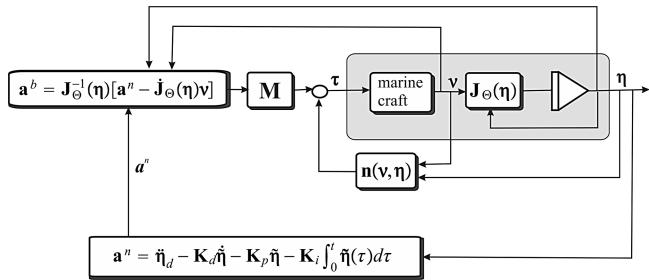
$$(s + \lambda_i)^3 \int_0^t \tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}(\tau) d\tau = \mathbf{0} \quad (i = 1, \dots, n) \quad (13.196)$$

which yields

$$\mathbf{K}_d = 3\mathbf{\Lambda} = \text{diag}\{3\lambda_1, 3\lambda_2, \dots, 3\lambda_n\}$$

$$\mathbf{K}_p = 3\mathbf{\Lambda}^2 = \text{diag}\{3\lambda_1^2, 3\lambda_2^2, \dots, 3\lambda_n^2\}$$

$$\mathbf{K}_i = \mathbf{\Lambda}^3 = \text{diag}\{\lambda_1^3, \lambda_2^3, \dots, \lambda_n^3\}$$



**Figure 13.10** Nonlinear decoupling in the NED frame with transformation to the BODY frame.

This is shown in Figure 13.10. When implementing the trajectory-tracking controller a third-order reference model can be used to compute smooth position and attitude trajectories  $\eta_d$  (see Section 10.2.1).

### 13.2.3 Case Study: Feedback Linearizing Speed Controller for Ships and Underwater Vehicles

Consider the following decoupled model of a ship in surge:

$$m\ddot{u} + d_1u + d_2|u|u = \tau \quad (13.197)$$

From Section 13.2.1 it follows that the commanded acceleration can be calculated as

$$a^b = \dot{u}_d - K_p(u - u_d) - K_i \int_0^t (u - u_d) dt \quad (13.198)$$

while the speed controller takes the following form:

$$\tau = m[\dot{u}_d - K_p(u - u_d) - K_i \int_0^t (u - u_d) dt] + d_1u + d_2|u|u \quad (13.199)$$

Hence, the equilibrium point of the linear system

$$\ddot{u} + K_p \tilde{u} + K_i \int_0^t \tilde{u}(\tau) dt = 0 \quad (13.200)$$

is GES if the gains are chosen as

$$K_p = 2\lambda \quad (13.201)$$

$$K_i = \lambda^2 \quad (13.202)$$

with  $\lambda > 0$ . In order to implement the speed controller, the following reference model can be used (see Section 10.2.1):

$$\ddot{u}_d + 2\xi\omega\dot{u}_d + \omega^2u_d = \omega^2r^b \quad (13.203)$$

where  $\xi > 0$  and  $\omega > 0$  are the reference model damping ratio and natural frequency while  $r^b$  is the setpoint specifying the desired surge speed.

### 13.2.4 Case Study: Feedback Linearizing Ship and Underwater Vehicle Autopilot

Consider the nonlinear model (Norbin, 1963):

$$\dot{\psi} = r \quad (13.204)$$

$$m\dot{r} + d_1r + d_2|r|r = \tau \quad (13.205)$$

where  $\psi$  is the yaw angle. Hence, the commanded acceleration can be calculated as (Fossen and Paulsen, 1992)

$$a^n = \dot{r}_d - K_d(r - r_d) - K_p(\psi - \psi_d) - K_i \int_0^t (\psi - \psi_d) d\tau \quad (13.206)$$

where  $r_d$  is the desired yaw rate and  $\psi_d$  is the desired heading angle. For this particular example, (13.193) implies that  $a^n = a^b$ . Choosing the decoupling control law as

$$\tau = m \left[ \dot{r}_d - K_d(r - r_d) - K_p(\psi - \psi_d) - K_i \int_0^t (\psi - \psi_d) d\tau \right] + d_1r + d_2|r|r \quad (13.207)$$

finally gives the error dynamics

$$\dot{\tilde{\psi}} = \tilde{r} \quad (13.208)$$

$$\dot{\tilde{r}} + K_d \tilde{r} + K_p \tilde{\psi} = 0 \quad (13.209)$$

The reference model can be chosen as (see Section 10.2.1)

$$\psi_d^{(3)} + (2\zeta + 1)\omega \ddot{\psi}_d + (2\zeta + 1)\omega^2 \dot{\psi}_d + \omega^3 \psi_d = \omega^3 r^n \quad (13.210)$$

Notice that (13.207) depends on the uncertain parameters  $d_1$  and  $d_2$  while  $m$  is quite easy to estimate using hydrodynamic programs. Hence, care must be taken when implementing (13.207). For most craft, the control law (13.207) works very well even with  $d_1 = d_2 = 0$  so the need for choosing nonzero damping parameters should be seen as a trade-off between robustness and performance.

### 13.2.5 Case Study: MIMO Adaptive Feedback Linearizing Controller for Ships and Underwater Vehicles

So far only feedback linearization has been discussed under the assumption that all model parameters are *known*. This can be relaxed by using *parameter adaptation*. Consider a marine craft given by the nonlinear system

$$\dot{\eta} = J_{\Theta}(\eta)v \quad (13.211)$$

$$M\dot{v} + n(v, \eta) = \tau \quad (13.212)$$

Taking the control law to be

$$\tau = \hat{M}\hat{a}^b + \hat{n}(v, \eta) \quad (13.213)$$

where the *hat* denotes the adaptive parameter estimates, yields the error dynamics

$$\mathbf{M}[\dot{\mathbf{v}} - \mathbf{a}^b] = [\hat{\mathbf{M}} - \mathbf{M}]\mathbf{a}^b + [\hat{\mathbf{n}}(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) - \mathbf{n}(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta})] \quad (13.214)$$

If the equations of motion are linear in a parameter vector  $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ , the following parametrization can be applied:

$$[\hat{\mathbf{M}} - \mathbf{M}]\mathbf{a}^b + [\hat{\mathbf{n}}(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta}) - \mathbf{n}(\mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta})] = \Phi(\mathbf{a}^b, \mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta})\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \quad (13.215)$$

Here  $\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\theta}} - \boldsymbol{\theta}$  is the *unknown* parameter error vector and  $\Phi(\mathbf{a}^b, \mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta})$  is a *known* matrix function of measured signals usually referred to as the *regressor matrix*. Using the result  $\mathbf{a}^n = \dot{\mathbf{J}}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{a}^b$  from (13.191) gives

$$\mathbf{M}\mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\eta})[\ddot{\mathbf{v}} - \mathbf{a}^n] = \Phi(\mathbf{a}^b, \mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta})\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \quad (13.216)$$

Premultiplying this expression by  $\mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-\top}(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  and letting  $\mathbf{M}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-\top}(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{M}\mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\eta})$  yields the error dynamics

$$\mathbf{M}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta})[\ddot{\mathbf{v}} - \mathbf{a}^n] = \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-\top}(\boldsymbol{\eta})\Phi(\mathbf{a}^b, \mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta})\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \quad (13.217)$$

Furthermore, let the commanded acceleration be chosen as a PD controller with acceleration feedforward:

$$\mathbf{a}^n = \ddot{\mathbf{q}}_d - \mathbf{K}_d \dot{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}} - \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}} \quad (13.218)$$

where  $\mathbf{K}_p > 0$  and  $\mathbf{K}_d > 0$ . Hence, the error dynamics can be expressed according to

$$\mathbf{M}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta})[\ddot{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}} + \mathbf{K}_d \dot{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}} + \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}] = \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-\top}(\boldsymbol{\eta})\Phi(\mathbf{a}^b, \mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta})\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \quad (13.219)$$

Writing this expression in state-space form yields

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-\top}(\boldsymbol{\eta})\Phi(\mathbf{a}^b, \mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta})\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \quad (13.220)$$

where  $\mathbf{x} = [\tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}^\top, \dot{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}}^\top]^\top$  and

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{I} \\ -\mathbf{K}_p & -\mathbf{K}_d \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{B} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{M}^*(\boldsymbol{\eta})^{-1} \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.221)$$

The convergence of  $\tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}$  to zero can be proven by considering

$$V(\mathbf{x}, \tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}, t) = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{P} \mathbf{x} + \tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}^\top \boldsymbol{\Gamma}^{-1} \tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \quad (13.222)$$

with a time-varying  $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{P}^\top > 0$  and where  $\boldsymbol{\Gamma} = \boldsymbol{\Gamma}^\top > 0$  is a positive definite weighting matrix of appropriate dimension. Differentiating  $V$  with respect to time and substituting the error dynamics into the expression for  $\dot{V}$  yields

$$\dot{V} = \mathbf{x}^\top (\dot{\mathbf{P}} + \mathbf{P}\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{P})\mathbf{x} + 2(\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{P}\mathbf{B}\mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-\top}\Phi + \dot{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\eta}}}^\top \boldsymbol{\Gamma}^{-1})\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}} \quad (13.223)$$

Assume that the parameters are constant such that  $\dot{\boldsymbol{\theta}} = \mathbf{0}$  holds. The parameter update law is chosen as

$$\dot{\tilde{\boldsymbol{\theta}}} = -\boldsymbol{\Gamma}\Phi^\top(\mathbf{a}^b, \mathbf{v}, \boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-1}(\boldsymbol{\eta})\mathbf{y} \quad (13.224)$$

where  $\mathbf{y}$  is signal vector given by

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{Cx}, \quad \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{P} \quad (13.225)$$

In order to prove that  $\dot{V} \leq 0$ , let

$$\mathbf{C} = [c_0 \mathbf{I} \ c_1 \mathbf{I}] \quad (13.226)$$

where  $c_0 > 0$  and  $c_1 > 0$  are two scalars to be interpreted later. Furthermore, let

$$\mathbf{PA} + \mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{P} = -\mathbf{Q}, \quad \mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{Q}^\top > 0 \quad (13.227)$$

where  $\mathbf{P}$  and  $\mathbf{Q}$  are defined according to Asare and Wilson (1986):

$$\mathbf{P} := \begin{bmatrix} c_0 \mathbf{M}^* \mathbf{K}_d + c_1 \mathbf{M}^* \mathbf{K}_p & c_0 \mathbf{M}^* \\ c_0 \mathbf{M}^* & c_1 \mathbf{M}^* \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.228)$$

$$\mathbf{Q} := \begin{bmatrix} 2c_0 \mathbf{M}^* \mathbf{K}_p & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & 2(c_1 \mathbf{M}^* \mathbf{K}_d - c_0 \mathbf{M}^*) \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.229)$$

Assume that there exists a constant  $\beta > 0$  such that

$$\mathbf{x}^\top \dot{\mathbf{P}} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^\top \begin{bmatrix} c_0 \dot{\mathbf{M}}^* \mathbf{K}_d + c_1 \dot{\mathbf{M}}^* \mathbf{K}_p & c_0 \dot{\mathbf{M}}^* \\ c_0 \dot{\mathbf{M}}^* & c_1 \dot{\mathbf{M}}^* \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x} \leq \beta \mathbf{x}^\top \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{M}^* & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{M}^* \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x} \quad (13.230)$$

Hence,  $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{P}^\top > 0$ ,  $c_0 > 0$ ,  $c_1 > 0$  and  $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{x} > \mathbf{x}^\top \dot{\mathbf{P}} \mathbf{x}$  implies that

$$\dot{V} = \mathbf{x}^\top (\dot{\mathbf{P}} - \mathbf{Q}) \mathbf{x} \leq 0 \quad (13.231)$$

if the following requirements are satisfied:

- (i)  $(c_0 \mathbf{K}_d + c_1 \mathbf{K}_p)c_1 > c_0^2 \mathbf{I}$
- (ii)  $2c_0 \mathbf{K}_p > \beta \mathbf{I}$
- (iii)  $2(c_1 \mathbf{K}_d - c_0 \mathbf{I}) > \beta \mathbf{I}$

Here  $\beta$  is usually taken to be a small positive constant while  $\mathbf{K}_p > 0$  and  $\mathbf{K}_d > 0$  can be chosen as diagonal matrices. Consequently, convergence of  $\tilde{\eta}$  and  $\dot{\tilde{\eta}}$  to zero is guaranteed by applying *Barbălat's lemma* (Barbălat, 1959); see Appendix A.2. It is also seen that the parameter vector  $\tilde{\theta}$  will be bounded but not necessarily convergent.

Adaptive feedback linearization has been applied to the ship autopilot control problem by Fossen and Paulsen (1992). The assumption that  $\mathbf{x}^\top \dot{\mathbf{P}} \mathbf{x}$  is bounded by a positive constant  $\beta$  can be relaxed by using adaptive slide-mode control where the skew-symmetric property  $\mathbf{x}^\top [\dot{\mathbf{M}} - 2\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})] \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$  is exploited (see Slotine and Benedetto, 1990, Fossen, 1993).

### 13.3 Integrator Backstepping

Backstepping is a design methodology for construction of a feedback control law through a *recursive* construction of a control Lyapunov function. Nonlinear backstepping designs are strongly related to feedback linearization. However, while feedback linearization methods cancel all nonlinearities in the system it will be shown that when applying the backstepping design methodology more design flexibility is obtained. In particular, the designer is given the possibility to exploit “good” nonlinearities while “bad” nonlinearities can be dominated by adding nonlinear damping, for instance. Hence, additional robustness

is obtained, which is important in industrial control systems since cancelation of all nonlinearities requires precise models that are difficult to obtain in practice.

### 13.3.1 A Brief History of Backstepping

The idea of integrator backstepping seems to have appeared simultaneously, often implicit, in the works of Koditschek (1987), Sonntag and Sussmann (1988), Tsinias (1989) and Byrnes and Isidori (1989). Stabilization through an integrator (Kokotovic and Sussmann, 1989) can be viewed as a special case of stabilization through an SPR transfer function, which is a frequently used technique in the early adaptive designs (see Parks, 1966, Landau, 1979, Narendra and Annaswamy, 1989). Extensions to nonlinear cascades by using passivity arguments have been done by Ortega (1991) and Byrnes *et al.* (1991). Integrator backstepping appeared as a recursive design technique in Saberi *et al.* (1990) and was further developed by Kanellakopoulos *et al.* (1992). The relationship between backstepping and passivity has been established by Lozano *et al.* (1992). For the interested reader, a tutorial overview of backstepping is given in Kokotovic (1991).

Adaptive and nonlinear backstepping designs are described in detail by Krstic *et al.* (1995). This includes methods for parameter adaptation, tuning functions and modular designs for both full-state feedback and output feedback (observer backstepping). Sepulchre *et al.* (1997) make extensions to forwarding, passivity and cascaded designs. Also discussions on stability margins and optimality are included. The concept of vectorial backstepping was first introduced by Fossen and Berge (1997). Vectorial backstepping exploits the structural properties of nonlinear MIMO systems and this simplifies design and analysis significantly.

Krstic and Deng (1998) present stochastic systems with a focus on stochastic stability and regulation.

The focus of this section is practical designs with implementation considerations for mechanical systems. This is done by exploiting the nonlinear system properties of mechanical systems such as dissipativity (good damping), symmetry of the inertia matrix and the skew-symmetric property of the Coriolis and centripetal matrix. In addition, emphasis is placed on control design with integral action. Two techniques for integral action in nonlinear systems using backstepping designs are discussed (see Loria *et al.*, 1999, Fossen *et al.*, 2001).

### 13.3.2 The Main Idea of Integrator Backstepping

Integrator backstepping is a *recursive* design technique using *control Lyapunov functions (CLF)*. The CLF concept is a generalization of Lyapunov design results by, for instance, Jacobson (1977) and Jurdjevic and Quinn (1978).

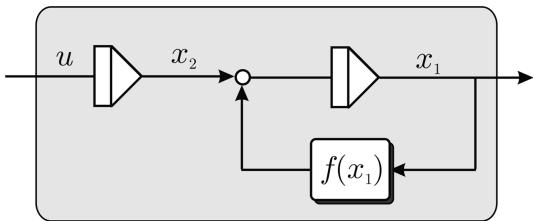
#### **Definition 13.2 (Control Lyapunov Function)**

A smooth positive definite and radially unbounded function  $V : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  is called a *control Lyapunov function* for (see Arstein, 1983, Sontag, 1983)

$$\dot{x} = f(x, u) \quad (13.232)$$

where  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $u \in \mathbb{R}^r$  if

$$\inf_{u \in \mathbb{R}^r} \left\{ \frac{\partial V}{\partial x}(x) f(x, u) \right\} < 0, \quad \forall x \neq 0 \quad (13.233)$$



**Figure 13.11** Second-order nonlinear system with one single nonlinearity  $f(x_1)$  and a pure integrator at the input.

The main idea of integrator backstepping can be demonstrated by considering a simple nonlinear scalar system:

$$\dot{x}_1 = f(x_1) + x_2 \quad (13.234)$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = u \quad (13.235)$$

$$y = x_1 \quad (13.236)$$

where  $x_1 \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $x_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ ,  $y \in \mathbb{R}$  and  $u \in \mathbb{R}$ . The second equation represents a pure integrator (see Figure 13.11).

Let the design objective be regulation of  $y \rightarrow 0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . The only equilibrium point with  $y = 0$  is  $(x_1, x_2) = (0, -f(0))$  corresponding to  $\dot{x}_1 = f(0) + x_2 = 0$ . The design objective is to render the equilibrium point GAS or GES. Since the nonlinear system (13.234)–(13.235) consists of two states  $x_1$  and  $x_2$ , this will be a recursive design in two steps. Equations (13.234)–(13.235) are therefore treated as two cascaded systems, each with a single input and output. The recursive design starts with the system  $x_1$  and continues with  $x_2$ . A change of coordinates

$$z = \phi(x) \quad (13.237)$$

is introduced during the recursive design process where  $z$  is a new state vector and  $\phi(x) : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  is a transformation to be interpreted later. The backstepping transformation is a *global diffeomorphism*, that is a mapping with smooth functions  $\phi(x)$  and  $\phi^{-1}(x)$ . Hence, the existence of an inverse transformation

$$x = \phi^{-1}(z) \quad (13.238)$$

is guaranteed.

**Step 1:** For the first system (13.234) the state  $x_2$  is chosen as a *virtual control* input while it is recalled that our design objective is to regulate the output  $y = x_1$  to zero. Hence, the first backstepping variable is chosen as

$$z_1 = x_1 \quad (13.239)$$

The virtual control is defined as

$$x_2 := \alpha_1 + z_2 \quad (13.240)$$

where

$\alpha_1$  = stabilizing function  
 $z_2$  = new state variable

Hence, the  $z_1$  system can be written

$$\dot{z}_1 = f(z_1) + \alpha_1 + z_2 \quad (13.241)$$

The new state variable  $z_2$  will not be used in the first step, but its presence is important since  $z_2$  is needed to couple the  $z_1$  system to the next system, that is the  $z_2$  system to be considered in the next step. Moreover, integrator backstepping implies that the coordinates during the recursive design are changed from  $x = [x_1, x_2]^\top$  to  $z = [z_1, z_2]^\top$ .

A CLF for the  $z_1$  system is

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{2}z_1^2 \quad (13.242)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}_1 &= z_1 \dot{z}_1 \\ &= z_1(f(z_1) + \alpha_1) + z_1 z_2 \end{aligned} \quad (13.243)$$

We now turn our attention to the design of the stabilizing function  $\alpha_1$  which will provide the necessary feedback for the  $z_1$  system. For instance, choosing the stabilizing function as a feedback linearizing controller

$$\alpha_1 = -f(z_1) - k_1 z_1 \quad (13.244)$$

where  $k_1 > 0$  is the feedback gain, yields

$$\dot{V}_1 = -k_1 z_1^2 + z_1 z_2 \quad (13.245)$$

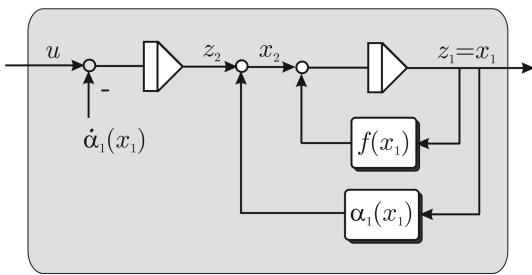
and

$$\dot{z}_1 = -k_1 z_1 + z_2 \quad (13.246)$$

A block diagram showing the stabilizing function and the new state variable is shown in Figure 13.12. Hence, if  $z_2 = 0$  then the  $z_1$  system is stabilized. We now turn our attention to the  $z_2$  system.

**Step 2:** The  $z_2$  dynamics is computed by time differentiation of (13.240):

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{z}_2 &= \dot{x}_2 - \dot{\alpha}_1 \\ &= u - \dot{\alpha}_1 \end{aligned} \quad (13.247)$$



**Figure 13.12** Stabilization of the  $x_1$  system by means of the stabilizing function  $\alpha_1 = \alpha_1(x_1)$ . Note that  $-\dot{\alpha}_1(x_1)$  when integrated cancels out the feedback term  $\alpha_1(x_1)$ .

A CLF for the  $z_2$  system is

$$V_2 = V_1 + \frac{1}{2}z_2^2 \quad (13.248)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}_2 &= \dot{V}_1 + \dot{z}_2 z_2 \\ &= (-k_1 z_1^2 + z_1 z_2) + \dot{z}_2 z_2 \\ &= -k_1 z_1^2 + z_2(z_1 + \dot{z}_2) \\ &= -k_1 z_1^2 + z_2(u - \dot{\alpha}_1 + z_1) \end{aligned} \quad (13.249)$$

Since our system has relative degree two, the control input  $u$  appears in the second step (see Figure 13.13). Hence, choosing the control law as

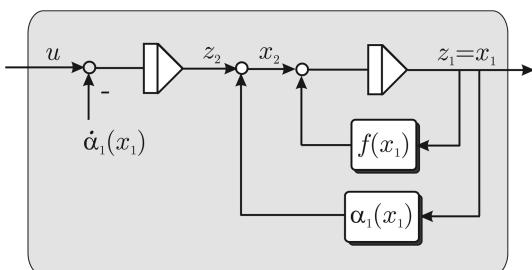
$$u = \dot{\alpha}_1 - z_1 - k_2 z_2 \quad (13.250)$$

with  $k_2 > 0$  yields

$$\dot{V}_2 = -k_1 z_1^2 - k_2 z_2^2 < 0, \quad \forall z_1 \neq 0, z_2 \neq 0 \quad (13.251)$$

### Implementation Aspects

When implementing the control law (13.250) it is important to avoid expressions involving the time derivatives of the states. For this simple system only  $\dot{\alpha}_1$  must be evaluated. This can be done by



**Figure 13.13** Stabilization of the  $x_2$  system by means of the control input  $u = u(\dot{\alpha}_1, z_1, z_2)$ .

time differentiation of  $\alpha_1(x_1)$  along the trajectory of  $x_1$ . Hence,  $\dot{\alpha}_1$  can be computed without using the state derivatives:

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\alpha}_1 &= -\frac{\partial f(x_1)}{\partial x_1} \dot{x}_1 - k_1 \dot{x}_1 \\ &= -\left(\frac{\partial f(x_1)}{\partial x_1} + k_1\right) (f(x_1) + x_2)\end{aligned}\quad (13.252)$$

The final expression for the control law is then

$$u = -\left(\frac{\partial f(x_1)}{\partial x_1} + k_1\right) (f(x_1) + x_2) - x_1 - k_2(x_2 + f(x_1) + k_1 x_1) \quad (13.253)$$

If  $f(x_1) = -x_1$  (linear theory), it is seen that

$$\begin{aligned}u &= -(-1 + k_1)(-x_1 + x_2) - x_1 - k_2(x_2 - x_1 + k_1 x_1) \\ &= -\underbrace{(2 + k_1 k_2 - k_1 - k_2)}_{K_p} x_1 - \underbrace{(k_1 + k_2 - 1)}_{K_d} x_2\end{aligned}\quad (13.254)$$

which is a standard PD control law. In general, the expression for  $u$  is a nonlinear feedback control law depending on the nonlinear function  $f(x_1)$ .

### Backstepping Coordinate Transformation

The backstepping coordinate transformation  $z = \phi(x)$  takes the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 + f(x_1) + k_1 x_1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.255)$$

while the inverse transformation  $x = \phi^{-1}(z)$  is

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 - f(z_1) - k_1 z_1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.256)$$

### The Final Check

If you have performed the backstepping design procedure correctly the dynamics of the closed-loop system in  $(z_1, z_2)$  coordinates can always be written as the sum of a diagonal and skew-symmetric matrix times the state vector. This can be seen by writing the resulting dynamics in the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{z}_1 \\ \dot{z}_2 \end{bmatrix} = -\underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} k_1 & 0 \\ 0 & k_2 \end{bmatrix}}_{\text{diagonal matrix}} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{bmatrix} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}}_{\text{skew-symmetrical matrix}} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.257)$$

or equivalently

$$\dot{z} = -Kz + Sz \quad (13.258)$$

where  $\mathbf{z} = [z_1, z_2]^\top$ ,  $\mathbf{K} = \text{diag}\{k_1, k_2\} > 0$  and

$$\mathbf{S} = -\mathbf{S}^\top = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.259)$$

where  $\mathbf{S}$  satisfies  $\mathbf{z}^\top \mathbf{S} \mathbf{z} = 0, \forall \mathbf{z}$ . In some cases the diagonal matrix will be a function of the state; that is  $\mathbf{K}(\mathbf{z}) > 0$ . This is the case when nonlinear damping is added or when some of the nonlinearities not are canceled by the controller.

### Investigation of Stability

It is also seen that

$$V_2 = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{z}^\top \mathbf{z} \quad (13.260)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}_2 &= \mathbf{z}^\top (-\mathbf{K} \mathbf{z} + \mathbf{S} \mathbf{z}) \\ &= -\mathbf{z}^\top \mathbf{K} \mathbf{z} \end{aligned} \quad (13.261)$$

Hence, Lyapunov's direct method for autonomous systems ensures that the equilibrium point  $(x_1, x_2) = (0, -f(0))$  is GAS. In fact, this system will also be GES since it can be shown that the state vector  $\mathbf{x}$  decays exponentially to zero by using Theorem A.3; that is

$$\|\mathbf{z}(t)\|_2 \leq e^{-\beta(t-t_0)} \|\mathbf{z}(t_0)\|_2 \quad (13.262)$$

where  $\beta = \lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{K}) > 0$  is the convergence rate.

A generalization to SISO mass–damper–spring systems is done in Section 13.3.3 while extensions to MIMO control are made in Section 13.3.6.

### Backstepping versus Feedback Linearization

The backstepping control law of the previous section is in fact equal to a feedback linearizing controller since the nonlinear function  $f(x_1)$  is perfectly compensated for by choosing the stabilizing function as

$$\alpha_1 = -f(x_1) - k_1 z_1 \quad (13.263)$$

The disadvantage with this approach is that a perfect model is required. This is impossible in practice. Consequently, an approach of canceling all the nonlinearities may be sensitive for modeling errors.

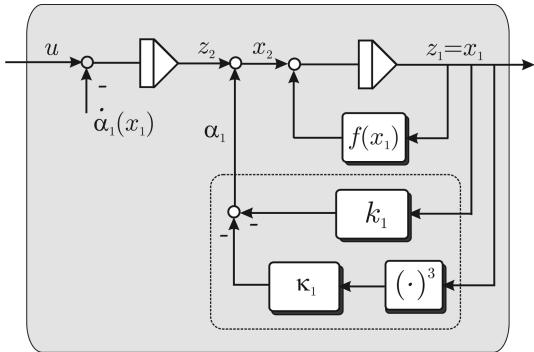
One of the nice features of backstepping is that the stabilizing functions can be modified to exploit so-called “good” nonlinearities. For instance, assume that

$$f(x_1) = -a_0 x_1 - a_1 x_1^2 - a_2 |x_1| x_1 \quad (13.264)$$

where  $a_0, a_1$  and  $a_2$  are assumed to be *unknown* positive constants. Since both  $a_0 x_1$  and  $a_2 |x_1| x_1$  tend to damp out the motion these two expressions should be exploited in the control design and therefore not canceled out. On the contrary, the destabilizing term  $a_1 x_1^2$  must be perfectly compensated for or dominated by adding a nonlinear damping term proportional to  $x_1^3$  (remember that  $z_1 = x_1$ ).

Nonlinear damping suggests the following candidate for the stabilizing function:

$$\alpha_1 = \underbrace{-k_1 z_1}_{\text{linear damping}} \quad \underbrace{-\kappa_1 z_1^3}_{\text{nonlinear damping}} \quad (13.265)$$



**Figure 13.14** Domination of destabilizing terms by adding nonlinear damping.

where  $k_1 > 0$  and  $\kappa_1 > 0$  (see Figure 13.14). Hence,

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{z}_1 &= f(z_1) + (\alpha_1 + z_2) \\ &= -a_0 z_1 - a_1 z_1^2 - a_2 |z_1| z_1 - (k_1 + \kappa_1 z_1^2) z_1 + z_2 \\ &= -(\underbrace{a_0 + a_2 |z_1|}_{\text{good damping}} + k_1) z_1 - \underbrace{a_1 z_1^2}_{\text{bad damping}} - \kappa_1 z_1^3 + z_2\end{aligned}\quad (13.266)$$

Consider the CLF:

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{2} z_1^2 \quad (13.267)$$

$$\dot{V}_1 = -(a_0 + a_2 |z_1| + k_1) z_1^2 - a_1 z_1^3 - \kappa_1 z_1^4 + z_1 z_2 \quad (13.268)$$

In the next step it is seen that

$$\begin{aligned}V_2 &= V_1 + \frac{1}{2} z_2^2 \\ \dot{V}_2 &= -(\underbrace{a_0 + a_2 |z_1| + k_1}_{\text{energy dissipation}}) z_1^2 - \underbrace{a_1 z_1^3}_{\text{energy dissipation/generation}} - \kappa_1 z_1^4 + z_2(z_1 + u - \dot{\alpha}_1)\end{aligned}$$

From this expression it can be concluded that the good damping terms contribute to the energy dissipation. The bad damping term, however, must be dominated by the nonlinear damping term. Choosing

$$u = \dot{\alpha}_1 - k_2 z_2 - z_1 \quad (13.269)$$

finally yields

$$\dot{V}_2 = -(a_0 + a_2 |z_1| + k_1) z_1^2 - a_1 z_1^3 - \kappa_1 z_1^4 - k_2 z_2^2 \quad (13.270)$$

This expression can be rewritten by *completing the squares*. Consider the expression

$$\left( \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\kappa_1}}x + \sqrt{\kappa_1}y \right)^2 = \frac{1}{4\kappa_1}x^2 + xy + \kappa_1y^2 \geq 0 \quad (13.271)$$

⇓

$$-xy - \kappa_1y^2 = - \left( \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\kappa_1}}x + \sqrt{\kappa_1}y \right)^2 + \frac{1}{4\kappa_1}x^2 \quad (13.272)$$

Equation (13.270) with  $x = a_1z_1$  and  $y = z_1^2$  yields

$$\dot{V}_2 = - \left( \frac{a_1}{2\sqrt{\kappa_1}}z_1 + \sqrt{\kappa_1}z_1^2 \right)^2 + \frac{a_1^2}{4\kappa_1}z_1^2 - (a_0 + a_2|z_1| + k_1)z_1^2 - k_2z_2^2 \quad (13.273)$$

Since

$$-\left( \frac{a_1}{2\sqrt{\kappa_1}}z_1 + \sqrt{\kappa_1}z_1^2 \right)^2 \leq 0$$

$$-a_2|z_1| \leq 0 \quad (13.274)$$

it then follows that

$$\dot{V}_2 \leq - \left( a_0 + k_1 - \frac{a_1^2}{4\kappa_1} \right) z_1^2 - k_2z_2^2 \quad (13.275)$$

Hence, by choosing the controller gains according to

$$\kappa_1 > 0 \quad (13.276)$$

$$k_1 > \frac{a_1^2}{4\kappa_1} - a_0 \quad (13.277)$$

$$k_2 > 0 \quad (13.278)$$

our design goal to render  $\dot{V}_2 < 0$  is satisfied. Notice that the controller (13.269) with (13.265) is implemented without using the unknown parameters  $a_0$ ,  $a_1$  and  $a_2$ . Hence, a robust nonlinear controller is derived by using backstepping. This result differs from feedback linearization, which is based on model cancelation.

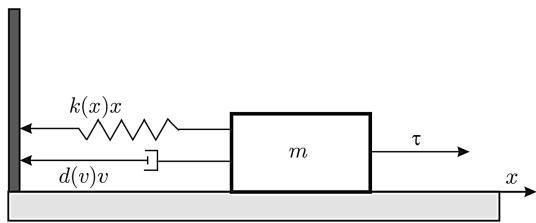
### 13.3.3 Backstepping of SISO Mass–Damper–Spring Systems

The results of Section 13.3.2 can be generalized to the following class of SISO mechanical systems:

$$\dot{x} = v \quad (13.279)$$

$$m\dot{v} + d(v)v + k(x)x = \tau \quad (13.280)$$

$$y = x \quad (13.281)$$



**Figure 13.15** Nonlinear mass–damper–spring system.

where  $x$  is the position,  $v$  is the velocity and

$$\begin{aligned}m &= \text{mass (positive)} \\d(v) &= \text{nonlinear damper (non-negative)} \\k(x) &= \text{nonlinear spring (non-negative)}\end{aligned}$$

The nonlinear mass–damper–spring system is shown in Figure 13.15.

### Nonlinear Trajectory-Tracking Control

Backstepping of the mass–damper–spring can be performed by choosing the output

$$e = y - y_d \quad (13.282)$$

where  $e$  is the tracking error and  $y_d(t) \in C^r$  is an  $r$  times differentiable (smooth) and bounded reference trajectory (see Section 10.2.1). Regulation of  $y = x$  to zero is obtained by choosing  $\dot{y}_d = y_d = 0$ . Time differentiation of  $e$  yields the following model:

$$\dot{e} = v - \dot{y}_d \quad (13.283)$$

$$m\dot{v} = \tau - d(v)v - k(x)x \quad (13.284)$$

The backstepping control law solving this problem is derived in two recursive steps similar to the integrator backstepping example in Section 13.3.2.

**Step 1:** Let  $z_1 = e = y - y_d$ , such that

$$\dot{z}_1 = v - \dot{y}_d \quad (13.285)$$

Taking  $v$  as *virtual control*,

$$v = \alpha_1 + z_2 \quad (13.286)$$

where  $z_2$  is a new state variable to be interpreted later, yields

$$\dot{z}_1 = \alpha_1 + z_2 - \dot{y}_d \quad (13.287)$$

Next, the stabilizing function  $\alpha_1$  is chosen as

$$\alpha_1 = \dot{y}_d - [k_1 + n_1(z_1)]z_1 \quad (13.288)$$

where  $k_1 > 0$  is a feedback gain and  $n_1(z_1) \geq 0$  is a nonlinear damping term, for instance a nonlinear nondecreasing function  $n_1(z_1) = \kappa_1 |z_1|^{n_1}$  with  $n_1 > 0$  and  $\kappa_1 \geq 0$ . This yields

$$\dot{z}_1 = -[k_1 + n_1(z_1)]z_1 + z_2 \quad (13.289)$$

A CLF for  $z_1$  is

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{2}z_1^2 \quad (13.290)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}_1 &= z_1\dot{z}_1 \\ &= -[k_1 + n_1(z_1)]z_1^2 + z_1z_2 \end{aligned} \quad (13.291)$$

**Step 2:** The second step stabilizes the  $z_2$  dynamics. Moreover, from (13.286) it is seen that

$$\begin{aligned} m\dot{z}_2 &= m\dot{v} - m\dot{\alpha}_1 \\ &= \tau - d(v)v - k(x)x - m\dot{\alpha}_1 \end{aligned} \quad (13.292)$$

Let  $V_2$  be the second CLF, which is chosen to reflect the kinetic energy  $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$  of the system. However, it makes sense to replace the velocity  $v$  with  $z_2$  in order to solve the trajectory-tracking control problem. This is usually referred to as “pseudo-kinetic energy”. Consider

$$V_2 = V_1 + \frac{1}{2}mz_2^2 \quad (13.293)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}_2 &= \dot{V}_1 + m\dot{z}_2\dot{z}_2 \\ &= -[k_1 + n_1(z_1)]z_1^2 + z_1z_2 + z_2[\tau - d(v)v - k(x)x - m\dot{\alpha}_1] \end{aligned} \quad (13.294)$$

Since the input  $\tau$  appears in  $\dot{V}_2$ , a value for  $\tau$  can be prescribed such that  $\dot{V}_2$  becomes negative definite. For instance:

$$\tau = m\dot{\alpha}_1 + d(v)v + k(x)x - z_1 - k_2z_2 - n_2(z_2)z_2 \quad (13.295)$$

where  $k_2 > 0$  and  $n_2(z_2) = \kappa_2 |z_2|^{n_2} \geq 0$  with  $n_2 > 0$  can be specified by the designer. This yields

$$\dot{V}_2 = -[k_1 + n_1(z_1)]z_1^2 - [k_2 + n_2(z_2)]z_2^2 \quad (13.296)$$

When implementing the control law,  $\dot{\alpha}_1$  is computed by taking the time derivative of  $\alpha_1$  along the trajectories of  $y_d$  and  $z_1$ , see (13.288), to obtain

$$\dot{\alpha}_1 = \frac{\partial \alpha_1}{\partial \ddot{y}_d} \ddot{y}_d - \frac{\partial \alpha_1}{\partial z_1} \dot{z}_1 = \ddot{y}_d - \frac{\partial \alpha_1}{\partial z_1} (v - \dot{y}_d) \quad (13.297)$$

Hence, the state derivatives are avoided in the control law. Notice that the desired state  $y_d$  is assumed to be smooth such that  $\dot{y}_d$  and  $\ddot{y}_d$  exist.

## Error Dynamics

The resulting error dynamics is written

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & m \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{z}_1 \\ \dot{z}_2 \end{bmatrix} = - \begin{bmatrix} k_1 + n_1(z_1) & 0 \\ 0 & k_2 + n_2(z_2) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

‡

$$M\dot{z} = -K(z)z + Sz \quad (13.298)$$

where  $z = [z_1, z_2]^\top$  and

$$M = \text{diag}\{1, m\}$$

$$K(z) = \text{diag}\{k_1 + n_1(z_1), k_2 + n_2(z_2)\}$$

$$S = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence, the equilibrium point  $(z_1, z_2) = (0, 0)$  is GES. This can be seen from  $V_2(z) = \frac{1}{2}z^\top Mz$ , which after time differentiation yields  $\dot{V}_2(z) = -z^\top Kz$  since  $z^\top Sz = 0, \forall z$ . Notice that kinetic energy has been applied in the Lyapunov analysis to achieve this.

## Setpoint Regulation

Setpoint regulation is obtained by choosing  $\dot{y}_d = y_d = 0$ . For simplicity let  $n_1(z_1) = n_2(z_2) = 0$  such that

$$z_1 = x$$

$$\alpha_1 = -k_1 z_1$$

and

$$\tau = m\dot{\alpha}_1 + d(v)v + k(x)x - z_1 - k_2 z_2 \quad (13.299)$$

## Nonlinear PD Control

The backstepping control law (13.299) can also be viewed as a nonlinear PD control law:

$$u = -K_p(x)x - K_d(v)v \quad (13.300)$$

by writing (13.299) as

$$\begin{aligned} u &= [d(v) - mk_1]v + [k(x) - 1]x - k_2(v + k_1x) \\ &= [d(v) - mk_1 - k_2]v + [k(x) - 1 - k_1k_2]x \end{aligned} \quad (13.301)$$

Hence,

$$K_p(x) = k_1 k_2 + 1 - k(x) \quad (13.302)$$

$$K_d(v) = m k_1 + k_2 - d(v) \quad (13.303)$$

### Nonlinear PID Control

The nonlinear PD controller (13.300) can be extended to include integral action by using *constant parameter adaptation* or by *augmenting an additional integrator* to the plant. More specifically

1. *Constant parameter adaptation*: An unknown constant (or slowly varying) disturbance is added to the dynamic model. This constant or bias is estimated online by using adaptive control. The resulting system with parameter estimator can be shown to be UGAS for the case of regulation and trajectory-tracking control (Fossen *et al.*, 2001).
2. *Integrator augmentation*: An additional integrator is augmented on the right-hand side of the integrator chain in order to obtain zero steady-state errors. The resulting system is proven to be GES.

The methods are presented in Sections 13.3.4 and 13.3.5.

#### 13.3.4 Integral Action by Constant Parameter Adaptation

The constant parameter adaptation technique is based on Fossen *et al.* (2001). For simplicity a mass–damper–spring system is considered. Hence, adaptive backstepping results in a control law of PID type.

Consider the system:

$$\dot{x} = v \quad (13.304)$$

$$m\dot{v} + d(v)v + k(x)x = \tau + w \quad (13.305)$$

$$\dot{w} = 0 \quad (13.306)$$

The trajectory-tracking control law can be designed by considering the tracking error

$$z_1 = x - x_d \quad (13.307)$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{z}_1 &= \dot{x} - \dot{x}_d \\ &= v - \dot{x}_d \\ &= (\alpha_1 + z_2) - v_d \end{aligned} \quad (13.308)$$

where  $z_2$  is a new state variable and  $v := \alpha_1 + z_2$  is the virtual control for  $z_1$ . Choosing the stabilizing function

$$\alpha_1 = \dot{x}_d - k_1 z_1 \quad (13.309)$$

yields

$$\dot{z}_1 = -k_1 z_1 + z_2 \quad (13.310)$$

The definition  $z_2 := v - \alpha_1$  implies that

$$\dot{z}_2 = \dot{v} - \ddot{x}_d + k_1(v - \dot{x}_d) \quad (13.311)$$

$$m\dot{z}_2 = \tau - d(v)v - k(x)x + w - m\ddot{x}_d + mk_1(v - \dot{x}_d) \quad (13.312)$$

Consider the CLF:

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{2}z_1^2 + \frac{1}{2p}\tilde{w}^2, \quad p > 0 \quad (13.313)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}_1 &= z_1\dot{z}_1 + \frac{1}{p}\tilde{w}\dot{\tilde{w}} \\ &= z_1z_2 - k_1z_1^2 + \frac{1}{p}\tilde{w}\dot{\tilde{w}} \end{aligned} \quad (13.314)$$

where  $\tilde{w} = \hat{w} - w$  is the parameter estimation error. Next, consider the CLF:

$$V_2 = V_1 + \frac{1}{2}mz_2^2 \quad (13.315)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}_2 &= \dot{V}_1 + z_2(m\dot{z}_2) \\ &= z_1z_2 - k_1z_1^2 + \frac{1}{p}\tilde{w}\dot{\tilde{w}} \\ &\quad + z_2[\tau - d(v)v - k(x)x + w - m\ddot{x}_d + mk_1(v - \dot{x}_d)] \end{aligned} \quad (13.316)$$

where it is noticed that  $\dot{\tilde{w}} = \dot{\hat{w}}$ . Choosing the control law as

$$\tau = d(v)\alpha_1 + k(x)x - \hat{w} + m\ddot{x}_d - mk_1(v - \dot{x}_d) - z_1 - k_2z_2 \quad (13.317)$$

where  $\alpha_1 = v - z_2$ , yields

$$\dot{V}_2 = -k_1z_1^2 - [k_2 + d(v)]z_2^2 + \tilde{w} \left( \frac{1}{p}\dot{\hat{w}} - z_2 \right) \quad (13.318)$$

Choosing the update law as

$$\dot{w} = pz_2 \quad (13.319)$$

finally yields

$$\dot{V}_2 = -k_1 z_1^2 - [k_2 + d(v)]z_2^2 \quad (13.320)$$

The error dynamics takes the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{z}_1 \\ \dot{z}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -k_1 & 1 \\ -1 & -k_2 - d(v) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \tilde{w} \quad (13.321)$$

$$\dot{\tilde{w}} = -p \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.322)$$

$\Updownarrow$

$$\dot{z} = \mathbf{h}(z, t) + \mathbf{b}\tilde{w} \quad (13.323)$$

$$\dot{\tilde{w}} = -p\mathbf{b}^\top \left( \frac{\partial W(z, t)}{\partial z} \right)^\top \quad (13.324)$$

Notice that the dissipative term  $d(v) = d(z_2 + \alpha_1) = d(z_2 - k_1 z_1 + \dot{x}_d(t)) > 0$ ,  $\forall v$  has not been “canceled out” in order to exploit this as good damping in the error dynamics. The price for exploiting the so-called *good nonlinearities* in the design is that the error dynamics becomes *nonautonomous*. Since the feedback gains are assumed to be positive, that is  $k_1 > 0$  and  $k_2 > 0$ ,  $p > 0$ ,  $\mathbf{b} = [0, -1]^\top$  and  $\mathbf{b}^\top \mathbf{b} = 1 > 0$ , Theorem A.6 with  $W(z) = \frac{1}{2}z^\top z$  guarantees that the nonautonomous systems (13.321)–(13.322) is UGAS.

Notice that if a feedback linearizing controller is applied instead of (13.317), replacing the damping term  $d(v)\alpha_1$  with  $d(v)v$ , the control input becomes

$$\tau = d(v)v + k(x)x - \hat{w} + m\dot{x}_d - mk_1(v - \dot{x}_d) - z_1 - k_2 z_2 \quad (13.325)$$

The error dynamics

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{z}_1 \\ \dot{z}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -k_1 & 1 \\ -1 & -k_2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \tilde{w} \quad (13.326)$$

is *autonomous*. In this case, *Krasovskii–LaSalle’s invariant set theorem* (Theorem A.2) can be used to prove GAS.

### 13.3.5 Integrator Augmentation Technique

Consider the second-order mass–damper–spring system:

$$\dot{x} = v \quad (13.327)$$

$$m\dot{v} + d(v)v + k(x)x = \tau + w \quad (13.328)$$

$$y = x \quad (13.329)$$

where  $w$  is a constant *unknown* disturbance. Let  $e$  denote the tracking error

$$e = y - y_d \quad (13.330)$$

where  $y_d$  is the desired output. Hence,

$$\dot{e} = v - \dot{y}_d \quad (13.331)$$

$$m\dot{v} + d(v)v + k(x)x = \tau + w \quad (13.332)$$

#### Nonlinear PD Control

If  $w = 0$ , backstepping results in a nonlinear control law of PD type similar to the result in Section 13.3.3. However, by augmenting the plant with an additional integrator at the right end of the integrator chain, as illustrated in Figure 13.16, nonlinear PID control can be obtained.

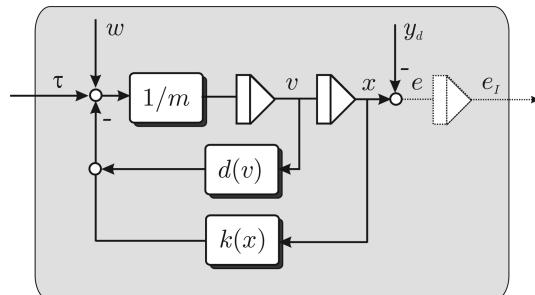
#### Nonlinear PID Control

Augmentation of an additional integrator  $\dot{e}_I = e$  to the second-order plant (13.331)–(13.332) yields

$$\dot{e}_I = e \quad (13.333)$$

$$\dot{e} = v - \dot{y}_d \quad (13.334)$$

$$m\dot{v} + d(v)v + k(x)x = \tau + w \quad (13.335)$$



**Figure 13.16** Augmentation of an additional integrator.

For simplicity let us first assume that  $w = 0$ . Hence, backstepping with  $z_1 = e_I$  results in three steps:

### Step 1:

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{z}_1 &= e \\ &= \alpha_1 + z_2\end{aligned}\quad (13.336)$$

Choosing the stabilizing function  $\alpha_1 = -k_1 z_1$  yields

$$\dot{z}_1 = -k_1 z_1 + z_2 \quad (13.337)$$

Hence,

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{2} z_1^2 \quad (13.338)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V}_1 &= z_1 \dot{z}_1 \\ &= -k_1 z_1^2 + z_1 z_2\end{aligned}\quad (13.339)$$

### Step 2:

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{z}_2 &= \dot{e} - \dot{\alpha}_1 \\ &= v - \dot{y}_d - \dot{\alpha}_1 \\ &= (\alpha_2 + z_3) - \dot{y}_d - \dot{\alpha}_1\end{aligned}\quad (13.340)$$

Hence,

$$V_2 = V_1 + \frac{1}{2} z_2^2 \quad (13.341)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V}_2 &= -k_1 z_1^2 + z_1 z_2 + z_2 \dot{z}_2 \\ &= -k_1 z_1^2 + z_2(z_1 + \alpha_2 + z_3 - \dot{y}_d - \dot{\alpha}_1)\end{aligned}\quad (13.342)$$

Choosing the stabilizing function  $\alpha_2 = \dot{\alpha}_1 + \dot{y}_d - k_2 z_2 - z_1$  yields

$$\dot{z}_2 = -z_1 - k_2 z_2 + z_3 \quad (13.343)$$

$$\dot{V}_2 = -k_1 z_1^2 - k_2 z_2^2 + z_2 z_3 \quad (13.344)$$

### Step 3:

$$\begin{aligned}m \dot{z}_3 &= m \dot{v} - m \dot{\alpha}_2 \\ &= \tau + w - d(v)v - k(x)x - m \dot{\alpha}_2 \\ &= \tau - d(v)\alpha_2 - d(v)z_3 - k(x)x - m \dot{\alpha}_2\end{aligned}\quad (13.345)$$

Let

$$V_3 = V_2 + \frac{1}{2}mz_3^2 \quad (13.346)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V}_3 &= -k_1z_1^2 - k_2z_2^2 + z_3(z_2 + m\dot{z}_3) \\ &= -k_1z_1^2 - k_2z_2^2 + z_3(z_2 + \tau - d(v)\alpha_2 - d(v)z_3 - k(x)x - m\dot{\alpha}_2)\end{aligned} \quad (13.347)$$

Choosing the control law as

$$\tau = m\dot{\alpha}_2 + d(v)\alpha_2 + k(x)x - z_2 - k_3z_3 \quad (13.348)$$

yields

$$\dot{V}_3 = -k_1z_1^2 - k_2z_2^2 - (d(v) + k_3)z_3^2 < 0, \forall z_1 \neq 0, z_2 \neq 0, z_3 \neq 0 \quad (13.349)$$

and

$$m\dot{z}_3 = -[d(v) + k_3]z_3 - z_2 \quad (13.350)$$

### Error Dynamics

For the undisturbed case  $w = 0$ , the error dynamics takes the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & m \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{z}_1 \\ \dot{z}_2 \\ \dot{z}_3 \end{bmatrix} = - \begin{bmatrix} k_1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & k_2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & d(v) + k_3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \\ z_3 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \\ z_3 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.351)$$

Hence, the equilibrium point  $(z_1, z_2, z_3) = (0, 0, 0)$  is GES and therefore the tracking error  $e$  converges to zero. If  $w = \text{constant}$ , the error dynamics takes the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & m \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{z}_1 \\ \dot{z}_2 \\ \dot{z}_3 \end{bmatrix} = - \begin{bmatrix} k_1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & k_2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & d(v) + k_3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \\ z_3 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \\ z_3 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} w$$

Hence, in the steady state ( $\dot{z} = \mathbf{0}$  and  $d(v) = 0$ )

$$z_2 = k_1z_1 = e - \alpha_1 = e + k_1z_1 \Rightarrow e = 0 \quad (13.352)$$

The equilibrium point for  $w = \text{constant}$  is

$$\begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \\ z_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} k_1 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & k_2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & k_3 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} w = \frac{1}{k_1k_2k_3 + k_1 + k_3} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ k_1 \\ 1 + k_1k_2 \end{bmatrix} w \quad (13.353)$$

Therefore it can be concluded that for the case  $w = \text{constant}$  the equilibrium point  $(z_1, z_2, z_3)$  is GES but  $(z_1, z_2, z_3)$  will converge to the constant nonzero values given by (13.353), even though  $e = 0$ . This shows that augmentation of an additional integrator when performing backstepping leads to zero steady-state errors in the case of regulation under the assumption of a constant disturbance  $w$ .

## Implementation Considerations

The integrator augmentation technique is particularly interesting for implementation in mechanical systems since the integral term is computed by integrating  $z_1 = y - y_d$  which for a mechanical system is the position tracking error. This corresponds to applying a PID controller on a second-order system. On the contrary, when using *constant parameter adaptation* the integral term will be the integral of a linear combination of the state tracking errors; see (13.322). For a mechanical system this implies that both the position and velocity tracking errors are used to provide integral action. In many cases it is difficult to measure the velocity with the same accuracy as the position. This implies that the adaptive method will be more sensitive to measurement noise than the *integrator augmentation technique*. A comparative study of the different backstepping integral techniques is found in Skjetne and Fossen (2004).

### 13.3.6 Case Study: Backstepping of MIMO Mass–Damper–Spring Systems

The concept of vectorial backstepping was first introduced by Fossen and Berge (1997) and Fossen and Grøvlen (1998). Consider a MIMO nonlinear mass–damper–spring system in the form

$$\dot{x} = v \quad (13.354)$$

$$M\dot{v} + D(v)v + K(x)x = Bu \quad (13.355)$$

where  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is the position vector,  $v \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is the velocity vector,  $u \in \mathbb{R}^r$  ( $r \geq n$ ) is the control input vector,  $D(v) \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  represents a matrix of damping coefficients,  $K(x) \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  is a matrix of spring coefficients,  $M \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  is the inertia matrix and  $B \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times r}$  is the input matrix. Hence, backstepping can be performed in *two vectorial steps*.

**Step 1:** For the first system (13.354) consider  $v$  as the control and let

$$v = s + \alpha_1 \quad (13.356)$$

where

$s = \tilde{v} + \Lambda \tilde{x}$       New state vector used for tracking control

$\alpha_1$       Stabilizing vector field to be defined later

Here  $\tilde{v} = v - v_d$  and  $\tilde{x} = x - x_d$  are the velocity and position tracking errors, respectively, and  $\Lambda > 0$  is a diagonal matrix of positive elements. The definition of the  $s$  vector is motivated by Slotine and Li (1987), who introduced  $s$  as a measure of tracking when designing their adaptive robot controller. It turns out that this transformation has the nice property of transforming the nonlinear state-space model (13.354)–(13.355) to the form

$$\begin{aligned} Ms + D(v)s &= M\dot{v} + D(v)v - M\dot{v}_r - D(v)v_r \\ &= Bu - M\dot{v}_r - D(v)v_r - K(x)x \end{aligned} \quad (13.357)$$

where  $\mathbf{v}_r$  can be interpreted as a “*virtual*” reference trajectory:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{v}_r &= \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{s} \\ &= \mathbf{v}_d - \mathbf{\Lambda} \tilde{\mathbf{x}}\end{aligned}\quad (13.358)$$

The position error dynamics of Step 1 can therefore be written

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\tilde{\mathbf{x}}} &= \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_d \\ &= s + \boldsymbol{\alpha}_1 - \mathbf{v}_d \quad (\boldsymbol{\alpha}_1 = \mathbf{v}_r = \mathbf{v} - \mathbf{s}) \\ &= -\mathbf{\Lambda} \tilde{\mathbf{x}} + s\end{aligned}\quad (13.359)$$

Hence,

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{2} \tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\mathbf{x}}, \quad \mathbf{K}_p = \mathbf{K}_p^\top > 0 \quad (13.360)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V}_1 &= \tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \dot{\tilde{\mathbf{x}}} \\ &= \tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p (-\mathbf{\Lambda} \tilde{\mathbf{x}} + s) \\ &= -\tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{\Lambda} \tilde{\mathbf{x}} + s^\top \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\mathbf{x}}\end{aligned}\quad (13.361)$$

**Step 2:** In the second step, a CLF motivated by *pseudo-kinetic energy* is chosen according to

$$V_2 = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{s}^\top \mathbf{M} \mathbf{s} + V_1, \quad \mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top > 0 \quad (13.362)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V}_2 &= \mathbf{s}^\top \mathbf{M} \dot{\mathbf{s}} + \dot{V}_1 \\ &= \mathbf{s}^\top (\mathbf{B} \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{M} \dot{\mathbf{v}}_r - \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{v}_r - \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{x}) \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{s}) - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{\Lambda} \tilde{\mathbf{x}} + s^\top \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\mathbf{x}} \\ &= \mathbf{s}^\top (\mathbf{B} \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{M} \dot{\mathbf{v}}_r - \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{v}_r - \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{x}) \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{s} + \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\mathbf{x}}) - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{\Lambda} \tilde{\mathbf{x}}\end{aligned}\quad (13.363)$$

This suggests that the control law is chosen as

$$\mathbf{B} \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{M} \dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{x}) \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{K}_d \mathbf{s}, \quad \mathbf{K}_d > 0 \quad (13.364)$$

which results in

$$\dot{V}_2 = -\mathbf{s}^\top (\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{K}_d) \mathbf{s} - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{\Lambda} \tilde{\mathbf{x}}$$

Since  $V_2$  is positive definite and  $\dot{V}_2$  is negative definite it follows from Theorem A.3 that the equilibrium point  $(\tilde{\mathbf{x}}, \mathbf{s}) = (\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{0})$  is GES. Moreover, convergence of  $\mathbf{s} \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$  and  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}} \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$  implies that  $\tilde{\mathbf{v}} \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$ . When implementing the control law (13.364) it is assumed that  $\mathbf{B}$  has an inverse:

$$\mathbf{B}^i = \mathbf{B}^\top (\mathbf{B} \mathbf{B}^\top)^{-1} \quad (13.365)$$

or simply  $\mathbf{B}^{-1}$  for the square case  $r = n$ .

### Nonlinear Mass–Damper–Spring System with Actuator Dynamics

Consider the mass–damper–spring system of the previous section with actuator dynamics:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{v} \quad (13.366)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u} \quad (13.367)$$

$$\mathbf{T}\dot{\mathbf{u}} + \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}_c \quad (13.368)$$

where  $\mathbf{T} \in \mathbb{R}^{r \times r}$  is a diagonal matrix of actuator time constants and  $\mathbf{u}_c \in \mathbb{R}^r$  is a vector of actuator commands. Instead of choosing the controller  $\mathbf{u}$  in Step 2,  $\mathbf{u}_c$  is treated as the control input to be specified in Step 3. Recall that

$$\dot{V}_2 = \mathbf{s}^\top (\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r - \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v}_r - \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{s} + \mathbf{K}_p\tilde{\mathbf{x}}) - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{\Lambda} \tilde{\mathbf{x}} \quad (13.369)$$

**Step 3:** Let  $\mathbf{Bu}$  be the virtual control vector of Step 3. Hence,

$$\mathbf{Bu} = \mathbf{z} + \boldsymbol{\alpha}_2 \quad (13.370)$$

$$\boldsymbol{\alpha}_2 = \mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}}_r + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v}_r + \mathbf{K}(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{K}_p\tilde{\mathbf{x}} - \mathbf{K}_d\mathbf{s} \quad (13.371)$$

where  $\mathbf{z}$  is a new state variable. This results in

$$\dot{V}_2 = \mathbf{s}^\top \mathbf{z} - \mathbf{s}^\top (\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{K}_d)\mathbf{s} - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{\Lambda} \tilde{\mathbf{x}} \quad (13.372)$$

Choose

$$V_3 = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{z}^\top \mathbf{z} + V_2 \quad (13.373)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}_3 &= \mathbf{z}^\top \mathbf{K}\dot{\mathbf{z}} + \dot{V}_2 \\ &= \mathbf{z}^\top (\mathbf{B}\dot{\mathbf{u}} - \dot{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}_2) + \mathbf{z}^\top \mathbf{z} - \mathbf{s}^\top (\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{K}_d)\mathbf{s} - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{\Lambda} \tilde{\mathbf{x}} \\ &= \mathbf{z}^\top (\mathbf{B}\mathbf{T}^{-1}(\mathbf{u}_c - \mathbf{u}) - \dot{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}_2 + \mathbf{s}) - \mathbf{s}^\top (\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{K}_d)\mathbf{s} - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{\Lambda} \tilde{\mathbf{x}} \end{aligned} \quad (13.374)$$

The control law

$$\mathbf{u}_c = \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{T}\mathbf{B}^\dagger(\dot{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}_2 - \mathbf{s} - \mathbf{K}_z\mathbf{z}) \quad (13.375)$$

yields

$$\dot{V}_3 = -\mathbf{z}^\top \mathbf{K}_z \mathbf{z} - \mathbf{s}^\top (\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{K}_d)\mathbf{s} - \tilde{\mathbf{x}}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{\Lambda} \tilde{\mathbf{x}} \quad (13.376)$$

Again GES is guaranteed. The main drawback of including the actuator dynamic is that  $\dot{\alpha}_2$  must be computed. The expression for  $\dot{\alpha}_2$  will not depend of the state derivatives since

$$\dot{\alpha}_2 = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial \alpha_2}{\partial (\text{state})_i} (\text{state})_i$$

$(\text{state})_i$  = system equation depending on the states only

### Example 13.5 (MIMO Backstepping of Robots)

This example is based on the results of Fossen and Berge (1997). Consider the nonlinear robot model (Sciavicco and Siciliano, 1996):

$$\dot{q} = v \quad (13.377)$$

$$M(q)\dot{v} + C(q, v)v + g(q) = \tau \quad (13.378)$$

where  $M(q) = M^\top(q) > 0$  is the inertia matrix,  $C(q, v)$  is a matrix of Coriolis and centripetal forces defined in terms of the Christoffel symbols and  $g(q)$  is a vector of gravitational forces and moments.  $q \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is a vector of joint angles,  $v \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is a vector of joint angular rates and  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}^n$  is a vector of control torques. Vectorial backstepping of a robot manipulator (see Figure 13.17) can be done in two steps:

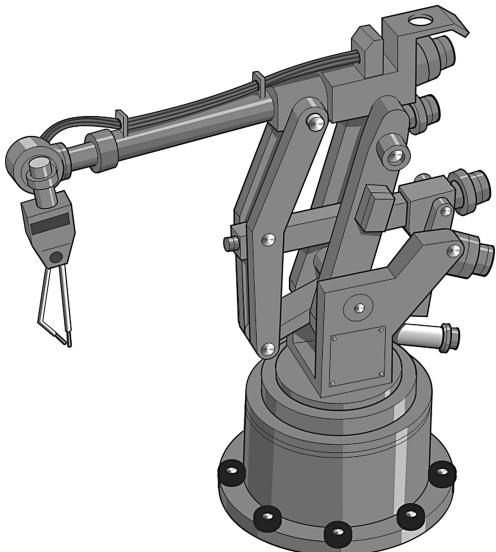


Figure 13.17 Robot manipulator.

**Step 1:** Define the virtual control vector

$$\dot{q} = v := s + \alpha_1 \quad (13.379)$$

where  $s$  is a new state variable and  $\alpha_1$  is stabilizing vector field, which can be chosen as

$$\alpha_1 = v_r, \quad v_r = v_d - \Lambda \tilde{q} \quad (13.380)$$

where  $\Lambda > 0$  is a diagonal design matrix and  $\tilde{q} = q - q_d$  is the tracking error. Combining (13.379) and (13.380) yields

$$\tilde{v} = -\Lambda \tilde{q} + s \quad (13.381)$$

where  $\dot{\tilde{q}} = \tilde{v}$ .

**Step 2:** Consider the CLF:

$$V = \frac{1}{2} (s^\top M(q)s + \tilde{q}^\top K_q \tilde{q}) > 0, \quad \forall s \neq 0, \tilde{q} \neq 0 \quad (13.382)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V} &= s^\top M(q)\dot{s} + \frac{1}{2}s^\top \dot{M}(q)s + \tilde{q}^\top K_q \tilde{q} \\ &= s^\top M(q)\dot{s} + \frac{1}{2}s^\top \dot{M}(q)s - \tilde{q}^\top K_q \Lambda \tilde{q} + \tilde{q}^\top K_q s \end{aligned} \quad (13.383)$$

Equations (13.379) and (13.380) can be combined to give

$$\begin{aligned} M(q)\dot{s} &= M(q)\dot{v} - M(q)\dot{\alpha} \\ &= \tau - M(q)\dot{v}_r - C(q, v)v_r - g(q) - C(q, v)s \end{aligned} \quad (13.384)$$

Substituting (13.384) into (13.383) yields

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V} &= s^\top (\tau - M(q)\dot{v}_r - C(q, v)v_r - g(q) + K_q \tilde{q}) \\ &\quad + s^\top \left( \frac{1}{2} \dot{M}(q) - C(q, v) \right) s - \tilde{q}^\top K_q \Lambda \tilde{q} \\ &= s^\top (\tau - M(q)\dot{v}_r - C(q, v)v_r - g(q) + K_q \tilde{q}) - \tilde{q}^\top K_q \Lambda \tilde{q} \end{aligned} \quad (13.385)$$

Here the skew-symmetric property  $s^\top (\frac{1}{2} \dot{M}(q) - C(q, v))s = 0, \forall s$  has been applied. The backstepping control law is chosen as

$$\tau = M(q)\dot{v}_r + C(q, v)v_r + g(q) - K_d s - K_q \tilde{q} \quad (13.386)$$

where  $K_d = K_d^\top > 0$  and  $K_q = K_q^\top > 0$  are design matrices. This finally yields

$$\dot{V} = -s^\top K_d s - \tilde{q}^\top K_q \Lambda \tilde{q} < 0, \quad \forall s \neq 0, \tilde{q} \neq 0 \quad (13.387)$$

and GES follows. The control law (13.386) is equivalent to the control law of Slotine and Li (1987) with perfectly known parameters (nonadaptive case) except for the additional feedback term  $K_q \tilde{q}$  which is necessary to obtain GES.

### 13.3.7 Case Study: MIMO Backstepping for Fully Actuated Ships

Conventional ship control systems are designed under the assumption that the kinematic and kinetic equations can be linearized such that gain-scheduling techniques and optimal control theory can be applied (see Fossen, 1994). This is not a good assumption for tracking applications where the surge and sway positions ( $N, E$ ) and yaw angle  $\psi$  must be controlled simultaneously. The main reason for this is that the rotation matrix in yaw must be linearized. In addition to this, assumptions such as linear damping and negligible Coriolis and centripetal forces are only good for low-speed maneuvering and stationkeeping. These limitations clearly motivate a nonlinear design. MIMO nonlinear backstepping designs can be used for this purpose by exploiting nonlinear system properties such as symmetry of the inertia matrix, dissipative damping and skew-symmetry of the Coriolis and centripetal matrix (see Fossen and Fjellstad, 1995).

A MIMO nonlinear backstepping technique for marine craft where the nonlinear system properties are exploited is presented below (Fossen and Strand, 1998). An alternative reference is Fossen and Strand (1999a).

#### Vectorial Backstepping of Marine Craft in 6 DOF

Consider a marine craft described by the following equations of motion:

$$\dot{\eta} = J_{\Theta}(\eta)v \quad (13.388)$$

$$M\dot{v} + C(v)v + D(v)v + g(\eta) = \tau \quad (13.389)$$

$$\tau = Bu \quad (13.390)$$

This model describes the motion of a craft in 6 DOF. It is assumed that the craft is fully actuated such that  $BB^T$  is invertible. The system (13.388)–(13.390) satisfies the following properties:

- (i)  $M = M^T > 0$ ,  $\dot{M} = \mathbf{0}$
- (ii)  $C(v) = -C^T(v)$
- (iii)  $D(v) > 0$
- (iv)  $BB^T$  is nonsingular
- (v)  $J_{\Theta}(\eta)$  = Euler angle transformation matrix (not defined for  $\theta = \pm 90^\circ$ )

#### New State Variables

Assume that the reference trajectories given by  $\eta_d^{(3)}$ ,  $\ddot{\eta}_d$ ,  $\dot{\eta}_d$  and  $\eta_d$  are smooth and bounded. The virtual reference trajectories in BODY and NED coordinates are defined as

$$\dot{\eta}_r := \dot{\eta}_d - \Lambda \tilde{\eta} \quad (13.391)$$

$$v_r := J_{\Theta}^{-1}(\eta)\dot{\eta}_r, \quad \theta \neq \pm 90^\circ \quad (13.392)$$

where  $\tilde{\eta} = \eta - \eta_d$  is the tracking error and  $\Lambda > 0$  is a diagonal design matrix. Furthermore, let

$$s = \dot{\eta} - \dot{\eta}_r = \dot{\tilde{\eta}} + \Lambda \tilde{\eta} \quad (13.393)$$

The marine craft dynamics (13.388)–(13.389) can be written (Fossen, 1993)

$$M^*(\eta)\ddot{\eta} + C^*(v, \eta)\dot{\eta} + D^*(v, \eta)\dot{\eta} + g^*(\eta) = J_{\Theta}^{-T}(\eta)\tau \quad (13.394)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{M}^*(\eta) &= \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-\top}(\eta) \mathbf{M} \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-1}(\eta) \\ \mathbf{C}^*(\mathbf{v}, \eta) &= \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-\top}(\eta) [\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) - \mathbf{M} \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-1}(\eta) \dot{\mathbf{J}}_\Theta(\eta)] \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-1}(\eta) \\ \mathbf{D}^*(\mathbf{v}, \eta) &= \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-\top}(\eta) \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-1}(\eta) \\ \mathbf{g}^*(\eta) &= \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-\top}(\eta) \mathbf{g}(\eta)\end{aligned}$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{M}^*(\eta) \dot{s} &= -\mathbf{C}^*(\mathbf{v}, \eta) s - \mathbf{D}^*(\mathbf{v}, \eta) s + \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-\top}(\eta) \mathbf{B} u \\ &\quad - \mathbf{M}^*(\eta) \ddot{\eta}_r - \mathbf{C}^*(\mathbf{v}, \eta) \dot{\eta}_r - \mathbf{D}^*(\mathbf{v}, \eta) \dot{\eta}_r - \mathbf{g}^*(\eta)\end{aligned}\quad (13.395)$$

or equivalently

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{M}^*(\eta) \dot{s} &= -\mathbf{C}^*(\mathbf{v}, \eta) s - \mathbf{D}^*(\mathbf{v}, \eta) s \\ &\quad + \mathbf{J}_\Theta^{-\top}(\eta) [\mathbf{B} u - \mathbf{M} \dot{\mathbf{v}}_r - \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{v}_r - \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) \mathbf{v}_r - \mathbf{g}(\eta)]\end{aligned}\quad (13.396)$$

**Step 1:** Consider the error dynamics

$$\dot{\eta} - \dot{\eta}_d = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\eta)(\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_d) \quad (13.397)$$

Let  $\mathbf{v}$  be the virtual control vector

$$\mathbf{J}_\Theta(\eta) \mathbf{v} := s + \boldsymbol{\alpha}_1 \quad (13.398)$$

The position error dynamics can therefore be written

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{\tilde{\eta}} &= \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\eta)(\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}_d) \\ &= s + \boldsymbol{\alpha}_1 - \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\eta) \mathbf{v}_d \quad \{\boldsymbol{\alpha}_1 = \dot{\eta}_r = \dot{\eta}_d - \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \tilde{\eta}, \quad \dot{\eta}_d = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\eta) \mathbf{v}_d\} \\ &= -\boldsymbol{\Lambda} \tilde{\eta} + s\end{aligned}\quad (13.399)$$

Hence, a CLF is

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{2} \tilde{\eta}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\eta}, \quad \mathbf{K}_p = \mathbf{K}_p^\top > 0 \quad (13.400)$$

resulting in

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V}_1 &= \tilde{\eta}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \dot{\tilde{\eta}} \\ &= \tilde{\eta}^\top \mathbf{K}_p (-\boldsymbol{\Lambda} \tilde{\eta} + s) \\ &= -\tilde{\eta}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \tilde{\eta} + s^\top \mathbf{K}_p \tilde{\eta}\end{aligned}\quad (13.401)$$

**Step 2:** In the second step a CLF motivated by the *pseudo-kinetic energy* is chosen:

$$V_2 = \frac{1}{2} s^\top \mathbf{M}^*(\eta) s + V_1, \quad \mathbf{M}^* = (\mathbf{M}^*)^\top > 0 \quad (13.402)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\dot{V}_2 &= s^\top \mathbf{M}^*(\eta) \dot{s} + \frac{1}{2} s^\top \dot{\mathbf{M}}^*(\eta) s + \dot{V}_1 \\
&= -s^\top [C^*(v, \eta) + D^*(v, \eta)] s \\
&\quad + s^\top J_{\Theta}^{-\top}(\eta) [Bu - M\dot{v}_r - C(v)v_r - D(v)v_r - g(\eta)] \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{2} s^\top \dot{\mathbf{M}}^*(\eta) s - \tilde{\eta}^\top K_p \Lambda \tilde{\eta} + s^\top K_p \tilde{\eta}
\end{aligned} \tag{13.403}$$

Using the skew-symmetric property

$$s^\top (\dot{\mathbf{M}}^*(\eta) - 2C^*(v, \eta)) s = 0, \quad \forall v, \eta, s \tag{13.404}$$

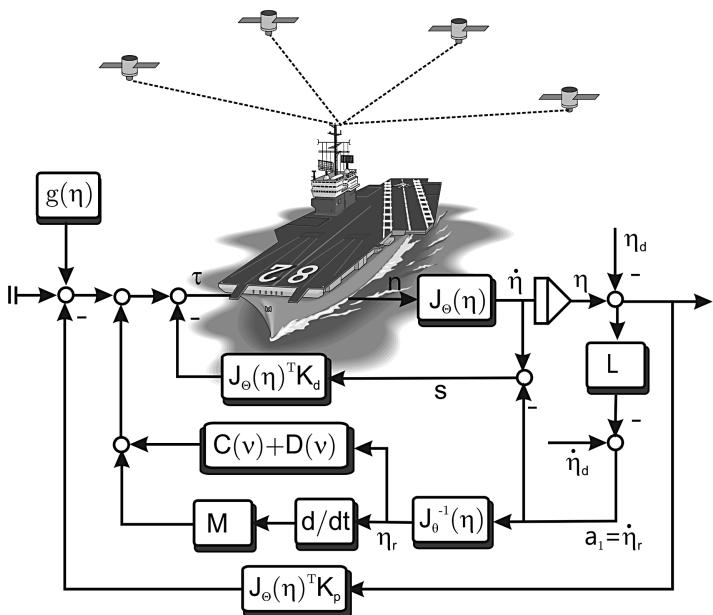
yields

$$\begin{aligned}
\dot{V}_2 &= s^\top J_{\Theta}^{-\top}(\eta) [Bu - M\dot{v}_r - C(v)v_r - D(v)v_r - g(\eta) + J_{\Theta}^\top(\eta)K_p \tilde{\eta}] \\
&\quad - s^\top D^*(v, \eta)s - \tilde{\eta}^\top K_p \Lambda \tilde{\eta}
\end{aligned} \tag{13.405}$$

Hence, the control law can be chosen as (see Figure 13.18)

$$\tau = M\dot{v}_r + C(v)v_r + D(v)v_r + g(\eta) - J_{\Theta}^\top(\eta)K_p \tilde{\eta} - J_{\Theta}^\top(\eta)K_d s \tag{13.406}$$

$$u = B^\dagger \tau \tag{13.407}$$



**Figure 13.18** Nonlinear MIMO backstepping controller for 6 DOF trajectory-tracking control.

where  $K_d > 0$ . This results in

$$\dot{V}_2 = -s^\top (D^*(v, \eta) + K_d)s - \tilde{\eta}^\top K_p \Lambda \tilde{\eta}$$

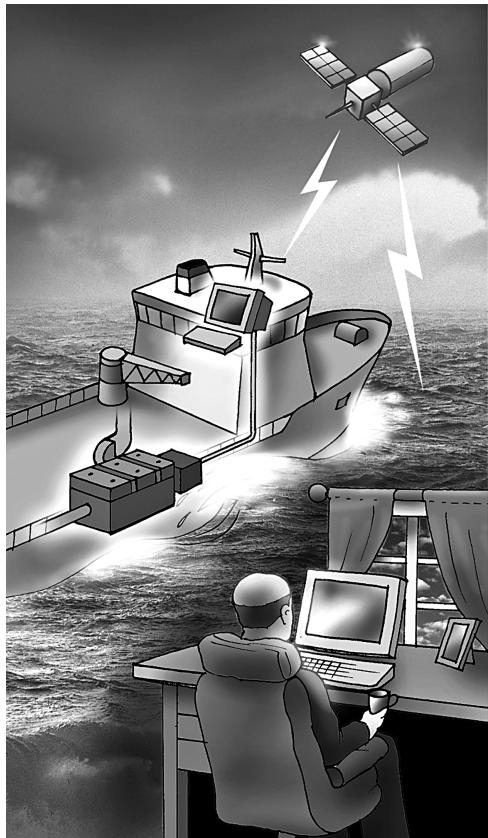
Since  $V_2$  is positive definite and  $\dot{V}_2$  is negative definite it follows from Theorem A.3 that the equilibrium point  $(\tilde{\eta}, s) = (\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{0})$  is GES. In addition, it follows from convergence of  $s \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$  and  $\tilde{\eta} \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$  that  $\dot{\tilde{\eta}} \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$ .

### Vectorial Backstepping in 3 DOF

Vectorial backstepping in 3 DOF (surge, sway and yaw) is a special case of the general 6 DOF solution which can be applied for surface vessels. Typical applications are stationkeeping and low-speed maneuvering of ships, semi-submersibles and high-speed craft (see Figure 13.19).

In this case the Euler angle transformation matrix  $J_\Theta(\eta)$  reduces to (see (2.40) in Section 2.2):

$$J_\Theta(\eta) \in \mathbb{R}^{6 \times 6} \rightarrow R(\psi) \in SO(3) \quad (13.408)$$



**Figure 13.19** Dynamic positioning of a supply vessel using measurements from a global navigation satellite system. Illustration by Bjarne Stenberg/Department of Marine Technology, NTNU.

which is the rotation matrix in yaw. This implies that

$$\mathbf{R}^{-1}(\psi) = \mathbf{R}^\top(\psi) \quad (13.409)$$

The equations of motion (13.394) therefore become

$$\mathbf{M}^*(\psi)\ddot{\eta} + \mathbf{C}^*(v, \psi)\dot{\eta} + \mathbf{D}^*(v, \psi)\dot{\eta} = \mathbf{R}(\psi)\tau \quad (13.410)$$

where the gravitational and buoyancy forces are assumed to outbalance each other such that  $\mathbf{g}(\eta) = \mathbf{0}$ , and

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{M}^*(\psi) &= \mathbf{R}(\psi)\mathbf{M}\mathbf{R}^\top(\psi) \\ \mathbf{C}^*(v, \psi) &= \mathbf{R}(\psi)[\mathbf{C}(v) - \mathbf{M}\mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\dot{\mathbf{R}}(\psi)]\mathbf{R}^\top(\psi) \\ \mathbf{D}^*(v, \psi) &= \mathbf{R}(\psi)\mathbf{D}(v)\mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\end{aligned}$$

### 13.3.8 Case Study: MIMO Backstepping Design with Acceleration Feedback for Fully Actuated Ships

The results of the previous section can be extended to include acceleration feedback. A surface vessel in surge, sway and yaw will be used to illustrate the design procedure. For simplicity a PD control law will be designed. Integral action can easily be included by using adaptive backstepping or integral augmentation techniques as explained in Sections 13.3.4 and 13.3.5.

Consider the 3 DOF maneuvering model:

$$\dot{\eta} = \mathbf{R}(\psi)v \quad (13.411)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{v} + \mathbf{C}(v)v + \mathbf{D}(v)v = \tau \quad (13.412)$$

where

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m - X_{\dot{u}} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m - Y_{\dot{v}} & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} \\ 0 & mx_g - N_{\dot{v}} & I_z - N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.413)$$

Conventional accelerometers measure linear accelerations along the body axes. Hence, the signals  $\dot{u}$  and  $\dot{v}$  can be fed back using the control law

$$\tau = \tau_{PD} - \mathbf{K}_m\dot{v} - \mathbf{C}_m(v)v \quad (13.414)$$

where

$$\mathbf{K}_m = \begin{bmatrix} K_{11} & K_{12} & 0 \\ K_{21} & K_{22} & 0 \\ K_{31} & K_{32} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.415)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_m(v) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & -K_{21}u - K_{22}v \\ 0 & 0 & K_{11}u + K_{12}v \\ K_{21}u + K_{22}v & -K_{11}u - K_{12}v & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.416)$$

The expression for  $\mathbf{C}_m(\mathbf{v})$  in (13.414) is based on (6.43). Consequently, the system inertia matrix after acceleration feedback becomes

$$\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{M} + \mathbf{K}_m = \begin{bmatrix} m - X_{\dot{u}} + K_{11} & K_{12} & 0 \\ K_{21} & m - Y_{\dot{v}} + K_{22} & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} \\ K_{31} & mx_g - N_{\dot{v}} + K_{32} & I_z - N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.417)$$

and

$$\mathbf{C}_H(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{C}_m(\mathbf{v}) \quad (13.418)$$

The feedback term  $\mathbf{C}_m(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v}$  is necessary to ensure that

$$\mathbf{s}^\top [\dot{\mathbf{H}}^*(\psi) - 2\mathbf{C}_H^*(\mathbf{v}, \psi)]\mathbf{s} = 0, \quad \mathbf{s} \neq \mathbf{0} \quad (13.419)$$

where

$$\mathbf{H}^*(\psi) = \mathbf{R}(\psi)\mathbf{H}\mathbf{R}^\top(\psi) \quad (13.420)$$

$$\mathbf{C}_H^*(\mathbf{v}, \psi) = \mathbf{R}(\psi)[\mathbf{C}_H(\mathbf{v}) - \mathbf{H}\mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\dot{\mathbf{R}}(\psi)]\mathbf{R}^\top(\psi) \quad (13.421)$$

The control law (13.414) gives us some flexibility since the acceleration feedback terms  $K_{11}$ ,  $K_{12}$ ,  $K_{21}$ ,  $K_{22}$ ,  $K_{31}$  and  $K_{32}$  can be chosen such that  $\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{H}^\top > 0$ . A symmetric inertia matrix is obtained by requiring that

$$\mathbf{K}_m = \begin{bmatrix} K_{11} & K_{12} & 0 \\ K_{21} & K_{22} & 0 \\ K_{31} & K_{32} & 0 \end{bmatrix} := \begin{bmatrix} X_{\dot{u}} + \Delta K_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & Y_{\dot{v}} + \Delta K_{22} & 0 \\ 0 & N_{\dot{v}} - Y_{\dot{r}} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.422)$$

where  $\Delta K_{11}$  and  $\Delta K_{22}$  can be treated as additional design parameters for the mass in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions. The resulting expression is

$$\mathbf{H} = \begin{bmatrix} m + \Delta K_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m + \Delta K_{22} & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} \\ 0 & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} & I_z - N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.423)$$

If  $\Delta K_{11} = \Delta K_{22}$ , the mass in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions is equal. Hence, the PID controller will be independent of the heading angle, which is advantageous when tuning dynamic positioning systems, for instance.

The resulting dynamics after acceleration feedback is

$$\mathbf{H}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}_H(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau}_{\text{PD}} \quad (13.424)$$

Consider the CLF:

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{z}_1^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{z}_1, \quad \mathbf{z}_1 = \boldsymbol{\eta}_d - \boldsymbol{\eta} \quad (13.425)$$

$$V_2 = V_1 + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{H}\mathbf{v} \quad (13.426)$$

where  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  represent the potential and kinetic energy, respectively.

## New State Variables

Assume that the reference trajectories  $\eta_d^{(3)}$ ,  $\ddot{\eta}_d$ ,  $\dot{\eta}_d$  and  $\eta_d$  are smooth and bounded. A virtual reference trajectory is defined as

$$\dot{\eta}_r := \dot{\eta}_d - \Lambda \tilde{\eta}, \quad v_r := R^\top(\psi) \dot{\eta}_r \quad (13.427)$$

where  $\tilde{\eta} = \eta - \eta_d$  is the tracking error and  $\Lambda > 0$  is a diagonal design matrix. Furthermore, let

$$s = \dot{\eta} - \dot{\eta}_r = \dot{\tilde{\eta}} + \Lambda \tilde{\eta} \quad (13.428)$$

The marine craft dynamics (13.411)–(13.424) can be transformed to

$$H^*(\psi) \ddot{s} + C_H^*(v, \psi) \dot{s} + D^*(v, \psi) s = R(\psi) \tau_{PD} \quad (13.429)$$

Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} H^*(\psi) \ddot{s} &= -C_H^*(v, \psi) s - D^*(v, \psi) s + R(\psi) \tau_{PD} \\ &\quad - H^*(\psi) \ddot{\eta}_r - C_H^*(v, \psi) \dot{\eta}_r - D^*(v, \psi) \dot{\eta}_r \end{aligned} \quad (13.430)$$

or equivalently

$$H^*(\psi) \ddot{s} + C_H^*(v, \psi) s + D^*(v, \psi) s = R(\psi) [\tau_{PD} - H \dot{v}_r - C_H(v) v_r - D(v) v_r] \quad (13.431)$$

**Step 1:** Consider the error dynamics:

$$\dot{\eta} - \dot{\eta}_d = R(\psi) [v - v_d] \quad (13.432)$$

Let  $R(\psi)v$  be the virtual control vector  $R(\psi)v := s + \alpha_1$ . The position error dynamics can therefore be written

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{\tilde{\eta}} &= R(\psi) [v - v_d] \\ &= s + \alpha_1 - R(\psi) v_d, \quad \{\alpha_1 = \dot{\eta}_r = \dot{\eta}_d - \Lambda \tilde{\eta}, \quad \dot{\eta}_d = R(\psi) v_d\} \\ &= -\Lambda \tilde{\eta} + s \end{aligned} \quad (13.433)$$

Hence,

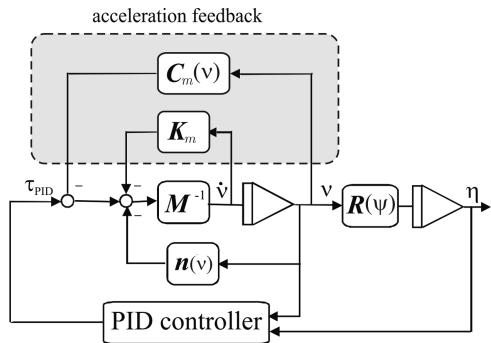
$$V_1 = \frac{1}{2} \tilde{\eta}^\top K_p \tilde{\eta}, \quad K_p = K_p^\top > 0 \quad (13.434)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}_1 &= \tilde{\eta}^\top K_p \dot{\tilde{\eta}} \\ &= \tilde{\eta}^\top K_p (-\Lambda \tilde{\eta} + s) \\ &= -\tilde{\eta}^\top K_p \Lambda \tilde{\eta} + s^\top K_p \tilde{\eta} \end{aligned} \quad (13.435)$$

**Step 2:** In the second step, a CLF is motivated by *pseudo-kinetic energy* is chosen according to

$$V_2 = \frac{1}{2} s^\top H^*(\psi) s + V_1 \quad (13.436)$$



**Figure 13.20** Acceleration feedback and PID controller.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \dot{V}_2 &= s^\top H^*(\psi)\dot{s} + \frac{1}{2}s^\top \dot{H}^*(\psi)s + \dot{V}_1 \\
 &= s^\top [-C_H^*(v, \psi)s - D^*(v, \psi)s + R(\psi)[\tau_{PD} - H\dot{v}_r - C_H(v)v_r - D(v)v_r]] \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{2}s^\top \dot{H}^*(\psi)s - \tilde{\eta}^\top K_p \Lambda \tilde{\eta} + s^\top K_p \tilde{\eta}
 \end{aligned} \tag{13.437}$$

Using the skew-symmetric property  $s^\top [\dot{H}^*(\psi) - 2C_H^*(v, \psi)]s = 0$  yields

$$\begin{aligned}
 \dot{V}_2 &= s^\top R(\psi)[\tau_{PD} - H\dot{v}_r - C_H(v)v_r - D(v)v_r + R^\top(\psi)K_p \tilde{\eta}] \\
 &\quad - s^\top D^*(v, \psi)s - \tilde{\eta}^\top K_p \Lambda \tilde{\eta}
 \end{aligned} \tag{13.438}$$

Consequently, the 3 DOF control law

$$\tau_{PD} = H\dot{v}_r + C_H(v)v_r + D(v)v_r - R^\top(\psi)[K_p \tilde{\eta} + K_d s] \tag{13.439}$$

results in

$$\dot{V}_2 = -s^\top (D^*(v, \psi) + K_d)s - \tilde{\eta}^\top K_p \Lambda \tilde{\eta}$$

Since  $V_2$  is positive definite and  $\dot{V}_2$  is negative definite it follows that the equilibrium point  $(\tilde{\eta}, s) = (\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{0})$  is GES. Moreover, convergence of  $s \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$  and  $\tilde{\eta} \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$  implies that  $\dot{\tilde{\eta}} \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$ . The PD controller can easily be replaced by a PID controller (see Sections 13.3.4 and 13.3.5). In this case only UGAS is guaranteed.

### 13.3.9 Case Study: Nonlinear Separation Principle for PD Controller-Observer Design

For the motion control systems presented so far, slowly varying environmental forces have been compensated for by adding integral action in the controller. In this section it is demonstrated how a globally converging observer and a PD control law plus a nonlinear term of observer bias estimates can be combined to compensate for slowly varying environmental disturbances (Loria *et al.*, 2000). Moreover, the

integral term is removed in the controller and replaced by a bias estimate. The stability proof is based on a *separation principle*, which holds for nonlinear systems. The separation principle is theoretically supported by results on cascaded nonlinear systems and standard Lyapunov theory, and it is validated in practice by experimentation with a model ship.

The controller–observer is designed in three steps:

1. Design a UGAS state estimator.
2. Design the control law as if the whole state  $\mathbf{x}$  and bias term  $\mathbf{b}$  were known (measured) and free of noise.
3. Implement the control law with the observer estimates  $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{b}}$  and show that the observer–controller error dynamics is GAS.

The stability proof of this approach requires that the separation principle hold for nonlinear systems. The method in this section relies on Lyapunov theorems for stability of cascaded time-varying systems to prove UGAS (Panteley and Loria, 1998).

### Cascaded Systems

Consider the time-varying systems  $\Sigma_1$  and  $\Sigma_2$  (Loria *et al.*, 2000):

$$\Sigma_1 : \dot{\mathbf{x}}_1 = \mathbf{f}_1(t, \mathbf{x}_1) + \mathbf{G}(t, \mathbf{x})\mathbf{x}_2 \quad (13.440)$$

$$\Sigma_2 : \dot{\mathbf{x}}_2 = \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}_2) \quad (13.441)$$

where  $\mathbf{x}_1 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\mathbf{x}_2 \in \mathbb{R}^m$  and  $\mathbf{x} = [\mathbf{x}_1^\top, \mathbf{x}_2^\top]^\top$ . The function  $\mathbf{f}_1(t, \mathbf{x}_1)$  is continuously differentiable in  $(t, \mathbf{x}_1)$ , while  $\mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}_2)$  and  $\mathbf{G}(t, \mathbf{x})$  are continuous in their arguments, and locally Lipschitz. The two subsystems  $\Sigma_1$  and  $\Sigma_2$  will represent the controller and observer error dynamics, respectively, while  $\mathbf{G}(t, \mathbf{x})\mathbf{x}_2$  is the interaction term coupling these two subsystems together. A growth rate condition on  $\mathbf{G}(t, \mathbf{x})$  is needed in order to prevent the controller error dynamics  $\Sigma_1$  from becoming unstable when the true states are replaced with observer estimates.

The cascaded system (13.440)–(13.441) can be proven to be UGAS by reformulating Theorems 1 and 2 in Panteley and Loria (1998) according to:

#### **Theorem 13.1 (UGAS for Cascaded Systems)**

*The cascaded system (13.440)–(13.441) is UGAS if Assumptions A1–A3 are satisfied:*

A1. *The system*

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_1 = \mathbf{f}_1(t, \mathbf{x}_1) \quad (13.442)$$

*is UGAS with a Lyapunov function  $V(t, \mathbf{x}_1)$ ,  $V : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \times \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ , positive definite, that is  $V(t, \mathbf{0}) = \mathbf{0}$  and  $V(t, \mathbf{x}_1) > 0$  for all  $\mathbf{x}_1 \neq \mathbf{0}$ , and proper (radially unbounded), which satisfies*

$$\left\| \frac{\partial V}{\partial \mathbf{x}_1} \right\| \|\mathbf{x}_1\| \leq c_1 V(t, \mathbf{x}_1), \quad \forall \|\mathbf{x}_1\| \geq \mu \quad (13.443)$$

*where  $c_1, \mu > 0$ . It is also assumed that  $(\partial V / \partial \mathbf{x}_1)(t, \mathbf{x}_1)$  is bounded uniformly in  $t$  for all  $\|\mathbf{x}_1\| < \mu$ ; that is there exists a constant  $c_2 > 0$  such that for all  $t \geq t_0 \geq 0$ :*

$$\left\| \frac{\partial V}{\partial \mathbf{x}_1} \right\| \leq c_2, \quad \forall \|\mathbf{x}_1\| \leq \mu \quad (13.444)$$

A2. The function  $\mathbf{G}(t, \mathbf{x})$  satisfies

$$\|\mathbf{G}(t, \mathbf{x})\| \leq \theta_1(\|\mathbf{x}_2\|) + \theta_2(\|\mathbf{x}_2\|)\|\mathbf{x}_1\| \quad (13.445)$$

where  $\theta_1, \theta_2 : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  are continuous.

A3. Equation  $\dot{\mathbf{x}}_2 = \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}_2)$  is UGAS, and for all  $t_0 \geq 0$ :

$$\int_{t_0}^{\infty} \|\mathbf{x}_2(t)\| dt \leq \phi(\|\mathbf{x}_2(t_0)\|) \quad (13.446)$$

where the function  $\phi(\cdot)$  is a class  $\mathcal{K}$  function.

### DP Control System

Consider the nonlinear DP model:

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{R}(\psi)\mathbf{v} \quad (13.447)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \mathbf{R}^T(\psi)\mathbf{b} \quad (13.448)$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{b}} = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.449)$$

$$\mathbf{y} = \boldsymbol{\eta} + \boldsymbol{\eta}_w \quad (13.450)$$

where  $\mathbf{b} \in \mathbb{R}^3$  is a bias term representing slowly varying environmental forces and  $\mathbf{y} \in \mathbb{R}^3$  represent the measurements. Instead of using integral action to compensate for  $\mathbf{b}$ , a PD controller

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = -\mathbf{R}^T(\psi)\mathbf{K}_p\mathbf{e} - \mathbf{K}_d\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{R}^T(\psi)\mathbf{b}, \quad \mathbf{e} = \boldsymbol{\eta} - \boldsymbol{\eta}_d \quad (13.451)$$

can be implemented under the assumption that  $\mathbf{b}$  is known (perfect compensation) and  $\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}}_d = \mathbf{0}$ . However, it is impossible to measure  $\mathbf{b}$  so a state observer is needed. For this purpose the passive observer (11.128)–(11.132) in Section 11.4.1 can be used to generate estimates of  $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ ,  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\mathbf{b}$ , and at the same time provide wave filtering. Application of a nonlinear separation principle implies that the controller can be implemented using the estimated states  $\hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}}$ ,  $\hat{\mathbf{v}}$  and  $\hat{\mathbf{b}}$ ; that is

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = -\mathbf{R}^T(\psi)\mathbf{K}_p\hat{\mathbf{e}} - \mathbf{K}_d\hat{\mathbf{v}} - \mathbf{R}^T(\psi)\hat{\mathbf{b}}, \quad \hat{\mathbf{e}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\eta}} - \boldsymbol{\eta}_d \quad (13.452)$$

The proof needed to show that the passive observer with the controller (13.452) is UGAS is done in three steps corresponding to Assumptions A1–A3 in Theorem 13.1.

#### Step 1: Observer Error Dynamics

Since the observer error dynamics

$$\Sigma_2 : \dot{\mathbf{x}}_2 = \mathbf{f}_2(t, \mathbf{x}_2) \quad (13.453)$$

is UGES and consequently UGAS when considering the passive observer in Section 11.4.1, there exist positive constants  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  such that

$$\|\mathbf{x}_2(t)\| \leq \lambda_1 \|\mathbf{x}_2(t_0)\| e^{-\lambda_2(t-t_0)} \quad (13.454)$$

Therefore Assumption A3 in Theorem 13.1 is satisfied with  $\phi(\|\mathbf{x}_2(t_0)\|) = (\lambda_1/\lambda_2) \|\mathbf{x}_2(t_0)\|$ .

### Step 2: Regulator Error Dynamics

The *full-state* feedback controller (13.451) when applied to (13.447)–(13.448) results in

$$\dot{\mathbf{e}} = \mathbf{R}(\psi)\mathbf{v} \quad (13.455)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + (\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{K}_d)\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\mathbf{K}_p\mathbf{e} = \mathbf{0} \quad (13.456)$$

This system is GAS according to LaSalle–Krasovskii's theorem since

$$V = \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{v}^\top \mathbf{M} \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{e}^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{e}) > 0, \quad \forall \mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{e} \neq \mathbf{0} \quad (13.457)$$

and

$$\dot{V} = -\mathbf{v}^\top (\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{K}_d) \mathbf{v} \leq 0 \quad (13.458)$$

This implies that the first condition on the system  $\dot{\mathbf{x}}_1 = f_1(t, \mathbf{x}_1)$ , Assumption A1 in Theorem 13.1, is satisfied. Next, a constant  $c_1$  is easily found by considering

$$\left\| \frac{\partial V}{\partial \mathbf{x}_1} \right\| \|\mathbf{x}_1\| \leq \max\{m_M, k_M, 1\} \|\mathbf{x}_1\|^2, \quad \forall \|\mathbf{x}_1\| \geq \mu \quad (13.459)$$

where  $m_M = \lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{M})$  and  $k_M = \lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{K}_p)$ . Hence, (13.443) is satisfied with

$$c_1 = \frac{\max\{m_M, k_M, 1\}}{\min\{m_m, k_m, 1\}} \quad (13.460)$$

where  $m_m = \lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{M})$  and  $k_m = \lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{K}_p)$ . Also from (13.459) it is clear that (13.444) is satisfied by

$$c_2 = \max\{m_M, k_M, 1\}\mu \quad (13.461)$$

### Step 3: Growth Rate Condition

Finally, it can be shown that the growth rate condition (13.445) on  $\mathbf{x}_1$ , Assumption A2 in Theorem 13.1, is satisfied by choosing  $\theta_1 = \text{constant}$  and  $\theta_2 = 0$  such that

$$\|\mathbf{G}(t, \mathbf{x})\| \leq \theta_1 (\|\mathbf{x}_2\|) \quad (13.462)$$

The details in this analysis is found in Loria *et al.* (2000).

## Experimental Results

The nonlinear controller (13.452) and passive observer of Section 11.4.1 have been tested experimentally using a model ship. In this experiment wind and wave forces were generated using a fan and a wave maker. More details regarding the experiment are found in Loria *et al.* (2000).

In the experiments the desired position and heading of the ship during DP were chosen as

$$x_d = 208 \text{ m} \quad (13.463)$$

$$y_d = 334 \text{ m} \quad (13.464)$$

$$\psi_d = -150 \text{ deg} \quad (13.465)$$

The experiment was carried out for a ship scale 1:70, but the results have been transformed to full scale. The development of the experiment is as follows:

1. During the first 350 seconds there are no environmental forces perturbing the ship.

*Comments:* From Figure 13.22 it is seen that the bias estimate  $\hat{b}$  and the WF estimate  $\hat{\eta}_w$  are both approximately zero, as expected, in the first 350 seconds. The nonzero values of  $\hat{b}$  are due to the water motion generated by the propellers. It is also seen that the regulation and estimation errors are very small during this phase; see upper plots in Figures 13.21 and 13.23.

2. After 350 seconds wind forces are generated by using a ducted fan directed approximately 30 degrees off the port side bow of the ship.

*Comments:* When turned on, the fan produces a step input disturbance to the system; notice the peaks in Figures 13.21 and 13.23. This step is an unrealistic situation (in full-scale applications, no abrupt changes in the bias occur). However, it can be generated in the laboratory to show the performance of the observer-based controller. The bias estimates  $\hat{b}$  from the observer are used in the output feedback control law to obtain perfect regulation, which verifies the separation principle (see Figure 13.23). Most of the wind force is compensated by the control input, and therefore the regulation errors converge to zero in 100–150 seconds; see the first three plots of Figure 13.21. However, since the wind force is a step, the observer needs some time for the bias estimate to converge to its true value, after which the controller compensates for the bias, hence keeping the ship almost still.

3. After 800 seconds the wave generator is turned on.

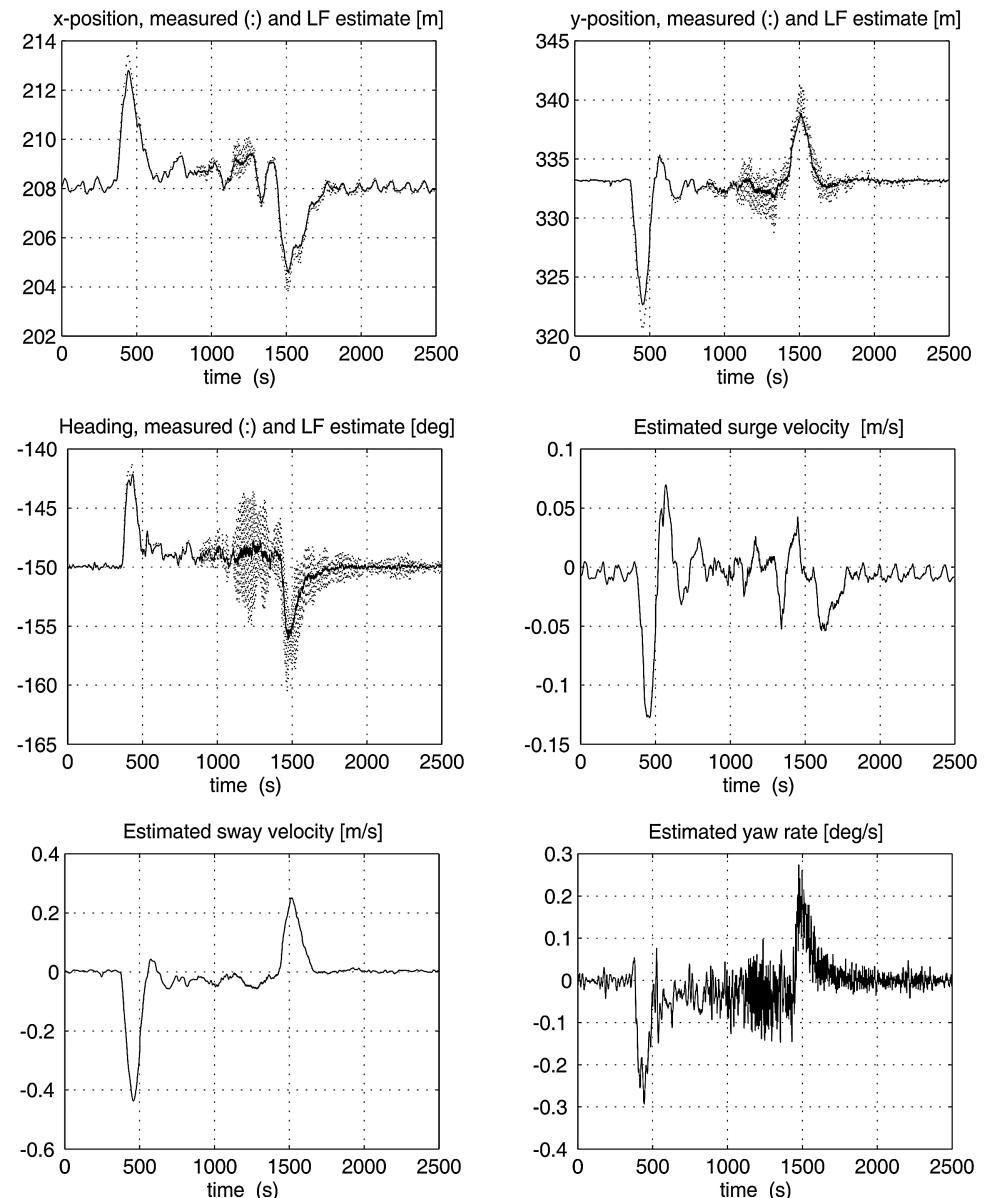
*Comments:* This results in an oscillatory WF motion  $\eta_w$  which builds up over time. The estimated wave frequency motion  $\hat{\eta}_w$  is shown in the upper plots of Figure 13.22. Their effect in the position measurements is shown in the upper plots of Figure 13.21. In order to avoid  $\hat{\eta}_w$  entering the feedback loop, this signal is filtered out from the position measurement. This results in smooth controls; see the bottom plots of Figure 13.22. The LF estimates are clearly shown in the upper plots of Figure 13.21.

4. After 1700 seconds both the wind and wave generators are turned off.

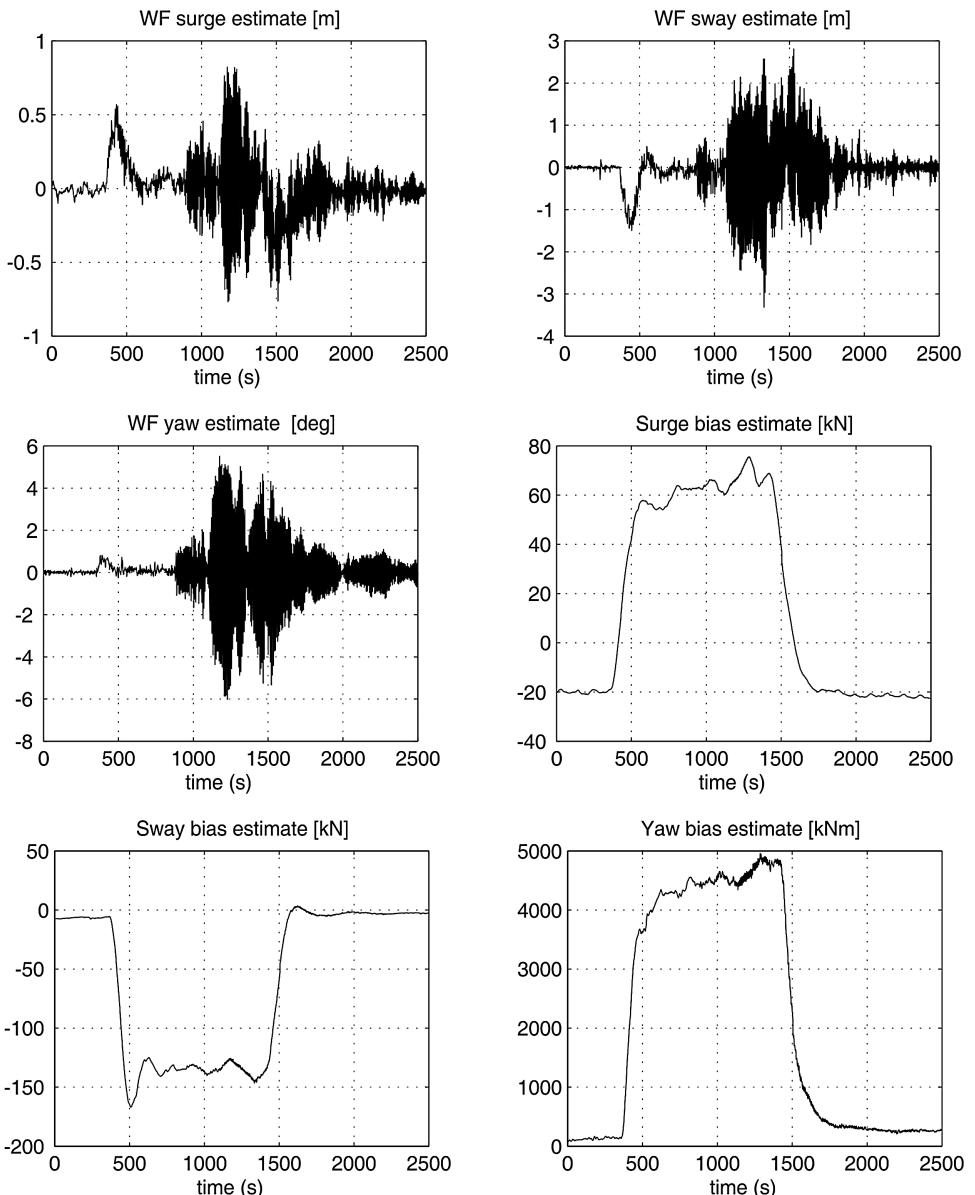
*Comments:* Turning off the fan produces a second step input disturbance while the wave-induced motion decays more slowly. It is seen from Figure 13.22 that the bias estimates drop to approximately their initial values in 100–150 seconds while the amplitudes of the WF motion estimates drop quite slowly. Again, almost perfect regulation to zero is obtained as soon as the bias estimates have converged to their true values. This clearly demonstrates the separation principle. In a full-scale implementation the wind force will build up quite slowly. Hence the step inputs do not constitute a problem.

### 13.3.10 Case Study: Weather Optimal Position Control for Ships and Floating Structures

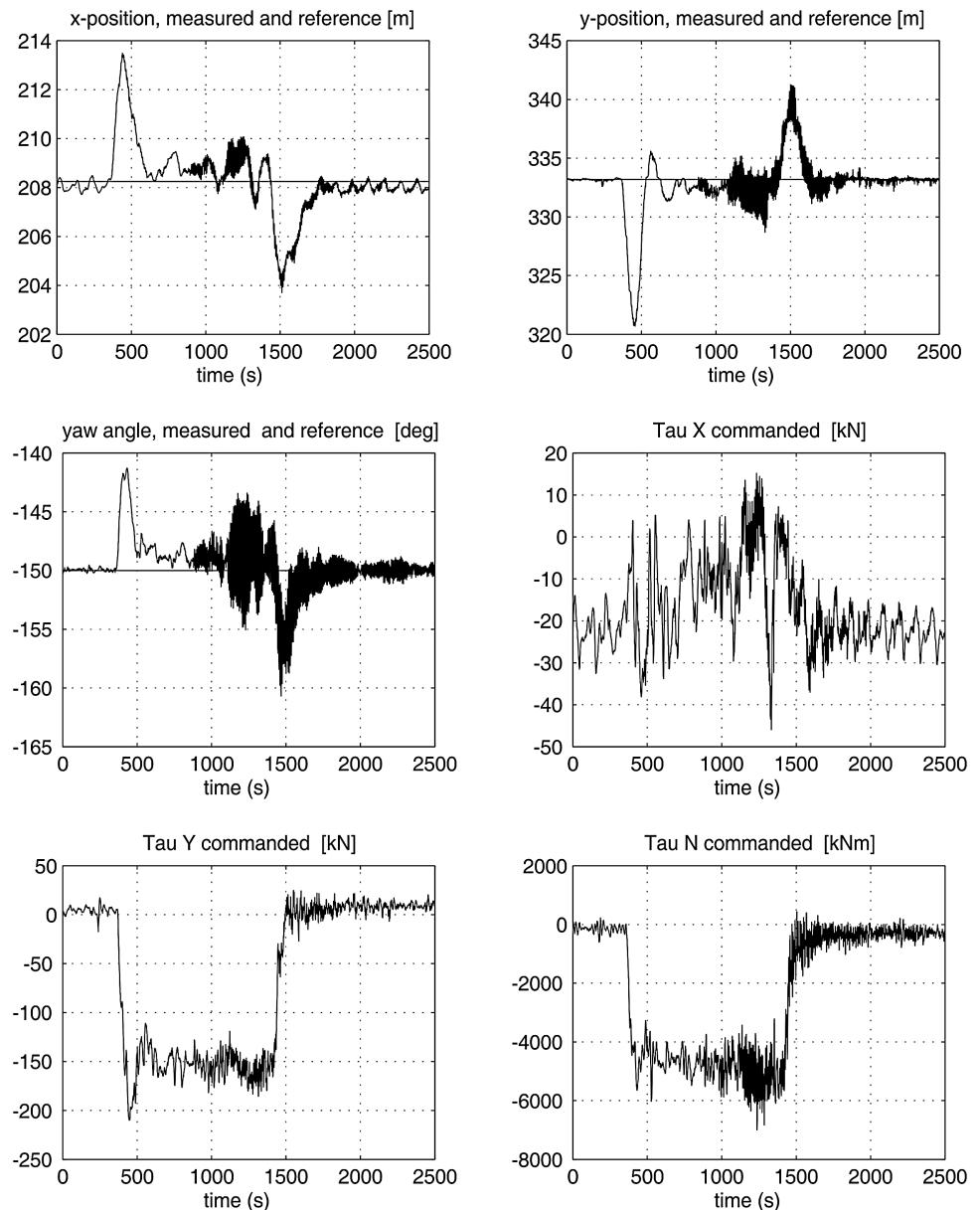
Conventional DP systems for ships and free-floating rigs are usually designed for stationkeeping by specifying a desired constant position ( $N_d, E_d$ ) and a desired constant heading angle  $\psi_d$ . In order to minimize the ship fuel consumption, the desired heading  $\psi_d$  should in many operations be chosen such that the yaw moment is zero. For vessels with port/starboard symmetry, this means that the mean environmental forces due to wind, waves and ocean currents act through the centerline of the vessel. Then the ship must be rotated until the yaw moment is zero.



**Figure 13.21** Plots 1–3 show the three components of the measurement vector  $y = [x + x_w, y + y_w, \psi + \psi_w]$  and the LF estimates. Plots 4–6 show the estimated LF velocity components  $\hat{v} = [\hat{u}, \hat{v}, \hat{r}]^\top$  versus time.



**Figure 13.22** Plots 1–3 show the estimated WF motion components  $\hat{\eta}_w = [\hat{x}_w, \hat{y}_w, \hat{\psi}_w]^\top$  while plots 4–6 show the bias estimates  $\hat{b} = [\hat{b}_1, \hat{b}_2, \hat{b}_3]^\top$  versus time.



**Figure 13.23** Plots 1–3 show the three components of the measured position  $\mathbf{y} = [x + x_w, y + y_w, \psi + \psi_w]^\top$  together with the desired position  $\mathbf{\eta}_d = [x_d, y_d, \psi_d]^\top$  while plots 4–6 are the control inputs  $\boldsymbol{\tau} = [\tau_1, \tau_2, \tau_3]^\top$  versus time.

Unfortunately, it is impossible to measure or compute the direction of the mean environmental force with sufficient accuracy. Hence, the desired heading  $\psi_d$  is usually taken to be the measurement of the mean wind direction, which can be easily measured. In practice, however, this can result in large offsets from the true mean direction of the total environmental force. The main reason for this is the unmeasured ocean current force component and waves that do not coincide with the wind direction. Hence, the DP system can be operated under highly nonoptimal conditions if fuel saving is the issue. A small offset in the optimal heading angle will result in a large use of thrust.

One popular method for computing the weather optimal heading  $\psi_d$  is to monitor the resulting thruster forces in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions. Hence, the bow of the ship can be turned in one direction until the thruster force in the  $y$  direction approaches zero. This method is appealing but the main catch in doing this is that the total resulting thruster forces in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions have to be computed since there are no sensors doing this job directly. The sensors only measure the angular speed and pitch angle of the propellers. Hence, the thrust for each propeller must be computed by using a model of the thruster characteristic, resulting in a fairly rough estimate of the total thruster force in each direction.

Another principle, proposed by Pinkster (1971) and Pinkster and Nienhuis (1986), is to control the  $x$  and  $y$  positions using a PID feedback controller, in addition to feedback from the yaw velocity, such that the vessel tends toward the optimal heading. This principle, however, requires that the rotation point of the vessel is located a certain distance forward of the center of gravity, or even fore of the bow, and it also puts restrictions on the thruster configuration and the number of thrusters installed.

This section describes the weather optimal position controller (WOPC) by Fossen and Strand (2001). The control objective is that the vessel heading should adjust automatically to the mean environmental forces (wind, waves and ocean currents) such that a minimum amount of energy is used in order to save fuel and reduce  $\text{NO}_x/\text{CO}_x$  emissions without using any environmental sensors. This is particularly useful for shuttle tankers and FPSOs, which can be located at the same position for a long time. Also DP-operated supply vessels that must keep their position for days in loading/off-loading operations have a great WOPC fuel-saving potential.

The ship can be exponentially stabilized on a circle arc with constant radius by letting the bow of the ship point toward the origin of the circle. In order to maintain a fixed position at the same time, a translatory circle center control law is designed. The circle center is translated such that the Cartesian position is constant, while the bow of the ship is automatically turned up against the mean environmental force to obtain weathervaning. This approach is motivated by a pendulum in the gravity field where gravity is the unmeasured quantity. The circular motion of the controlled ship, where the mean environmental force can be interpreted as an unknown force field, copies the dynamics of a pendulum in the gravity field (see Figure 13.24).

### 3 DOF Equations of Motion using Polar Coordinates

Consider a marine craft in 3 DOF:

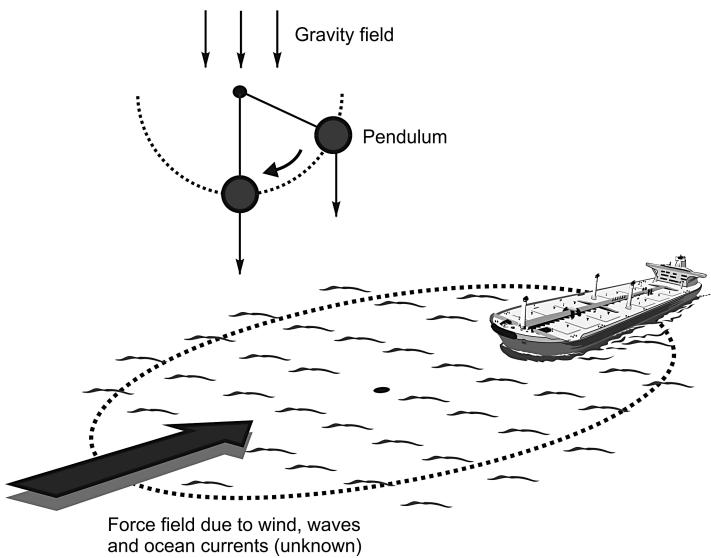
$$\dot{\eta} = \mathbf{R}(\psi)\mathbf{v} \quad (13.466)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\ddot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} = \boldsymbol{\tau} + \mathbf{w} \quad (13.467)$$

where the North-East positions ( $N, E$ ) and heading  $\psi$  are represented by  $\eta = [N, E, \psi]^\top$  and the body-fixed velocities are represented by  $\mathbf{v} = [u, v, r]^\top$ . It is assumed that  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top > 0$ ,  $\dot{\mathbf{M}} = \mathbf{0}$  and  $\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v}) > 0$ . Unmodeled external forces and moment due to wind, ocean currents and waves are lumped together into a body-fixed disturbance vector  $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{R}^3$  to be interpreted later.

The Cartesian coordinates ( $N, E$ ) are related to the *polar coordinates* by

$$N = N_0 + \rho \cos(\gamma), \quad E = E_0 + \rho \sin(\gamma) \quad (13.468)$$



**Figure 13.24** The principle of WOPC using the equivalence to a pendulum in the gravity field where gravity is the unmeasured quantity.

where  $(N_0, E_0)$  is the origin of a circle with radius  $\rho$  and polar angle  $\gamma$  given by

$$\rho = \sqrt{(N - N_0)^2 + (E - E_0)^2} \quad \gamma = \text{atan2}((E - E_0), (N - N_0)) \quad (13.469)$$

Time differentiation of (13.468) yields

$$\dot{N} = \dot{N}_0 + \dot{\rho} \cos(\gamma) - \rho \sin(\gamma)\dot{\gamma} \quad (13.470)$$

$$\dot{E} = \dot{E}_0 + \dot{\rho} \sin(\gamma) + \rho \cos(\gamma)\dot{\gamma} \quad (13.471)$$

Define the state vectors:

$$\mathbf{p}_0 := [N_0, E_0]^\top, \quad \mathbf{x} := [\rho, \gamma, \psi]^\top \quad (13.472)$$

From (13.470) and (13.471) a new kinematic relationship can be derived in terms of the vectors  $\mathbf{p}_0$  and  $\mathbf{x}$  as

$$\dot{\eta} = \mathbf{R}(\gamma)\mathbf{H}(\rho)\dot{\mathbf{x}} + \mathbf{L}\dot{\mathbf{p}}_0 \quad (13.473)$$

$$\mathbf{H}(\rho) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \rho & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{L} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.474)$$

From (13.473) the Cartesian kinematics (13.466) can be replaced by a differential equation for the polar coordinates:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{T}(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{T}(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\mathbf{L}\dot{\mathbf{p}}_0 \quad (13.475)$$

$$\mathbf{T}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{H}^{-1}(\rho) \underbrace{\mathbf{R}^\top(\gamma)\mathbf{R}(\psi)}_{\mathbf{R}^\top(\gamma-\psi)} \quad (13.476)$$

Note that the conversion between Cartesian and polar coordinates is only a local diffeomorphism, since the radius must be kept larger than a minimum value, that is  $\rho > \rho_{\min} > 0$ , in order to avoid the singular point  $\rho = 0$ .

### Marine Craft Model Transformation

The marine craft model (13.467) can be expressed in polar coordinates by using (13.475) and substituting

$$\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{T}^{-1}(\mathbf{x})\dot{\mathbf{x}} + \mathbf{R}^\top\mathbf{L}\dot{\mathbf{p}}_0 \quad (13.477)$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}} = \mathbf{T}^{-1}(\mathbf{x})\ddot{\mathbf{x}} + \dot{\mathbf{T}}^{-1}(\mathbf{x})\dot{\mathbf{x}} + \mathbf{R}^\top\mathbf{L}\ddot{\mathbf{p}}_0 + \dot{\mathbf{R}}^\top\mathbf{L}\dot{\mathbf{p}}_0 \quad (13.478)$$

such that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} + \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} &= \boldsymbol{\tau} + \mathbf{w} \\ \Updownarrow \rho > 0 \\ \mathbf{M}_x(\mathbf{x})\ddot{\mathbf{x}} + \mathbf{C}_x(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{x})\dot{\mathbf{x}} + \mathbf{D}_x(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{x})\dot{\mathbf{x}} &= \mathbf{T}^{-\top}[\mathbf{q}(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{x}, \dot{\mathbf{p}}_0, \ddot{\mathbf{p}}_0) + \boldsymbol{\tau} + \mathbf{w}] \end{aligned} \quad (13.479)$$

where

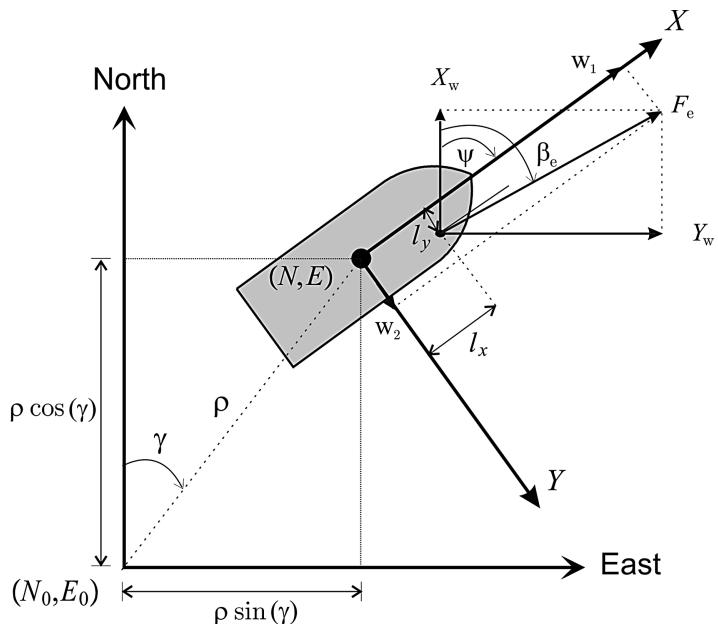
$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{M}_x(\mathbf{x}) &= \mathbf{T}^{-\top}(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{M}\mathbf{T}^{-1}(\mathbf{x}) \\ \mathbf{C}_x(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{x}) &= \mathbf{T}^{-\top}(\mathbf{x}) (\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) - \mathbf{M}\mathbf{T}^{-1}(\mathbf{x})\dot{\mathbf{T}}(\mathbf{x})) \mathbf{T}^{-1}(\mathbf{x}) \\ \mathbf{D}_x(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{x}) &= \mathbf{T}^{-\top}(\mathbf{x})\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{T}^{-1}(\mathbf{x}) \\ \mathbf{q}(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{x}, \dot{\mathbf{p}}_0, \ddot{\mathbf{p}}_0) &= -\mathbf{M}\mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\mathbf{L}\ddot{\mathbf{p}}_0 - \mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{R}}^\top(\psi)\mathbf{L}\dot{\mathbf{p}}_0 - [\mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})]\mathbf{R}^\top(\psi)\mathbf{L}\dot{\mathbf{p}}_0 \end{aligned}$$

Here  $\mathbf{M}_x(\mathbf{x})$ ,  $\mathbf{C}_x(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{x})$  and  $\mathbf{D}_x(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{x})$  can be shown to satisfy

$$\mathbf{M}_x(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{M}_x^\top(\mathbf{x}) > 0, \quad \mathbf{D}_x(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{x}) > 0, \quad \forall \mathbf{x}$$

The marine craft dynamics also satisfy the skew-symmetric property:

$$\mathbf{z}^\top (\dot{\mathbf{M}}_x - 2\mathbf{C}_x) \mathbf{z} = 0, \quad \forall \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{x} \quad (13.480)$$



**Figure 13.25** Environmental force  $F_e$  decomposed into components  $w_1$  and  $w_2$ .

### Weather Optimal Control Objectives

The steady-state LF motion of the craft and also the craft's equilibrium position depend on the *unknown* environmental forces acting on the hull. Let the environmental forces due to *wind*, *waves* and *ocean currents* be represented by:

- A slowly varying mean force  $F_e$  that attacks the craft at a point  $(l_x, l_y)$  in body-fixed coordinates.
- A slowly varying mean direction  $\beta_e$  relative to the Earth-fixed frame (see Figure 13.25).

The WF motion is assumed to be filtered out of the measurements by using a wave filter (see Chapter 11). Since there are no sensors that can be used to measure  $(F_e, \beta_e)$  and  $(l_x, l_y)$  with sufficient accuracy, it is impossible to use feedforward from the environmental forces. This leads to the following assumptions:

**A1:** *The unknown mean environmental force  $F_e$  and its direction  $\beta_e$  are assumed to be constant or at least slowly varying.*

**A2:** *The unknown attack point  $(l_x, l_y)$  is constant for each constant  $F_e$ .*

**Discussion:** *These are good assumptions since the motion control system is only supposed to counteract the slowly varying motion components of the environmental forces.*

From Figure 13.25 the body-fixed environmental force vector  $\mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{R}^3$  can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} w_1(\psi) \\ w_2(\psi) \\ w_3(\psi) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} F_e \cos(\beta_e - \psi) \\ F_e \sin(\beta_e - \psi) \\ l_x F_e \sin(\beta_e - \psi) - l_y F_e \cos(\beta_e - \psi) \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.481)$$

Notice that the environmental forces vary with the heading angle  $\psi$  of the craft. Consequently,

$$F_e = \sqrt{w_1^2 + w_2^2}, \quad \beta_e = \psi + \tan^{-1}(w_2/w_1) \quad (13.482)$$

The environmental forces  $X_w$  and  $Y_w$  with attack point  $(l_x(\psi), l_y(\psi))$  are shown in Figure 13.25. Note that the attack point will change with the yaw angle  $\psi$ . This relationship will be a complicated function of hull and superstructure geometries. However, the weather optimal control objectives can be satisfied by using the following definitions (Fossen and Strand, 2001):

### **Definition 13.3 (Weather Optimal Heading)**

The weather optimal heading angle  $\psi_{\text{opt}}$  is given by the equilibrium state where the yaw moment  $w_3(\psi_{\text{opt}}) = 0$  at the same time as the bow of the craft is turned up against weather (mean environmental forces); that is  $w_2(\psi_{\text{opt}}) = 0$ . This implies that  $\psi_{\text{opt}} = \beta_e$ ,  $l_x(\psi_{\text{opt}}) = \text{constant}$  and  $l_y(\psi_{\text{opt}}) = 0$  such that

$$\mathbf{w}(\psi_{\text{opt}}) = \begin{bmatrix} w_1(\psi_{\text{opt}}) \\ w_2(\psi_{\text{opt}}) \\ w_3(\psi_{\text{opt}}) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -F_e \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence, the mean environmental force attacks the craft in the bow, which has the minimum drag coefficient for water and wind loads.

### **Definition 13.4 (Weather Optimal Positioning)**

Weather optimal positioning (stationkeeping) is defined as the equilibrium state where  $\psi_{\text{opt}}$  satisfies

$$w_1(\psi_{\text{opt}}) = -F_e, \quad w_2(\psi_{\text{opt}}) = w_3(\psi_{\text{opt}}) = l_y(\psi_{\text{opt}}) = 0 \quad (13.483)$$

and the position  $(N, E) = (N_d, E_d)$  is kept constant.

These definitions motivate the following two control objectives:

- **Weather Optimal Heading Control (WOHC):** This is obtained by restricting the craft's movement to a circle with constant radius  $\rho = \rho_d$  and at the same time force the craft's bow to point towards the center of the circle until the weather optimal heading angle  $\psi = \psi_{\text{opt}}$  is reached (see Figure 13.26). An analogy to this is a pendulum in a gravity field (see Figure 13.24). The position  $(N, E) = (N_0 + \rho \cos(\gamma), E_0 + \rho \sin(\gamma))$  will vary until the weather optimal heading angle is reached. This is obtained by specifying the control objective in polar coordinates according to

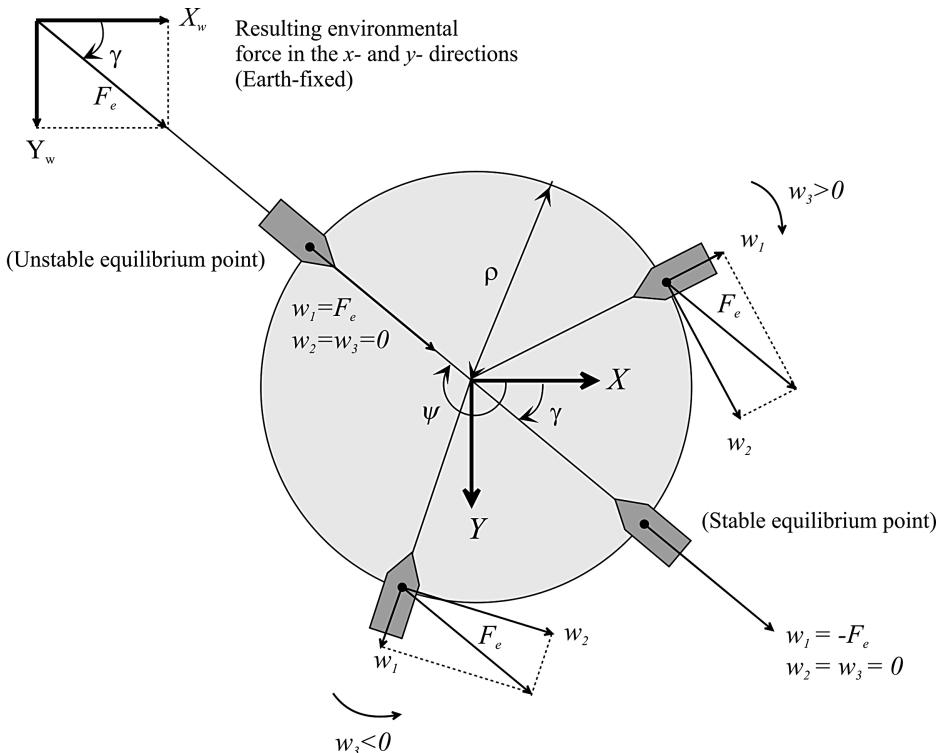
$$\rho_d = \text{constant}, \quad \dot{\gamma}_d = 0, \quad \psi_d = \pi + \gamma \quad (13.484)$$

**Discussion:** The requirement  $\rho_d = \text{constant}$  implies that the craft follows a circular arc with a constant radius. The second requirement  $\dot{\gamma}_d = 0$  implies that the tangential speed  $\rho\dot{\gamma}$  is kept small while the last requirement  $\psi_d = \pi + \gamma$  ensures that the craft's bow points toward the center of the circle.

- **Weather Optimal Positioning Control (WOPC):** In order to maintain a fixed Earth-fixed position  $(N, E) = (N_d, E_d)$ , the circle center  $\mathbf{p}_0 = [N_0, E_0]^\top$  must be moved simultaneously as control objective O1 is satisfied. This is referred to as *translatory circle center control*.

## Nonlinear and Adaptive Control Design

The WOPC positioning controller is derived by using the polar coordinate representation. The backstepping design methodology (Krstic *et al.*, 1995) with extension to integral control (Fossen *et al.*, 2001) is



**Figure 13.26** Stable and unstable equilibrium points for WOPC.

used to derive the feedback controller (see Section 13.3). Notice that conventional PID control can be used as well. It is assumed that all states can be measured.

The WOPC controller will be derived in three successive steps:

1. *Nonlinear backstepping (PD control)*: The ship is forced to move along a circular arc with desired radius  $\rho_d$ , with minimum tangential velocity  $\rho\dot{\gamma}$  and desired heading  $\psi_d$ .
2. *Adaptive backstepping (PID control)*: This is necessary to compensate for the unknown environmental force  $F_e$ .
3. *Translational control of the circle center*: The circle center  $(N_0, E_0)$  is translated such that the ship maintains a constant position  $(N_d, E_d)$  even though it is moving along a virtual circular arc. Hence, the captain of the ship will only notice that the ship is rotating a yaw angle  $\psi$  about a constant position  $(N_d, E_d)$  until the weather optimal heading  $\psi_{opt}$  is reached.

### Nonlinear Backstepping (PD Control)

A general positioning controller is derived by using vectorial backstepping (Fossen and Grøvlen, 1998). The tracking objective is specified in polar coordinates using a smooth reference trajectory  $\mathbf{x}_d = [\rho_d, \gamma_d, \psi_d]^\top \in C^3$  where

$$\mathbf{x}_d, \dot{\mathbf{x}}_d, \ddot{\mathbf{x}}_d \in \mathcal{L}_\infty$$

Since the transformed system (13.479) is of order 2, backstepping is performed in two *vectorial steps*, resulting in a nonlinear PD control law. First, a *virtual reference trajectory* is defined as:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}}_r := \dot{\mathbf{x}}_d - \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \mathbf{z}_1 \quad (13.485)$$

where  $\mathbf{z}_1 = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_d$  is the tracking error and  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda} > 0$  is a diagonal design matrix. Furthermore, let  $\mathbf{z}_2$  denote a measure of tracking defined according to

$$\mathbf{z}_2 := \dot{\mathbf{x}} - \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r = \dot{\mathbf{z}}_1 + \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \mathbf{z}_1 \quad (13.486)$$

From (13.486), the following expressions are obtained:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{z}_2 + \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r, \quad \ddot{\mathbf{x}} = \dot{\mathbf{z}}_2 + \ddot{\mathbf{x}}_r \quad (13.487)$$

This implies that the marine craft model (13.479) can be expressed in terms of  $\mathbf{z}_2$ ,  $\dot{\mathbf{x}}_r$  and  $\ddot{\mathbf{x}}_r$  as

$$\mathbf{M}_x \dot{\mathbf{z}}_2 + \mathbf{C}_x \mathbf{z}_2 + \mathbf{D}_x \mathbf{z}_2 = \mathbf{T}^{-\top} \boldsymbol{\tau} + \mathbf{T}^{-\top} \mathbf{q}(\cdot) - \mathbf{M}_x \ddot{\mathbf{x}}_r - \mathbf{C}_x \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r - \mathbf{D}_x \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r + \mathbf{T}^{-\top} \mathbf{w} \quad (13.488)$$

**Step 1:** Let  $\mathbf{z}_1$  be the first error variable, which from (13.486) has the dynamics

$$\dot{\mathbf{z}}_1 = -\boldsymbol{\Lambda} \mathbf{z}_1 + \mathbf{z}_2 \quad (13.489)$$

A CLF for the first step is

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{z}_1^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{z}_1 \quad (13.490)$$

$$\dot{V}_1 = -\mathbf{z}_1^\top \mathbf{K}_p \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \mathbf{z}_1 + \mathbf{z}_1^\top \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{z}_2 \quad (13.491)$$

where  $\mathbf{K}_p = \mathbf{K}_p^\top > 0$  is a constant design matrix.

**Step 2:** In the second step the CLF is motivated by the “pseudo-kinetic energy”:

$$V_2 = V_1 + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{z}_2^\top \mathbf{M}_x \mathbf{z}_2, \quad \mathbf{M}_x = \mathbf{M}_x^\top > 0 \quad (13.492)$$

Time differentiation of  $V_2$  along the trajectories of  $\mathbf{z}_1$  and  $\mathbf{z}_2$  gives

$$\dot{V}_2 = \dot{V}_1 + \mathbf{z}_2^\top \mathbf{M}_x \dot{\mathbf{z}}_2 + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{z}_2^\top \dot{\mathbf{M}}_x \mathbf{z}_2 \quad (13.493)$$

which by substitution of (13.491) and (13.488) gives

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}_2 = & -\mathbf{z}_1^\top \mathbf{K}_p \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \mathbf{z}_1 + \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{z}_2^\top (\dot{\mathbf{M}}_x - 2\mathbf{C}_x) \mathbf{z}_2 - \mathbf{z}_2^\top \mathbf{D}_x \mathbf{z}_2 + \mathbf{z}_2^\top \mathbf{T}^{-\top} \mathbf{w} \\ & + \mathbf{z}_2^\top (\mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{z}_1 + \mathbf{T}^{-\top} \boldsymbol{\tau} + \mathbf{T}^{-\top} \mathbf{q}(\cdot) - \mathbf{M}_x \ddot{\mathbf{x}}_r - \mathbf{C}_x \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r - \mathbf{D}_x \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r) \end{aligned} \quad (13.494)$$

By using the property (13.480) and choosing the nonlinear PD control law as

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{T}^\top (\mathbf{M}_x \ddot{\mathbf{x}}_r + \mathbf{C}_x \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r + \mathbf{D}_x \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r - \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{z}_1 - \mathbf{K}_d \mathbf{z}_2) - \mathbf{q}(\cdot) \quad (13.495)$$

where  $\mathbf{K}_d > 0$  is a strictly positive design matrix, it is seen that

$$\dot{V}_2 = -\mathbf{z}_1^\top \mathbf{K}_p \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \mathbf{z}_1 - \mathbf{z}_2^\top (\mathbf{K}_d + \mathbf{D}_x) \mathbf{z}_2 + \mathbf{z}_2^\top \mathbf{T}^{-\top} \mathbf{w} \quad (13.496)$$

Notice that the dissipative term  $\mathbf{z}_2^\top \mathbf{D}_x \mathbf{z}_2 > 0, \forall \mathbf{z}_2 \neq \mathbf{0}$  is exploited in the design as it appears in the expression for  $\dot{V}_2$ . With the control law (13.495) the closed-loop dynamics becomes

$$\mathbf{M}_x \dot{\mathbf{z}}_2 + (\mathbf{C}_x + \mathbf{D}_x + \mathbf{K}_d) \mathbf{z}_2 + \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{z}_1 = \mathbf{T}^{-\top} \mathbf{w} \quad (13.497)$$

**Error dynamics:** The error dynamics of the resulting system becomes *nonautonomous* since

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{K}_p & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{M}_x \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{\mathbf{z}}_1 \\ \dot{\mathbf{z}}_2 \end{bmatrix} &= - \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{K}_p \boldsymbol{\Lambda} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{C}_x + \mathbf{D}_x + \mathbf{K}_d \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{z}_1 \\ \mathbf{z}_2 \end{bmatrix} \\ &\quad + \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{K}_p \\ -\mathbf{K}_p & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{z}_1 \\ \mathbf{z}_2 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 1} \\ \mathbf{T}^{-\top} \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{w} \\ &\Downarrow \\ \mathcal{M}(\mathbf{x}) \dot{\mathbf{z}} &= -\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) \mathbf{z} + \mathcal{S} \mathbf{z} + \bar{\mathcal{B}}(\mathbf{x}) \mathbf{w} \end{aligned} \quad (13.498)$$

where the different matrices are defined as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{M}^T(\mathbf{x}) &= \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{K}_p & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{M}_x(\mathbf{x}) \end{bmatrix} \\ \mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) &= \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{K}_p \boldsymbol{\Lambda} & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{C}_x(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{D}_x(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{K}_d \end{bmatrix} > 0 \\ \mathcal{S} = -\mathcal{S}^T &= \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} & \mathbf{K}_p \\ -\mathbf{K}_p & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \bar{\mathcal{B}}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 1} \\ \mathbf{T}^{-\top}(\mathbf{x}) \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

In the absence of disturbances,  $\mathbf{w} \equiv \mathbf{0}$ , the origin  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{0}$  is uniformly locally exponentially stable (ULES) according to Lyapunov. Global results cannot be achieved due to the local diffeomorphism between the Cartesian and polar coordinates; that is the transformation matrix  $\mathbf{T}(\mathbf{x})$  is singular for  $\rho = 0$ .

With disturbances  $\mathbf{w} \neq \mathbf{0}$ , the closed-loop system is input-to-state stable (ISS). In the next section, it is shown how adaptive backstepping (backstepping with integral action) can be used to obtain ULES for the case of a nonzero disturbance vector  $\mathbf{w} \neq \mathbf{0}$ .

### Adaptive Backstepping (PID Control)

Since the mean disturbance  $\mathbf{w}$  is nonzero this will result in a steady-state offset when using the PD controller from the previous section. The craft is, however, restricted to move along a circular arc with  $\mathbf{w}$  as a force field. Therefore there will be a stable and an unstable equilibrium point on the circle arc (similar to a pendulum in the gravity field); see Figure 13.24. The stable equilibrium point is given by

$$\mathbf{w} = \phi F_e = [-1, 0, 0]^\top F_e \quad (13.499)$$

Since the disturbance  $F_e$  is assumed to be slowly varying, adaptive backstepping can be applied to obtain an integral effect in the system. Thus, in the analysis it will be assumed that  $\dot{F}_e = 0$ . Let the estimate of  $F_e$  be denoted as  $\hat{F}_e$  and  $\tilde{F}_e = \hat{F}_e - F_e$ . An additional step in the derivation of the backstepping control law must be performed in order to obtain an adaptive update law for  $\hat{F}_e$ .

**Step 3:** The adaptive update law is found by adding the square parameter estimation error to  $V_2$ . Consequently,

$$V_3 = V_2 + \frac{1}{2\sigma} \tilde{F}_e^2, \quad \sigma > 0 \quad (13.500)$$

$$\dot{V}_3 = \dot{V}_2 + \frac{1}{\sigma} \dot{\tilde{F}}_e \tilde{F}_e \quad (13.501)$$

The nonlinear control law (13.495) is modified to

$$\tau = \mathbf{T}^\top (\mathbf{M}_x \ddot{\mathbf{x}}_r + \mathbf{C}_x \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r + \mathbf{D}_x \mathbf{x}_r - \mathbf{K}_p z_1 - \mathbf{K}_d z_2) - \mathbf{q}(\cdot) - \boldsymbol{\phi} \hat{F}_e \quad (13.502)$$

where the last term  $\boldsymbol{\phi} \hat{F}_e$  provides integral action. Hence, the  $z_2$  dynamics becomes

$$\mathbf{M}_x \dot{z}_2 + (\mathbf{C}_x + \mathbf{D}_x + \mathbf{K}_d) z_2 + \mathbf{K}_p z_1 = -\mathbf{T}^{-\top} \boldsymbol{\phi} \hat{F}_e \quad (13.503)$$

This implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}_3 &= -z_1^\top \mathbf{K}_p \Lambda z_1 - z_2^\top (\mathbf{K}_d + \mathbf{D}_x) z_2 - z_2^\top \mathbf{T}^{-\top} \boldsymbol{\phi} \hat{F}_e + \frac{1}{\sigma} \dot{\tilde{F}}_e \tilde{F}_e \\ &= -z_1^\top \mathbf{K}_p \Lambda z_1 - z_2^\top (\mathbf{K}_d + \mathbf{D}_x) z_2 + \tilde{F}_e (-\boldsymbol{\phi}^\top \mathbf{T}^{-1} z_2 + \frac{1}{\sigma} \dot{\tilde{F}}_e) \end{aligned} \quad (13.504)$$

The adaptive law  $\dot{\tilde{F}}_e = \dot{\tilde{F}}_e$  is chosen as

$$\dot{\tilde{F}}_e = \sigma \boldsymbol{\phi}^\top \mathbf{T}^{-1} z_2, \quad \sigma > 0 \quad (13.505)$$

such that

$$\dot{V}_3 = -z_1^\top \mathbf{K}_p \Lambda z_1 - z_2^\top (\mathbf{K}_d + \mathbf{D}_x) z_2 \leq 0 \quad (13.506)$$

## Error Dynamics

The nonautonomous error dynamics for the adaptive backstepping controller can be written

$$\mathcal{M}(\mathbf{x}) \dot{\mathbf{z}} = [-\mathcal{K}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) + \mathcal{S}] \mathbf{z} + \mathcal{B}(\mathbf{x}) \tilde{F}_e \quad (13.507)$$

$$\dot{\tilde{F}}_e = -\sigma \mathcal{B}^\top(\mathbf{x}) \mathbf{z} \quad (13.508)$$

where

$$\mathcal{B}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 1} \\ -\mathbf{T}^{-\top}(\mathbf{x}) \boldsymbol{\phi} \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.509)$$

In order to satisfy *control objective O1*, the controller gains must be chosen according to

$$\mathbf{K}_p = \begin{bmatrix} k_{p1} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & k_{p3} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{K}_d = \begin{bmatrix} k_{d1} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & k_{d2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & k_{d3} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \boldsymbol{\Lambda} = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda_3 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.510)$$

Notice that  $k_{p2} = \lambda_2 = 0$ . This implies that the craft is free to move along the circular arc with tangential velocity  $\rho\dot{\psi}$ . The gain  $k_{d2} > 0$  is used to increase the tangential damping (D control) while the radius  $\rho$  and heading  $\psi$  are stabilized by using PID control.

### Semi-Definite Matrices

Since the controller gains  $k_{p2}$  and  $\lambda_2$  are chosen to be zero, the matrices

$$\mathbf{K}_p \geq 0, \quad \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \geq 0 \quad (13.511)$$

are only positive semi-definite. Hence,  $V_3$  is positive semi-definite. Uniform local asymptotic stability (ULAS) of the equilibrium  $(z, \tilde{F}_e) = (\mathbf{0}, 0)$  can, however, be proven since the error dynamics  $(z_1, z_2)$  is ISS. Consider the reduced order system  $(z_{1r}, z_2)$  given by

$$z_{1r} = \mathbf{E}z_1, \quad \mathbf{E} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.512)$$

This implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{z}_{1r} &= -\mathbf{E}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}z_1 + \mathbf{E}z_2 \\ &= -(\mathbf{E}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}\mathbf{E}^\top)z_{1r} + \mathbf{E}z_2 \end{aligned} \quad (13.513)$$

Notice that the last step is possible since the diagonal matrices  $\boldsymbol{\Lambda} = \text{diag}\{\lambda_1, 0, \lambda_3\}$  satisfy

$$\boldsymbol{\Lambda}\mathbf{E}^\top z_{1r} = \boldsymbol{\Lambda}z_1 \quad (13.514)$$

Hence, the error dynamics (13.507)–(13.508) can be transformed to

$$\mathcal{M}_r(\mathbf{x})\dot{z}_r = [-\mathcal{K}_r(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) + \mathcal{S}_r]z_r + \mathcal{B}_r(\mathbf{x})\tilde{F}_e \quad (13.515)$$

$$\dot{\tilde{F}}_e = -\sigma\mathcal{B}_r^\top(\mathbf{x})z_r \quad (13.516)$$

where  $z_r = [z_{1r}^\top, z_2^\top]^\top$  and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}_r(\mathbf{x}) = \mathcal{M}_r^\top(\mathbf{x}) &= \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{E}\mathbf{K}_p\mathbf{E}^\top & \mathbf{0}_{2 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 2} & \mathbf{M}_x(\mathbf{x}) \end{bmatrix} \\ \mathcal{K}_r(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) &= \begin{bmatrix} (\mathbf{E}\mathbf{K}_p\mathbf{E}^\top)(\mathbf{E}\boldsymbol{\Lambda}\mathbf{E}^\top) & \mathbf{0}_{2 \times 3} \\ \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 2} & \mathbf{C}_x(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{D}_x(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{K}_d \end{bmatrix} > 0 \\ \mathcal{S}_r &= -\mathcal{S}_r^\top = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{2 \times 2} & \mathbf{E}\mathbf{K}_p \\ -\mathbf{K}_p\mathbf{E}^\top & \mathbf{0}_{3 \times 3} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathcal{B}_r(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0}_{2 \times 1} \\ \mathbf{T}^{-\top}(\mathbf{x})\boldsymbol{\phi} \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

where the fact that  $\mathbf{K}_p\mathbf{E}^\top z_{1r} = \mathbf{K}_p z_1$  for  $\mathbf{K}_p = \text{diag}\{k_{p1}, 0, k_{p3}\}$  has been applied.

### Nonautonomous Lyapunov Analysis

Even though the Lyapunov function  $V_3$  corresponding to the states  $(z_1, z_2)$  is only positive semi-definite (since  $\mathbf{K}_p$  is positive semi-definite) the Lyapunov function  $V_{3r}$  corresponding to the new output  $(z_{1r}, z_2)$  is positive definite. Using the fact that the closed-loop system governed by  $(z_1, z_2)$  is ISS, asymptotic tracking is guaranteed by

$$V_{3r} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ z_{1r}^\top (\mathbf{E} \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{E}^\top) z_{1r} + z_2^\top \mathbf{M}_x z_2 + \frac{1}{\sigma} \tilde{F}_e^2 \right] > 0 \quad (13.517)$$

$$\dot{V}_{3r} = -z_{1r}^\top (\mathbf{E} \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{E}^\top) (\mathbf{E} \Lambda \mathbf{E}^\top) z_{1r} - z_2^\top (\mathbf{K}_d + \mathbf{D}_x) z_2 \leq 0 \quad (13.518)$$

where  $\mathbf{E} \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{E}^\top > 0$  and  $\mathbf{E} \Lambda \mathbf{E}^\top > 0$ . Hence,  $z_{1r}, z_2, \tilde{F}_e \in \mathcal{L}_\infty$ . Notice that  $\dot{V}_3$  is only negative semi-definite since a negative term proportional to  $-\tilde{F}_e^2$  is missing in the expression for  $\dot{V}_3$ . ULES of the equilibrium point  $(z_{1r}, z_2, \tilde{F}_e) = (\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{0}, 0)$  follows by using the stability theorem of Fossen *et al.* (2001) for nonlinear *nonautonomous* systems (see Appendix A.2.4). Since, the closed-loop system  $(z_1, z_2)$  is ISS it is sufficient to consider the reduced order system  $(z_{1r}, z_2)$  with output  $z_{1r} = \mathbf{E} z_1$  in the stability analysis. According to Appendix A.2.4, we can choose  $\mathbf{x}_1 = [z_{1r}^\top, z_2^\top]^\top$ ,  $\mathbf{x}_2 = \tilde{F}_e$ ,  $\mathbf{P} = \sigma$  and  $W(\mathbf{x}_1, t) = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{x}_1^\top \mathbf{x}_1$ . Then the equilibrium point  $(z_{1r}, z_2, \tilde{F}_e) = (\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{0}, 0)$  of the nonlinear error system (13.507)–(13.508) is ULES since

$$\text{rank}\{(\mathcal{M}_r^{-1}(\mathbf{x}) \mathcal{B}_r(\mathbf{x}))^\top (\mathcal{M}_r^{-1}(\mathbf{x}) \mathcal{B}_r(\mathbf{x}))\} = 1, \forall \mathbf{x}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \max \{\|\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{x}_1, t)\|, \|\mathbf{x}_1\|\} &= \max \left\{ \left\| \mathcal{M}_r^{-1}(\mathbf{x}) [-\mathcal{K}_r(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}) + \mathcal{S}_r] \mathbf{x}_1 \right\|, \|\mathbf{x}_1\| \right\} \\ &\leq \rho_1(\|\mathbf{x}_1\|) \|\mathbf{x}_1\| \\ \|\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{x}, t)\| &= \left\| \mathcal{M}_r^{-1}(\mathbf{x}) \mathcal{B}_r(\mathbf{x}) \right\| \leq \rho_2(\|\mathbf{x}_1\|) \\ \max \left\{ \left\| \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{x}, t)}{\partial t} \right\|, \left\| \frac{\partial \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{x}, t)}{\partial \mathbf{x}_i} \right\| \right\} &= \max \left\{ \left\| \frac{\partial \mathcal{M}_r^{-1}(\mathbf{x}) \mathcal{B}_r(\mathbf{x})}{\partial \mathbf{x}_i} \right\| \right\} \leq \rho_3(\|\mathbf{x}_1\|) \end{aligned}$$

### Translational Control of the Circle Center

The adaptive backstepping controller satisfies a control objective O1, that is weather optimal heading control. Weather optimal position control (control objective O2) can be satisfied by moving the circle center  $\mathbf{p}_0 = [N_0, E_0]^\top$  online such that the craft maintains a constant position  $\mathbf{p} = [N, E]^\top$ .

In order to meet the fixed position control objective, an update law for the circle center  $\mathbf{p}_0$  must be derived. The Cartesian Earth-fixed position of the craft is given by

$$\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{L}^\top \boldsymbol{\eta} \quad (13.519)$$

where  $\mathbf{L}$  is defined in (13.474). Let  $\tilde{\mathbf{p}} = \mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}_d$  denote the corresponding deviation from the desired position vector  $\mathbf{p}_d = [N_d, E_d]^\top$ . The desired position can either be constant (regulation) or a smooth time-varying reference trajectory. The control law for translation of the circle center is derived by considering

the following CLF:

$$V_p = \frac{1}{2} \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^\top \tilde{\mathbf{p}} \quad (13.520)$$

$$\dot{V}_p = \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^\top (\dot{\mathbf{p}} - \dot{\mathbf{p}}_d) = \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^\top (\mathbf{L}^\top \dot{\mathbf{\eta}} - \dot{\mathbf{p}}_d) \quad (13.521)$$

By using (13.473),  $\mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{L} = \mathbf{I}_{2 \times 2}$  and  $\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{z}_2 + \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r$  it is seen that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}_p &= \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^\top [\mathbf{L}^\top (\mathbf{R}(\gamma) \mathbf{H}(\rho) \dot{\mathbf{x}} + \mathbf{L} \dot{\mathbf{p}}_0) - \dot{\mathbf{p}}_d] \\ &= \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^\top (\dot{\mathbf{p}}_0 - \dot{\mathbf{p}}_d + \mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{R}(\gamma) \mathbf{H}(\rho) \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r) + \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^\top \mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{R}(\gamma) \mathbf{H}(\rho) \mathbf{z}_2 \end{aligned} \quad (13.522)$$

Now, by choosing the circle center update law as

$$\dot{\mathbf{p}}_0 = \dot{\mathbf{p}}_d - \mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{R}(\gamma) \mathbf{H}(\rho) \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r - k_0 \tilde{\mathbf{p}} \quad (13.523)$$

where  $k_0 > 0$ , it is seen that

$$\dot{V}_p = -k_0 \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^\top \tilde{\mathbf{p}} + \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^\top \mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{R}(\gamma) \mathbf{H}(\rho) \mathbf{z}_2 \quad (13.524)$$

In (13.524) a cross-term in  $\tilde{\mathbf{p}}$  and  $\mathbf{z}_2$  is noted. In order to guarantee that the time derivative of the total system  $V_{\text{wopc}} = V_{3r} + V_p$  is negative semi-definite, the weather optimal controller (13.502) must be modified such that the cross-term in (13.524) is canceled.

### Weather Optimal Position Control (WOPC)

The cross-terms involving  $\tilde{\mathbf{p}}$  and  $\mathbf{z}_2$  in  $\dot{V}_p$  can be removed by modifying the nonlinear controller (13.502) to

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{T}^\top (\mathbf{M}_x \ddot{\mathbf{x}}_r + \mathbf{C}_x \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r + \mathbf{D}_x \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r - \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{z}_1 - \mathbf{K}_d \mathbf{z}_2) - \mathbf{q}(\cdot) - \boldsymbol{\phi} \hat{F}_e - \mathbf{T}^\top \mathbf{H}^\top(\rho) \mathbf{R}^\top(\gamma) \mathbf{L} \tilde{\mathbf{p}} \quad (13.525)$$

The last term in  $\boldsymbol{\tau}$  implies that

$$\dot{V}_{3r} = -\mathbf{z}_{1r}^\top (\mathbf{E} \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{E}^\top) (\mathbf{E} \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \mathbf{E}^\top) \mathbf{z}_{1r} - \mathbf{z}_2^\top (\mathbf{K}_d + \mathbf{D}_x) \mathbf{z}_2 - \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^\top \mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{R}(\gamma) \mathbf{H}(\rho) \mathbf{z}_2 \quad (13.526)$$

Consider

$$V_{\text{wopc}} = V_{3r} + V_p \quad (13.527)$$

$$\dot{V}_{\text{wopc}} = -\mathbf{z}_{1r}^\top (\mathbf{E} \mathbf{K}_p \mathbf{E}^\top) (\mathbf{E} \boldsymbol{\Lambda} \mathbf{E}^\top) \mathbf{z}_{1r} - \mathbf{z}_2^\top (\mathbf{K}_d + \mathbf{D}_x) \mathbf{z}_2 - k_0 \tilde{\mathbf{p}}^\top \tilde{\mathbf{p}} \quad (13.528)$$

and therefore the equilibrium point  $(\mathbf{z}_{1r}, \mathbf{z}_2, \hat{F}_e, \tilde{\mathbf{p}}) = (\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{0}, 0, \mathbf{0})$  is ULES. The term  $\dot{\mathbf{p}}_0$  is needed in the expression for  $\mathbf{q}(\cdot)$ . This term is computed from (13.523) as

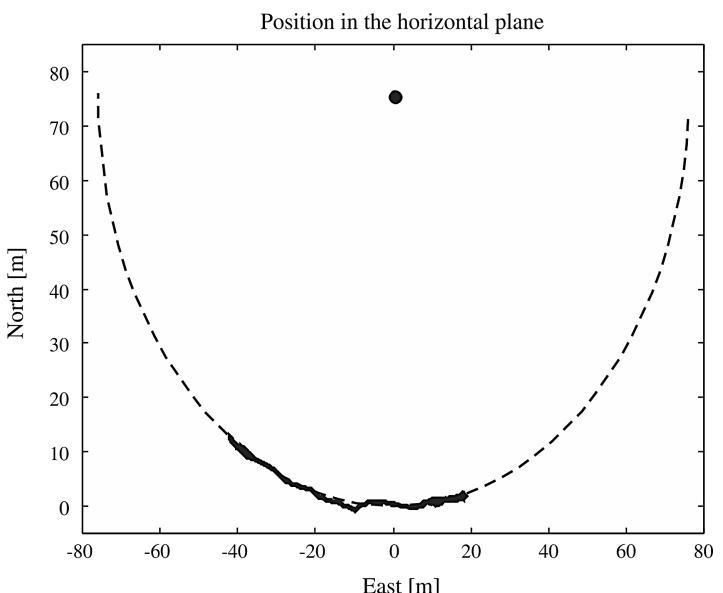
$$\ddot{\mathbf{p}}_0 = \ddot{\mathbf{p}}_d - k_0(\dot{\mathbf{p}} - \dot{\mathbf{p}}_d) - \mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{R}(\gamma) \mathbf{H}(\rho) \ddot{\mathbf{x}}_r \\ - \mathbf{L}^\top \dot{\mathbf{R}}(\gamma) \mathbf{H}(\rho) \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r - \mathbf{L}^\top \mathbf{R}(\gamma) \dot{\mathbf{H}}(\rho) \dot{\mathbf{x}}_r \quad (13.529)$$

### Experiment 1: Weather Optimal Heading Control (WOHC)

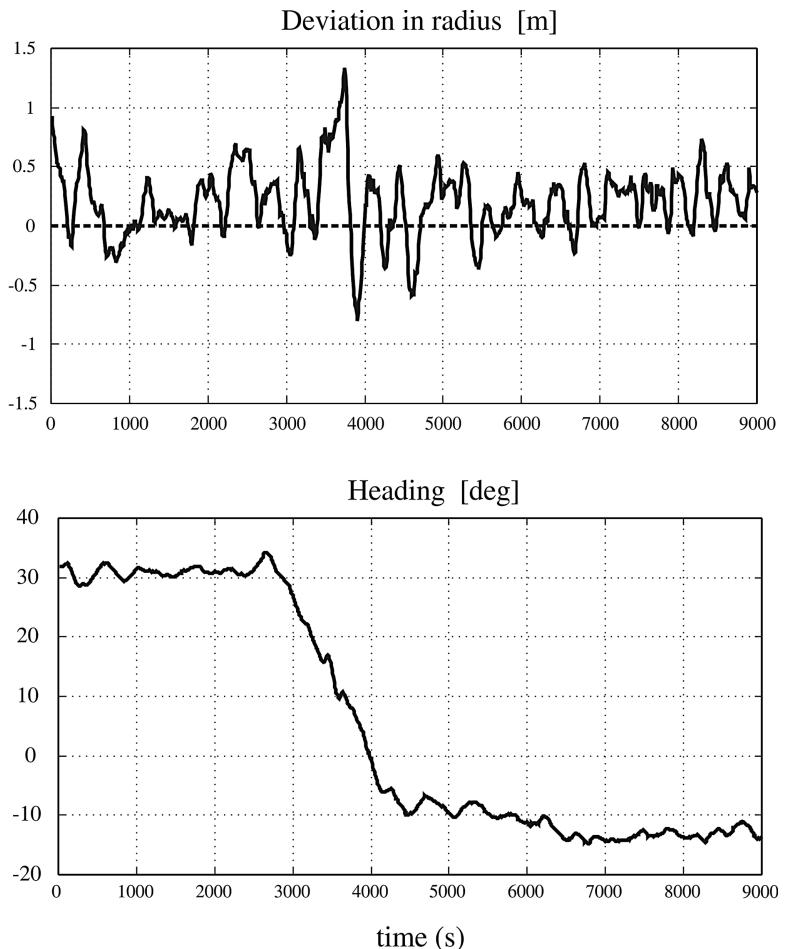
The proposed WOHC system has been implemented and tested experimentally using a model ship of scale 1:70. A ducted fan was used to generate wind forces. The length of the model ship is  $L_m = 1.19$  m and the mass is  $m_m = 17.6$  kg. The experimental results are scaled to full scale by considering a supply vessel with mass  $m_s = 4500$  tons using the bis system (see Section 7.2.5).

In the first experiment the ship was allowed to move on the circle arc and the circle center controller (13.523) was turned off; that is  $N_0 = \text{constant}$  and  $E_0 = \text{constant}$ . This is referred to as WOHC. The fixed origin and circle arc are shown in Figure 13.27. Notice that the initial heading is approximately 30 degrees (see Figure 13.28), while the position  $(N, E) \approx (13, -43)$ . These values are those obtained when the fan was initially directed at 210 degrees in the opposite direction of the ship heading.

After 3000 seconds the fan was slowly rotated to 165 degrees, corresponding to a weather optimal heading of  $-15$  degrees (see Figure 13.28). During this process, the ship starts to move on the circle arc with heading towards the circle center until it is stabilized to its new heading at  $-15$  degrees. The new position on the circle arc is  $(N, E) \approx (3, 20)$ . This clearly demonstrates that the ship heading converges to the optimal value by copying the dynamics of a pendulum in the gravity field. This is done without using any external wind sensor.



**Figure 13.27** WOHC experiment showing the circular motion of the ship when the circle center controller is turned off (WOHC).



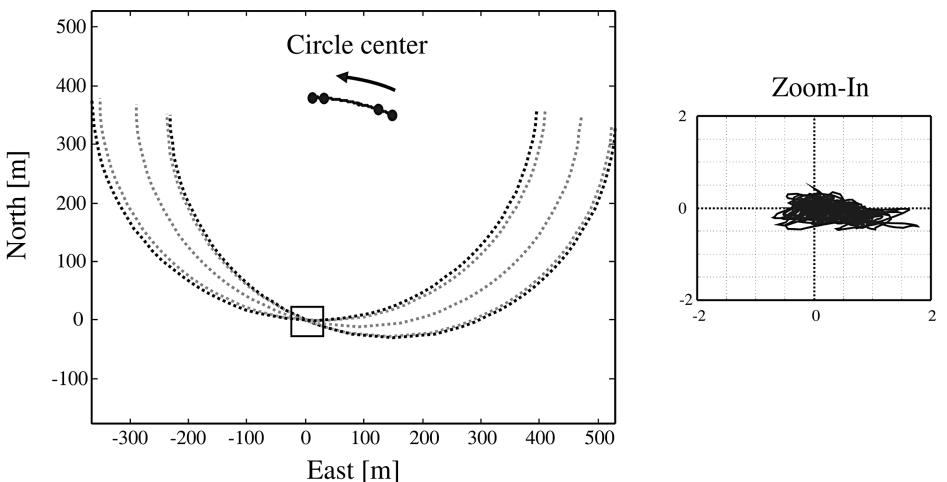
**Figure 13.28** WOHC experiment showing the performance of the radius regulator (upper plot) and weather optimal heading (lower plot) versus time (s).

In the next experiment, the circle center is translated online in order to obtain a constant position ( $N, E$ ).

### Experiment 2: Weather Optimal Position Control (WOPC)

In the second experiment the ship should maintain its position by activating the circle center controller (13.5.23). The performance during stationkeeping and translation of the circle is shown in Figures 13.29–13.31. The position controller works within an accuracy of  $\pm 1$  m, which is the accuracy of the GNSS system.

Again the weather optimal heading is changed from approximately 23 degrees to 2 degrees but this time without changing the position ( $N, E$ ) of the ship. The position deviations and the weather optimal heading are shown in Figure 13.30. These values are obtained by moving the fan from an initial angle of 203 degrees to 182 degrees.



**Figure 13.29** WOPC experiment showing how the circle center is moved to obtain stationkeeping to  $(N_d, E_d) = (0, 0)$ .

### 13.3.11 Case Study: Heading Autopilot for Ships and Underwater Vehicles

A nonlinear backstepping controller can be designed by writing the autopilot model (7.53) in SISO strict feedback form:

$$\dot{\psi} = r \quad (13.530)$$

$$m\dot{r} + d(r)r = \delta \quad (13.531)$$

where  $m = T/K$  and  $d(r) = H_N(r)/K$ . The only nonlinearity in this model is due to the maneuvering characteristic  $H_N(r)$ .

In Section 13.3.3 it was shown that the backstepping controller for this system is

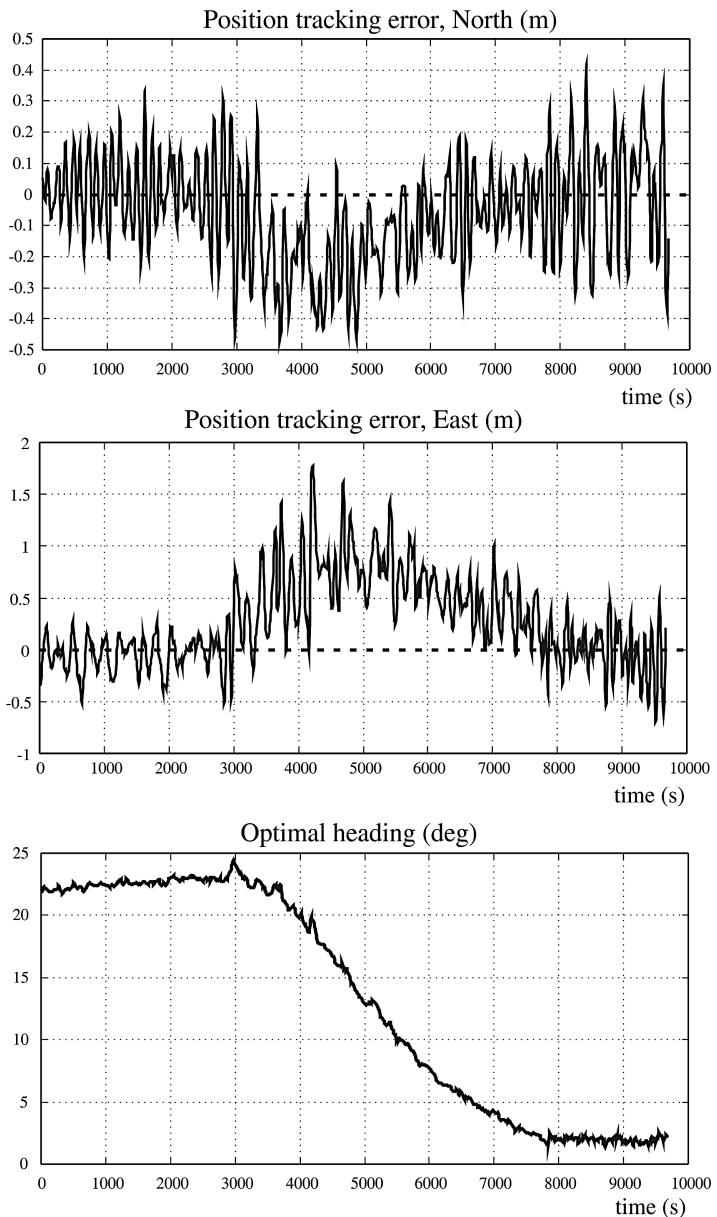
$$\delta = m\dot{\alpha}_1 + d(r)r - z_1 - k_2 z_2 - n_2(z_2)z_2 \quad (13.532)$$

$$\alpha_1 = r_d - [k_1 + n_1(z_1)]z_1 \quad (13.533)$$

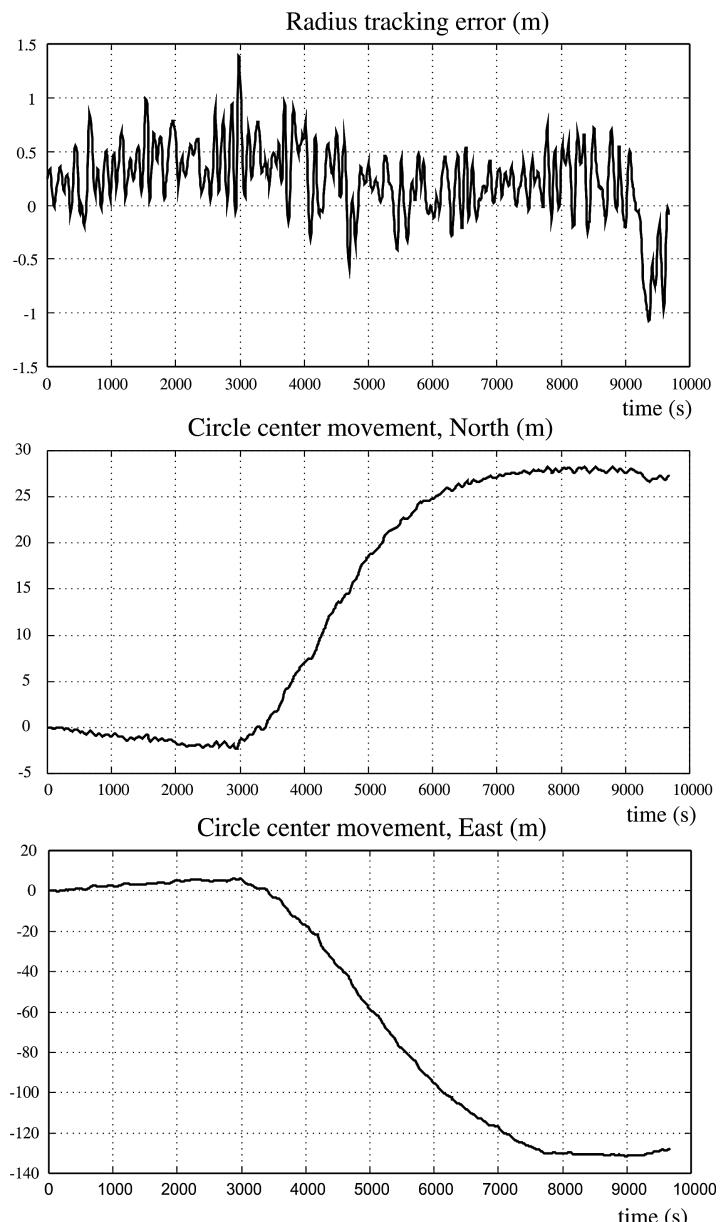
where  $k_1 > 0$  and  $k_2 > 0$  are two feedback gains and  $n_i(z_i) \geq 0$  ( $i = 1, 2$ ) are two optional nonlinear damping terms, for instance chosen as nondecreasing functions  $n_i(z_i) = \kappa_i |z_i|^{n_i}$  with  $n_i \geq 1$  and  $\kappa_i \geq 0$  ( $i = 1, 2$ ) as design parameters. The following change of coordinates is needed to implement the controller:

$$z_1 = \psi - \psi_d \quad (13.534)$$

$$z_2 = r - \alpha_1 \quad (13.535)$$



**Figure 13.30** WOPC experiment showing the North and East position accuracies (upper plots) and weather optimal heading (lower plot) versus time (seconds). The position accuracy is within  $\pm 1$  m while the heading changes from 23 degrees to 2 degrees as the fan is rotated.



**Figure 13.31** WOPC experiment showing the deviation for the radius regulator (upper plot) and the translation of the circle center ( $N_0, E_0$ ) (lower plots) versus time in seconds. The radius deviation is within  $\pm 1$  m during the rotation of the fan.

The backstepping controller includes a PD term as well as reference feedforward. In addition the nonlinear damping terms  $n_i(z_i)$  ( $i = 1, 2$ ) can be used to improve the performance and stability of the closed-loop system.

When using feedback linearization all the nonlinearities in  $H_N(r)$  are compensated for. This requires that the dissipative terms are known with good accuracy, which is not true in many cases. The backstepping controller gives more design flexibility with respect to the damping terms. In fact, it is possible to exploit good damping terms such as  $n_3r^3$  and  $n_1r$  in  $H_N(r)$  instead of canceling them. This is straightforward in setpoint regulation; see Krstic *et al.* (1995), for instance. In trajectory-tracking control, however, it is not clear how good damping with respect to a time-varying reference trajectory should be defined. A discussion on backstepping versus feedback linearization is found in Section 13.3.2.

Extensions to integral action can be done by using the method of Loria *et al.* (1999) and Fossen *et al.* (2001), which is referred to as *backstepping with integral action*. Alternatively, an *integrator augmentation technique* can be applied. Both these methods are described in detail in Sections 13.3.4 and 13.3.5.

The actuator dynamics can be included in the design by using the approach of Fossen and Berge (1997) where backstepping is performed in three steps to include a first-order actuator model.

### 13.3.12 Case Study: Path-Following Controller for Underactuated Marine Craft

For floating rigs, semi-submersibles and supply vessels, trajectory-tracking control in *surge*, *sway* and *yaw* (3 DOF) is easily achieved since independent control forces and moments are simultaneously available in all degrees of freedom. For slow speed, this is referred to as DP and the craft is controlled by means of tunnel thrusters, azimuths and main propellers. Conventional craft, on the other hand, are usually equipped with one or two main propellers for forward speed control and rudders for turning control. The minimum configuration for waypoint tracking control is one main propeller and a single rudder. This means that only two controls are available, thus rendering the ship underactuated for the task of 3 DOF trajectory-tracking control (see Section 9.4).

Conventional waypoint guidance systems are usually designed by reducing the output space from 3 DOF position and heading to 2 DOF heading and surge (Healey and Marco, 1992). In its simplest form this involves the use of a classical autopilot system where the commanded yaw angle  $\psi_d$  is generated such that the *cross-track error* is minimized. A path-following control system is usually designed such that the ship moves forward with reference speed  $u_d$  at the same time as the cross-track error to the path is minimized. As a result,  $\psi_d$  and  $u_d$  are tracked using only two controls.

This section is based on Fossen *et al.* (2003a) and presents a maneuvering controller involving an LOS guidance system and a nonlinear feedback trajectory-tracking controller. The desired output is reduced from  $(x_d, y_d, \psi_d)$  to  $\psi_d$  and  $u_d$  using an LOS projection algorithm. The tracking task  $\psi(t) \rightarrow \psi_d(t)$  is then achieved using only one control (normally the rudder), while tracking of the speed assignment  $u_d$  is performed by the remaining control (the main propeller). Since we are dealing with segments of straight lines, the LOS projection algorithm will guarantee that the task of path-following is satisfied.

First, an LOS guidance procedure is derived. This includes a projection algorithm and a waypoint switching algorithm. To avoid large bumps in  $\psi_d$  when switching, and to provide the necessary derivatives of  $\psi_d$  to the controller, the commanded LOS heading is fed through a reference model. Second, a nonlinear 2 DOF tracking controller is derived using the backstepping technique. Three stabilizing functions  $\alpha := [\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3]^\top$  are defined where  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_3$  are specified to satisfy the tracking objectives in the controlled surge and yaw modes. The stabilizing function  $\alpha_2$  in the uncontrolled sway mode is left as a free design variable. By assigning dynamics to  $\alpha_2$ , the resulting controller becomes a dynamic feedback controller so that  $\alpha_2(t) \rightarrow v(t)$  during path following. This is an appealing idea that adds to the extensive theory of backstepping. The presented design technique results in a robust controller for underactuated ships since integral action can be implemented for both path-following and speed control.

### Problem Statement

The problem statement is stated as a maneuvering problem with the following two objectives (Skjetne *et al.*, 2004):

**LOS Geometric Task:** Force the marine craft position  $\mathbf{p} = [x, y]^\top$  to converge to a desired path by forcing the course angle  $\chi$  to converge to (see Section 10.3.2)

$$\chi_d = \text{atan2}(y_{\text{los}} - y, x_{\text{los}} - x) \quad (13.536)$$

where the LOS position  $p_{\text{los}} = [x_{\text{los}}, y_{\text{los}}]^\top$  is the point along the path to which the craft should be pointed. Notice that  $\psi = \chi - \beta$  and  $\psi_d = \chi_d - \beta$  implies that  $\tilde{\psi} = \tilde{\chi}$  when designing the controller.

**Dynamic Task:** Force the speed  $u$  to converge to a desired speed assignment  $u_d$  according to

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} [u(t) - u_d(t)] = 0 \quad (13.537)$$

where  $u_d$  is the desired speed composed along the body-fixed  $x$  axis.

A conventional trajectory-tracking control system for 3 DOF is usually implemented using a standard PID autopilot in series with an LOS algorithm. Hence, a state-of-the-art autopilot system can be modified to take the LOS reference angle as input (see Figure 12.20). This adds flexibility since the default commercial autopilot system can be used together with the LOS guidance system. The speed can be adjusted manually by the captain or automatically using the path speed profile.

Consider the 3 DOF nonlinear maneuvering model in the following form:

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{\eta}} = \mathbf{R}(\psi)\boldsymbol{v} \quad (13.538)$$

$$\mathbf{M}\dot{\boldsymbol{v}} + \mathbf{N}(\boldsymbol{v})\boldsymbol{v} = \begin{bmatrix} (1-t)T \\ Y_\delta\delta \\ N_\delta\delta \end{bmatrix} := \begin{bmatrix} \tau_1 \\ Y_\delta\delta \\ \tau_3 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.539)$$

where  $\boldsymbol{\eta} = [N, E, \psi]^\top$ ,  $\boldsymbol{v} = [u, v, r]^\top$  and

$$\mathbf{R}(\psi) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(\psi) & -\sin(\psi) & 0 \\ \sin(\psi) & \cos(\psi) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.540)$$

The matrices  $\mathbf{M}$  and  $\mathbf{N}$  take the following form:

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m_{22} & m_{23} \\ 0 & m_{32} & m_{33} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} m - X_{\dot{u}} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & m - Y_{\dot{v}} & mx_g - Y_{\dot{r}} \\ 0 & mx_g - N_{\dot{v}} & I_z - N_{\dot{r}} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{N}(\boldsymbol{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} n_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & n_{22} & n_{23} \\ 0 & n_{32} & n_{33} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -X_u & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -Y_v & mu - Y_r \\ 0 & -N_v & mx_g u - N_r \end{bmatrix}$$

The control force and moment in surge and yaw are denoted  $\tau_1$  and  $\tau_3$ , respectively, while sway is left uncontrolled. Notice that the rudder angle  $\delta$  affects the sway equation but it will not be used to actively

control sway. The controller computes  $\tau_1$  and  $\tau_3$  which can be allocated to thrust  $T$  and rudder angle  $\delta$  using

$$\tau_1 = (1 - t)T \quad (13.541)$$

$$\tau_3 = N_\delta \delta \quad (13.542)$$

where  $t$  is the thrust deduction number. This gives

$$T = \frac{1}{1-t} \tau_1 \quad (13.543)$$

$$\delta = \frac{1}{N_\delta} \tau_3 \quad (13.544)$$

### Backstepping Design

The design is based on the model (13.538)–(13.539) where  $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top > 0$ . Define the error signals  $z_1 \in S$  and  $z_2 \in \mathbb{R}^3$  according to

$$z_1 := \chi - \chi_d = \psi - \psi_d \quad (13.545)$$

$$z_2 := [z_{2,1}, z_{2,2}, z_{2,3}]^\top = \mathbf{v} - \boldsymbol{\alpha} \quad (13.546)$$

where  $\chi_d$  and its derivatives are provided by proper filtering of the LOS angle,  $u_d \in \mathcal{L}_\infty$  is the desired speed and  $\boldsymbol{\alpha} := [\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3]^\top \in \mathbb{R}^3$  is a vector of stabilizing functions to be specified later. Next, let

$$\mathbf{h} = [0, 0, 1]^\top \quad (13.547)$$

such that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{z}_1 &= r - r_d = \mathbf{h}^\top \mathbf{v} - r_d \\ &= \alpha_3 + \mathbf{h}^\top z_2 - r_d \end{aligned} \quad (13.548)$$

where  $r_d = \psi_d$  and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{M}\dot{z}_2 &= \mathbf{M}\dot{\mathbf{v}} - \mathbf{M}\dot{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} \\ &= \boldsymbol{\tau} - N\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{M}\dot{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} \end{aligned} \quad (13.549)$$

Consider the CLF:

$$V = \frac{1}{2}z_1^2 + \frac{1}{2}z_2^\top \mathbf{M}z_2, \quad \mathbf{M} = \mathbf{M}^\top > 0 \quad (13.550)$$

Differentiating  $V$  along the trajectories of  $z_1$  and  $z_2$  yields

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V} &= z_1 \dot{z}_1 + z_2^\top \mathbf{M} \dot{z}_2 \\ &= z_1(\alpha_3 + \mathbf{h}^\top z_2 - r_d) + z_2^\top (\boldsymbol{\tau} - N\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{M}\dot{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}) \end{aligned}$$

Choosing the virtual control  $\alpha_3$  as

$$\alpha_3 = -cz_1 + r_d \quad (13.551)$$

while  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$  are yet to be defined gives

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V} &= -cz_1^2 + z_1 \mathbf{h}^\top \mathbf{z}_2 + \mathbf{z}_2^\top (\boldsymbol{\tau} - N\mathbf{v} - M\dot{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}) \\ &= -cz_1^2 + \mathbf{z}_2^\top (\mathbf{h}z_1 + \boldsymbol{\tau} - N\mathbf{v} - M\dot{\boldsymbol{\alpha}})\end{aligned}\quad (13.552)$$

Suppose we can assign

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \begin{bmatrix} \tau_1 \\ Y_\delta \delta \\ \tau_3 \end{bmatrix} = M\dot{\boldsymbol{\alpha}} + N\mathbf{v} - K\mathbf{z}_2 - \mathbf{h}z_1 \quad (13.553)$$

where  $K = \text{diag}\{k_1, k_2, k_3\} > 0$ . This results in

$$\dot{V} = -cz_1^2 - \mathbf{z}_2^\top K\mathbf{z}_2 < 0, \quad \forall z_1 \neq 0, \mathbf{z}_2 \neq \mathbf{0} \quad (13.554)$$

and by standard Lyapunov arguments, this guarantees that  $(z_1, \mathbf{z}_2)$  is bounded and converges to zero.

However, notice from (13.553) that it is only possible to prescribe values for  $\tau_1$  and  $\tau_3$ ; that is

$$\tau_1 = m_{11}\dot{\alpha}_1 + n_{11}u - k_1(u - \alpha_1) \quad (13.555)$$

$$\tau_3 = m_{32}\dot{\alpha}_2 + m_{33}\dot{\alpha}_3 + n_{32}v + n_{33}r - k_3(r - \alpha_3) - z_1 \quad (13.556)$$

Choosing  $\alpha_1 = u_d$  clearly solves the dynamic task since the closed-loop surge dynamics becomes

$$m_{11}(\dot{u} - \dot{u}_d) + k_1(u - u_d) = 0 \quad (13.557)$$

The second equation in (13.553) results in a dynamic equality constraint

$$m_{22}\dot{\alpha}_2 + m_{23}\dot{\alpha}_3 + n_{22}v + n_{23}r - k_2(v - \alpha_2) = \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta}\tau_3 \quad (13.558)$$

affected by the control input  $\tau_3$ . Substituting (13.556) into this expression yields

$$\begin{aligned}\left(m_{22} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta}m_{32}\right)\dot{\alpha}_2 + \left(m_{23} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta}m_{33}\right)\dot{\alpha}_3 + \left(n_{22} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta}n_{32}\right)v + \left(n_{23} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta}n_{33}\right)r \\ - k_2(v - \alpha_2) + \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta}(k_3(r - \alpha_3) + z_1) = 0\end{aligned}$$

Application of  $\dot{\alpha}_3 = c^2z_1 - cz_{2,3} + \dot{r}_d$ ,  $\alpha_3 = -cz_1 + r_d$ ,  $v = \alpha_2 + z_{2,2}$  and  $r = \alpha_3 + z_{2,3}$  then gives

$$\left(m_{22} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta}m_{32}\right)\dot{\alpha}_2 = -\left(n_{22} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta}n_{32}\right)\alpha_2 + \gamma(z_1, \mathbf{z}_2, r_d, \dot{r}_d) \quad (13.559)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma(z_1, \mathbf{z}_2, r_d, \dot{r}_d) &= -\left(m_{23} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta}m_{33}\right)(c^2z_1 - cz_{2,3} + \dot{r}_d) - \left(n_{22} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta}n_{32}\right)z_{2,2} \\ &\quad - \left(n_{23} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta}n_{33}\right)(-cz_1 + r_d + z_{2,3}) + k_2z_{2,2} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta}(k_3z_{2,3} + z_1)\end{aligned}\quad (13.560)$$

The variable  $\alpha_2$  becomes a dynamic state of the controller according to (13.559). Furthermore,  $m_{22} > (Y_\delta/N_\delta)m_{32}$  and  $n_{22} > (Y_\delta/N_\delta)n_{32}$  imply that (13.559) is a stable differential equation driven

by the converging error signals  $(z_1, z_2)$  and the bounded reference signals  $(r_d, \dot{r}_d)$  within the expression of  $\gamma(\cdot)$ . Since  $z_{2,2}(t) \rightarrow 0$ , it follows that  $|\alpha_2(t) - v(t)| \rightarrow 0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . The main result is summarized by Theorem 13.2, which is a modification of Fossen *et al.* (2003a).

**Theorem 13.2 (LOS Backstepping Controller for Underactuated Craft)**

The LOS maneuvering problem for the 3 DOF underactuated craft (13.538)–(13.539) is solved using the control laws

$$\tau_1 = m_{11}\dot{u}_d + n_{11}u - k_1(u - u_d)$$

$$\tau_3 = m_{32}\dot{\alpha}_2 + m_{33}\dot{\alpha}_3 + n_{32}v + n_{33}r - k_3(r - \alpha_3) - z_1$$

where  $k_1 > 0$ ,  $k_3 > 0$ ,  $z_1 := \psi - \psi_d$ ,  $z_2 := [u - u_d, v - \alpha_2, r - \alpha_3]^\top$  and

$$\alpha_3 = -cz_1 + r_d, \quad c > 0 \quad (13.561)$$

$$\dot{\alpha}_3 = -c(r - r_d) + \dot{r}_d \quad (13.562)$$

The reference signals  $u_d$ ,  $\dot{u}_d$ ,  $\psi_d$ ,  $r_d$  and  $\dot{r}_d$  are provided by the LOS guidance system, while  $\alpha_2$  is given by

$$\left( m_{22} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta} m_{32} \right) \dot{\alpha}_2 = - \left( n_{22} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta} n_{32} \right) \alpha_2 + \gamma(z_1, z_2, r_d, \dot{r}_d)$$

This results in a UGAS equilibrium point  $(z_1, z_2) = (0, \mathbf{0})$  and  $\alpha_2 \in \mathcal{L}_\infty$  satisfies

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} |\alpha_2(t) - v(t)| = 0 \quad (13.563)$$

**Remark 13.1**

Notice that the smooth reference signal  $\psi_d \in \mathcal{L}_\infty$  must be differentiated twice to produce  $r_d$  and  $\dot{r}_d$  while  $u_d \in \mathcal{L}_\infty$  must be differentiated once to give  $\dot{u}_d$ . This is most easily achieved by using reference models represented by low-pass filters (see Section 10.2.1).

**Proof.** The closed-loop equations become

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{z}_1 \\ \dot{z}_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -c & \mathbf{h}^\top \\ -\mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{h} & -\mathbf{M}^{-1}\mathbf{K} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.564)$$

$$\bar{m}\dot{\alpha}_2 = -\bar{n}\alpha_2 + \gamma(z_1, z_2, r_d, \dot{r}_d) \quad (13.565)$$

where

$$\bar{m} = \left( m_{22} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta} m_{32} \right), \quad \bar{n} = \left( n_{22} - \frac{Y_\delta}{N_\delta} n_{32} \right) \quad (13.566)$$

From the Lyapunov arguments (13.550) and (13.554), the equilibrium  $(z_1, z_2) = (0, \mathbf{0})$  of the  $z$  subsystem is UGAS. The unforced  $\alpha_2$  subsystem ( $\gamma = 0$ ) is clearly exponentially stable. Since  $(z_1, z_2) \in \mathcal{L}_\infty$  and  $(r_d, \dot{r}_d) \in \mathcal{L}_\infty$ , then  $\gamma \in \mathcal{L}_\infty$ . This implies that the  $\alpha_2$  subsystem is input-to-state stable from  $\gamma$  to  $\alpha_2$ . This is seen by applying, for instance,  $V_2 = \frac{1}{2}\bar{m}\alpha_2^2$  which differentiated along the solutions of  $\alpha_2$  gives  $\dot{V}_2 \leq -\frac{1}{2}\bar{n}\alpha_2^2$  for all  $|\alpha_2| \geq \frac{2}{\bar{n}}|\gamma(z_1, z_2, r_d, \dot{r}_d)|$ . By standard comparison functions, it is then possible to show that for all  $|\alpha_2| \geq \frac{2}{\bar{n}}|\gamma(z_1, z_2, r_d, \dot{r}_d)|$  then

$$|\alpha_2(t)| \leq |\alpha_2(0)| e^{-\frac{\bar{n}}{2}t} \quad (13.567)$$

Hence,  $\alpha_2$  converges to the bounded set  $\{\alpha_2 : |\alpha_2| \leq \frac{2}{\bar{n}}|\gamma(z_1, z_2, r_d, \dot{r}_d)|\}$  since  $z_{2,2}(t) \rightarrow 0$  as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ .

### Case Study: Experiment Performed with the CS2 Model Ship

The proposed controller and guidance system were tested out at the *Marine Cybernetics Laboratory* (MCLab). MCLab is an experimental laboratory for the testing of scale models of ships, rigs, underwater vehicles and propulsion systems. The software is developed by using rapid prototyping techniques and automatic code generation under *Matlab/Simulink*. The target PC onboard the model scale vessels runs the real-time operating system, while experimental results are presented in real time on a host PC.

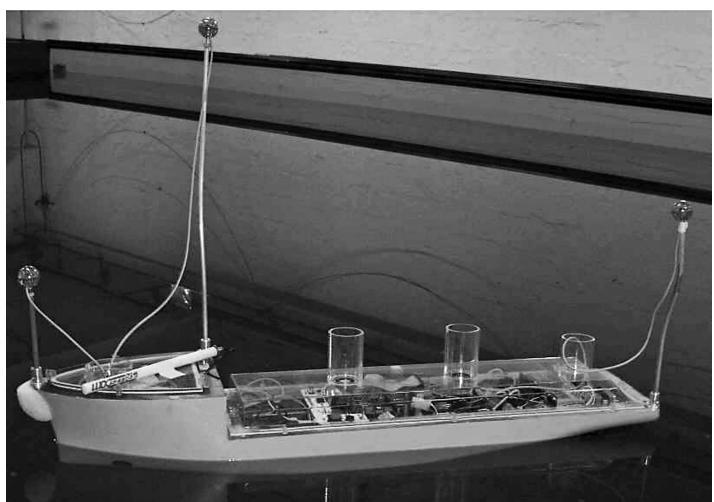
In the experiment, *CyberShip 2* (CS2) was used. It is a 1:70 scale model of an offshore supply vessel with a mass of 15 kg and a length of 1.255 m. The maximum surge force is approximately 2.0 N while the maximum yaw moment is about 1.5 N m. The MCLab tank is  $L \times B \times D = 40 \text{ m} \times 6.5 \text{ m} \times 1.5 \text{ m}$ .

Figure 13.32 shows CS2. Three spheres can be seen mounted on the ship, ensuring that its position and orientation can be identified by infrared cameras. Two infrared cameras mounted on a towing carriage currently supply the position and orientation estimates in 6 DOF, but due to a temporary poor calibration the camera measurements vanished when the ship assumed certain yaw angles and regions of the tank. This affected the results of the experiment and also limited the available space for maneuvering. Nevertheless, good results were obtained.

The desired path consists of a total of eight waypoints:

$$\begin{array}{ll} wpt_1 = (0.372, -0.181) & wpt_5 = (6.872, -0.681) \\ wpt_2 = (-0.628, 1.320) & wpt_6 = (8.372, -0.181) \\ wpt_3 = (0.372, 2.820) & wpt_7 = (9.372, 1.320) \\ wpt_4 = (1.872, 3.320) & wpt_8 = (8.372, 2.820) \end{array}$$

representing an S-shape. CS2 was performing the maneuver with a constant surge speed of 0.1 m/s. By assuming equal *Froude numbers*, this corresponds to a surge speed of 0.85 m/s for the full scale supply



**Figure 13.32** CyberShip 2 floating in the MCLab.

ship. A higher speed was not attempted because the consequence of vanishing position measurements at higher speed is quite severe. The controller used

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{bmatrix} 25.8 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 33.8 & 1.0115 \\ 0 & 1.0115 & 2.76 \end{bmatrix}, \quad N(v) = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 7 & 0.1 \\ 0 & 0.1 & 0.5 \end{bmatrix}$$

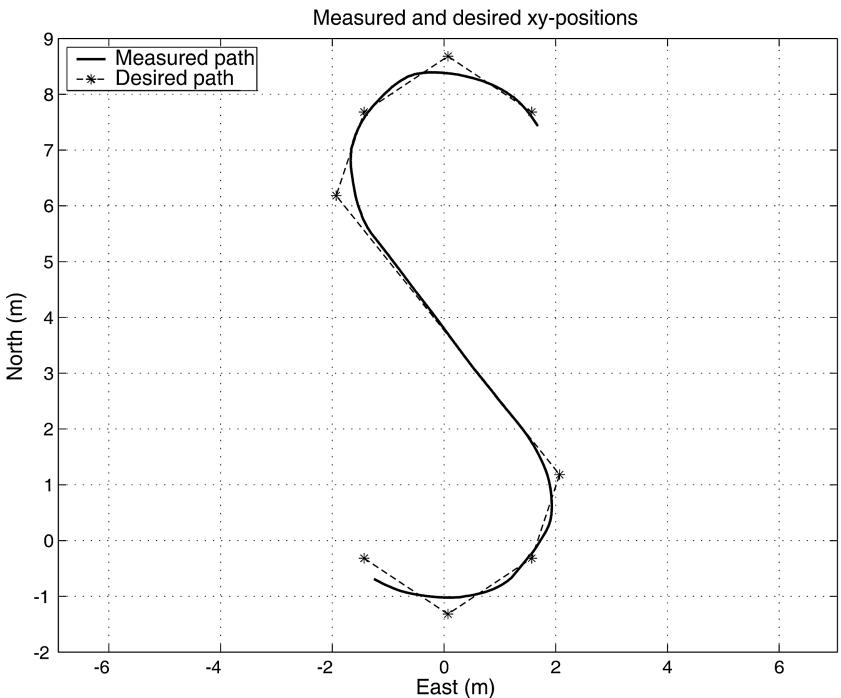
$$c = 0.75, k_1 = 25, k_2 = 10, k_3 = 2.5$$

In addition, a reference model consisting of three first-order low-pass filters in cascade delivered continuous values of  $\psi_d$ ,  $r_d$  and  $\dot{r}_d$ . The ship's initial states were

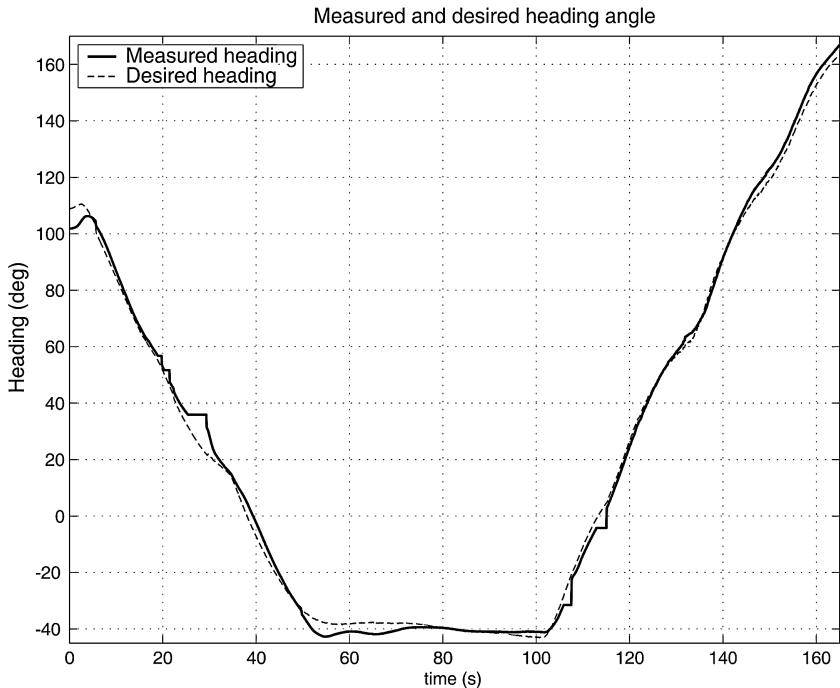
$$(x_0, y_0, \psi_0) = (-0.69 \text{ m}, -1.25 \text{ m}, 1.78 \text{ rad})$$

$$(u_0, v_0, r_0) = (0.1 \text{ m/s}, 0 \text{ m/s}, 0 \text{ rad/s})$$

Both the ship enclosing circle and the radius of acceptance for all waypoints was set to one ship length. Figure 13.33 shows an *xy* plot of the CS2's position together with the desired geometrical path consisting of straight-line segments. The ship is seen to follow the path very well. To illustrate the effect of the positioning reference system dropping out from time to time, Figure 13.34 is included. It shows the actual heading angle of CS2 alongside the desired LOS angle. The discontinuities in the actual heading angle are due to the camera measurements dropping out. When the measurements return, the heading angle of the ship is seen to converge nicely to the desired angle.



**Figure 13.33** *xy* plot of the measured and desired geometrical path during the experiment.



**Figure 13.34** The actual yaw angle of the ship tracks the desired LOS angle well.

## 13.4 Sliding-Mode Control

A robust nonlinear design technique for marine craft is *sliding-mode control* (Utkin, 1977), which incorporates techniques to handle model uncertainty. Sliding-mode techniques are discussed in detail by Utkin (1992) while applications to marine craft are found in Yoerger and Slotine (1985), Slotine and Li (1991), Healey and Lienard (1993) and McGookin *et al.* (2000a, 2000b), for instance.

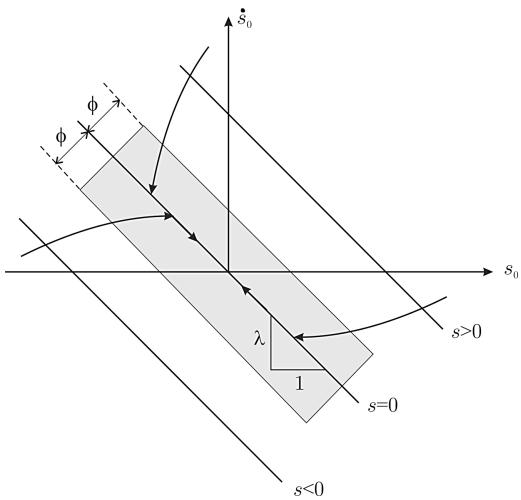
### 13.4.1 SISO Sliding-Mode Control

Define a scalar measure of tracking:

$$s := \dot{\tilde{\psi}} + 2\lambda\tilde{\psi} + \lambda^2 \int_0^t \tilde{\psi}(\tau) d\tau \quad (13.568)$$

where  $\tilde{\psi} = \psi - \psi_d$  is the yaw angle tracking error and  $\lambda > 0$  is a design parameter reflecting the bandwidth of the controller. For  $s = 0$  this expression describes a sliding surface (manifold) with exponentially stable dynamics. To see this let us define a second sliding surface:

$$s_0 := \tilde{\psi} + \lambda \int_0^t \tilde{\psi}(\tau) d\tau \quad (13.569)$$



**Figure 13.35** Graphical interpretation of the sliding surface  $s = \dot{s}_0 + \lambda s_0$  and boundary layer  $\phi > 0$ .

such that the manifold  $s = 0$  can be rewritten as

$$s = \dot{s}_0 + \lambda s_0 = 0 \quad (13.570)$$

Hence, both  $s_0$  and  $\tilde{\psi}$  converge exponentially to zero since the linear system

$$\begin{bmatrix} \tilde{\psi} \\ \dot{s}_0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -\lambda & 1 \\ 0 & -\lambda \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \tilde{\psi} \\ s_0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.571)$$

has two real eigenvalues at  $-\lambda$ . This ensures that the tracking error  $\tilde{\psi} \rightarrow 0$  on the manifold  $s = 0$ . Hence, the *control objective* is reduced to finding a nonlinear control law which ensures that

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} s = 0 \quad (13.572)$$

A graphical interpretation of the *sliding surfaces* is given in Figure 13.35.

It is seen that a trajectory starting at  $s > 0$  will move toward the sliding surface  $s = 0$ . When  $s = 0$  is reached the trajectory will continue moving on the straight line corresponding to  $s = 0$  toward the equilibrium point  $s_0 = 0$ . Similar behavior is observed when starting with a negative value of  $s$ .

### Nonlinear Ship Autopilot

When deriving the control law, a stable ship model with nonlinear damping is considered:

$$T\dot{r} + n_3 r^3 + n_1 r = K\delta + \tau_{\text{wind}} \quad (13.573)$$

where  $\tau_{\text{wind}}$  is the wind moment. Define a new signal  $v$  according to

$$v := r - s \implies s = r - v \quad (13.574)$$

such that

$$\begin{aligned} T\dot{s} &= T\dot{r} - T\dot{v} \\ &= K\delta + \tau_{\text{wind}} - (n_3 r^2 + n_1)r - T\dot{v} \\ &= K\delta + \tau_{\text{wind}} - (n_3 r^2 + n_1)(v + s) - T\dot{v} \end{aligned} \quad (13.575)$$

Consider the CLF:

$$V(s) = \frac{1}{2}Ts^2, \quad T > 0 \quad (13.576)$$

Differentiating  $V$  along the trajectories of  $s$  yields

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}(s) &= sT\dot{s} \\ &= s[K\delta + \tau_{\text{wind}} - (n_3 r^2 + n_1)(v + s) - T\dot{v}] \\ &= -[n_3 r^2 + n_1]s^2 + s[K\delta + \tau_{\text{wind}} - (n_3 r^2 + n_1)v - T\dot{v}] \end{aligned} \quad (13.577)$$

Let the control law be chosen as

$$\delta = \frac{\hat{T}}{\hat{K}}\dot{v} + \frac{1}{\hat{K}}[\hat{n}_3 r^2 + n_1]v - \frac{1}{\hat{K}}\tau_{\text{wind}} - K_d s - K_s \text{sgn}(s) \quad (13.578)$$

where  $K_d > 0$  and  $K_s > 0$ , while  $\hat{T}$ ,  $\hat{K}$  and  $\hat{n}_3$  are estimates of  $T$ ,  $K$  and  $n_3$ , respectively. Notice that  $n_1 = 1$  for a stable ship. The signum function is defined as

$$\text{sgn}(s) := \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } s > 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } s = 0 \\ -1 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (13.579)$$

This implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}(s) &= -[n_3 r^2 + n_1 + K_d]s^2 - K_s |s| \\ &\quad + \left[ \left( \frac{\hat{T}}{\hat{K}} - \frac{T}{K} \right) \dot{v} + \left( \frac{1}{\hat{K}} - \frac{1}{K} \right) [n_1 v - \tau_{\text{wind}}] \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \left( \frac{\hat{n}_3}{\hat{K}} - \frac{n_3}{K} \right) r^2 v \right] s \end{aligned} \quad (13.580)$$

In order for this expression to become negative,  $K_s$  must be chosen large enough so that the parameter errors are dominated. Consequently,

$$\begin{aligned} K_s &\geq \left| \left( \frac{\hat{T}}{\hat{K}} - \frac{T}{K} \right) \dot{v} \right| + \left| \left( \frac{1}{\hat{K}} - \frac{1}{K} \right) [n_1 v - \tau_{\text{wind}}] \right| \\ &\quad + \left| \left( \frac{\hat{n}_3}{\hat{K}} - \frac{n_3}{K} \right) r^2 v \right| \end{aligned} \quad (13.581)$$

implies that

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{V}(s) &\leq -(n_3 r^2 + n_1 + K_d)s^2 - K_s |s| \\ &< 0, \quad \forall s \neq 0\end{aligned}\quad (13.582)$$

The nonpositive term  $-(n_3 r^2 + n_1 + K_d)s^2$  ensures exponential stability of  $s = 0$ . However, in order to converge to the manifold  $s \rightarrow 0$  in finite time such that  $\tilde{\psi} \rightarrow 0$  in finite time, the gain  $K_s > 0$  must be positive.

One way to find an estimate of  $K_s$  is to assume, for instance, 20 % uncertainty in all elements such that

$$K_s \geq 1.2 \frac{\hat{T}}{\hat{K}} |\dot{v}| + 1.2 \frac{1}{\hat{K}} |n_1 v - \tau_{\text{wind}}| + 1.2 \frac{\hat{n}_3}{\hat{K}} |r^2 v| \quad (13.583)$$

It is well known that the switching term  $K_s \text{sgn}(s)$  can lead to chattering for large values of  $K_s$ . Hence,  $K_s > 0$  should be treated as a design parameter with (13.581) as a guideline. Recall that Lyapunov stability analysis results in conservative requirements for all gains.

Chattering in the controller can, however, be eliminated by replacing the signum function with a saturating function. Slotine and Li (1991) suggest smoothing out the control discontinuity inside a boundary layer according to

$$\text{sat}(s) = \begin{cases} \text{sgn}(s) & \text{if } |s/\phi| > 1 \\ s/\phi & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (13.584)$$

where  $\phi > 0$  can be interpreted as the boundary layer thickness. This substitution will assign a low-pass filter structure to the dynamics inside the boundary layer (see Figure 13.35). Another possibility is to replace  $K_s \text{sgn}(s)$  with  $K_s \tanh(s/\phi)$ , where  $\phi > 0$  is a design parameter used to shape the slope of  $\tanh(\cdot)$  close to the origin.

### 13.4.2 Sliding-Mode Control using the Eigenvalue Decomposition

Healey and Lienard (1993) have applied the theory of *sliding-mode control* to control the NPS AUV II. A related work discussing the problems of adaptive sliding-mode control in the dive plane is found in Cristi *et al.* (1990). Sliding-mode control for highly maneuverable underwater vehicles is discussed by Lyshevski (2001), who considers the 6 DOF underwater vehicle equations of motion.

The method presented in this section can be applied to the lateral model (7.132), which includes the roll mode, or to the reduced order model (7.33), which is recognized as the linearized maneuvering model (see Section 7.1.4). Consider the state-space model

$$\dot{x} = Ax + bu + f(x, t) \quad (13.585)$$

where  $f(x, t)$  is a nonlinear function describing the deviation from linearity in terms of disturbances and unmodeled dynamics,  $x = [v, r, \psi]^\top$  and  $u = \delta_R$  is the rudder angle. Consequently,

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & 0 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad b = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.586)$$

The experiments of Healey and coauthors show that this model can be used to describe a large number of AUV maneuvers. The feedback control law is composed of two parts:

$$u = -\mathbf{k}^\top \mathbf{x} + u_o \quad (13.587)$$

where  $\mathbf{k} \in \mathbb{R}^3$  is the feedback gain vector. Substituting (13.587) into (13.585) yields the closed-loop dynamics

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \underbrace{(A - b\mathbf{k}^\top)}_{A_c} \mathbf{x} + bu_o + f(\mathbf{x}, t) \quad (13.588)$$

where  $\mathbf{k}$  is computed by means of pole placement. In order to determine the nonlinear part  $u_o$  of the feedback control law, consider the output mapping

$$s = \mathbf{h}^\top \tilde{\mathbf{x}} \quad (13.589)$$

where  $\mathbf{h} \in \mathbb{R}^3$  is a design vector to be chosen such that  $s \rightarrow 0$ , implying convergence of the state tracking error  $\tilde{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_d \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$ . The output mapping  $s$  is also referred to as a *sliding surface*. Premultiplication of (13.588) with  $\mathbf{h}^\top$  and then subtraction of  $\mathbf{h}^\top \dot{\mathbf{x}}_d$  from both sides gives

$$\dot{s} = \mathbf{h}^\top A_c \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{h}^\top bu_o + \mathbf{h}^\top f(\mathbf{x}, t) - \mathbf{h}^\top \dot{\mathbf{x}}_d \quad (13.590)$$

Assume that  $\mathbf{h}^\top \mathbf{b} \neq 0$  and let the nonlinear control law be chosen as (see Figure 13.36)

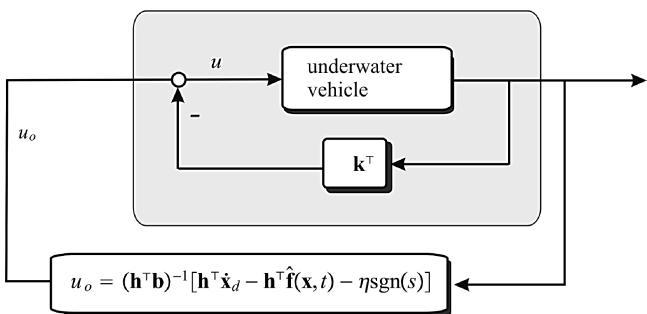
$$u_o = (\mathbf{h}^\top \mathbf{b})^{-1} [\mathbf{h}^\top \dot{\mathbf{x}}_d - \mathbf{h}^\top \hat{f}(\mathbf{x}, t) - \eta \text{sgn}(s)], \quad \eta > 0 \quad (13.591)$$

where  $\hat{f}(\mathbf{x}, t)$  is an estimate of  $f(\mathbf{x}, t)$ . This gives the  $s$  dynamics

$$\dot{s} = \mathbf{h}^\top A_c \mathbf{x} - \eta \text{sgn}(s) + \mathbf{h}^\top \Delta f(\mathbf{x}, t) \quad (13.592)$$

where  $\Delta f(\mathbf{x}, t) = f(\mathbf{x}, t) - \hat{f}(\mathbf{x}, t)$ . The first term in this equation can be rewritten as

$$\mathbf{h}^\top A_c \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^\top A_c^\top \mathbf{h} = \lambda \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{h} \quad (13.593)$$



**Figure 13.36** Nonlinear sliding-mode controller.

by requiring that  $\mathbf{h}$  is a *right eigenvector* of  $\mathbf{A}_c^\top$  such that

$$\mathbf{A}_c^\top \mathbf{h} = \lambda \mathbf{h} \quad (13.594)$$

where  $\lambda = \lambda(\mathbf{A}_c^\top)$  is the *eigenvalue* corresponding to  $\mathbf{h}$ . Hence,

$$\dot{s} = \lambda \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{h} - \eta \text{sgn}(s) + \mathbf{h}^\top \Delta f(\mathbf{x}, t) \quad (13.595)$$

### Computation of $\mathbf{h}$ and $k$

The eigenvalue  $\lambda$  in (13.595) can be made zero by noticing that (13.586) has one pure integrator. Let

$$\mathbf{k} = [k_1, k_2, 0]^\top \quad (13.596)$$

such that the linear part of the controller only stabilizes the sway velocity  $v$  and yaw rate  $r$ . The yaw angle  $\psi$  is left uncontrolled in the inner loop since this results in a closed-loop system matrix:

$$\mathbf{A}_c = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} - b_1 k_1 & a_{12} - b_1 k_2 & 0 \\ a_{21} - b_2 k_1 & a_{22} - b_2 k_2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.597)$$

where one of the eigenvalues is zero. Consequently,

$$\lambda \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{h} = 0 \text{ if } \mathbf{h} \text{ is a right eigenvector of } \mathbf{A}_c^\top \text{ for } \lambda = 0 \quad (13.598)$$

With this choice of  $\mathbf{h}$ , the  $s$  dynamics (13.595) reduces to

$$\dot{s} = -\eta \text{sgn}(s) + \mathbf{h}^\top \Delta f(\mathbf{x}, t) \quad (13.599)$$

and it follows from

$$V = \frac{1}{2} s^2 \quad (13.600)$$

that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V} &= s \dot{s} \\ &= -\eta \text{sgn}(s)s + s \mathbf{h}^\top \Delta f(\mathbf{x}, t) \\ &= -\eta |s| + s \mathbf{h}^\top \Delta f(\mathbf{x}, t) \end{aligned} \quad (13.601)$$

Selecting  $\eta$  as

$$\eta > \| \mathbf{h} \| \cdot \| \Delta f(\mathbf{x}, t) \| \quad (13.602)$$

finally yields

$$\dot{V} \leq 0 \quad (13.603)$$

Hence, by application of Barbălat's lemma,  $s$  converges to zero in finite time if  $\eta$  is chosen to be large enough to overcome the destabilizing effects of the unmodeled dynamics  $\Delta f(\mathbf{x}, t)$ . The magnitude of  $\eta$  will be a trade-off between robustness and performance.

### Implementation Considerations

In practical implementations, chattering should be removed by replacing  $\text{sgn}(s)$  with

$$\text{sat}(s) := \begin{cases} \text{sgn}(s) & \text{if } |s/\phi| > 1 \\ s/\phi & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (13.604)$$

where the design parameter  $\phi$  is the sliding surface boundary layer thickness. Alternatively, the discontinuous function  $\text{sat}(s/\phi)$  could be replaced by the continuous function  $\tanh(s/\phi)$ . It should be noted that the proposed feedback control with a predescribed  $\eta$  usually yields a conservative estimate of the necessary control action required to stabilize the plant. This suggests that  $\eta$  should be treated as a tunable parameter.

#### 13.4.3 Case Study: Heading Autopilot for Ships and Underwater Vehicles

Consider the autopilot model

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{v} \\ \dot{r} \\ \dot{\psi} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & 0 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v - v_c \\ r \\ \psi \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \delta \quad (13.605)$$

where  $|v_c| < v_c^{\max}$  is the transverse ocean current velocity. The reference trajectory is specified according to

$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{\psi}_d \\ \dot{r}_d \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -\omega_n^2 & -2\zeta\omega_n \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \psi_d \\ r_d \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \omega_n^2 \end{bmatrix} \psi_{\text{ref}} \quad (13.606)$$

while  $v_d = 0$  during turning. Let  $\mathbf{x} = [v, r, \psi]^T$  and  $\mathbf{h} = [k_1, k_2, k_3]^T$  such that

$$s = \mathbf{h}^T(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_d) = h_1 v + h_2(r - r_d) + h_3(\psi - \psi_d) \quad (13.607)$$

Feedback from the sway velocity  $v$  and yaw rate  $r$ , that is  $\mathbf{k} = [k_1, k_2, 0]^T$ , implies that

$$\mathbf{A}_c = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{b}\mathbf{k}^T = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} - b_1 k_1 & a_{12} - b_1 k_2 & 0 \\ a_{21} - b_2 k_1 & a_{22} - b_2 k_2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.608)$$

where the yaw dynamics  $\dot{\psi} = r$  is left unchanged. A pure integrator in yaw corresponding to the eigenvalue  $\lambda = 0$  is necessary in order to satisfy

$$\lambda \mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{h} = 0 \quad (13.609)$$

The eigenvector  $\mathbf{h}$  is computed in Matlab as:

### Matlab

```
p = [-1 -1 0] % desired poles for Ac
k = place(A,b,p) % pole placement
Ac = A-b*k'
[V,D]=eig(Ac') % eigenvalue decomposition
for i = 1:3 % extract the eigenvector h from V
    hi = V(:,i);
    if norm(hi.*Ac) < 1e-10; h = hi; end
end
```

The resulting tracking controller is

$$\delta = -k_1 v - k_2 r + \frac{1}{h_1 b_1 + h_2 b_2} [h_2 \dot{r}_d + h_3 r_d - \eta \text{sat}(s)] \quad (13.610)$$

Since the disturbance  $v_c$  is unknown, the best guess for

$$f(\mathbf{x}, t) = - \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} v_c(t) \quad (13.611)$$

is  $f(\hat{\mathbf{x}}, t) = \mathbf{0}$ . Hence,

$$\eta > \| \mathbf{h} \| \cdot \| -[a_{11}, a_{12}, 0]^T v_c^{\max} \| \quad (13.612)$$

#### 13.4.4 Case Study: Pitch and Depth Autopilot for Underwater Vehicles

Pitch and depth control of underwater vehicles is usually done by using control surfaces, thrusters and ballast systems. For a neutrally buoyant vehicle, stern rudders are effective for diving and depth changing maneuvers, since they require relatively little control energy compared to thrusters. Consider the longitudinal model in Section 7.5.6, which can be written

$$\begin{bmatrix} m - X_{\dot{u}} & -X_{\dot{w}} & mz_g - X_{\dot{q}} \\ -X_{\dot{w}} & m - Z_w & -mx_g - Z_{\dot{q}} \\ mz_g - X_{\dot{q}} & -mx_g - Z_{\dot{q}} & I_y - M_q \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{u} \\ \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -X_u & -X_w & -X_q \\ -Z_u & -Z_w & -Z_q \\ -M_u & -M_w & -M_q \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -(m - X_{\dot{u}})u \\ 0 & (Z_{\dot{w}} - X_{\dot{u}})u & mx_g u \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ w \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ W \overline{B} \overline{G}_z \sin(\theta) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \tau_1 \\ \tau_3 \\ \tau_5 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.613)$$

The speed dynamics can be removed from this model by assuming that the speed controller stabilizes the forward speed such that

$$u = u_o = \text{constant} \quad (13.614)$$

Hence, (13.613) reduces to a combined pitch and diving model

$$\begin{bmatrix} m - Z_w & -mx_g - Z_{\dot{q}} \\ -mx_g - Z_{\dot{q}} & I_y - M_{\dot{q}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -Z_w & -Z_q \\ -M_w & -M_q \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} w \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -(m - X_{\dot{u}})u_o \\ (Z_w - X_{\dot{u}})u_o & mx_g u_o \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} w \\ q \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \overline{B}G_z W \sin(\theta) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \tau_3 \\ \tau_5 \end{bmatrix}$$

A state-space representation of this model is

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}u + \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, t) \quad (13.615)$$



$$\begin{bmatrix} \dot{w} \\ \dot{q} \\ \dot{\theta} \\ \dot{d} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & 0 & 0 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -u_0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} w \\ q \\ \theta \\ d \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \delta_S + \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, t) \quad (13.616)$$

where  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, t)$  is a nonlinear function describing the deviation from linearity in terms of disturbances and unmodeled dynamics,  $\mathbf{x} = [w, q, \theta, d]^\top$  and  $u = \delta_S$  is the stern rudder. The kinematic equations are based on the approximations (see Section 2.2.1)

$$\dot{\theta} = p \cos(\phi) - \sin(\phi) \approx q \quad (13.617)$$

$$\dot{d} = -u_0 \sin(\theta) + v \cos(\theta) \sin(\psi) + w \cos(\theta) \cos(\psi) \approx w - u_0 \theta \quad (13.618)$$

for  $v = p = 0$  and small values of  $\theta$  and  $\phi$ .

The sliding surface for pitch and diving control can be constructed as

$$s = \mathbf{h}^\top \tilde{\mathbf{x}} = h_1(w - w_d) + h_2(q - q_d) + h_3(\theta - \theta_d) + h_4(d - d_d) \quad (13.619)$$

where  $h_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, 4$  are the components of  $\mathbf{h}$ . Let  $\mathbf{x}_d = [w_d, q_d, \theta_d, d_d]^\top$  be a desired state vector given by a reference model. From (13.587) and (13.591) it is seen that

$$u = -\mathbf{k}^\top \mathbf{x} + u_o \quad (13.620)$$

$$u_o = (\mathbf{h}^\top \mathbf{b})^{-1} [\mathbf{h}^\top \dot{\mathbf{x}}_d - \mathbf{h}^\top \hat{\mathbf{f}}(\mathbf{x}, t) - \eta \operatorname{sgn}(s)], \quad \eta > 0 \quad (13.621)$$

where  $\mathbf{k} = [k_1, k_2, 0, k_4]^\top$ . Notice that  $k_3 = 0$  since there is one pure integration in the pitch channel. Hence,  $\mathbf{h}$  is found by computing the eigenvalues  $\lambda(\mathbf{A}_c) = \lambda(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{b}\mathbf{k}^\top)$  where  $\mathbf{A}_c^\top \mathbf{h} = \mathbf{0}$  for  $\lambda_3 = 0$ . Consequently,

$$\delta_S = -k_1 w - k_2 q - k_4 d + \frac{1}{h_1 b_1 + h_2 b_2} [h_1 \dot{w}_d + h_2 \dot{q}_d + h_3 \theta_d + h_4 d_d - \eta \operatorname{sgn}(s)] \quad (13.622)$$

# Appendices

*Handbook of Marine Craft Hydrodynamics and Motion Control*, First Edition. Thor I. Fossen.  
© 2011 John Wiley & Sons Ltd. Published 2011 by John Wiley & Sons Ltd. ISBN: 978-1-119-99149-6

# A

# Nonlinear Stability Theory

This appendix briefly reviews some useful results from nonlinear stability theory. The methods are classified according to:

- Lyapunov stability of nonlinear *autonomous* systems  $\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$ , that is systems where  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x})$  does not explicitly depend on the time  $t$ .
- Lyapunov stability of nonlinear *nonautonomous* systems  $\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, t)$ , that is systems where  $\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, t)$  does depend on  $t$  explicitly.

## A.1 Lyapunov Stability for Autonomous Systems

Before stating the main Lyapunov theorems for *autonomous* systems, the concepts of stability and convergence are briefly reviewed (Khalil, 2002).

### A.1.1 Stability and Convergence

Consider the nonlinear time-invariant system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}), \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0 \quad (\text{A.1})$$

where  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\mathbf{f} : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  is assumed to be *locally Lipschitz* in  $\mathbf{x}$ ; that is for each point  $\mathbf{x} \in D \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  there exists a neighborhood  $D_0 \in D$  such that

$$\|\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}) - \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{y})\| \leq L \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}\|, \quad \forall \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in D_0 \quad (\text{A.2})$$

where  $L$  is called the Lipschitz constant on  $D_0$ .

Let  $\mathbf{x}_e$  denote the equilibrium point of (A.1) given by

$$\mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}_e) = \mathbf{0} \quad (\text{A.3})$$

The solutions  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  of (A.1) are:

- *bounded*, if there exists a nonnegative function  $0 < \gamma(\mathbf{x}(0)) < \infty$  such that

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t)\| \leq \gamma(\mathbf{x}(0)), \quad \forall t \geq 0 \quad (\text{A.4})$$

In addition, the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_e$  of (A.1) is:

**Table A.1** Classification of theorems for stability and convergence

Autonomous systems	$V > 0, \dot{V} < 0$	Lyapunov's direct method	GAS/GES
	$V > 0, \dot{V} \leq 0$	Krasovskii–LaSalle's theorem	GAS
Non-autonomous systems	$V > 0, \dot{V} < 0$	LaSalle–Yoshizawa's theorem	UGAS
	$V > 0, \dot{V} \leq 0$	Matrosov's theorem	UGAS
	$V \geq 0, \dot{V} \leq 0$	Barbalat's lemma	Convergence

- *stable*, if, for each  $\epsilon > 0$ , there exists a  $\delta(\epsilon) > 0$  such that

$$\|\mathbf{x}(0)\| < \delta(\epsilon) \Rightarrow \|\mathbf{x}(t)\| < \epsilon, \quad \forall t \geq 0 \quad (\text{A.5})$$

- *unstable*, if it is not stable.
- *attractive*, if, for each  $r > 0, \epsilon > 0$ , there exists a  $T(r, \epsilon) > 0$  such that

$$\|\mathbf{x}(0)\| \leq r \Rightarrow \|\mathbf{x}(t)\| \leq \epsilon, \quad \forall t \geq T(r, \epsilon) \quad (\text{A.6})$$

Attractivity implies convergence, that is  $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \|\mathbf{x}(t)\| = \mathbf{0}$ .

- (*locally*) *asymptotically stable (AS)*, if the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_e$  is stable and attractive.
- *globally stable (GS)*, if the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_e$  is stable and  $\delta(\epsilon)$  can be chosen to satisfy  $\lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow \infty} \delta(\epsilon) = \infty$ .
- *global asymptotically stable (GAS)*, if the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_e$  is stable for all  $\mathbf{x}(0)$  (region of attraction  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ).
- (*locally*) *exponentially stable (ES)*, if there exist positive constants  $\alpha, \lambda$  and  $r$  such that

$$\|\mathbf{x}(0)\| < r \Rightarrow \|\mathbf{x}(t)\| < \alpha \exp(-\lambda t) \|\mathbf{x}(0)\|, \quad \forall t \geq 0 \quad (\text{A.7})$$

- *globally exponentially stable (GES)*, if there exist positive constants  $\alpha, \lambda$  and  $r$  such that for all  $\mathbf{x}(0)$  (region of attraction  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ):

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t)\| < \alpha \exp(-\lambda t) \|\mathbf{x}(0)\|, \quad \forall t \geq 0 \quad (\text{A.8})$$

Different theorems for investigation of stability and convergence will now be presented. A guideline for which theorem that should be applied is given in Table A.1 whereas the different theorems are listed in the forthcoming sections.

Notice that for nonautonomous systems GAS is replaced by *uniform global asymptotic stability* (UGAS) since uniformity is a necessary requirement in the case of time-varying nonlinear systems.

### A.1.2 Lyapunov's Direct Method

#### Theorem A.1 (Lyapunov's Direct Method)

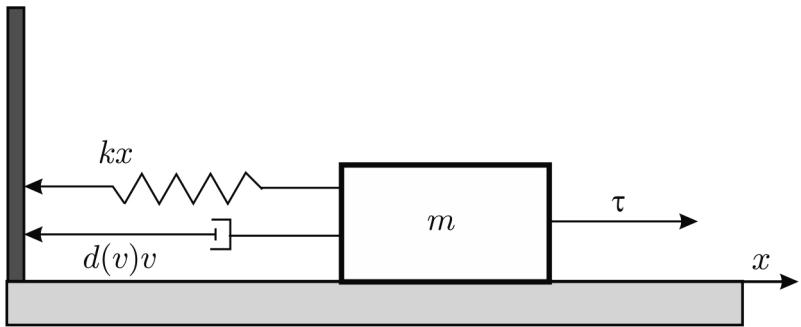
Let  $\mathbf{x}_e$  be the equilibrium point of (A.1) and assume that  $f(\mathbf{x})$  is locally Lipschitz in  $\mathbf{x}$ . Let  $V : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  be a continuously differentiable function  $V(\mathbf{x})$  satisfying:

$$(i) V(\mathbf{x}) > 0 \text{ (positive definite) and } V(0) = 0 \quad (\text{A.9})$$

$$(ii) \dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{\partial V(\mathbf{x})}{\partial \mathbf{x}} f(\mathbf{x}) \leq -W(\mathbf{x}) \leq 0 \quad (\text{A.10})$$

$$(iii) V(\mathbf{x}) \rightarrow \infty \text{ as } \|\mathbf{x}\| \rightarrow \infty \text{ (radially unbounded)} \quad (\text{A.11})$$

Then the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_e$  is GS if  $W(\mathbf{x}) \geq 0$  (positive semi-definite) and GAS if  $W(\mathbf{x}) > 0$  (positive definite) for all  $\mathbf{x} \neq 0$ .



**Figure A.1** Mass–damper–spring system.

**Proof.** See Khalil (2002) or Lyapunov (1907).

The requirement that  $W(\mathbf{x}) > 0$  such that  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) < 0$  is in many cases difficult to satisfy. This is illustrated in the following example.

**Example A.1 (Stability of a Mass–Damper–Spring System)**

Consider the nonlinear mass–damper–spring system

$$\dot{x} = v \quad (\text{A.12})$$

$$m\dot{v} + d(v)v + kx^2 = 0 \quad (\text{A.13})$$

where  $m > 0$ ,  $d(v) > 0$ ,  $\forall v$  and  $k > 0$ , see Figure A.1. Let us choose  $V(\mathbf{x})$  as the sum of kinetic energy  $\frac{1}{2}mv^2$  and potential energy  $\frac{1}{2}kx^2$  such that

$$V(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{2} (mv^2 + kx^2) = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{x}^\top \begin{bmatrix} m & 0 \\ 0 & k \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x} \quad (\text{A.14})$$

where  $\mathbf{x} = [v, x]^\top$  results in

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) &= mv\dot{v} + kx\dot{x} \\ &= v(m\dot{v} + kx) \\ &= -d(v)v^2 \\ &= -\mathbf{x}^\top \begin{bmatrix} d(v) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathbf{x} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.15})$$

Hence, only stability can be concluded from Theorem A.1, since  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = 0$  for all  $v = 0$ . However, GAS can in many cases also be proven for systems with a negative semi-definite  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x})$  thanks to the invariant set theorem of Krasovskii–LaSalle; see LaSalle and Lefschetz (1961) and LaSalle (1966).

### A.1.3 Krasovskii–LaSalle’s Theorem

The theorem of Krasovskii–LaSalle can be used to check a nonlinear autonomous system for GAS in the case of a negative semi-definite  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x})$ .

**Theorem A.2 (Krasovskii–LaSalle’s Theorem)**

Let  $V : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  be a continuously differentiable positive definite function such that

$$V(\mathbf{x}) \rightarrow \infty \text{ as } \|\mathbf{x}\| \rightarrow \infty \quad (\text{A.16})$$

$$\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) \leq 0, \quad \forall \mathbf{x} \quad (\text{A.17})$$

Let  $\Omega$  be the set of all points where  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = 0$ , that is

$$\Omega = \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = 0\} \quad (\text{A.18})$$

and  $M$  be the largest invariant set in  $\Omega$ . Then all solutions  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  converge to  $M$ . If  $M = \{\mathbf{x}_e\}$  then the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_e$  of (A.1) is GAS.

**Proof.** See LaSalle (1966).

**Example A.2 (Continued Example A.1: Stability of a Mass–Damper–Spring System)**

Again consider the mass–damper–spring system of Example A.1. The set  $\Omega$  is found by requiring that

$$\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) = -d(v)v^2 \equiv 0 \quad (\text{A.19})$$

which is true for  $v = 0$ . Therefore,

$$\Omega = \{(\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}, v = 0)\} \quad (\text{A.20})$$

Now,  $v = 0$  implies that  $m\dot{v} = -kx$ , which is nonzero when  $x \neq 0$ . Hence, the system cannot get “stuck” at a point other than  $x = 0$ . Since the equilibrium point of the mass–damper–spring system is  $(x, v) = (0, 0)$ , the largest invariant set  $M$  in  $\Omega$  contains only one point, namely  $(x, v) = (0, 0)$ . Hence, the equilibrium point of (A.1) is GAS according to Theorem A.2.

#### A.1.4 Global Exponential Stability

The following theorem is useful to guarantee exponential convergence.

**Theorem A.3 (Global Exponential Stability)**

Let  $\mathbf{x}_e$  be the equilibrium point of (A.1) and assume that  $f(\mathbf{x})$  is locally Lipschitz in  $\mathbf{x}$ . Let  $V : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  be a continuously differentiable and radially unbounded function satisfying

$$V(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{P} \mathbf{x} > 0, \quad \forall \mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{0} \quad (\text{A.21})$$

$$\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) \leq -\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{x} < 0, \quad \forall \mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{0} \quad (\text{A.22})$$

with constant matrices  $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{P}^\top > 0$  and  $\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{Q}^\top > 0$ . Then the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_e$  is GES and the state vector satisfies

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2 \leq \sqrt{\frac{\lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P})}{\lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{P})}} \exp(-\alpha t) \|\mathbf{x}(0)\|_2 \quad (\text{A.23})$$

where

$$\alpha = \frac{\lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{Q})}{2\lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P})} > 0 \quad (\text{A.24})$$

is a bound on the convergence rate.

**Proof.** Since  $V(\mathbf{x})$  is bounded by

$$0 < \lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{P}) \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2^2 \leq V(\mathbf{x}) \leq \lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P}) \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2^2, \quad \forall \mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{0} \quad (\text{A.25})$$

it is seen that

$$-\|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2^2 \leq -\frac{1}{\lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P})} V(\mathbf{x}) \quad (\text{A.26})$$

Hence, it follows from (A.22) that

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}(\mathbf{x}) &\leq -\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{x} \\ &\leq -\lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{Q}) \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2^2 \\ &\leq -\underbrace{\frac{\lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{Q})}{\lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P})}}_{2\alpha} V(\mathbf{x}) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.27})$$

Integration of  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}(t))$  yields

$$V(\mathbf{x}(t)) \leq \exp(-2\alpha t) V(\mathbf{x}(0)) \quad (\text{A.28})$$

Finally, (A.25) implies

$$\lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{P}) \|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2^2 \leq \exp(-2\alpha t) \lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P}) \|\mathbf{x}(0)\|_2^2 \quad (\text{A.29})$$

$$\|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2 \leq \sqrt{\frac{\lambda_{\max}(\mathbf{P})}{\lambda_{\min}(\mathbf{P})}} e^{-\alpha t} \|\mathbf{x}(0)\|_2 \quad (\text{A.30})$$

This shows that  $\|\mathbf{x}(t)\|_2$  will converge exponentially to zero with convergence rate  $\alpha$ .

## A.2 Lyapunov Stability of Nonautonomous Systems

In this section several useful theorems for convergence and stability of time-varying nonlinear systems

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, t), \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0 \quad (\text{A.31})$$

where  $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $t \in \mathbb{R}_+$  and  $\mathbf{f} : \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$  is assumed to be *locally Lipschitz* in  $\mathbf{x}$  and uniformly in  $t$ , are briefly reviewed.

### A.2.1 Barbălat's Lemma

**Lemma A.1 (Barbălat's Lemma)**

Let  $\phi : \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  be a uniformly continuous function and suppose that  $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^t \phi(\tau) d\tau$  exists and is finite; then

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \phi(t) = 0 \quad (\text{A.32})$$

**Proof.** See Barbălat (1959).

Notice that *Barbălat's lemma* only guarantees *global convergence*. This result is particularly useful if there exists a uniformly continuous function  $V: \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  satisfying:

- (i)  $V(\mathbf{x}, t) \geq 0$
- (ii)  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}, t) \leq 0$
- (iii)  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}, t)$  is uniformly continuous

Hence, according to Barbălat's lemma,  $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \dot{V}(\mathbf{x}, t) = 0$ . The requirement that  $\dot{V}$  should be uniformly continuous can easily be checked by using

$$\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}, t) \text{ is bounded} \implies \dot{V}(\mathbf{x}, t) \text{ is uniformly continuous}$$

### A.2.2 LaSalle–Yoshizawa's Theorem

For nonautonomous systems the following theorem of LaSalle (1966) and Yoshizawa (1968) is quite useful

#### Theorem A.4 (LaSalle–Yoshizawa's Theorem)

Let  $\mathbf{x}_e = \mathbf{0}$  be the equilibrium point of (A.31) and assume that  $f(\mathbf{x}, t)$  is locally Lipschitz in  $\mathbf{x}$ . Let  $V: \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  be a continuously differentiable function  $V(\mathbf{x}, t)$  satisfying

$$(i) \quad V(\mathbf{x}, t) > 0 \text{ (positive definite) and } V(0) = 0 \quad (\text{A.33})$$

$$(ii) \quad \dot{V}(\mathbf{x}, t) = \frac{\partial V(\mathbf{x}, t)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial V(\mathbf{x}, t)}{\partial \mathbf{x}} f(\mathbf{x}, t) \leq -W(\mathbf{x}) \leq 0 \quad (\text{A.34})$$

$$(iii) \quad V(\mathbf{x}, t) \rightarrow \infty \text{ as } \|\mathbf{x}\| \rightarrow \infty \text{ (radially unbounded)} \quad (\text{A.35})$$

where  $W(\mathbf{x})$  is a continuous function. Then all solutions  $\mathbf{x}(t)$  of (A.31) are uniformly globally bounded and

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} W(\mathbf{x}(t)) = 0 \quad (\text{A.36})$$

In addition, if  $W(\mathbf{x}) > 0$  (positive definite), then the equilibrium point  $\mathbf{x}_e = \mathbf{0}$  of (A.31) is UGAS.

**Proof.** See LaSalle (1966) and Yoshizawa (1968).

### A.2.3 Matrosov's Theorem

Nonautonomous systems where  $\dot{V}(\mathbf{x}, t) \leq 0$  are UGAS if Matrosov's theorem is satisfied (Matrosov, 1962).

#### Definition A.1 (Class $\mathcal{K}$ Function)

A continuous function  $\alpha: [0, a] \rightarrow [0, \infty)$  is said to belong to class  $\mathcal{K}$  if it is strictly increasing and  $\alpha(0) = 0$ . It is said to belong to class  $\mathcal{K}_\infty$  if  $a = \infty$  and  $\alpha(r) \rightarrow \infty$  as  $r \rightarrow \infty$ .

Given two constants  $0 \leq \delta \leq \Delta < \infty$  and  $\mathcal{H}(\delta, \Delta) := \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n : \delta \leq |\mathbf{x}| \leq \Delta\}$ , then Matrosov's theorem can be stated according to:

#### Theorem A.5 (Matrosov's Theorem)

Consider the system:

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = f(\mathbf{x}, t), \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}_0, \quad \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n \quad (\text{A.37})$$

If for this system there exist:

- a locally Lipschitz function  $V: \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$
- a continuous positive semi-definite function  $U: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$
- functions  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2 \in \mathcal{K}_\infty$

such that:

1.  $\alpha_1(\|x\|) \leq V(t, x) \leq \alpha_2(\|x\|) \quad \forall (t, x) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^n$
2.  $\dot{V}(t, x) \leq -U(x)$  for almost all  $(t, x) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^n$

and for each  $0 < \delta \leq \Delta$  and  $\mathcal{H}(0, \Delta) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$  there exist:

- a locally Lipschitz function  $W: \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$
- a continuous function  $Y: \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$
- strictly positive numbers  $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2, \psi > 0$

such that:

3.  $\max \{|W(t, x)|, |Y(x)|\} \leq \psi \quad \forall (t, x) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathcal{H}(0, \Delta)$
4.  $\dot{W}(t, x) \leq Y(x)$  for all  $(t, x) \in \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^n$ .
5.  $x \in \mathcal{H}(\delta, \Delta) \cap \{x : U(x) \leq \varepsilon_1\} \implies Y(x) \leq -\varepsilon_2$ .

then the origin of (A.37) is UGAS.

**Remark:** If the system (A.37) is time-invariant, that is  $\dot{x} = f(x)$ , then Condition 5 can be replaced by:

5.  $x \in \mathcal{H}(\delta, \Delta) \cap \{x : U(x) = 0\} \implies Y(x) < 0$

#### A.2.4 UGAS when Backstepping with Integral Action

When designing industrial control systems it is important to include integral action in the control law in order to compensate for slowly varying and constant disturbances. This is necessary to avoid steady-state errors both in regulation and tracking. The integral part of the controller can be provided by using *adaptive backstepping* (Krstic *et al.*, 1995) under the assumption of constant disturbances (see Section 13.3.4). Unfortunately, the resulting error dynamics in this case often becomes nonautonomous, which again implies that *Krasovskii–LaSalle’s theorem* cannot be used. An alternative theorem for this case will be stated by considering the nonlinear system

$$\dot{x} = f(x, u, \theta, t) \quad (\text{A.38})$$

where  $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $u \in \mathbb{R}^n$  and  $\theta \in \mathbb{R}^p$  ( $p \leq n$ ) is a constant *unknown* parameter vector. Furthermore, assume that there exists an adaptive control law

$$u = u(x, x_d, \hat{\theta}) \quad (\text{A.39})$$

$$\dot{\hat{\theta}} = \phi(x, x_d) \quad (\text{A.40})$$

where  $x_d \in C^r$  and  $\hat{\theta} \in \mathbb{R}^p$ , such that the error dynamics can be written

$$\dot{z} = h(z, t) + B(t) \tilde{\theta} \quad (\text{A.41})$$

$$\dot{\tilde{\theta}} = -PB(t)^\top \left( \frac{\partial W(z, t)}{\partial z} \right)^\top, \quad P = P^\top > 0 \quad (\text{A.42})$$

where  $W(z, t)$  is a suitable  $C^1$  function and  $\tilde{\theta} = \hat{\theta} - \theta$  is the parameter estimation error. The parameter estimate  $\hat{\theta}$  can be used to compensate for a constant disturbance, that is integral action. Hence, the conditions in the following theorem can be used to establish UGAS when backstepping with integral action. The conditions are based on Loria *et al.* (1999) or alternatively Fossen *et al.* (2001). This can also be proven by applying Matrosov's theorem.

**Theorem A.6 (UGAS/LES when Backstepping with Integral Action)**

The origin of the system (A.41)–(A.42) is UGAS if  $\mathbf{B}^\top(t)\mathbf{B}(t)$  is invertible for all  $t$ ,  $\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{P}^\top > 0$ , there exists a continuous, nondecreasing function  $\rho : \mathbb{R}_+ \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_+$  such that

$$\max \left\{ \|h(z, t)\|, \left\| \frac{\partial W(z, t)}{\partial z} \right\| \right\} \leq \rho(\|z\|) \|z\| \quad (\text{A.43})$$

and there exist class- $\mathcal{K}_\infty$  functions  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$  and a strictly positive real number  $c > 0$  such that  $W(z, t)$  satisfy

$$\alpha_1(\|z\|) \leq W(z, t) \leq \alpha_2(\|z\|) \quad (\text{A.44})$$

$$\frac{\partial W(z, t)}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial W(z, t)}{\partial z} h(z, t) \leq -c \|z\|^2. \quad (\text{A.45})$$

If, in addition,  $\alpha_2(s) \propto s^2$  for sufficiently small  $s$  then the origin is LES.

**Proof.** See Fossen *et al.* (2001).

Theorem A.6 implies that both  $z \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$  and  $\tilde{\theta} \rightarrow \mathbf{0}$  when  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . The following example illustrates how a UGAS integral controller can be derived:

**Example A.3 (UGAS Integral Controller)**

Consider the nonautonomous system

$$\dot{x} = -a(t)x + \theta + u \quad (\text{A.46})$$

$$u = -K_p x - \hat{\theta} \quad (\text{A.47})$$

$$\dot{\hat{\theta}} = px \quad (\text{A.48})$$

where  $0 < a(t) \leq a_{\max}$ ,  $\theta = \text{constant}$ ,  $K_p > 0$  and  $p > 0$ . This is a PI controller since

$$u = -K_p x - p \int_0^t x(\tau) d\tau \quad (\text{A.49})$$

Choosing  $z = x$ , the error dynamics can be written

$$\dot{z} = -(a(t) + K_p)z - \tilde{\theta} \quad (\text{A.50})$$

$$\dot{\tilde{\theta}} = pz \quad (\text{A.51})$$

which is in the form (A.41)–(A.42) with  $W(z) = \frac{1}{2}z^2$  and  $\mathbf{B} = 1$ . Since  $\mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{B} = 1 > 0$  and

$$\max \left\{ |a(t)z + K_p z|, |z| \right\} \leq \rho|z| \quad (\text{A.52})$$

with  $\rho = a_{\max} + K_p$ , the equilibrium point  $z = 0$  is UGAS according to Theorem A.6. Notice that the LaSalle–Yoshizawa theorem fails for this case since

$$V(z, t) = W(z) + \frac{1}{2p} \theta^2 \quad (\text{A.53})$$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{V}(z, t) &= z\dot{z} + \frac{1}{p} \tilde{\theta} \dot{\tilde{\theta}} \\ &= -[a(t) + K_p]z^2 \\ &\leq 0 \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.54})$$

which by LaSalle–Yoshizawa only shows UGS and  $z(t) \rightarrow 0$ , but not  $\tilde{\theta} \rightarrow 0$ .

# B

## Numerical Methods

From a physical point of view, marine craft kinematics and kinetics are most naturally derived in the continuous-time domain using *Newtonian* or *Lagrangian* dynamics. In the implementation of a control law, it is desirable to represent the nonlinear dynamics in discrete time. This chapter discusses methods for discretization of linear and nonlinear systems, numerical integration and differentiation.

### B.1 Discretization of Continuous-Time Systems

This section discusses discretization of linear state-space models with extensions to nonlinear systems using the method of Smith (1977).

#### Forward Shift Operator

For notational simplicity, let  $t_k = kt$  such that  $\mathbf{x}(k) = \mathbf{x}(t_k)$  and  $\mathbf{x}(k+1) = \mathbf{x}(t_k + h)$  where  $h$  is the sampling interval. The *forward shift operator*  $z$  is defined by

$$\mathbf{x}(k+1) := z\mathbf{x}(k) \quad (\text{B.1})$$

#### B.1.1 Linear State-Space Models

Consider the linear continuous-time model

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = A\mathbf{x} + B\mathbf{u} \quad (\text{B.2})$$

Assume that  $\mathbf{u}$  is piecewise constant over the sampling interval  $h$  and equal to  $\mathbf{u}(k)$ . Hence, the solution of (B.2) can be written

$$\mathbf{x}(k+1) = \exp(Ah)\mathbf{x}(k) + \int_{kh}^{(k+1)h} \exp(A[(k+1)h - \tau])B\mathbf{u}(k)d\tau \quad (\text{B.3})$$

which after integration yields the linear discrete-time model

$$\mathbf{x}(k+1) = \Phi \mathbf{x}(k) + \Delta \mathbf{u}(k) \quad (\text{B.4})$$

where

$$\Phi = \exp(Ah), \quad \Delta = A^{-1}(\Phi - I)B \quad (\text{B.5})$$

### Matlab

The matrices  $\Phi$  and  $\Delta$  can be computed in Matlab as

```
[PHI, DELTA] = c2d(A, B, h)
```

### Example B.1 (Discretization of a First-Order Linear System)

Consider the SISO linear system

$$\dot{x} = ax + bu \quad (\text{B.6})$$

$$y = cx + du \quad (\text{B.7})$$

Application of (B.3) yields

$$x(k+1) = \exp(ah)x(k) + \frac{b}{a}[\exp(ah) - 1]u(k) \quad (\text{B.8})$$

$$y(k) = cx(k) + du(k) \quad (\text{B.9})$$

### Computation of the Transition Matrix

The transition matrix  $\Phi$  can be computed numerically as

$$\Phi = \exp(Ah) = I + Ah + \frac{1}{2!}A^2h^2 + \cdots + \frac{1}{n!}A^n h^n + \cdots \quad (\text{B.10})$$

Hence,

$$\Delta = A^{-1}(\Phi - I)B = h + \frac{1}{2!}Ah^2 + \cdots + \frac{1}{n!}A^{n-1}h^n + \cdots \quad (\text{B.11})$$

Consequently, a first-order approximation (Euler discretization) is obtained by

$$\Phi \approx I + Ah, \quad \Delta \approx Bh \quad (\text{B.12})$$

Alternately,  $\Phi$  can be computed by applying a *similarity transformation*

$$\Phi = \exp(Ah) = E \exp(\Lambda h) E^{-1} \quad (\text{B.13})$$

where

$$\exp(\Lambda h) = \text{diag}\{\exp(\lambda_i h)\} \quad (\text{B.14})$$

is a diagonal matrix containing the eigenvalues  $\lambda_i$  of  $A$  and  $E$  is the corresponding eigenvector matrix.

### Matlab

The transition matrix can be computed in Matlab as

```
[L, E]=eig(A)
PHI=E*exp(L*h)*inv(E)
```

## B.1.2 Nonlinear State-Space Models

Consider the nonlinear model

$$M \dot{v} + C(v) v + D(v) v + g(\eta) = Bu \quad (\text{B.15})$$

$$\dot{\eta} = J_{\Theta}(\eta)v \quad (\text{B.16})$$

which can be expressed as a nonlinear time-invariant system

$$\dot{x} = f(x, u) \quad (\text{B.17})$$

where  $x = [\eta^T, v^T]^T$  and

$$f(x, u) = \begin{bmatrix} J_{\Theta}(\eta)v \\ M^{-1}[Bu - C(v)v - D(v)v - g(\eta)] \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{B.18})$$

Differentiating (B.17) with respect to time yields

$$\ddot{x} = \frac{\partial f(x, u)}{\partial x} \dot{x} + \frac{\partial f(x, u)}{\partial u} \dot{u} \quad (\text{B.19})$$

The effect of a zero-order hold in the digital-to-analog converter makes  $\dot{u} = 0$  over the discrete-time interval. Furthermore, the definition of the Jacobian

$$\mathcal{J}(x) := \frac{\partial f(x, u)}{\partial x} \quad (\text{B.20})$$

implies that the nonlinear continuous equation (B.19) is reduced to a homogeneous equation

$$\ddot{x} = \mathcal{J}(x)\dot{x} \quad (\text{B.21})$$

Let

$$\mathcal{J}(x(k)) = \left. \frac{\partial f(x, u)}{\partial x} \right|_{x=x(k)} \quad (\text{B.22})$$

Hence, the solution of the homogeneous differential equation is

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \exp[\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{x}(0))(t - t_0)] \dot{\mathbf{x}}(0) \quad (\text{B.23})$$

Integration of this expression over a sampling interval  $h$  finally yields

$$\mathbf{x}(k + 1) = \mathbf{x}(k) + \int_0^h \exp[\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{x}(k))\tau] \dot{\mathbf{x}}(k) d\tau \quad (\text{B.24})$$

### **Example B.2 (Discretization of a Second-Order Nonlinear System)**

Consider the SISO nonlinear system

$$\dot{x}_1 = x_2 \quad (\text{B.25})$$

$$\dot{x}_2 = f(x_2) + u \quad (\text{B.26})$$

where  $\mathbf{x} = [x_1, x_2]^\top$  is the state vector and  $u$  is the input. The Jacobian is found as

$$\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & a(x_2) \end{bmatrix}, \quad a(x_2) = \frac{\partial f(x_2)}{\partial x_2} \quad (\text{B.27})$$

Hence, applying a similarity transformation:

$$\exp[\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{x}(k))t] = \mathbf{E}^{-1} \exp(\Lambda t) \mathbf{E} \quad (\text{B.28})$$

where  $\Lambda$  is a diagonal matrix containing the eigenvectors of  $\mathcal{J}$  and  $\mathbf{E}$  is a matrix formed by the corresponding eigenvectors, yields

$$\exp[\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{x}(k))t] = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{a_k}[1 - \exp(a_k t)] \\ 0 & \exp(a_k t) \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{B.29})$$

where  $a_k = a(x_2(k))$ . Hence,

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_1(k + 1) \\ x_2(k + 1) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1(k) \\ x_2(k) \end{bmatrix} + \int_0^h \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{a_k}[1 - \exp(a_k \tau)] \\ 0 & \exp(a_k \tau) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_2(k) \\ f(x_2(k)) + u(k) \end{bmatrix} d\tau \quad (\text{B.30})$$

The discrete model (B.24) can be simplified by approximating the exponential function to the first order, that is

$$\exp[\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{x}(k))h] = \mathbf{I} + \mathcal{J}(\mathbf{x}(k))h + O(h^2) \quad (\text{B.31})$$

## B.2 Numerical Integration Methods

In this section numerical solutions to the nonlinear time-varying system

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}, t) \quad (\text{B.32})$$

where the control input  $\mathbf{u}$  is assumed to be constant over the sampling interval  $h$  (zero-order hold), are discussed. Four different methods will be presented.

### B.2.1 Euler's Method

A frequently used method for numerical integration is forward Euler:

$$\mathbf{x}(k+1) = \mathbf{x}(k) + h \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}(k), \mathbf{u}(k), t_k) \quad (\text{B.33})$$

The global truncation error for Euler's method is of order  $O(h)$ .

Applying Euler's method to a second-order system

$$\dot{x} = v \quad (\text{B.34})$$

$$m\dot{v} + dv + kx = \tau \quad (\text{B.35})$$

yields

$$v(k+1) = v(k) + h \left[ \frac{1}{m} \tau(k) - \frac{d}{m} v(k) - \frac{k}{m} x(k) \right] \quad (\text{B.36})$$

$$x(k+1) = x(k) + hv(k) \quad (\text{B.37})$$

It should be noted that Euler's method should only be applied to a well-damped second-order system and not an undamped oscillator. In fact an undamped oscillator will yield an unstable solution, as seen from Figure B.1, where the circle in the upper left-hand plot represents the stable region. An undamped oscillator will have eigenvalues on the imaginary axis, which clearly lie outside the circle.

### Forward and Backward Euler Integration

A stable method for the undamped second-order system can be obtained by combining the *forward* and *backward* methods of Euler (dotted line in the upper left-hand plot in Figure B.1) according to

$$\text{Forward Euler: } v(k+1) = v(k) + h \left[ \frac{1}{m} \tau(k) - \frac{d}{m} v(k) - \frac{k}{m} x(k) \right] \quad (\text{B.38})$$

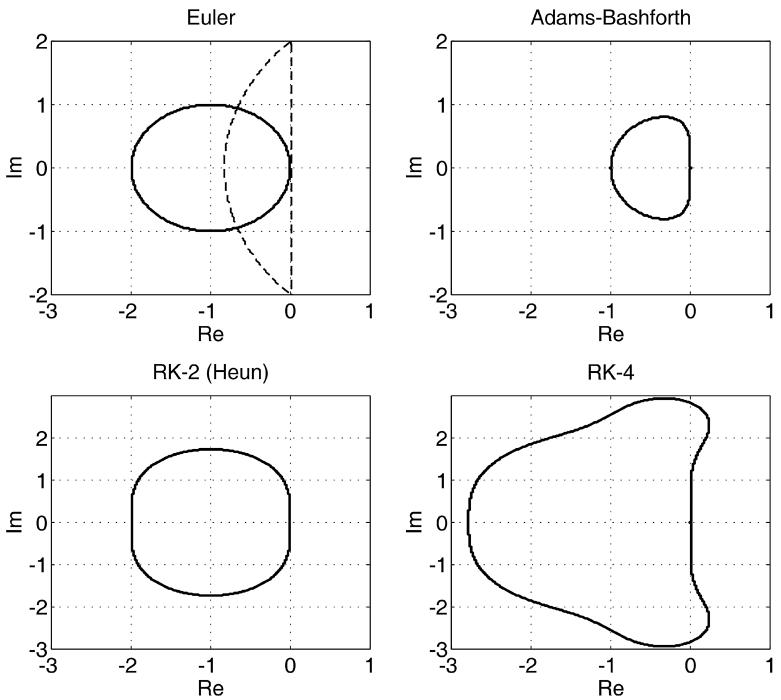
$$\text{Backward Euler: } x(k+1) = x(k) + hv(k+1) \quad (\text{B.39})$$

### Extension to Nonlinear Systems

The methods of Euler can be extended to the more general nonlinear system

$$\dot{\mathbf{v}} = \mathbf{M}^{-1} [\mathbf{B}\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{g}(\eta)] \quad (\text{B.40})$$

$$\dot{\eta} = \mathbf{J}_\Theta(\eta)\mathbf{v} \quad (\text{B.41})$$



**Figure B.1** Stability regions for the Euler, Adams–Bashford, RK-2 and RK-4 methods.

by the following set of discrete-time equations:

$$\boldsymbol{v}(k+1) = \boldsymbol{v}(k) + h \mathbf{M}^{-1} [\mathbf{B}\boldsymbol{u}(k) - \mathbf{C}(\boldsymbol{v}(k))\boldsymbol{v}(k) - \mathbf{D}(\boldsymbol{v}(k))\boldsymbol{v}(k) - \mathbf{g}(\boldsymbol{\eta}(k))] \quad (\text{B.42})$$

$$\boldsymbol{\eta}(k+1) = \boldsymbol{\eta}(k) + h [\mathbf{J}_\Theta(\boldsymbol{\eta}(k))\boldsymbol{v}(k+1)] \quad (\text{B.43})$$

### B.2.2 Adams–Bashford’s Second-Order Method

Adams–Bashford integration is more computationally intensive than the schemes of Euler. For instance, the two-step Adams–Bashford integration

$$\boldsymbol{x}(k+1) = \boldsymbol{x}(k) + h \left[ \frac{3}{2} \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x}(k), \boldsymbol{u}(k), t_k) - \frac{1}{2} \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x}(k-1), \boldsymbol{u}(k-1), t_{k-1}) \right] \quad (\text{B.44})$$

implies that the old value

$$\dot{\boldsymbol{x}}(k-1) = \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x}(k-1), \boldsymbol{u}(k-1), t_{k-1}) \quad (\text{B.45})$$

must be stored. The global truncation error for this method is of order  $O(h^2)$ . The advantage with this method compared to Euler integration is seen from Figure B.1.

### B.2.3 Runge–Kutta Second-Order Method

Heun's integration method or Runge–Kutta's second-order method (RK-2) is implemented as

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= f(\mathbf{x}(k), \mathbf{u}(k), t_k) \\ k_2 &= f(\mathbf{x}(k) + h\mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{u}(k), t_k + h) \\ \mathbf{x}(k+1) &= \mathbf{x}(k) + \frac{h}{2}(\mathbf{k}_1 + \mathbf{k}_2) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.46})$$

The global truncation error for Heun's method is of order  $O(h^2)$ .

### B.2.4 Runge–Kutta Fourth-Order Method

An extension of Heun's integration method to the fourth order (RK-4) is

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= f(\mathbf{x}(k), \mathbf{u}(k), t_k) \\ k_2 &= h f(\mathbf{x}(k) + k_1/2, \mathbf{u}(k), t_k + h/2) \\ k_3 &= h f(\mathbf{x}(k) + k_2/2, \mathbf{u}(k), t_k + h/2) \\ k_4 &= h f(\mathbf{x}(k) + k_3/2, \mathbf{u}(k), t_k + h) \\ \mathbf{x}(k+1) &= \mathbf{x}(k) + \frac{1}{6}(k_1 + 2k_2 + 2k_3 + k_4) \end{aligned} \quad (\text{B.47})$$

The global truncation error for the RK-4 method is of order  $O(h^4)$ .

## B.3 Numerical Differentiation

Numerical differentiation is usually sensitive to noisy measurements. Nevertheless, a reasonable estimate  $\dot{\eta}_f$  of the time derivative  $\dot{\eta}$  of a signal  $\eta$  can be obtained by using a *filtered differentiation*. The simplest filter is obtained by the first-order low-pass structure

$$\dot{\eta}_f(s) = \frac{Ts}{Ts + 1} \eta(s) \quad (\text{B.48})$$

corresponding to the continuous-time system

$$\dot{x} = ax + bu \quad (\text{B.49})$$

$$y = cx + du \quad (\text{B.50})$$

with  $u = \eta$ ,  $y = \dot{\eta}_f$ ,  $a = b = -1/T$  and  $c = d = 1$ . Using the results from Example B.1, the following discrete-time filter equations can be used to differentiate a time-varying signal:

$$x(k+1) = \exp(-h/T)x(k) + [\exp(-h/T) - 1]u(k) \quad (\text{B.51})$$

$$y(k) = x(k) + u(k) \quad (\text{B.52})$$

# References

- 2nd ISSC (1964). Report of the Seakeeping Committee. In: *Proceedings of the 2nd International Ship and Offshore Structures Congress*. Delft, August 1964. p. 19.
- 12th ITTC (1969). Report of the Seakeeping Committee. In: *Proceedings of the 12th International Towing Tank Conference*. Rome, September 1969. pp. 775–779.
- 14th ITTC (1975). Discussion and Recommendations for an ITTC 1975 Maneuvering Trial Code. In: *Proceedings of the 14th International Towing Tank Conference*. Ottawa, September 1975. pp. 348–365.
- 15th ITTC (1978). Report of the Seakeeping Committee. In: *Proceedings of the 15th International Towing Tank Conference*. The Hague, Netherlands, September 1978. pp. 55–70.
- 17th ITTC (1984). Report of the Seakeeping Committee. In: *Proceedings of the 17th International Towing Tank Conference*. The Hague, Netherlands, September 1984. pp. 531–534.
- Aarset, M. F., J. P. Strand and T. I. Fossen (1998). Nonlinear Vectorial Observer Backstepping With Integral Action and Wave Filtering for Ships. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Conference on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'98)*. pp. 83–89.
- Abkowitz, M. A. (1964). Lectures on Ship Hydrodynamics – Steering and Maneuverability. Technical Report Hy-5. Hydro- and Aerodynamic's Laboratory. Lyngby, Denmark.
- Acheson, D. J. (1990). *Elementary Fluid Dynamics*. Oxford Applied Mathematics and Computing Science Series. Clarendon Press, Oxford.
- Allensworth, T. (1999). A Short History of Sperry Marine. Internet. <<http://www.sperry-marine.com/pages/history.html>> [Accessed October 1, 2010].
- Aranda, J., J. M. de-la-Cruz, J. M. Diaz, B. de-Andres, P. Ruiperez, S. Esteban and J. M. Giron (2000). Modelling of a High Speed Craft by a Nonlinear Least Squares Method with Constraints. In: *Proceedings of the 5th IFAC Conference on Maneuvering and Control of Marine Craft (MCMC'2000)*. Aalborg, Denmark. pp. 227–232.
- Arimoto, S. and F. Miyazaki (1984). Stability and Robustness of PID Feedback Control for Robot Manipulators of Sensory Capability. In: *Proceedings of the 1st International Symposium on Robotics Research* (M. Brady and R. Paul, Eds). pp. 783–799. MIT Press.
- Arstein, Z. (1983). Stabilization with Relaxed Controls. *Nonlinear Analysis TMA*-7, 1163–1173.
- Asare, H. and D. Wilson (1986). Design of Computed Torque Model Reference Adaptive Control for Space-Based Robotic Manipulators. ASME, Winter Annual Meeting (WAM), pp. 195–204.
- Athans, M. and Falb, P. L. (Eds) (1966). *Optimal Control*. McGraw-Hill Book Company. New York, NY.

- Bailey, P. A., W. G. Price and P. Temarel (1998). A Unified Mathematical Model Describing the Manoeuvring of a Ship Travelling in a Seaway. *Transactions of the Royal Institute of Naval Architects Transactions RINA-140*, 131–149.
- Baitis, A. E. (1980). The Development and Evaluation of a Rudder Roll Stabilization System for the WHEC Hamiltonian Class. Technical Report DTNSRDC. Naval Ship Research and Development Center. Bethesda, MD.
- Baitis, E., D. A. Woolaver and T. A. Beck (1983). Rudder Roll Stabilization for Coast Guards Cutters and Frigates. *Naval Engineers Journal*, pp. 267–282.
- Baitis, E., D. A. Woolaver and T. A. Beck (1989). Ship Roll Stabilization in the U.S. Navy. *Naval Engineers Journal*, 43–53.
- Balchen, J. G., N. A. Jenssen and S. Sælid (1976). Dynamic Positioning Using Kalman Filtering and Optimal Control Theory. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC/IFIP Symposium on Automation in Offshore Oil Field Operation*. Bergen, Norway. pp. 183–186.
- Balchen, J. G., N. A. Jenssen and S. Sælid (1980a). Dynamic Positioning of Floating Vessels Based on Kalman Filtering and Optimal Control. In: *Proceedings of the 19th IEEE Conference on Decision and Control*. New York, NY. pp. 852–864.
- Balchen, J. G., N. A. Jenssen, E. Mathisen and S. Sælid (1980b). Dynamic Positioning System Based on Kalman Filtering and Optimal Control. *Modeling, Identification and Control MIC-1*(3), 135–163.
- Barbălat (1959). Systèmes d'Équations Différentielles d'Oscillations Non Linéaires. *Revue de Mathématiques Pures et Appliquées* Vol. 4(2), 267–270. Académie de la République Populaire Roumaine (in French).
- Barbier, C., P. Sen and M. Downie (1994). Parallel Dynamic Programming and Ship Voyage Management. *Concurrency: Practice and Experience CPE-6*(8), 673–696.
- Barbour, N. and G. Schmidt (1998). Inertial Sensor Technology Trends. In: *Proceedings of the Workshop on Autonomous Underwater Vehicles*. pp. 52–55.
- Bech, M. I. (1968). The Reversed Spiral Test as Applied to Large Ships. In: *Shipping World and Ship-builder*. pp. 1753–1754.
- Bech, M. I. and L. Wagner Smith (1969). Analogue Simulation of Ship Maneuvers. Technical Report Hy-14. Hydro- and Aerodynamics Laboratory. Lyngby, Denmark.
- Bennet, S. (1979). *A History of Control Engineering 1800–1930*. Peter Peregrinus. London.
- Bennett, S. (1991). Ship Stabilization: History. In: *Concise Encyclopedia of Traffic and Transportation Systems* (Markos Papageorgiou, Ed.). pp. 454–459. Pergamon Press.
- Berge, S. P. and T. I. Fossen (1997). Robust Control Allocation of Overactuated Ships: Experiments With a Model Ship. In: *Proceedings of the 4th IFAC Conference on Manoeuvring and Control of Marine Craft*. Brijuni, Croatia. pp. 166–171.
- Berge, S. P. and T. I. Fossen (2000). On the Properties of the Nonlinear Ship Equations of Motion. *Journal of Mathematical and Computer Modelling of Dynamical Systems JMCMD-6*(4), 365–381.
- Bertram, V. (2004). *Practical Ship Hydrodynamics*. Butterworth Heinemann.
- Bhat, S. P. and D. S. Bernstein (2000). A Topological Obstruction to Continuous Global Stabilization of Rotational Motion and the Unwinding Phenomenon. *Systems and Control Letters SCL-39*(1), 63–70.
- Bhattacharyya, R. (1978). *Dynamics of Marine Vehicles*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. New York, NY.
- Blanke, M. (1981). Ship Propulsion Losses Related to Automated Steering and Prime Mover Control. PhD thesis. The Technical University of Denmark, Lyngby.
- Blanke, M. (1996). Uncertainty Models for Rudder-Roll Damping Control. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC World Congress*. Vol. Q. Elsevier. San Francisco, CA. pp. 285–290.
- Blanke, M. and A. Christensen (1993). Rudder-Roll Damping Autopilot Robustness due to Sway-Yaw-Roll Couplings. In: *Proceedings of the 10th International Ship Control Systems Symposium (SCSS'93)*. Ottawa, Canada. pp. A.93–A.119.
- Blanke, M. and A. G. Jensen (1997). Dynamic Properties of Container Vessel with Low Metacentric Height. *Transactions of the Institute of Measurement and Control TIMC-19*(2), 78–93.

- Blanke, M. and A. Tiano (1997). Multivariable Identification of Ship Steering and Roll Motions. *Transactions of the Institute of Measurement and Control* **TIMC-19**(2), 62–77.
- Blanke, M., P. Haals and K. K. Andreassen (1989). Rudder Roll Damping Experience in Denmark. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Workshop on Expert Systems and Signal Processing in Marine Automation*. Lyngby, Denmark. pp. 149–160.
- Blanke, M., Adrian, K.-E. Larsen and J. Bentsen (2000). Rudder Roll Damping in Coastal Region Sea Conditions. In: *Proceedings 5th IFAC Conference on Manoeuvring and Control of Marine Craft (MCMC'00)*. Aalborg, Denmark. pp. 39–44.
- Blendermann, W. (1986). Die Windkräfte am Schiff. Technical Report Bericht Nr. 467. Institut für Schiffbau der Universität Hamburg (in German).
- Blendermann, W. (1994). Parameter Identification of Wind Loads on Ships. *Journal of Wind Engineering and Industrial Aerodynamics* **JWEIA-51**, 339–351.
- Bordignon, K. A. and W. C. Durham (1995). Closed-Form Solutions to Constrained Control Allocation Problem. *Journal of Guidance, Control and Dynamics* **JGCD-18**(5), 1000–1007.
- Børhaug, E. and K. Y. Pettersen (2006). LOS Path Following for Underwater Underactuated Vehicles. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC MCMC'07*. Lisbon, Portugal.
- Breivik, M. (2010). Guided Motion Control. PhD thesis. Department of Engineering Cybernetics, Norwegian University of Science and Technology, Trondheim, Norway.
- Breivik, M. and T. I. Fossen (2004a). Path following for marine surface vessels. In: *Proceedings of the OTO'04*. Kobe, Japan.
- Breivik, M. and T. I. Fossen (2004b). Path Following of Straight Lines and Circles for Marine Surface Vessels. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC CAMS'04*. Ancona, Italy.
- Breivik, M. and T. I. Fossen (2005a). A Unified Concept for Controlling a Marine Surface Vessel Through the Entire Speed Envelope. In: *Proceedings of the IEEE MED'05*. Cyprus.
- Breivik, M. and T. I. Fossen (2005b). Principles of guidance-based path following in 2D and 3D. In: *Proceedings of the CDC-ECC'05*. Seville, Spain.
- Breivik, M. and T.I. Fossen (2009). Guidance Laws for Autonomous Underwater Vehicles. In: *Intelligent Underwater Vehicles* (A. V. Inzartsev, Ed.). Chap. 4. I-Tech Education and Publishing. <Open Access: <http://books.i-techonline.com/>>. ISBN 978-953-7619-49-7.
- Breivik, M. and G. Sand (2009). Jens Glad Balchen: A Norwegian Pioneer in Engineering Cybernetics. *Modeling, Identification and Control* **MIC-30**(3), 101–125.
- Breivik, M., J. P. Strand and T. I. Fossen (2006). Guided Dynamic Positioning for Fully Actuated Marine Surface Vessels. In: *Proceedings of the 7th IFAC MCMC'06*. Lisbon, Portugal.
- Breivik, M., V. E. Hovstein and T. I. Fossen (2008). Ship formation control: A guided leader-follower approach. In: *Proceedings of the 17th IFAC World Congress*. Seoul, Korea.
- Bretschneider, C. L. (1959). Wave Variability and Wave Spectra for Wind Generated Gravity Waves. Technical Report. Beach Erosion Board, Corps. of Engineers. 118 (Technical Memo).
- Bretschneider, C. L. (1969). *Wave and Wind Loads. Section 12 of Handbook of Ocean and Underwater Engineering*. McGraw-Hill. New York, NY.
- Brian, Adrian (2003). *Ship Hydrostatics and Stability*. Butterworth-Heinemann. Oxford, UK.
- Brian, D., O. Andersen and J. B. Moore (1989). *Optimal Control: Linear Quadratic Methods*. Prentice Hall. London.
- Britting, K. R. (1971). *Inertial Navigation Systems Analysis*. Wiley Interscience.
- Brown, R. G. and Y. C. Hwang (1998). *Introduction to Random Signals and Applied Kalman Filtering*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. New York, NY.
- Burger, W. and A. G. Corbet (1960). *Ship Stabilizers. Their Design and Operation in Correcting the Rolling of Ships. A Handbook for Merchant Navy Officers*. Pergamon Press Ltd. London.
- Byrnes, C. I. and A. Isidori (1989). New Results and Examples in Nonlinear Feedback Stabilization. *Systems and Control Letters* **SCL-12**, 437–442.

- Byrnes, C. I., A. Isidori and J. C. Willems (1991). Passivity, Feedback Equivalence, and the Global Stabilization of Minimum Phases Nonlinear Systems. *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control* **TAC-36**, 1228–1240.
- Calvert, S. (1989). Optimal Weather Routing Procedures for Vessels on Oceanic Voyages. PhD thesis. Institute of Marine Studies, Polytechnic South West, UK.
- Carley, J. B. (1975). Feasibility Study of Steering and Stabilizing by Rudder. In: *Proceedings of the 4th International Ship Control Systems Symposium (SCSS'75)*. The Hague, Netherlands.
- Chislett, M. S. and J. Strøm-Tejsen (1965a). Planar Motion Mechanism Tests and Full-Scale Steering and Maneuvering Predictions for a Mariner Class Vessel. Technical Report Hy-5. Hydro- and Aerodynamics Laboratory. Lyngby, Denmark.
- Chislett, M. S. and J. Strøm-Tejsen (1965b). Planar Motion Mechanism Tests and Full-Scale Steering and Maneuvering Predictions for a Mariner Class Vessel. Technical Report Hy-6. Hydro- and Aerodynamics Laboratory. Lyngby, Denmark.
- Chou, J. C. K. (1992). Quaternion Kinematic and Dynamic Differential Equations. *IEEE Transactions on Robotics and Automation* **RA-8**(1), 53–64.
- Clarke, D. (2003). The foundations of steering and manoeuvring. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Conference on Maneuvering and Control of Marine Craft (MCMC'03)*. Girona, Spain.
- Clarke, D. and J. R. Horn (1997). Estimation of hydrodynamic derivatives. In: *Proceedings of the 11th Ship Control Systems Symposium, Southampton, Volume 2, 14th-19th April 1997*. pp. 275–289.
- Cowley, W. E. and T. H. Lambert (1972). The Use of Rudder as a Roll Stabilizer. In: *Proceedings of the 3rd International Ship Control Systems Symposium (SCSS'72)*. Bath, UK.
- Cowley, W. E. and T. H. Lambert (1975). Sea Trials on a Roll Stabilizer Using the Ship's Rudder. In: *Proceedings of the 4th International Ship Control Systems Symposium (SCSS'75)*. The Hague, Netherlands.
- Craig, J. J. (1989). *Introduction to Robotics*. Addison-Wesley. Reading, MA.
- Cristi, R., F. A. Papoulias and A. J. Healey (1990). Adaptive Sliding Mode Control of Autonomous Underwater Vehicles in the Dive Plane. *IEEE Journal of Oceanic Engineering* **OE-15**(3), 152–160.
- Cummins, W. E. (1962). The Impulse Response Function and Ship Motions. Technical Report 1661. David Taylor Model Basin. Hydrodynamics Laboratory, USA.
- Davidson, K. S. M. and L. I. Schiff (1946). Turning and Course Keeping Qualities. *Transactions of SNAME*.
- Defant, A. (1961). *Physical Oceanography*. Pergamon Press. London.
- De Kat, J. O. and J. E. W. Wickers (1991). Behavior of a Moored Ship in Unsteady Current, Wind and Waves. *Marine Technology* **28**(5), 251–264.
- de-la-Cruz, J. M., J. Aranda, P. Ruiperez, J. M. Diaz and A. Maron (1998). Identification of the Vertical Plane Motion Model of a High Speed Craft by Model Testing in Irregular Waves. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Conference on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'98)*. Fukuoka, Japan. pp. 257–262.
- Dieudonné, J. (1953). Collected French Papers on the Stability of Route of Ships at Sea, 1949–1950 (Translated by H. E. Saunders and E. N. Labouvie). Technical Report DTMB-246. Naval Ship Research and Development Center. Washington D.C.
- DnV (1990). *Rules for Classification of Steel Ships: Dynamic Positioning Systems, Part 6, Chapter 7*. Det norske Veritas, Veritasveien 1, N-1322 Høvik, Norway.
- Donha, D. C., D. S. Desanj, M. R. Katebi and M. J. Grimble (1998).  $H_\infty$  adaptive Controller for Autopilot Applications. *Spesial Issue on Marine Systems of the International Journal of Adaptive Control and Signal Processing* **IJACSP-12**(8), 623–648.
- Draper, C. S. (1971). Guidance is Forever. *Navigation* **18**(1), 26–50.
- Dubins, L. (1957). On Curves of Minimal Length with a Constraint on Average Curvature and with Prescribed Initial and Terminal Positions and Tangents. *American Journal of Mathematics* **79**, 497–516.

- Durham, W. C. (1993). Constrained Control Allocation. *Journal of Guidance, Control and Dynamics JGCD-16*(4), 717–725.
- Durham, W. C. (1994a). Attainable Moments for the Constrained Control Allocation Problem. *Journal of Guidance, Control and Dynamics JGCD-17*(6), 1371–1373.
- Durham, W. C. (1994b). Constrained Control Allocation: Three Moment Problem. *Journal of Guidance, Control and Dynamics JGCD-17*(2), 330–336.
- Durham, W. C. (1999). Efficient, Near-Optimal Control Allocation. *Journal of Guidance, Control and Dynamics JGCD-22*(2), 369–372.
- Dyne, G. and P. Trägårdh (1975). Simuleringsmodell för 350 000 tdw tanker i fullast- och ballastkonditioner på djupt vatten. Technical Report 2075-1. Swedish State Shipbuilding Experimental Tank (SSPA). Gothenburg, Sweden.
- Egeland, O. and J. T. Gravdahl (2002). *Modeling and Simulation for Automatic Control*. Marine Cybernetics. Trondheim, Norway.
- Encarnacao, P. and A. Pascoal (2001). Combined Trajectory Tracking and Path Following for Marine Craft. In: *Proceedings of the 9th Mediterranean Conference on Control and Automation*. Dubrovnik, Croatia.
- Encarnacao, P., A. Pascoal and M. Arcak (2000). Path Following for Autonomous Marine Craft. In: *Proceedings of the 5th MCMC'00*. Aalborg, Denmark. pp. 117–122.
- Esteban, S., J. M. de-la-Cruz, J. M. Giron-Sierra, B. de-Andres, J. M. Diaz and J. Aranda (2000). Fast Ferry Vertical Accelerations Reduction with Active Flaps and T-foil. In: *Proceedings of the 5th Conference on Maneuvering and Control of Marine Craft (MCMC'2000)*. Aalborg, Denmark. pp. 233–238.
- Euler, L. (1776). Novi Commentarii Academiae Scientiarum Imperialis Petropolitanae. - Vol. XX, 189.
- Faltinsen, O. M. (1990). *Sea Loads on Ships and Offshore Structures*. Cambridge University Press.
- Faltinsen, O. M. (2005). *Hydrodynamic of High-Speed Marine Vehicles*. Cambridge University Press.
- Faltinsen, O. M. and B. Sortland (1987). Slow Drift Eddy Making Damping of a Ship. *Applied Ocean Research AOR-9*(1), 37–46.
- Farrell, J. A. and M. Barth (1998). *The Global Positioning System and Inertial Navigation*. McGraw-Hill. New York, NY.
- Fathi, D. (2004). *ShipX Vessel Responses (VERES)*. Marintek AS, Trondheim, Norway. <http://www.marintek.sintef.no/>.
- Fedyayevsky, K. K. and G. V. Sobolev (1963). Control and Stability in Ship Design. State Union Shipbuilding House.
- Feldman, J. (1979). DTMSRDC Revised Standard Submarine Equations of Motion. Technical Report DTNSRDC-SPD-0393-09. Naval Ship Research and Development Center. Washington D.C.
- Fjellstad, O. E. and T. I. Fossen (1994). Quaternion Feedback Regulation of Underwater Vehicles. In: *Proceedings of the 3rd IEEE Conference on Control Applications (CCA'94)*. Glasgow. pp. 857–862.
- Fjellstad, O. E., T. I. Fossen and O. Egeland (1992). Adaptive Control of ROVs with Actuator Dynamics and Saturation. In: *Proceedings of the 2nd International Offshore and Polar Engineering Conference (ISOPE)*. San Francisco, CA.
- Forssell, B. (1991). *Radio Navigation Systems*. Prentice Hall. Englewood Cliffs, NJ.
- Fossen, T. I. (1991). Nonlinear Modeling and Control of Underwater Vehicles. PhD thesis. Department of Engineering Cybernetics, Norwegian University of Science and Technology. Trondheim, Norway.
- Fossen, T. I. (1993). Comments on “Hamiltonian Adaptive Control of Spacecraft”. *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control TAC-38*(4), 671–672.
- Fossen, T. I. (1994). *Guidance and Control of Ocean Vehicles*. John Wiley & Sons. Ltd. ISBN 0-471-94113-1.
- Fossen, T. I. (2000a). A Survey on Nonlinear Ship Control: From Theory to Practice. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Conference on Maneuvering and Control of Marine Craft* (G. Roberts, Ed.). Elsevier Science. Netherlands. pp. 1–16. Plenary Talk.

- Fossen, T. I. (2000b). Recent Developments in Ship Control Systems Design. In *World Superyacht Review*. Sterling Publications Limited, London pp. 115–116.
- Fossen, T. I. (2005). Nonlinear Unified State-Space Model for Ship Maneuvering and Control in a Seaway. *International Journal of Bifurcation and Chaos* **IJBC-15**(9), 2717–2746. Also in the Proceedings of the ENOC'05 (Plenary Talk), Eindhoven, Netherlands, August 2005, pp. 43–70.
- Fossen, T. I. and S. P. Berge (1997). Nonlinear Vectorial Backstepping Design for Global Exponential Tracking of Marine Vessels in the Presence of Actuator Dynamics. In: *Proceedings of the IEEE Conference on Decision and Control (CDC'97)*. San Diego, CA. pp. 4237–4242.
- Fossen, T. I. and O. E. Fjellstad (1995). Nonlinear Modelling of Marine Vehicles in 6 Degrees of Freedom. *International Journal of Mathematical Modelling of Systems* **JMMS-1**(1), 17–28.
- Fossen, T. I. and Å. Grøvlen (1998). Nonlinear Output Feedback Control of Dynamically Positioned Ships Using Vectorial Observer Backstepping. *IEEE Transactions on Control Systems Technology* **TCST-6**(1), 121–128.
- Fossen, T. I. and T. A. Johansen (2006). A Survey of Control Allocation Methods for Ships and Underwater Vehicles. In: *Proceedings of the 14th IEEE Mediterrania Conference on Control and Automation*. Ancona, Italy.
- Fossen, T. I. and T. Lauvdal (1994). Nonlinear Stability Analysis of Ship Autopilots in Sway, Roll and Yaw. *Proceedings of the Conference on Marine Craft Maneuvering and Control (MCMC'94)*. Southampton, UK.
- Fossen, T. I. and M. Paulsen (1992). Adaptive Feedback Linearization Applied to Steering of Ships. In: *Proceedings of the 1st IEEE Conference on Control Applications*. Dayton, Ohio. pp. 1088–1093.
- Fossen, T. I. and T. Perez (2009). Kalman Filtering for Positioning and Heading Control of Ships and Offshore Rigs. *IEEE Control Systems Magazine* **CST-29**(6), 32–46.
- Fossen, T. I. and S. I. Sagatun (1991). Adaptive Control of Nonlinear Systems: A Case Study of Underwater Robotic Systems. *Journal of Robotic Systems* **JRS-8**(3), 393–412.
- Fossen, T. I. and Ø. N. Smogeli (2004). Nonlinear Time-Domain Strip Theory Formulation for Low-Speed Maneuvering and Station-Keeping. *Modelling, Identification and Control* **MIC-25**(4), 201–221.
- Fossen, T. I. and J. P. Strand (1998). Nonlinear Ship Control (Tutorial Paper). In: *Proceedings of the IFAC CAMS'98*. Fukuoka, Japan. pp. 1–75.
- Fossen, T. I. and J. P. Strand (1999a). A Tutorial on Nonlinear Backstepping: Applications to Ship Control. *Modelling, Identification and Control* **MIC-20**(2), 83–135.
- Fossen, T. I. and J. P. Strand (1999b). Passive Nonlinear Observer Design for Ships Using Lyapunov Methods: Experimental Results with a Supply Vessel. *Automatica* **AUT-35**(1), 3–16.
- Fossen, T. I. and J. P. Strand (2000). Position and Velocity Observer Design. In: *The Ocean Engineering Handbook* (F. El-Hawary, Ed.). Chap. 3, pp. 189–206. CRC Press.
- Fossen, T. I. and J. P. Strand (2001). Nonlinear Passive Weather Optimal Positioning Control (WOPC) System for Ships and Rigs: Experimental Results. *Automatica* **AUT-37**(5), 701–715.
- Fossen, T. I., S. I. Sagatun and A. J. Sørensen (1996). Identification of Dynamically Positioned Ships. *Journal of Control Engineering Practice* **CEP-4**(3), 369–376.
- Fossen, T. I., A. Loria and A. Teel (2001). A Theorem for UGAS and ULES of (Passive) Nonautonomous Systems: Robust Control of Mechanical Systems and Ships. *International Journal of Robust and Nonlinear Control* **JRNC-11**, 95–108.
- Fossen, T. I., M. Breivik and R. Skjetne (2003a). Line-of-Sight Path Following of Underactuated Marine Craft. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC MCMC'03*. Girona, Spain.
- Fossen, T. I., R. Skjetne and M. Breivik (2003b). Line-of-Sight Path Following of Underactuated Marine Craft. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Conference on Maneuvering and Control of Marine Craft*. Girona, Spain.
- Fossen, T. I., T. A. Johansen and T. Perez (2009). A Survey of Control Allocation Methods for Underwater Vehicles. In: *Underwater Vehicles* (A. V. Inzartsev, Ed.). Chap. 7, pp. 109–128. In-Tech Education and Publishing.

- Fotakis, J., M. J. Grimble and B. Kouvaritakis (1982). A Comparison of Characteristic Locus and Optimal Designs for Dynamic Ship Positioning Systems. *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control* **TAC-27**(6), 1143–1157.
- Frenet, F. (1847). Sur les Courbes à Double Courbure, Thèse, Toulouse. *Journal de Mathématiques*. Viewed November 19, 2009, <[http://portail.mathdoc.fr/JMPA/PDF/JMPA\\_1852\\_1\\_17\\_A22\\_0.pdf](http://portail.mathdoc.fr/JMPA/PDF/JMPA_1852_1_17_A22_0.pdf)>.
- Freund, E. (1973). Decoupling and Pole Assignment in Nonlinear Systems. *Electronics Letter*.
- Fung, P. T-K. and M. J. Grimble (1981). Self-Tuning Control of Ship Positioning Systems. In: *Self-Tuning and Adaptive Control: Theory and Applications* (C. J. Harris and S. A. Billings, Eds.). pp. 308–331. Peter Peregrinus Ltd. on behalf of IEE.
- Fung, P. T-K. and M. J. Grimble (1983). Dynamic Ship Positioning Using a Self Tuning Kalman Filter. *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control* **TAC-28**(3), 339–349.
- Gelb, A. and W. E. Vander Velde (1968). *Multiple-Input Describing Functions and Nonlinear System Design*. McGraw-Hill Book Company.
- Gelb, A., J. F. Kasper, Jr., R. A. Nash, Jr., C. F. Price and A. A. Sutherland, Jr. (1988). *Applied Optimal Estimation*. MIT Press. Boston, MA.
- Gertler, M. and S. C. Hagen (1960). Handling Criteria for Surface Ships. Technical Report DTMB-1461. Naval Ship Research and Development Center. Washington D.C.
- Gertler, M. and G. R. Hagen (1967). Standard Equations of Motion for Submarine Simulation. Technical Report DTMB-2510. Naval Ship Research and Development Center. Washington D.C.
- Giron-Sierra, J. M., S. Esteban, B. De Andres, J. M. Diaz and J. M. Riola (2001). Experimental Study of Controlled Flaps and T-foil for Comfort Improvements of a Fast Ferry. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Conference on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'01)*. Glasgow, UK.
- Goldstein, H. (1980). *Classical Mechanics*. Addison-Wesley. Reading, MA.
- Grewal, M. S., L. R. Weill and A. P. Andrews (2001). *Global Positioning Systems, Inertial Navigation and Integration*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. New York, NY.
- Grimble, M. J. (1978). Relationship Between Kalman and Notch Filters Used in Dynamic Ship Positioning Systems. *Electronics Letters* **EL-14**(13), 399–400.
- Grimble, M. J. and M. A. Johnson (1989). *Optimal Control and Stochastic Estimation. Theory and Applications*. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, Chichester, UK.
- Grimble, M. J., R. J. Patton and D. A. Wise (1979). The Design of Dynamic Positioning Systems using Extended Kalman Filtering Techniques. In: *Proceedings of OCEANS'79*. pp. 488–497.
- Grimble, M. J., R. J. Patton and D. A. Wise (1980). The Design of Dynamic Positioning Control Systems Using Stochastic Optimal Control Theory. *Optimal Control Applications and Methods* **OCAM-1**, 167–202.
- Grimble, M. J., R. J. Patton and D. A. Wise (1980b). Use of Kalman Filtering Techniques in Dynamic Ship Positioning Systems. *IEE Proceedings* **127D**(3), 93–102.
- Grip, H. F., T. I. Fossen, T. A. Johansen and A. Saberi (2011). Attitude Estimation Based on Time-Varying Reference Vectors with Biased Gyro and Vector Measurements. In: *Proceedings of the 2011 IFAC World Congress*. Milan, Italy.
- Grøvlen, Å. and T. I. Fossen (1996). Nonlinear Control of Dynamic Positioned Ships Using Only Position Feedback: An Observer Backstepping Approach. In: *Proceedings of the 35th IEEE Conference on Decision and Control (CDC'96)*. pp. 3388–3393.
- Hagiwara, H. (1989). Weather Routing of Sail-Assisted Motor Vessels. PhD thesis. University of Delft, Netherlands.
- Harvey, A. C. (1989). *Forecasting Structural Time Series Models and the Kalman Filter*. Cambridge University Press.
- Hasselmann *et al.* (1973). Measurements of Wind-Wave Growth and Swell Decay during the Joint North Sea Wave Project (JONSWAP). *Deutschen Hydrographischen Zeitschrift*.

- Hauser, J. and R. Hindmann (1995). Maneuvering Regulation from Trajectory Tracking: Feedback Linearizable Systems. In: *Proceedings IFAC Symposium on Nonlinear Control Systems Design*. Lake Tahoe, CA. pp. 595–600.
- Healey, A. J. and D. Lienard (1993). Multivariable Sliding Mode Control for Autonomous Diving and Steering of Unmanned Underwater Vehicles. *IEEE Journal of Ocean Engineering* **OE-18**(3), 327–339.
- Healey, A. J. and D. B. Marco (1992). Slow Speed Flight Control of Autonomous Underwater Vehicles: Experimental Results with the NPS AUV II. In: *Proceedings of the 2nd International Offshore and Polar Engineering Conference (ISOPE)*. San Francisco, CA. pp. 523–532.
- Hearns, G. and M. Blanke (1998). Quantitative Analysis and Design of a Rudder Roll Damping Controller. In: *Proceedings IFAC Conference on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'98)*. pp. 115–120. Fukuoka, Japan.
- Hearns, E., R. Katebi and M. Grimble (2000). Robust Fin Roll Stabilizer Controller Design. In: *Proceedings of the 5th IFAC Conference on Maneuvering and Control of Marine Craft*. Aalborg, Denmark. pp. 81–86.
- Hegrenæs, Øyvind (2010). Autonomous Navigation for Underwater Vehicles. PhD thesis. Department of Engineering Cybernetics, Norwegian University of Science and Technology, Trondheim, Norway.
- Heiskanen, W. A. and H. Moritz (1967). *Physical Geodesy*. Freeman. London.
- Hickey, N. A., M. J. Grimble, M. A. Johnson, M. R. Katebi and R. Melville (1997). Robust Fin Roll Stabilization of Surface Ships. In: *Proceedings of the IEEE Conference on Decision and Control (CDC'97)*. Vol. 5. pp. 4225–4230.
- Hickey, N. A., M. A. Johnson, M. R. Katebi and M. J. Grimble (2000). PID Controller Optimization for Fin Roll Stabilization. In: *Proceedings of the IEEE Conference of Control Applications (CCA'2000)*. Hawaii, HI. pp. 1785–1790.
- Hoerner, S. F. (1965). *Fluid Dynamic Drag*. Hartford House.
- Hofmann-Wellenhof, B., H. Lichtenegger and J. Collins (1994). *Global Positioning System: Theory and Practice*. 3rd ed. Springer Verlag. New York, NY.
- Holzhüter, T. (1992). On the Robustness of Course Keeping Autopilots. In: *Proceedings of IFAC Workshop on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'92)*. Genova, Italy. pp. 235–244.
- Holzhüter, T. (1997). LQG Approach for the High-Precision Track Control of Ships. *IEE Proceedings on Control Theory and Applications* **144**(2), 121–127.
- Holzhüter, T. and R. Schultze (1996). On the Experience with a High-Precision Track Controller for Commercial Ships. *Control Engineering Practice* **CEP-4**(3), 343–350.
- Holzhüter, T. and H. Strauch (1987). A Commercial Adaptive Autopilot for Ships: Design and Experimental Experience. In: *Proceedings of the 10th IFAC World Congress*. July 27–31, Munich, Germany. pp. 226–230.
- Hooft, J. P. (1994). The cross-flow drag on manoeuvring ship. *Oceanic Engineering* **OE-21**(3), 329–342.
- Hua, M.-D (2010). Attitude Estimation for Accelerated Vehicles using GPS/INS Measurements. *Control Engineering Practice* **CEP-18**, 723–732.
- Hughes, P. C. (1986). *Spacecraft Attitude Dynamics*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. New York, NY.
- Humphreys, D. E. and K. W. Watkinson (1978). Prediction of the Acceleration Hydrodynamic Coefficients for Underwater Vehicles from Geometric Parameters. Technical Report NCSL-TR-327-78. Naval Coastal System Center. Panama City, Florida.
- Ikeda, Y., K. Komatsu, Y. Himeno and N. Tanaka (1976). On Roll Damping Force of Ship: Effects of Friction of Hull and Normal Force of Bilge Keels. *Journal of the Kansai Society of Naval Architects JKSN*-**142**, 54–66.
- Imlay, F. H. (1961). The Complete Expressions for Added Mass of a Rigid Body Moving in an Ideal Fluid. Technical Report DTMB 1528. David Taylor Model Basin. Washington D.C.
- Ingram, M. J., R. C. Tyce and R. G. Allen (1996). Dynamic Testing of State of the Art Vertical Reference Units. In: *Proceedings of the Oceans 96 MTS/IEEE*. IEEE. pp. 1533–1538.
- Isherwood, R. M. (1972). Wind Resistance of Merchant Ships. *RINA Transcripts* **115**, 327–338.

- Isidori, A. (1989). *Nonlinear Control Systems*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- ISO 2631-1 (1997). Mechanical Vibration and Shock. Evaluation of Human Exposure to Whole-Body Vibration – Part 1: General Requirements.
- ISO 2631-3 (1985). Evaluation of Human Exposure to Whole-Body Vibration – Part 3: Evaluation of Whole Body z-axis Vertical Vibration in the Frequency Range 0.1 to 0.63 Hz.
- Jacobson, D. H. (1977). *Extensions to Linear-Quadratic Control, Optimization and Matrix Theory*. Academic Press, New York, NY.
- Johansen, T. A., T. I. Fossen and S. P. Berge (2004). Constraint Nonlinear Control Allocation with Singularity Avoidance using Sequential Quadratic Programming. *IEEE Transactions on Control Systems Technology* **TCST-12**, 211–216.
- Johansen, T. A., T. I. Fossen and P. Tøndel (2005). Efficient Optimal Constrained Control Allocation via Multi-Parametric Programming. *AIAA Journal of Guidance, Control and Dynamics* **28**, 506–515.
- Jouffroy, J. and T. I. Fossen (2010). A Tutorial on Incremental Stability Analysis using Contraction Theory. *Modelling, Identification and Control* **MIC-31**(3), 93–106.
- Journée, J. M. J. and L. J. M. Adegeest (2003). *Theoretical Manual of Strip Theory Program SEAWAY for Windows*. Delft University of Technology, Delft, Netherlands. <http://www.ocp.tudelft.nl/mt/journee>.
- Journée, J.M.J. and W.W. Massie (2001). *Offshore Hydrodynamics*. Delft University of Technology.
- Jurdjevic, V. and J. P. Quinn (1978). Controllability and Stability. *Journal of Differential Equations* **JDE-28**, 381–389.
- Källström, C. G. (1981). Control of Yaw and Roll by Rudder/Fin Stabilization System. In: *Proceedings of the 6th International Ship Control Systems Symposium (SCSS'81)*, Vol. 2. Paper F2 3-1. Ottawa, Canada.
- Källström, C. G. (1987). Improved Operational Effectiveness of Naval Ships by Rudder Roll Stabilization. In: *NAVAL'87, Asian Pacific Naval Exhibition and Conference*. Singapore.
- Källström, C. G. and W. L. Schultz (1990). An Integrated Rudder Control System for Roll Damping and Maintenance. In: *Proceedings of the 9th International Ship Control Systems Symposium (SCSS'90)*. Bethesda, MD. pp. 3.278–3.296.
- Källström, C. G. and K. Theoren (1994). Rudder-Roll Stabilization an Improved Control Law. In: *Proceedings of the IEEE Conference on Control Applications*. New York, NY, pp. 1099–1105.
- Källström, C. G., P. Wessel and S. Sjölander (1988). Roll Reduction by Rudder Control. In: *Proceedings of the SNAME Spring Meeting/STAR Symposium*. Pittsburgh, PE. pp. 67–76.
- Kalman, R. E. (1960). A New Approach to Linear Filtering and Prediction Problems. *ASME Transactions, Series D: Journal of Basic Engineering* **JBE-82**, 35–42.
- Kalman, R. E. and R. S. Bucy (1961). New Results in Linear Filtering and Prediction Theory. *ASME Transactions, Series D: Journal of Basic Engineering* **JBE-83**, 95–108.
- Kane, T. R., P. W. Likins and D. A. Levinson (1983). *Spacecraft Dynamics*. McGraw-Hill, New York, NY.
- Kanellakopoulos, I., P. V. Kokotovic and A. S. Morse (1992). A Toolkit for Nonlinear Feedback Design. *Systems and Control Letters* **SCL-18**, 83–92.
- Katebi, M. R., D. K. K. Wong and M. J. Grimble (1987). LQG Autopilot and Rudder Roll Stabilization Control System Design. In: *Proceedings of the 8th International Ship Control Systems Symposium (SCSS'87)*. The Hague, Netherlands. pp. 3.69–3.84.
- Katebi, M. R., M. J. Grimble and Y. Zhang (1997a).  $H_\infty$  Robust Control Design for Dynamic Ship Positioning. In: *IEE Proceedings on Control Theory and Applications*. Vol. 144 2. pp. 110–120.
- Katebi, M. R., Y. Zhang and M. J. Grimble (1997b). Nonlinear Dynamic Ship Positioning. In: *Proceedings of the 13th IFAC World Congress*. Vol. Q. pp. 303–308.
- Katebi, M. R., N. A. Hickey and M. J. Grimble (2000). Evaluation of Fin Roll Stabilizer Controller Design. In: *Proceedings of the 5th IFAC Conference on Maneuvering and Control of Marine Craft*. Aalborg, Denmark. pp. 69–74.

- Kayton, M. and W. L. Fried (1997). *Avionics Navigation Systems*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. New York, NY.
- Kempf, G. (1932). Measurements of the Propulsive and Structural Characteristic of Ships. In: *Transactions of SNAME* **40**, 42–57.
- Kempf, G. (1944). Manöveriernorm für Schiffe. In: *Hansa, Deutsche Schiffahrts-zeitschrift*, Heft 27/28, pp. 372–276 (in German).
- Khalil, H. K. (2002). *Nonlinear Systems*. Macmillan. New York, NY.
- Kirchhoff, G. (1869). *Über die Bewegung eines Rotationskörpers in einer Flüssigkeit*. Crelle's Journal, No. 71, pp. 237–273 (in German).
- Kitamura, F., H. Sato, K. Shimada and T. Mikami (1997). Estimation of Wind Force Acting on Huge Floating Ocean Structures. In: *Proceedings of the Oceans '97. MTS/IEEE Conference*. Vol. 1. pp. 197–202.
- Koditschek, D. E. (1987). Adaptive Techniques for Mechanical Systems. In: *Proceedings of the 5th Yale Workshop on Adaptive Systems*. New Haven, CT. pp. 259–265.
- Kokotovic, P. V. (1991). The Joy of Feedback: Nonlinear and Adaptive. *IEEE Control Systems Magazine ICSM-12*, 7–17. Bode Price Lecture.
- Kokotovic, P. V. and H. J. Sussmann (1989). A Positive Real Condition for Global Stabilization of Nonlinear Systems. *Systems and Control Letters SCL-13*, 125–133.
- Kostov, V. and E. Degtiariova-Kostova (1993). Suboptimal Paths in the Problem of a Planar Motion with Bounded Derivative of the Curvature. Technical Report. Research Report 2051, INRIA, France.
- Koyama, T. (1967). *On the Optimum Automatic Steering System of Ships at Sea*. J.S.N.A., Vol. 122.
- Kristiansen, E. and O. Egeland (2003). Frequency Dependent Added Mass in Models for Controller Design for Wave Motion Damping. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Conference on Maneuvering and Control of Marine Craft (MCMC'03)*. Girona, Spain.
- Kristiansen, E., A. Hjulstad and O. Egeland (2005). State-Space Representation of Radiation Forces in Time-Domain Vessel Models. *Oceanic Engineering OE-32*, 2195–2216.
- Krstic, M. and H. Deng (1998). *Stabilization of Nonlinear Uncertain Systems*. Springer-Verlag. Berlin.
- Krstic, M., I. Kanellakopoulos and P. V. Kokotovic (1995). *Nonlinear and Adaptive Control Design*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. New York, NY.
- Kvasnica, M., P. Grieder and M. Baotic (2004). Multi-Parametric Toolbox (MPT). Viewed December 26, 2009, <[www.control.ee.ethz.ch/~mpt](http://www.control.ee.ethz.ch/~mpt)>.
- Lamb, H. (1932). *Hydrodynamics*. Cambridge University Press. London.
- Landau, Y. D. (1979). *Adaptive Control – The Model Reference Approach*. Marcel Dekker Inc. New York, NY.
- Lapierre, L. and D. Soetanto (2007). Nonlinear Path-Following Control of an AUV. *Ocean Engineering OE-34*, 1734–1744.
- LaSalle, J. P. (1966). Stability Theory for Ordinary Differential Equations. *Journal of Differential Equations JDE-4*, 57–65.
- LaSalle, J. and S. Lefschetz (1961). *Stability by Lyapunov's Direct Method*. Academic Press. Baltimore, MD.
- Lauvdal, T. and T. I. Fossen (1997). Nonlinear Rudder-Roll Damping of Non-Minimum Phase Ships Using Sliding Mode Control. In: *Proceedings of the European Control Conference*. Brussels, Belgium.
- Lauvdal, T. and T. I. Fossen (1998). Rudder Roll Stabilization of Ships Subject to Input Rate Saturation Using a Gain Scheduled Control Law. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Conference on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'98)*. pp. 121–127. Fukuoka, Japan.
- Leick, A. (1995). *GPS: Satellite Surveying*. Chap. Appendix G, pp. 534–537. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.
- Leite, A. J. P., J. A. P. Aranha, C. Umeda and M. B. de Conti (1998). Current Forces in Tankers and Bifurcation of Equilibrium of Turret Systems: Hydrodynamic Model and Experiments. *Applied Ocean Research AOR-20*, 145–156.

- Lewandowski, E. M. (2004). *The Dynamics of Marine Craft: Maneuvering and Seakeeping*. World Scientific. Washington D. C.
- Lewis, F. M. (1967). The Motion of Ships in Waves. In: *Principles of Naval Architecture* (J. P. Comstock, Ed.). pp. 669–692. Society of Naval Architects and Marine Engineers, 601 Pavonia Avenue, Jersey City, NJ 07306.
- Lewis, E. V. (Ed.) (1989). *Principles of Naval Architecture*. 2nd ed. Society of Naval Architects and Marine Engineers (SNAME).
- Lin, Ching-Fang (1992). *Modern Navigation, Guidance and Control Processing*. Prentice-Hall Inc. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey 07632.
- Lindgaard, K.-P. (2003). Acceleration Feedback in Dynamic Positioning Systems. PhD thesis. Department of Engineering Cybernetics, Norwegian University of Science and Technology. Trondheim, Norway.
- Lindgaard, K. P. and T. I. Fossen (2001a). A Model Based Wave Filter for Surface Vessels using Position, Velocity and Partial Acceleration Feedback. In: *Proceedings of the IEEE Conference on Decision and Control (CDC'2001)*. IEEE. Orlando, FL. pp. 946–951.
- Lindgaard, K. P. and T. I. Fossen (2001b). On Global Model Based Observer Designs for Surface Vessels. In: *5th IFAC Conference on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'2001)*. Elsevier Science.
- Lindgaard, K.-P. and T. I. Fossen (2003). Fuel Efficient Control Allocation for Surface Vessels with Active Rudder Usage: Experiments with a Model Ship. *IEEE Transactions on Control Systems Technology* **11**, 850–862.
- Lindfors, I. (1993). Thrust Allocation Method for the Dynamic Positioning System. In: *10th International Ship Control Systems Symposium (SCSS'93)*. Ottawa, Canada. pp. 3.93–3.106.
- Ljung, L. (1999). *System Identification: Theory for the User*. Prentice Hall. Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey.
- Lloyd, A. E. J. M. (1975). Roll Stabilization by Rudder. In: *Proceedings of the 4th International Ship Control Systems Symposium (SCSS'75)*. The Hague, Netherlands.
- Lloyd, A. R. J. M. (1989). Seakeeping; Ship Behavior in Rough Water. Ellis Horwood Ltd.
- Lo, H. (1991). Dynamic Ship Routing through Stochastic, Spatially Dependent Ocean Currents. PhD thesis. The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH.
- Lo, H. K. and M. R. McCord (1995). Routing through Dynamic Ocean Currents: General Heuristics and Empirical Results in the Gulf Stream Region. *Transportation Research Part B: Methodological* **29**(2), 109–124.
- Lo, H. K. and M. R. McCord (1998). Adaptive Ship Routing through Stochastic Ocean Currents: General Formulations and Empirical Results. *Transportation Research Part A: Policy and Practice* **32**(7), 547–561.
- Loria, A., T. I. Fossen and A. Teel (1999). UGAS and ULES of Non-Autonomous Systems: Applications to Integral Action Control of Ships and Manipulators. In: *Proceedings of the 5th European Control Conference (ECC'99)*. Karlsruhe, Germany.
- Loria, A., T. I. Fossen and E. Panteley (2000). A Separation Principle for Dynamic Positioning of Ships: Theoretical and Experimental Results. *IEEE Transactions on Control Systems Technology* **TCST-8**(2), 332–343.
- Lozano, R., B. Brogliato and I. D. Landau (1992). Passivity and Global Stabilization of Cascaded Non-linear Systems. *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control* **TAC-37**, 1386–1388.
- Lozano, R., B. Brogliato, O. Egeland and B. Maschke (2000). *Dissipative Systems Analysis and Control. Theory and Applications*. Springer Verlag.
- Lyapunov, M. A. (1907). Problème Général de la Stabilité de Mouvement. *Ann. Fac. Sci. Toulouse* **9**, 203–474. (Translation of a paper published in Comm. Soc. Math. Kharkow 1893, reprinted in Annual Math Studies, Vol. 17, Princeton, 1949).
- Lyshevski, S. E. (2001). Autopilot Design for Highly Maneuverable Multipurpose Underwater Vehicles. In: *Proceedings of the American Control Conference*. Arlington, VA. pp. 131–136.

- McCord, M. and S. Smith (1995). Beneficial Voyage Characteristics for Routing through Dynamic Currents. *Transportation Research Record* **1511**, 19–25.
- McGee, T. G., S. Spy and J. K. Hedrick (2006). Optimal Path Planning in a Constant Wind with a Bounded Turning Rate. In: *Proceedings AIAA Conference on Guidance, Navigation and Control*. Ketstone, CO. pp. 4261–4266.
- McGookin, E. W., D. J. Murray-Smith, Y. Lin and T. I. Fossen (2000a). Experimental Results from Supply Ship Autopilot Optimisation Using Genetic Algorithms. *Transactions of the Institute of Measurement and Control* **TIMC-22**(2), 141–178.
- McGookin, E. W., D. J. Murray-Smith, Y. Lin and T. I. Fossen (2000b). Ship Steering Control System Optimisation Using Genetic Algorithms. *Journal of Control Engineering Practise* **CEP-8**, 429–443.
- Mahony, R., T. Hamel and J.M. Pflimlin (2008). Nonlinear Complementary Filters on the Special Orthogonal Group. *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control* **TAC-53**(5), 1203–1218.
- Matrosov, V. M. (1962). On the Stability of Motion. *Prikl. Mat. Meh.* **PMM-26**, 885–895.
- Maybeck, P. S. (1979). *Stochastic Models, Estimation and Control*. Academic Press. New York, NY.
- Meirovitch, L. (1990). *Dynamics and Control of Structures*. Wiley Interscience. New York, NY.
- Meirovitch, L. and M. K. Kwak (1989). State Equations for a Spacecraft with Flexible Appendages in Terms of Quasi-Coordinates. *Applied Mechanics Reviews* **42**(11), 161–170.
- Micaelli, A. and C. Samson (1993). Trajectory Tracking for Unicycle-Type and Two-Steering-Wheels Mobile Robots. Internal Report 2097. INRIA. Sophia-Antipolis, France.
- Minorovsky, N. (1922). Directional Stability of Automatic Steered Bodies. *Journal of the American Society of Naval Engineers* **34**(2), 280–309.
- Morgan, J. M. (Ed.) (1978). *Dynamic Positioning of Offshore Vessels*. Petroleum, Tulsa, OK.
- MSS (2011). Marine Systems Simulator. Accessed January 12, 2011, <[www.marinecontrol.org](http://www.marinecontrol.org)>.
- Munk, T. and M. Blaner (1987). Simple Command of a Complex Ship. In: *Proceedings of the 8th Ship Control Systems Symposium*. The Hague, Netherlands.
- Narendra, K. S. and A. M. Annaswamy (1989). *Stable Adaptive Systems*. Prentice Hall Inc. Boston, MA.
- Nelson, R. C. (1998). *Flight Stability and Automatic Control*. McGraw-Hill Int.
- Neumann, G. (1952). *On Wind-Generated Ocean Waves with Special Reference to the Problem of Wave Forecasting*. New York University, College of Engineering Research Division, Department of Meteorology and Oceanography. Prepared for the Naval Res.
- Newman, J. N. (1977). *Marine Hydrodynamics*. MIT Press. Cambridge, MA.
- Nocedal, J. and S. J. Wright (1999). *Numerical Optimization*. Springer-Verlag, New York, NY.
- Nomoto, K., T. Taguchi, K. Honda and S. Hirano (1957). On the Steering Qualities of Ships. Technical Report. International Shipbuilding Progress, Vol. 4.
- Norrbin, N. H. (1963). On the Design and Analyses of the Zig-Zag Test on Base of Quasi Linear Frequency Response. Technical Report B 104-3. The Swedish State Shipbuilding Experimental Tank (SSPA). Gothenburg, Sweden.
- Norrbin, N. H. (1965). Zig-Zag Provets Teknik och Analys. Technical Report 12. The Swedish State Shipbuilding Experimental Tank (SSPA). Gothenburg, Sweden (in Swedish).
- Norrbin, N. H. (1970). Theory and Observation on the Use of a Mathematical Model for Ship Maneuvering in Deep and Confined Waters. In: *Proceedings of the 8th Symposium on Naval Hydrodynamics*. Pasadena, CA.
- Norrbin, N. H. (1972). On the Added Resistance due to Steering on a Straight Course. In: *Proceedings of the 13th ITTC*. Berlin, Hamburg, Germany.
- Norsok Standard (1999). Actions and Actions Effects Rev. 1.0. N-003.
- OCIMF (1977). Prediction of Wind and Current Loads on VLCCs. Oil Companies International Marine Forum, London, pp. 1–77.
- Oda, H. et al. (1992). Rudder Roll Stabilization Control System through Multivariable Auto Regressive Model. In: *Proceedings of IFAC Workshop on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'92)*. Genova, Italy. pp. 113–127.

- Oda, H., K. Ohtsu and T. Hotta (1996). Statistical Analysis and Design of a Rudder-Roll Stabilization System. *Control Engineering Practice* **CEP-4**(3), 351–358.
- Oda, H., K. Igarashi and K. Ohtsu (1997). Simulation Study and Full-Scale Experiment of Rudder-Roll Stabilization Systems. In: *Proceedings of the 11th Ship Control Systems Symposium*. Southampton, UK. pp. 299–313.
- Ogilvie, T. F. (1964). Recent Progress Towards the Understanding and Prediction of Ship Motions. In: *Proceedings of the 5th Symposium on Naval Hydrodynamics*. pp. 3–79.
- O'Hanlon, J. F. and M. E. McCauley (1974). Motion Sickness Incidence as a Function of Vertical Sinusoidal Motion. *Aerospace Medicine AM-45*(4), 366–369.
- Ortega, R. (1991). Passivity Properties for Stabilization of Cascaded Nonlinear Systems. *Automatica AUT-27*, 423–424.
- Ortega, R., A. Loria, P. J. Nicklasson and H. Sira-Ramirez (1998). *Passivity-Based Control of Euler-Lagrange Systems: Mechanical, Electrical and Electromechanical Applications*. Springer Verlag.
- Padadakis, N. A. and A. N. Perakis (1990). Deterministic Minimal Time Vessel Routing. *Operations Research OR-38*(3), 416–438.
- Panteley, E. and A. Loria (1998). On Global Uniform Asymptotic Stability of Nonlinear Time-Varying Nonautonomous Systems in Cascade. *System Control Letters SCL-33*(2), 131–138.
- Papoulias, F. A. (1991). Bifurcation analysis of line of sight vehicle guidance using sliding modes. *International Journal of Bifurcation and Chaos* **1**(4), 849–865.
- Parkinson, B. W. and Spilker, J. J. (Eds) (1995). *Global Positioning System: Theory and Applications*. American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics Inc. Washington D. C.
- Parks, P. C. (1966). Lyapunov Redesign of Model Reference Adaptive Control Systems. *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control TAC-11*, 362–367.
- Perez, T. (2005). *Ship Motion Control: Course Keeping and Roll Reduction using Rudder and Fins*. Advances in Industrial Control Series. Springer-Verlag, London, UK.
- Perez, T. and T. I. Fossen (2007). Kinematic Models for Seakeeping and Manoeuvring of Marine Vessels. *Modeling, Identification and Control MIC-28*(1), 19–30. Open source, <http://www.mic-journal.no>.
- Perez, T. and T. I. Fossen (2008). Time- vs. Frequency-domain Identification of Parametric Radiation Force Models for Marine Structures at Zero Speed. *Modeling, Identification and Control MIC-29*(1), 1–19. Open source, <http://www.mic-journal.no>.
- Perez, T. and T. I. Fossen (2009). A Matlab Toolbox for Parametric Identification of Radiation-Force Models of Ships and Offshore Structures. *Modeling, Identification and Control MIC-30*(1), 1–15. Open source, <http://www.mic-journal.no>.
- Perez, T. and T. I. Fossen (2011). Practical Aspects of Frequency-Domain Identification of Dynamic Models of Marine Structures from Hydrodynamic Data. *IEEE Journal of Oceanic Engineering*.
- Perez, T. and P. Steinmann (2007). Modelling and Performance of an Active Heave Compensator for Offshore Operations. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Conference on Control Applications in Marine Systems CAMS'09*. Bol, Croatia. pp. 30–36.
- Phillips, O. M. (1958). The Equilibrium Range in the Spectrum of Wind Generated Waves. *Journal of Fluid Mechanics JFM-4*(4), 426–434.
- Pierson, W. J. and L. Moskowitz (1963). A Proposed Spectral Form for Fully Developed Wind Seas Based on the Similarity Theory of S. A. Kitaigorodskii. U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office Contract 62306-1042.
- Pinkster, J. (1971). Dynamic Positioning of Vessels at Sea. International Centre for Mechanical Structures, Udine, Italy.
- Pinkster, J. A. and U. Nienhuis (1986). Dynamic Positioning of Large Tankers at Sea. In: *Proceedings of the Offshore Technology Conference (OTC'86)*. Houston, TX.
- Price, W. G. and R. E. D. Bishop (1974). *Probabilistic Theory of Ship Dynamics*. Chapman and Hall. London.

- Reid, R. E., A. K. Tugcu and B. C. Mears (1984). The Use of Wave Filter Design in Kalman Filter State Estimation of the Automatic Steering Problem of a Tanker in a Seaway. *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control* **TAC-29**(7), 577–584.
- Roberts, G. N. (1992). Ship Roll Damping Using Rudder and Stabilizing Fins. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Workshop on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'92)*. Genova, Italy. pp. 129–138.
- Roberts, G. N. (1993). A Method to Determine the Applicability of Rudder Roll Stabilization for Ships. In: *Proceedings of the 12th IFAC World Congress*. pp. 1009–1012.
- Roberts, G. N. and S. W. Braham (1990). Warship Roll Stabilization Using Integrated Rudder and Fins. In: *9th International Ship Control Systems Symposium (SCSS'90)*. Bethesda, MD. pp. 1.234–1.248.
- Robertson, A. and R. Johansson (1998). Comments on “Nonlinear Output Feedback Control of Dynamically Positioned Ships Using Vectorial Observer Backstepping”. *IEEE Transactions on Control Systems Technology* **TCST-6**(3), 439–441.
- Ross, A. (2008). Nonlinear Manoeuvring Models for Ships: a Lagrangian Approach. PhD thesis. Department of Engineering Cybernetics, Norwegian University of Science and Technology.
- Ross, A. and T. I. Fossen (2005). Identification of Frequency-Dependent Viscous Damping. In: *Proceedings of OCEANS'05 MTS/IEEE*. Washington D.C.
- Ross, A., T. Perez and T. I. Fossen (2006). Clarification of the Low-Frequency Modelling Concept for Marine Craft. In: *Proceedings of MCMC'06*. Lisbon.
- Routh, E. J. (1877). *A Treatise on The Stability on Motion*. Macmillan. London, UK.
- Saberi, A., P. V. Kokotovic and H. J. Sussmann (1990). Global Stabilization of Partially Linear Composite Systems. *SIAM J. Control Opt. SJCO-28*, 1491–1503.
- Sælid, S. and N. A. Jenssen (1983). Adaptive Ship Autopilot with Wave Filter. *Modeling, Identification and Control* **MIC-4**(1), 33–46.
- Sælid, S., N. A. Jenssen and J. G. Balchen (1983). Design and Analysis of a Dynamic Positioning System Based on Kalman Filtering and Optimal Control. *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control* **TAC-28**(3), 331–339.
- Sagatun, S. I. and T.I. Fossen (1991). Lagrangian Formulation of Underwater Vehicles’ Dynamics. In: *Proceedings of the IEEE International Conference on Systems, Man and Cybernetics*. Charlottesville, VA. pp. 1029–1034.
- Sagatun, S. I., T. I. Fossen and K.-P. Lindegaard (2001). Inertance Control of Underwater Installations. In: *Proceedings of the 5th IFAC Conference on Control Applications in Marine Systems CAMS'2001*. Glasgow, UK.
- Salcudean, S. (1991). A Globally Convergent Angular Velocity Observer for Rigid Body Motion. *IEEE Transaction on Automatic Control* **TAC-36**(12), 1493–1497.
- Samson, C. (1992). Path Following and Time-Varying Feedback Stabilization of a Wheeled Mobile Robot. In: *Proceedings of ICARV*. pp. RO–13.1.
- Sargent, J. S. and P. N. Cowgill (1976). Design Considerations for Dynamically Positioned Utility Vessels. In: *Proceedings of the 8th Offshore Technology Conference*. Dallas, TX.
- Sarpkaya, T. (1981). *Mechanics of Wave Forces on Offshore Structures*. Van Nostrand Reinhold Company. New York, NY.
- Savage, P. G. (1990). Strapdown Inertial Navigation. Lecture Notes. Strapdown Associates Inc., Minnetonka, MN.
- Scheuer, A. and C. Laugier (1998). Planning Sub-Optimal and Continuous-Curvature Paths for Car-Like Robots. In: *Proceedings IEEE-RSJ International Conference on Intelligent Robots and Systems*.
- Sciavicco, L. and B. Siciliano (1996). *Modeling and Control of Robot Manipulators*. McGraw-Hill Companies Inc.
- Sellars, F. H. and J. P. Martin (1992). Selection and Evaluation of Ship Roll Stabilization Systems. *Marine Technology* **MT-29**(2), 84–101.
- Sepulchre, R., M. Jankovic and P. Kokotovic (1997). *Constructive Nonlinear Control*. Springer-Verlag. Berlin.

- Serret, J. A. (1851). Sur Quelques Formules Relatives à la Théorie des Courbes à Double Courbure. *Journal de Mathématiques*. Viewed November 19, 2009, <[http://portail.mathdoc.fr/JMPA/PDF/JMPA\\_1843\\_1\\_8\\_A32\\_0.pdf](http://portail.mathdoc.fr/JMPA/PDF/JMPA_1843_1_8_A32_0.pdf)>.
- Sharif, M. T., G. N. Roberts and R. Sutton (1995). Sea-Trial Experimental Results of Fin/Rudder Roll Stabilization. *Control Engineering Practice* **CEP-3**(5), 703–708.
- Sharif, M. T., G. N. Roberts and R. Sutton (1996). Final Experimental Results of Full Scale Fin/Rudder Roll Stabilization Sea Trials. *Control Engineering Practice* **CEP-4**(3), 377–384.
- Shepperd, S. W. (1978). Quaternion from Rotation Matrix. *Journal of Guidance and Control* **JGC-1**(3), 223–224.
- Shneydor, N. A. (1998). *Missile Guidance and Pursuit: Kinematics, Dynamics and Control*. Horwood Publishing Ltd.
- Siouris, G. M. (2004). *Missile Guidance and Control Systems*. Springer-Verlag New York, NY.
- Skejic, R., M. Breivik, T. I. Fossen and O. M. Faltinsen (2009). Modeling and Control of Underway Replenishment Operations in Calm Water. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC MCMC'09*. Sao Paulo, Brazil.
- Skjetne, R. and T. I. Fossen (2004). On Integral Control in Backstepping: Analysis of Different Techniques. In: *Proceedings of the 2004 American Control Conference*. Boston, MA. pp. 1899–1904.
- Skjetne, R., T. I. Fossen and P. V. Kokotovic (2002). Output Maneuvering for a Class of Nonlinear Systems. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC World Congress*. Barcelona, Spain.
- Skjetne, R., T. I. Fossen and P. V. Kokotovic (2004). Robust Output Maneuvering for a Class of Nonlinear Systems. *Automatica*.
- Slotine, J. J. E. and M. D. Di Benedetto (1990). Hamiltonian Adaptive Control of Spacecraft. *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control* **AC-35**(7), 848–852.
- Slotine, J. J. E. and W. Li (1987). Adaptive Manipulator Control. A Case Study.. In: *Proceedings of the 1987 IEEE Conference on Robotics and Automation*. Raleigh, North Carolina. pp. 1392–1400.
- Slotine, J. J. E. and W. Li (1991). *Applied Nonlinear Control*. Prentice-Hall International Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey 07632.
- Smith, J. E. (1977). *Mathematical Modeling and Digital Simulation for Engineers and Scientists*. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. New York, NY.
- SNAME (1950). The Society of Naval Architects and Marine Engineers. Nomenclature for Treating the Motion of a Submerged Body Through a Fluid. In: *Technical and Research Bulletin No. 1–5*.
- SNAME (1989). The Society of Naval Architects and Marine Engineers. Guide For Sea Trials. In: *Technical and Research Bulletin No. 3–47*.
- Son, K. H. and K. Nomoto (1981). On the Coupled Motion of Steering and Rolling of a High Speed Container Ship. J.S.N.A., Japan, Vol. 150, pp. 232–244 (in Japanese).
- Son, K. H. and K. Nomoto (1982). On the Coupled Motion of Steering and Rolling of a High Speed Container Ship. *Naval Architect of Ocean Engineering* **20**, 73–83. From J.S.N.A., Japan, Vol. 150, 1981.
- Sonntag, E. D. and H. J. Sussmann (1988). Further Comments on the Stabilizability of the Angular Velocity of a Rigid Body. *Systems and Control Letters* **SCL-12**, 437–442.
- Sontag, E. D. (1983). A Lyapunov-like Characterization of Asymptotic Controllability. *SIAM Journal of Control and Optimization* **JCO-21**, 462–471.
- Sørdsalen, O. J. (1997a). Full Scale Sea Trials with Optimal Thrust Allocation. In: *Proceedings of the 4th IFAC Conference on Manoeuvring and Control of Marine Craft (MCMC'97)*. Brijuni, Croatia. pp. 150–155.
- Sørdsalen, O. J. (1997b). Optimal Thrust Allocation for Marine Vessels. *Control Engineering Practice* **CEP-5**(9), 1223–1231.
- Sørensen, A. J. and J. P. Strand (1998). Positioning of Semi-submersible with Roll and Pitch Damping. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Conference on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'98)*. Fukuoka, Japan. pp. 67–73.

- Sørensen, A. J. and J. P. Strand (2000). Positioning of Small-Waterplane-Area Marine Constructions with Roll and Pitch Damping. *Journal of Control Engineering in Practice* **CEP-8**(2), 205–213.
- Sørensen, A. J., S. I. Sagatun and T. I. Fossen (1995). The Design of a Dynamic Positioning System Using Model Based Control. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Workshop on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'95)*. Trondheim, Norway. pp. 16–26.
- Sørensen, A. J., S. I. Sagatun and T. I. Fossen (1996). Design of a Dynamic Positioning System Using Model Based Control. *Journal of Control Engineering Practice* **CEP-4**(3), 359–368.
- Sørensen, A. J., T. I. Fossen and J. P. Strand (2000). Design of Controllers for Positioning of Marine Vessels. In: *The Ocean Engineering Handbook* (F. El-Hawary, Ed.). Chap. 3, pp. 207–218. CRC Press, USA.
- Sørensen, A. J., B. Leira, J. P. Strand and C. M. Larsen (2001). Optimal Setpoint Chasing in Dynamic Positioning of Deep-Water Drilling and Intervention Vessels. *International Journal of Robust and Nonlinear Control* **IJRNC-11**, 1187–1205.
- Spjøtvold, J. (2008). Parametric Programming in Control Theory. PhD thesis. Department of Engineering Cybernetics, Norwegian University of Science and Technology, Trondheim.
- Stevens, B. L. and F. Lewis (1992). *Aircraft Control and Simulation*. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.
- Stoustrup, J., H. H. Niemann and M. Blanke (1995). A Multi-Objective  $H_\infty$  Solution to the Rudder Roll Damping Problem. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Workshop on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'95)*. pp. 238–246.
- Strand, J. P. (1999). Nonlinear Position Control Systems Design for Marine Vessels. PhD thesis. Department of Engineering Cybernetics, Norwegian University of Science and Technology, Trondheim, Norway.
- Strand, J. P. and T. I. Fossen (1999). Nonlinear Passive Observer for Ships with Adaptive Wave Filtering. In: *New Directions in Nonlinear Observer Design* (H. Nijmeijer and T. I. Fossen, Eds.). Chap. I-7, pp. 113–134. Springer-Verlag, London.
- Strand, J. P. and A. J. Sørensen (2000). Marine Positioning Systems. In: *Ocean Engineering Handbook* (F. El-Hawary, Ed.). Chap. 3, pp. 163–176. CRC Press, USA.
- Strand, J. P., A. J. Sørensen and T. I. Fossen (1998). Design of Automatic Thruster Assisted Position Mooring Systems for Ships. *Modeling, Identification and Control* **MIC-19**(2), 61–75.
- Techy, L. and C. A. Woolsey (2009). Minimum-Time Path Planning for Unmanned Aerial Vehicles in Steady Uniform Winds. *AIAA Journal of Guidance, Control, and Dynamics* **JGCD-32**(6), 1736–1746.
- Techy, L. and C. A. Woolsey (2010). Planar Path Planning for Flight Vehicles in Wind with Turn Rate and Acceleration Bounds. In: *Proceedings AIAA Conference on Guidance, Navigation and Control*. Anchorage, AK.
- Thienel, J. and R. M. Sanner (2003). A Coupled Nonlinear Spacecraft Attitude Controller and Observer with an Unknown Constant Gyro Bias and Gyro Noise. *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control* **TAC-48**(11), 2011–2015.
- Tinker, S. J. (1982). Identification of Submarine Dynamics from Free-Model Test. In: *Proceedings of the DRG Seminar*. Netherlands.
- Titterton, D. H. and J. L. Weston (1997). *Strapdown Inertial Navigation Technology*. IEE. London, UK.
- Tøndel, P., T. A. Johansen and A. Bemporad (2003a). An algorithm for multi-parametric quadratic programming and explicit MPC solutions. *Automatica* **39**, 489–497.
- Tøndel, P., T. A. Johansen and A. Bemporad (2003b). Evaluation of Piecewise Affine Control via Binary Search Tree. *Automatica* **39**, 743–749.
- Torsethaugen, K. (1996). Model for a Doubly Peaked Wave Spectrum. Technical Report STF22 A96204. SINTEF, Trondheim, Norway. Prepared for Norsk Hydro.
- Triantafyllou, M. S. and A. M. Amzallag (1984). A New Generation of Underwater Unmanned Tethered Vehicles Carrying Heavy Equipment at Large Depths. Technical Report MITSG 85-30TN. MIT Sea Grant, Boston, MA.

- Triantafyllou, M. S. and F. S. Hover (2002). Maneuvering and Control of Marine Vehicles. Internet. <<http://ocw.mit.edu/13/13.49/f00/lecture-notes/>> [Accessed November 15, 2002].
- Triantafyllou, M. S., M. Bodson and M. Athans (1983). Real Time Estimation of Ship Motions Using Kalman Filtering Techniques. *IEEE Journal of Ocean Engineering* **JOE-8**(1), 9–20.
- Tsinias, J. (1989). Sufficient Lyapunov-Like Conditions for Stabilization. *Mathematics of Control, Signals and Systems* **MCSS-2**, 343–357.
- Tsourdos, A., B. White and M. Shanmugavel (2010). Cooperative Path Planning of Unmanned Aerial Vehicles. John Wiley & Sons, Ltd.
- Tzeng, C. Y. (1998a). Analysis of the Pivot Point for a Turning Ship. *Journal of Marine Science and Technology* **JMST-6**(1), 39–44.
- Tzeng, C. Y. (1998b). Optimal Control of a Ship for a Course-Changing Maneuver. *Journal of Optimization Theory and Applications* **JOTA-97**(2), 281–297.
- Utkin, V. I. (1977). Variable Structure Systems with Sliding Modes. *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control* **TAC-22**(2), 212–222.
- Utkin, V. I. (1992). *Sliding Modes in Control and Optimization*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- Van Amerongen, J. (1982). Adaptive Steering of Ships – A Model Reference Approach to Improved Maneuvering and Economical Course Keeping. PhD thesis. Delft University of Technology, Netherlands.
- Van Amerongen, J. (1984). Adaptive Steering of Ships – A Model Reference Approach. *Automatica* **AUT-20**(1), 3–14.
- Van Amerongen, J. and H. R. Van Nauta Lemke (1978). Optimum Steering of Ships with an Adaptive Autopilot. In: *Proceedings of the 5th Ship Control Systems Symposium*. Annapolis, MD.
- Van Amerongen, J. and H. R. Van Nauta Lemke (1980). Criteria for Optimum Steering of Ships. In: *Proceedings of Symposium on Ship Steering Automatic Control*. Genova, Italy.
- Van Amerongen, J. and H. R. Van Nauta Lempke (1987). Adaptive Control Aspects of a Rudder Roll Stabilization System. In: *Proceedings of the 10th IFAC World Congress*. Munich, Germany. pp. 215–219.
- Van Amerongen, J., P. G. M. Van der Klugt and J. B. M. Pieffers (1987). Rudder Roll Stabilization – Controller Design and Experimental Results. In: *Proceedings of the 8th International Ship Control Systems Symposium (SCSS'87)*. The Hague, Netherlands. pp. 1.120–1.142.
- Van Berlekom, W. B., P. Trägårdh and A. Dellhag (1974). Large Tankers – Wind Coefficients and Speed Loss Due to Wind and Sea. In: *Meeting at the Royal Institution of Naval Architects, April 25, 1974*. London. pp. 41–58.
- Van der Klugt, P. G. M. (1987). Rudder Roll Stabilization. PhD thesis. Delft University of Technology, Delft, Netherlands.
- Vik, B. (2000). Nonlinear Design and Analysis of Integrated GPS and Inertial Navigation Systems. PhD thesis. Department of Engineering Cybernetics, Norwegian University of Science and Technology. Trondheim, Norway.
- Vik, B. and T. I. Fossen (2001). Nonlinear Observer Design for Integration of GPS and Inertial Navigation Systems. In: *Proceedings of the Conference on Decision and Control (CDC'2001)*. Orlando, FL.
- Vik, B., A. Shiriaev and T. I. Fossen (1999). Nonlinear Observer Design for Integration of DGPS and INS. In: *New Directions in Nonlinear Observer Design* (H. Nijmeijer and T. I. Fossen, Eds). Chap. I-8, pp. 135–160. Springer-Verlag. London.
- Wagner, Von B. (1967). Windkräfte an Überwasserschiffen. In: *Schiff und Hafen, Heft 12, 19. Jahrgang*. pp. 894–900. (in German).
- WAMIT Inc. (2010). WAMIT User Manual. <[www.wamit.com](http://www.wamit.com)>.
- Webster, W. C. and J. Sousa (1999). Optimum Allocation for Multiple Thrusters. In: *Proceedings of the International Society of Offshore and Polar Engineers Conference (ISOPE'99)*. Brest, France.
- Wendel, K. (1956). Hydrodynamic Masses and Hydrodynamic Moments of Inertia. Technical Report. TMB Translation 260.

- World Geodetic System (1984). Its Definition and Relationships with Local Geodetic Systems. DMA TR 8350.2, 2nd ed., Defense Mapping Agency, Fairfax, VA.
- Yakubovich, V. A. (1973). A Frequency Theorem in Control Theory. *Siberian Mathematical Journal SMJ-14*(2), 384–420.
- Yang, C. and M. Blanke (1997). A Robust Roll Damping Controller. In: *Proceedings of the IFAC Conference on Manoeuvring and Control (MCMC'97)*. Croatia.
- Yang, C. and M. Blanke (1998). Rudder-Roll Damping Controller Design Using Mu Synthesis. In: *Proceedings IFAC Conference on Control Applications in Marine Systems (CAMS'98)*. pp. 127–132. Fukuoka, Japan.
- Yanushevsky, R. (2008). *Modern Missile Guidance*. CRC Press.
- Yoerger, D. R. and J. J. E. Slotine (1985). Robust Trajectory Control of Underwater Vehicles. *IEEE Journal of Oceanic Engineering JOE-10*(4), 462–470.
- Yoshizawa, T. (1968). *Stability Theory by Lyapunov's Second Method*. The Mathematical Society of Japan.
- Yu, Z. and J. Falnes (1995). Spate-Space Modelling of a Vertical Cylinder in Heave. *Applied Ocean Research* **17**, 265–275.
- Yu, Z. and J. Falnes (1998). Spate-Space Modelling of Dynamic Systems in Ocean Engineering. *Journal of Hydrodynamics, China Ocean Press*, 1–17.
- Zhou, W. W. (1990). A New Approach for Adaptive Rudder Roll Stabilization Control. In: *9th International Ship Control Systems Symposium (SCSS'90)*. Bethesda, MD. pp. 1.115–1.125.
- Zhu, J. (1993). Exact Conversion of Earth-Centered Earth-Fixed Coordinates to Geodetic Coordinates. *AIAA Journal of Guidance, Control and Dynamics JGCD-16*(2), 389–391.

# Index

- 3 DOF maneuvering model, 113
- 4 DOF maneuvering model, 158
- 6 DOF equations of motion, 167
- Abkowitz's model, 138
- absolute damping factor, 366
- acceleration feedback, 365, 369
- accelerometer, 329
- Adams–Bashford's integration method, 546
- adaptive
  - feedback linearization, 455
  - weather optimal control, 499
- added mass, 91
  - definition, 92
  - energy approach, 117
  - forces and moments, 118
  - hydrodynamic derivatives, 129
  - potential coefficient, 111
  - property of the system inertia matrix, 118
  - system inertia matrix, 118
- AHRS, attitude and heading reference system, 328
- anemometer, 191
- angle of attack, 41
- angular velocity transformation, 24, 29
- anti-rolling tanks, 433
- Archimedes, 59
- attitude
  - control, 452
  - dynamics, 48
  - observer, 336
- attitude and heading reference systems, 328
- automatic pretrimming, 78
- autopilot
  - acceleration feedback, 384
  - backstepping, 508
  - cross-tracking, 385
  - heading, 377, 525
  - history, 230
  - Kalman filter, 300
  - linear quadratic optimal, 429
  - LOS path-following, 387
  - model, 142
  - nondimensional models, 148
  - path-following, 512
  - PID, 379
  - pitch and depth, 526
  - sliding mode control, 518
- AUV, autonomous underwater vehicle, 3
- average wave period, 202
- average zero-crossings period, 202
- backstepping, 457
  - integral action, 469
  - integrator augmentation technique, 472
  - MIMO mass–damper–spring system, 475
  - robots, 478
  - ships, 480
  - SISO mass–damper–spring system, 465
  - weather optimal control, 500
- ballast systems, 74
- semi-submersible, 77

- bandwidth, 373  
 Beaufort number, 190, 203  
 Bech's reverse spiral maneuver, 146, 354, 363  
 Bernoulli equation, 83  
 bilge keels, 433  
 bis system, 148  
 boat, definition, 3  
 BODY, body-fixed reference frame, 17  
 body-fixed vector representation, 167  
 Bretschneider spectrum, 202  
 buoyancy, 59  
 buoyancy force  
     floating vessels, 62  
     submerged vehicle, 59  
 Butterworth filter, 289  
 carrier DGPS, 305  
 CB, center of buoyancy, 18, 59  
 centripetal forces, 53  
 CF, center of flotation, 18, 68  
 CG, center of gravity, 18  
 CO, body axes coordinate origin, 17  
 commanded acceleration, 451–2  
 compass, 300, 331  
 computed torque, 450  
 configuration space, definition, 236  
 constant bearing guidance, 244  
 continuous-time Kalman filter, 298  
 control allocation, 398, 414  
     constrained, 405  
     unconstrained, 404  
 control bandwidth, 373  
 control design model, 6  
 control Lyapunov function, definition, 458  
 controllability, definition, 418  
 coordinate  
     form, 18  
     free vector, 18  
     systems, 16  
     transformation matrix, 20  
 Coriolis and centripetal forces  
     maneuvering, 115  
     seakeeping, 99  
 Coriolis and centripetal matrix  
     definition, 53  
     property, 54, 170  
 corrector-predictor representation, 299  
 course angle, definition, 39  
 craft, 3  
 cross-tracking, 385  
 cross-flow drag, 127, 136, 156  
 cross-product operator, 20  
 cross-track error, 258  
 cruise condition, 175  
 cubic splines, 267  
 Cummins equation, 96  
 current angle of attack, 155  
 current coefficients  
     area-based, 156  
     DP, 153  
     relationship to cross-flow drag and surge resistance, 156  
     surge damping, 127  
 D'Alambert's paradox, 122  
 damped oscillator, 365  
 damping  
     frequency-dependent, 95  
     matrix, 123  
 dead-reckoning, 299  
 decoupling  
     body-fixed reference frame, 451  
     NED reference frame, 452  
 degrees-of-freedom  
     definition, 235  
     model classification, 5  
     notation, 15  
 density  
     air, 189  
 describing function, 95  
 DGPS, differential GPS, 305  
 Dieudonné's spiral maneuver, 146, 362  
 diffeomorphism, 459  
 directional stability, 344, 346  
 discrete-time Kalman filter, 296  
 discretization of continuous-time systems, 541  
 displacement vessel, 4  
 DOF, degrees-of-freedom, 235  
 DP  
     backstepping control system, 480  
     brief history, 391  
     control allocation, 411  
     definition, 391  
     Kalman filter, 304  
     linearized model, 157  
     nonlinear model, 153  
     nonlinear separation principle, 487

- optimal control system, 445  
 passive observer, 310  
 PID control system, 393  
 position mooring, 396  
 roll and pitch damping, 391  
 setpoint chasing, 393  
 weather optimal control system, 491  
 drag coefficient, 127  
 drift angle, definition, 40  
 Dubins path, 255  
 dynamic positioning, see DP, 391  
 dynamic stability  
     on course, 352  
     straight-line motion, 347  
 dynamic straight-line stability, theorem, 351  
 dynamically positioned vessel, definition, 391  
 Earth rotation, 47  
 ECEF, Earth-centered Earth-fixed frame, 16  
 ECI, Earth-centered inertial frame, 16  
 effective metacentric height, 73  
 ellipsoidal height, 36  
 energy dissipation, 122  
 environmental forces, 187  
 equations of motion  
     1 DOF, 142  
     3 DOF, 133  
     4 DOF, 158  
     6 DOF, 167  
     classical model, 7  
     DP, 152  
     expressed in BODY, 167  
     expressed in NED, 168  
     lateral, 185  
     longitudinal, 184  
     maneuvering, 109, 133  
     nondimensional, 148  
     nonlinear, 167  
     rigid-body, 51  
     seakeeping, 96  
     vectorial representation, 13  
 equations of relative motion, 188  
 equilibrium heading, 86  
 equivalent linearization, 95  
 Euler  
     angles, 22  
     backward, 545  
     equation, 83  
     forward, 544  
     parameters, 27  
 Euler angles from quaternions, 33  
 Euler's  
     axioms, 46  
     integration method, 544  
     theorem on rotation, 21  
 extended  
     thrust configuration matrix, 402  
 feedback linearization, 450, 463  
     body-fixed reference frame, 451  
     NED reference frame, 452  
 filter  
     low-pass, 288  
     notch, 290  
 fin stabilizers, 434  
 flat Earth navigation, 35  
 flow  
     axes, 39  
     control, 76  
     irrotational, 83  
     potential, 83  
 fluid  
     kinetic energy, 117  
     memory effects, 81, 96, 104  
     viscous, 82  
 force RAO, 211  
 forced oscillations, 90  
 forward shift operator, 541  
 forward speed model, 140  
 four-quadrant arctangent, 33  
 free-surface  
     correction, 73  
     effect, 73  
 frequency  
     damped system, 367  
     encounter, 210  
     natural, 365  
 frequency-domain model, 89  
 frequency-independent  
     model, 113  
     potential coefficients, 111  
 frictional forces, 122  
 Froude number, definition, 3  
 FSC, free-surface correction, 73  
 GALILEO, European Union Global Positioning System, 230, 305

- Gauss–Markov process, 223  
generalized  
coordinates, 116  
eigenvalue problem, 70  
inverse, 404  
geodetic latitude, 36  
GLONASS, GLObalnaya NAVigatsionnaya Sputnikovaya Sistema, 230, 305  
GM, metacenter height, 65  
GNSS, Global Navigation Satellite Systems, 230, 305  
GPS, NAVSTAR Global Positioning System, 230, 305  
gravitational force  
floating vessels, 62  
submerged vehicle, 59  
guidance, 241  
closed-loop, 232  
constant bearing, 244  
line-of-sight, 243  
open-loop, 232  
pure pursuit, 243  
guidance, navigation and control, definitions, 232  
gyroscope, 229, 329  
gyroscopic compass, 301  
  
heading angle, definition, 39  
heave, definition, 15  
Helmholtz–Kirchhoff plate, 192  
Hermite interpolant, 267  
Heun’s integration method, 547  
Hoerner’s curve, 127  
Huygens–Steiner theorem, 50  
hydrodynamic  
code, 84  
Coriolis and centripetal matrix, property, 120  
damping, 122  
derivatives, 118, 129  
forces, 128  
mass–damper–spring, 128  
system inertia matrix, property, 118  
hydrodynamics  
computation programs, 84  
potential theory, 82  
hydrostatics, 59  
box-shaped vessels, 64  
floating vessels, 62  
semi-submersibles, 62  
ships, 62  
submerged vehicles, 59  
  
IKEDA damping, 95  
IMU, inertial measurement unit, 328  
inclination, 331  
incompressible fluid, 82  
inertia matrix, definition, 48  
INS, inertial navigation system, 328  
integrator backstepping, 457  
interceptor, 243  
irrotational  
flow, 83  
ocean currents, 103  
irrotational constant ocean currents, 129  
irrotational ocean currents, 55, 109  
ITTC resistance, 125  
  
JONSWAP, Joint North Sea Wave Project spectrum, 205  
  
Kalman filter  
autopilot, 300  
continuous-time, 297  
corrector–predictor representation, 299  
discrete-time, 296  
DP, 304  
extended, 298  
Kempf’s zigzag maneuver, 354, 359  
kinematic viscosity, 122  
kinematics, 15  
kinetics, 15, 45  
Kirchhoff’s equations, 54, 116  
  
Lagrange equations, 115  
Laplace equation, 83  
lateral model, 183  
latitude, definition, 34  
LCF, longitudinal center of flotation, 18  
LF, low-frequency motion, 285  
lift and drag, 122  
line-of-sight  
guidance, 243  
path following, 254  
linear damping formula for mass–damper–spring system, 367  
linear equations of motion  
linear, 173  
linear-quadratic optimal control, 418  
linear-quadratic regulator, 418

- linear velocity transformation, 22, 28  
 linear viscous damping, 123  
 linearized  
     Coriolis and centripetal forces, 57  
     DP model, 157  
     equations of motion, 56  
     maneuvering model, 140  
 load condition, 67  
 long-crested irregular sea, 208  
 longitude, definition, 34  
 longitudinal model, 183  
 LOS, line-of-sight, 243  
 low-aspect ratio wing theory, 165  
 low-frequency motion, 286  
 low-pass filter, 288  
 low-speed model, 173  
 LQ  
     fin and rudder-roll damping, 433  
     heading autopilot, 429  
     optimal control, 418  
     trajectory-tracking, 421  
 LQG, 449  
 Luenberger observer, 293
- magnetic  
     compass, 301  
     field, 331  
 magnetometer, 331  
 maneuver  
     Bech's spiral maneuver, 363  
     Kempf's zigzag maneuver, 359  
     pull-out maneuver, 361  
     turning circle, 354  
 maneuverability, 343, 353  
 maneuvering  
     coefficients, 128  
     equations, 128  
     kinematics, 85  
     theory, 9, 81, 109  
     zero-frequency model, 113  
 maneuvering control, definition, 266  
 maneuvering model  
     3 DOF, 133  
     4 DOF, 158  
     including ocean currents, 225  
     ITTC and cross-flow drag, 136  
     linearized, 140  
     odd functions, 138  
     potential theory representation, 141  
     second-order modulus, 136
- marine craft, 3  
 mariner class vessel  
     Kalman filter, 303  
     Nomoto models, 144  
     nonlinear least-squares, 357  
     pivot point, 147  
     turning circle, 355  
 mass-damper-spring system, 345, 365  
 mean wave drift force, 95  
 measure of maneuverability, 353  
 metacenter height  
     lateral, 65  
     transverse, 65  
 metacenter stability, definition, 67  
 metacenter, definition, 62  
 modal  
     frequency, 201  
     period, 201  
 modal analysis, 69  
 model representations, 9  
 models, 6  
 modified Pierson–Moskowitz spectrum, 204  
 moments of area, definition, 66  
 moments of inertia, 48  
 Moore–Penrose pseudo-inverse, 77, 169  
 Morison's equation, 122  
 motion  
     RAO, 213  
     sickness criteria, 443  
 Munk moment, 142
- natural  
     frequency, 68, 113, 345, 365  
     period, 68  
 natural frequency model, definition, 113  
 Navier–Stokes equation, 82  
 navigation systems, 286  
 NED, North–East–Down reference frame, 17  
 Neumann spectrum, 202  
 neutrally buoyant, 61  
 Newton's second law, 45  
 Newton–Euler formulation, 45  
 Newton–Raphson method, 68  
 Nomoto model  
     first-order, 143  
     nonlinear extension, 144  
     normalization, 151  
     second-order, 143  
 nondimensional equations of motion, 148

- nonlinear  
constrained optimization, 273, 405  
observer, 310  
PID control, 469  
normalization, 149  
normalization forms, 148  
notch filter, 290  
numerical  
differentiation, 547  
integration, 544
- observability, definition, 292  
observer  
design model, 7  
fixed-gain, 292  
IMU and GNSS, 328  
Luenberger, 293  
passive, 319  
ocean currents, 188  
2-D, 224  
3-D, 224  
direction, 223  
equations of relative motion, 221  
irrotational, 222  
models, 221  
speed, 223  
wind generated, 221  
odd functions, 138  
optimal control, 418  
dynamic positioning, 445  
fin and rudder-roll damping, 433  
heading autopilot, 429  
regulator, 418  
roll damping, 435  
trajectory-tracking, 421  
weather optimal, 491  
optimal trajectory generation, 253  
optimization  
control allocation, 405  
guidance, 273  
orthogonal matrix, 19
- P* number, 354  
panel methods, 84  
parallel navigation, 244  
parallel-axes theorem, 50  
parametrization, 456  
parametrized path, definition, 266  
passive observer  
dynamic positioning, 310
- heading autopilot, 319  
path  
cubic splines, 269  
parametrized, 266  
straight lines and circular arcs, 255  
path-following guidance, 254  
peak period, 200  
period  
peak, 200  
wave, 200  
zero-crossing, 200  
perturbation coordinates, 86, 111  
PID control  
acceleration feedback, 369  
cross-tracking, 385  
curved-path path following, 389  
dynamic positioning, 391  
heading autopilot, 377  
LOS path-following, 387  
mass-damper-spring system, 365  
MIMO nonlinear systems, 375  
position mooring systems, 396  
pitch  
definition, 15  
period, 185  
ratio, 411  
pitch-controlled propeller, 411  
pivot point, definition, 146  
planning vessel, 4  
PM spectrum, 203  
PMM, 10, 140  
pole placement, 319  
polynomial interpolation, 267  
position  
control, 452  
mooring systems, 396  
positional motion stability, 344  
potential  
coefficients, 91, 111, 129  
damping, 91, 111, 122, 129  
theory, 82  
potential coefficients  
properties, 102  
speed-dependent, 101  
zero-speed, 100  
predictor–corrector representation, 299  
pretrimming, 76  
Prime system, 148  
principal rotation, 22  
principle of superposition, 187

- products of inertia, 48  
projected area, 189  
propeller, 411  
proportional navigation, 244  
pull-out maneuver, 354, 361  
pure pursuit guidance, 243
- quadratic  
drag, 122  
programming, 276, 406
- quaternions  
definition, 27  
from Euler angles, 32  
from rotation matrix, 32  
IMU and GNSS, 341
- radiation force, 91  
radius of gyration, 72  
RAO  
force, 199, 211  
motion, 199, 213
- reference frame  
body-fixed, 17  
Earth-centered Earth-fixed, 16  
Earth-centered inertial, 16  
flow axes, 39  
North-East-Down, 17  
seakeeping, 85  
Serret–Frenet, 278
- reference model, 247, 377  
nonlinear damping, 251  
position and attitude, 249  
velocity, 249
- regressor, 456  
regulation, 418  
relative  
damping ratio, 345, 365  
speed, 39  
velocity, 188
- response amplitude operator (RAO), 199  
restoring  
forces, 59, 129  
matrix, 69
- retardation functions, 12, 90, 97  
Reynolds number, 122, 125  
rig, 77  
rigid-body kinetics  
maneuvering, 110  
Newton–Euler, 45  
seakeeping, 90
- robot, 478  
roll  
damping, 434  
definition, 15  
period, 72, 186  
roll and sway–yaw subsystems, 159  
rotation matrix, 19, 32  
rotation matrix differential equation, 25  
rotation point  
yaw, 146  
rotational motion, 48, 50  
Routh stability criterion, theorem, 350  
ROV, remotely operated vehicle, 3  
RRD, rudder-roll damping, 434  
RTK, real-time kinematic, 305  
rudder-roll damping, 160, 434  
Runge–Kutta integration methods, 547
- sea state  
codes, 202  
definition, 200
- seakeeping  
coordinates, 86  
equations of motion, 93  
kinematics, 85  
theory, 11, 81
- second-order modulus functions, 138  
second-order modulus terms, 128  
second-order system, 365  
second-order wave forces and moments, 199  
semi-displacement vessel, 4  
semi-empirical methods, 85  
semi-submersible  
ballast control, 78  
dynamic positioning control system, 391  
dynamic positioning system, 445, 487  
optimal setpoint chasing, 393  
position mooring control system, 396  
roll and pitch damping, 391  
weather optimal control system, 491
- separation principle  
linear, 449  
nonlinear, 487
- Serret–Frenet frame, 278  
service speed, 148  
setpoint regulation, 233  
ship  
acceleration feedback, 384  
control allocation, 411  
cross-tracking control system, 385

- ship (*Continued*)  
 curved-path path-following control, 389  
 definition, 3  
 dynamic positioning control system, 391  
 dynamic positioning system, 445, 487  
 fin and rudder-roll damping systems, 433  
 heading autopilot, 377, 429, 454, 508, 525  
 LOS path-following control, 387  
 optimal setpoint chasing, 393  
 path-following control, 512  
 position mooring control system, 396  
 weather optimal control system, 491
- ShipX, 84
- short-crested irregular sea, 209
- sideslip angle, definition, 40
- significant wave height, 200, 202
- similarity transformation, 542
- simple rotation, definition, 21
- simulation model, 6
- singularity, 25
- skew-symmetry, 20
- skin friction, 122
- slack tank, 73
- sliding-mode control  
 eigenvalue decomposition, 522  
 heading autopilot, 525  
 pitch and depth control, 526  
 SISO systems, 518
- SNAME notation, 15
- Son and Nomoto's model, 162
- special orthogonal group, 19
- spectrum  
 Bretschneider, 202  
 JONSWAP, 205  
 modified Pierson–Moskowitz, 204  
 Neumann, 202  
 Pierson–Moskowitz, 203  
 Torsethaugen, 206
- spiral maneuver, 354
- spreading function, 209
- SS(3), set of skew-symmetric matrices, 20
- stability  
 axes, 41  
 directional, 346  
 index, 349  
 on course, 346  
 open-loop, 343  
 stabilizing function, 460
- state feedback linearization, 450
- stationkeeping model, 173
- steering and roll, 162
- steering autopilot, 525
- steering criteria, 430
- stopping trials, 354
- straight-line stability, 344, 346
- strip theory, 84
- submarine  
 definition, 3  
 model, 183
- submerged vehicles  
 hydrostatics, 59  
 model, 183
- superposition, 187
- surface vessels  
 hydrostatics, 62
- surge  
 damping, 125  
 definition, 15  
 resistance, 125, 136, 156
- sway, definition, 15
- symmetry properties of inertia, 171
- system inertia matrix  
 property, 170
- system inertia matrix, definition, 52
- system transformation matrix, definition, 177
- tanks, 76
- target, 243
- target tracking, 242
- Taylor series, 138
- thrust allocation, 414
- thrust configuration matrix, 411
- time differentiation, moving reference frame, 47
- Torsethaugen spectrum, 206
- trajectory generation, 267
- trajectory tracking, definition, 246
- trajectory-tracking control, 233
- transit, 175
- translational motion, 47, 50
- turning  
 circle, 354  
 index, 353
- undamped oscillator, 365
- underactuated  
 control, 247  
 marine craft, 235
- underwater vehicle  
 acceleration feedback, 384  
 added mass and damping, 112

- cross-tracking control system, 385  
 curved-path path-following control, 389  
 definition, 3  
 heading autopilot, 377, 429, 454, 508, 525  
 lateral model, 185  
 longitudinal model, 184  
 LOS path-following control, 387  
 path-following control, 512  
 pitch and depth control, 526  
 restoring forces, 59  
 underway replenishment, 245  
 unified  
     model, 103  
     theory, 12  
 unit quaternions, 27  
     normalization, 31  
 UNREP, underway replenishment, 245  
 UUV, unmanned underwater vehicle, 3  
 vectorial mechanics, 45  
 velocity  
     control, 451  
 velocity transformation  
     angular, 24, 29  
     linear, 22, 28  
 VERES, 84  
 vessel parallel coordinates, definition, 173  
 vessel, definition, 3  
 viscous  
     damping, 122, 129  
     damping matrix, 95  
 volume of displaced fluid, 59  
 voyage planning systems, 277  
 VRU, vertical reference unit, 340  
 WAMIT, 84, 211  
 water plane area moment, 65  
 water tanks, 76  
 wave  
     first-order forces and moments, 199  
     force RAO, 211  
     force, no spreading function, 212  
     force, spreading function, 213  
     models, 202  
     period, 200  
     response, 214  
     second-order forces and moments, 199  
     state-space model, 215  
 wave amplitude response model, 208  
 wave drift damping, 122  
 wave excitation force, 95  
 wave filter  
     autopilot, 301, 319  
     dynamic positioning, 304, 311  
 wave filtering, definition, 286  
 wave spectrum  
     Bretschneider, 202  
     JONSWAP, 205  
     maximum value, 204  
     modified Pierson–Moskowitz, 204  
     Neumann, 202  
     Torsethaugen, 206  
 wave spectrum moments  
     moments, 201  
 wave-frequency motion, 199, 214, 286  
 wave-induced forces, 187  
 waypoint  
     representation, 255  
     tracking, 232  
 weather optimal position control, 491  
 weather routing, 277  
 weight, 59  
 WF, wave-frequency motion, 199, 214, 285  
 WGS-84, World Geodetic System, 17  
 wind  
     angle of attack, 188  
     axes, 41  
     coefficients, 188  
     container ship, 191  
     direction, 189  
     forces on marine craft at rest, 188  
     forces on moving craft, 191  
     large tankers, 195  
     merchant ships, 194  
     models, 188  
     moored ships and floating structures, 195  
     offshore vessels, 191  
     relative angle of attack, 191  
     relative speed, 191  
     speed, 188  
     tunnel, 191  
 wind-generated waves, 202  
 workspace, definition, 237  
 yaw, definition, 15  
 zero-frequency model, definition, 113  
 zero-speed model, 103